

SPECIFICATIONS AND CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
FOR
IDYLLWILD PUBLIC RESTROOM FACILITY PROJECT
EOARPA18805



PREPARED BY
RIVERSIDE COUNTY OFFICE OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Number of Pages
Notice Inviting Bids	<u>1-2 of 41</u>
Instructions to Bidders	<u>3-16 of 41</u>
Bid Form	<u>17-22 of 41</u>
Bid Bond	<u>23-24 of 41</u>
Bid Security Receipt	<u>25 of 41</u>
Designation of Subcontractors	<u>26 of 41</u>
Non-Collusion Declaration	<u>27 of 41</u>
Iran Contracting Act Certification	<u>28-29 of 41</u>
Construction Contract	<u>6 Pages</u>
Payment Bond	<u>30-31 of 41</u>
Performance Bond	<u>32-34 of 41</u>
Workers' Compensation Certificate	<u>35 of 41</u>
Evidence of Insurance	<u>N/A</u>
Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds	<u>36-38 of 41</u>
Substitution Request Form	<u>39-41 of 41</u>
Special Federal Provisions	<u>291 Pages</u>
General Conditions	<u>107 Pages</u>
Specifications (Set)	<u>10 Pages</u>
Reference Documents	<u>Per Attachment</u>

NOTICE INVITING BIDS

NOTICE IS HEREBY GIVEN that the County of Riverside ("County") invites sealed Bids for the construction of the following project ("Work"):

The Idyllwild Public Restroom Facility Project (EOARPA18805), funded by the American Rescue Plan Act, involves the design, procurement, delivery and installation of a pre-fabricated restroom building for the unincorporated community of Idyllwild. Work includes the installation of utilities to the new building, construction of ADA pathways, parking lot removal and resurfacing, site preparation and construction of the building foundation to manufacturer requirements.

Bids shall be prepared in conformance with the Instructions to Bidders and other Bidding Documents. Bids must be received, by hand delivery or mail, by the Clerk of the Board located on the 1st floor of the County Administrative Center, 4080 Lemon Street, Riverside, CA 92501, no later than the Bid Closing Deadline of **2:00 p.m.** on **1/12/2023**, to be thereafter on said date and at said location publicly opened and read aloud. The Bidder assumes sole responsibility for timely receipt of its Bid.

On and after 12/06/2022, and up to Twenty-Four (24) hours prior to the Bid Closing Deadline, copies of Bidding Documents will be available to Bidders for a free digital download upon written request by Bidder submitted to, Erik Sydow, Principal Development Specialist, Office of Economic Development, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501, esydow@rivco.org, phone number (951) 955-9021. The Bidding Documents may also be viewed in person between the hours of 8:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday (except Holidays) at Office of Economic Development, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501.

Pursuant to Labor Code section 1771.1, any contractor bidding, or subcontractor to be listed on a bid proposal subject to Public Contract Code section 4104, shall not be qualified to bid after March 1, 2015, unless currently registered and qualified to perform public works pursuant to Labor Code section 1725.5. No Contractor or subcontractor may enter into a contract (after April 1, 2015) without proof of current registration to perform public works.

A mandatory Pre-Bid Conference will be conducted on **1/4/2023**, commencing promptly at **10:00 a.m.**, at 54321 N Circle Dr, Idyllwild-Pine Cove, CA 92549. **Attendance at the mandatory Pre-Bid Conference is required as a condition of bidding.** Sign language services are available for the Pre-Bid Conference upon written request received by **Erik Sydow, Principal Development Specialist, 951-955-9021 or esydow@rivco.org** at least three (3) business days prior to the Pre-Bid Conference.

The Bidder receiving the Award by the County is required:

(1) to furnish a Performance Bond and Payment Bond as provided in the Instructions to Bidders and other Bidding Documents;

(2) both at the time Bidder submits its Bid and other Bid Submittals and at the time of Award, to: (a) hold a contracting license, active and in good standing, issued by the Contractors State License Board for the State of California for the following license classification(s): General A); and (b) hold, or designate a Subcontractor that holds, the certification(s) required by Applicable Laws to perform the following work: C-8 Concrete, C-10 Electrical, C-12 Earthwork and Paving, and C-36 Plumbing; and

(3) to comply with the provisions of the California Labor Code, including, without limitation, Sections 1771.4, 1773.1, 1774, 1775 and 1776 of the California Labor Code and including, without limitation, the obligations to pay the general prevailing rates of wages in the locality in which the Work is to be performed and comply with Section 1777.5 of the California Labor Code governing employment of apprentices. Copies of the prevailing rates of per diem wages are on file at California State Department of Industrial Relations, 464 West Fourth St., Suite 348, San Bernardino, CA 92401, and are available to any interested party on request.

(4) FEDERAL FUNDING: This project is being financed with American Rescue Plan Act funds from the U.S. Department of the (31 CFR Part 35) and subject to certain requirements including: compliance with Uniform Guidance's Cost Principles at 2 CFR part 200 requirements; payment of Federal Davis-Bacon prevailing wages; System for Award Management (SAM.gov) registration and others. Information pertaining to the Federal requirements is on file with the Riverside County Office of Economic Development and included in the Special Federal Provisions.

THIS IS A PUBLIC WORKS PROJECT AND SUBJECT TO COMPLIANCE MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT BY THE DEPARTMENT OF INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS. The awarded prime contractor shall post job site notices as prescribed by regulation starting January 1, 2015. Contractor or subcontractor shall furnish records specified in Labor Code section 1776 to the Labor Commissioner.

Substitution of securities for any moneys withheld by County shall be permitted as provided for by Section 22300 of the California Public Contract Code.

Capitalized terms used herein shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Bidding Documents. For information contact: Office of Economic Development, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501.

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

1.1 DEFINITIONS

Capitalized terms used on the Bidding Documents shall have the meanings assigned to them in the forms of Construction Contract and General Conditions that are included in the Bidding Documents. Capitalized terms not so defined shall have the meanings assigned to them in, or if none is assigned as reasonably interpreted according to the context of, the portion of the Bidding Documents where such terms are used.

1.2 SUMMARY OF PROJECT

1.2.1 Project Description. The Project to be constructed generally consists of the following: procurement, delivery and installation of a pre-fabricated restroom building for the unincorporated community of Idyllwild. Work includes the installation of water, sewer and electric utilities to the new building, construction of ADA pathways, parking lot removal and resurfacing, site preparation and construction of the building foundation to manufacturer requirements. The identifying name of the Project is Idyllwild Public Restroom Facility Project.

1.2.2 Contract Time. Substantial Completion of the Work must be achieved within Two Hundred Fifteen (215) Calendar Days from the Date of Commencement. Final Completion must be achieved within Fifteen (15) Calendar Days after the occurrence of Substantial Completion.

1.2.3 Liquidated Damages. The Construction Contract includes provisions: (1) permitting the County to assess liquidated damages to the Contractor of One Thousand Dollars (\$1,000) per Day for each Day after the expiration of the Contract Time for Substantial Completion that the Work is not Substantially Completed by Contractor; and (2) for payment by County to Contractor of liquidated damages to Contractor of One Thousand Dollars (\$1,000) per Day for each Day of Compensable Delay for which Contractor is entitled to a Contract Adjustment of the Contract Time and Contract Price.

1.2.4 County Furnished Materials. County reserves the right to elect to furnish the following County Furnished Materials for incorporation by Contractor as part of the Work pursuant to an assignment of one or more County Materials Contract(s) in accordance with Section 2.5 of the General Conditions: **None**. Said County Materials Contract(s) are available for review by Bidders at the Office of Economic Development, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501, (951) 955-8916. Bidder is solely responsible to familiarize itself prior to submission of its Bid with the terms and conditions of such County Materials Contract(s). County shall notify the successful Bidder prior to Award if the County elects to assign any of such County Materials Contracts to Contractor for incorporation Contractor of the County Furnished Materials as part of the Work.

1.2.5 Licensing. The Bidder to whom the Construction Contract for the Work is Awarded by the County is required, both at the time of the Bid Closing Deadline and at the time of Award, to: (1) hold a contracting license, active and in good standing, issued by the Contractors State License Board for the State of California for the following license classification(s): General A; and (2) hold, or designate in the Designation of Subcontractors a Subcontractor that holds, the certification(s) required by Applicable Laws to perform the following work: C-8 Concrete, C-10 Electrical, C-12 Earthwork and Paving, and C-36 Plumbing.

1.2.6 No Warranty by County. Bidders are solely responsible to satisfy themselves as to the suitability of any estimates, projections, budgets, criteria, surveys, reports, test data, recommendations, opinions, and other information provided by County relating to the Site, Work or Project (including, without limitation, all information contained in any Reference Documents) and nothing stated in the Bidding Documents, Contract Documents or in any other information provided by the County shall be construed as implying the creation or existence of any warranty, express or implied, on the part of the County with respect to the completeness, accuracy or sufficiency thereof.

ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

2.1 THE BIDDER BY SUBMITTING ITS BID REPRESENTS THAT:

2.1.1 Bidding Documents. The Bidder has, in its capacity as contractor and not a design professional, carefully and thoroughly examined, compared and understood the Bidding Documents (including, without limitation, the Drawings, Specifications and Reference Documents identified in the Bidding Documents), and acting in that capacity has satisfied itself that the Bidding Documents are free of any errors, conflicts, ambiguities, lack of coordination and violations of Applicable Laws that might affect the Bidder's ability to complete the Work for the amount of its Bid and within the time period(s) for construction required by the Bidding Documents.

2.1.2 Site Information. In order to fully acquaint itself with all conditions, restrictions, obstructions, difficulties and other matters which might affect the Bidder's ability to complete the Work for the amount of its Bid and within the time period(s) for construction required by the Bidding Documents, the Bidder has carefully and thoroughly inspected: (1) the Site and its surroundings; (2) all Existing Improvements on the Site and their existing uses by the County, its invitees and the public; (3) routes of ingress and egress to and from the Site; (4) local conditions in the vicinity of the Site (including, without limitation, sources and availability of labor, materials and equipment); (5) the status of construction, if any, that is in-progress at the Site; and (6) all reports, data, as-built drawings and other information (including, without limitation, the Reference Documents identified in the Bidding Documents) concerning visible and concealed conditions (including, without limitation, locations and capacities of utility sources and lines) above and below the surface of the ground and in Existing Improvements that have been made available by the County to Bidders or that are disclosed by public records of the County of Riverside or the City in which the Project is located, and has correlated its observations with the requirements of the Bidding Documents.

2.1.3 Bid Compliance. The Bid and other Bid Submittals are in compliance with the Bidding Documents.

2.1.4 No Exceptions. The Bid is based upon the materials, equipment, systems and other work required by the Bidding Documents, without any exception, exclusion or qualification.

2.1.5 Legal Status. If the Bidder is a corporation, or if one or more of the partners or joint venturers of the Bidder (where the Bidder is a partnership or joint venture) is a corporation, such corporation(s) is(are) duly incorporated, authorized to do business and in good standing under the laws of the State of California.

2.1.6 Licensing. Bidder currently holds and, if and when an Award is made to Bidder, Bidder will hold at the time of Award, a license, active and in good standing, issued by the Contractors State License Board for the State of California authorizing the Bidder to contract to perform work in the requisite license classification(s) stated in the Notice Inviting Bids and/or in these Instructions to Bidders.

2.1.7 Due Authorization. The person or persons signing the Bid and other Bid Submittals on behalf of the Bidder are authorized to do so on behalf of the Bidder.

2.1.8 Balanced Bid. Cost breakdowns of the Bid that are provided by the Bidder are balanced, reflecting in each line item category of Work a reasonable estimate of the Bidder's cost commitments to perform that category of Work and a proportionate share of overhead and profit.

2.1.9 Labor Compliance. The Bid includes sufficient funds to enable Bidder to comply with, and Bidder will comply with, all of the applicable provisions of the California Labor Code, including, without limitation, payment of prevailing wages, maintenance and submission of weekly certified payrolls and hiring of apprentices.

2.2 MISREPRESENTATION BY BIDDER

The County may determine as unresponsive any Bid in which any statement or representation made or incorporated by reference in the Bid, including any Bid Submittal comprising the Bid, is false, incorrect or materially incomplete and misleading.

ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

3.1 COPIES

3.1.1 Availability. Copies of Bidding Documents will be available, on and after 12/06/2022, and up to Twenty-Four (24) hours prior to the Bid Closing Deadline, copies of Bidding Documents will be available to Bidders for a free digital download upon written request by Bidder submitted to, Erik Sydow, Principal Development Specialist, Office of Economic Development, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501, esydow@rivco.org, phone number (951) 955-9021. The Bidding Documents may also be viewed in person between the hours of 8:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday (except Holidays) at Office of Economic Development, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501.

3.1.2 Sub-Bidders. Unless otherwise stated in the Notice Inviting Bids, the County assumes no obligation to distribute Bidding Documents directly to Sub-Bidders.

3.1.3 Complete Sets. The Bidder shall use complete sets of Bidding Documents in preparing its Bid. The County assumes no responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Bidding Documents.

3.1.4 No License. No license to Bidder is intended or conferred by the County's issuance to Bidders of copies of the Bidding Documents.

3.2 INTERPRETATION OR CORRECTION OF BIDDING DOCUMENTS

3.2.1 Examination by Bidder. The Bidder shall, with reasonable care and diligence in its capacity as a contractor and not a design professional, carefully and thoroughly examine the Bidding Documents and prior to the Bid Closing Deadline report to the County in writing by means of a request for clarification provided in accordance with Paragraph 3.2.3, below, any information contained in the Bidding Documents constituting an error, conflict, ambiguity, lack of coordination or violation of Applicable Laws that might affect the Bidder's ability to complete the Work for the amount of its Bid and within the time period(s) for construction required by the Bidding Documents. Failure by the Bidder to do so shall not relieve the Bidder from its representations set forth in these Instructions to Bidders nor serve as the basis for any claim by the Bidder that it was mistaken or misled in connection with the preparation of its Bid or its planning for construction of the Work.

3.2.2 Pre-Bid Conference. A mandatory Pre-Bid Conference will be conducted on 1/04/2023, commencing promptly at 9:00 a.m., at 54321 N Circle Dr, Idyllwild-Pine Cove, CA 92549. Attendance at the mandatory Pre-Bid Conference is required as a condition of bidding. Sign language services are available for the Pre-Bid Conference upon written request received by Erik Sydow, Principal Development Specialist, 951-955-9021 or esydow@rivco.org at least three (3) business days prior to the day of the Pre-Bid Conference. Regardless of whether the Pre-Bid Conference is described in the Bidding Documents as mandatory or optional, Bidder shall be deemed charged with knowledge of all facts, circumstances and other information that were apparent, available or provided to Bidders at the Pre-Bid Conference, including, without limitation, any and all of the physical conditions of the land and Existing Improvements at the Site that were visible or available for inspection or review by the Bidders attending the Pre-Bid Conference.

3.2.3 Requests for Clarification. If the Bidder requires clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents, it shall make a written request to County by a request for clarification. All requests for clarification of the Bidding Documents must be submitted, in writing, between the hours of 8:00 a.m. and

5:00 p.m. on any Day, Monday through Thursday (except Holidays) up to, including and no later than the Three (3) Days prior to Bid Closing Deadline, by hand delivery, mail, fax or e-mail to the following: Office of Economic Development, Attention Erik Sydow, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501, or via email at esydow@rivco.org. No response will be made to requests for clarification received after that time.

3.2.4 Addenda. Interpretations, corrections and changes of the Bidding Documents will be made by Addenda. Interpretations, corrections and changes of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner will not be binding and the Bidder shall not rely upon them.

3.2.5 Communications. The Bidder shall not, at any time during the bidding process following advertisement of the Notice Inviting Bids and prior to issuance of the Notice of Intent to Award, communicate with the County, Architect, County Consultants or any employee or representative of any of them, concerning the Project except by means of a written requests for clarification submitted by Bidder in accordance with Paragraph 3.2.3, above.

3.3 SUBSTITUTIONS

3.3.1 Requests for Substitutions. The Bidder shall make requests for Substitutions on the County's Request for Substitution form included in the Bidding Documents. Such requests shall comply with the requirements of the Bidding Documents, including without limitation, the Plans and Specifications. Without limitation to the other requirements of the Request for Substitution form, requests for Substitutions shall include: (1) a description of the material, equipment or other work that is to be replaced or eliminated by the Substitution; (2) a description of any other changes to the Work, Existing Improvements, the Site or the work of Separate Contractors that would be necessary if the proposed Substitution were incorporated as part of the Work; (3) a statement that the Bidder accepts responsibility for the inclusion in its Bid of all of the costs of implementing the Substitution, including, without limitation, the costs of any related changes to the Work, Existing Improvements, the Site or the work of Separate Contractors; (4) all drawings, performance and test data and other information necessary for an evaluation of the Substitution by the County, Architect and County Consultants; and (5) a statement that the Bidder understands and agrees that if the Substitution is not approved and the Bidder submits a Bid, Bidder will provide the Work as specified in the Bidding Documents without such Substitution. The burden of proof of the merit of a proposed Substitution is entirely upon the Bidder requesting the Substitution.

3.3.2 Deadline for Submission. Any completed Request for Substitution form that Bidders wishes to have considered by County must be submitted, between the hours of 8:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. on any Day, Monday through Thursday (except Holidays) up to, including and no later than the seventh (7th) Day prior to the Bid Closing Deadline, in writing, by hand delivery, mail, or fax to the following: Office of Economic Development, Attention Erik Sydow, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501, or via email at esydow@rivco.org. No response will be made to any Requests for Substitution form received after that time.

3.3.3 Review by County. To the maximum extent permitted by Applicable Laws, approval or disapproval of a Substitution proposed by a Bidder is in the sole and absolute discretion of the County. The County's decision to approve or disapprove of a proposed Substitution shall be final and binding. An Addendum shall be issued to all Bidders describing any Substitution properly and timely requested prior to the Bid Closing Deadline that is approved by the County. Failure by County to respond to a properly and timely submitted Request for Substitution prior to 8:00 a.m. of the second (2nd) working day before the Bid Closing Deadline shall be automatically deemed to be a disapproval by County thereof.

3.3.4 Standards. In evaluating a Request for Substitution form submitted by a Bidder, the materials, products and equipment described in the Bidding Documents are generally viewed by the County as establishing the standards for function, dimension, appearance and quality to be met by the requested Substitution.

3.3.5 Performance by Bidder. In the event the Bidder has submitted a Request for Substitution form and the request for Substitution is denied, or deemed denied, by the County and the Bidder thereafter

submits a Bid and receives the Award, then the Bidder shall execute the Construction Contract and provide the Work as specified, without such Substitution and at no additional cost or expense to the County.

3.3.6 No Postponement. Delays associated with the review, processing or approval of a Request for Substitution form submitted by Bidder shall not entitle Bidder to a postponement of the deadlines set forth in the Bidding Documents.

3.3.7 No Bid Adjustment. Neither approval nor disapproval of a Request for Substitution form shall be grounds for adjustment of a Bid.

3.4 ADDENDA

3.4.1 Transmittal. Addenda will be transmitted by County to all prospective Bidders who (1) attended and signed in at the Pre-Bid Conference (if any) or (2) have submitted a written request to County for notice of Addenda at esydow@rivco.org, including in such request the Bidder's name and address for mailing. The County will make Addenda available for viewing at the County's Request for Proposal / Quotation / Qualification website <https://rivcoed.org/rfp-rfq>.

3.4.2 Inspection. Copies of Addenda will also be made available for in-person inspection wherever Bidding Documents are on file for that purpose.

3.4.3 Issuance. Without limitation to the County's right to withdraw its request for Bids, Addenda may be issued up to, but not later than, seventy-two (72) hours prior to the Bid Closing Deadline; provided, however, that an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which postpones the Bid Closing Deadline may be issued at any time prior to the Bid Closing Deadline.

3.4.4 Receipt by Bidder. Failure of the Bidder to receive any Addendum shall not relieve the Bidder from any of its obligations under its Bid Submittal. The costs of performance by Bidder of all items of Work and other obligations contained in all Addenda issued by County shall be deemed included in the amount of the Bidder's Bid. The Bidder shall identify and list in its Bid all Addenda received and included in its Bid. The Bidder's failure to so acknowledge the receipt of all Addenda in its Bid may be asserted by the County as a basis for determining its Bid non-responsive.

ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

4.1 PREPARATION OF BIDS

4.1.1 Bid Form. Bidder shall state its Bid price using the Bid Form included in the Bidding Documents. A Bid presented on other forms shall be disregarded.

4.1.2 Blanks. All blanks on the Bid Form shall be legibly executed in a nonerasable medium.

4.1.3 Figures. Sums shall be expressed in a Bid in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy, the amount written in words shall govern.

4.1.4 Alterations. Interlineations, alterations and erasures in a Bid must be initialed by each and all of the signer(s) of the Bid.

4.1.5 Alternative Bids. Alternative Bids will not be accepted unless specifically requested in the Bidding Documents.

4.1.6 Multiple Bids. Where two or more Bids for designated portions of the Work have been requested, the Bidder may, without forfeiture of the Bid Security, state in its Bid the Bidder's refusal to accept the Award of less than the combination of Bids stipulated by the Bidder. The Bidder shall make no additional stipulations on or conditions to its Bid Form nor qualify its Bid in any other manner.

4.1.7 Name of Bidder. Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name of the Bidder and its legal form of business (i.e., sole proprietor, partnership, joint venture or corporation). Bids shall be submitted in the name of Bidder that appears in the Bidder's license issued by the State of California Contractors State License Board for the license classification(s) that the Bidder is required to hold pursuant to the Notice Inviting Bids. Each Bid shall bear the longhand signature and printed name and title of the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract. A Bid by a corporation shall further give the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed. A Bid submitted by an agent shall have a current power of attorney attached certifying the agent's authority to bind the Bidder.

4.1.8 Bid Submittals. Each Bid shall include the following Bid Submittals executed in the manner required by the Bidding Documents:

- .1 Bid Form, in the form specified in the Bidding Documents;
- .2 Bid Security, consisting of either (a) a Bid Bond, in the form specified in the Bidding Documents, or (b) such other form of Bid Security as is permitted by these Instructions to Bidders;
- .3 Bid Security Receipt, in the form specified in the Bidding Documents;
- .4 Designation of Subcontractors, in the form specified in the Bidding Documents;
and
- .5 Non-Collusion Declaration, in the form specified in the Bidding Documents.
- .6 Iran Contracting Act Certification

4.1.9 Modifications by Bidder. Changes or additions to the Bid Form, recapitulations of the Work bid upon, conditions or limitations on the Work to be done, alternative proposals or any other modification of the Bid Form not specifically called for by the Bidding Documents may result in the County's rejection of the Bid as being non-responsive. No oral, telephonic, electronic, facsimile or telegraphic modification of any Bid submitted will be considered.

4.1.10 Designation of Subcontractors. The Bidder shall submit, on the Designation of Subcontractors form specified in the Bidding Documents, a list of the proposed Subcontractors and the portion of Work to be done by each Subcontractor as required by the Subletting and Subcontracting Fair Practices Act (Public Contract Code Sections 4100 et seq). Unless the Notice Inviting Bids expressly states otherwise, any information requested in the Designation of Subcontractors other than a Subcontractor's name and location of business must be submitted as part of the Bid and may not be submitted after the Bid Closing Deadline. If additional sheets are needed to provide the information requested in the Designation of Subcontractors, they shall be included by Bidder as part of its Bid and shall accompany the Designation of Subcontractors. If bidding of Alternates is called for by the Bidding Documents and the Bidder intends to use different or additional Subcontractors or if acceptance of the Alternate by County would cause the value of the Work to be performed by a Subcontractor not identified in the Designation of Subcontractors accompanying the Base Bid to exceed the threshold dollar amount required by Applicable Law for listing of Subcontractors, then a separate Designation of Subcontractors form must be submitted for each such Alternate. If the Bidding Documents require the performance of Work for which the Bidder or a Subcontractor must hold a certification required by Applicable Laws to perform the work, and if the Bidder intends to use a Subcontractor holding such certification to satisfy said requirement and to perform such Work, then Bidder shall, without limitation to any other information that may be required by Applicable Laws, include in the Designation of Subcontractors the name of such Subcontractor and a description of the Work requiring such certification that the Subcontractor will be performing.

4.1.11 Builder's All Risk (Course of Construction) Insurance. The Bid Form states whether the Bidder shall include Builder's All Risk (Course of Construction) Insurance for the Project. If the Bid Form states that such insurance shall be included by the Bidder in its Bid, then Contractor shall provide a policy

of Builder's All Risk (Course of Construction) insurance coverage that conforms to the requirements set forth in Subparagraph 11.1.1.5 and the other applicable provisions of Article 11 of the General Conditions. NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, COUNTY RETAINS THE RIGHT exercised at any time prior to award TO ELECT TO USE ITS OWN BUILDER'S ALL RISK (COURSE OF CONSTRUCTION) INSURANCE and in the event County so elects to deduct the price for such insurance that is stated in Contractor's Bid, or if not so stated the amount included by Contractor for such insurance in the preparation of the Contractor's Bid, from the Contract Price by means of a Contract Adjustment pursuant to Change Order or Unilateral Change Order. If the County so provides the All Risk (Course of Construction) insurance for the Project, then Contractor shall assume the cost of any and all applicable policy deductibles (currently, \$50,000 per occurrence) and shall insure its own machinery, equipment, tools, etc. from any loss of any nature whatsoever.

4.1.12 Interested Bidder. No person, partnership, joint venture, corporation or other association of persons or entities submitting a Bid shall be allowed to submit more than one Bid or be interested in a Bid submitted by any other Bidder. A person, partnership, joint venture, corporation or other association of persons or entities that, in the capacity as a Subcontractor to a Bidder, has quoted a bid price to a Bidder is not disqualified from submitting a proposal or quoting prices to other Bidders or making a Bid as a general contractor for the entirety of the Work. For the purpose of this Paragraph, "interested in" means having a managerial or financial interest in another Bidder.

4.1.13 Prequalification. If the County has stated in the Notice Inviting Bids that bidding is limited only to bidders that were prequalified pursuant to a Prequalification conducted by County, and if Bidder was previously prequalified pursuant to that process to submit a Bid for the Project, then in addition to the requirements of the Bidding Documents the Bidder must comply with any additional requirements for bidding that are set forth in the Prequalification Documents, including, without limitation, compliance by Bidder with any continuing responsibilities for disclosure of any changes in ownership, management or financial condition. If the Bidder has been prequalified to submit a Bid for the Project it shall, if requested by County, submit prior to or with its Bid any certification(s) that the County is authorized to request by the terms of the Prequalification Documents governing the Bidder's prequalification.

4.1.14 Applicable Laws. All Bids must be submitted, filed, made and executed in accordance with Applicable Laws relating to bids for contracts of the nature provided for by the Bidding Documents, whether such Applicable Laws are expressly referred to herein or not.

4.1.15 Non-Transferable. A Bid is non-transferable.

4.1.16 Registration with Department of Industrial Relations. Pursuant to Labor Code section 1771.1, any contractor bidding, or subcontractor to be listed on a bid proposal subject to Public Contract Code section 4104, shall not be qualified to bid after March 1, 2015, unless currently registered and qualified to perform public works pursuant to Labor Code section 1725.5. No contractor or subcontractor may enter into a contract after April 1, 2015, without proof of current registration to perform public works.

4.2 BID SECURITY

4.2.1 Forms of Bid Security. Each Bid shall be accompanied by a Bid Security in the form of (1) cash, (2) a certified or cashier's check made payable to the County or (3) a Bid Bond (using the form of Bid Bond included in the Bidding Documents) issued by an Admitted Surety, in an amount equal to at least ten percent (10%) of the Bid Amount, as a guarantee that the Bidder, if awarded the Construction Contract, will enter into a Construction Contract with the County and furnish the Performance Bond, Payment Bond and other Post-Award Submittals required by the Bidding Documents. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into the Construction Contract or fail to furnish the Performance Bond, Payment Bond or any other Post-Award Submittal, then the Bid Security shall be forfeited to the County in an amount equal to the difference between the amount of Bidder's Bid Amount and the amount for which the County may procure the work from another Bidder plus the costs to the County of redrafting, redrawing and republishing the Bidding Documents.

4.2.2 Retention by County. The County will have the right to retain the Bid Security of any Bidder to whom an Award is being considered until either (1) the Construction Contract has been executed and the Performance Bond, Payment Bonds and other Post-Award Submittals have been furnished, or (2) all Bids have been rejected.

4.2.3 Return by County. Bid Security of an unsuccessful Bidder will be returned no later than sixty (60) Days after the Award by the County. Bid Security of the successful Bidder will be returned upon signing of a Construction Contract by the Bidder and County and submission by Bidder to the County of the Performance Bond, Payment Bond and other Post-Award Submittals in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents.

4.3 SUBMISSION OF BIDS

4.3.1 Sealed Envelope. All copies of the Bidder's Bid, Bid Security and other Bid Submittals shall be enclosed by the Bidder in a sealed opaque envelope. Said envelope, as well as any other, outer envelope or packaging in which said envelope may have been placed by Bidder or the carrier for delivery, shall be addressed and delivered as provided in the Notice Inviting Bids and shall be clearly and conspicuously labeled with the Project name, the Bidder's name and address and the identifying name of the Project as set forth in Paragraph 1.2.1, above.

4.3.2 Deposit. Bids shall be hand delivered to, or received by mail at, the Clerk of the Board located on the 1st floor of the County Administrative Center, 4080 Lemon Street, Riverside, CA 92501, at any time Monday through Thursday (excepting Holidays) between the hours of 8:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. up to the Bid Closing Deadline of 2:00 p.m. on 1/12/2023. Bids must be received at the designated location prior to the Bid Closing Deadline. Bids, or any Bid Submittal comprising a Bid, that is received after the Bid Closing Deadline will be returned unopened.

4.3.3 Postponement. The County reserves the right to postpone the Bid Closing Deadline by issuance of an Addendum to the Bidding Documents at any time prior to the Bid Closing Deadline.

4.3.4 Timely Receipt. The Bidder assumes full and sole responsibility for timely receipt of its Bid, including its Bid Security and all other Bid Submittals, at the location designated in the Bidding Documents for receipt of Bid.

4.3.5 Delivery Methods. Deposit of Bids shall be by hand delivery or mail, only. Oral, telephonic, telegraphic, facsimile or other electronic transmission is not permitted.

4.4 WITHDRAWAL OR RESUBMISSION OF BID

4.4.1 Before Bid Closing Deadline. Prior to the Bid Closing Deadline, a Bid may be withdrawn by notice to the County at the place designated for receipt of Bids stated in the Notice Inviting Bids. Such notice shall be in writing and signed by the Bidder. Partial withdrawal of a Bid or any Bid Submittal is not permitted.

4.4.2 After Bid Closing Deadline. Except as otherwise permitted by these Instructions to Bidders, each Bid shall constitute an offer that shall remain open for a period of sixty (60) Days after the Bid Closing Deadline and during that period of time shall not, without the written consent of the County, be modified, withdrawn or canceled by the Bidder.

4.4.3 Resubmission. Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the Bid Closing Deadline.

4.4.4 Bid Security. If a Bid is withdrawn and re-submitted, the amount of Bid Security shall be based on the Bid Amount based on the Bid as resubmitted.

4.5 BID ALTERNATES

4.5.1 Alternates. The Bidding Documents ☐ do ☒ do not include Alternates.

4.5.2 Bid Form. If Alternates are included in the Bidding Documents, then a Bid amount for each and every such Alternate shall be included in the spaces provided in the Bid Form for that purpose. If the Bidder determines that the Alternate does not affect the amount of its Base Bid, then the Bidder shall enter "No Change" in the Bid Form.

4.5.3 Basis for Award. Where the Bidding Documents include Alternates, the method checked in the box provided below will be used to determine the lowest Bid price (only wording following a checked box applies):

☒ **Award Method #1:** The lowest Bid price shall be the lowest Base Bid price without consideration of the Bidder's prices on the Alternates.

☐ **Award Method #2:** The lowest Bid price shall be the lowest total of the Base Bid price and the following Alternates that will be used for the purpose of determining the lowest Bid price:

1.

--
2.

--
3.

--
4.

--
5.

--

☐ **Award Method #3:** The lowest Bid price shall be the lowest total of the Base Bid price and the following Alternates taken in the order as shown below which, when the Bidder's amount for the Alternate is added to or deducted from such Base Bid price, are less than, or equal to, the funding amount publicly disclosed by the County before the first Bid is opened:

1.

--
2.

--
3.

--
4.

--
5.

--

☐ **Award Method #4:** The lowest Bid price shall be determined in a manner that will prevent any information that would identify any of the Bidders or any of their Subcontractors from being revealed to the County before the ranking of Bidders from lowest to highest has been determined.

4.5.4 Bid Escrow Provisions. The following provisions apply only if Subparagraph 4.5.4.1, below, provides that a Bid Escrow will be used for the Project.

.1 Bid Escrow. A Bid Escrow ☐ will ☒ will not be used for the Project.

.2 Escrow Bid Documents. Escrow Bid Documents, as that term is defined in the General Conditions, shall: (1) be in English; (2) be legible; (3) be detailed and comprehensive, showing a complete breakdown of quantities, prices, productivity calculations, crew sizes, direct and repair labor, plant

and equipment usage, general conditions (i.e., direct overhead) costs, indirect overhead and profit and contingencies, and all other numerical factors used to compute the Bid (provided, however, with respect to Bid items having an estimated cost under \$10,000, estimated unit costs are acceptable without detailed cost estimates provided that the indirect costs, contingencies and markups are shown and allocated); (4) if estimates are based, in whole or in part, on a Geological Baseline Report (GBR) or other report on surface or subsurface conditions at the Site, clearly reference any statements, data, opinions or recommendations used or relied upon from the GBR or such other report; and (5) if the Bidder's Bid is based on a price from a Sub-Bidder that exceeds five percent (5%) of the Bid Amount, provide documentation and electronic files from such Sub-Bidder relating to its bid submitted to Bidder that comply with all of the requirements herein for Escrow Bid Documents, in which case such documents and electronic files from such Sub-Bidder shall be considered and submitted by Bidder as part of the Escrow Bid Documents that are required to be submitted pursuant to this Paragraph 4.5.4.

.3 Deposit with County. Each of the Bidders submitting the apparent three (3) lowest Bid prices shall place its Escrow Bid Documents in a sealed container, marked on the outside with (1) the words "Escrow Bid Documents", (2) the name of the Project, (3) Bidder's name and (4) the date of submission. The sealed container with the Escrow Bid Documents shall be delivered by such Bidders to the County, at the place for submission of Bids, within twenty-four (24) hours after the Bid Closing Deadline.

.4 Review by County. County will review the Escrow Bid Documents of the apparent successful Bidder to ensure that the Escrow Bid Documents comply with the requirements of this Paragraph 4.5.4, and any other requirements of the Bidding Documents relating to use of a bid escrow. Such review shall not constitute approval or acceptance by County of the proposed means, methods, techniques or procedures of the Bidder, confirmation by County that the Escrow Bid Documents comply with the Bidding Documents, nor shall such review or alter any term or condition of the Contract Documents.

.5 Noncompliance by Bidder. Failure by Bidder to comply with any of the requirements of this Paragraph 4.5.4 or any other requirements of the Bidding Documents relating to use of a bid escrow shall be grounds for County to determine that the Bidder's Bid is non-responsive. Without limitation to the foregoing, County shall have the right, in the exercise of its sole and absolute discretion, if it finds that the Escrow Bid Documents submitted by a Bidder do not so comply to: (1) direct that the Bidder submit the required documentation and electronic files within twenty-four (24) hours of written request by County; and/or (2) discuss with the Bidder any questions that may exist concerning the Escrow Bid Documents in an effort to clarify and reconcile the information contained in the Escrow Bid Documents.

.6 Escrow Procedure. The Escrow Bid Documents of the successful Bidder receiving the Award shall be placed and held in storage at a safe and secure location, at the expense of County, for the duration of the performance of the Work and until the later of (1) ninety (90) Days after Final Completion is achieved or (2) final resolution by settlement or final judgment in legal proceedings of all disputes relating to the Construction Contract or Work (the "Escrow Bid Documents Storage Period"). Escrow Bid Documents of the unsuccessful Bidders will be returned to them within sixty (60) Days following Award. Upon expiration of the Escrow Bid Documents Storage Period, County shall destroy or return to Bidder, and shall not retain, copies of that Bidder's Escrow Bid Documents. County will take reasonable steps to protect and preserve the Escrow Bid Documents from damage; however, County shall not be liable for damage or loss occasioned by circumstances beyond the reasonable control of County, such as, without limitation, fire or Acts of God.

.7 Bidder's Warranty and Representation. Submission by a Bidder of its Escrow Bid Documents shall constitute a warranty and representation by such Bidder that it has no other written documents or electronic files containing information used in computing its Bid that are within the definition of Escrow Bid Documents as defined in the Bidding Documents and that Bidder agrees, in the event it receives Award of the Construction Contract, that it shall have no right to submit or offer into evidence in any legal proceedings in support of any request for Contract Adjustment, Claim or other request for any legal remedy or relief, any documentation or electronic files constituting Escrow Bid Documents that were not included in the Escrow Bid Documents submitted by Bidder.

.8 Not Contract Documents. The contents of the Escrow Bid Documents shall not be considered part of the Contract Documents.

.9 Property Rights, Confidentiality. The Escrow Bid Documents are, and shall always remain, the property and confidential information of the Bidder, subject to rights of review by the County and Bidder and other Permitted Uses as further described below. To the maximum extent permitted by Applicable Laws, County shall safeguard the Escrow Bid Documents, and all information contained therein, against disclosure and in so doing shall not disclose the Escrow Bid Documents to anyone who is not an employee, attorney or consultant of the County having a reason and need to review the Escrow Bid Documents in connection with one or more of the Permitted Uses.

.10 Permitted Uses. The Escrow Bid Documents may be opened, examined and used at any time by County or Bidder (including, without limitation, admission into evidence in any legal proceedings) for the purposes of aiding in an evaluation by County or Bidder, or a resolution by negotiation, settlement or legal proceedings, of a dispute between County and Bidder involving: (1) the submission or content of the Escrow Bid Documents submitted by Bidder; (2) a request by Bidder for relief from its Bid or for relief from any other obligation of Bidder in connection with the bidding process; (3) questions or disputes over the Bidder's right to, or the terms of, a Contract Adjustment; or (4) a Claim or other demand by County or Bidder for a legal remedy or recovery of money ("Permitted Uses"). Escrow Bid Documents shall not be used for any other purpose.

.11 Examination. Examination of the Escrow Bid Documents shall be in the presence of a representative of both County and Contractor unless a party fails, after reasonable notice from the party seeking to examine the Escrow Bid Documents, to arrange for a representative to be present, in which case the examination may take place by the requesting party alone. Copies of any portion of the Escrow Bid Documents may be made by either County or Bidder at the time of examination.

ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS

5.1 OPENING OF BIDS

All Bids shall be publicly opened and read aloud at the location for receipt of Bids on the Day of the Bid Closing Deadline. Without limitation to the County's right to reject all Bids, if two or more responsive Bids from responsible Bidders are the same and lowest, then the successful Bidder may be chosen by the County.

5.2 REJECTION OF BIDS

5.2.1 Rejection of Bid. Any Bid that is in any way incomplete or irregular is subject to rejection by County.

5.2.2 Rejection of All Bids. The County has the right to reject all Bids, with or without extending the opportunity to any Bidder to re-bid.

5.3 WAIVER OF IRREGULARITIES

The County has the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received or in the bidding process.

5.4 AWARD

5.4.1 Basis of Award. It is the intent of the County to Award the Construction Contract to the responsible Bidder submitting a Bid in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents for the lowest Bid Amount.

5.4.2 Notice of Award. Within fourteen (14) Days following public opening and reading of Bids, the County will issue a Notice of Intent to Award identifying the name of the Bidder to whom the County intends to Award the Construction Contract. Such notice will be mailed to all Bidders submitting a Bid. The County may, in its sole and absolute discretion, elect to extend the time for its issuance of its Notice of Intent to Award.

5.4.3 Bid Protests. Any Bidder submitting a Bid to the County may file a protest of the County's proposed Award of the Construction Contract provided that each and all of the following are complied with:

.1 The bid protest is in writing.

.2 The bid protest is both: (1) filed with and received by the Clerk of the Board at the following address, 4080 Lemon St. 1st Floor Riverside, CA 92501, not more than five (5) Days following the date of issuance of the Notice of Intent to Award. Failure to timely file and serve the bid protest as aforestated shall constitute grounds for the County's denial of the bid protest without consideration of the grounds stated therein.

.3 The written bid protest sets forth, in detail, all grounds for the bid protest, including without limitation all facts, supporting documentation, legal authorities and argument in support of the grounds for the bid protest. Any grounds not set forth in the bid protest shall be deemed waived. All factual contentions must be supported by competent, admissible and credible evidence. Any bid protest not conforming to the foregoing shall be rejected as invalid.

.4 Provided that a bid protest is filed in conformity with the foregoing, the Director of the Office of Economic Development, such individual(s) as may be designated by the Director of the Office of Economic Development in his/her discretion, shall review and evaluate the basis of the bid protest, and shall provide a written decision to the Bidder submitting the bid protest, either concurring with or denying the bid protest. The written decision of the Director of the Office of Economic Development or his/her designee shall be final, unless overturned by the Board of Supervisors.

ARTICLE 6 POST- AWARD

6.1 POST- AWARD SUBMITTALS

6.1.1 Construction Contract. The Bidder identified in the Notice of Intent to Award as the successful Bidder to receive Award by the County shall execute the Construction Contract and return it to the County within Four calendar days (4) Days after issuance by County to Bidder of the Construction Contract from the County and prior to execution of the Construction Contract by County.

6.1.2 Other Post-Award Submittals. Within the time periods set forth below, the Bidder identified in the Notice of Intent to Award as the successful Bidder shall submit the following additional Post-Award Submittals, completed and signed in the manner required by the Bidding Documents, to the County at Office of Economic Development, Attention Erik Sydow, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA 92501:

.1 within ten (10) Days after issuance by County to Bidder of the Notice of Intent to Award and prior to commencement of the Work, such Bidder shall submit to County the following:

- (1) Performance Bond and Payment Bond (issued by Surety);
- (2) Evidence of Insurance, in the form specified in the Bidding Documents;
- (3) Workers' Compensation Certificate, in the form specified in the Bidding Documents;
- (4) Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds (required only if the Bidder has not entered into a collective bargaining agreement covering the workers to be employed for performance of the Work), in the form specified in the Bidding Documents;

.2 within twenty-one (21) Days after issuance by County to Bidder of the Notice of Intent to Award, such Bidder shall submit to the County the following:

- (1) Construction Schedule, prepared by Bidder in the manner required by Section 3.9 of the General Conditions; and
- (2) Schedule of Values, prepared by Bidder in the manner required by Section 9.3 of the General Conditions.

6.1.3 Failure to Submit. Failure of the successful Bidder to submit any the Post-Award Submittals specified in Paragraphs 6.1.1 and 6.1.2, above, within the time periods specified therein shall be deemed to be a failure or refusal to execute the Construction Contract and shall be cause for forfeiture of such Bidder's Bid Security.

6.2 BIDDER RESPONSIBILITY

County reserves the right to request that any Bidder submit, as a condition of Award, information demonstrating that the Bidder and/or any of the Subcontractors listed in the Designation of Subcontractors submitted by Bidder, is financially and in all other respects possessed of the attributes of trustworthiness, as well as quality, fitness, capacity and experience, to satisfactorily perform under the terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents, Contract Documents and its Bid. Bidder shall comply with such request by submitting the information requested within five (5) Days of receipt of County's request. Failure to do so may be treated by County as a grounds to reject Bidder's Bid. Failure by the County to make such a request shall not constitute a waiver of its right to determine that Bidder or any such Subcontractor is not responsible to perform the Work.

ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

7.1 BOND REQUIREMENTS

7.1.1 Performance and Payment Bonds. The successful Bidder will be required to furnish: (1) a Performance Bond in the form included in the Bidding Documents guaranteeing faithful performance of all obligations under the Construction Contract; and (2) a Payment Bond that complies with the requirements of Civil Code Section 9554 in the form included in the Bidding Documents. The penal sums of the Performance Bond and Payment Bond shall each be initially in the amount of one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Price. The penal sum shall be increased for Contract Adjustments increasing the Contract Price that are authorized by Change Order or Unilateral Change Orders.

7.1.2 Cost of Bonds. The cost of Performance Bonds and Payment Bonds shall be deemed included in the amount of a Bidder's Bid.

7.1.3 Surety. Both the Performance Bond and Payment Bond shall be issued by an Admitted Surety. The Surety on the Performance Bond shall have an A.M. Best's Insurance Rating of A:VIII (A:8) or better.

7.2 TIME OF DELIVERY AND FORM OF BONDS

7.2.1 Submission by Bidder. Within the time period set forth in Subparagraph 6.1.2.1, above, the successful Bidder shall deliver the required Performance Bond and Payment Bond to the County fully executed and issued by the Bidder's Surety(ies).

7.2.2 Execution of Bonds. Notary acknowledgements of the signatures of the Bidder and Surety(ies) is required. The attorney-in-fact who executes the required Performance Bond or Payment Bond on behalf of a Surety shall affix thereto a certified and current copy of the power of attorney authorizing such attorney-in-fact to execute same on behalf of such Surety.

ARTICLE 8 CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

8.1 EXECUTION OF CONTRACT

The successful Bidder shall execute the Construction Contract in the form included in the Bidding Documents.

8.2 BOARD APPROVAL

The Construction Contract shall not be binding upon the County until it has been awarded by the Director of the Office of Economic Development or Board of Supervisors, and executed by the Board Chair, or designee.

BID FORM

TO THE GOVERNING BOARD OF THE COUNTY OF RIVERSIDE:

Date: _____

Bidder: _____

The undersigned Bidder, having carefully examined the Bidding Documents for the following Project:

Idyllwild Public Restroom Facility Project (EOARPA18805).

including, without limitation, the Plans and Specifications made part thereof, and taking into consideration all matters disclosed thereby, all matters of which Bidder is charged with knowledge by the terms thereof and all matters that are reasonably ascertainable by Bidder in the exercise of its duties of inquiry or investigation created by the terms set forth in the Bidding Documents (including, without limitation, the terms of Section 3.2 of the General Conditions, proposes, agrees to furnish in strict accordance with the Contract Documents all of the following:

- labor, materials, equipment, services, transportation;
- permits, licenses and taxes,
- **Builder's Risk (Course of Construction) Insurance coverage in accordance with the terms of Subparagraph 11.1.1.5 of the General Conditions;** and
- all other work, services and other things necessary for the undersigned to perform its obligations under the Contract Documents, excepting only those that are expressly stated in the Bidding Documents to be the responsibility of County,

for the total Base Bid price of (state in figures) \$_____ (state in words) _____ dollars
and _____ cents.

The foregoing Base Bid is submitted based upon and taking into consideration all of modifications and additions to the Bid Documents and other information set forth in each Addendum listed below, receipt and review of which is hereby acknowledged by Bidder (state below each and every Addendum number and date):

Addendum No.		Date:	
Addendum No.		Date:	
Addendum No.		Date:	
Addendum No.		Date:	
Addendum No.		Date:	
Addendum No.		Date:	
Addendum No.		Date:	

Subject to County's acceptance of such Alternate(s) in the manner set forth in the Instructions to Bidders, the foregoing Base Bid shall be adjusted as hereinafter stated for the following Alternates set forth in the Bidding Documents and/or the above-listed Addenda:

State Amount (in words and figures)		State if Amount is an "Add" or "Deduct" to Base Bid or, if Base Bid is Not Affected, Enter "No Change"
Alternate 1: Course of Construction Insurance		
Figures: \$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Add <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Deduct <input type="checkbox"/> No Change	Words: _____
_____ Dollars _____ Cents		
Alternate 2: <u>insert description here</u>		
Figures: \$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Add <input type="checkbox"/> Deduct <input type="checkbox"/> No Change	Words: _____
_____ Dollars _____ Cents		
Alternate 3: <u>insert description here</u>		
Figures: \$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Add <input type="checkbox"/> Deduct <input type="checkbox"/> No Change	Words: _____
_____ Dollars _____ Cents		
Alternate 4: <u>insert description here</u>		
Figures: \$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Add <input type="checkbox"/> Deduct <input type="checkbox"/> No Change	Words: _____
_____ Dollars _____ Cents		
Alternate 5: <u>insert description here</u>		
Figures: \$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Add <input type="checkbox"/> Deduct <input type="checkbox"/> No Change	Words: _____
_____ Dollars _____ Cents		

THE UNDERSIGNED BIDDER HEREBY MAKES THE FOLLOWING REPRESENTATIONS AND COVENANTS:

1. Except as otherwise permitted by the Instructions to Bidders, this Bid shall remain open for a period of sixty (60) Days after the Bid Closing Deadline (as defined in the Bidding Documents) and during that period of time shall not, without the written consent of County, be modified, withdrawn or canceled by the Bidder.

2. Bidder adopts and incorporates into this Bid all of the representations set forth in the Instructions to Bidders and hereby warrants that all such representations are true and correct.

3. The Bid Security submitted by Bidder is given as a guarantee that if Award of the Construction Contract that is the subject of this Bid is made to Bidder that Bidder will execute the Construction Contract and furnish the Performance Bond, Payment Bonds, evidence of insurance and other documents that Bidder is required to submit under the terms of the Bidding Documents, and in the event that the Bidder fails or refuses to execute and deliver same, such Bid Security shall be charged with the all losses and damages suffered by County as a result thereof and permitted by Applicable Law, including, without limitation, the difference between the amount of the Bid and amount for which the County may legally contract with another party to perform the Project (if such latter amount be greater than the Bid), costs of publication, and all other Losses suffered by County (including, without limitation, those associated with Delay to the Project).

4. Capitalized terms used in this Bid Form shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Bidding Documents.

Individual Bidder

Name of Bidder: _____

By: _____
(Signature)

Print Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Business Address: _____

Business Telephone: _____

Business Fax: _____

Business E-mail: _____

Contractor's License: _____
Dept. of Industrial Relations
Registration No: _____

Corporation Bidder

Corporate Name
of Bidder: _____

State of Incorporation: _____

By: _____
(Signature)

Print Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Business Address: _____

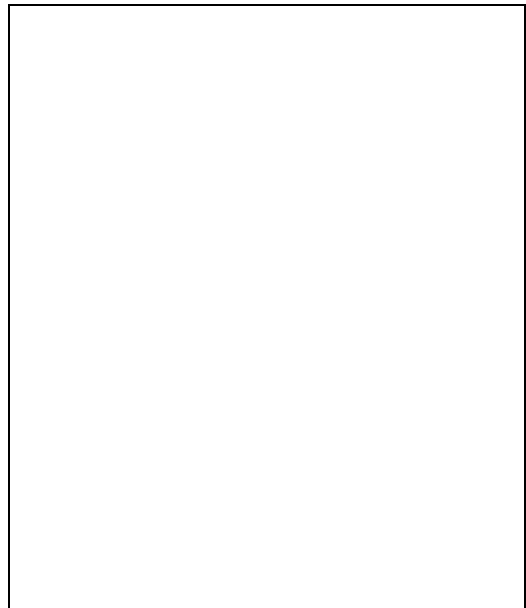
Business Telephone: _____

Business Fax: _____

Business E-mail: _____

Contractor's License: _____
Dept. of Industrial Relations
Registration No: _____

Space for Corporate Seal and Attestation



Partnership Bidder

Name of Bidder: _____

By: _____
(Signature)

Print Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Business Address: _____

Business Telephone: _____

Business Fax: _____

Business E-mail: _____

Contractor's License: _____

Dept. of Industrial Relations

Registration No: _____

If additional partners are signing, attach additional sheets setting forth the above signature information for each signing partner.

If the partner or partners signing on behalf of the Bidder is/are a corporation, then for each such corporate partner complete the following (attach additional sheets, if necessary):

Corporate Name
of Partner: _____

State of Incorporation: _____

By: _____
(Signature)

Print Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Business Address: _____

Business Telephone: _____

Business Fax: _____

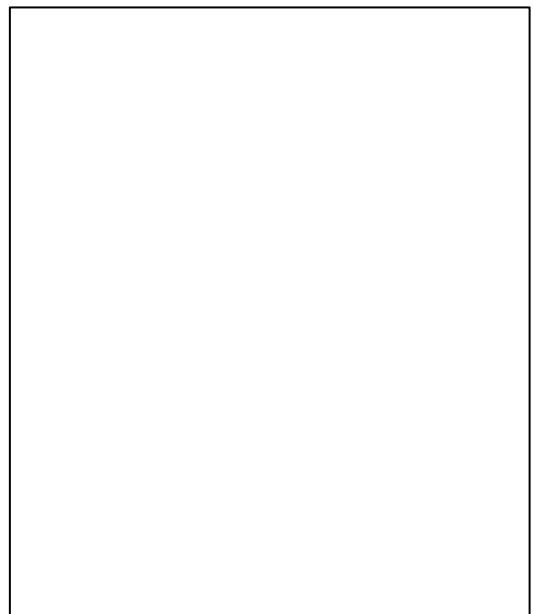
Business E-mail: _____

Contractor's License: _____

Dept. of Industrial Relations

Registration No: _____

Space for Corporate Seal and Attestation



Joint Venture Bidder

Name of Bidder: _____

By: _____

(Signature)

Print Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Business Address: _____

Business Telephone: _____

Business Fax: _____

Business E-mail: _____

Contractor's License: _____

Dept. of Industrial Relations

Registration No: _____

If additional joint venture partners are signing, attach additional sheets setting forth the above signature information for each signing joint venture partner.

If the joint venture partner or partners signing on behalf of the Bidder is/are a corporation, then for each such corporate joint venture partner complete the following (attach additional sheets, if necessary):

Corporate Name
of Partner: _____

State of Incorporation: _____

By: _____

(Signature)

Print Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Business Address: _____

Business Telephone: _____

Business Fax: _____

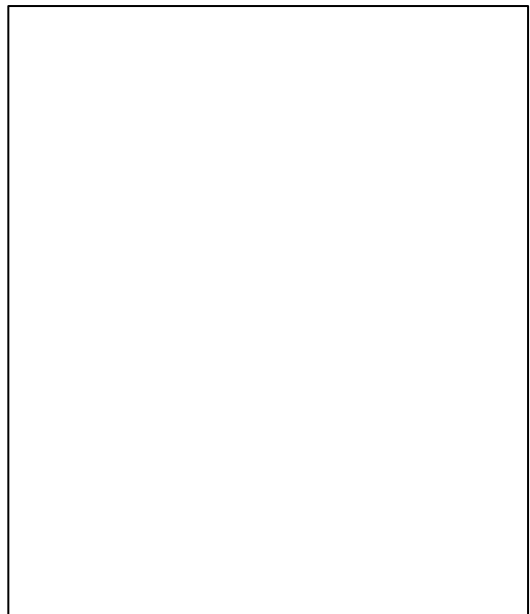
Business E-mail: _____

Contractor's License: _____

Dept. of Industrial Relations

Registration No: _____

Space for Corporate Seal and Attestation



Project No. EOARPA18805

Bond No. _____

BID BOND

(Public Work – Public Contract Code Section 20129 (a))

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS THAT:

WHEREAS, The undersigned _____ (“Principal”) is herewith submitting to the County of Riverside (“County”) a Bid dated _____ 20__, in the amount of (\$ _____) [Enter amount of Principal’s Bid Amount, as defined in the Instructions to Bidders] (“Bid Amount”) for the award by County to Principal of a contract (“Contract”) for the following: Idyllwild Public Restroom Facility Project (“Project”);

AND, WHEREAS, Principal is obligated as a condition of said Bid to submit security pursuant to Public Contract Code Section 20129 (a) in the amount of ten percent (10%) of the Bid Amount, which security may be in the form of a Bid Bond issued by an admitted surety insurer pursuant to Code of Civil Procedure Section 995.120 (“Admitted Surety”);

NOW THEREFORE, the Principal and _____ (“Surety”), an Admitted Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the County in the penal sum of _____ (\$ _____) for the payment of which sum in lawful money of the United States, well and truly to be made, we, Principal and Surety, bind ourselves, our executors, administrators, successors, heirs and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THE ABOVE OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that if Principal is awarded the Contract upon such Bid and thereafter within the period of time specified in County’s bidding documents governing the bidding process applicable to such Bid (“Bidding Documents”) enters into the Contract with County on the terms and conditions required by the Bidding Documents and furnishes the performance and payment bonds, evidence of insurance and other documents that Principal is required to submit under the terms of the Bidding Documents, then this obligation shall be null and void; otherwise, it shall remain in full force and effect and the sum guaranteed by this bond shall, at the option of County, be forfeited to County to pay all losses and damages suffered by County as a result thereof and permitted by applicable law, including, without limitation, the difference between the Bid Amount and amount for which the County may legally contract with another party to perform the Work (if such latter amount be greater than the Bid Amount), costs of publication, and all other losses and damages suffered by County (including, without limitation, those associated with delay to the Project); provided, however, that Surety’s liability shall not exceed the penal amount of this bond.

Surety, for value received, hereby agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or the Bidding Documents, or to the work to be performed thereunder, nor any withdrawal of the Bid in a manner not permitted by the requirements of the Bidding Documents shall in any way

impair or affect Surety's obligation under this bond, and Surety does hereby waive notice of any such changes, extensions of time, alterations or additions.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF the undersigned parties have executed this instrument under their several seals this day of _____, 20__, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

Affix Seal if Corporation

(Firm Name – Principal)

(Business Address)

By _____
(Original Signature)

(Title)

(Corporation Name – Surety)

Affix Corporate Seal

(Business Address)

By _____
(Original Signature)
ATTORNEY-IN-FACT

Note: Notary acknowledgment for Surety's signature and Surety's Power of Attorney must be included or attached

BID SECURITY RECEIPT

The undersigned Bidder has submitted as Bid Security for its Bid in the form of (check appropriate box):

- ☐ Bid Bond executed by an Admitted Surety, made payable to the County of Riverside,
- ☐ cash,
- ☐ cashier's check payable to the order of the County of Riverside, or
- ☐ certified check payable to the order of the County of Riverside,

in the amount of _____
dollars/_____ cents (\$_____), which amount is equal to ten percent (10%) of
the Bidder's Bid Amount, as defined in the Instructions to Bidders.

Signature

Print Name of Bidder

Print Name of Signer

DESIGNATION OF SUBCONTRACTORS

In compliance with the Subletting and Subcontracting Fair Practices Act (Chapter 4, commencing at Section 4100, Division 2, Part 1 of the Public Contract Code of the State of California) and any amendments thereto ("Act"), Bidder sets forth below the information required by the Act for those Subcontractors who are required to be listed by Bidder pursuant to the provisions of the Act [Insert information requested. Attach additional sheets, if needed.]:

<u>Portion of Work</u>	<u>Subcontractor Name</u>	<u>License No.</u>	<u>Location</u>

Date: _____

(Name of Bidder)

By: _____
(Signature of Bidder)

Address: _____

Phone: _____

**NON-COLLUSION DECLARATION TO BE EXECUTED BY BIDDER AND
SUBMITTED WITH BID**

(Public Contract Code Section 7106)

The undersigned declares:

I am the _____ of _____, the party making the foregoing bid.

The bid is not made in the interest of, or on behalf of, any undisclosed person, partnership, company, association, organization, or corporation. The bid is genuine and not collusive or sham. The bidder has not directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other bidder to put in a false or sham bid. The bidder has not directly or indirectly colluded, conspired, connived, or agreed with any bidder or anyone else to put in a sham bid, or that anyone shall refrain from bidding. The bidder has not in any manner, directly or indirectly, sought by agreement, communication, or conference with anyone to fix the bid price of the bidder or any other bidder, or to fix any overhead, profit, or cost element of the bid price, or of that of any other bidder.

All statements contained in the bid are true. The bidder has not, directly or indirectly, submitted his or her bid price of any breakdown thereof, or the contents thereof, or divulged information or data relative thereto, to any corporation, partnership, company, association, organization, bid depository, or to any member or agent thereof to effectuate a collusive or sham bid, and has not paid, and will not pay, any person or entity for such purpose.

Any person executing this declaration on behalf of a bidder that is a corporation, partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, limited liability partnership, or any other entity, hereby represents that he or she has full power to execute, and does execute, this declaration on behalf of the bidder.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the State of California that the foregoing is true and correct and that this declaration is executed on _____ [date], at _____ [city], _____ [state].

[Signature of Declarant]

[Printed Name of Person Signing]

[Name of Bidder]

[Office or Title]

Iran Contracting Act

(Public Contract Code sections 2200-2208)

In accordance with Public Contract Code Section 2204(a), prior to bidding on, submitting a proposal or executing a contract or renewal for a County of Riverside contract for goods or services of \$1,000,000 or more, a Contractor must either:

- a) Certify it is not on the current list of persons engaged in investment activities in Iran created by the California Department of General Services ("DGS") pursuant to Public Contract Code section 2203(b) and is not a financial institution extending twenty million dollars (\$20,000,000) or more in credit to another person, for 45 days or more, if that other person will use the credit to provide goods or services in the energy sector in Iran and is identified on the current list of persons engaged in investment activities in Iran created by DGS; or
- b) Demonstrate it has been exempted from the certification requirement for that solicitation or contract pursuant to Public Contract Code section 2203(c) or (d).

To comply with this requirement, please insert your Contractor or financial institution name and Federal ID Number (if available) and complete one of the options below. Please note: California law establishes penalties for providing false certifications, including civil penalties equal to the greater of \$250,000 or twice the amount of the contract for which the false certification was made; contract termination; and three-year ineligibility to bid on contracts. (Public Contract Code section 2205.)

Option #1 – Certification

I, the official named below, certify I am duly authorized to execute this certification on behalf of the Contractor/financial institution identified below, and the Contractor/financial institution identified below is **not** on the current list of persons engaged in investment activities in Iran created by DGS and is not a financial institution extending twenty million dollars (\$20,000,000) or more in credit to another person/vendor, for 45 days or more, if that other person/vendor will use the credit to provide goods or services in the energy sector in Iran and is identified on the current list of persons engaged in investment activities in Iran created by DGS.

<i>Contractor Name/Financial Institution (Printed)</i>		<i>Federal ID Number (or n/a)</i>
<i>By (Authorized Signature)</i>		
<i>Printed Name and Title of Person Signing</i>		
<i>Date Executed</i>	<i>Executed in</i>	

Option #2 – Exemption

Pursuant to Public Contract Code sections 2203(c) and (d), a public entity may permit a Contractor/financial institution engaged in investment activities in Iran, on a case-by-case basis, to be eligible for, or to bid on, submit a proposal for, or enters into or renews, a contract for goods and services.

If you have obtained an exemption from the certification requirement under the Iran Contracting Act, please fill out the information below, and attach documentation demonstrating the exemption approval.

<i>Contractor Name/Financial Institution (Printed)</i>		<i>Federal ID Number (or n/a)</i>
<i>By (Authorized Signature)</i>		
<i>Printed Name and Title of Person Signing</i>		
<i>Date Executed</i>	<i>Executed in</i>	



STANDARD FORM OF CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT BETWEEN COUNTY AND CONTRACTOR

by and between

CONTRACTOR NAME

(the "Contractor")

And

THE COUNTY OF RIVERSIDE

(the "County")

FOR:

**IDYLLWILD PUBLIC RESTROOM FACILITY PROJECT
EOARPA18805**

LOCATED AT:

54321 N CIRCLE DR, IDYLLWILD-PINE COVE, CA 92549

STANDARD FORM OF CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

BETWEEN COUNTY AND CONTRACTOR

THIS STANDARD FORM OF CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT BETWEEN COUNTY AND CONTRACTOR ("Agreement") is entered into as of the date of the last signature on the signature page of this contract by and between **THE COUNTY OF RIVERSIDE**, a political subdivision of the State of California ("County") and **CONTRACTOR**, a California ("Contractor") whose principal place of business is located at [Contractor Address].

ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

Capitalized terms used in the Contract Documents shall have the meanings assigned to them in the General Conditions. If not defined in the General Conditions, they shall have the meanings assigned to them elsewhere in the Contract Documents. If not defined in the General Conditions or elsewhere, they shall have the meanings reasonably understood to apply to them by the context in which they are used.

ARTICLE 2 PERFORMANCE OF WORK

2.1 SCOPE OF WORK

Contractor shall execute the entire Work called for by the Contract Documents, except to the extent specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

2.2 STANDARD OF PERFORMANCE

In addition to and without limiting Contractor's other obligations under the Contract Documents, Contractor shall at all times in its performance of its obligations under the Contract Documents conform to the following general standards of performance:

2.2.1 the requirements of the Contract Documents;

2.2.2 the requirements and conditions of Applicable Laws;

2.2.3 the standard of care applicable to those who provide construction of the type called for by this Construction Contract for projects of a scope and complexity comparable to the Project;

2.2.4 Contractor shall furnish efficient business administration of the Work, utilizing sufficient senior level management and other qualified personnel to manage the Work; and

2.2.5 Contractor shall apply its best and highest skill and attention to completing the Work in an expeditious and economical manner, consistent with the expressed best interests of the County and within the limitations of the Contract Price and Contract Time.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACT TIME

3.1 CONTRACT TIME

3.1.1 Substantial Completion. Subject to Contract Adjustments permitted by the Contract Documents, Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work not later than [Two Hundred Fifteen] (215) Days after the Date of Commencement.

3.1.2 Final Completion. Subject to Contract Adjustments permitted by the Contract Documents, Contractor shall achieve Final Completion of the Work not later than ~~Fifteen~~ (15) Calendar Days after the actual occurrence of Substantial Completion.

3.1.3 Contract Adjustments. The Contract Time shall be extended or shortened only in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents governing Contract Adjustments to the Contract Time.

3.2 LIQUIDATED DAMAGES TO COUNTY

3.2.1 County's Right. County and Contractor acknowledge that if Contractor fails to Substantially Complete the Work within the Contract Time for Substantial Completion, County will suffer substantial Losses, which would be both extremely difficult and impracticable to ascertain. On that basis they agree, as a reasonable estimate of those Losses and not a penalty, to the assessment and recovery by County of liquidated damages under this Section 3.2.

3.2.2 Per Diem Rate. If Contractor fails to actually achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work within the Contract Time for Substantial Completion, Contractor shall pay to County as liquidated damages the amount of One Thousand Dollars (\$1,000) per Day for each Day occurring after the expiration of the Contract Time for Substantial Completion until Contractor achieves Substantial Completion of the entire Work.

3.2.3 Adjustment for Extensions of Time. Subject to the provisions of Paragraph 8.2.8 of the General Conditions dealing with concurrency of Delays, liquidated damages shall not be charged to Contractor for a period of time for which the Contractor is entitled under the Contract Documents to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time for Substantial Completion.

3.2.4 Partial Completion. The liquidated damages provided for under this Section 3.2 shall not be reduced or apportioned: (1) for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work prior to Substantial Completion of the entirety of the Work; or (2) if portions of the Work are deleted pursuant to (a) the County's right to order Deleted Work; or (b) a termination by County of a portion of the Construction Contract or a deletion of portion of Work for the convenience of the County or due to an Event of Contractor Default.

3.2.5 Remedies. County may deduct any liquidated damages payable under this Section 3.2 from money due or to become due to Contractor under the Contract Documents, or pursue any other legal remedy to collect such liquidated damages from Contractor and/or its Surety.

3.2.6 Not a Limitation. County's rights under this Section 3.2 shall not be interpreted as precluding or limiting: (1) any right or remedy of County arising from an Event of Contractor Default other than a failure to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work within the Contract Time for Substantial Completion; or (2) County's right to order an acceleration, at Contractor's Own Expense, of performance of the Work to overcome Delay, including, without limitation, a Delay for which County has the right to assess liquidated damages under this Section 3.2.

3.3. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES TO CONTRACTOR

3.3.1 Contractor's Right. County and Contractor acknowledge and agree that if Contractor is unable due to Compensable Delay to actually achieve Substantial Completion of the Work within the Contract Time for Substantial Completion, Contractor and its affected Subcontractors will suffer Losses that would be both extremely difficult and impracticable to ascertain. On that basis they agree, as a reasonable estimate of those Losses and not a penalty, to the payment by County to Contractor of liquidated damages under this Section 3.3.

3.3.2 Daily Rate. Subject to the provisions of Paragraph 8.2.8 of the General Conditions dealing with concurrency of Delays, the Contract Price shall be increased by Change Order or Unilateral Change Order in the amount of One Thousand Dollars (\$1,000) per Day as liquidated damages for each Day for which Contractor is entitled under the Contract Documents to a Contract Adjustment extending the Contract Time for Substantial Completion due to Compensable Delay, with no additional amount added thereto or calculated thereon for Allowable Markup or any other markup for overhead or profit to Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier.

3.3.3 Payment by County. A Change Order or Unilateral Change Order setting forth a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price for liquidated damages permitted by this Section 3.3 shall be executed following, and not before, actual Substantial Completion and prior to or contemporaneously with Final Completion. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Contract Documents to the contrary and without limitation to the County's rights of withholding payment to Contractor as permitted elsewhere in the Contract Documents or under Applicable Laws, any amounts due to the Contractor under this Section 3.3 shall be payable as part of, and not prior to the due date for payment of, Final Payment to Contractor.

3.3.4 Deleted Work. A Contract Adjustment shall be made pursuant to Subparagraph 8.2.6.2 of the General Conditions reducing the Contract Price and Contract Time in the event that the Contract Time is shortened due to (1) Deleted Work; or (2) a termination by County of a portion of the Construction Contract for convenience or due to an Event of Contractor Default.

3.3.5 Termination. County shall have no liability to Contractor to pay any liquidated damages under this Section 3.3, nor shall County have any other liability to Contractor or any Subcontractor for any Loss due to Delay (including, without limitation, Compensable Delay) in the event the Construction Contract is wholly terminated (whether such termination is a termination for cause by County or Contractor or a termination for convenience by County) at any time prior to expiration of the Contract Time for Substantial Completion set forth in Paragraph 3.1.1, above.

3.3.6 Exclusive Remedy. Liquidated damages payable by County under this Section 3.3 constitute the Contractor's sole and exclusive right and remedy for recovery from County of Losses to Contractor and its Subcontractors, of every Tier, that are attributable to Compensable Delay, regardless of the cause, duration or timing of the Compensable Delay and no other Contract Adjustment, or other form of compensation or reimbursement, of any kind, shall be made to Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, for any Loss resulting, directly or indirectly, from, or attributable to, any of the following: (1) Unexcused Delay or acceleration to overcome Unexcused Delay; (2) Excusable Delay or any acceleration not authorized by County in writing to overcome Excusable Delay; or (3) concurrency of a Compensable Delay with any different type or class of Unexcused Delay or Excusable Delay, whether such concurrency is a concurrency in cause or in effect.

3.3.7 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

CONTRACTOR WAIVES THE RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY OF COSTS OR DAMAGES BY REASON OF OR RELATED TO ANY DELAY (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMPENSABLE DELAY) THAT IS IN EXCESS OF OR NOT RECOVERED BY CONTRACTOR AS PART OF THE LIQUIDATED DAMAGES PAYABLE TO CONTRACTOR UNDER THIS SECTION 3.3.

ARTICLE 4 CONTRACTOR COMPENSATION

4.1 CONTRACT PRICE

4.1.1 Contract Price. County shall pay the Contractor in current funds for the Contractor's performance of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents the Contract Price, exclusive of Contract Adjustments, of [CONTRACT PRICE (\$)].

4.1.2 Basis. The Contract Price set forth in Paragraph 4.1.1, above, is based on the Bid submitted by Contractor as adjusted for Alternates accepted by County as set forth in Section 4.2, below.

4.1.3 Adjustments. The Contract Price is only subject to adjustment as permitted by the General Conditions for Contract Adjustments due to Compensable Changes, Deleted Work or Compensable Delay.

4.1.4 All-Inclusive Price. The Contract Price as adjusted for Contract Adjustment permitted by the Contract Documents is the total amount payable by County to Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents and is deemed to cover all Losses, foreseeable or unforeseeable, arising out of or related to past, present or future circumstances within or outside the control of the Contractor or its Subcontractors affecting the time or cost of performing the Work, including, without limitation, the effects of natural elements upon the Work, unforeseen difficulties or obstructions affecting the performance of the Work (including, without limitation, unforeseen conditions at the Site that do not constitute Differing Site Conditions) and unforeseen fluctuations in market conditions and price escalations (whether occurring locally, nationally or internationally).

4.2 WORK ORDER

The Contract Price includes the following Work Order, which are described in the Contract Documents and are hereby accepted by County:

Number	Description	Dollar Amount

4.3 UNIT PRICES

Unit prices agreed to by County and Contractor are as follows:

Description	Measurement Unit	Dollar Amount

ARTICLE 5 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

5.1 LIST OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents include, without limitation, the following:

5.1.1 Construction Contract. The Contract Documents include this executed Standard Form of Construction Contract Between County and Contractor.

5.1.2 General Conditions. The Contract Documents include the ☒ General Conditions of the Standard Form of Construction Contract Between County and Contractor (Long Form) or ☐ General Conditions of the Standard Form of Construction Contract Between County and Contractor (Short Form).

5.1.3 Specifications. The Contract Documents include the following Specifications:

Title	Date	Divisions

5.1.4 Drawings. The Contract Documents include the following Drawings:

Sheet Number	Title	Date	Pages
1-4	Mile Hi Plaza, Idyllwild for Parcel 1 of Parcel Map7004 (APN 563-292-003	November 10, 2022	4
E1-E4	IDYLWILD RESTROOM FACILITY		4

5.1.5 Addenda. The Contract Documents include the following Addenda:

Addendum Number	Title	Date	Pages

5.1.6 Reference Documents. The Contract Documents include the Reference Documents:

Title	Author	Date	Pages
Design Guidelines for Idyllwild Downtown Historic District	LSA Associates, Inc	June 6, 2012	51

Geotechnical Report	LandMark Consultants, Inc.	July 2022	33
---------------------	-------------------------------	-----------	----

ARTICLE 6 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

6.1 LABOR CODE SECTION 1861 CERTIFICATION

By signing below, Contractor certifies that he/she/it is aware of the provisions of Section 3700 of the California Labor Code which require every employer to be insured against liability for Worker's Compensation or to undertake self-insurance in accordance with the provisions of the California Labor Code, and that he/she/it will comply with such provisions before commencing the performance of the Work.

CONTRACTORS ARE REQUIRED BY LAW TO BE LICENSED AND REGULATED BY THE CONTRACTORS' STATE LICENSE BOARD WHICH HAS JURISDICTION TO INVESTIGATE COMPLAINTS AGAINST CONTRACTORS IF A COMPLAINT REGARDING A PATENT ACT OR OMISSION IS FILED WITHIN FOUR YEARS OF THE DATE OF THE ALLEGED VIOLATION. A COMPLAINT REGARDING A LATENT ACT OR OMISSION PERTAINING TO STRUCTURAL DEFECTS MUST BE FILED WITHIN 10 YEARS OF THE DATE OF THE ALLEGED VIOLATION. ANY QUESTIONS CONCERNING A CONTRACTOR MAY BE REFERRED TO THE REGISTRAR, CONTRACTORS' STATE LICENSE BOARD, P.O. BOX 26000, SACRAMENTO, CALIFORNIA, 95826.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have made and executed three (3) originals of this Construction Contract, on _____ [to be filled in by Clerk of the Board].

[SIGNATURES ON FOLLOWING PAGE]

“COUNTY”

COUNTY OF RIVERSIDE

By: _____ Dated _____
Chair, Board of Supervisors

ATTEST:

KECIA R. HARPER
Clerk of the Board

By: _____ Dated _____
Deputy

(SEAL)

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

County Counsel

By: _____ Dated _____

Deputy County Counsel

“CONTRACTOR”

(sign on line above)

By: _____
(type name)

Title: _____

The following information must be provided
concerning the Contractor:

State whether Contractor is corporation,
individual, partnership, joint venture or other:

If “other”, enter legal form of business:

Enter address:

Telephone: _____

Facsimile: _____

Email: _____

Employer State

Tax ID #: _____

State Contractor License #: _____

DIR Registration #: _____

SAM.gov Registration #: _____

If Contractor is not an individual or corporation,
list names of 4 representatives who have
authority to contractually bind Contractor:

If Contractor is a corporation, state:

Name of President: _____

Name of Secretary: _____

State of Incorporation: _____

Project No. EOARPA18805

Bond No. _____

PAYMENT BOND

(Public Work - Civil Code Sections 9550 et seq.)

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS:

THAT WHEREAS, the County of Riverside ("County") by action of the Board of Supervisors on _____, 20__, has awarded Construction Contract Number _____ ("Contract") to the undersigned _____ as Principal ("Principal") to perform the work ("Work") for the following project Idyllwild Public Restroom Facility Project;

AND, WHEREAS, said Principal is required by the Contract and/or by Division 3, Part IV, Title XV, Chapter 7 (commencing at Section 9550) of the California Civil Code to furnish a payment bond in connection with the Contract;

NOW THEREFORE, we, the Principal and _____ ("Surety"), an admitted surety insurer pursuant to Code of Civil Procedure, Section 995.120, are held and firmly bound unto County in the penal sum of _____ Dollars (\$_____), this amount being not less than one hundred percent (100%) of the total sum payable by County under the Contract at the time the Contract is awarded by County to the Principal, lawful money of the United States of America, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we, Principal and Surety, bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH that if Principal, its heirs, executors, administrators, successors, or assigns approved by County, or its subcontractors, of any contracting tier, shall fail to pay any person or persons named in California Civil Code, Section 9554, then Surety will pay for the same, in or to an amount not exceeding the penal amount hereinabove set forth.

Surety, for value received, agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract, or to the Work to be performed thereunder, nor any rescission or attempted rescission of the Contract or this bond, nor any conditions precedent or subsequent in the bond or Contract attempting to limit the right of recovery of any claimant otherwise entitled to recover under the Contract or this bond shall in any way impair or affect Surety's obligation under this bond, and Surety does hereby waive notice of any such changes, extensions of time, alterations or additions.

Surety is not released from liability to those for whose benefit this bond has been given, by reason of any breach of the Contract by County or Principal.

Surety's obligations hereunder are independent of the obligations of any other surety for the performance of the Contract, and suit may be brought against Surety and such other sureties, joint and

severally, or against any one or more of them or against less than all of them, without impairing County's rights against the others.

Affix Seal if Corporation

(Firm Name – Principal)

(Business Address)

By _____

(Original Signature)

(Title)

(Corporation Name – Surety)

Affix Corporate Seal

(Business Address)

By _____

(Signature – Attached Notary's Acknowledgment)

ATTORNEY-IN-FACT

(Title-Attach Power of Attorney)

Note: Notary acknowledgment of signatures of Bidder and Surety, and Surety's Power of Attorney, must be included or attached

Project No. EOARPA18805

Bond No. _____

PERFORMANCE BOND

(Public Work – Public Contract Code Section 20129 (b))

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS:

THAT WHEREAS, the County of Riverside ("County") by action of the Board of Supervisors on _____, 20____, has awarded Construction Contract Number _____ ("Contract") to the undersigned _____ as Principal ("Principal") to perform the work ("Work") for the following project: Idyllwild Public Restroom Facility Project), which Contract is by this reference hereby incorporated herein and made a part hereof;

AND, WHEREAS, said Principal is required by the Contract and/or by California Public Contract Code, Section 20129 (b) to furnish a performance bond for the faithful performance of the Contract;

NOW THEREFORE, we, the Principal and _____ ("Surety"), an admitted surety insurer pursuant to Code of Civil Procedure, Section 995.120, are held and firmly bound unto County in the penal sum of _____ Dollars (\$_____), this amount being not less than one hundred percent (100%) of the total sum payable by County under the Contract at the time the Contract is awarded by County to the Principal, lawful money of the United States of America, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we, Principal and Surety, bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH that if Principal, its heirs, executors, administrators, successors or assigns approved by County, shall in all things stand to and abide by and well and truly keep and perform all the undertakings, terms, covenants, conditions and agreements in the Contract, including, without limitation, all obligations during the original term and any extensions thereof as may be granted by County, with or without notice to Surety thereof (including, without limitation, the obligation for Principal to pay liquidated damages), all obligations during the period of any warranties and guarantees required under the Contract and all other obligations otherwise arising under the terms of the Contract (such as, but not limited to, obligations of indemnification), all within the time and in the manner therein designated in all respects according to their true intent and meaning, then this obligation shall become null and void; otherwise, it shall be and remain in full force and effect.

Whenever Principal shall be, and is declared by County to be, in default under the Contract, the Surety shall promptly either remedy the default, or, if the Contract is terminated by County or the Principal's performance of the Work is discontinued, Surety shall promptly complete the Contract through its agents or independent contractors, subject to acceptance of such agents or independent contractors by County as

hereinafter set forth, in accordance with its terms and conditions and to pay and perform all obligations of Principal under the Contract (including, without limitation, all obligations with respect to payment of liquidated damages) less the "Balance of the Contract Price" (as hereinafter defined); subject to the penal amount of this bond as set forth above. The term "Balance of the Contract Price," as used in this paragraph, shall mean the total amount payable to Principal by County under the Contract and any modifications thereto, less the amount previously paid by County to the Principal and less amounts that County is authorized to withhold under the terms of the Contract.

If County determines that completion of the Contract by Surety or its agents or independent contractors must be performed by a lowest responsible bidder selected pursuant to a competitive bidding process, then Surety shall comply with such processes in accordance with the requirements of County and applicable laws. Unless otherwise approved by District, in the exercise of its sole and absolute discretion, Surety shall not utilize Principal in completing performance of the Work.

No right of action shall accrue on this bond to or for the use of any person or entity other than County or its successors or assigns.

Correspondence or claims relating to this bond shall be sent to Surety at the address set forth below.

Surety, for value received, agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract, or to the work to be performed thereunder, shall in any way impair or affect Surety's obligation under this bond, and Surety does hereby waive notice of any such changes, extensions of time, alterations or additions.

Surety's obligations hereunder are independent of the obligations of any other surety for the performance of the Contract, and suit may be brought against Surety and such other sureties, joint and severally, or against any one or more of them or against less than all of them, without impairing County's rights against the others.

Affix Seal if Corporation

(Firm Name – Principal)

(Business Address)

By _____
(Original Signature)

(Title)

(Corporation Name – Surety)

Affix Corporate Seal

(Business Address)

By _____
(Signature – Attached Notary’s Acknowledgment)

ATTORNEY-IN-FACT
(Title-Attach Power of Attorney)

Note: Notary acknowledgment of signatures of Bidder and Surety, and Surety’s Power of Attorney, must be included or attached

CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATE REGARDING WORKERS' COMPENSATION

Labor Code Section 3700 states:

"Every employer except the state shall secure the payment of compensation in one or more of the following ways:

(a) By being insured against liability to pay compensation by one or more insurers duly authorized to write compensation insurance in this state.

(b) By securing from the Director of Industrial Relations a certificate of consent to self-insure either as an individual employer, or as one employer in a group of employers, which may be given upon furnishing proof satisfactory to the Director of Industrial Relations of ability to self-insure and to pay any compensation that may become due to his or her employee.

(c) For any county, city, city and county, municipal corporation, public district, public agency, or any political subdivision of the state, including each member of a pooling arrangement under a joint exercise of powers agreement (but not the state itself), by securing from the Director of Industrial Relations a certificate of consent to self-insure against workers' compensation claims, which certificate may be given upon furnishing proof satisfactory to the director of ability to administer workers' compensation claims properly, and to pay workers' compensation claims that may become due to its employees. On or before March 31, 1979, a political subdivision of the state which, on December 31, 1978, was uninsured for its liability to pay compensation, shall file a properly completed and executed application for a certificate of consent to self-insure against workers' compensation claims. The certificate shall be issued and be subject to the provisions of Section 3702.

For purposes of this section, 'state' shall include the superior courts of California."

I am aware of the provisions of Section 3700 of the California Labor Code which require every employer to be insured against liability for workers' compensation or to undertake self-insurance in accordance with the provisions of that code, and I will comply with such provisions before commencing the performance of the work of this contract.

(Name of Contractor)

By:

(Name of Signer)

(Signature)

(In accordance with Article 5 (commencing at Section 1860), Chapter 1, Part 7, Division 2 of the Labor Code, the above certificate must be signed and filed with the awarding body prior to performing any work under this contract.)

DECLARATION OF SUFFICIENCY OF FUNDS

(California Labor Code Section 2810)

I, the undersigned, an authorized representative of _____ ("Bidder") with authority to make the statements contained in this Declaration on behalf of Bidder, hereby declare the following:

1. The Bidder's employer identification number for state tax purposes is _____.
2. The Bidder's workers' compensation insurance policy number is _____ and the name, address, and telephone number of the insurance carrier providing said insurance is: _____.

3. The following information is provided concerning any and all vehicles that are owned by the Bidder and that will be used for transportation in connection with any service provided for the performance of the Work that is the subject of the Bidder's Bid [Insert information requested. Attach additional sheets, if needed.]:

Vehicle	Vehicle ID #	Vehicle. Liability Insurance Policy Number (of policy covering vehicle)	Name, Address and Telephone Number of Vehicle Liability Insurance Carrier (issuing policy covering vehicle)

4. The following is the address of any real property that will be used to house workers in connection with the performance of the Work that is the subject of the Bidder's Bid [If no such housing will be provided, enter "none"]:

5. The actual or estimated number of workers that will be employed to perform the Work that is the subject of the Bidder's Bid, the total amount of wages to be paid to said workers, and the dates on which said wages will be paid are as follows [Attach additional sheets, if needed.]:

<i>Total Number of Workers</i>	<i>Total Amount of Wages</i>	<i>Date(s) for Payment of Wages</i>

6. Check only one of the following boxes, as applicable:

☐ The statement of number of workers declared in Paragraph 5, above, is a statement of the actual number of workers that will be employed.

☐ The actual number of workers requested in Paragraph 5, above, is unknown and therefore the statement of number of workers declared therein is based on the Bidder's best estimate available at the time of submitting its Bid, rather than the actual number of workers that will be employed and if and when the actual number of workers and the other information requested above is available, it will be reported to the County of Riverside by Bidder in writing.

7. The actual or estimated total number of persons who will be utilized as independent contractors to perform the Work of the Project that is the subject of the Bidder's Bid (together with their known, current local, state, and federal contractor license identification numbers that each is required to have under local, state or federal laws or regulations) are as follows [Attach additional sheets, if needed.]:

<i>List of Independent Contractors</i>	<i>Current, local, state and federal contractor license identification number</i>

8. Check only one of the following boxes, as applicable:

☐ The statement of number of independent contractors declared in Paragraph 7, above, is a statement of the actual number of independent contractors that will be utilized.

☐ The actual number of independent contractors requested in Paragraph 7, above, is unknown and therefore the statement of number of independent contractors declared therein is based on the Bidder's best estimate available at the time of submitting its Bid, rather than the actual number of independent contractors that will be utilized, and if and when the actual number of independent contractors

and the other information requested above is available, it will be reported to the County of Riverside by Bidder in writing.

I, the undersigned, declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing statements are within my personal knowledge and are true and correct. Executed on this _____ day of _____, in the year 20__ at _____, California.

(signature)

Type Name of Signer:

Type Name of Bidder:

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

ONLY ONE (1) REQUEST FOR SUBSTITUTION FOR EACH PRODUCT WILL BE CONSIDERED.
USE A SEPARATE SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM FOR EACH PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION.

TO: COUNTY OF RIVERSIDE
PROJECT: IDYLLWILD PUBLIC RESTROOM FACILITY PROJECT
PROJECT NO.: EOARPA18805

Bidder requests Substitution of the following material, product, thing or service:

Specification Section	Article No.
<hr/>	<hr/>
Specified Item	Address
<hr/>	<hr/>
Manufacturer's Name	Model or Catalog Number
<hr/>	<hr/>
Trade Name of Product	Specified Fabricators and Suppliers
<hr/>	<hr/>

For each proposed Substitution, list below where in the Specifications the item to be replaced is currently specified, the item specified in the Specifications and that is proposed to be replaced by the Substitution and a brief description of the proposed Substitution:

Specification Reference	Specified Item	Proposed Substitution

Respond to each of the following questions, attaching additional sheets if required:

In the case of a manufactured material, product or thing,
does the manufacturer certify that the proposed
Substitution is appropriate for use as an "equal" to
the material, product, or thing specified?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

If so, attach such certification.

Are maintenance services available?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

If so, describe scope and terms, including any limitations on maintenance services: _____

Are replacements materials, products or things, and all parts thereof, available?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

Contractor agrees to provide specified item in the event this Substitution Request is denied?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

Does the Substitution affect dimensions shown On Drawings?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

If so, clearly describe changes: _____

Will you pay for changes to the building design, including architectural, engineering and detailing costs caused by the acceptance of the requested Substitution?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

Would the Substitution, if used, affect any other trades?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

If so, describe each affect: _____

Would the Substitution, if used, affect your ability to meet The time periods for construction required by the Bidding Documents?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

If so, describe each affect: _____

Are there any differences between Substitution and specified item?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

If so, describe each difference: _____

Are the manufacturer's guarantees and warranties of the Substitution and the specified item the same?

☐ **Yes**

☐ **No**

If so, describe each difference or attach copy of all written guarantees and warranties provided for the Substitution : _____

Attach complete product data, including but not limited to laboratory tests, approval numbers, research report numbers, listings, and approved assembly descriptions as specified in Section _____ of the Specifications or as required by Governmental Authorities under Applicable Laws.

Contractor

County

By

Reviewed by:

Date

Date

Remarks

Design Consultant

Reviewed by:

SPACE RESERVED FOR COUNTY USE ONLY:

Decision on Substitution Request:

☐ **Grant**

☐ **Deny**

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

Should funding be allocated through American Rescue Plan Act (ARPA; (Title VI of the Social Security Act Section 602 et seq.), the COUNTY will administer and distribute those funds in accordance with ARPA. ARPA requires that payments from the Coronavirus Fiscal Recovery Fund be used to respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts, to respond to workers performing essential work during the COVID-19 public health emergency by providing premium pay, provide government services to the extent the reduction of revenue due to COVID-19 public health emergency, and to make necessary investments in water, sewer or broadband infrastructure. It is effective beginning May 17, 2021 and ends on December 31, 2026.

Subrecipient acknowledges and agrees that this Agreement including Attachment A – U.S. Treasury ARPA Fiscal Recovery Funds Final Rule, and Attachment B- Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, Federal Provisions and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards – 2 CFR Part 200 et seq, and is subject to the federal requirements, including the federal provisions provided below:

1. **NON-DISCRIMINATION.** Subrecipient shall not be discriminate in the provision of services, allocation of benefits, accommodation in facilities, or employment of personnel on the basis of ethnic group identification, race, religious creed, color, national origin, ancestry, physical handicap, medical condition, marital status or sex in the performance of this Agreement; and, to the extent they shall be found to be applicable hereto, shall comply with the provisions of the California Fair Employment and Housing Act (Gov. Code 12900 et. seq), the Federal Civil Rights Act of 1964 (P.L. 88-352), the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. S1210 et seq.) and all other applicable laws or regulations.

2. **EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY/ FAIR EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES/ FEDERAL PROVISIONS.** During the performance of this Agreement, the Subrecipient shall not deny benefits to any person on the basis of religion, color, ethnic group identification, sex, age, physical or mental disability, nor shall they discriminate unlawfully against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, color, national origin, ancestry, physical handicap, mental disability, medical condition, marital status, age, or sex. Subrecipient shall ensure that the evaluation and treatment of employees and applicants for employment are free of such discrimination.

A. Subrecipient shall comply with the provisions of the Fair Employment and Housing Act (Government Code, Section 12900 et seq.), the regulations promulgated thereunder (California Code of Regulations, Title 2, Section 11000 et seq.), the provisions of Executive Order 11246 of Sept. 23, 1965 and of the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor, the provisions of Article 9.5, Chapter 1, Part 1, Division 3, Title 2 of the Government Code (Government Code, Sections 11135-11139.8), and of the rules, regulations or standards adopted by the County to implement such article.

B. The Subrecipient shall comply with the provisions of the Copeland “Anti-Kickback” Act, 18 U.S.C. § 874, 40 U.S.C. § 3145, and the requirements of 29 C.F.R. pt. 3 as may be applicable, which are incorporated by reference into this Agreement.

3. **CLEAN AIR ACT.** The Subrecipient agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders, or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 U.S.C. Section 7401 et seq. The Subrecipient agrees to report each violation to the County and understands and agrees that the County will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to the California Governor's Office of Emergency Services, Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), and the appropriate Environmental Protection Agency Regional Office. The

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

Subrecipient agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding \$150,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FEMA.

4. FEDERAL WATER POLLUTION CONTROL ACT

The Subrecipient agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders, or regulations issued pursuant to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended, 33 U.S.C. Sections 1251 et seq.

The Subrecipient agrees to report each violation to the County and understands and agrees that the County will, in turn, report each violation as required to assure notification to the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), and the appropriate Environmental Protection Agency Regional Office.

The Subrecipient agrees to include these requirements in each subcontract exceeding \$150,000 financed in whole or in part with Federal assistance provided by FEMA.

5. DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION CLAUSE

This Agreement is a covered transaction for purposes of 2 C.F.R. pt. 180 and 2 C.F.R. pt. 3000. As such the Subrecipient is required to verify that none of the Subrecipient, its principals (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.995), or its affiliates (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.905) are excluded (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.940) or disqualified (defined at 2 C.F.R. § 180.935).

The Subrecipient must comply with 2 C.F.R. pt. 180, subpart C and 2 C.F.R. pt. 3000, subpart C and must include a requirement to comply with these regulations in any lower tier covered transaction it enters into.

This certification is a material representation of fact relied upon by the County. If it is later determined that the Subrecipient did not comply with 2 C.F.R. pt. 180, subpart C and 2 C.F.R. pt. 3000, subpart C, in addition to remedies available to the County, the Federal Government may pursue available remedies, including but not limited to suspension and/or debarment.

The bidder or proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of 2 C.F.R. pt. 180, subpart C and 2 C.F.R. pt. 3000, subpart C while this offer is valid and throughout the period of any contract that may arise from this offer. The bidder or proposer further agrees to include a provision requiring such compliance in its lower tier covered transactions.

6. BYRD ANTI- LOBBYING AMENDMENT, 31 U.S.C. § 1352 (AS AMENDED)

Subrecipients who apply or bid for an award of \$100,000 or more shall file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant, or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. § 1352. Each tier shall also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award. Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the recipient who in turn will forward the certification(s) to the County.

APPENDIX A, 44 C.F.R. PART 18- CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

The undersigned [Subrecipient] certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge, that:

A. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

B. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.

C. The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all sub-awards at all tiers (including subcontracts, sub-grants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all sub-recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31, U.S.C. § 1352 (as amended by the Lobbying Disclosure Act of 1995). Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

The Subrecipient certifies or affirms the truthfulness and accuracy of each statement of its certification and disclosure, if any. In addition, the Subrecipient understands and agrees that the provisions of 31 U.S.C. § 3801 et seq., apply to this certification and disclosure, if any.

SUBRECIPIENT

By _____
Date _____

7. PROCUREMENT OF RECOVERED MATERIALS

In the performance of this Agreement, the Subrecipient shall make maximum use of products containing recovered materials that are EPA-designated items unless the product cannot be acquired

- A. Competitively within a timeframe providing for compliance with the contract performance schedule;
- B. Meeting contract performance requirements; or
- C. At a reasonable price.

Information about this requirement, along with the list of EPA-designated items, is available at EPA's Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines web site, <https://www.epa.gov/smm/comprehensive-procurement-guideline-cpg-program>

The Subrecipient also agrees to comply with all other applicable requirements of Section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act.

8. ACCESS TO RECORDS

The following access to records requirements apply to this Agreement:

- A. The Subrecipient agrees to provide the County, the FEMA Administrator, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers, and records of the Subrecipient which are directly pertinent to this Agreement for the purposes of making audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcriptions.
- B. The Subrecipient agrees to permit any of the foregoing parties to reproduce by any means whatsoever or to copy excerpts and transcriptions as reasonably needed.

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

- C. The Subrecipient agrees to provide the FEMA Administrator or his or her authorized representatives access to construction or other work sites pertaining to the work being completed under the contract.
- D. In compliance with the Disaster Recovery Act of 2018, the County and the Subrecipient acknowledge and agree that no language in this contract is intended to prohibit audits or internal reviews by the FEMA Administrator or the Comptroller General of the United States.

9. DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY SEAL, LOGO, FLAGS

The Subrecipient shall not use the DHS seal(s), logos, crests, or reproductions of flags or likenesses of DHS agency officials without specific FEMA pre-approval.

10. COMPLIANCE WITH FEDERAL LAW, REGULATIONS, AND EXECUTIVE ORDERS

This is an acknowledgement that FEMA financial assistance will be used to fund all or a portion of the contract. The Subrecipient will comply with all applicable Federal law, regulations, executive orders, FEMA policies, procedures, and directives.

11. NO OBLIGATION BY FEDERAL GOVERNMENT

The Federal Government is not a party to this Agreement and is not subject to any obligations or liabilities to the non-Federal entity, contractor, or any other party pertaining to any matter resulting from the contract.

12. PROGRAM FRAUD AND FALSE OR FRAUDULENT STATEMENTS OR RELATED ACTS

The Subrecipient acknowledges that 31 U.S.C. Chapter 38 (Administrative Remedies for False Claims and Statements) applies to the Subrecipient's actions pertaining to this Agreement.

13. FEDERAL PREVAILING WAGE

DAVIS-BACON ACT COMPLIANCE (applicable to construction contracts in excess of \$2,000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

To the extent required by any Federal grant programs applicable to expected funding or reimbursement expenses incurred in connection with the services provided under this Agreement, Subrecipient agrees to comply with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. §§ 3141-3144 and 3146-3148) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5) as set forth below.

A. The Subrecipient shall be bound to the provisions of the Davis-Bacon Act, and agrees to be bound by all the provisions of Labor Code section 1771 regarding prevailing wages. All labor on this project shall be paid neither less than the greater of the minimum wage rates established by the U.S. Secretary of Labor (Federal Wage Rates), or by the State of California Director of Department of Industrial Relations (State Wage Rates). Current DIR requirements may be found at <http://www.dir.ca.gov/lcp.asp>. Additionally, wages are required to be paid not less than once a week.

B. The general prevailing wage rates may be accessed at the Department of Labor Home Page at www.wdol.gov. Under the Davis Bacon heading, click on "Selecting DBA WDs." In the drop down menu for State, select, "California." In the drop down menu for County, select "Riverside." In the drop down menu for Construction Type, make the appropriate selection. Then, click Search.

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

The Federal minimum wage rates for this project are predetermined by the United States Secretary of Labor. If there is a difference between the minimum wage rates predetermined by the Secretary of Labor and the general prevailing wage rates determined by the Director of the California DIR for similar classifications of labor, the Subrecipient and subcontractors shall pay not less than the higher wage rate. The County will not accept lower State wage rates not specifically included in the Federal minimum wage determinations. This includes “helper” (or other classifications based on hours of experience) or any other classification not appearing in the Federal wage determinations. Where Federal wage determinations do not contain the State wage rate determination otherwise available for use by the Subrecipient and subcontractors, the Subrecipient and subcontractors shall pay not less than the Federal minimum wage rate which most closely approximates the duties of the employees in question.

14. **CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS** (applicable to all contracts in excess of \$100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers, but not to purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence)

A. **Compliance:** Subrecipient agrees that it shall comply with Sections 3702 and 3704 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. §§ 3701–3708) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5), which are incorporated herein.

B. **Overtime:** No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the work under this Agreement which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

C. **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages:** In the event of any violation of the provisions of paragraph B of this section, the Subrecipient and any subcontractor responsible therefore shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such Subrecipient and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic employed in violation of the provisions of paragraph B, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by paragraph B.

D. **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages:** Subrecipient shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set for in paragraph C of this section.

E. **Subcontracts:** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs A through D of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs A through D of this section.

15. **RIGHTS TO INVENTIONS MADE UNDER A CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT—** Contracts or agreements for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work shall provide for the rights of the Federal Government and the recipient in any resulting invention in accordance with 37 CFR part 401, “Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements,” and any implementing regulations issued by HUD.

16. RIGHTS TO DATA AND COPYRIGHTS – Subrecipients and consultants agree to comply with all applicable provisions pertaining to the use of data and copyrights pursuant to 48 CFR Part 27.4, Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR).

17. PROHIBITION ON CONTRACTING FOR COVERED TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT OR SERVICES

A. Definitions. As used in this clause, the terms backhaul; covered foreign country; covered telecommunications equipment or services; interconnection arrangements; roaming; substantial or essential component; and telecommunications equipment or services have the meaning as defined in FEMA Policy, #405-143-1 Prohibitions on Expending FEMA Award Funds for Covered Telecommunications Equipment or Services As used in this clause—

B. Prohibitions.

(1) Section 889(b) of the John S. McCain National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2019, Pub. L. No. 115-232, and 2 C.F.R. § 200.216 prohibit the head of an executive agency on or after Aug.13, 2020, from obligating or expending grant, cooperative agreement, loan, or loan guarantee funds on certain telecommunications products or from certain entities for national security reasons.

(2) Unless an exception in paragraph (c) of this clause applies, the contractor and its subcontractors may not use grant, cooperative agreement, loan, or loan guarantee funds from the Federal Emergency Management Agency to:

(i) Procure or obtain any equipment, system, or service that uses covered telecommunications equipment or services as a substantial or essential component of any system, or as critical technology of any system;

(ii) Enter into, extend, or renew a contract to procure or obtain any equipment, system, or service that uses covered telecommunications equipment or services as a substantial or essential component of any system, or as critical technology of any system;

(iii) Enter into, extend, or renew contracts with entities that use covered telecommunications equipment or services as a substantial or essential component of any system, or as critical technology as part of any system; or (iv) Provide, as part of its performance of this contract, subcontract, or other contractual instrument, any equipment, system, or service that uses covered telecommunications equipment or services as a substantial or essential component of any system, or as critical technology as part of any system.

C. Exceptions.

(1) This clause does not prohibit contractors from providing—

a. A service that connects to the facilities of a third-party, such as backhaul, roaming, or interconnection arrangements; or

b. Telecommunications equipment that cannot route or redirect user data traffic or permit visibility into any user data or packets that such equipment transmits or otherwise handles.

(2) By necessary implication and regulation, the prohibitions also do not apply to:

a. Covered telecommunications equipment or services that:

i. Are not used as a substantial or essential component of any system; and

ii. Are not used as critical technology of any system.

b. Other telecommunications equipment or services that are not considered covered telecommunications equipment or services.

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

D. Reporting requirement.

(1) In the event the contractor identifies covered telecommunications equipment or services used as a substantial or essential component of any system, or as critical technology as part of any system, during contract performance, or the contractor is notified of such by a subcontractor at any tier or by any other source, the contractor shall report the information in paragraph (d)(2) of this clause to the recipient or subrecipient, unless elsewhere in this contract are established procedures for reporting the information.

(2) The Subrecipient shall report the following information pursuant to paragraph (d)(1) of this clause:

(i) Within one business day from the date of such identification or notification: The contract number; the order number(s), if applicable; supplier name; supplier unique entity identifier (if known); supplier Commercial and Government Entity (CAGE) code (if known); brand; model number (original equipment manufacturer number, manufacturer part number, or wholesaler number); item description; and any readily available information about mitigation actions undertaken or recommended.

ii) Within 10 business days of submitting the information in paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this clause: Any further available information about mitigation actions undertaken or recommended. In addition, the contractor shall describe the efforts it undertook to prevent use or submission of covered telecommunications equipment or services, and any additional efforts that will be incorporated to prevent future use or submission of covered telecommunications equipment or services. Page 10

E. Subcontracts. The Subrecipient shall insert the substance of this clause, including this paragraph (e), in all subcontracts and other contractual instruments.

18. REPORTING OF MATTERS RELATED TO RECIPIENT INTEGRITY AND PERFORMANCE

A. General Reporting Requirement

If the total value of your currently active grants, cooperative agreements, and procurement contracts from all Federal awarding agencies exceeds \$10,000,000 for any period of time during the period of performance of this Federal award, then you as the recipient during that period of time must maintain the currency of information reported to the System for Award Management (SAM) that is made available in the designated integrity and performance system (currently the Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System (FAPIIS)) about civil, criminal, or administrative proceedings described in paragraph 2 of this award term and condition. This is a statutory requirement under section 872 of [Public Law 110-417](#), as amended ([41 U.S.C. 2313](#)). As required by section 3010 of [Public Law 111-212](#), all information posted in the designated integrity and performance system on or after April 15, 2011, except past performance reviews required for Federal procurement contracts, will be publicly available.

B. Proceedings About Which You Must Report

Submit the information required about each proceeding that:

a. Is in connection with the award or performance of a grant, cooperative agreement, or procurement contract from the Federal Government;

b. Reached its final disposition during the most recent five-year period; and

c. Is one of the following:

(1) A criminal proceeding that resulted in a conviction, as defined in paragraph 5 of this award term and condition;

(2) A civil proceeding that resulted in a finding of fault and liability and payment of a monetary fine, penalty, reimbursement, restitution, or damages of \$5,000 or more;

(3) An administrative proceeding, as defined in paragraph 5. of this award term and condition, that resulted in a finding of fault and liability and your payment of either a monetary

SPECIAL FEDERAL PROVISIONS

fine or penalty of \$5,000 or more or reimbursement, restitution, or damages in excess of \$100,000; or

(4) Any other criminal, civil, or administrative proceeding if:

(i) It could have led to an outcome described in paragraph 2.c.(1), (2), or (3) of this award term and condition;

(ii) It had a different disposition arrived at by consent or compromise with an acknowledgment of fault on your part; and

(iii) The requirement in this award term and condition to disclose information about the proceeding does not conflict with applicable laws and regulations.

C. Reporting Procedures

Enter in the SAM Entity Management area the information that SAM requires about each proceeding described in paragraph 2 of this award term and condition. You do not need to submit the information a second time under assistance awards that you received if you already provided the information through SAM because you were required to do so under Federal procurement contracts that you were awarded.

D. Reporting Frequency

During any period of time when you are subject to the requirement in paragraph 1 of this award term and condition, you must report proceedings information through SAM for the most recent five year period, either to report new information about any proceeding(s) that you have not reported previously or affirm that there is no new information to report. Recipients that have Federal contract, grant, and cooperative agreement awards with a cumulative total value greater than \$10,000,000 must disclose semiannually any information about the criminal, civil, and administrative proceedings.

E. Definitions

For purposes of this award term and condition:

a. Administrative proceeding means a non-judicial process that is adjudicatory in nature in order to make a determination of fault or liability (e.g., Securities and Exchange Commission Administrative proceedings, Civilian Board of Contract Appeals proceedings, and Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals proceedings). This includes proceedings at the Federal and State level but only in connection with performance of a Federal contract or grant. It does not include audits, site visits, corrective plans, or inspection of deliverables.

b. Conviction, for purposes of this award term and condition, means a judgment or conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon a verdict or a plea, and includes a conviction entered upon a plea of nolo contendere.

c. Total value of currently active grants, cooperative agreements, and procurement contracts includes -

(1) Only the Federal share of the funding under any Federal award with a recipient cost share or match; and

(2) The value of all expected funding increments under a Federal award and options, even if not yet exercised.

DEPARTMENT OF THE TREASURY

31 CFR Part 35

RIN 1505-AC77

Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds

AGENCY: Department of the Treasury.

ACTION: Final rule.

SUMMARY: The Secretary of the Treasury (Treasury) is adopting as final the interim final rule published on May 17, 2021, with amendments. This rule implements the Coronavirus State Fiscal Recovery Fund and the Coronavirus Local Fiscal Recovery Fund established under the American Rescue Plan Act.

DATES: The provisions in this final rule are effective April 1, 2022.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Katharine Richards, Director, Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Office of Recovery Programs, Department of the Treasury, (844) 529-9527.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

I. Introduction

Overview

Since the first case of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) was discovered in the United States in January 2020, the pandemic has caused severe, intertwined public health and economic crises. In March 2021, as these crises continued, the American Rescue Plan Act of 2021 (ARPA)¹ established the Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds (SLFRF) to provide state, local, and Tribal governments² with the resources needed to respond to the pandemic and its economic effects and to build a stronger, more equitable economy during the recovery. The U.S. Department of the Treasury (Treasury) issued an interim final rule implementing the SLFRF program on May 10, 2021³ and has since disbursed over \$240 billion to state, local, and Tribal governments and received over 1,500 public comments on the interim final rule. Treasury is now issuing this final rule which responds to public comments, implements the ARPA statutory provisions on eligible and ineligible uses of SLFRF funds, and

makes several changes to the provisions of the interim final rule, summarized below in the section Executive Summary of Major Changes.

Since Treasury issued the interim final rule in May 2021, both the public health and economic situations facing the country have evolved. On the public health front, the United States has made tremendous progress in the fight against COVID-19, including a historic vaccination campaign that has reached over 80 percent of adults with at least one dose and is reaching millions of children as well.⁴ However, the disease continues to present an imminent threat to public health, especially among unvaccinated individuals. As the Delta variant spread across the country this summer and fall, the United States faced another severe wave of cases, deaths, and strain on the healthcare system, with the risk of hospitalization and mortality exponentially greater to unvaccinated Americans. COVID-19 has now infected over 50 million and killed over 800,000 Americans since January 2020; tens of thousands of Americans continue to be infected each day.⁵ Even as the nation recovers, new and emerging COVID-19 variants may continue to pose threats to both public health and the economy. Moving forward, state, local, and Tribal governments will continue to play a major role in responding through vaccination campaigns, testing, and other services.

The economic recovery similarly has made tremendous progress but faces continued risks from the disease and the disruptions it has caused. In the early months of the pandemic, the United States experienced the sharpest economic downturn on record, with unemployment spiking to 14.8 percent in April 2020.⁶ The economy has gradually added back jobs, with growth accelerating in the first half of 2021.⁷ However, as the Delta variant spread, the intensified health risks and renewed disruptions slowed growth, demonstrating the continued risks from the virus. By fall 2021, the economy had

exceeded its pre-pandemic size⁸ and unemployment had fallen below 5 percent,⁹ but despite this progress, too many Americans remain unemployed, out of the labor force, or unable to pay their bills, with this pain particularly acute among lower-income Americans and communities of color. Again, moving forward, state, local, and Tribal governments will remain on the frontlines of the economic response and rebuilding a stronger economy in the aftermath of the pandemic.

However, as state, local, and Tribal governments continue to face substantial needs to respond to public health and economic conditions, they have also experienced severe impacts from the pandemic and resulting recession. State, local, and Tribal governments cut over 1.5 million jobs in the early months of the pandemic amid sharp declines in revenue and remain over 950,000 jobs below their pre-pandemic levels.¹⁰ As the Great Recession demonstrated, austerity among state, local, and Tribal governments can hamper overall economic growth and severely curtail the ability of governments to serve their constituents.

Recognizing these imperatives, the SLFRF program provides vital resources for state, local, and Tribal governments to respond to the pandemic and its economic effects and to replace revenue lost due to the public health emergency, preventing cuts to government services. Specifically, the ARPA provides that SLFRF funds¹¹ may be used:

(a) To respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts, including assistance to households, small businesses, and nonprofits, or aid to impacted industries such as tourism, travel, and hospitality;

(b) To respond to workers performing essential work during the COVID-19

⁸ U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis, Real Gross Domestic Product [GDPC1], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/GDPC1> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁹ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *supra* note 6.

¹⁰ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, All Employees, State Government [CES9092000001] and All Employees, Local Government [CES9093000001], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/CES9092000001> and <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/CES9093000001> (last visited December 7, 2021).

¹¹ The ARPA adds section 602 of the Social Security Act, which creates the State Fiscal Recovery Fund, and section 603 of the Social Security Act, which creates the Local Fiscal Recovery Fund (together, SLFRF). Sections 602 and 603 contain substantially similar eligible uses; the primary difference between the two sections is that section 602 establishes a fund for states, territories, and Tribal governments and section 603 establishes a fund for metropolitan cities, nonentitlement units of local government, and counties.

¹ Public Law 117-2. <https://www.congress.gov/117/plaws/publ2/PLAW-117-publ2.pdf>.

² Throughout this Supplementary Information, Treasury uses “state, local, and Tribal governments” or “recipients” to refer generally to governments receiving SLFRF funds; this includes states, territories, Tribal governments, counties, metropolitan cities, and nonentitlement units of local government.

³ 86 FR 26786 (May 17, 2021).

⁴ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker: COVID-19 Vaccinations in the United States, <https://covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#vaccinations> (last visited December 31, 2021).

⁵ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker, <http://www.covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#data-tracker-home> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁶ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Unemployment Rate [UNRATE], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/UNRATE> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁷ *Id.*

public health emergency by providing premium pay to eligible workers;

(c) For the provision of government services to the extent of the reduction in revenue due to the COVID-19 public health emergency relative to revenues collected in the most recent full fiscal year prior to the emergency; and

(d) To make necessary investments in water, sewer, or broadband infrastructure.

In addition, Congress specified two types of ineligible uses of funds: funds may not be used for deposit into any pension fund or, for states and territories only, to directly or indirectly offset a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation.

Issued May 10, 2021, Treasury's interim final rule provided further detail on eligible uses of funds within the four statutory categories, ineligible uses of funds, and administration of the program. The interim final rule provided state, local, and Tribal governments substantial flexibility to determine how best to use payments from the SLFRF program to meet the needs of their communities. The interim final rule aimed to facilitate swift and effective implementation by establishing a framework for determining the types of programs and services that are eligible under the ARPA along with examples of eligible uses of funds that state, local, and Tribal governments may consider.

State, local, and Tribal governments are already deploying SLFRF funds to make an impact in their communities. The SLFRF program ensures that state, local, and Tribal governments have the resources needed to fight the pandemic, sustain and strengthen the economic recovery, maintain vital public services, and make investments that support long-term growth, opportunity, and equity. Treasury looks forward to supporting and engaging with state, local, and Tribal governments as they use these funds to make transformative investments in their communities. Finally, with so many pressing and effective ways to use SLFRF funds, there is no excuse for waste, fraud, or abuse of these funds.

Treasury received over 1,500 comments spanning nearly all aspects of the interim final rule. The final rule considers and responds to comments, provides clarification to many aspects of the interim final rule, and makes several changes to eligible uses under the program, summarized immediately below.

Executive Summary of Major Changes and Clarifications

The final rule provides broader flexibility and greater simplicity in the program, in response to public comments. Among other clarifications and changes, the final rule provides for the following:

- **Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts:** In addition to programs and services, the final rule clarifies that recipients may use funds for capital expenditures that support an eligible COVID-19 public health or economic response. For example, recipients may build certain affordable housing, childcare facilities, schools, hospitals, and other projects consistent with the requirements in this final rule and the Supplementary Information.

In addition, the final rule presumes that an expanded set of households and communities are “impacted” or “disproportionately impacted” by the pandemic, thereby allowing recipients to provide responses to a broad set of households and entities without requiring additional analysis. Further, the final rule provides a broader set of enumerated eligible uses available for these communities as part of COVID-19 public health and economic response, including making affordable housing, childcare, and early learning services eligible in all impacted communities and making certain community development and neighborhood revitalization activities eligible for disproportionately impacted communities.

Further, the final rule allows for a broader set of uses to restore and support government employment, including hiring above a recipient's pre-pandemic baseline, providing funds to employees that experienced pay cuts or furloughs, avoiding layoffs, and providing retention incentives.

- **Premium Pay:** The final rule offers more streamlined options to provide premium pay, by broadening the share of essential workers who can receive premium pay without a written justification while maintaining a focus on lower-income and frontline essential workers.

- **Revenue Loss:** The final rule offers a standard allowance for revenue loss of up to \$10 million, not to exceed a recipient's SLFRF award amount, allowing recipients to select between a standard amount of revenue loss or complete a full revenue loss calculation. Recipients that select the standard allowance may use that amount for government services.

- **Water, Sewer, and Broadband Infrastructure:** The final rule

significantly broadens eligible broadband infrastructure investments to address challenges with broadband access, affordability, and reliability, and adds additional eligible water and sewer infrastructure investments, including a broad range of lead remediation and stormwater management projects.

Structure of the Supplementary Information

In addition to this Introduction, this Supplementary Information is organized into four sections: (1) Eligible Uses, (2) Restrictions on Use, (3) Program Administration Provisions, and (4) Regulatory Analyses.

The Eligible Uses section describes the standards to determine eligible uses of funds in each of the four eligible use categories:

(1) Responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic (which includes several sub-categories)

(2) Providing premium pay to essential workers

(3) Providing government services to the extent of revenue loss due to the pandemic, and

(4) Making necessary investments in water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure.

Each eligible use category has separate and distinct standards for assessing whether a use of funds is eligible. Standards, restrictions, or other provisions in one eligible use category do not apply to the others. Therefore, recipients should first determine which eligible use category a potential use of funds fits within, then assess whether the potential use of funds meets the eligibility standard or criteria for that category. In the case of uses to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic, recipients should also determine which sub-category the eligible use fits within (*i.e.*, public health, assistance to households, assistance to small businesses, assistance to nonprofits, aid to impacted industries, or public sector capacity and workforce), then assess whether the potential use of funds meets the eligibility standard for that sub-category. Treasury does not pre-approve uses of funds; recipients are advised to review the final rule and may pursue eligible projects under it.

In some sections of the rule, Treasury identifies specific uses of funds that are eligible, called “enumerated eligible uses”; for example, Treasury provides many enumerated eligible uses of funds to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. Uses of funds that are not specifically named as eligible in this

final rule may still be eligible in two ways. First, under the revenue loss eligible use category, recipients have broad latitude to use funds for government services up to their amount of revenue loss due to the pandemic. A potential use of funds that does not fit within the other three eligible use categories may be permissible as a government service, which recipients can fund up to their amount of revenue loss. For example, transportation infrastructure projects are generally ineligible as a response to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic; however, a recipient could fund these projects as a government service up to its amount of revenue loss, provided that other restrictions on use do not apply. See sections Revenue Loss and Restrictions on Use for further information. Second, the eligible use category for responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic provides a non-exhaustive list of enumerated eligible uses, which means that the listed eligible uses include some, but not all, of the uses of funds that could be eligible. The Eligible Uses section provides a standard for determining if other uses of funds, beyond those specifically enumerated, are eligible. If a recipient would like to pursue a use of funds that is not specifically enumerated, the recipient should use the standard and other guidance provided in the section Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts to assess whether the use of funds is eligible.

Next, the Restrictions on Use section describes limitations on how funds may be used. Treasury has divided the Restriction on Use section into (A) statutory restrictions under the ARPA, which include (1) offsetting a reduction in net tax revenue, and (2) deposits into pension funds, and (B) other restrictions on use, which include (1) debt service and replenishing reserves, (2) settlements and judgments, and (3) general restrictions. These restrictions apply to all eligible use categories; however, some restrictions apply only to certain types of recipient governments, and recipients are advised to review the final rule to determine which restrictions apply to their type of government (e.g., state, territory, Tribal government, county, metropolitan city, or nonentitlement unit of government). To reiterate, for recipient governments covered by a specific restriction, that restriction applies to all eligible use categories and any use of funds under the SLFRF program. Specifically:

- For states and territories only, funds may not be used to offset directly or

indirectly a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from a change in state or territory law.

- For all recipients except Tribal governments, funds may not be used for deposits into a pension fund.
- For all recipients, funds may not be used for debt service or replenishing financial reserves.
- All recipients must also comply with three general restrictions. First, a recipient may not use SLFRF funds for a program, service, or capital expenditure that conflicts with or contravenes the statutory purpose of ARPA, including a program, service, or capital expenditure that includes a term or condition that undermines efforts to stop the spread of COVID–19. Second, recipients may not use SLFRF funds in violation of the conflict-of-interest requirements contained in the Award Terms and Conditions, including any self-dealing or violation of ethics rules. Lastly, recipients should be aware that federal, state, and local laws and regulations, outside of SLFRF program requirements, also apply, including for example, environmental laws and federal civil rights and nondiscrimination requirements, which include prohibitions on discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex (including sexual orientation and gender identity), religion, disability, age, or familial status (having children under the age of 18).

The Program Administration Provisions section describes the processes and requirements for administering the program on an ongoing basis, specifically as relates to the following: Distribution of funds, timeline for using funds, transfer of funds from a recipient to different organizations, use of funds for program administration, reporting on use of funds, and remediation and recoupment of funds used for ineligible purposes. Of note, SLFRF funds may only be used for costs incurred within a specific time period, beginning March 3, 2021, with all funds obligated by December 31, 2024 and all funds spent by December 31, 2026. Recipients are advised to also consult Treasury's Reporting and Compliance Guidance for additional information on program administration processes and requirements, including applicability of the Uniform Guidance.

Finally, the section Regulatory Analyses provides Treasury's analysis of the impacts of this rulemaking, as required by several laws, regulations, and Executive Orders.

Throughout this Supplementary Information, statements using the terms “should” or “must” refer to requirements, except when used in

summarizing opinions expressed in public comments. Statements using the term “encourage” refer to recommendations, not requirements.

II. Eligible Uses

A. Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts

Background

Since the first case of COVID–19 was discovered in the United States in January 2020, the disease has infected over 50 million and killed over 800,000 Americans.¹² The disease—and necessary measures to respond—have had an immense public health and economic impact on millions of Americans across many areas of life, as detailed below in the respective sections on Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts. Since the release of the interim final rule in May 2021, the country has made major progress in fighting the disease and rebuilding the economy but faces continued risks, as illustrated by the spread of the Delta variant and the resulting slowdown in the economic recovery. The SLFRF program, and Treasury's interim final rule, provide substantial flexibility to recipients to respond to pandemic impacts in their local community; this flexibility is designed to help state, local, and Tribal governments adapt to the evolving public health emergency and tailor their response as needs evolve and to the particular local needs of their communities.

Indeed, state, local, and Tribal governments face continued needs to respond at scale to the public health emergency. This includes continued public health efforts to slow the spread of the disease, to increase vaccination rates and provide vaccinations to new populations as they become eligible, to protect individuals living in congregate facilities, and to address the broader impacts of the pandemic on public health. Similarly, while a strong economic recovery is underway, the economy remains 3.9 million jobs below its pre-pandemic level, pointing to the continued need for response efforts, with low-income workers and communities of color facing elevated rates of unemployment and economic hardship.¹³ Long-standing disparities in health and economic outcomes in

¹² Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker, <http://www.covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#data-tracker-home> (last visited December 31, 2021).

¹³ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, All Employees, Total Nonfarm [PAYEMS] <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/PAYEMS> (last visited December 7, 2021).

underserved¹⁴ communities, that amplified and exacerbated the impacts of the pandemic, also present continued barriers to full and equitable recovery.

As state, local, and Tribal governments work to meet the public health and economic needs of their communities, these governments are also confronting the need to rebuild their own capacity. Facing severe budget challenges during the pandemic, many state, local, and Tribal governments have been forced to make cuts to services or their workforces, including cutting over 1.5 million jobs from February to May 2020, or delay critical investments. As of fall 2021, state, local, and Tribal government employment remained over 950,000 jobs below pre-pandemic levels.¹⁵ In the recovery from the Great Recession, cuts to state, local, and Tribal governments became a meaningful drag on economic growth for several years, and the SLFRF program provides the resources needed to re-invest in vital public services and workers to avoid this outcome.¹⁶

1. General Provisions: Structure and Standards

Background: Sections 602(c)(1)(A) and 603(c)(1)(A) of the Social Security Act establish that recipients may use funds “to respond to the public health emergency with respect to COVID–19 or its negative economic impacts, including assistance to households, small businesses, and nonprofits, or aid to impacted industries such as tourism, travel, and hospitality.” The interim final rule established three categories within this eligible use: (1) Public health responses for those impacted by the pandemic, including the general public; (2) responses to the negative economic impacts that were experienced by those impacted as a result of the pandemic; and (3) additional services, either as a public health response or a response to the negative economic impacts of the

pandemic, for disproportionately impacted communities.

The interim final rule established the method to determine which specific programs or services may be eligible to respond to the public health emergency or to respond to the negative economic impacts of the public health emergency within this framework. The interim final rule included multiple enumerated uses that are eligible within each of these categories when provided to eligible populations, including populations that the interim final rule presumed to have been *impacted* (in the case of public health responses and responses to negative economic impacts) or *disproportionately impacted* (in the case of disproportionately impacted communities). Finally, the interim final rule also allowed recipients to designate additional individuals or classes as impacted or disproportionately impacted. The standards for each of these criteria under the interim final rule are discussed below.

To assess whether a program or service would be eligible to respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts, the interim final rule stated that, “the recipient [is required] to, first, identify a need or negative impact of the COVID–19 public health emergency and, second, identify how the program, service, or other intervention addresses the identified need or impact [. . .] [E]ligible uses under this category must be in response to the disease itself or the harmful consequences of the economic disruptions resulting from or exacerbated by the COVID–19 public health emergency.” The enumerated eligible uses were presumed to meet this criterion.

With respect to uses not specifically enumerated in the interim final rule as eligible public health responses, the interim final rule stated that, “[t]o assess whether additional uses would be eligible under this category, recipients should identify an effect of COVID–19 on public health, including either or both of immediate effects or effects that may manifest over months or years, and assess how the use would respond to or address the identified need.”

With respect to uses not specifically enumerated in the interim final rule as eligible responses to a negative economic impact of the public health emergency, the interim final rule stated that “[e]ligible uses that respond to the negative economic impacts of the public health emergency must be designed to address an economic harm resulting from or exacerbated by the public health emergency. In considering whether a program or service would be eligible

under this category, the recipient should assess whether, and the extent to which, there has been an economic harm, such as loss of earnings or revenue, that resulted from the COVID–19 public health emergency and whether, and the extent to which, the use would respond to or address this harm.¹⁷ A recipient should first consider whether an economic harm exists and whether this harm was caused or made worse by the COVID–19 public health emergency.” The interim final rule went on to say that: “In addition, the eligible use must ‘respond to’ the identified negative economic impact. Responses must be related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of harm experienced; uses that bear no relation or are grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced would not be eligible uses.”

Throughout this final rule, Treasury refers to households, communities, small businesses, nonprofits, and industries that experienced public health or negative economic impacts of the pandemic as “impacted.” The first section in the interim final rule under this eligible use category included public health responses for these impacted classes. The second category in the interim final rule under this eligible use category included responses to the negative economic impacts that were experienced by these impacted classes as a result of the pandemic.

The interim final rule further recognized that certain populations have experienced disproportionate health or negative economic impacts during the pandemic, as pre-existing disparities in these communities amplified the impacts of the pandemic. For example, the interim final rule recognized that the negative economic effects of the pandemic were particularly pronounced among lower-income families, who were more likely to experience income loss and more likely to have a job that required in-person work. The interim final rule recognized the role of pre-existing social vulnerabilities and disparities in driving the disparate health and economic outcomes and presumed that programs designed to address these health or economic disparities are responsive to the public health or negative economic impacts of the COVID–19 public health emergency, when provided in disproportionately impacted communities. In addition to identifying certain populations and communities

¹⁴ Treasury uses “underserved” to refer to populations sharing a particular characteristic, as well as geographic communities, that have been systematically denied a full opportunity to participate in aspects of economic, social, and civic life. In the interim final rule, Treasury generally used the term “disadvantaged” to refer to these same populations and communities.

¹⁵ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, All Employees, State Government [CES9092000001] and All Employees, Local Government [CES9093000001], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/CES9092000001> and <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/CES9093000001> (last visited December 7, 2021).

¹⁶ Tracy Gordon, State and Local Budgets and the Great Recession, Brookings Institution (Dec. 31, 2012), <http://www.brookings.edu/articles/state-and-local-budgets-and-the-great-recession>.

¹⁷ In some cases, a use may be permissible under another eligible use category even if it falls outside the scope of section (c)(1)(A) of section 602 and 603 of the Social Security Act.

presumed to be disproportionately impacted, it also empowered recipients to identify other disproportionately impacted households, populations, communities, or small businesses. The interim final rule provided that, in identifying these disproportionately impacted communities, recipients should be able to support their determination that the pandemic resulted in disproportionate public health or economic outcomes to the specific populations, households, or geographic areas to be served.

Throughout this final rule, Treasury refers to those households, communities, small businesses, and nonprofits that experienced disproportionate public health or negative economic impacts of the pandemic as “disproportionately impacted.” The third category in the interim final rule under this eligible use included public health responses and responses to the negative economic impacts for these disproportionately impacted classes.

The interim final rule provided significant flexibility for recipients to determine which households, populations, communities, or small businesses have been impacted and/or disproportionately impacted by the pandemic and to identify appropriate responses. The interim final rule included several provisions to provide simple methods for recipients to identify impacts and design programs to address those impacts. First, the interim final rule allowed recipients to demonstrate a negative economic impact on a population or class and provide assistance to households or small businesses that fall within that population or class. In such cases, the recipient need only demonstrate that an individual household or business is within the class that experienced a negative economic impact, rather than requiring a recipient to demonstrate that each individual household or small business experienced a negative economic impact, because the impact was already identified for the class.

Second, in the interim final rule, Treasury presumed that certain populations have been impacted or disproportionately impacted and are thus eligible for services that respond to these impacts or disproportionate impacts. Specifically, the interim final rule permitted recipients to presume that households that experienced unemployment, increased food or housing insecurity, or are low- or moderate-income experienced a negative economic impact from the pandemic. The interim final rule also permitted recipients to presume that

certain services provided in Qualified Census Tracts (QCTs), to individuals living in QCTs, or by Tribal governments are responsive to disproportionate impacts of the pandemic. In addition to the populations presumed to be impacted or disproportionately impacted, under the interim final rule, recipients could identify other impacted households or classes, as described above, as well as other populations, households, or geographic areas that are disproportionately impacted by the pandemic.

Third, as mentioned previously, the interim final rule included a non-exhaustive list of uses of funds that Treasury identified as responsive to the impacts or disproportionate impacts of the pandemic. Treasury refers to these as “enumerated eligible uses.”

To summarize, the interim final rule identified certain populations that are presumed to be *impacted* by the pandemic (and specific enumerated uses of funds that are responsive to that impact) and populations that are presumed to be *disproportionately impacted* by the pandemic (and specific enumerated uses of funds that are responsive to those disproportionate impacts). In addition, the interim final rule provided standards for recipients to assess whether additional uses of funds, beyond the enumerated eligible uses, are eligible for impacted and disproportionately impacted populations and permitted recipients to identify other households or classes that experienced impacts of the pandemic or disproportionate impacts of the pandemic.

Rule Structure

Public Comment: Many commenters expressed concern regarding the structure of the eligible uses, indicating they found the structure of the public health and negative economic impacts section of the interim final rule to be confusing or difficult to navigate. Other commenters indicated that they understood the enumerated uses to be the only eligible uses and/or the presumed eligible populations to be the only eligible populations. Several commenters expressed frustration about the number of eligible uses specifically enumerated in the interim final rule, which they considered too few, and commenters proposed a wide range of additional enumerated eligible uses (for further discussion, see the section Public Health and section Negative Economic Impacts). Commenters expressed concern with pursuing uses of funds not explicitly enumerated in the eligible use section or uncertainty

regarding the broad flexibility provided under the interim final rule to pursue additional programs that respond to the public health or negative economic impacts of the pandemic or the process for doing so.

Treasury Response: Treasury recognizes that many commenters felt the structure of the interim final rule could be clarified. These comments are consistent with many of the questions that Treasury has received from recipients, which requested clarification regarding the category their desired response fits into. Treasury observes that these comments and questions generally fall into four categories: (1) How to identify the correct public health or negative economic impact category for a particular response, (2) how to identify whether a particular use is eligible, (3) how to identify an impacted or disproportionately impacted class, and (4) whether an enumerated use can be provided to a class other than those presumed impacted or disproportionately impacted. In response to comments, Treasury is adjusting the structure of the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use section of the final rule to improve clarity and make it easier for recipients to interpret and apply the final rule.

Specifically, Treasury is restructuring the rule to aid recipients in determining whether a particular response is eligible and how the particular response might be eligible under a particular category. This restructuring reinforces the fundamental criteria that a use of funds is eligible based on its responsiveness to a public health or negative economic impact experienced by individuals, households, small businesses, nonprofits, or impacted industries (together “beneficiaries”).¹⁸ This restructuring is intended to make the rule easier to navigate and to implement, including any criteria or conditions on particular uses of funds.

The reorganization of the public health and negative economic impacts section of the final rule is also intended to clarify the enumerated eligible uses described in the interim final rule. The reorganization itself is not intended to change the scope of the enumerated uses that were included in the interim final rule or that were allowable under the interim final rule. In some cases, specific enumerated uses are being altered, and those changes are discussed

¹⁸ Note that small businesses, nonprofits, and industries may also function as subrecipients. For additional information on these distinctions see section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries.

as changes within the section on that enumerated use.

The final rule streamlines and aligns services and standards that are generally applicable or are provided for public health purposes. Under this approach, eligible uses to respond to the public health emergency are organized based on the type of public health problem: (1) COVID-19 mitigation and prevention, (2) medical expenses, (3) behavioral health care, and (4) preventing and responding to violence. Under this approach, eligible uses to respond to the negative economic impacts of the public health emergency are organized based on the type of beneficiary: (1) Assistance to households, (2) assistance to small businesses, and (3) assistance to nonprofits, alongside a fourth standalone eligibility category for aid to travel, tourism, hospitality, and other impacted industries. The first three categories, assistance to households, small businesses, and nonprofits, include enumerated eligible uses for impacted and disproportionately impacted beneficiaries. This change in structure is intended to provide a framework that clearly identifies the intended beneficiaries of uses of funds and provides clarity about what types of assistance are “responsive to the pandemic or its negative economic impacts” for these beneficiaries.

a. Standards for Identifying a Public Health or Negative Economic Impact

Standards: Designating a Public Health Impact

Public Comment: Many commenters expressed uncertainty about how to determine whether a use of funds, beyond those specifically enumerated as eligible, might be an eligible public health response. For example, many commenters submitted questions asking whether specific uses of funds would be eligible. Others described what they considered to be impacts of the pandemic and argued that uses of funds to respond to these issues should be eligible. Some commenters requested that Treasury provide additional detail to guide their assessments of eligible uses of funds. For example, a commenter requested more clarification around exactly what and whose medical expenses can be covered. These comments ranged in their specificity and covered the full range of the enumerated eligible uses.

Treasury Response: Treasury is clarifying that when assessing whether a program or service is an eligible use to respond to the public health impacts of the COVID-19 public health emergency, the Department will

consider the two eligibility requirements discussed below. These standards apply to all proposed public health uses.

First, there must be a negative public health impact or harm experienced by an individual or a class. For ease of administration, the interim final rule allowed, and the final rule maintains the ability for, recipients to identify a public health impact on a population or group of individuals, referred to as a “class,” and to provide assistance to that class. In determining whether an individual is eligible for a program designed to address a harm experienced by a class, the recipient need only document that the individual is within the class that experienced a public health impact, see section Standards: Designating Other Impacted Classes. In the case of some impacts, for example impacts of COVID-19 itself that are addressed by providing prevention and mitigation services, such a class could reasonably include the general public.

Second, the program, service, or other intervention must address or respond to the identified impact or harm. The final rule maintains the interim final rule requirement that eligible uses under this category must be in response to the disease itself or other public health harms that it caused.¹⁹

Responses must be reasonably designed to benefit the individual or class that experienced the public health impact or harm. Uses of funds should be assessed based on their responsiveness to their intended beneficiaries and the ability of the response to address the impact or harm experienced by those beneficiaries.

Responses must also be related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of public health impact or harm experienced. Uses that bear no relation or are grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced would not be eligible uses. Reasonably proportional refers to the scale of the response compared to the scale of the harm. It also refers to the targeting of the response to beneficiaries compared to the amount of harm they experienced. In evaluating whether a

use is reasonably proportional, recipients should consider relevant factors about the harm identified and the response. For example, recipients may consider the size of the population impacted and the severity, type, and duration of the impact. Recipients may also consider the efficacy, cost, cost-effectiveness, and time to delivery of the response.

If a recipient intends to fund capital expenditures in response to the public health impacts of the pandemic, recipients should refer to the section Capital Expenditures for details about the eligibility of capital expenditures.

Standards: Designating a Negative Economic Impact

Public Comment: Many commenters expressed uncertainty about how to determine whether uses of funds, beyond those specifically enumerated as eligible, might be eligible responses to negative economic impacts. For example, many commenters submitted questions asking whether specific uses of funds would be eligible. Others described what they considered to be impacts of the pandemic and argued that uses of funds to respond to these issues should be eligible. Some commenters requested that Treasury provide additional detail to guide their assessments of eligible uses of funds. These comments ranged in their specificity and covered the full range of eligible uses to respond to negative economic impacts. Several commenters asked for clarification about what types of food assistance would be considered eligible. Another commenter requested that the establishment of outdoor dining be eligible. Many commenters inquired about homeless shelters as an eligible use of SLFRF funds.

Commenters also expressed uncertainty about the ability to establish classes, including geographic areas, that experienced a negative economic impact or disagreed with the requirement that an individual entity be impacted by the pandemic in order to receive assistance. For example, a commenter argued that interventions should not be limited to individuals or businesses that experienced an economic impact and should instead be used broadly to support economic growth. These commenters argued that an expenditure that supports a more robust economy may help combat the pandemic’s negative economic impacts, and it can do so even if funding is provided to individuals or entities that did not themselves experience a negative economic impact during the pandemic.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the standard articulated in

¹⁹ In designing an intervention to mitigate COVID-19, the recipient should consider guidance from public health authorities, particularly the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), in assessing appropriate COVID-19 mitigation and prevention strategies (see Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID-19, <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/index.html>). A program or service that imposes conditions on participation in or acceptance of the service that would undermine efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19 or discourage compliance with practices in line with CDC guidance for stopping the spread of COVID-19 is not a permissible use of funds.

the interim final rule. For clarity, the final rule re-articulates that when assessing whether a program or service is an eligible use to respond to the negative economic impacts of the COVID-19 public health emergency, Treasury will consider the two eligibility requirements discussed below.

First, there must be a negative economic impact, or an economic harm, experienced by an individual or a class. The recipient should assess whether, and the extent to which, there has been an economic harm, such as loss of earnings or revenue, that resulted from the COVID-19 public health emergency. A recipient should first consider whether an economic harm exists and then whether this harm was caused or made worse by the COVID-19 public health emergency. This approach is consistent with the text of the statute, which provides that funds in this category must be used to “respond to the public health emergency with respect to . . . its negative economic impacts.”

While economic impacts may either be immediate or delayed, individuals or classes that did not experience a negative economic impact from the public health emergency would not be eligible beneficiaries under this category. As noted above, the interim final rule permitted recipients to presume that households that experienced unemployment, increased food or housing insecurity, or are low- or moderate-income experienced a negative economic impact from the pandemic. For discussion of the final rule’s approach to this presumption, see section Populations Presumed Eligible.

The final rule also maintains several provisions included in the interim final rule and subsequent guidance that are intended to ease administration of identifying that the beneficiary experienced a negative economic impact or harm. For example, the interim final rule allowed, and the final rule maintains the ability for, recipients to demonstrate a negative economic impact on a population or group, referred to as a “class,” and to provide assistance to households, small businesses, or nonprofits that fall within that class. In such cases, the recipient need only demonstrate that the household, small business, or nonprofit is within the class that experienced a negative economic impact, see section Standards: Designating Other Impacted Classes. This would allow, for example, an internet access assistance program for all households with children to support those households’ ability to participate in healthcare, work, and

educational activities like extending learning opportunities, among other critical activities. In that case, the recipient would only need to identify a negative economic impact to the class of “households with children” and would not need to document or otherwise demonstrate that each individual household served experienced a negative economic impact.

Second, the response must be designed to address the identified economic harm or impact resulting from or exacerbated by the public health emergency. In selecting responses, the recipient must assess whether, and the extent to which, the use would respond to or address this harm or impact. This approach is consistent with the text of the statute, which provides that funds may be used to “respond to” the “negative economic impacts” of the public health emergency “including assistance to households, small businesses, and nonprofits, or aid to impacted industries such as tourism, travel, and hospitality.” The list of potential responses (“assistance” or “aid”) suggests that responses should address the “negative economic impacts” of particular types of beneficiaries (e.g., households or small businesses).

Responses must be reasonably designed to benefit the individual or class that experienced the negative economic impact or harm. Uses of funds should be assessed based on their responsiveness to their intended beneficiary and the ability of the response to address the impact or harm experienced by that beneficiary.²⁰

Responses must also be related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of harm experienced; uses that bear no relation or are grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced would not be eligible uses.²¹ Reasonably proportional refers to the scale of the response compared to the scale of the harm. It also refers to the targeting of the response to beneficiaries compared to the amount of harm they experienced; for example, it may not be reasonably proportional for a cash assistance program to provide assistance in a very small amount to a group that

experienced severe harm and in a much larger amount to a group that experienced relatively little harm. In evaluating whether a use is reasonably proportional, recipients should consider relevant factors about the harm identified and the response. For example, recipients may consider the size of the population impacted and the severity, type, and duration of the impact. Recipients may also consider the efficacy, cost, cost-effectiveness, and time to delivery of the response.

Finally, recipients should be aware of the distinction between beneficiaries of funds and subrecipients; a recipient may provide services to beneficiaries through subrecipients that did not experience a negative economic impact, see section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries. That is, a recipient may award SLFRF funds to an entity that did not experience a negative economic impact in order to implement a program or provide a service to beneficiaries on its behalf. Such transfers, when implementing a public health or negative economic impact response, should be responsive to and designed to benefit individuals, households, small businesses, nonprofits, or impacted industries that did experience a public health or negative economic impact.

Determining the Appropriate Eligible Use Category

Public Comment: Some commenters expressed uncertainty about how to analyze negative economic impacts to different entities (e.g., households, small businesses, nonprofits). For example, commenters asked whether a nonprofit, which did not experience a negative economic impact itself, could be granted funds to provide services to individuals experiencing homelessness, who did experience negative economic impacts. Other commenters proposed providing assistance to support the expansion of small businesses, under the theory that this would create more job opportunities for unemployed workers who experienced negative economic impacts.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is clarifying that recipients should assess a potential use of funds based on which beneficiary experienced the negative economic impact, in other words, the households, small businesses, nonprofits, or impacted industries that experienced the negative economic impact.

Treasury notes that recipients may award SLFRF funds to many different types of organizations to carry out eligible uses of funds and serve beneficiaries on behalf of a recipient.

²⁰ For example, expenses such as excessive compensation to employees or expenses which have already been reimbursed through another federal program, are not reasonably designed to address a negative economic impact to a beneficiary.

²¹ For example, a program or service that imposes conditions on participation in or acceptance of the service that would undermine efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19 or discourage compliance with practices in line with CDC guidance for stopping the spread of COVID-19 is not a permissible use of funds.

When a recipient provides funds to another entity to carry out eligible uses of funds and serve beneficiaries the entity becomes a subrecipient (see section Distinguishing a Subrecipient versus a Beneficiary). For example, a recipient may grant funds to a nonprofit organization to provide food assistance (an eligible use) to low-income households (the beneficiaries). Recipients only need to assess whether the beneficiaries experienced a negative economic impact and whether the eligible use responds to that impact, consistent with the two-part framework described above; the organization carrying out the eligible use does not need to have experienced a negative economic impact if it is serving as the vehicle for reaching the beneficiaries. When making determinations about how to implement a program, recipients should consider whether that method of program implementation is an effective and efficient method to implement the program and do so in accordance with the Uniform Guidance provisions that govern procurements and sub-granting of federal funds, as applicable.

As noted above, recipients should analyze eligible uses based on the beneficiary of the assistance or the entity that experienced a negative economic impact. Assistance to a small business or to an impacted industry must respond to a negative economic impact experienced by that small business or industry. Recipients may not provide assistance to small businesses or impacted industries that did not experience a negative economic impact, although recipients can identify negative economic impacts for classes, rather than individual businesses, and may also presume that small businesses in certain areas experienced impacts; see section General Provisions: Structure and Standards and section Assistance to Small Businesses for details.

Several examples illustrate the application of these concepts. For example, a recipient could provide assistance to households via a contract with a business to create subsidized jobs for the long-term unemployed; in this case the business is a subrecipient and need not have experienced a negative economic impact, but the recipient would need to identify a specific connection between the assistance provided and addressing the negative economic impact experienced by the unemployed households. The recipient could, for instance, document the subsidized jobs created under the contract and their reservation for long-term unemployed individuals. Similarly, a recipient might provide

assistance to a small business that experienced a pandemic-related loss of revenue. This small business is a beneficiary and may use those funds in many ways, potentially including hiring or retaining staff. However, general assistance to a business that did not experience a negative economic impact under the theory that this assistance generally grows the economy and therefore enhances opportunities for unemployed workers would not be an eligible use, because such assistance is not reasonably designed to impact the individuals or classes that experienced a negative economic impact. In other words, there is not a reasonable connection between the assistance provided and an impact on the beneficiaries. Such an activity would be attenuated from and thus not reasonably designed to benefit the households that experienced the negative economic impact.

b. Populations Presumed Eligible

Presumed Eligibility: Impacted and Disproportionately Impacted Households and Communities

Background: As noted above, the interim final rule allowed recipients to presume that certain households were impacted or disproportionately impacted by the pandemic and thus eligible for responsive programs or services. Specifically, under the interim final rule, recipients could presume that a household or population that experienced unemployment, experienced increased food or housing insecurity, or is low- or moderate-income experienced negative economic impacts resulting from the pandemic, and recipients may provide services that respond to these impacts.

The interim final rule also recognized that pre-existing health, economic, and social disparities contributed to disproportionate pandemic impacts in certain communities and allowed for a broader list of enumerated eligible uses to respond to the pandemic in disproportionately impacted communities. Under the interim final rule, recipients were allowed to presume that families residing in QCTs or receiving services provided by Tribal governments were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic.

Definition of Low- and Moderate-Income

Public Comment: As noted earlier, many commenters sought a definition for “low- and moderate-income” to provide recipients greater clarity on which specific households could be

presumed to be impacted by the pandemic.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the presumptions identified in the interim final rule and defines low- and moderate-income for the purposes of determining which households and populations recipients may presume to have been impacted. To simplify the administration of this presumption, the final rule adopts a definition of low- and moderate-income based on thresholds established and used in other federal programs.

Definitions. The final rule defines a household as *low income* if it has (i) income at or below 185 percent of the Federal Poverty Guidelines (FPG) for the size of its household based on the most recently published poverty guidelines by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) or (ii) income at or below 40 percent of the Area Median Income (AMI) for its county and size of household based on the most recently published data by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD).²²

The final rule defines a household as *moderate income* if it has (i) income at or below 300 percent of the FPG for the size of its household based on the most recently published poverty guidelines by HHS or (ii) income at or below 65 percent of the AMI for its county and size of household based on the most recently published data by HUD.²³

Recipients may determine whether to measure income levels for specific households or for a geographic area based on the type of service to be provided. For example, recipients developing a program that serves specific households (e.g., a subsidy for internet access, a childcare program) may measure income at the household level. Recipients providing a service that reaches a general geographic area (e.g., a park) may measure median income of that area.

Further, recipients should generally use the income threshold for the size of the household to be served (e.g., when providing childcare to a household of five, recipients should reference the income threshold for a household of five); however, recipients may use the income threshold for a default household size of three if providing

²² AMI is also often referred to as median family income for the area. Since AMI is synonymous with this term and used more generally, the final rule refers to AMI.

²³ For the six New England states of Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Vermont, HUD provides AMI for towns rather than counties. Recipients in these states should use the AMI corresponding to their town when determining thresholds for both low and moderate income.

services that reach a general geographic area or if doing so would simplify administration of the program to be provided (e.g., when developing a park, recipients should use the income threshold for a household size of three and compare it to median income of the geographic area to be served).

Note that recipients can also identify and serve other classes of households that experienced negative economic impacts or disproportionate impacts from the pandemic; recipients can identify these classes based on their income levels, including above the levels defined as low- and moderate-income in the final rule. For example, a recipient may identify that households in their community with incomes above the final rule threshold for low-income

nevertheless experienced disproportionate impacts from the pandemic and provide responsive services. See section General Provisions: Standards for Identifying Other Eligible Populations for details on applicable standards.

Applicable levels. For reference, the FPG is commonly referred to as the federal poverty level (FPL) and is related to—although distinct from—the U.S. Census Bureau's poverty threshold. The final rule uses the FPG when referring specifically to the HHS guidelines, as these are the quantitative metrics used for determining low- and moderate-income households.

The FPG by household size for 2021 is included in the table below. Recipients should refer to HHS Poverty

Guidelines for this information, which is updated annually and available on the HHS website.²⁴ For calculating the thresholds of 40 percent and 65 percent of AMI, recipients should refer to the annual HUD Section 8 50 percent income limits by county and household size published by HUD and available on the HUD website; in particular, recipients should calculate the 40 percent threshold as 0.8 times the 50 percent income limit, and recipients should calculate the 65 percent threshold as 1.3 times the 50 percent income limit.²⁵ Finally, for median income of Census Tracts and other geographic areas, recipients should refer to the most recent American Community Survey 5-year estimates available through the Census website.²⁶

2021 FEDERAL POVERTY GUIDELINES

Household size	48 contiguous states and the District of Columbia	Alaska	Hawaii
1	\$12,880	\$16,090	\$14,820
2	17,420	21,770	20,040
3	21,960	27,450	25,260
4	26,500	33,130	30,480
5	31,040	38,810	35,700
6	35,580	44,490	40,920
7	40,120	50,170	46,140
8	44,660	55,850	51,360

For families/households with more than 8 persons, add the following amounts for each additional person:

48 Contiguous States and the District of Columbia: \$4,540.

Alaska: \$5,680.

Hawaii: \$5,220.

Source: "HHS Poverty Guidelines for 2021," available at <https://aspe.hhs.gov/topics/poverty-economic-mobility/poverty-guidelines>.

Rationale. In defining low income, the final rule uses both the FPG and AMI to account for national trends and regional differences. The metric of 185 percent of FPG aligns with some other programs; for instance, under the National School Lunch Program, students with household incomes under 185 percent of FPG qualify for free or reduced-price lunch, and schools often use eligibility for free or reduced-price lunch as an indicator of low-income status under Title 1–A of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act. Eligibility for other programs, such as the Federal Communications Commission's e-Rate

program and the Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants and Children employ this metric as well. In addition, 185 percent of the FPG for a family of four is \$49,025, which is approximately the wage earnings for a two-earner household in which both earners receive the median wage in occupations, such as waiters and waitresses and hotel clerks, that were heavily impacted by COVID–19.²⁷ This measure is targeted toward those at the bottom of the income distribution and thus helps to promote use of SLFRF funds towards populations with the greatest needs. At the same time, with

approximately one-quarter of Americans below 185 percent of the poverty threshold, this approach is broad enough to facilitate use of SLFRF funds across many jurisdictions.²⁸ Because regions have different cost and income levels, this definition also allows for upward adjustment based on AMI for those regions where 40 percent of AMI exceeds 185 percent of FPG. The metric of 40 percent of AMI is based on the midpoint of values often used to designate certain categories of low-income households; specifically, it is the midpoint of the 30 percent income limit and the 50 percent income limit

²⁴ U.S. Department of Health and Human Service, HHS Poverty Guidelines for 2021, available at <https://aspe.hhs.gov/topics/poverty-economic-mobility/poverty-guidelines>.

²⁵ U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, FY 2021 Section 8 Income Limits, available at <https://www.huduser.gov/portal/datasets/il/il21/Section8-FY21.xlsx>. Recipients may refer to the list of counties (and New England towns) identified by state and metropolitan area for identifying the appropriate area. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, FY 2021 List of Counties (and New England Towns) Identified by

State and Metropolitan Area, available at <https://www.huduser.gov/portal/datasets/il/il21/area-definitions-FY21.pdf>.

²⁶ The U.S. Census Bureau provides an interactive map: U.S. Census Bureau, Median Household Income State Selection Map, available at https://data.census.gov/cedsci/map?q=Median%20Household%20Income&g=0100000US%2404000%24001&tid=ACST5Y2019.S1901&cid=S1901_C01_012E&vintage=2019. The U.S. Census Bureau also provides an interactive table: U.S. Census Bureau, Median Household Income In The Past 12 Months (In 2019 Inflation-Adjusted Dollars),

available at <https://data.census.gov/cedsci/table?q=b19013&tid=ACST5Y2019.B19013&hidePreview=true>.

²⁷ See U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Occupational Employment and Wage Estimates, https://www.bls.gov/oes/current/oes_nat.htm (last visited December 7, 2021).

²⁸ U.S. Census Bureau, Poverty Status by State, <https://www.census.gov/data/tables/time-series/demo/income-poverty/cps-pov/pov-46.html> (last visited December 7, 2021).

used in programs such as the Community Development Block Grant (CDBG) Program.

In defining moderate income, the final rule uses both the FPG and AMI to account for national trends and regional differences. While there are different definitions of moderate income, 300 percent of FPG falls within the range commonly used by researchers.²⁹ Analysis of median wages among a sample of occupations likely impacted by the pandemic also suggests that an income cutoff of 300 percent of FPG would include many households with workers in such occupations.³⁰ Moreover, the metric of 300 percent of FPG covers households that, while above the poverty line, often lack economic security.³¹ Treasury determined the AMI threshold for moderate income by maintaining the same ratio of FPG multiplier to AMI multiplier as in the definition of low income. This anchors the threshold to the existing definitions of moderate income from the literature while taking into account geographical variation in income and expenses in the same manner as the definition of low income.

Eligibility Presumptions

Public Comment: Many commenters believed that a broader range of groups should be considered presumptively impacted and disproportionately impacted, arguing that many households had been affected by the pandemic and that broader presumed eligibility would help recipients provide assistance quickly and effectively.

Treasury also received many comments on the presumption that

families living in QCTs or receiving services from Tribal governments were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. While many commenters supported the interim final rule's recognition of disproportionate impacts of the pandemic on low-income communities, many commenters disagreed with treating QCTs as the only presumed eligible group of disproportionately impacted households, apart from households served by Tribal governments. While acknowledging a potential increase in administrative burden, commenters recommended that Treasury presume other households or geographic areas, in addition to QCTs, were disproportionately impacted; suggestions included all low- and moderate-income households, geographic areas designated as Opportunity Zones, Difficult Development Areas (DDAs), areas with a certain amount of Real Estate Advantage Program (REAP) recipients, or use of eligibility criteria from the Community Reinvestment Act. One commenter generally recommended that a clearer definition of "disproportionately impacted" should be provided and that any definition should include communities of color and people of limited means. Another recommended specific eligibility for people that had recently interacted with the criminal justice system. Many commenters representing Tribal governments and groups recommended a presumption of eligibility for all Tribal uses of funds, clarification that off reservation members remained eligible, and broad flexibility on use of funds.

Additionally, commenters noted that some areas are technically eligible to be QCTs but fall short because of the aggregate population of eligible tracts. One commenter noted that these areas should be considered the same as QCTs for the purpose of SLFRF funds. Some commenters argued that rural counties typically have few QCTs despite high levels of poverty and disruption caused by the COVID-19 pandemic. Other rural commenters recommended that the designation be by county rather than at a more granular level, arguing that the QCT designation is biased towards urban areas and understates the harm done to rural America. Many commenters representing Tribal governments supported the presumption that services provided by Tribal governments respond to disproportionate impacts.

Treasury Response

Summary: While households residing in QCTs or served by Tribal

governments were presumed to be disproportionately impacted, Treasury emphasizes that under the interim final rule recipients could also identify other households, populations, or geographic areas that were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic and provide services to respond.

The final rule maintains the presumptions identified in the interim final rule, as well as recipients' ability to identify other impacted or disproportionately impacted classes. The final rule also allows recipients to presume that low-income households were disproportionately impacted, and as discussed above, defines low- and moderate-income. Finally, under the final rule recipients may also presume that households residing in the U.S. territories or receiving services from territorial governments were disproportionately impacted.

Households presumed to be impacted: Impacted households are those that experienced a public health or negative economic impact from the pandemic.

With regard to public health impacts, recipients may presume that the general public experienced public health impacts from the pandemic for the purposes of providing services for COVID-19 mitigation and behavioral health. In other words, recipients may provide a wide range of enumerated eligible uses in these categories to the general public without further analysis. As discussed in the introduction, COVID-19 as a disease has directly affected the health of tens of millions of Americans, and efforts to prevent and mitigate the spread of the disease are needed and in use across the country. Further, the stress of the pandemic and resulting recession have affected nearly all Americans. Accordingly, the final rule presumes that the general public are impacted by and eligible for services to respond to COVID-19 mitigation and prevention needs, as well as behavioral health needs.

With regard to negative economic impacts, as with the interim final rule, under the final rule recipients may presume that a household or population that experienced unemployment, experienced increased food or housing insecurity, or is low- or moderate-income experienced negative economic impacts resulting from the pandemic. The final rule's definition of low- and moderate-income, by providing standard metrics based on widely available data, is intended to simplify administration for recipients.

Households presumed to be disproportionately impacted: Disproportionately impacted households are those that experienced a

²⁹ For instance, Melissa Kearney et al. (2013) cap the "struggling lower middle-income class" at 250 percent of the federal poverty level, while Isabel Sawhill and Edward Rodrigue (2015) define the "middle class" as those with incomes of at least 300 percent of the poverty line. Melissa Kearney et al., "A Dozen Facts about America's Struggling Lower-Middle Class," The Hamilton Project (December 2013), https://www.hamiltonproject.org/assets/legacy/files/downloads_and_links/THP_12LowIncomeFacts_Final.pdf; Isabel Sawhill and Edward Rodrigue, "An Agenda for Reducing Poverty and Improving Opportunity," Brookings Institution, https://www.brookings.edu/wp-content/uploads/2016/07/Sawhill_FINAL.pdf.

³⁰ Data on median annual wages from: U.S. Bureau of Labor and Statistics, Occupational Employment and Wage Statistics, available at https://www.bls.gov/oes/current/oes_nat.htm (last visited December 7, 2021).

³¹ For instance, households earning between 200 and 300 percent of the FPG have significantly higher rates of food and housing insecurity than those earning above 300 percent of the FPG. Table 1, Kyle J. Caswell and Stephen Zuckerman, Food Insecurity, Housing Hardship, and Medical Care Utilization, Urban Institute (June 2018), https://www.urban.org/sites/default/files/publication/98701/2001896_foodinsecurity_housinghardship_medicalcareutilization_finalized.pdf.

disproportionate, or meaningfully more severe, impact from the pandemic. As discussed in the interim final rule, pre-existing disparities in health and economic outcomes magnified the impact of the COVID-19 public health emergency on certain households and communities. As with the interim final rule, under the final rule recipients may presume that households residing in QCTs or receiving services provided by Tribal governments were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. In addition, under the final rule recipients may presume that low-income households were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. Finally, under the final rule recipients may also presume that households residing in the U.S. territories or receiving services from territorial governments were disproportionately impacted.

Treasury notes that households presumed to be disproportionately impacted would also be presumptively impacted, as these households have not only experienced pandemic impacts but have experienced disproportionate pandemic impacts; as a result, these households are presumptively eligible for responsive services for both impacted and disproportionately impacted households.

Many different geographic, income-based, or poverty-based presumptions could be used to designate disproportionately impacted populations. The combination of permitting recipients to use QCTs, low-income households, and services provided by Tribal or territorial governments as presumptions balances these varying methods. Specifically, QCTs are a commonly used designation of geographic areas based on low incomes or high poverty rates of households in the community; for recipients providing geographically targeted services, QCTs may provide a simple metric with readily available maps for use. However, Treasury recognizes that QCTs do not capture all underserved populations, including for reasons noted by commenters. By allowing recipients to also presume that low-income households were disproportionately impacted, the final rule provides greater flexibility to serve underserved households or communities. Data on household incomes is also readily available at varying levels of geographic granularity (e.g., Census Tracts, counties), again permitting flexibility to adapt to local circumstances and needs. Finally, Treasury notes that, as discussed further below, recipients may also identify other households, populations, and

communities disproportionately impacted by the pandemic, in addition to those presumed to be disproportionately impacted.

Additionally, Tribal and territorial governments may face both disproportionate impacts of the pandemic and administrability challenges with operationalizing the income-based standard; therefore, Treasury has presumed that services provided by these governments respond to disproportionate pandemic impacts. Given a lack of regularly published data on household incomes in most territories,³² as well as a lack of poverty guidelines developed for these jurisdictions,³³ it may be highly challenging to assess disproportionate impact in these communities according to an income- or poverty-based standard. Similarly, data on incomes in Tribal communities are not readily available.³⁴ Finally, as described in the sections on Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts, Tribal communities have faced particularly severe health and economic impacts of the pandemic. Similarly, available research suggests that preexisting health and economic disparities in the territories amplified the impact of the pandemic on these communities.³⁵

Categorical Eligibility

Public Comment: Several commenters suggested that the final rule permit recipients to rely on a beneficiary's eligibility for other federal benefits programs as an easily administrable proxy for identifying a group or population that experienced a negative economic impact as a result of the COVID-19 public health emergency (i.e., categorical eligibility). In other words, a recipient would determine that individuals or households are eligible for an SLFRF-funded program based on the individual or household's eligibility in another program, typically another federal benefit program. Commenters noted that categorical eligibility is a common policy in program

administration that can significantly ease administrative burden on both program administrators and beneficiaries.

Treasury Response: Treasury agrees that allowing recipients to identify impacted and disproportionately impacted beneficiaries based on their eligibility for other programs with similar income tests would ease administrative burden. To the extent that the other program's eligibility criteria align with a population or class that experienced a negative economic impact of the pandemic, this approach is also consistent with the process allowed under the final rule for recipients to determine that a class has experienced a negative economic impact, and then document that an individual receiving services is a member of the class. For these reasons, the final rule recognizes categorical eligibility for the following programs and populations:

- *Impacted households.* Treasury will recognize a household as impacted if it otherwise qualifies for any of the following programs:
 - Children's Health Insurance Program (CHIP)
 - Childcare Subsidies through the Child Care and Development Fund (CCDF) Program
 - Medicaid
 - National Housing Trust Fund (HTF), for affordable housing programs only
 - Home Investment Partnerships Program (HOME), for affordable housing programs only
- *Disproportionately impacted households.* Treasury will recognize a household as disproportionately impacted if it otherwise qualifies for any of the following programs:
 - Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF)
 - Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program (SNAP)
 - Free and Reduced-Price Lunch (NSLP) and/or School Breakfast (SBP) programs
 - Medicare Part D Low-income Subsidies
 - Supplemental Security Income (SSI)
 - Head Start and/or Early Head Start
 - Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants, and Children (WIC)
 - Section 8 Vouchers
 - Low-Income Home Energy Assistance Program (LIHEAP)
 - Pell Grants
 - For services to address educational disparities, Treasury will recognize Title

³² For instance, the American Community Survey does not include all territories. U.S. Census Bureau, Areas Published, <https://www.census.gov/programs-surveys/acs/geography-acs/areas-published.html> (last visited November 9, 2021).

³³ U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, *supra* note 24.

³⁴ For instance, data from the American Community Survey is based on geographical location rather than Tribal membership. U.S. Census Bureau, My Tribal Area, https://www.census.gov/Tribal/Tribal_glossary.php.

³⁵ Lina Stoylar et al., Challenges in the U.S. Territories: COVID-19 and the Medicaid Financing Cliff, Kaiser Family Foundation (May 18, 2021), <https://www.kff.org/coronavirus-covid-19/issue-brief/challenges-in-the-u-s-territories-covid-19-and-the-medicaid-financing-cliff/>.

I eligible schools³⁶ as disproportionately impacted and responsive services that support the school generally or support the whole school as eligible

c. Standards for Identifying Other Eligible Populations

Standards: Designating Other Impacted Classes

Public Comment: Treasury received multiple comments requesting additional clarification about how classes of impacted individuals may be designated, as well as questions asking whether recipients must demonstrate a specific public health or negative economic impact to each entity served (e.g., each household receiving assistance under a program). There were several comments requesting that specific geographic designations, like a county or Impact Zone, be eligible to use as a determining boundary.

Treasury Response: The interim final rule allowed, and the final rule maintains, the ability for recipients to demonstrate a public health or negative economic impact on a class and to provide assistance to beneficiaries that fall within that class. Consistent with the scope of beneficiaries included in sections 602(c)(1)(A) and 603(c)(1)(A) of the Social Security Act, Treasury is clarifying that a recipient may identify such impacts for a class of households, small businesses, or nonprofits. In such cases, the recipient need only demonstrate that the household, small business, or nonprofit is within the relevant class. For example, a recipient could determine that restaurants in the downtown area had generally experienced a negative economic impact and provide assistance to those small businesses to respond. When providing this assistance, the recipient would only need to demonstrate that the small businesses receiving assistance were restaurants in the downtown area. The recipient would not need to demonstrate that each restaurant served experienced its own negative economic impact.

In identifying an impacted class and responsive program, service, or capital expenditure, recipients should consider the relationship between the definition of the class and proposed response. Larger and less-specific classes are less likely to have experienced similar harms and thus the responses are less

likely to be responsive to the harms identified. That is, as the group of entities being served by a program has a wider set of fact patterns, or the type of entities, their circumstances, or their pandemic experiences differ more substantially, it may be more difficult to determine that the class has actually experienced the same or similar negative economic impact and that the response is appropriately tailored to address that impact.

Standard: Designating Other Disproportionately Impacted Classes

Summary of Interim Final Rule: As noted above, the interim final rule provided a broad set of enumerated eligible uses of funds in disproportionately impacted communities, including to address pre-existing disparities that contributed to more severe pandemic impacts in these communities. The interim final rule presumed that these services are eligible uses when provided in a QCT, to families and individuals living in QCTs, or when these services are provided by Tribal governments. Recipients may also provide these services to “other populations, households, or geographic areas disproportionately impacted by the pandemic” and, in identifying these disproportionately impacted communities, should be able to support their determination that the pandemic resulted in disproportionate public health or economic outcomes to the group identified.

Public Comment: A significant number of commenters expressed uncertainty regarding the process for determining eligibility for disproportionately impacted communities beyond QCTs. A commenter noted that a clearer definition of “disproportionately impacted” should be delineated and that any definition should include communities of color and people of limited means. Some commenters suggested a template or checklist to see if an area meets the standard for disproportionately impacted communities outside of QCTs. Some commenters stated that QCT and non-QCT beneficiaries should be treated the same.

Treasury Response: Under the interim final rule, presuming eligibility for services in QCTs, for populations living in QCTs, and for Tribal governments was intended to ease administrative burden, providing a simple path for recipients to offer services in underserved communities, and is not an exhaustive list of disproportionately impacted communities. To further clarify, the final rule codifies the

interpretive framework discussed above, including presumptions of groups disproportionately impacted, as well as the ability to identify other disproportionately impacted populations, households, or geographies (referred to here as disproportionately impacted classes).

As discussed in the interim final rule, in identifying other disproportionately impacted classes, recipients should be able to support their determination that the pandemic resulted in disproportionate public health or economic outcomes to the specific populations, households, or geographic areas to be served. For example, the interim final rule considered data regarding the rate of COVID-19 infections and deaths in low-income and socially vulnerable communities, noting that these communities have experienced the most severe health impacts, compared to national averages. Similarly, the interim final rule considered the high concentration of low-income workers performing essential work, the reduced ability to socially distance, and other pre-existing public health challenges, all of which correlate with more severe COVID-19 outcomes. The interim final rule also considered the disproportionate economic impacts of the pandemic, citing, for example, the rate of job losses among low-income persons as compared to the general population. The interim final rule then identified QCTs, a common, readily accessible, and geographically granular method of identifying communities with a large proportion of low-income residents, as presumed to be disproportionately impacted by the pandemic.

In other words, the interim final rule identified disproportionately impacted populations by assessing the impacts of the pandemic and finding that some populations experienced meaningfully more severe impacts than the general public. Similarly, to identify disproportionately impacted classes, recipients should compare the impacts experienced by that class to the typical or average impacts of the pandemic in their local area, state, or nationally.

Recipients may identify classes of households, communities, small businesses, nonprofits, or populations that have experienced a disproportionate impact based on academic research or government research publications, through analysis of their own data, or through analysis of other existing data sources. To augment their analysis, or when quantitative data is not readily available, recipients may also consider qualitative research and sources like resident interviews or

³⁶ Title I eligible schools means schools eligible to receive services under section 1113 of Title I, Part A of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965, as amended (20 U.S.C. 6313), including schools served under section 1113(b)(1)(C) of that Act.

feedback from relevant state and local agencies, such as public health departments or social services departments. In both cases, recipients should consider the quality of the research, data, and applicability of analysis to their determination.

In designing a program or service that responds to a disproportionately impacted class, a recipient must first identify the impact and then identify an appropriate response. To assess disproportionate impact, recipients should rely on data or research that measures the public health or negative economic impact. An assessment of the effects of a response (e.g., survey data on levels of resident support for various potential responses) is not a substitute for an assessment of the impact experienced by a particular class. Data about the appropriateness or desirability of a response may be used to assess the reasonableness of a response, once an impact or disproportionate impact has been identified but should not be the basis for assessing impact.

2. Public Health Background

On January 21, 2020, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) identified the first case of novel coronavirus in the United States.³⁷ Since that time, and through present day, the United States has faced numerous waves of the virus that have brought acute strain on health care and public health systems. At various points in the pandemic, hospitals and emergency medical services have seen significant influxes of patients; response personnel have faced shortages of personal protective equipment; testing for the virus has been scarce; and congregate living facilities like nursing homes have seen rapid spread.

Since the initial wave of the COVID-19 pandemic, the United States has faced several additional major waves that continued to impact communities and stretch public health services. The summer 2020 wave impacted communities in the south and southwest. As the weather turned colder and people spent more time indoors, a wave throughout fall and winter 2020 impacted communities in almost every region of the country as the virus reached a point of uncontrolled spread and over 3,000 people died per day due to COVID-19.³⁸

³⁷ Press Release, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, First Travel-related Case of 2019 Novel Coronavirus Detected in United States (Jan. 21, 2020), <https://www.cdc.gov/media/releases/2020/p0121-novel-coronavirus-travel-case.html>.

³⁸ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker: Trends in Number of COVID-

In December 2020, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) authorized COVID-19 vaccines for emergency use, and soon thereafter, mass vaccination in the United States began. At the time of the interim final rule publication in May 2021, the number of daily new infections was steeply declining as rapid vaccination campaigns progressed across the country. By summer 2021, COVID-19 cases had fallen to their lowest level since early months of the pandemic, when testing was scarce. However, throughout late summer and early fall, the Delta variant, a more infectious and transmissible variant of the SARS-CoV-2 virus, sparked yet another surge. From June to early September, the seven-day moving average of reported cases rose from 12,000 to 165,000.³⁹

As of December 2021, COVID-19 in total has infected over 50 million and killed over 800,000 Americans.⁴⁰ Preventing and mitigating the spread of COVID-19 continues to require a major public health response from federal, state, local, and Tribal governments.

First, state, local, and Tribal governments across the country have mobilized to support the national vaccination campaign. As of December 2021, more than 80 percent of adults have received at least one dose, with more than 470 million total doses administered.⁴¹ Additionally, more than 15 million children over the age of 12 have received at least one dose of the vaccine and over 47 million people have received a booster dose.⁴² Vaccines for younger children, ages 5 through 11, have been approved and are reaching communities and families across the country. As new variants continue to emerge globally, the national effort to administer vaccinations and other COVID-19 mitigation strategies will be a critical component of the public health response.

In early reporting on uses of SLFRF funds, recipients have indicated that they plan to put funds to immediate use to support continued vaccination campaigns. For example, one recipient has indicated that it plans to use SLFRF

19 Cases and Deaths in the US Reported to CDC, by State/Territory, https://covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#trends_dailytrendscases (last visited December 7, 2021).

³⁹ *Id.*

⁴⁰ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker, <http://www.covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#data-tracker-home> (last visited December 31, 2021).

⁴¹ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker: COVID-19 Vaccinations in the United States, <https://covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#vaccinations> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁴² *Id.*

funds to support a vaccine incentive program, providing \$100 gift cards to residents at community vaccination clinics. The program aimed to target communities with high public health needs.⁴³ Another recipient reported that it is partnering with multiple agencies, organizations, and providers to distribute COVID-19 vaccinations to homebound residents in assisted living facilities.⁴⁴

State, local, and Tribal governments have also continued to execute other aspects of a wide-ranging public health response, including increasing access to COVID-19 testing and rapid at-home tests, contact tracing, support for individuals in isolation or quarantine, enforcement of public health orders, new public communication efforts, public health surveillance (e.g., monitoring case trends and genomic sequencing for variants), enhancement to health care capacity through alternative care facilities, and enhancement of public health data systems to meet new demands or scaling needs.

State, local, and Tribal governments have also supported major efforts to prevent COVID-19 spread through safety measures at key settings like nursing homes, schools, congregate living settings, dense worksites, incarceration settings, and in other public facilities. This has included, for example, implementing infection prevention measures or making ventilation improvements.

In particular, state, local, and Tribal governments have mounted significant efforts to safely reopen schools. A key factor in school reopening is the ability to implement COVID-19 mitigation strategies such as providing masks and other hygiene resources, improving air-quality and ventilation, increasing outdoor learning and eating spaces, testing and contact tracing protocols, and a number of other measures.⁴⁵ For example, one recipient described plans to use SLFRF funds to further invest in school health resources that were critical components of school reopening and reducing the spread of COVID-19 in schools. Those investments include the increasing school nurses and social

⁴³ Columbus, Ohio Recovery Plan, <https://www.columbus.gov/recovery/>.

⁴⁴ Luzerne County, Pennsylvania Recovery Plan, <https://www.luzernecounty.org/DocumentCenter/View/26304/Final-Interim-Recovery-Plan-Performance-Report-83121>.

⁴⁵ This includes implementing mitigation strategies consistent with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (CDC) Guidance for COVID-19 Prevention in K-12 Schools (November 5, 2021), available at <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/community/schools-childcare/k-12-guidance.html>.

workers, improved ventilation systems, and other health and safety measures.

The need for public health measures to respond to COVID-19 will continue moving forward. This includes the continuation of vaccination campaigns for the general public, booster doses, and children. This also includes monitoring the spread of COVID-19 variants, understanding the impact of these variants, developing approaches to respond, and monitoring global COVID-19 trends. Finally, the long-term health impacts of COVID-19 will continue to require a public health response, including medical services for individuals with “long COVID,” and research to understand how COVID-19 impacts future health needs and raises risks for the tens of millions of Americans who have been infected.

The COVID-19 pandemic also negatively impacted other areas of public health, particularly mental health and substance use. In January 2021, over 40 percent of American adults reported symptoms of depression or anxiety, up from 11 percent in the first half of 2019.⁴⁶ The mental health impacts of the pandemic have been particularly acute for adults ages 18 to 24, racial and ethnic minorities, caregivers for adults, and essential workers, with all reporting significantly higher rates of considering suicide.⁴⁷ The proportion of children’s emergency department visits related to mental health has also risen noticeably.⁴⁸ Similarly, rates of substance use and overdose deaths have spiked: Preliminary data from the CDC show a nearly 30 percent increase in drug overdose mortality from April 2020 to April 2021, bringing the estimated overdose death toll for a 12-month period over 100,000 for the first time ever.⁴⁹ The CDC also found that 13 percent of adults started or increased

substance use to cope with stress related to COVID-19 and 26 percent reported having symptoms of trauma- and stressor-related disorder (TRSD) related to the pandemic.⁵⁰

Another public health challenge exacerbated by the pandemic was violent crime and gun violence, which increased during the pandemic and has disproportionately impacted low-income communities.⁵¹ According to the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI), although the property crime rate fell 8 percent in 2020, the violent crime rate increased 6 percent in 2020 compared to 2019 data.⁵² In particular, the estimated number of aggravated assault offenses rose 12 percent, while murder and manslaughter increased 30 percent from 2019 to 2020.⁵³ The proportion of homicides committed with firearms rose from 73 percent in 2019 to 76 percent in 2020.⁵⁴ Exposure to violence can create serious short-term and long-term harmful effects to health and development, and repeated exposure to violence may be connected to negative health outcomes.⁵⁵ Addressing community violence as a public health issue may help prevent and even reduce additional harm to individuals, households, and communities.⁵⁶

Many communities are using SLFRF funds to invest in holistic approaches in violence prevention that are rooted in targeted outreach and addressing root causes. For example, the City of St. Louis is planning to invest in expanding a “community responder” model designed to provide clinical help and to divert non-violent calls away from the police department. Additionally, the city will expand access to mental health services, allowing residents to seek support at city recreation centers,

libraries, and other public spaces.⁵⁷ Similarly, Los Angeles County will further invest in its “Care First, Jails Last” program which seeks to replace “arrest and incarceration” responses with health interventions.⁵⁸

While the pandemic affected communities across the country, it disproportionately impacted some demographic groups and exacerbated health inequities along racial, ethnic, and socioeconomic lines.⁵⁹ The CDC has found that racial and ethnic minorities are at increased risk for infection, hospitalization, and death from COVID-19, with Hispanic or Latino and Native American or Alaska Native patients at highest risk.⁶⁰

Similarly, low-income and socially vulnerable communities have seen the most severe health impacts. For example, counties with high poverty rates also have the highest rates of infections and deaths, with 308 deaths per 100,000 compared to the U.S. average of 238 deaths per 100,000, as of December 2021.⁶¹ Counties with high social vulnerability, as measured by factors such as poverty and educational attainment, have also fared more poorly than the national average, with 325 deaths per 100,000 as of December 2021.⁶² Over the course of the

⁵⁷ St. Louis, MO Recovery Plan, <https://www.stlouis-mo.gov/government/recovery/covid-19/arpa/plan/>.

⁵⁸ Los Angeles County, CA Recovery Plan, <http://file.lacounty.gov/SDSInter/bos/supdocs/160391.pdf>.

⁵⁹ Office of the White House, National Strategy for the COVID-19 Response and Pandemic Preparedness (Jan. 21, 2021), <https://www.whitehouse.gov/wp-content/uploads/2021/01/National-Strategy-for-the-COVID-19-Response-and-Pandemic-Preparedness.pdf>.

⁶⁰ In a study of 13 states from October to December 2020, the CDC found that Hispanic or Latino and Native American or Alaska Native individuals were 1.7 times more likely to visit an emergency room for COVID-19 than White individuals, and Black individuals were 1.4 times more likely to do so than White individuals. See Sebastian D. Romano et al., Trends in Racial and Ethnic Disparities in COVID-19 Hospitalizations, by Region—United States, March–December 2020, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2021, 70:560–565 (Apr. 16, 2021), https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/70/wr/mm7015e2.htm?s_cid=mm7015e2_w.

⁶¹ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker: Trends in COVID-19 Cases and Deaths in the United States, by County-level Population Factors, https://covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#pop-factors_totaldeaths (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁶² The CDC’s Social Vulnerability Index includes fifteen variables measuring social vulnerability, including unemployment, poverty, education levels, single-parent households, disability status, non-English speaking households, crowded housing, and transportation access.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker: Trends in COVID-19 Cases and Deaths in the United States, by Social

⁴⁶ Nirmita Panchal et al., The Implications of COVID-19 for Mental Health and Substance Abuse (Feb. 10, 2021), [https://www.kff.org/coronavirus/covid-19/issue-brief/the-implications-of-covid-19-for-mental-health-and-substance-use/#:~:text=Older%20adults%20are%20also%20more,prior%20to%20the%20current%20crisis;Mark%20Czeisler%20et%20al.,Mental%20Health,%20Substance%20Abuse,%20and%20Suicidal%20Ideation%20During%20COVID-19%20Pandemic—United%20States,%20June%2024–30%2020,Morb.%20Mortal.%20Wkly.%20Rep.%2069\(32\):1049–57%20\(Aug.%2014,%202020\),https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/69/wr/mm6932a1.htm](https://www.kff.org/coronavirus/covid-19/issue-brief/the-implications-of-covid-19-for-mental-health-and-substance-use/#:~:text=Older%20adults%20are%20also%20more,prior%20to%20the%20current%20crisis;Mark%20Czeisler%20et%20al.,Mental%20Health,%20Substance%20Abuse,%20and%20Suicidal%20Ideation%20During%20COVID-19%20Pandemic—United%20States,%20June%2024–30%2020,Morb.%20Mortal.%20Wkly.%20Rep.%2069(32):1049–57%20(Aug.%2014,%202020),https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/69/wr/mm6932a1.htm).

⁴⁷ *Id.*

⁴⁸ Rebecca T. Leeb et al., Mental Health-Related Emergency Department Visits Among Children Aged <18 Years During the COVID Pandemic—United States, January 1–October 17, 2020, *Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep.* 69(45):1675–80 (Nov. 13, 2020), <https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/69/wr/mm6945a3.htm>.

⁴⁹ Centers for Disease Prevention and Control, National Center for Health Statistics, Provisional Drug Overdose Death Counts, <https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nvss/vsrr/drug-overdose-data.htm> (last visited May 8 December 6, 2021).

⁵⁰ Panchal, *supra* note 46; Mark É. Czeisler et al., *supra* note 46.

⁵¹ The White House, FACT SHEET: More Details on the Biden-Harris Administration’s Investments in Community Violence Interventions (April 7, 2021), <https://www.whitehouse.gov/briefing-room/statements-releases/2021/04/07/fact-sheet-more-details-on-the-biden-harris-administrations-investments-in-community-violence-interventions/>.

⁵² Federal Bureau of Investigation, FBI Releases 2020 Crime Statistics (September 27, 2021) <https://www.fbi.gov/news/pressrel/press-releases/fbi-releases-2020-crime-statistics>.

⁵³ *Id.*

⁵⁴ *Id.*

⁵⁵ The Educational Fund to Stop Gun Violence, Community Gun Violence, <https://efsgv.org/learn/type-of-gun-violence/community-gun-violence/> (last visited November 9, 2021).

⁵⁶ Giffords Law Center, Healing Communities in Crisis: Lifesaving Solutions to the Urban Gun Violence Epidemic (March 2016), <https://giffords.org/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/Healing-Communities-in-Crisis.pdf>.

pandemic, Native Americans have experienced more than one and a half times the rate of COVID-19 infections, more than triple the rate of hospitalizations, and more than double the death rate compared to White Americans.⁶³ Low-income and minority communities also exhibit higher rates of pre-existing conditions that may contribute to an increased risk of COVID-19 mortality.⁶⁴ In addition, individuals living in low-income communities may have had more limited ability to socially distance or to self-isolate when ill, resulting in faster spread of the virus, and were over-represented among essential workers, who face greater risk of exposure.⁶⁵

Social distancing measures in response to the pandemic may have also exacerbated pre-existing public health challenges. For example, for children living in homes with lead paint, spending substantially more time at home raises the risk of developing elevated blood lead levels, while screenings for elevated blood lead levels declined during the pandemic.⁶⁶ The combination of these underlying social and health vulnerabilities may have contributed to more severe public health outcomes of the pandemic within these communities, resulting in an exacerbation of pre-existing disparities in health outcomes.⁶⁷

Vulnerability Index, https://covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#pop-factors_totaldeaths (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁶³ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Risk for COVID-19 Infection, Hospitalization, and Death By Race/Ethnicity, <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/covid-data/investigations-discovery/hospitalization-death-by-race-ethnicity.html> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁶⁴ See, e.g., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Risk of Severe Illness or Death from COVID-19 (Dec. 10, 2020), <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/community/health-equity/racial-ethnic-disparities/disparities-illness.html> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁶⁵ Milena Almagro et al., Racial Disparities in Frontline Workers and Housing Crowding During COVID-19: Evidence from Geolocation Data (Sept. 22, 2020), NYU Stern School of Business (forthcoming), available at https://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=3695249; Grace McCormack et al., Economic Vulnerability of Households with Essential Workers, *JAMA* 324(4):388–90 (2020), available at <https://jamanetwork.com/journals/jama/fullarticle/2767630>.

⁶⁶ See, e.g., Joseph G. Courtney et al., Decreases in Young Children Who Received Blood Lead Level Testing During COVID-19—34 Jurisdictions, January–May 2020, *Morb. Mort. Wkly. Rep.* 70(5):155–61 (Feb. 5, 2021), <https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/70/wr/mm7005a2.htm>; Emily A. Benfer & Lindsay F. Wiley, Health Justice Strategies to Combat COVID-19: Protecting Vulnerable Communities During a Pandemic, *Health Affairs Blog* (Mar. 19, 2020), <https://www.healthaffairs.org/doi/10.1377/hblog20200319.757883/full>.

⁶⁷ See, e.g., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *supra* note 62; Benfer & Wiley, *supra* note 66; Nathaniel M. Lewis et al., Disparities in COVID-19 Incidence, Hospitalizations, and Testing,

Summary of the Interim Final Rule Approach to Public Health

Summary: As discussed above, the interim final rule provided flexibility for recipients to pursue a wide range of eligible uses to “respond to” the COVID-19 public health emergency. Uses of funds to “respond to” the public health emergency address the SARS-CoV-2 virus itself, support efforts to prevent or decrease spread of the virus, and address other impacts of the pandemic on public health. The interim final rule implemented these provisions by identifying a non-exhaustive list of programs or services that may be funded as responding to COVID-19 (“enumerated eligible uses”), along with considerations for evaluating other potential uses of funds not explicitly listed. Enumerated eligible uses are discussed below. For guidance on how to determine whether a particular use is allowable, beyond those enumerated, see section Standards: Identifying a Public Health Impact.

Enumerated eligible uses under this section built and expanded upon permissible expenditures under the Coronavirus Relief Fund; for clarity, the interim final rule expressly listed as eligible uses the uses permissible under the Coronavirus Relief Fund, with minor exceptions.⁶⁸ The interim final rule also recognized that the nature of the COVID-19 public health emergency, and responsive policy measures, programs, and services, had changed over time and is expected to continue evolving.

The interim final rule categorized enumerated eligible uses to respond to the public health emergency into several categories: (1) COVID-19 mitigation and prevention, (2) medical expenses, (3) behavioral health care, (4) public health and safety staff, (5) expenses to improve the design and execution of health and public health programs, and (6) eligible uses to address disparities in public health outcomes. For each category in turn, this section describes public comments received and Treasury’s responses, as well as comments received

by Area-Level Deprivation—Utah, March 3–July 9, 2020, *Morb. Mort. Wkly. Rep.* 69(38):1369–73 (Sept. 25, 2020), <https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/69/wr/mm6938a4.htm>.

⁶⁸ Generally, funding uses eligible under CRF as a response to the direct public health impacts of COVID-19 will continue to be eligible under the ARPA, including those not explicitly listed in the final rule, with the following two exceptions: (1) The standard for eligibility of public health and safety payrolls has been updated (see section Public Sector Capacity and Workforce in General Provisions: Other) and (2) expenses related to the issuance of tax-anticipation notes are no longer an eligible funding use (see section Restrictions on Use: Debt Service).

proposing additional enumerated eligible uses.

Reorganizations and Cross-References: In some cases, enumerated eligible uses included in the interim final rule under responding to the public health emergency have been re-categorized in the organization of the final rule to enhance clarity. For discussion of eligible uses for public health and safety staff and to improve the design and execution of public health programs, please see section Public Sector Capacity and Workforce in General Provisions: Other. For discussion of eligible uses to address disparities in public health outcomes, please see section Assistance to Households in Negative Economic Impacts.

Conversely, discussion of eligible assistance to small businesses and nonprofits to respond to public health impacts has been moved from Assistance to Small Businesses and Assistance to Nonprofits in Negative Economic Impacts to this section. This change is consistent with the interim final rule, which provides that appropriate responses to address the public health impacts of COVID-19 may be provided to any type of entity.

a. COVID-19 Mitigation and Prevention

COVID-19 public health response and mitigation tactics. Recognizing the broad range of services and programming needed to contain COVID-19, the interim final rule provided an extensive list of enumerated eligible uses to prevent and mitigate COVID-19 and made clear that the public health response to the virus is expected to continue to evolve over time, necessitating different uses of funds.

Enumerated eligible uses of funds in this category included: Vaccination programs; medical care; testing; contact tracing; support for isolation or quarantine; supports for vulnerable populations to access medical or public health services; public health surveillance (e.g., monitoring case trends, genomic sequencing for variants); enforcement of public health orders; public communication efforts; enhancement to health care capacity, including through alternative care facilities; purchases of personal protective equipment; support for prevention, mitigation, or other services in congregate living facilities (e.g., nursing homes, incarceration settings, homeless shelters, group living facilities) and other key settings like schools; ventilation improvements in congregate settings, health care settings, or other key locations; enhancement of

public health data systems; other public health responses; and capital investments in public facilities to meet pandemic operational needs, such as physical plant improvements to public hospitals and health clinics or adaptations to public buildings to implement COVID-19 mitigation tactics. These enumerated uses are consistent with guidance from public health authorities, including the CDC.

Public Comment: Many commenters were supportive of expansive enumerated eligible uses for mitigating and preventing COVID-19, noting the wide range of activities that governments may undertake and the continued changing landscape of pandemic response. Some commenters requested that Treasury engage in ongoing consideration of and consultation on evolving public health needs and resulting eligible expenses. Some commenters noted that their jurisdiction does not have an official public health program, for example smaller jurisdictions or those that do not have a health department, and requested clarification on whether their public health expenses would still be eligible in compliance with program rules.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining an expansive list of enumerated eligible uses to mitigate and prevent COVID-19, given the wide-ranging activities that governments may take to further these goals, including “other public health responses.” Note that the final rule discusses several of these enumerated uses in more detail below.

Treasury is further clarifying that when providing COVID-19 prevention and mitigation services, recipients can identify the impacted population as the general public. Treasury presumes that all enumerated eligible uses for programs and services, including COVID-19 mitigation and prevention programs and services, are reasonably proportional responses to the harm identified unless a response is grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced. Note that capital expenditures are not considered “programs and services” and are not presumed to be reasonably proportional responses to an identified harm except as provided in section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other. In other words, recipients can provide any COVID-19 prevention or mitigation service to members of the general public without any further analysis of impacts of the pandemic on those individuals and whether the service is responsive.

This approach gives recipient governments an extensive set of eligible

uses that can adapt to local needs, as well as evolving response needs and developments in understanding of transmission of COVID-19. Treasury emphasizes how the enumerated eligible uses can adapt to changing circumstances. For example, when the interim final rule was released, national daily COVID-19 cases were at relatively low levels and declining;⁶⁹ as the Delta variant spread and cases peaked in many areas of the country, particularly those with low vaccination rates, government response needs and tactics evolved, and the SLFRF funds provided the ability to quickly and nimbly adapt to new public health needs. Treasury also notes that funds may be used to support compliance with and implementation of COVID-19 safety requirements, including vaccination requirements, testing programs, or other required practices.

Recipient governments do not need to have an official health or public health program in order to utilize these eligible uses; any recipient can pursue these eligible uses, though Treasury recommends consulting with health and public health professionals to support effective implementation.

The CDC has provided recommendations and guidelines to help mitigate and prevent COVID-19. The interim final rule and final rule help support recipients in stopping the spread of COVID-19 through these recommendations and guidelines.⁷⁰ The final rule reflects changing circumstances of COVID-19 and provides a broad range of permissible uses for mitigating and preventing the spread of the disease, in a manner consistent with CDC guidelines and recommendations.

The purpose of the SLFRF funds is to mitigate the fiscal effects stemming from the COVID-19 public health emergency, including by supporting efforts to stop the spread of the virus. The interim final rule and final rule implement this objective by, in part, providing that recipients may use SLFRF funds for COVID-19 mitigation and prevention.⁷¹ A program or service that imposes conditions on participation in or acceptance of the service that would undermine efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19 or discourage compliance with recommendations and guidelines

⁶⁹ See Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker, https://covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#trends_dailycases (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁷⁰ See Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID-19, <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/index.html> (last visited November 8, 2021).

⁷¹ See § 35.6(b); Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, 86 FR at 26786.

in CDC guidance for stopping the spread of COVID-19 is not a permissible use of funds. In other words, recipients may not use funds for a program that undermines practices included in the CDC’s guidelines and recommendations for stopping the spread of COVID-19. This includes programs that impose a condition to discourage compliance with practices in line with CDC guidance (e.g., paying off fines to businesses incurred for violation of COVID-19 vaccination or safety requirements), as well as programs that require households, businesses, nonprofits, or other entities not to use practices in line with CDC guidance as a condition of receiving funds (e.g., requiring that businesses abstain from requiring mask use or employee vaccination as a condition of receiving SLFRF funds).

Vaccination programs and vaccine incentives. At the time of the interim final rule release, many vaccination programs were using mass vaccination tactics to rapidly reach Americans en masse for first vaccine doses.⁷² Since that time, the FDA has authorized booster vaccine doses for certain groups and certain vaccines and has also authorized vaccines for youths.^{73 74} The inclusion of “vaccination programs” as an eligible use allows for adaptation as the needs of programs change or new groups become eligible for different types of vaccinations.

Public Comment: Since the release of the interim final rule, many recipient governments have also requested clarification on whether vaccine incentives are a permissible use of funds.

Treasury Response: Treasury issued guidance clarifying that “[vaccine] programs that provide incentives reasonably expected to increase the number of people who choose to get vaccinated, or that motivate people to get vaccinated sooner than they otherwise would have, are an allowable

⁷² Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, COVID Data Tracker: COVID-19 Vaccinations in the United States, <https://covid.cdc.gov/covid-data-tracker/#vaccinations> (last visited October 18, 2021).

⁷³ U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Coronavirus (COVID-19) Update: FDA Takes Additional Actions on the Use of a Booster Dose for COVID-19 Vaccines, <https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-authorizes-pfizer-biontech-covid-19-vaccine-emergency-use-children-5-through-11-years-age> (last visited November 8, 2021).

⁷⁴ U.S. Food and Drug Administration, FDA Authorizes Pfizer-BioNTech COVID-19 Vaccine for Emergency Use in Children 5 through 11 Years of Age, <https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-authorizes-pfizer-biontech-covid-19-vaccine-emergency-use-children-5-through-11-years-age> (last visited November 8, 2021).

use of funds so long as such costs are reasonably proportional to the expected public health benefit.”⁷⁵ This use of funds remains permissible under the final rule.

Capital Expenditures

Public Comment: Many commenters requested clarification around the types and scope of permissible capital investments in public facilities to meet pandemic operational needs; ventilation improvements in congregate settings, health care settings, or other key locations; and whether support for prevention and mitigation in congregate facilities could include facilities renovations, improvements, or construction of new facilities, or if the facilities must solely be used for COVID-19 response.

Treasury Response: For clarity, Treasury has addressed the eligibility standard for capital expenditures, or investments in property, facilities, or equipment, in one section of this Supplementary Information; see section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other. In recognition of the importance of capital expenditures in the COVID-19 public health response, Treasury enumerates that the following projects are examples of eligible capital expenditures, as long as they meet the standards for capital expenditures in section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other:

- Improvements or construction of COVID-19 testing sites and laboratories, and acquisition of related equipment;
- Improvements or construction of COVID-19 vaccination sites;
- Improvements or construction of medical facilities generally dedicated to COVID-19 treatment and mitigation (e.g., emergency rooms, intensive care units, telemedicine capabilities for COVID-19 related treatment);
- Expenses of establishing temporary medical facilities and other measures to increase COVID-19 treatment capacity, including related construction costs;
- Acquisition of equipment for COVID-19 prevention and treatment, including ventilators, ambulances, and other medical or emergency services equipment;
- Improvements to or construction of emergency operations centers and acquisition of emergency response

equipment (e.g., emergency response radio systems);

- Installation and improvements of ventilation systems;
- Costs of establishing public health data systems, including technology infrastructure;
- Adaptations to congregate living facilities, including skilled nursing facilities, other long-term care facilities, incarceration settings, homeless shelters, residential foster care facilities, residential behavioral health treatment, and other group living facilities, as well as public facilities and schools (excluding construction of new facilities for the purpose of mitigating spread of COVID-19 in the facility); and
- Mitigation measures in small businesses, nonprofits, and impacted industries (e.g., developing outdoor spaces).

Other clarifications on COVID-19 mitigation: *Medical care, supports for vulnerable populations, data systems, carceral settings.* Based on public comments and questions received from recipients following the interim final rule, Treasury is making several further clarifications on enumerated eligible uses in this category.

Public Comment: Several commenters requested clarification on eligible uses of funds for medical care; Treasury addresses those comments in the section Medical Expenses below.

Public Comment: Recipients posed questions on the type and scope of activities eligible as “supports for vulnerable populations to access medical or public health services.”

Treasury Response: Enumerated eligible uses should be considered in the context of the eligible use category or section where they appear; in this case, “supports for vulnerable populations to access medical or public health services” appears in the section COVID-19 Mitigation and Prevention. As such, these eligible uses should help vulnerable or high-risk populations access services that mitigate COVID-19, for example, transportation assistance to reach vaccination sites, mobile vaccination or testing programs, or on-site vaccination or testing services for homebound individuals, those in group homes, or similar settings.

Public Comment: Some commenters asked whether “enhancement of public health data systems” could include investments in software, databases, and other information technology resources that support responses to the COVID-19 public health emergency but also provide benefits for other use cases and long-term capacity of public health departments and systems.

Treasury Response: These are permissible uses of funds under the interim final rule and remain eligible under the final rule.

Assistance to Businesses and Nonprofits To Implement COVID-19 Mitigation Strategies

Background: As detailed above, Treasury received many public comments describing uncertainty about which eligible use category should be used to assess different potential uses of funds. As a result, Treasury has re-categorized some uses of funds in the final rule to provide greater clarity, consistent with the principle that uses of funds should be assessed based on their intended beneficiary. For example, COVID-19 mitigation and prevention serves the general public or specific populations within the public. However, in the interim final rule, assistance to small businesses, nonprofits, and impacted industries to implement COVID-19 mitigation and prevention strategies was categorized in the respective sections within Negative Economic Impacts. The final rule consolidates all COVID-19 mitigation and prevention within Public Health.

Public Comment: Treasury has received multiple comments and questions about which eligible use permits the recipient to provide assistance to businesses and nonprofits to address the public health impacts of COVID-19.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, these services have been re-categorized under COVID-19 mitigation and prevention to reflect the fact that this assistance responds to public health impacts of the pandemic rather than the negative economic impacts to a small business, nonprofit, or impacted industry. When providing COVID-19 mitigation and prevention services, recipients can identify the impacted entity as small businesses, nonprofits, or businesses in impacted industries in general. As with all enumerated eligible uses, recipients may presume that all COVID-19 mitigation and prevention programs and services are reasonably proportional responses to the harm identified unless a response is grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced. Note that capital expenditures are not considered “programs and services” and are not presumed to be reasonably proportional responses to an identified harm except as provided in section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other. In other words, recipients can provide any COVID-19 prevention or mitigation service to small businesses, nonprofits, and businesses in impacted

⁷⁵ Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRFAQ.pdf>. Note that programs may provide incentives to individuals who have already received a vaccination if the incentive is reasonably expected to increase the number of people who choose to get vaccinated or motivate people to get vaccinated sooner and the costs are reasonably proportional to the expected public health benefit.

industries without any further analysis of impacts of the pandemic on those entities and whether the service is responsive.

In some cases, this means that an entity not otherwise eligible to receive assistance to respond to negative economic impacts of the pandemic, for example an entity that did not experience a negative economic impact, may still be eligible to receive assistance under this category for COVID-19 mitigation and prevention services.

Uses of funds can include loans, grants, or in-kind assistance to small businesses, nonprofits, or other entities to implement COVID-19 prevention or mitigation tactics, such as vaccination; testing; contact tracing programs; physical plant changes to enable greater use of outdoor spaces or ventilation improvements; enhanced cleaning efforts; and barriers or partitions. For example, this would include assistance to a restaurant to establish an outdoor patio, given evidence showing much lower risk of COVID-19 transmission outdoors.⁷⁶ Uses of funds can also include aid to travel, tourism, hospitality, and other impacted industries to implement COVID-19 mitigation and prevention measures to enable safe reopening, for example, vaccination or testing programs, improvements to ventilation, physical barriers or partitions, signage to facilitate social distancing, provision of masks or personal protective equipment, or consultation with infection prevention professionals to develop safe reopening plans.

Recipients providing assistance to small businesses, nonprofits, or impacted industries that includes capital expenditures (*i.e.*, expenditures on property, facilities, or equipment) should also review the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other, which describes eligibility standards for these expenditures. Recipients providing assistances in the form of loans should review the section Treatment of Loans Made with SLFRF Funds in General Provisions: Other.

Recipients should also be aware of the difference between beneficiaries of assistance and subrecipients when working with small businesses, nonprofits, or impacted industries. As noted above, Treasury presumes that the general public, as well as small businesses, nonprofits, and impacted industries in general, has been impacted by the COVID-19 disease itself and is

eligible for services that mitigate or prevent COVID-19 spread. As such, a small business, nonprofit, or impacted industry receiving assistance to implement COVID-19 mitigation measures is a beneficiary of assistance (*e.g.*, granting funds to a small business to develop an outdoor patio to reduce transmission). In contrast, if a recipient contracts with, or grants funds to, a small business, nonprofit, or impacted industry to carry out an eligible use for COVID-19 mitigation on behalf of the recipient, the entity is a subrecipient (*e.g.*, contracting with a small business to operate COVID-19 vaccination sites). For further information on distinguishing between beneficiaries and subrecipients, as well as the impacts of the distinction on reporting and other requirements, see section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries.

b. Medical Expenses

Background: The interim final rule also included as an enumerated eligible use medical expenses, including medical care and services to address the near-term and potential longer-term impacts of the disease on individuals infected.

Public Comment: Some commenters sought clarification on the types of medical expenses eligible and for whom, including whether funds could be used under this category for expanding health insurance coverage (*e.g.*, subsidies for premiums, expanding a group health plan), improvements to healthcare facilities or establishment of new medical facilities, direct costs of medical services, and costs to a self-funded health insurance plan (*e.g.*, a county government health plan) for COVID-19 medical care.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining this enumerated eligible use category and clarifying that it covers costs related to medical care provided directly to an individual due to COVID-19 infection (*e.g.*, treatment) or a potential infection (*e.g.*, testing). This can include medical costs to uninsured individuals; deductibles, co-pays, or other costs not covered by insurance; costs for uncompensated care at a health provider; emergency medical response costs; and, for recipients with a self-funded health insurance plan, excess health insurance costs due to COVID-19 medical care. These are medical expenses due to COVID-19 and distinguish this category of eligible uses from other related eligible uses, like COVID-19 mitigation and prevention and health insurance expenses to households, to provide greater clarity for recipients in determining which

category of eligible uses they should review to assess a potential use of funds. For discussion of eligibility for programs to expand health insurance coverage, see section Assistance to Households.

c. Behavioral Health Care

Background: Recognizing that the public health emergency, necessary mitigation measures like social distancing, and the economic downturn have exacerbated mental health and substance use challenges for many Americans, the interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use for mental health treatment, substance use treatment, and other behavioral health services, including a non-exhaustive list of specific services that would be eligible under this category.

Public Comment: Many commenters expressed support for the interim final rule's recognition of behavioral health impacts of the pandemic and eligible uses under this category. Several commenters requested clarification on the types of eligible services under this category, specifically whether both acute and chronic care are included as well as services that often do not directly accept insurance payments, like peer support groups. Some commenters highlighted the importance of cultural competence in providing effective behavioral health services. Some commenters suggested that funding should be available broadly and quickly for this purpose, recommending that funding available for behavioral health not be tied to the amount of revenue loss experienced by the recipient.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining this enumerated eligible use category and clarifying that it covers an expansive array of services for prevention, treatment, recovery, and harm reduction for mental health, substance use, and other behavioral health challenges caused or exacerbated by the public health emergency. The specific services listed in the interim final rule also remain eligible.⁷⁷

Treasury is further clarifying that when providing behavioral health services, recipients can identify the impacted population as the general public and, as with all enumerated eligible uses, presume that all programs and services are reasonably proportional responses to the harm identified unless a response is grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced. In contrast, capital expenditures are not

⁷⁶ See Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Participate in Outdoor and Indoor Activities, <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/daily-life-coping/outdoor-activities.html> (last visited November 8, 2021).

⁷⁷ Hotlines or warmlines, crisis intervention, overdose prevention, infectious disease prevention, and services or outreach to promote access to physical or behavioral health primary care and preventative medicine.

considered “programs and services” and are not presumed to be reasonably proportional responses to an identified harm except as provided in section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other.

In other words, recipients can provide behavioral health services to members of the general public without any further analysis of impacts of the pandemic on those individuals and whether the service is responsive. Recipients may also use this eligible use category to respond to increased rates of behavioral health challenges at a population level or, at an individual level, new behavioral health challenges or exacerbation of pre-existing challenges, including new barriers to accessing treatment.

Services that respond to these impacts of the public health emergency may include services across the continuum of care, including both acute and chronic care, such as prevention, outpatient treatment, inpatient treatment, crisis care, diversion programs (e.g., from emergency departments or criminal justice system involvement), outreach to individuals not yet engaged in treatment, harm reduction, and supports for long-term recovery (e.g., peer support or recovery coaching, housing, transportation, employment services).

Recipients may also provide services for special populations, for example, enhanced services in schools to address increased rates of behavioral health challenges for youths, mental health first responder or law enforcement-mental health co-responder programs to divert individuals experiencing mental illness from the criminal justice system, or services for pregnant women with substance use disorders or infants born with neonatal abstinence syndrome. Finally, recipients may use funds for programs or services to support equitable access to services and reduce racial, ethnic, or socioeconomic disparities in access to high-quality treatment.

Eligible uses of funds may include services typically billable to insurance⁷⁸ or services not typically billable to insurance, such as peer support groups, costs for residence in supportive housing or recovery housing, and the 988 National Suicide Prevention Lifeline or other hotline services. Recipients may also use funds in conjunction with other federal grants or programs (see section Program Administration Provisions), though

eligible services under SLFRF are not limited to those eligible under existing federal programs.

Given the public health emergency’s exacerbation of the ongoing opioid and overdose crisis, Treasury highlights several ways that funds may be used to respond to opioid use disorder and prevent overdose mortality.⁷⁹ Specifically, eligible uses of funds include programs to expand access to evidence-based treatment like medications to treat opioid use disorder (e.g., direct costs or incentives for emergency departments, prisons, jails, and outpatient providers to offer medications and low-barrier treatment), naloxone distribution, syringe service programs, outreach to individuals in active use, post-overdose follow up programs, programs for diversion from the criminal justice system, and contingency management interventions.

Finally, for clarity, Treasury has addressed the eligibility standard for capital expenditures, or investments in property, facilities, or equipment, in one section of this Supplementary Information; see section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other. Examples of capital expenditures related to behavioral health that Treasury recognizes as eligible include behavioral health facilities and equipment (e.g., inpatient or outpatient mental health or substance use treatment facilities, crisis centers, diversion centers), as long as they adhere to the standards detailed in the Capital Expenditures section.

d. Preventing and Responding to Violence

Background: The interim final rule highlighted that some types of violence had increased during the pandemic and that the ability of victims to access services had decreased, noting as an example the challenges that individuals affected by domestic violence face in accessing services. Accordingly, the interim final rule enumerated as an eligible use, in disproportionately impacted communities, evidence-based community violence intervention programs. Following the release of the interim final rule, Treasury received several recipient questions regarding whether and how funds may be used to respond to an increase in crime,

violence, or gun violence in some communities during the pandemic. Treasury released further guidance identifying how enumerated eligible uses and eligible use categories under the interim final rule could support violence reduction efforts, including rehiring public sector staff, behavioral health services, and services to address negative economic impacts of the pandemic that may aid victims of crime. The guidance also identified an expanded set of enumerated eligible uses to address increased gun violence.

Public Comment: Several commenters expressed support for this use of funds.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining enumerated eligible uses in this area and clarifying how to apply eligibility standards. Throughout the final rule, enumerated eligible uses should respond to an identified impact of the COVID-19 public health emergency in a reasonably proportional manner to the extent and type of harm experienced. Many of the enumerated eligible uses—like behavioral health services, services to improve employment opportunities, and services to address educational disparities in disproportionately impacted communities—that respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic may also have benefits for reducing crime or aiding victims of crime. For example, the pandemic exacerbated the impact of domestic violence, sexual assault, and human trafficking; enumerated eligible uses like emergency housing assistance, cash assistance, or assistance with food, childcare, and other needs could be used to support survivors of domestic violence, sexual assault, or human trafficking who experienced public health or economic impacts due to the pandemic.

Public Comment: Several commenters expressed support for community violence intervention programs or argued that traditional public safety approaches had negatively impacted the social determinants of health in their communities. Several commenters recommended inclusion of approaches like mental health or substance use diversion programs.

Treasury Response: Treasury recognizes the importance of comprehensive approaches to challenges like violence. The final rule includes an enumerated eligible use for community violence intervention programs in all communities, not just the disproportionately impacted communities eligible under the interim final rule. Given the increased rate of violence during the pandemic, Treasury has determined that this enumerated

⁷⁸ However, SLFRF funds may not be used to reimburse a service that was also billed to insurance.

⁷⁹ In line with the Department of Health and Human Services, Overdose Prevention Strategy, <https://www.hhs.gov/overdose-prevention/>, and the Office of National Drug Control Policy, Administration’s Statement on Drug Policy Priorities for Year One (April 1, 2021), <https://www.whitehouse.gov/wp-content/uploads/2021/03/BidenHarris-Statement-of-Drug-Policy-Priorities-April-1.pdf>.

eligible use is responsive to the impacts of the pandemic in all communities. The final rule incorporates guidance issued after the interim final rule on specifically types of services eligible, including:

- Evidence-based practices like focused deterrence, street outreach, violence interrupters, and hospital-based violence intervention models, complete with wraparound services such as behavioral therapy, trauma recovery, job training, education, housing and relocation services, and financial assistance; and
- Capacity-building efforts at community violence intervention programs like funding more intervention workers, increasing their pay, providing training and professional development for intervention workers, and hiring and training workers to administer the programs.

Public Comment: Some commenters sought further clarification on whether some of the enumerated eligible uses are considered responsive to all crime, violent crime, or gun violence.

Treasury Response: Enumerated eligible uses that respond to an increase in gun violence may be pursued in communities experiencing an increase in gun violence associated with the pandemic, specifically: (1) Hiring law enforcement officials—even above pre-pandemic levels—or paying overtime where the funds are directly focused on advancing community policing strategies for gun violence, (2) additional enforcement efforts to reduce gun violence exacerbated by the pandemic, including prosecuting gun traffickers, dealers, and other parties contributing to the supply of crime guns, as well as collaborative federal, state, and local efforts to identify and address gun trafficking channels, and (3) investing in technology and equipment to allow law enforcement to more efficiently and effectively respond to the rise in gun violence resulting from the pandemic, for example technology to assist in the identification of guns whose serial numbers have been damaged.

3. Negative Economic Impacts

a. Assistance to Households Background

While the U.S. economy is now on the path to a strong recovery, the public health emergency, including the necessary measures taken to protect public health, resulted in significant economic and financial hardship for many Americans. As businesses closed, consumers stayed home, schools shifted to remote education, and travel declined

precipitously, over 22 million jobs were lost in March and April 2020.⁸⁰ One year later, in April 2021, the economy still remained over 8 million jobs below its pre-pandemic peak,⁸¹ and the unemployment rate hovered around 6 percent.⁸²

In the months since Treasury issued the interim final rule in May 2021, the economy has made large strides in its recovery. The economy gained over 4 million jobs in the seven months from May to November 2021;⁸³ the unemployment rate fell more than 1.5 percentage points to 4.2 percent, which is the lowest rate since February 2020;⁸⁴ and the size of the nation's economy surpassed the pre-pandemic peak in the second quarter of 2021.⁸⁵

While the economy has made immense progress in its recovery since May 2021, the economy has also faced setbacks that illustrate the continued risks to the recovery. As the Delta variant spread across the country this summer and fall, the United States faced another severe wave of cases, deaths, and strain on the healthcare system, which contributed to a slowdown in the pace of recovery in the third quarter.⁸⁶ Supply chain disruptions have also demonstrated the difficulties of restarting a global economy.⁸⁷ Moreover, although many Americans have returned to work as of November 2021, the economy remains 3.9 million jobs below its pre-pandemic peak,⁸⁸ and 2.4 million workers have dropped out of the labor market altogether relative to February 2020.⁸⁹ Thus, despite much

progress, there is a continued need to respond to the pandemic's economic effects to ensure a full, broad-based, and equitable recovery.

Indeed, the pandemic's economic impacts continue to affect some demographic groups more than others. Rates of unemployment remain particularly severe among workers of color and workers with lower levels of educational attainment; for example, the overall unemployment rate in the United States was 4.2 percent in November 2021, but certain groups saw much higher rates: 6.7 percent for Black workers, 5.2 percent for Hispanic or Latino workers, and 5.7 percent for workers without a high school diploma.⁹⁰ Job losses have also been particularly steep among low-wage workers, with these workers remaining furthest from recovery as of the end of 2020.⁹¹ A severe recession, and its concentrated impact among low-income workers, has amplified food and housing insecurity, with an estimated nearly 20 million adults living in households where there is sometimes or often not enough food to eat and an estimated 12 million adults living in households that were not current on rent.⁹²

While economic effects have been seen across many communities, there are additional disparities by race and income. For example, approximately

Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/CLF16OV> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁹⁰ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Labor Force Statistics from the Current Population Survey: Employment status of the civilian population by sex and age (December 6, 2021), <https://www.bls.gov/news.release/empsit.t01.htm> (last visited December 7, 2021); U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Labor Force Statistics from the Current Population Survey: Employment status of the civilian noninstitutional population by race, Hispanic or Latino ethnicity, sex, and age (December 6, 2021), <https://www.bls.gov/web/empsit/cpseea04.htm> (last visited December 7, 2021); U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Labor Force Statistics from the Current Population Survey: Employment status of the civilian noninstitutional population 25 years and over by educational attainment (December 6, 2021), <https://www.bls.gov/web/empsit/cpseea05.htm> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁹¹ Elise Gould & Jori Kandra, Wages grew in 2020 because the bottom fell out of the low-wage labor market, Economic Policy Institute (Feb. 24, 2021), <https://files.epi.org/pdf/219418.pdf>. See also, Michael Dalton et al., The K-Shaped Recovery: Examining the Diverging Fortunes of Workers in the Recovery from the COVID-19 Pandemic using Business and Household Survey Microdata, U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics Working Paper Series (July 2021), <https://www.bls.gov/osmr/research-papers/2021/pdf/ec210020.pdf>.

⁹² Center on Budget and Policy Priorities, Tracking the COVID-19 Recession's Effects on Food, Housing, and Employment Hardships, <https://www.cbpp.org/research/poverty-and-inequality/tracking-the-covid-19-economys-effects-on-food-housing-and> (last visited December 17, 2021).

⁸⁰ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, All Employees, Total Nonfarm [PAYEMS], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/PAYEMS> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁸¹ *Id.*

⁸² U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Unemployment Rate [UNRATE], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/UNRATE> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁸³ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *supra* note 80.

⁸⁴ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *supra* note 82.

⁸⁵ U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis, Real Gross Domestic Product [GDPC1], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/GDPC1> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁸⁶ U.S. Department of the Treasury, Economy Statement by Catherine Wolfram, Acting Assistant Secretary for Economy Policy, for the Treasury Borrowing Advisory Committee (November 1, 2021), available at <https://home.treasury.gov/news/press-releases/jy0453>.

⁸⁷ Yuka Hayashi, IMF Cuts Global Growth Forecast Amid Supply-Chain Disruptions, Pandemic Pressures, Wall Street Journal (October 12, 2021), available at <https://www.wsj.com/articles/imf-cuts-global-growth-forecast-amid-supply-chain-disruptions-warns-of-inflation-risks-11634043601>.

⁸⁸ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *supra* note 80.

⁸⁹ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Civilian Labor Force Level [CLF16OV], retrieved from FRED,

half of low-income, Black, and Hispanic parents reported difficulty covering costs related to food, housing, utility, or medical care.⁹³ Over the course of the pandemic, inequities also manifested along gender lines, as schools closed to in-person activities, leaving many working families without childcare during the day.⁹⁴ Women of color have been hit especially hard: The labor force participation rate for Black women has fallen by 3.6 percentage points⁹⁵ during the pandemic as compared to 1.3 percentage points for Black men⁹⁶ and 1.7 percentage points for White women.⁹⁷

As the economy recovers, the effects of the pandemic-related recession may continue to impact households, including a risk of longer-term effects on earnings and economic potential. For example, unemployed workers, especially those who have experienced longer periods of unemployment, earn lower wages over the long term once rehired.⁹⁸ In addition to the labor market consequences for unemployed workers, recessions can also cause longer-term economic challenges

through, among other factors, damaged consumer credit scores⁹⁹ and reduced familial and childhood wellbeing.¹⁰⁰ These potential long-term economic consequences underscore the continued need for robust policy support.

Low- and moderate-income households, those with income levels at or below 300 percent of the federal poverty level (FPL), face particular hardships and challenges. These households report much higher rates of food insecurity and housing hardships than households with higher incomes. For example, households with incomes at or below 300 percent FPL are several times more likely to have reported struggling with food insecurity compared to households with income above 300 percent FPL.¹⁰¹ Similarly, low- and moderate-income households reported being housing insecure¹⁰² at rates more than twice as high as higher-income households, and low- and moderate-income households reported housing quality hardship¹⁰³ at rates statistically significantly greater than the rate for higher-income households.¹⁰⁴ The economic crisis caused by the pandemic worsened economic outcomes for workers in many low- and moderate-income households. Industries that employed low-wage workers experienced a disproportionate level of job loss. For example, from February 2020 to February 2021, the hospitality and leisure industry lost nearly 3.5 million jobs.¹⁰⁵ While the

entire industry was impacted, 72 percent of the job losses occurred in the lowest wage service occupations compared to only a 6 percent rate of job loss in the highest wage management and finance jobs.¹⁰⁶ Similar trends exist in other heavily impacted industries. In public education, the lowest wage occupations, service and transportation jobs, saw a job loss rate of 20 and 26 percent, respectively.¹⁰⁷ During that same time period, the highest wage occupations in public education, management, actually saw jobs increase by 7 percent.¹⁰⁸

While many households suffered negative economic outcomes as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic and economic recession, households with low incomes were impacted in disproportionate and exceptional ways. From January 2020 to March 2021, low-wage workers experienced job loss at a rate five times higher than middle-wage workers, and high-wage workers actually experienced an increase in job opportunities.¹⁰⁹ Because workers in low-income households were more likely to lose their job or experience reductions in pay, those same households were also more likely to experience economic hardships like trouble paying utility bills, affording rent or mortgage payments, purchasing food, and paying for medical expenses.¹¹⁰ The disproportionate negative impacts the pandemic has had on low-income families extend beyond financial insecurity. For example, low-income families have reported higher levels of social isolation, stress, and other negative mental health outcomes during the pandemic. While over half of all U.S. adults report that their mental health was negatively affected by the pandemic, adults with low incomes reported major negative mental health impacts at a rate nearly twice that of adults with high incomes.¹¹¹

2021), available at <https://www.epi.org/publication/swa-2020-employment-report/>.

¹⁰⁶ *Id.*

¹⁰⁷ *Id.*

¹⁰⁸ *Id.*

¹⁰⁹ R. Chetty, J. Friedman, N. Hendren, M. Stepner, & Team, T. O. I., *The Economic Impacts of COVID-19: Evidence from a New Public Database Built Using Private Sector Data* (No. w27431; p. w27431) (2020), National Bureau of Economic Research, <https://doi.org/10.3386/w27431>.

¹¹⁰ M. Despard, Michal Grinstein-Weiss, Yung Chun, and Stephen Roll, *COVID-19 job and income loss leading to more hunger and financial hardship*, Brookings Institute (July 13, 2020), <https://www.brookings.edu/blog/upfront/2020/07/13/covid-19-job-and-income-loss-leading-to-more-hunger-and-financial-hardship/>.

¹¹¹ N. Panchal, R. Kamal, C. Muñana, & P. Chidambaram, *The Implications of COVID-19 for Mental Health and Substance Use*, Kaiser Family Foundation (February 10, 2021), <https://www.kff.org/covid19/issue-brief/the-implications-of-covid-19-for-mental-health-and-substance-use/>.

⁹³ Michael Karpman, Dulce Gonzalez, Genevieve M. Kenney, *Parents Are Struggling to Provide for Their Families during the Pandemic*, Urban Institute (May 2020), https://www.urban.org/research/publication/parents-are-struggling-provide-their-families-during-pandemic?utm_source=urban_researcher&utm_medium=email&utm_campaign=covid_parents&utm_term=lp.

⁹⁴ Women have carried a larger share of childcare responsibilities than men during the COVID-19 crisis. See, e.g., Gema Zamarró & María J. Prados, *Gender differences in couples' division of childcare, work and mental health during COVID-19*, *Rev. Econ. Household* 19:11-40 (2021), available at <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11150-020-09534-7>; Titan Alon et al., *The Impact of COVID-19 on Gender Equality*, National Bureau of Economic Research Working Paper 26947 (April 2020), available at <https://www.nber.org/papers/w26947>.

⁹⁵ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *Labor Force Participation Rate—20 Yrs. & Over, Black or African American Women* [LNS11300032], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/LNS11300032> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁹⁶ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *Labor Force Participation Rate—20 Yrs. & Over, Black or African American Men* [LNS11300031], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/LNS11300031> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁹⁷ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, *Labor Force Participation Rate—20 Yrs. & Over, White Women* [LNS11300029], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis; <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/LNS11300029> (last visited December 7, 2021).

⁹⁸ See, e.g., Michael Greenstone & Adam Looney, *Unemployment and Earnings Losses: A Look at Long-Term Impacts of the Great Recession on American Workers*, Brookings Institution (Nov. 4, 2011), <https://www.brookings.edu/blog/jobs/2011/11/04/unemployment-and-earnings-losses-a-look-at-long-term-impacts-of-the-great-recession-on-american-workers/>.

⁹⁹ Chi Chi Wu, *Solving the Credit Conundrum: Helping Consumers' Credit Records Impaired by the Foreclosure Crisis and Great Recession*, National Consumer Law Center (Dec. 2013), https://www.nclc.org/images/pdf/credit_reports/report-credit-conundrum-2013.pdf.

¹⁰⁰ Irwin Garfinkel, Sara McLanahan, Christopher Wimer, eds., *Children of the Great Recession*, Russell Sage Foundation (Aug. 2016), available at <https://www.russellsage.org/publications/children-great-recession>.

¹⁰¹ Kyle J. Casewell and Stephen Zuckerman, *Food Insecurity, Housing Hardship, and Medical Care Utilization*, Urban Institute (June 2018), available at https://www.urban.org/sites/default/files/publication/98701/2001896_foodinsecurity_housinghardship_medicalcareutilization_finalized.pdf.

¹⁰² Housing insecurity is defined as not paying the full amount of rent or mortgage and/or utility bills (gas, oil, or electricity) sometime in the previous 12 months.

¹⁰³ Housing quality hardship is defined as an affirmative response to one or more questions related to problems with a respondent's physical dwelling: Pests and/or insects; leaking roof or ceiling; windows that are broken or cannot shut; exposed electrical wires; broken plumbing (toilet, hot water, other); holes in walls, ceiling, or floor; no appliances (refrigerator or stove); and no phone (of any kind).

¹⁰⁴ *Id.*

¹⁰⁵ Elise Gould and Melat Kassa, *Low-wage, low-hours workers were hit hardest in the COVID-19 recession: The State of Working America 2020 employment report*, Economic Policy Institute (May

Summary of Interim Final Rule and Final Rule Structure

Summary: The interim final rule provided a non-exhaustive list of enumerated eligible uses to respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic through assistance to households, as well as a standard for assessing whether uses of funds beyond those enumerated are eligible.

The interim final rule described enumerated eligible uses for assistance to households in several categories: (1) Assistance to unemployed workers, (2) state Unemployment Insurance Trust Funds, (3) assistance to households, and (4) expenses to improve the efficacy of economic relief. Note that the interim final rule posed several questions to the public on enumerated eligible uses for assistance to households; comments on these questions are addressed in the relevant subject matter section below.

In addition, in recognition that pre-existing health, economic, and social disparities contributed to disproportionate pandemic impacts in certain communities, the interim final rule also provided a broader list of enumerated eligible uses to respond to the pandemic in disproportionately impacted communities, specifically: (1) Building stronger communities through investments in housing and neighborhoods, (2) addressing educational disparities, and (3) promoting healthy childhood environments. In the interim final rule, under the Public Health section, recipients could also provide services to address health disparities and increase access to health and social services; these eligible uses have been re-organized into the Assistance to Households section to consolidate responses in disproportionately impacted communities and enhance clarity.

This section addresses enumerated eligible uses in the final rule to respond to negative economic impacts to households. As a reminder, recipients may presume that a household or population that experienced unemployment, experienced increased food or housing insecurity, or is low or moderate income experienced negative economic impacts resulting from the pandemic, and recipients may provide services to them that respond to these impacts, including these enumerated eligible uses.

For guidance on how to determine whether a particular use, beyond those enumerated, is eligible; further detail on

which households and communities are presumed eligible for services; and how to identify eligible households and communities beyond those presumed eligible, see section General Provisions: Structure and Standards.

Reorganizations and Cross-

References: The final rule reorganizes all enumerated eligible uses for impacted and disproportionately impacted households into the section Assistance to Households, with the exception that expenses to improve the efficacy of economic relief has been re-categorized into a different section of the final rule for increased clarity; for discussion of that use category, see section General Provisions: Other.

Note that in conducting this reorganization, and based on further analysis and in response to comments, Treasury has determined that several enumerated uses included in the interim final rule for disproportionately impacted communities are directly responsive to negative economic impacts experienced by impacted households. In the final rule, these uses have been moved from “disproportionately impacted” to “impacted” households accordingly, making these services available to both disproportionately impacted and impacted households. These uses include assistance applying for public benefits or services; programs or services that address or mitigate the impacts of the COVID-19 public health emergency on childhood health or welfare, including childcare, early learning services, programs to provide home visits, and services for families involved in the child welfare system and foster youth; programs to address the impacts of lost instructional time for students;¹¹² and programs or services that address housing insecurity, lack of affordable housing, or homelessness.

The following activities remain enumerated eligible uses for disproportionately impacted households: Remediation of lead paint or other lead hazards; housing vouchers and assistance relocating to neighborhoods with higher levels of economic opportunity; and programs or services that address educational disparities, including assistance to high-poverty school districts to advance equitable funding across districts and geographies and evidence-based services to address the academic, social, emotional, and mental health needs of students.

¹¹² For which recipients may presume that any student who did not have access to in-person instruction for a significant period of time was impacted by the pandemic.

Enumerated Eligible Uses for Impacted Households

The interim final rule included several enumerated eligible uses to provide assistance to households or populations facing negative economic impacts due to COVID-19. Enumerated eligible uses included: Food assistance; rent, mortgage, or utility assistance; counseling and legal aid to prevent eviction or homelessness; emergency assistance for burials, home repairs, weatherization, or other needs; internet access or digital literacy assistance; cash assistance; or job training to address negative economic or public health impacts experienced due to a worker's occupation or level of training. It also posed a question as to what other types of services or costs Treasury should consider as eligible uses to respond to the negative economic impacts of COVID-19.

This section addresses each of these enumerated eligible uses in turn, with the exception of job training, which has been re-categorized for increased clarity to the eligible use for “assistance to unemployed and underemployed workers.” In general, commenters supported inclusion of these enumerated eligible uses to address key economic needs among households due to the pandemic, and Treasury is maintaining these eligible uses in the final rule, in line with commenters' recommendations.

1. Food assistance. The interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use for food assistance. Some commenters expressed support for this eligible use and emphasized the importance of aid to address food insecurity. Some commenters raised questions as to whether food assistance funds could be used to augment services provided through organizations like food banks, churches, and other food delivery services, or generally be sub-awarded to these organizations.

Treasury Response: Treasury is maintaining this enumerated eligible use without change. Recipients may, as was the case under the interim final rule, administer programs through a wide range of entities, including nonprofit and for-profit entities, to carry out eligible uses on behalf of the recipient government (see section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries). Further, Treasury is clarifying that capital expenditures related to food banks and other facilities primarily dedicated to addressing food insecurity are eligible; recipients seeking to use funds for capital expenditures should refer to the section Capital Expenditures in General

Provisions: Other for additional eligibility standards that apply to uses of funds for capital expenditures.

2. *Emergency housing assistance.* The interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use for rent, mortgage, or utility assistance and counseling and legal aid to prevent eviction or homelessness.

Public Comment: Several commenters supported the inclusion of eviction prevention activities as an eligible use given the high number of households behind on rent and potentially at risk of eviction. Following release of the interim final rule, Treasury had also received requests for elaboration on the types of eligible services in this category. Some commenters also recommended including assistance to households for delinquent property taxes, for example to prevent tax foreclosures on homes, as an enumerated eligible use.

Treasury Response: In response to requests for elaboration on the types of eligible services for eviction prevention, Treasury has provided further guidance that these services include “housing stability services that enable eligible households to maintain or obtain housing, such as housing counseling, fair housing counseling, case management related to housing stability, outreach to households at risk of eviction or promotion of housing support programs, housing related services for survivors of domestic abuse or human trafficking, and specialized services for individuals with disabilities or seniors that support their ability to access or maintain housing,” as well as “legal aid such as legal services or attorney’s fees related to eviction proceedings and maintaining housing stability, court-based eviction prevention or eviction diversion programs, and other legal services that help households maintain or obtain housing.”¹¹³ Treasury also emphasized that recipients may work with court systems, nonprofits, and a wide range of other organizations to implement strategies to support housing stability and prevent evictions.

In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining these enumerated eligible uses, including those described in the interim final rule and later guidance, in line with commenters’ recommendations. To enhance clarity, Treasury is also elaborating on some types of services included under this eligible use category; this remains a

non-exhaustive list of eligible services. For example, eligible services under this use category include: Rent, rental arrears, utility costs or arrears (e.g., electricity, gas, water and sewer, trash removal, and energy costs, such as fuel oil), reasonable accrued late fees (if not included in rental or utility arrears), mortgage payment assistance, financial assistance to allow a homeowner to reinstate a mortgage or to pay other housing-related costs related to a period of forbearance, delinquency, or default, mortgage principal reduction, facilitating mortgage interest rate reductions, counseling to prevent foreclosure or displacement, relocation expenses following eviction or foreclosure (e.g., rental security deposits, application or screening fees). Treasury is clarifying that assistance to households for delinquent property taxes, for example to prevent tax foreclosures on homes, was permissible under the interim final rule and continues to be so under the final rule. In addition, Treasury is also clarifying that recipients may administer utility assistance or address arrears on behalf of households through direct or bulk payments to utility providers to facilitate utility assistance to multiple consumers at once, so long as the payments offset customer balances and therefore provide assistance to households.

This eligible use category also includes emergency assistance for individuals experiencing homelessness, either individual-level assistance (e.g., rapid rehousing services) or assistance for groups of individuals (e.g., master leases of hotels, motels, or similar facilities to expand available shelter).

Further, Treasury is clarifying that transitional shelters (e.g., temporary residences for people experiencing homelessness) are eligible capital expenditures. Recipients seeking to use funds for capital expenditures should refer to the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other for additional eligibility standards that apply to uses of funds for capital expenditures.

Note that this enumerated eligible use describes “emergency housing assistance,” or assistance for responses to the immediate or near-term negative economic impacts of the pandemic. The final rule also clarifies and expands the ability of recipients to use SLFRF funds to address the general lack of affordable housing and housing challenges underscored by the pandemic. For discussion of affordable housing eligible uses, including services that primarily increase access to affordable, high-quality housing and support stable

housing and homeownership over the long term, see the eligible use for “promoting long-term housing security: Affordable housing and homelessness.”

3. *Emergency assistance for pressing needs: Burials, home repairs, weatherization, or other needs.* The interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use for emergency assistance for burials, home repairs, weatherization, and other needs; these types of programs may provide emergency assistance for pressing and unavoidable household needs. Treasury did not receive comments on this eligible use and is maintaining it in the final rule.

Background on Home Repairs and Weatherization: The economic downturn has meant fewer households had the resources needed to make necessary home repairs and improvements. In May 2021, 28 percent of landlords reported deferring maintenance and 27 percent of tenants reported maintenance requests going unanswered.¹¹⁴ While small and cosmetic repairs can often wait, deferring major repairs, such as plumbing needs, can result in unsafe and unhealthy living environments and, eventually, the need for more expensive repairs and fixes.

In addition to repairs, many homes are in need of weatherization. Weatherization assistance helps low- and moderate-income Americans save energy, reduce their utility bills, and keeps them and their homes safe. One in three households is energy insecure,¹¹⁵ meaning they do not have the ability to meet their energy needs.¹¹⁶ Weatherization efforts are particularly important for low- and moderate-income households. Households of color, renters, and households with low or moderate incomes are all more likely to report energy insecurity.¹¹⁷ These

¹¹⁴ Jung Hyun Choi, Laurie Goodman, and Daniel Pang, *The Pandemic Is Making It Difficult for Mom-and-Pop Landlords to Maintain Their Properties*, Urban Institute (July 23, 2021), <https://www.urban.org/urban-wire/pandemic-making-it-difficult-mom-and-pop-landlords-maintain-their-properties>.

¹¹⁵ U.S. Energy Information Administration, *Residential Energy Consumption Survey (2017)*, Retrieved from <https://www.eia.gov/consumption/residential/data/2015/hc/php/hc11.1.php>.

D. Hernández, *Understanding ‘energy insecurity’ and why it matters to health*, *Social Science & Medicine*, 167, 1–10 (2016), <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.socscimed.2016.08.029>.

¹¹⁶ Hernández, D. (2016). *Understanding ‘energy insecurity’ and why it matters to health*. *Social Science & Medicine*, 167, 1–10. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.socscimed.2016.08.029>.

¹¹⁷ U.S. Energy Information Administration, *Residential Energy Consumption Survey (RECS)* <https://www.eia.gov/consumption/residential/data/2015/hc/php/hc11.1.php>. (last visited November 9, 2021)

¹¹³ See FAQ 2.21. Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

disparities are partially a result of economic hardship but are also caused by inequitable access to housing with proper insulation, up to date heating, cooling, and ventilation systems, and functioning and up to date lighting and appliances.¹¹⁸ While programs that address the effects of energy hardships, like the Low-Income Home Energy Assistance Program (LIHEAP), are critical, weatherization attempts to address root causes by addressing issues that lead to energy insecurities.

4. *Internet access or digital literacy assistance.* The interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use for assistance to households for internet access or digital literacy assistance. This enumerated eligible use, which responds to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic on a household by providing assistance that helps them secure internet access or increase their ability to use computers and the internet, is separate from the eligible use category for investments in broadband infrastructure, under Sections 602(c)(1)(D) and 603(c)(1)(D), which is used to build new broadband networks through infrastructure construction or modernization. For discussion of broadband infrastructure investment in the final rule, see section Broadband Infrastructure in Infrastructure.

Background: The COVID-19 public health emergency has underscored the importance of universally available, high-speed, reliable, and affordable broadband coverage as millions of Americans rely on the internet to participate in, among other critical activities, school, healthcare, and work. Recognizing the need for such connectivity, SLFRF funds can be used to make necessary investments in broadband infrastructure that increase access over the long term, as well as the necessary supports to purchase internet access or gain digital literacy skills needed to complete activities of daily living during the pandemic.

The National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA) highlighted the growing necessity of broadband in daily lives through its analysis of NTIA internet Use Survey data, noting that Americans turn to broadband internet service for every facet of daily life including work, study, and healthcare.¹¹⁹ With increased use of

technology for daily activities and the movement by many businesses and schools to operating remotely during the pandemic, broadband has become even more critical for people across the country to carry out their daily lives.

However, even in areas where broadband infrastructure exists, broadband access may be out of reach for millions of Americans because it is unaffordable, as the United States has some of the highest broadband prices in the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD).¹²⁰ According to a 2021 Pew Research Center study, 20 percent of non-broadband users say that the monthly cost of home broadband is the primary reason they do not have broadband at home, and 40 percent say that cost is one reason for their lack of home broadband.¹²¹ Further, according to another survey, 22 percent of parents with homebound schoolchildren during the COVID-19 pandemic say that it is very or somewhat likely that their children will have to rely on public wi-fi to finish their schoolwork because there is no reliable internet connection at home; this percentage nearly doubles for lower-income parents, 40 percent of whom noted that their children will have to rely on public wi-fi.¹²² The same survey showed that 36 percent of lower-income parents with homebound children say their child will not be able to complete their schoolwork because they do not have access to a computer at home.¹²³

Public Comment: Many commenters highlighted the importance of broadband access during the pandemic, including for remote work and

education, and argued that affordability presents a major barrier to broadband adoption by households; in other words, many households live in areas that have broadband infrastructure and service available but are unable to purchase service for their household due to the high cost. These commenters argued that broadband must be affordable to be accessible.

Commenters proposed several potential responses to affordability concerns. Some commenters recommended that building “gap networks,” or broadband networks built at low cost to provide affordable service in areas where it is lacking, be eligible as assistance to households to respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic, even if they do not meet the technical standards for eligibility under the eligible use category of broadband infrastructure investment, especially the required speed standards for new service. These commenters argued that the networks have shown promise as a timely means to expand access to affordable broadband internet during the pandemic, even if they may not provide service speeds needed for more intensive internet uses. Another commenter requested eligible uses include funding cellular towers to decrease costs. One commenter recommended that affordability should be addressed through other programs but not SLFRF given that affordability and availability may require nuanced solutions that would be complex to combine.

Treasury Response: The interpretive framework and enumerated eligible uses allow recipients flexibility to address identified pandemic impacts, including through solutions that take into account the particularized issues in their community. Given extensive commenter feedback on the importance of affordability to achieving broadband access, and the centrality of broadband to participating in work, education, healthcare, and other activities during the pandemic, affordability programs are an appropriate eligible use to respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic and Treasury is maintaining the enumerated eligible use for assistance to households for internet access and digital literacy programs in the final rule.

Building or constructing new broadband networks is an infrastructure investment and is governed by a separate clause in the statute. Treasury has addressed comments on “gap networks” that require infrastructure build-out in the section Broadband Infrastructure in Infrastructure.

¹¹⁸ A. Dreihobl, & L. Ross, Lifting the high energy burden in America's largest cities: How energy efficiency can improve low income and underserved communities, American Council for an Energy Efficient Economy (2016), <https://www.aceee.org/sites/default/files/publications/researchreports/u1602.pdf>.

¹¹⁹ See, e.g., Nation Telecommunications and Information Administration, More than Half of

American Households Used the Internet for Health-Related Activities in 2019, NTIA Data Show (December 7, 2020), <https://www.ntia.gov/blog/2020/more-half-american-households-used-internet-health-related-activities-2019-ntia-data-show>; Nation Telecommunications and Information Administration, Nearly a Third of American Employees Worked Remotely in 2019, NTIA Data Show (September 3, 2020) <https://www.ntia.gov/blog/2020/nearly-third-american-employees-worked-remotely-2019-ntia-data-show>; and generally, Nation Telecommunications and Information Administration, Digital Nation Data Explorer (June 10, 2020), <https://www.ntia.gov/data/digital-nation-data-explorer>.

¹²⁰ BroadbandSearch Blog Post, How Do U.S. Internet Costs Compare To The Rest Of The World?, available at <https://www.broadbandsearch.net/blog/internet-costs-compared-worldwide>.

¹²¹ Pew Research Center, Mobile Technology and Home Broadband 2021 (June 3, 2021), <https://www.pewresearch.org/internet/2021/06/03/mobile-technology-and-home-broadband-2021/>.

¹²² Pew Research Center, 53% of Americans Say the Internet Has Been Essential During the COVID-19 Outbreak (April 30, 2020), <https://www.pewresearch.org/internet/2020/04/30/53-of-americans-say-the-internet-has-been-essential-during-the-covid-19-outbreak/>.

¹²³ *Id.*

Public Comment: Some commenters also use the term “gap networks” to refer to equipment installed as part of wi-fi systems, such as routers, repeaters, and access points; this equipment provides consumer access to an existing broadband network and does not require new network build-out or construction. These commenters recommended that Treasury permit, as assistance to households for internet access, investments in public wi-fi networks, free wi-fi in public housing communities, and other equipment that offers internet access to end users by utilizing existing broadband networks.

Other commenters recommended that eligible uses in this category include providing devices and equipment necessary to access the internet, like computers and routers, directly to low-income households.

Treasury Response: Treasury has determined that these services, which expand internet access without constructing new networks, are an appropriate enumerated eligible use as assistance to households to respond to a negative economic impact, and they are permitted under the final rule. Treasury is clarifying that eligible uses under this category can also include a wide range of programs and services to expand internet access and digital literacy, such as subsidies for the cost of internet service, other programs that support adoption of internet service where available, digital literacy programs, or programs that provide devices and equipment to access the internet (e.g., programs that provide equipment like tablets, computers, or routers) to households. Recipients seeking to use funds for equipment should refer to the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other for additional eligibility standards that apply to uses of funds for capital expenditures (e.g., equipment, property, and facilities).

5. Cash assistance. The interim final rule included as an enumerated eligible use cash assistance and provided that cash transfers must be “reasonably proportional” to the negative economic impact they address and may not be “grossly in excess of the amount needed to address” the impact. In assessing whether a transfer is reasonably proportional, recipients may “consider and take guidance from the per person amounts previously provided by the Federal Government in response to the COVID-19 crisis,” and transfers “grossly in excess of such amounts” are not eligible.

Public Comment: Several commenters expressed support for this eligible use, noting that this is a common policy tool

for some governments to support the well-being of households and individuals in their communities. Some commenters requested that Treasury set a specific dollar amount for permissible cash transfers, and Treasury has also received recipient questions on whether specific types of transfers, such as those to a substantial share of the population in the jurisdiction, would be a permissible use of funds.

Treasury Response: Treasury is maintaining this enumerated eligible use in the final rule, in line with commenters’ recommendations. Because the final rule is intended to provide flexibility to recipients to respond to the particularized pandemic impacts in their communities, which may vary in type and intensity, setting a specific dollar threshold for eligible cash transfers would fail to recognize the particularized needs of communities and limit recipients’ flexibility to tailor their response to those needs.

To provide greater clarity, Treasury is elaborating on the analysis that recipients may undertake to assess the eligibility of specific cash assistance programs or transfers. Cash transfers, like all eligible uses in this category, must respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic on a household or class of households. For the reasons discussed above, recipients may presume that low- and moderate-income households (as defined in the final rule), as well as households that experienced unemployment, food insecurity, or housing insecurity, experienced a negative economic impact due to the pandemic.

Recipients may also identify other households or classes of households that experienced a negative economic impact of the pandemic and provide cash assistance that is reasonably proportional to, and not grossly in excess of, the amount needed to address the negative economic impact. For example, in the ARPA, Congress authorized Economic Impact Payments to households at certain income levels, identifying and responding to a negative economic impact of the pandemic on these households.

Finally, Treasury has reiterated in the final rule that responses to negative economic impacts should be reasonably proportional to the impact that they are intended to address. Uses that bear no relation or are grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced would not be eligible uses. Reasonably proportional refers to the scale of the response compared to the scale of the harm. It also refers to the targeting of the response to beneficiaries compared to the amount of harm they

experienced; for example, it may not be reasonably proportional for a cash assistance program to provide assistance in a very small amount to a group that experienced severe harm and in a much larger amount to a group that experienced relatively little harm.

6. Survivor’s benefits. The interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use for survivor’s benefits to surviving family members of individuals who have died from COVID-19, including cash assistance to widows, widowers, or dependents.

Public Comment: Treasury did not receive any comments on the inclusion of survivor’s benefits as an enumerated use for impacted households in the interim final rule.

Treasury Response: This use of funds remains eligible under the final rule. Consistent with the general reorganization noted above, the final rule organizes survivor’s benefits under assistance to households to clarify that households are the intended beneficiaries of survivor’s benefits.

7. Assistance accessing or applying for public benefits or services. Recognizing that eligible households often face barriers to accessing public benefits or services that improve health and economic outcomes, the interim final rule included as an enumerated eligible use in disproportionately impacted communities, public benefits navigators to assist community members with navigating and applying for available federal, state, and local public benefits or services. Treasury also clarified in subsequent guidance after the interim final rule that this eligible use category would include outreach efforts to increase uptake of the Child Tax Credit.

Background: The under-enrollment of eligible households in social assistance programs is a well-recognized and persistent challenge. There are many reasons why a household may not be receiving a particular benefit even though they are eligible. For many federal programs, enrollment processes vary from state-to-state. Sometimes, households are simply unaware that they are eligible for a particular benefit.¹²⁴ For example, despite having one of the highest rates of participation of any benefits program, nearly 20 percent of eligible individuals do not participate in the Supplementary Nutritional Assistance Program

¹²⁴ Amy Finkelstein & Matthew J Notowidigdo, Take-Up and Targeting: Experimental Evidence from SNAP, *The Quarterly Journal of Economics*, vol. 134(3), pages 1505–1556 (2019), <https://www.nber.org/papers/w24652>.

(SNAP).¹²⁵ In other cases, policies like public charge and asset testing can discourage otherwise eligible households.¹²⁶ While the gap between households that need assistance and the number of households participating in public benefit programs has always existed, narrowing that gap and ensuring households receive the support they need is critical in mitigating the negative economic impacts of the pandemic.

Public Comment: Treasury has also received feedback from recipients and stakeholders noting the need to increase awareness and uptake of assistance programs, including gaps that remain in enrollment of eligible households in programs to address the negative economic impacts of the pandemic.¹²⁷

Treasury Response: Treasury has determined that this impact of the pandemic is widely experienced across many jurisdictions and programs or services to increase awareness and uptake of assistance programs would respond to the pandemic's negative economic impact in all communities. As such, in the final rule, this use is eligible for any impacted household or class of households, not only in disproportionately impacted communities.

8. *Promoting healthy childhood environments.* The interim final rule included programs and services that promote healthy childhood environments as an enumerated eligible use for disproportionately impacted households. The interim final rule listed three programs or services included under this use: Childcare; programs to provide home visits by health professionals, parent educators, and social service professionals to individuals with young children to provide education and assistance for economic support, health needs, or child development; and services for child welfare-involved families and foster youth to provide support and

education on child development, positive parenting, coping skills, or recovery for mental health and substance use. The interim final rule also included an enumerated eligible use for early learning services in disproportionately impacted communities, to address disparities in education.

Public Comment: Childcare and Early Learning: Treasury received multiple comments that were supportive of the provision of childcare. Treasury has also received multiple comments and questions indicating that recipients have identified a need for childcare for a broader range of households and communities, for example those that may need childcare in order to return to work, in addition to households and communities disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. Several commenters expressed uncertainty about how childcare facilities should interact with the boundaries of a QCT. Finally, one commenter recommended that pre-K or early learning services encompass care for infants and toddlers, arguing that these types of care are often more expensive or challenging to access for families.

Background: Childcare and Early Learning: As daycares and schools closed in-person activities during the pandemic, many working families were left without childcare during the day.¹²⁸ Although daycare centers and schools have since reopened in many communities, there remains a persistent childcare shortage as childcare employment levels have not fully rebounded since the sharp decline in childcare employment at the beginning of the pandemic.¹²⁹ As a result, working parents in communities across the country, and more specifically women, may face challenges entering or reentering the labor force.¹³⁰

¹²⁸ Women have carried a larger share of childcare responsibilities than men during the COVID-19 crisis. See, e.g., Gema Zamarró & Mari'a J. Prados, Gender differences in couples' division of childcare, work and mental health during COVID-19, *Rev. Econ. Household* 19:11–40 (2021), available at <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11150-020-09534-7>; Titan Alon et al., The Impact of COVID-19 on Gender Equality, National Bureau of Economic Research Working Paper 26947 (April 2020), available at <https://www.nber.org/papers/w26947>.

¹²⁹ See, e.g., Center For The Study Of Child Care Employment (CSCCE), Child Care Sector Jobs: BLS Analysis (November 8, 2021), <https://csce.berkeley.edu/child-care-sector-jobs-bls-analysis/>; Emma K. Lee, and Zachary Parolin, The Care Burden during COVID-19: A National Database of Child Care Closures in the United States, *Socius* (January 2021), doi:10.1177/23780231211032028.

¹³⁰ Jason Furman, Melissa Schettini Kearney, and Wilson Powell, The Role of Childcare Challenges in the US Jobs Market Recovery During the COVID-19 Pandemic, NBER Working Paper No. 28934 (June 2021), <https://www.nber.org/papers/w28934>.

Low-income households are also more likely to lose access to quality childcare.¹³¹ The widespread closure of childcare centers combined with a lack of access to paid family leave means parents in low-income households are more likely to experience a reduction of income or leave their jobs due to a lack of childcare options.¹³²

Additionally, childcare providers serving primarily low-income families were less likely to remain open during the pandemic because of tighter profit margins and general community financial insecurity, compared to childcare providers serving primarily high-income families.^{133 134}

In addition to disruptions to childcare, early learning services were also significantly impacted by the pandemic, and the disruption of these services had widespread ramifications for learning loss, parental support, and equity. Early learning centers have seen declined enrollment across the board, though there was a larger dip in enrollment for low-income households.¹³⁵ This lower enrollment coincides with a diminishing workforce, as similarly to childcare, early childhood educators have been leaving the profession due to long hours, low pay,¹³⁶ and health and safety concerns.¹³⁷ As a result, children's school readiness has suffered, leading to potential long-term impacts on life outcomes.¹³⁸ The impact also extended

¹³¹ U.S. Census Bureau, Phase 3.2 Household Pulse Survey: Table 2. Childcare Arrangements in the Last 4 Weeks for Children Under 5 Years Old, by Selected Characteristics, (Washington: 2021), available at <https://www.census.gov/programs-surveys/household-pulse-survey/data.html>.

¹³² *Id.*

¹³³ N. Kalluri, C. Kelly, & A. Garg, Child Care During the COVID-19 Pandemic: A Bad Situation Made Worse, *Pediatrics* (2021), <https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2020-041525>.

¹³⁴ National Association for the Education of Young Children, Am I Next? Sacrificing to Stay Open, Child Care Providers Face a Bleak Future Without Relief (December 2020), <https://www.naeyc.org/sites/default/files/globally-shared/downloads/PDF>.

¹³⁵ G. G. Weisenfeld, Impacts of Covid-19 on Preschool Enrollment and Spending, New Brunswick, NJ: National Institute for Early Education Research (2021), https://nieer.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/03/NIEER_Policy_Brief_Impacts-of-Covid-19on_Preschool_Enrollment_and_Spending_3_16_21.pdf.

¹³⁶ Heather Long, 'The pay is absolute crap': Child-care workers are quitting rapidly, a red flag for the economy, *Washington Post* (September 19, 2021), <https://www.washingtonpost.com/business/2021/09/19/childcare-workers-quit/>.

¹³⁷ Monash University, The emotional toll of COVID-19 among early childhood educators (August 5, 2020) <https://lens.monash.edu/@education/2020/08/05/1381001/the-emotional-toll-of-covid-19-among-early-childhood-educators>.

¹³⁸ Daphna Bassok and Anna Shapiro, Understanding COVID-19-era enrollment drops

¹²⁵ United States Department of Agriculture, Trends in Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program Participation Rates: Fiscal Year 2016 to Fiscal Year 2018 (May 2021), <https://fns-prod.azureedge.net/sites/default/files/resource-files/Trends2016-2018.pdf>.

¹²⁶ Jeremy Barofsky et al., Spreading Fear: The Announcement Of The Public Charge Rule Reduced Enrollment In Child Safety-Net Programs, *Health Affairs* (October 2020), <https://www.healthaffairs.org/doi/full/10.1377/hlthaff.2020.00763>.

¹²⁷ See, e.g., U.S. Department of the Treasury, By ZIP Code: Number of Children under Age 18 with a Social Security Number Who Are Not Found on a Tax Year 2019 or 2020 Tax Return but who Appear on a Tax Year 2019 Form 1095 and Associated Number of Policy Holders (June 2021), <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/131/Estimated-Counts-of-Children-Unclaimed-for-CTC-by-ZIP-Code-2019.pdf>.

to parents. Parents, especially mothers, may face challenges reentering or remaining in the workforce if early learning services are unavailable.

Treasury Response: Childcare and Early Learning Services: Treasury agrees with commenters' analysis that challenges accessing or affording childcare have been widespread during the pandemic, affecting many jurisdictions and populations across the country. Disruptions to early care and learning services similarly have had broad impact and likely result in negative impacts for young children and their parents. As such, these enumerated eligible uses are generally responsive to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic in all communities, not just in disproportionately impacted communities. Under the final rule, childcare and early learning services are available to impacted households or classes of households, not just those disproportionately impacted. These eligible uses can include new or expanded services, increasing access to services, efforts to bolster, support, or preserve existing providers and services, and similar activities.

Further, Treasury is clarifying that improvements to or new construction of childcare, daycare, and early learning facilities are eligible capital expenditures. Recipients seeking to use funds for capital expenditures should refer to the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other for additional eligibility standards that apply to uses of funds for capital expenditures.

Public Comment: Home Visiting: Treasury has also received questions about whether the provision of home visiting services would be responsive to the health and mental health needs of impacted new mothers, citing the positive mental health impacts shown on the mother as well as improved outcomes for children.

Background: Home Visiting: Pregnant and recently pregnant individuals are at an increased risk for serious illness from COVID-19.¹³⁹ Furthermore, pregnant individuals with COVID-19 are more likely to experience preterm birth (delivering the baby earlier than 37

weeks).¹⁴⁰ In addition to heightened health risks from COVID-19, pregnant individuals may have experienced significant changes to their prenatal care during the pandemic¹⁴¹ or may also have experienced increased mental health challenges, including high levels of depression, anxiety, loneliness, and post-traumatic stress during the pandemic.¹⁴²

Home visiting services provided to families, particularly new mothers and newborns, feature regular home visits from trained nurses, social workers, and/or counselors who provide health care, mental health resources, positive parenting support, support in making personal health decisions, and awareness of other potentially helpful services. These functions have become even more essential at mitigating negative factors associated with the pandemic. Home visits give professionals a chance to flag potential domestic violence, which has risen worldwide over the course of the pandemic.¹⁴³ Racial health disparities can also be driven down by home visits. For example, Black women are more likely to avoid hospitals during the pandemic, and home visitors can help either assuage concerns around hospitals or give effective advice for alternative methods of childbirth.¹⁴⁴ Given the disproportionate effect of the pandemic on people of color, home visits are an essential equity tool that tackle major negative effects of the pandemic. These are just a few selections from the evidence that suggests many home visiting models can have a positive effect on maternal physical and mental health.¹⁴⁵

Treasury Response: Home Visiting: Given the widespread impact of

COVID-19 on pregnant and recently pregnant individuals, Treasury is re-categorizing home visiting services as an eligible use for impacted communities, not just disproportionately impacted communities. Under the final rule, these eligible uses are available to impacted households or classes of households.

Public Comment: Child Welfare: While the interim final rule noted that certain types of assistance, particularly around child development and parenting, were eligible for child welfare-involved families, Treasury has received some recipient questions asking whether financial, educational, housing, or other supports and services are eligible uses for foster youth, including those aging out of the system, and child welfare-involved families. Other commenters asked about whether funding for kinship care would be eligible.

Background: Child Welfare: The COVID-19 pandemic placed meaningful strain on the child welfare and foster care system. Court hearings were delayed,¹⁴⁶ essential mental health care was shifted to a virtual environment, and attendance and performance in school among foster children dropped sharply.¹⁴⁷ Additionally, there was a nationwide rise of new children entering the foster care system and many states placed temporary moratoria on children aging out of the foster care system.¹⁴⁸ As these temporary moratoria expire, additional support will be needed to assist children exiting the system.

Additionally, financial and material hardship are causal factors in the increase of new children entering the foster care system, whether through loss of a caregiver, domestic violence,¹⁴⁹ or other associated costs of the pandemic. Therefore, support to decrease these hardships will support families and increase positive outcomes for youth

¹⁴⁰ *Id.*

¹⁴¹ Sarah Javaid, Sarah Barringer, Sarah D Compton, Elizabeth Kaselitz, Maria Muzik, Cheryl A. Moyer, The impact of COVID-19 on prenatal care in the United States: Qualitative analysis from a survey of 2519 pregnant women, *Midwifery*, Volume 98, 2021, 102991, ISSN 0266-6138, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.midw.2021.102991>.

¹⁴² A Basu, HH Kim, R Basaldua, KW Choi, L Charron, et al., A cross-national study of factors associated with women's perinatal mental health and wellbeing during the COVID-19 pandemic, *PLOS ONE* 16(4): e0249780, (2021), <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0249780>.

¹⁴³ Amanda Taub, A New Covid-19 Crisis: Domestic Abuse Rises Worldwide, *New York Times* (April 6, 2020), <https://www.nytimes.com/2020/04/06/world/coronavirus-domestic-violence.html>.

¹⁴⁴ Xenia Shih Bion, Efforts to Reduce Black Maternal Mortality Complicated by COVID-19, *California Health Care Foundation* (April 20, 2020), <https://www.chcf.org/blog/efforts-reduce-black-maternal-mortality-complicated-covid-19/>.

¹⁴⁵ U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Home Visiting Evidence of Effectiveness, <https://homvee.acf.hhs.gov/outcomes/maternal%20health/In%20Brief>.

¹⁴⁶ National Conference of State Legislatures, Criminal Justice System Responses to COVID-19 (November 16, 2020), <https://www.ncsl.org/research/civil-and-criminal-justice/criminal-justice-and-covid-19.aspx>.

¹⁴⁷ John Burton Advocates for Youth, The Cumulative Impact of the Pandemic on Youth Who Have Been in Foster Care or Homeless (May 2020) <https://jbay.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/04/JBAY-COVID-19-Impact.pdf>.

¹⁴⁸ John Kelly, Next Week, Thousands of Foster Youth Will Age Out on the Same Day (September 21, 2021), <https://imprintnews.org/subscriber-content/thousands-of-foster-youth-will-age-out-on-the-same-day/59006>.

¹⁴⁹ Conrad-Hiebner, Aislinn, and Elizabeth Byram, The Temporal Impact of Economic Insecurity on Child Maltreatment: A Systematic Review. Trauma, Violence, & Abuse, vol. 21, no. 1, Jan. 2020, pp. 157-178, doi:10.1177/1524838018756122.

among early-grade public school students, Brookings Institution (February 22, 2021), <https://www.brookings.edu/blog/brown-center-chalkboard/2021/02/22/understanding-covid-19-era-enrollment-drops-among-early-grade-public-school-students/>.

¹³⁹ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Pregnant and Recently Pregnant People, <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/need-extra-precautions/pregnant-people.html> (last visited November 9, 2021).

and families that may otherwise become involved in the child welfare system.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is clarifying that services to foster youth, including those aging out of the system, and child welfare-involved families may encompass a wide array of financial, educational, child development, or health supports, or other supports necessary, including supports for kinship care.

9. Addressing the impacts of lost instructional time.

Public Comment: The interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use to address educational disparities in disproportionately impacted communities, recognizing that underserved students have been more severely impacted by the pandemic and including responsive services for early learning, enhance funding to high-poverty districts, and providing evidence-based services to address the academic, social, emotional, and mental health needs of students. Some commenters expressed concerns that learning loss or the negative impacts of lost instructional time due to school closures or remote education during the pandemic had affected a significant share of students in grades kindergarten through twelve (K–12), including students who may not fall within a disproportionately impacted group.

Background: The COVID–19 pandemic resulted in the widespread closure of schools across the nation. While many schools and districts reopened to in-person instruction or implemented remote learning, the shift was not immediate or without consequence. Children who received virtual only or combined remote and in-person instruction were more likely to report experiencing negative mental- and physical health outcomes than children who received in-person instruction.¹⁵⁰

Treasury Response: Under the final rule, addressing the impact of lost instructional time and/or learning loss is an enumerated eligible use for impacted households. When providing services to address lost instructional time, recipients may presume that any K–12 student who lost access to in-person instruction for a significant period of time has been impacted by the pandemic and is thus eligible for responsive services.

Interventions or services that address the impact of lost instructional time may include offering high-quality tutoring and other extended learning opportunities, providing differentiated instruction, implementing activities to meet the comprehensive needs of students, expanding and improving language access for parents and families, providing information and assistance to parents and families on how they can effectively support students, including in a distance learning environment, improving student engagement in distance education, and administering and using high-quality assessments to assess students' academic progress, among others. In designing services under this eligible use, recipients may wish to reference guidance from the Department of Education on strategies for addressing lost instructional time.¹⁵¹

The final rule also maintains a separate enumerated eligible use for addressing educational disparities in disproportionately impacted communities. This eligible use includes services to address disparities in educational outcomes that predate the pandemic and amplified its impact on underserved students; these include, for example, enhanced funding to high-poverty districts and providing evidence-based services to address the academic, social, emotional, and mental health needs of students.

Finally, as described in the section Public Health, recipients can provide a broad range of behavioral health services, including services for children and youth in schools, to respond to the impacts of the pandemic on mental health and other behavioral health issues. When providing behavioral health services, recipients may presume that the general public was impacted by the pandemic and provide behavioral health services to members of the general public, including children and youth in schools, without any further analysis of impacts of the pandemic on those individuals and whether the service is responsive.

10. *Promoting long-term housing security: affordable housing and homelessness.* Under the interim final rule, recipients may use SLFRF funds to provide a set of housing services to communities that have been disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. Specifically, the interim final rule provided that programs or services that address housing insecurity, lack of affordable housing, or homelessness,

were responsive to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic when provided to disproportionately impacted households and communities. The enumerated uses included supportive housing or other programs or services to improve access to stable, affordable housing among individuals who are homeless and development of affordable housing to increase supply of affordable and high-quality living units. Many recipients have already announced plans to use SLFRF funds for affordable housing interventions in all of these categories. Treasury received many comments asking for additional clarity or flexibility in these uses.

As detailed below, based on multiple public comments and questions and Treasury's subsequent analysis, Treasury has determined that supportive housing or other programs or services to improve access to stable, affordable housing among individuals who are homeless, and the development of affordable and high-quality living units are responsive to the needs of impacted populations, not only disproportionately impacted populations. This final rule reflects this clarification and builds on the objectives stated in the interim final rule to improve access to stable, affordable housing, including through interventions that increase the supply of affordable and high-quality living units, improve housing security, and support durable and sustainable homeownership.

Finally, note that “emergency housing assistance,” or assistance for responses to the immediate negative economic impacts of the pandemic through services like financial assistance for rental arrears or mortgage payments, is also an eligible use category for assistance to households under the final rule; see the eligible use for “emergency housing assistance” above. The provision of housing vouchers and assistance relocating to neighborhoods with higher levels of economic opportunity remains an eligible use under assistance to disproportionately impacted households; for discussion, see the eligible use for “housing vouchers and assistance relocating” below.

Background: Affordable Housing: It is clear that the ongoing pandemic and resulting economic crisis are having a profound, long-term negative effect on the pre-existing affordable housing crisis facing low-income households.¹⁵²

¹⁵⁰ Verlenden JV, Pampati S, Rasberry CN, et al. Association of Children's Mode of School Instruction with Child and Parent Experiences and Well-Being During the COVID–19 Pandemic—COVID Experiences Survey, United States, October 8–November 13, 2020. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2021;70:369–376. DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm7011a1external> icon.

¹⁵¹ U.S. Department of Education, Strategies for Using American Rescue Plan Funding to Address the Impact of Lost Instructional Time, August 2021. Retrieved from <https://www2.ed.gov/documents/coronavirus/lost-instructional-time.pdf>.

¹⁵² Consumer Financial Protection Bureau, Housing insecurity and the COVID–19 pandemic

The combination of a large number of higher-income households who have weathered the pandemic without significant income losses, low interest rates, and housing supply constraints exacerbated by the pandemic, have driven a sharp increase in the sale price of homes.¹⁵³ Meanwhile, many low-income renters and homeowners are struggling with lost employment and income and are behind on their housing payments.¹⁵⁴

Public Comment: Affordable Housing Outside of Low-Income Geographies: A major theme in comments was that affordable housing interventions, especially development of affordable housing, should be allowed outside of QCTs, as concentrating the supply of affordable housing in low-income geographies can have the effect of increasing both concentrated poverty and racial and economic segregation, while locking lower-income households in need of housing support out of high-opportunity neighborhoods with access to employment and amenities.

Treasury Response: Affordable Housing Outside Low-Income Geographies: As previously stated, affordable housing is not confined to low-income geographies under the interim final rule. As discussed elsewhere, the interim final rule presumed that QCTs, as well as communities served by Tribal governments, were disproportionately impacted for administrative convenience, but recipients may identify other populations, households, or geographic areas with disparate impacts of COVID-19 and provide affordable housing services to them. For example, under the interim final rule, a city could determine that its low-income residents faced disproportionate impacts of COVID-19 and develop affordable housing targeted to these households. Such a scenario could include, for example, affordable projects

in higher-income neighborhoods that would allow residents to live closer to jobs and well-resourced schools.

Additionally, as noted above, Treasury is finalizing the rule with some changes to the treatment of affordable housing development designed to clarify that permanent supportive housing or other programs or services to improve access to stable, affordable housing among individuals who are homeless, and the development of affordable housing to increase supply of affordable and high-quality living units, are responsive to individuals and households that were impacted by the pandemic in addition to those that were disproportionately impacted. This shift is in line with commenters' recommendations and consistent with the facts described above, which demonstrate that lack of supply of affordable housing units contributed to the pandemic's impact on housing insecurity and unsustainable housing cost burdens and that these impacts were experienced broadly across the country.

Public Comment: Eligible Activities: Many commenters asked for clarity on what types of activities (e.g., land acquisition, construction, pre-construction costs, operating costs, etc.) are eligible uses of SLFRF, and what affordability criteria must be applied to affordable housing development. Commenters encouraged Treasury to allow the full array of affordable housing activities, including particular requests for broad flexibility for Tribal communities, and to specify that "development" should include construction, preservation, rehabilitation, and operation. Other commenters requested clarification about permissible program administration approaches for affordable housing, such as contracting methods and distribution of funds.

Some commenters asked that Treasury require SLFRF funds to be focused on the lowest-income households, who suffer the most severe rent burdens and risks of housing instability, and whose housing situation has left them particularly vulnerable to COVID-19. For example, one commenter argued that SLFRF funds should only be used to support affordable housing for households making 50 percent of AMI or less and that recipients should be required to set aside significant portions of any developments for renters making 30 percent of AMI or less and persons with physical and sensory disabilities. Other commenters requested a more flexible approach to affordable housing definitions.

Treasury Response: Eligible Activities: The final rule clarifies eligibility of affordable housing development for recipients; these uses were eligible under the interim final rule, but Treasury is providing further guidance to enhance clarity and respond to recipient and commenter questions.

As with all interventions to address the negative economic impacts of the pandemic, affordable housing projects must be responsive and proportional to the harm identified. This test may be met by affordable housing development projects—which may involve large expenditures and capital investments—if the developments increase the supply of long-term affordable housing for low-income households. While there may be less costly (or non-capital) alternatives to affordable housing development, a comprehensive response to the widespread housing challenges underscored by the pandemic will require the production of additional affordable homes, and targeted affordable housing development is a cost-effective and proportional response to this need.

For purposes of this test, Treasury will presume that any projects that would be eligible for funding under either the National Housing Trust Fund (HTF) or the Home Investment Partnerships Program (HOME) are eligible uses of SLFRF funds. Note that these programs use different income limits than the definition of low- and moderate-income adopted by Treasury. Given the severity of the affordable housing shortage, and the ways in which the pandemic has exacerbated the need for affordable, high-quality dwelling units, Treasury has determined that the households served by these federal housing programs have been impacted by the pandemic and its negative economic impacts and that development of affordable housing consistent with these programs is a related and reasonably proportional response to those impacts. Additionally, affordable housing projects provided by a Tribal government are eligible uses of SLFRF if they would be eligible for funding under the Indian Housing Block Grant program, the Indian Community Development Block Grant program, or the Bureau of Indian Affairs Housing Improvement Program. Alignment with these programs, which define "affordable housing" in a manner consistent with a proportionate response to the affordable housing challenges faced by low- and moderate-income households as a result of the negative economic impacts of the pandemic, is intended to give recipients comfort and clarity as they design a

(March 2020), https://files.consumerfinance.gov/f/documents/cfpb_Housing_insecurity_and_the_COVID-19_pandemic.pdf.

¹⁵³ Joint Center For Housing Studies Of Harvard University, The State of the Nation's Housing (June 2021), https://www.jchs.harvard.edu/sites/default/files/reports/files/Harvard_JCHS_State_Nations_Housing_2021.pdf.

¹⁵⁴ Davin Reed and Eileen Divringi, Household Rental Debt During COVID-19: Update for 2021, Federal Reserve Bank of Philadelphia (2020), available at: <https://www.philadelphiafed.org/community-development/housing-and-neighborhoods/household-rental-debt-during-covid-19-update-for-2021>. Further, some research suggests that liquidity may be a more important predictor of default than other factors, including income or equity. See Trading Equity for Liquidity (June 2019), available at <https://www.jpmmorganchase.com/content/dam/jpmc/jpmorgan-chase-and-co/institute/pdf/institute-trading-equity-for-liquidity.pdf>.

wide variety of affordable housing interventions, including production, rehabilitation, and preservation of affordable rental housing and, in some cases, affordable homeownership units. These programs allow the financing of a wide range of affordable housing activities and set clear eligibility criteria that many recipients are already familiar with.

Finally, to further support sustainable and durable homeownership, recipients may consider offering down payment assistance, such as through contributions to a homeowner's equity at origination or that establish a post-closing, mortgage reserve account on behalf of the borrower that may be utilized to make a missed or partial mortgage payment at any point during the life of the loan (e.g., if the borrower faces financial stress). Homeownership assistance that would be eligible under the Community Development Block Grant (at 24 CFR 507.201(n)) is also an eligible use of SLFRF funds.

Public Comment: Permanent Supportive Housing: Treasury has received comments encouraging the use of SLFRF funds for permanent supportive housing. This is an eligible use under the interim final rule: Both the development of affordable housing (including operating subsidies) and wraparound services such as behavioral health services, employment services, and other supportive services, are eligible responses to the public health crisis or its negative economic impacts.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the eligibility of permanent supportive housing as an enumerated use. Treasury is also clarifying that other affordable housing developments targeted to specialized populations are also eligible, for example recovery housing for individuals in recovery from substance use.

Public Comment: Operating Expenses: Commenters specifically asked that Treasury allow the use of SLFRF funds for operating expenses of affordable housing units, as operating subsidies are typically required to reach extremely low-income households, whose affordable rents may be lower than the ongoing cost of operating their unit.

Treasury Response: Operating expenses for eligible affordable housing were an eligible use of funds under the interim final rule and the final rule maintains this treatment. This may include capitalized operating reserves.

Rehabilitation and repair of public housing will also be considered an eligible use of SLFRF funds.

Public Comment: Affordable Housing Loans and Revolving Loan Funds: Some commenters requested that loans with

maturities beyond the period of performance or revolving loan funds that revolve beyond the period of performance be eligible uses of SLFRF funds if used for affordable housing. Some commenters pointed out that for-profit developers of low-income housing through the Low-Income Housing Tax Credit (LIHTC) may be deterred from accepting grants to bridge funding gaps in current LIHTC deals by the treatment of grants to for-profit entities in the calculation of eligible basis for the LIHTC.

Treasury Response: The final rule does not change the treatment of loans from the interim final rule. For more details see section Treatment of Loans in Program Administration Provisions. Similarly, the final rule does not change the treatment of grants to support affordable housing development, including developments supported by the LIHTC: such grants are an eligible use of funds.

Additional enumerated eligible uses for assistance to impacted households. As noted above, the interim final rule posed a question on what other types of services or costs Treasury should consider as eligible uses to respond to the negative economic impacts of COVID-19. In response, commenters proposed a wide variety of additional recommended enumerated eligible uses to assist households, ranging from general categories of services (e.g., legal and social services) to services that respond to needs widely experienced across the country (e.g., access to and affordability of health insurance) to services that are most applicable to the particularized needs of certain populations or geographic areas of the United States (e.g., senior citizens, SNAP recipients, immigrants, formerly-incarcerated individuals, responding to environmental issues in certain geographic regions). Other commenters generally requested a high degree of flexibility to respond to the particular needs of their communities.

Treasury Response: Given the large number and diversity of SLFRF recipients, Treasury's approach to assistance to households in the final rule aims to clarify additional enumerated eligible uses that respond to negative economic impacts of the pandemic experienced widely in many jurisdictions across the country, making it clear and simple for recipients to pursue these enumerated eligible uses under the final rule. In the final rule, Treasury is clarifying several additional uses, which generally respond to pandemic impacts experienced broadly across jurisdictions and populations, are eligible under the interim final rule as

assistance to households and continue to be so under the final rule, as outlined below.

11. Paid sick, medical, or family leave.

Public Comment: Some commenters argued that the pandemic increased the need for paid sick or medical leave, as staying home when ill is recommended by the CDC to prevent spread of the virus but lack of access to paid sick leave often prevents workers from staying home. Other commenters recommended paid family leave as an eligible use, arguing that shortages in access to childcare or home health assistance, as well as school closures, may increase the need for family members to serve as caretakers.

Background: The COVID-19 pandemic highlighted the importance of paid leave as well as the number of workers who do not have access to paid sick and/or family leave. When workers have access to paid leave, they are less likely to report to work sick, and therefore less likely to spread illnesses in the workplace: One study demonstrates that the emergency sick leave provision of the Families First Coronavirus Response Act (FFCRA) reduced the spread of COVID-19.¹⁵⁵

The lack of paid leave exacerbates financial hardships experienced as a result of the public health emergency. A 2018 survey by the Department of Labor found that two-thirds of employees that took unpaid or partial-paid leave experienced financial hardship.¹⁵⁶ Furthermore, because the Family and Medical Leave Act (FMLA) excludes small employers, part-time workers, and workers who have been with their employer for less than a year, 44 percent of workers do not have access to even unpaid leave.¹⁵⁷ Workers of color and workers with lower incomes are less likely to have access to paid leave.^{158 159}

¹⁵⁵ Stefan Pichler, Katherine Wen, and Nicolas R. Ziebarth, COVID-19 Emergency Sick Leave Has Helped Flatten The Curve In The United States: Study examines the impact of emergency sick leave on the spread of COVID-19, *Health Affairs* 39, no. 12 (2020): 2197–2204, <https://www.healthaffairs.org/doi/10.1377/hlthaff.2020.00863>.

¹⁵⁶ Scott Brown et al., Employee and Worksites Perspectives of the Family and Medical Leave Act: Results from the 2018 Surveys, Abt Associates (July 2020), https://www.dol.gov/sites/dolgov/files/OASP/evaluation/pdf/WHDFMLA2018SurveyResults_FinalReport_Aug2020.pdf.

¹⁵⁷ *Id.*

¹⁵⁸ Ann P. Bartel et al., Racial and ethnic disparities in access to and use of paid family and medical leave: evidence from four nationally representative datasets, U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS) (January 2019), <https://www.bls.gov/opub/mlr/2019/article/racial-and-ethnic-disparities-in-access-to-and-use-of-paid-family-and-medical-leave.htm>.

For workers that are also caregivers for children, seniors, or other family members, there may be a similar need for—and benefits of—paid family leave. For example, some workers may have struggled during the pandemic to balance caring for children, as schools and daycares closed, and working. For new parents, paid parental leave results in fewer infant hospitalizations, lowering parental stress, increasing parental involvement, and improving the overall health of parent and child.¹⁶⁰ COVID-19 has also increased the levels of “caregiving intensity”¹⁶¹ and “caregiving burden”¹⁶² for those providing care to seniors or older family members.^{163 164} When surveyed, more than half of caregivers reported that COVID-19 increased both the amount of caregiving responsibilities they had as well as the negative physical and mental impacts their caregiving responsibilities had on themselves.¹⁶⁵

Treasury Response: Treasury agrees that these constitute impacts of the pandemic, and accordingly, under the final rule, creating, expanding, or financially supporting paid sick, medical, or family leave programs is an enumerated eligible use of funds to respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic.

12. Health insurance.

Public Comment: Several commenters recommended that uses of funds to expand access to health insurance be enumerated eligible uses; commenters believed that the heightened risk of

illness or hospitalization due to COVID-19 had increased the negative economic impacts of lacking health insurance.

Background: In 2019, prior to the pandemic, it was estimated that 11 percent of nonelderly adults lacked health insurance.¹⁶⁶ By mid-2020, job loss had resulted in an estimated 3.3 million people losing their employer sponsored insurance, resulting in an additional 2 million uninsured adults.¹⁶⁷ Participation in Medicaid, the Children’s Health Insurance Program (CHIP), and the Affordable Care Act (ACA) marketplace played an important role in minimizing the number of people who completely lost health insurance during the early phases of the pandemic; Medicaid and CHIP enrollment increased by 9 percent from February to September 2020¹⁶⁸ and 8.3 million people enrolled in insurance through the ACA marketplace.¹⁶⁹

Although the ACA, CHIP, and Medicaid have significantly reduced the number of uninsured Americans through the pandemic and the economic downturn, adequate coverage and affordability still remains an issue for many. In 2020, 21 percent of working-age adults were inadequately insured, meaning even if they had insurance, they incurred a significant amount of out-of-pocket costs.¹⁷⁰ Additionally, 37 percent of adults reported struggling with medical bills or medical debt and 71 percent of adults who did not purchase insurance cited affordability as the main factor.¹⁷¹

Treasury Response: Treasury agrees that loss of health insurance, increased financial risk from lacking health insurance, or excessive out-of-pocket healthcare costs constitute negative economic impacts of the pandemic. Under the final rule, programs or services to expand access to health insurance coverage are an enumerated eligible use as assistance to households, for example, subsidies for health insurance premiums or expansion of a recipient’s health insurance plan to cover additional employees who currently lack coverage.

13. Services for the unbanked and underbanked.

Public Comment: One commenter expressed support for the inclusion of services to increase banking access as an allowable expense under SLFRF. The commenter recommended that states be encouraged to offer opportunities for consumers to open safe and affordable accounts capable of receiving direct payments. The commenter emphasized that allowing unbanked and underbanked households to receive funds securely through no-fee, direct deposit will help connect or reconnect consumers to the mainstream financial system.

Background: Banking inequities can make it difficult for unbanked or underbanked households to access housing, jobs, and other important economic opportunities. Being unbanked or underbanked can also make it challenging for households to apply for and receive financial assistance, including services like pandemic emergency housing assistance.

Safe, affordable, and accessible financial services play a critical role in assisting households in the United States in managing income volatility and cash flow shortages.¹⁷² Currently, over 5 percent of families, or 7 million households are “unbanked,” meaning they do not have a bank account.¹⁷³ Low-income households, non-white households, and households with individuals with disabilities were even more likely to be unbanked. In 2019, 16 percent of Native American households, 14 percent of Black households, and 12 percent of Hispanic households were unbanked, compared to 2.5 percent of white households. Additionally,

¹⁵⁹ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Employee Benefits in the United States (March 2019), <https://www.bls.gov/ncs/ebs/benefits/2019/ownership/civilian/table31a.pdf>.

¹⁶⁰ Maya Rossin-Slater et al., Local exposure to school shootings and youth antidepressant use, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, vol 117(38), pages 23484–23489 (2020), <https://www.pnas.org/content/117/38/23484>; Ariel Marek Pihl and Gaetano Basso, Did California Paid Family Leave Impact Infant Health?, *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/pam.2210>.

¹⁶¹ J.C. Jacobs, A. Laporte, C.H. Van Houtven, P.C. Coyte, Caregiving intensity and retirement status in Canada, *Social Science & Medicine*, 102, 74–82 (2014), <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S0277953613006631>.

¹⁶² E. Lightfoot, R.P. Moone, Caregiving in times of uncertainty: Helping adult children of aging parents find support during the COVID-19 outbreak, *Journal of Gerontological Social Work*, 63(6–7), 542–552 (2020), <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/01634372.2020.1769793>.

¹⁶³ Note: “Caregiving intensity” is defined as the amount and type of care provided by informal caregivers; “Caregiving burden” is defined as the impacts on physical and mental health, and health-related quality of life of informal caregivers.

¹⁶⁴ SA Cohen, ZJ Kunicki, MM Drohan, ML Greaney, Exploring Changes in Caregiver Burden and Caregiving Intensity due to COVID-19, *Gerontology and Geriatric Medicine* (January 2021), doi:10.1177/2333721421999279.

¹⁶⁵ *Id.*

¹⁶⁶ Jennifer Tolbert et al., Key Facts about the Uninsured Population, Kaiser Family Foundation (November 6, 2020), <https://www.kff.org/uninsured/issue-brief/key-facts-about-the-uninsured-population/>.

¹⁶⁷ Joshua Aarons et al., As the COVID-19 Recession Extended into the Summer of 2020, More Than 3 Million Adults Lost Employer-Sponsored Health Insurance Coverage and 2 Million Became Uninsured, Urban Institute (September 18, 2020), <https://www.urban.org/research/publication/covid-19-recession-extended-summer-2020-more-3-million-adults-lost-employer-sponsored-health-insurance-coverage-and-2-million-became-uninsured>.

¹⁶⁸ Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, Medicaid and CHIP Enrollment Trends Snapshot through September 2020 (Washington: 2021), available at <https://www.medicare.gov/sites/default/files/2021-01/september-medicare-chip-enrollment-trend-snapshot.pdf>.

¹⁶⁹ Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, 2021 Federal Health Insurance Exchange Weekly Enrollment Snapshot: Final Snapshot (January 12, 2021) available at <https://www.cms.gov/newsroom/fact-sheets/2021-federal-health-insurance-exchange-weekly-enrollment-snapshot-final-snapshot>.

¹⁷⁰ Sara R. Collins, Munira Z. Gunja, and Gabriella N. Aboulafia, U.S. Health Insurance Coverage in 2020: A Looming Crisis in Affordability (New York: Commonwealth Fund, 2020), available at <https://www.commonwealthfund.org/publications/issue-briefs/2020/aug/looming-crisis-health-coverage-2020-biennial>.

¹⁷¹ *Id.*

¹⁷² Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, FDIC National Survey of Unbanked and Underbanked Households (2015), <https://www.fdic.gov/householdsurvey/2015/2015execsumm.pdf>.

¹⁷³ Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, How America Banks: Household Use of Banking and Financial Services 2019 FDIC Survey, <https://www.fdic.gov/analysis/household-survey/2019report.pdf>.

underbanked households—those that have a bank account but rely on alternative financial services, such as money orders, payday loans, and check cashing services—account for 16 percent of all households in the United States.¹⁷⁴ As a result of the COVID-19 pandemic, new social distancing protocols have, in some instances, made it more difficult to perform financial transactions with paper instruments, like banknotes, coinage, paper checks, or money orders. Households constrained to these payment methods may face challenges receiving government assistance. Additionally, businesses have transitioned to cashless payments systems to promote contactless payments.¹⁷⁵ As a result, unbanked individuals may face additional challenges conducting financial transactions.

Treasury Response: Recognizing these challenges, Treasury is clarifying that recipients may use SLFRF funds to provide financial services that facilitate the delivery of federal, state, or local benefits (e.g., Child Tax Credit, Earned Income Tax Credit, tax refunds, or emergency housing or food assistance funds). The following includes a non-exhaustive list of uses to provide financial services to unbanked and underbanked households:

- Provide low or no cost financial services, including in conjunction with administration of benefits, such as pre-paid debit cards, e.g., via Economic Impact Payment or General Purpose Reloadable pre-paid cards or for the development of public banking infrastructure that can support benefit delivery.
- Provide transitional services to facilitate long-term access to banking and financial services.
- Provide financial literacy programs and conduct community outreach and deploy engagement resources to increase awareness about low-cost, no-overdraft fee accounts, pilot new strategies and approaches that help overcome barriers to banking access and support the gathering and sharing of information in ways that improve equity, such as community meetings, partnerships with community-based organizations, online surveys, focus groups, human-centered design

¹⁷⁴ Board of the Governors of the Federal Reserve System, Report on the Economic Well-Being of U.S. Households in 2018–May 2019, <https://www.federalreserve.gov/publications/2019-economic-well-being-of-us-households-in-2018-banking-and-credit.htm>.

¹⁷⁵ Zaheer Allam, The Forceful Reevaluation of Cash-Based Transactions by COVID-19 and Its Opportunities to Transition to Cashless Systems in Digital Urban Networks. Surveying the Covid-19 Pandemic and its Implications (2020): 107–117. doi:10.1016/B978-0-12-824313-8.00008-5.

activities, and other community engagement activities.

Assistance to Unemployed and Underemployed Workers

The interim final rule included assistance to unemployed workers as an enumerated eligible use, including “services like job training to accelerate rehiring of unemployed workers.” Treasury provided further guidance, based on recipient questions after the interim final rule, that eligible uses under this section also include “other efforts to accelerate rehiring and thus reduce unemployment, such as childcare assistance, assistance with transportation to and from a jobsite or interview, and incentives for newly employed workers[.]” as well as assistance to unemployed workers seeking to start small businesses. Finally, further guidance also provided that “public jobs programs, subsidized employment, combined education and on-the-job training programs, or job training to accelerate rehiring or address negative economic or public health impacts experienced due to a worker’s occupation or level of training” are all enumerated eligible uses as assistance to unemployed or underemployed workers.

The interim final rule defined eligible beneficiaries of assistance as “individuals who want and are available for work, including those who have looked for work sometime in the past 12 months or who are employed part time but who want and are available for full-time work.” This definition is based on definitions used by the Bureau of Labor Statistics to define individuals currently unemployed, as well as persons marginally attached to the labor force and working part-time for economic reasons.¹⁷⁶ The latter two classifications are types of labor underutilization, or “underemployed” workers.¹⁷⁷ Finally, the interim final rule specified that assistance to unemployed workers included both workers who lost their job during the pandemic and resulting recession and workers unemployed when the pandemic began who saw further deterioration of their economic prospects due to the pandemic.

Public Comment: Commenters generally supported the inclusion of this enumerated eligible use. One commenter recommended including assistance for underemployed workers who took jobs due to the pandemic that

did not fully utilize their skillset or did not provide the hours, wages, or job quality desired. Treasury has also received recipient questions on whether job fairs or grants to businesses to hire underserved workers are eligible uses under this category. Another commenter recommended flexibility in eligible workforce development programs, arguing that rural areas may face particular challenges.

Treasury Response: Treasury is maintaining this eligible use in the final rule, including the enumerated eligible services in the interim final rule and subsequent guidance. Treasury is also confirming that job fairs or grants to businesses to hire underserved workers are eligible uses under this section.

Treasury is also enumerating that job and workforce training centers are eligible capital expenditures, so long as they adhere to the standards and presumptions detailed in the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other.

The final rule maintains the definition of eligible beneficiaries, which is aligned with the Bureau of Labor Statistics’ definitions of unemployed workers and other labor underutilization, using a common, widely known definition that incorporates a broad group of individuals both unemployed or whose skills are otherwise underutilized in the labor market.

In addition, recognizing that the pandemic has generated broad workforce disruption, in the final rule, Treasury is making clear that recipients may provide job training or other enumerated types of assistance to individuals that are currently employed but are seeking to move to a job that provides better opportunities for economic advancement, such as higher wages or more opportunities for career advancement.

Recipient Unemployment Insurance Trust Funds and Related Expenses

Under the interim final rule, a recipient may use funds to make deposits into its account of the Unemployment Trust Fund established under section 904 of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1104) up to the level needed to restore the pre-pandemic balance of such account as of January 27, 2020 or to pay back advances received under Title XII of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1321) for the payment of benefits between January 27, 2020 and May 17, 2021. These costs support the solvency of the unemployment insurance system and, ultimately, unemployment insurance benefits provided to unemployed

¹⁷⁶ Bureau of Labor Statistics, Labor Force Statistics from the Current Population Survey: Concepts and Definitions, <https://www.bls.gov/cps/definitions.htm> (last visited November 9, 2021).

¹⁷⁷ *Id.*

workers during the pandemic.¹⁷⁸ The interim final rule also posed the question of what, if any, conditions should be considered to ensure that funds used under this eligible use category repair economic impacts of the pandemic and strengthen unemployment insurance systems.

Public Comment: Inclusion as an Eligible Use and Conditions:

Commenters expressed mixed perspectives on this eligible use category. Some commenters supported its inclusion, arguing that unemployment insurance systems have faced significant costs to support unemployed workers during the pandemic and that this constitutes a negative economic impact that SLFRF funds should be able to address. Other commenters opposed this eligible use category, arguing that funds used under this category may not ultimately support unemployed workers. Some commenters noted that unemployment insurance taxes on businesses automatically increase when trust fund balances are low and suggested that permitting the deposit of funds into unemployment insurance trust funds prevents a tax increase on businesses, some of which may not have faced negative economic impacts from the pandemic, rather than providing assistance to unemployed workers. Other comments suggested that deposits are better thought of as savings for future needs than assistance to unemployed workers in the near term.

Responding to the interim final rule's question, several commenters suggested that, if Treasury maintains this eligible use, the final rule should require detailed reporting on funds used under this category or place conditions on this category to increase the likelihood that funds ultimately support unemployed workers. For example, some commenters suggested that recipients that deposit SLFRF funds into their trust fund should be barred from cutting unemployment insurance benefits for workers during the period of performance or from erecting new barriers to accessing benefits (e.g., through the application process and ongoing requirements to receive benefits). One commenter, noting that unemployment insurance benefits often provide low rates of wage replacement and do not cover some types of unemployed workers, argued that recipients should not be permitted to deposit funds into the trust fund unless

the recipient concurrently expands benefits. Finally, one commenter suggested a cap on the amount of funds that can be used for this purpose.

Treasury Response: Inclusion as an Eligible Use and Conditions: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining the inclusion of this eligible use category. Because unemployment insurance trust funds directly fund benefits to unemployed workers, maintaining the solvency of the trust fund is critical to the continued provision of assistance to unemployed workers. Further, funds deposited into the trust fund must be used as assistance to unemployed workers, an eligible use of SLFRF funds. Finally, while, in the absence of the SLFRF, trust fund deposits would likely be funded through increases on employer payroll taxes, the eligibility of uses of SLFRF funds does not depend on how obligations would otherwise be satisfied if the SLFRF were not available for this use.

While deposits to unemployment insurance trust funds generally serve as assistance to unemployed workers, recipients that make deposits but also cut unemployment insurance benefits to workers substantially decrease the likelihood that the deposited funds will assist unemployed workers. In other words, SLFRF funds deposited into an unemployment insurance trust fund generally serve as assistance to unemployed workers, unless recipients take policy actions that substantially decrease the extent to which SLFRF funds would flow to unemployed workers. As such, through December 31, 2024, recipients that deposit SLFRF funds into an unemployment insurance trust fund or use SLFRF funds to repay principal on Title XII advances, may not take action to reduce benefits available to unemployed workers by changing the computation method governing regular unemployment compensation in a way that results in a reduction of average weekly benefit amounts or the number of weeks of benefits payable (i.e., the maximum benefit entitlement).

Finally, until the final rule becomes effective on April 1, 2022, the interim final rule remains binding and effective.¹⁷⁹ These requirements were not in effect under the interim final rule and do not apply to funds used (i.e., obligated or expended) under the interim final rule while it is in effect. In addition, recognizing that some recipients have taken significant steps

toward making a trust fund deposit or repaying principal on Title XII advances under the interim final rule, such as the legislative appropriation of funds for this purpose, even if a formal obligation has not occurred, Treasury will exercise enforcement discretion to not pursue violations of this final rule provision (i.e., the requirement not to reduce benefits) for recipients that have appropriated funds for this purpose prior to the date of adoption of the final rule consistent with the laws and procedures in their jurisdiction. Recipients should refer to Treasury's Statement Regarding Compliance with the Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds Interim Final Rule and Final Rule, which provides additional detail on these issues.

Public Comment and Treasury Response: Technical Corrections and Amendments: Following the interim final rule, Treasury received recipient questions on whether paying interest on advances received under Title XII of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1321) is an eligible use of SLFRF funds; Treasury is clarifying that such use is permissible, consistent with Treasury's treatment of the eligibility of interest on Title XII advances under the Coronavirus Relief Fund.

Treasury is further clarifying that recipients may only use SLFRF funds for contributions to unemployment insurance trust funds and repayment of the principal amount due on advances received under Title XII of the Social Security Act up to an amount equal to (i) the difference between the balance in the recipient's unemployment insurance trust fund as of January 27, 2020 and the balance of such account as of May 17, 2021, plus (ii) the principal amount outstanding as of May 17, 2021 on any advances received under Title XII of the Social Security Act between January 27, 2020 and May 17, 2021. Further, recipients may use SLFRF funds for the payment of any interest due on such Title XII advances. In other words, excluding interest due on Title XII advances, the magnitude of the decrease of the balance in the unemployment insurance trust fund plus the principal outstanding on any Title XII borrowings made from the beginning of the public health emergency to the date of publication of the SLFRF interim final rule sets a cap on the amount of SLFRF funds a recipient may use for trust fund contributions and repayment of principal on Title XII advances. Further, a recipient that deposits SLFRF funds into its unemployment insurance trust fund to fully restore the pre-pandemic balance may not draw down that

¹⁷⁸ Note that, while the economic harm being addressed accrued before March 3, 2021, the cost incurred to address the harm occurs after March 3, 2021 and provides assistance to unemployed workers, an eligible use of SLFRF funds.

¹⁷⁹ See, e.g., U.S. Department of the Treasury, More Information on the Conclusion of the Public Comment Period and the Interim Final Rule on the Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/IFR-Explainer.pdf>.

balance and deposit more SLFRF funds, back up to the pre-pandemic balance.

Enumerated Eligible Uses for Disproportionately Impacted Households

Background

The COVID-19 pandemic has had disproportionately negative impacts on many households and communities that were already experiencing inequality related to race, gender, age, or income before the pandemic. People of color, low-income workers, and women disproportionately lost their jobs during the COVID-19 pandemic and experienced disproportionate rates of negative health outcomes.^{180 181}

These disproportionate negative impacts experienced by systemically underserved communities are not novel to the COVID-19 pandemic and the economic downturn. Research shows that historically underserved communities that are experiencing economic and social disparities typically experience disproportionate impacts of economic downturns and natural disasters.¹⁸² This pattern held true for the effects of COVID-19 and the economic downturn: Historically undeserved groups experienced amplified negative impacts, further widening inequality.¹⁸³

Many communities facing systemic barriers had not yet recovered from the impact of the Great Recession before experiencing the impacts of COVID-19 and the economic downturn. For example, in 2009, at the end of the Great Recession, households without a high school diploma had an average annual income of \$32,300 (measured in 2018 dollars). By 2018, nine years into the economic recovery, those same households saw their average income increase by \$600. During that same time period, households with a bachelor's degree saw an increase in their average

household income of \$6,100 (measured in 2018 dollars).¹⁸⁴

The impact pre-existing inequalities have on a household or community's ability to recover is intersectional. Research shows that pre-existing racial and gender disparities exacerbated the disproportionate economic and health impact COVID-19 and the economic downturn had on workers of color, and specifically, women of color.¹⁸⁵ Another study found that during the first six months of the pandemic counties that were both high-poverty and majority non-white experienced COVID-19 infection rates eight times higher than high-poverty, majority white counties.¹⁸⁶ Many residents in these communities are still coping with the negative health and economic impacts.

Summary of the Interim Final Rule and Final Rule Structure

As described previously, the interim final rule provided a broader list of enumerated eligible uses to respond to the pandemic in disproportionately impacted communities, in recognition that pre-existing health, economic, and social disparities contributed to disproportionate pandemic impacts in certain communities and that addressing the root causes of those disparities constitutes responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. The interim final rule described eligible uses in disproportionately impacted communities in four categories, spread across public health and negative economic impacts: (1) Addressing disparities in public health outcomes, (2) building stronger communities through investments in housing and neighborhoods, (3) addressing educational disparities, and (4) promoting healthy childhood environments. As described above, Treasury has moved eligible uses related to community violence intervention, assistance accessing or applying to public benefits and services, affordable housing development, healthy childhood environments, and addressing lost instructional time in K–

12 schools into the category “assistance to impacted households,” recognizing that these pandemic impacts were widely shared across the country.

This section discusses enumerated eligible uses to address health disparities, to build stronger communities through investments in neighborhoods, to address educational disparities, to provide rental assistance vouchers or assistance relocating to areas of greater economic opportunity, and additional eligible uses to respond to negative economic impacts in disproportionately impacted communities. While many of these services impact both health and economic outcomes, Treasury has consolidated them into a single section for simplicity and clarity and to reflect the intertwined nature of these issues.

As a reminder, recipients can presume these uses are eligible when provided in a QCT, to families and individuals living in QCTs, by Tribal or territorial governments, or to low-income households or communities. As provided in section Standards: Designating Other Disproportionately Impacted Classes, recipients can also provide these services to other populations, households, or geographic areas disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. Recipients may also identify additional disproportionate impacts of the pandemic and design an appropriate response to address that harm. For details on eligibility standards and presumed eligible populations, see section General Provisions: Structure and Standards.

Enumerated Eligible Uses for Disproportionately Impacted Households

1. Addressing health disparities.

Public Comment: General: In general, commenters supported eligible uses to address health disparities and support health equity; several commenters highlighted the disparities faced by communities of color and low-income populations, as well as the importance of community engagement in developing effective programs to serve disproportionately impacted communities. Many commenters recommended additional enumerated eligible uses to address health disparities; these are discussed further below in this section.

Treasury Response: In line with commenters' recommendations, the final rule maintains several enumerated eligible uses to address health disparities, specifically:

a. Community health workers.

Treasury received few comments on community health workers, though one

¹⁸⁰ U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, COVID-19 and Economic Opportunity: Inequities in the Employment Crisis, April 2021. Retrieved from https://aspe.hhs.gov/sites/default/files/migrated_legacy_files/199901/covid-economic-equity-brief.pdf.

¹⁸¹ Adelle Simmons et al., Health disparities by race and ethnicity during the COVID-19 pandemic: Current evidence and policy approaches. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services https://aspe.hhs.gov/sites/default/files/migrated_legacy_files/199516/covid-equity-issue-brief.pdf.

¹⁸² Perry, Brea L., Brian Aronson, and Bernice A. Pescosolido, Pandemic precarity: COVID-19 is exposing and exacerbating inequalities in the American heartland, National Academy of Sciences (February 2021), <https://www.pnas.org/content/118/8/e2020685118>.

¹⁸³ *Id.*

¹⁸⁴ Jesse Bennet & Rakesh Kochhar, Two Recessions, Two Recoveries, Pew Research Center (December 13, 2019), <https://www.pewresearch.org/social-trends/2019/12/13/two-recessions-two-recoveries-2/>.

¹⁸⁵ Darrick Hamilton et al., Building an Equitable Recovery: The role of Race, Labor Markets, and Education, The New School's Institute on Race and Political Economy (February 2021).

¹⁸⁶ Adhikari S, Pantaleo NP, Feldman JM, Ogedegbe O, Thorpe L, Troxel AB. Assessment of Community-Level Disparities in Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) Infections and Deaths in Large US Metropolitan Areas. JAMA Netw Open. 2020;3(7):e2016938. doi:10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2020.16938.

requested further clarification on their role.¹⁸⁷ Treasury is maintaining this eligible use in the final rule.

b. Remediation of lead paint or other lead hazards. The interim final rule included remediation of lead paint or other lead hazards as an enumerated eligible use to address health disparities.

Public Comment: Treasury received several comments asking for clarification on the eligibility of a particular use that would indirectly address lead pollution. For example, a commenter requested the ability to fund remedial actions, such as filtration and plumbing procedures to help address lead pollution. One commenter requested that private wells be eligible for funding to address contamination with substances such as lead. Other commenters requested that Treasury allow replacement of lead pipes as an eligible use of funds.

Treasury Response: Recipients may make a broad range of water infrastructure investments under section 602(c)(1)(d) and 603(c)(1)(d), which can include lead service line replacement and other activities to identify and remediate lead in water. These uses are discussed in greater detail in section Water and Sewer Infrastructure of this Supplemental Information.

Treasury has further determined that several of the services identified by commenters are appropriate responses to address health disparities in disproportionately impacted households. These services were eligible under the interim final rule and continue to be so under the final rule. These services include remediation to address lead-based public health risk factors, outside of lead in water, including evaluation and remediation of lead paint, dust, or soil hazards; testing for blood lead levels; public outreach and education; and emergency protection measures, like bottled water and water filters, in areas with an action level exceedance for lead in water in accordance with the Environmental Protection Agency's Lead and Copper Rule.¹⁸⁸

Further, Treasury had determined that certain capital expenditures, including improvements to existing facilities to remediate lead contaminants (e.g., removal of lead paint), are eligible responses, although this does not

include construction of new facilities for the purpose of lead remediation. Recipients should make sure that all capital expenditures adhere to the standards and presumptions detailed in section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other.

c. Medical facilities. Treasury received a few comments from recipients seeking to use SLFRF funds to build new medical facilities, such as hospitals or public health clinics, to serve disproportionately impacted communities. Given the central role of access to high-quality medical care in reducing health disparities and addressing the root causes that led to disproportionate impact COVID-19 health impacts in certain communities, the final rule recognizes that medical equipment and facilities designed to address disparities in public health outcomes are eligible capital expenditures. This includes primary care clinics, hospitals, or integrations of health services into other settings. Recipients should make sure that all capital expenditures adhere to the standards and presumptions detailed in section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other.

2. Housing vouchers and assistance relocating. In addition to other housing services, the interim final rule permitted a variety of rental assistance approaches to support low-income households in securing stable, long-term housing, including housing vouchers, residential counseling, or housing navigation assistance to facilitate household moves to neighborhoods with high levels of economic opportunity and mobility for low-income residents. Examples could include SLFRF-funded analogues to Section 8 Housing Choice vouchers; other kinds of rent subsidies, including shallow subsidies; and programs to help residents move to areas with higher levels of economic mobility.¹⁸⁹ Treasury did not receive public comments on these enumerated eligible uses.

Treasury Response: Treasury maintains the eligibility of vouchers and relocation assistance in the final rule.

3. Building strong, healthy communities through investments in neighborhoods. While the interim final rule included a category of enumerated eligible uses for “building stronger communities through investments in housing and neighborhoods,” the examples of services provided generally focused on housing uses. In response to questions following release of the interim final rule, Treasury issued

further guidance clarifying that “investments in parks, public plazas, and other public outdoor recreation spaces may be responsive to the needs of disproportionately impacted communities by promoting healthier living environments.”

Public Comment: General: A significant theme across many public comments was the importance of neighborhood environment to health and economic outcomes and the potential connections between residence in an underserved neighborhood and disproportionate impacts from the pandemic. Many commenters highlighted the connection between neighborhoods and health outcomes, including citing public health research linking neighborhood traits to health outcomes. For example, the CDC states that “neighborhoods people live in have a major impact on their health and well-being.”¹⁹⁰ As such, CDC identifies “neighborhoods and built environment” as one of five key social determinants of health¹⁹¹ and includes “creat[ing] neighborhoods and environments that promote health and safety” as one of the agency’s goals for social determinants of health outcomes.

a. Neighborhood features that promote improved health and safety outcomes.

Public Comment: Commenters argued that neighborhoods impact physical health outcomes in several ways. First, some commenters reasoned that the physical environment and amenities in a community¹⁹² influence a person’s level of physical activity, with features like parks, recreation facilities, and safe sidewalks promoting increased physical activity that improves health outcomes. Conversely, commenters argued that a lack of these features in a neighborhood could dampen physical activity and contribute to health conditions like obesity that are risk factors for more severe COVID-19 health outcomes.

Second, some commenters also suggested that access to healthy food in a neighborhood impacts health outcomes. These commenters reasoned

¹⁹⁰ U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Neighborhood and Built Environment, <https://health.gov/healthypeople/objectives-and-data/browse-objectives/neighborhood-and-built-environment#cit1> (last visited November 9, 2021).

¹⁹¹ Social determinants of health are “the conditions in the places where people live, learn, work, and play that affect a wide range of health risks and outcomes.” Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, About Social Determinants of Health (SDOH), <https://www.cdc.gov/social-determinants/about.html> (last visited November 9, 2021).

¹⁹² In public health, this is referred to as “built environment,” or the man-made physical aspects of a community (e.g., homes, buildings, streets, open spaces, and infrastructure).

¹⁸⁷ See, e.g., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Community Health Worker (CHW) Toolkit, <https://www.cdc.gov/dhbsp/pubs/toolkits/chw-toolkit.htm> (last visited November 9, 2021).

¹⁸⁸ Environmental Protection Agency, 40 CFR 141.80(c)(1), <https://www.ecfr.gov/current/title-40/chapter-I/subchapter-D/part-141/subpart-I/section-141.80>.

¹⁸⁹ See, e.g., Opportunity Insights, Creating Moves To Opportunity (August 2019), <https://opportunityinsights.org/policy/cmto/>.

that lacking adequate access to affordable, healthy food or living in a “food desert” may contribute to disparities in diet that influence health outcomes, including contributing to pre-existing conditions that increased risk for severe COVID-19 outcomes. These commenters cited public health research finding “clear evidence for disparities in food access in the United States by income and race.”¹⁹³

Some commenters also suggested that neighborhood environment is connected to other public health outcomes, like mental health and public safety. For example, some research suggests that living in neighborhoods with green space and tree cover correlates with improved mental health outcomes.¹⁹⁴ Finally, some commenters argued that activities like installing streetlights, greening or cleanup of public spaces or land, and other efforts to revitalize public spaces would support improved public safety.^{195 196}

These commenters recommended that Treasury include as an enumerated eligible use in disproportionately impacted communities projects to develop neighborhood features that promote improved health and safety outcomes, such as parks, green spaces, recreational facilities, sidewalks, pedestrian safety features like crosswalks, projects that increase access to healthy foods, streetlights, neighborhood cleanup, and other projects to revitalize public spaces.

Background: Investments in neighborhood features, including parks, recreation facilities, sidewalks, and healthy food access, can work to improve physical and mental health outcomes. Allowing people access to nature, including parks, has been connected to decreased levels of

mortality and illness and increased well-being.¹⁹⁷ Urban park use during the COVID-19 pandemic may have declined among lower-income individuals.¹⁹⁸ Encouraging physical activity can also play a role in health outcomes, as a sedentary lifestyle is a risk factor for chronic diseases and more severe COVID-19 outcomes.¹⁹⁹ Parks, recreation facilities, and sidewalks can promote healthier living environments by allowing for safe and socially distanced recreation during the COVID-19 pandemic.

Additionally, food insecurity rates, which are higher among lower-income households and households of color, doubled among all households and tripled among households with children during the onset of COVID-19 from February 2020 to May 2020.²⁰⁰ Improving healthy food access supports public health, particularly among lower-income households and households of color that face disproportionate outcomes.

Treasury Response: Treasury recognizes the connection between neighborhood built environment and physical health outcomes as discussed in the research and analysis provided by commenters, including risk factors that may have contributed to disproportionate COVID-19 health impacts in low-income communities. The final rule also recognizes that the public health impacts of the pandemic are broader than just the COVID-19 disease itself and include substantial impacts on mental health and public safety challenges like rates of violent crime, which are correlated with a neighborhood’s built environment and features. As such, neighborhood features that promote improved health and safety outcomes respond to the pre-existing disparities that contributed to COVID-19’s disproportionate impacts on low-income communities.

The final rule includes enumerated eligible uses in disproportionately impacted communities for developing neighborhood features that promote improved health and safety outcomes, such as parks, green spaces, recreational facilities, sidewalks, pedestrian safety features like crosswalks,²⁰¹ projects that increase access to healthy foods, streetlights, neighborhood cleanup, and other projects to revitalize public spaces. Recipients seeking to use funds for capital expenditures should refer to the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other, which describes additional eligibility standards that apply to uses of funds for capital expenditures.

b. Vacant or abandoned properties. As discussed above, the interim final rule included enumerated eligible uses for building stronger communities through investments in housing and neighborhoods in disproportionately impacted communities. The interim final rule also posed a question of whether other potential uses in this category, specifically “rehabilitation of blighted properties or demolition of abandoned or vacant properties,” address the public health or economic impacts of the pandemic.

Public Comment: Several commenters argued that programs or services to address vacant or abandoned property would respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic in disproportionately impacted communities. Some commenters cited research suggesting that living near such property is correlated with worse physical health and mental health outcomes, noted that such properties pose an environmental hazard, or argued that such properties present a barrier to economic recovery. These commenters suggested that renovation or demolition of vacant or abandoned property could benefit community health and raise property values. Other commenters recommended that Treasury include an enumerated eligible use for the operation of land banks that redevelop or renew vacant properties and land.

Treasury Response: As noted throughout the final rule, the pandemic underscored the importance of safe, affordable housing and healthy

¹⁹³ J Beaulac, E Kristjansson, S Cummins, A systematic review of food deserts, 1966–2007, *Prev Chronic Dis* 2009;6(3):A105, http://www.cdc.gov/pccd/issues/2009/jul/08_0163.htm.

¹⁹⁴ See, e.g., Yijun Zhang et al. The Association between Green Space and Adolescents’ Mental Well-Being: A Systematic Review. *International journal of environmental research and public health* vol. 17, 18 6640 (Sep. 11 2020), doi:10.3390/ijerph17186640; EC South, BC Hohl, MC Kondo, JM MacDonald, CC Branas, Effect of Greening Vacant Land on Mental Health of Community-Dwelling Adults: A Cluster Randomized Trial, *JAMA Netw Open*. 2018;1(3):e180298 (2018), available at: doi:10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2018.0298.

¹⁹⁵ See, e.g., Yanqing Xu, Cong Fu, Eugene Kennedy, Shanhe Jiang, Samuel Owusu-Agyemang, The impact of street lights on spatial-temporal patterns of crime in Detroit, Michigan, *Cities*, Volume 79, Pages 45–52, ISSN 0264–2751 (2018), <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cities.2018.02.021>.

¹⁹⁶ A. Chalfin, B. Hansen, J. Lerner et al., Reducing Crime Through Environmental Design: Evidence from a Randomized Experiment of Street Lighting in New York City, *Journal of Quantitative Criminology* (2021), <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10940-020-09490-6>.

¹⁹⁷ See, e.g., American Public Health Association, Improving Health and Wellness through Access to Nature (November 5, 2013), <https://www.apha.org/policies-and-advocacy/public-health-policy-statements/policy-database/2014/07/08/09/18/improving-health-and-wellness-through-access-to-nature>.

¹⁹⁸ LR Larson et al., Urban Park Use During the COVID-19 Pandemic: Are Socially Vulnerable Communities Disproportionately Impacted?, *Front. Sustain. Cities* 3:710243 (2021), <https://doi.org/10.3389/frsc.2021.710243>.

¹⁹⁹ JP Després, Severe COVID-19 outcomes—the role of physical activity. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 17, 451–452 (2021). <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41574-021-00521-1>.

²⁰⁰ Caroline George and Adie Tomer, Beyond ‘food deserts’: America needs a new approach to mapping food, *Brookings Institution* (August 17, 2021), <https://www.brookings.edu/research/beyond-food-deserts-america-needs-a-new-approach-to-mapping-food-insecurity/>.

²⁰¹ However, Treasury cautions recipients that general infrastructure development, including street or road construction, remains a generally ineligible use of funds under the final rule. Sidewalks and pedestrian safety should be the predominant component of uses of funds in this category. While projects may include ancillary construction needed to execute the predominant component, a project that predominantly involves street construction or repair to benefit vehicular traffic would be ineligible.

neighborhood environments to public health and economic outcomes. Treasury agrees with commenters that high rates of vacant or abandoned properties in a neighborhood may exacerbate public health disparities, for example through environmental contaminants that contribute to poor health outcomes or by contributing to higher rates of crime. As such, certain services for vacant or abandoned properties are eligible to address the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic on disproportionately impacted households or communities. Eligible activities include:

- Rehabilitation, renovation, maintenance, or costs to secure vacant or abandoned properties to reduce their negative impact
- Costs associated with acquiring and securing legal title of vacant or abandoned properties and other costs to position the property for current or future productive use
- Removal and remediation of environmental contaminants or hazards from vacant or abandoned properties, when conducted in compliance with applicable environmental laws or regulations
- Demolition or deconstruction of vacant or abandoned buildings (including residential, commercial, or industrial buildings) paired with greening or other lot improvement as part of a strategy for neighborhood revitalization
- Greening or cleanup of vacant lots, as well as other efforts to make vacant lots safer for the surrounding community
- Conversion of vacant or abandoned properties to affordable housing
- Inspection fees and other administrative costs incurred to ensure compliance with applicable environmental laws and regulations for demolition, greening, or other remediation activities

Vacant or abandoned properties are generally those that have been unoccupied for an extended period of time or have no active owner.²⁰² Such

properties may be in significant disrepair (e.g., major structural defects; lack of weather tight conditions; or lack of useable plumbing, kitchen facilities, electricity, or heating infrastructure (not to include utilities currently out of service or disconnected but able to be reconnected and used)), or may be declared unfit for inhabitants by a government authority.

As noted above, demolition and greening (or other structure or lot remediation) of vacant or abandoned properties, including residential, commercial, or industrial buildings, is an eligible use of funds. Treasury encourages recipients to undertake these activities as part of a strategy for neighborhood revitalization and to consider how the cleared property will be used to benefit the disproportionately impacted community. Activities under this eligible use should benefit current residents and businesses, who experienced the pandemic's impact on the community.

Treasury encourages recipients to be aware of potential impacts of demolition of vacant or abandoned residential properties. Demolition activities that exacerbate the pandemic's impact on housing insecurity or lack of affordable housing are not eligible uses of funds. This risk is generally more acute in jurisdictions with low or reasonable vacancy rates and less acute in jurisdictions with high or hyper-vacancy.²⁰³

overview/#overview-of-the-ura (last visited November 9, 2021) and other state and local requirements like condemnation and code enforcement. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, What is the definition of vacant properties as referenced in NSP Eligible Use E—Redevelop Demolished or Vacant Properties? (October 2012), <https://www.hudexchange.info/faqs/programs/neighborhood-stabilization-program-nsp/redevelopment/what-is-the-definition-of-vacant-properties-as-referenced-in-nsp-eligible/>. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, What are the definitions of abandoned and foreclosed? (October 2012), <https://www.hudexchange.info/faqs/programs/neighborhood-stabilization-program-nsp/program-requirements/eligible-activities/uses/what-are-the-definitions-of-abandoned-and-foreclosed/>.

²⁰³ For analysis of vacancy rates considered low or high, see, e.g., page 12 of Alan Mallach, The Empty House Next Door, Lincoln Institute (May 2018), [https://www.lincolninstitute.edu/publications/policy-focus-reports/empty-house-next-door#:~:text=%E2%80%9CAlan%20Mallach%20is%20the%20usage,through%20data%20and%20model%20practices](https://www.lincolninstitute.edu/publications/policy-focus-reports/empty-house-next-door#:~:text=%E2%80%9CAlan%20Mallach%20is%20the%20usage,through%20data%20and%20model%20practices.). Recipients may determine the appropriate geographic unit for which to analyze vacancy rates (e.g., county, census tract) based on their circumstances. As needed, recipients may refer to the Current Population Survey/Housing Vacancy Survey data series on Housing Vacancies and Homeownership as one data source to assess vacancy rates. See <https://www.census.gov/housing/hvs/index.html>. Other data sources include the American Community Survey five-year estimates, for smaller geographic areas, or tabulations by the Department of Housing and Urban Development

Treasury presumes that demolition of vacant or abandoned residential properties that results in a net reduction in occupiable housing units for low- and moderate-income individuals in an area where the availability of such housing is lower than the need for such housing would exacerbate the impacts of the pandemic on disproportionately impacted communities and that use of SLFRF funds for such activities would therefore be ineligible. This includes activities that convert occupiable housing units for low- and moderate-income individuals into housing units unaffordable to current residents in the community. Recipients may assess whether units are “occupiable” and what the housing need is for a given area taking into account vacancy rates (as described above), local housing market conditions (including conditions for different types of housing like multi-family or single-family), and applicable law and housing codes as to what units are occupiable. Recipients should also take all reasonable steps to minimize the displacement of persons due to activities under this eligible use category, especially the displacement of low-income households or longtime residents.

Recipients engaging in these activities and other construction activities with SLFRF funds should be mindful of the provisions of the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4601, and the Department of Transportation's implementing regulations, 49 CFR part 24, that apply to projects funded with federal financial assistance, such as SLFRF funds. Recipients should also be aware of federal, state, and local laws and regulations, outside of SLFRF program requirements, that apply to this activity. Recipients must comply with the applicable requirements of the Uniform Guidance regarding procurement, contracting, and conflicts of interest and must follow the applicable laws and regulations in their jurisdictions. Recipients must also comply with all federal, state, and local public health and environmental laws or regulations that apply to activities under this eligible use category,²⁰⁴ for example, requirements around the

based on United States Postal Service Vacancy Data. See, respectively, <https://data.census.gov/cedsci/table?q=DP04&tid=ACSDP5Y2019.DP04&hidePreview=true> or <https://www.huduser.gov/portal/datasets/usps.html>.

²⁰⁴ See U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Large-Scale Residential Demolition, <https://www.epa.gov/large-scale-residential-demolition> (last visited November 9, 2021) for a primer on requirements that may apply.

²⁰² A state or locality may use its existing classifications of what is considered vacant or abandoned property under state law and local ordinances, as well as any corresponding processes for demolition, for these eligible uses. A recipient without a definition of vacant or abandoned property may refer to definitions used in the Department of Housing and Urban Development's Neighborhood Stabilization Program (available at the citations below); however, recipients should be aware that other federal, state, or local requirements may apply such as compliance with the Uniform Relocation Act (see U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, Real Estate Acquisition and Relocation Overview in HUD Programs, <https://www.hudexchange.info/programs/relocation/>

handling and disposal of asbestos-containing materials, lead paint, and other harmful materials may apply, as well as environmental standards for any backfill materials used at demolition sites. Treasury encourages recipients to consult and apply best practices from the Environmental Protection Agency as well.

Recipients must evaluate each subrecipient's risk of noncompliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the subaward related to safely and properly conducting activities under this eligible use. This may include checking for any past violations recorded by state or local environmental, workplace safety, licensing, and procurement agencies, as well as regular reviews for suspensions, debarments, or stop work orders. Recipients must establish rigorous oversight and internal controls processes to monitor compliance with any applicable requirements, including compliance by subrecipients.

4. Addressing educational disparities. The interim final rule included an enumerated eligible use for addressing educational disparities in disproportionately impacted communities and outlined some enumerated eligible services under this use. These enumerated uses included early learning services, assistance to high-poverty school districts to advance equitable funding across districts and geographies, and educational and evidence-based services to address the academic, social, emotional, and mental health needs of students. Addressing the many dimensions of resource equity—including equitable and adequate school funding; access to a well-rounded education; well-prepared, effective, and diverse educators and staff; and integrated support services—can also begin to mitigate the impact of COVID-19 on schools and students and can close long-standing gaps in educational opportunity. As discussed above, in the final rule, early learning services and addressing the impacts of lost instructional time for K-12 students are enumerated eligible uses for impacted communities, not just disproportionately impacted communities.

Public Comment: Treasury received some comments in this category. Generally, commenters expressed agreement with the elements of the interim final rule regarding use of funds for addressing educational disparities. Some commenters had questions about whether a few specific uses of funds qualified under this category. For example, commenters inquired about whether the funds could be used for

behavioral health in a school setting or cultural language classes.

Treasury Response: Treasury is maintaining these enumerated eligible uses in the final rule, which are now organized under the heading of “services to address educational disparities.” Treasury reiterates that these uses include addressing educational disparities exacerbated by COVID-19, including but not limited to: increasing resources for high-poverty school districts, educational services like tutoring or afterschool programs, summer education and enrichment programs, and supports for students’ social, emotional, and mental health needs. This also includes responses aimed at addressing the many dimensions of resource equity—including equitable and adequate school funding; access to a well-rounded education; well-prepared, effective, and diverse educators and staff; and integrated support services—in order to close long-standing gaps in educational opportunity.

Further, Treasury is clarifying that improvements or new construction of schools and other educational facilities or equipment are eligible capital expenditures for disproportionately impacted communities. Recipients seeking to use funds for capital expenditures should refer to the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other for additional eligibility standards that apply to uses of funds for capital expenditures.

Treasury notes that services to promote healthy childhood environments, including childcare, early learning services, and home visiting programs that serve infants and toddlers, is a separate category of enumerated eligible uses for households impacted by the pandemic (see eligible uses for “promoting healthy childhood environments”). Similarly, education services to address the impact of lost instructional time during the pandemic are a separate eligible use category for households impacted by the pandemic; when providing these services, recipients may presume that any K-12 student who lost access to in-person instruction for a significant period of time has been impacted by the pandemic and is thus eligible for responsive services (see eligible uses for “addressing the impact of lost instructional time”).

Proposed Additional Enumerated Eligible Uses Not Incorporated

The interim final rule posed a question on what other types of services or costs Treasury should consider as eligible uses to respond to the

disproportionate public health or negative economic impacts of COVID-19 on low-income populations and communities.

In response, commenters proposed a wide variety of additional recommended enumerated eligible uses to assist disproportionately impacted households, ranging from general categories of services (e.g., long-term investments to remediate long-term disparities) to highly specific examples of services (e.g., a specific type of healthcare equipment). As discussed above, Treasury is including several additional categories of enumerated eligible uses in the final rule in response to public comments.

Given the large number and diversity of SLFRF recipients, Treasury’s approach to assistance to households in disproportionately impacted communities in the final rule aims to provide enumerated eligible uses that respond to disproportionate impacts of the pandemic experienced widely in many jurisdictions across the country and are intended to simplify and clarify these enumerated eligible uses. At the same time, Treasury recognizes that the impacts of the pandemic vary over time, by jurisdiction, and by population; as such, the final rule provides flexibility for recipients to identify additional disproportionate impacts to additional households or classes of households and pursue programs and services that respond to those disproportionate impacts.

In the final rule, Treasury has not chosen to include as enumerated uses all uses proposed by commenters; given the significant range, and in some cases highly specific nature, of the proposed uses Treasury was not able to assess that the proposed uses would respond to disproportionate impacts experienced in many jurisdictions across the country, supporting an enumerated eligible use available to all recipients presumptively. However, the final rule continues to provide a framework to allow recipients to identify and respond to additional disproportionate impacts (for details, see section General Provisions: Structure and Standards). Some types of proposed additional enumerated eligible uses for assistance to households in disproportionately impacted communities were recommended by several commenters:

- **Capital expenditures.** Many commenters recommended that capital expenditures on many different types of public and private facilities be enumerated eligible uses. For clarity, Treasury has addressed all comments on the eligibility of capital expenditures on property, facilities, or equipment in one

section (see section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other).

- Equity funds. Several commenters recommended that Treasury permit SLFRF funds to be deposited into an equity fund to support long-term racial and economic equity investments. The eligibility of such use would depend on the specific structure and uses of funds. Under the statute, SLFRF funds can only support costs incurred until December 31, 2024; see section Timeline for Use of SLFRF Funds in Program Administration Provisions. Further, recipients may calculate the cost incurred with respect to investments in revolving loan funds based on the methodology described in section Treatment of Loans in Program Administration Provisions. Projects funded by a revolving loan fund using SLFRF funds would also need to be eligible uses of SLFRF funds.

- Environmental quality and climate resilience. Several commenters recommended eligible uses to enhance environmental quality, remediate pollution, promote recycling or composting, or increase energy efficiency or electrical grid resilience. Whether these projects respond to the disproportionate impacts of the pandemic on certain communities would depend on the specific issue they address and its nexus to the public health and economic impacts of the pandemic.

b. Assistance to Small Businesses Background

The pandemic has severely impacted many businesses, with small businesses hit especially hard. Small businesses make up nearly half of U.S. private-sector employment²⁰⁵ and play a key role in supporting the overall economic recovery as they are responsible for two-thirds of net new jobs.²⁰⁶ Since the beginning of the pandemic, however, 400,000 small businesses have closed, with many more at risk.²⁰⁷ Sectors with a large share of small business employment have been among those with the most drastic drops in

employment.²⁰⁸ The negative outlook for small businesses has continued: As of November 2021, approximately 66 percent of small businesses reported that the pandemic has had a moderate or large negative effect on their business, and over a third expect that it will take over 6 months for their business to return to their normal level of operations.²⁰⁹

This negative outlook is likely the result of many small businesses having faced periods of closure and having seen declining revenues as customers stayed home.²¹⁰ In general, small businesses can face greater hurdles in accessing credit,²¹¹ and many small businesses were already financially fragile at the outset of the pandemic.²¹²

While businesses everywhere faced significant challenges during the pandemic, minority-owned and very small businesses have faced additional obstacles. Between February and April 2020, the number of actively self-employed Black business owners decreased by 41 percent.²¹³ During that same time period, Asian and Latino business owners decreased by 26 and 32 percent, respectively, compared to a 17 percent decrease in white business owners.²¹⁴ Female business owners also saw significant impacts, with businesses owned by women falling by 25 percent.²¹⁵

Many of the disparities in how minority business owners experienced

the pandemic are rooted in systemic issues present even before the pandemic. For example, before the economic downturn, only 12 percent of Black-owned businesses and 19 percent of Hispanic-owned businesses had annual earnings of over \$1 million compared to 31 percent of white-owned businesses.²¹⁶ Minority-owned businesses were also overrepresented in industries hit hardest by the economic downturn (e.g., services, transportation and warehousing, healthcare and social assistance, administrative and support and waste management, and accommodation and food services).²¹⁷ Approximately 22 percent of all minority-owned business fell into the hardest hit industries compared to 13 percent of nonminority-owned businesses.²¹⁸

Although disparities in annual revenue are not a direct indication of a business's ability to weather an economic downturn, they do highlight other disparities that make it more challenging for these businesses to survive the effects of the pandemic. Black-owned startups, for example, face larger challenges in raising capital, including securing business loans.²¹⁹

Summary of the Interim Final Rule and Final Rule Structure

Summary of Interim Final Rule: As discussed above, small businesses faced significant challenges in covering payroll, mortgages or rent, and other operating costs as a result of the public health emergency and measures taken to contain the spread of the virus. Under Sections 602(c)(1)(A) and 603(c)(1)(A), recipients may “respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts,” by, among other things, providing “assistance to . . . small businesses.” Accordingly, the interim final rule allowed recipients to provide assistance to small businesses to address the negative economic impacts faced by those businesses. A

²⁰⁵ Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, Monetary Policy Report (June 12, 2020), <https://www.federalreserve.gov/monetarypolicy/2020-06-mpr-summary.htm>.

²⁰⁶ U.S. Small Business Administration, Office of Advocacy, Small Businesses Generate 44 Percent of U.S. Economic Activity (Jan. 30, 2019), <https://advocacy.sba.gov/2019/01/30/small-businesses-generate-44-percent-of-u-s-economic-activity/>.

²⁰⁷ Joseph R. Biden, Remarks by President Biden on Helping Small Businesses (Feb. 22, 2021), <https://www.whitehouse.gov/briefing-room/speeches-remarks/2021/02/22/remarks-by-president-biden-on-helping-small-businesses/>.

²⁰⁸ Daniel Wilmoth, U.S. Small Business Administration Office of Advocacy, The Effects of the COVID-19 Pandemic on Small Businesses, Issue Brief No. 16 (Mar. 2021), available at <https://cdn.advocacy.sba.gov/wp-content/uploads/2021/03/02112318/COVID-19-Impact-On-Small-Business.pdf>.

²⁰⁹ U.S. Census Bureau, Small Business Pulse Survey, <https://portal.census.gov/pulse/data/> (last visited December 7, 2021).

²¹⁰ Olivia S. Kim et al., Revenue Collapses and the Consumption of Small Business Owners in the Early Stages of the COVID-19 Pandemic (Nov. 2020), <https://www.nber.org/papers/w28151>.

²¹¹ See, e.g., Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, Report to Congress on the Availability of Credit to Small Businesses (Sept. 2017), available at <https://www.federalreserve.gov/publications/2017-september-availability-of-credit-to-small-businesses.htm>.

²¹² Alexander W. Bartik et al., The Impact of COVID-19 on small business outcomes and expectations, PNAS 117(30): 17656–66 (July 28, 2020), available at <https://www.pnas.org/content/117/30/17656>.

²¹³ Robert Fairlie, The impact of COVID-19 on small business owners: Evidence from the first 3 months after widespread social-distancing restrictions, Journal of economics & management strategy (August 27, 2020), <https://doi.org/10.1111/jems.12400>.

²¹⁴ U.S. Small Business Administration, The Effects of the COVID-19 Pandemic on Small Businesses (March 2021), <https://cdn.advocacy.sba.gov/wp-content/uploads/2021/03/02112318/COVID-19-Impact-On-Small-Business.pdf>.

²¹⁵ Robert Fairlie, *supra* note 213.

²¹⁶ Federal Reserve Bank of Atlanta. 2019. Small Business Credit Survey 2019 Report on Minority-Owned Firms. December. [fedsmbbusiness.org/survey/2019/report-on-minority-owned-firms](https://www.fedsmbbusiness.org/survey/2019/report-on-minority-owned-firms).

²¹⁷ Ding, Lei, and Alvaro Sanchez. 2020. What Small Businesses Will Be Impacted by COVID-19? Federal Reserve Bank of Philadelphia. philadelphiafed.org/covid-19/covid-19-equity-in-recovery/what-small-businesses-will-be-impacted.

²¹⁸ Lucas Misera, An Uphill Battle: COVID-19's Outsized Toll on Minority-Owned Firms, Federal Reserve Bank of Cleveland (October 8, 2020), <https://www.clevelandfed.org/newsroom-and-events/publications/community-development-briefs/db-20201008-misera-report.aspx>.

²¹⁹ Robert Fairlie, A. Robb, D. Robinson, Black and White: Access to Capital among Minority-Owned Startups, NBER Working Paper 28154 (November 2020), <https://www.nber.org/papers/w28154>.

“small business” is defined as a business concern or other organization that:

(1) Has no more than 500 employees or, if applicable, the size standard in number of employees established by the Administrator of the Small Business Administration for the industry in which the business concern or organization operates; and

(2) Is a small business concern as defined in section 3 of the Small Business Act (15 U.S.C. 632).

Specifically, the interim final rule provided that recipients may provide assistance to small businesses to adopt safer operating procedures, weather periods of closure, or mitigate financial hardship resulting from the COVID-19 public health emergency, including:

- Loans or grants to mitigate financial hardship such as declines in revenues or impacts of periods of business closure;
- Loans, grants, or in-kind assistance to implement COVID-19 prevention or mitigation tactics; and
- Technical assistance, counseling, or other services to assist with business planning needs.

The interim final rule further provided that recipients may consider additional criteria to target assistance to businesses in need, including small businesses. Such criteria may include businesses facing financial insecurity, substantial declines in gross receipts (e.g., comparable to measures used to assess eligibility for the Paycheck Protection Program), or other economic harm due to the pandemic, as well as businesses with less capacity to weather financial hardship, such as the smallest businesses, those with less access to credit, or those serving underserved communities. The interim final rule also indicated that recipients should consider local economic conditions and business data when establishing such criteria. Finally, the interim final rule posed a question on whether there are other services or costs that Treasury should consider as eligible uses to respond to the disproportionate impacts of COVID-19 on low-income populations and communities.

Final Rule Structure: Consistent with the interim final rule approach, the final rule provides a non-exhaustive list of enumerated eligible uses for assistance to small businesses that are impacted or disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. Further, within Assistance to Small Business, a recipient may also identify a negative economic impact experienced by small businesses and design and implement a response to that negative economic impact, beyond the uses specifically enumerated in the final

rule, according to the standard described in the section Standards: Identifying a Negative Economic Impact. A recipient may also identify small businesses that have been disproportionately impacted by the public health emergency and design and implement a program that responds to the source of that disproportionate impact.

Consistent with other eligible use categories to respond to the public health and economic impacts of the pandemic, recipients may identify and serve small businesses that experienced a negative economic impact or disproportionate impact due to the pandemic, as described in the section Standards for Identifying Other Eligible Populations. For example, to identify impacted small businesses, a recipient may consider whether the small businesses faced challenges in covering payroll, mortgage or rent, or other operating costs as a result of the public health emergency and measures taken to contain the spread of the virus. In order to ease administrative burden, the final rule presumes that small businesses operating in QCTs, small businesses operated by Tribal governments or on Tribal Lands, and small businesses operating in the U.S. territories were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic.

Reorganizations and Cross-References: As detailed above, Treasury has re-categorized some uses of funds in the final rule to provide greater clarity. For discussion of assistance to small businesses and impacted industries to implement COVID-19 mitigation and prevention strategies, see section COVID-19 Mitigation and Prevention in Public Health.

Small Businesses Eligible for Assistance

Public Comment: Treasury received many comments about the general benefits or drawbacks of use of SLFRF funds to provide assistance to small businesses. Some commenters suggested that SLFRF funds should be available to assist all small businesses, rather than only businesses that experienced direct negative economic impacts due to the public health emergency. Other commenters argued that aid to small businesses should be narrowed in the final rule, asserting that SLFRF funds should instead focus on assistance to households or building public sector capacity.

Treasury also received comments requesting clarification of the types of small businesses eligible for assistance. For example, some commenters requested clarification about whether microbusinesses were included in the

definition of small business. Comments also suggested that self-employed individuals and Tribal enterprises be classified as small businesses, respectively. Commenters argued that these types of small businesses are more common among low-income and minority businessowners and serve as important institutions in underserved communities.

Finally, some commenters suggested that Treasury permit broader enumerated eligible uses to assist small businesses in disproportionately impacted communities and generally strengthen economic growth in these communities. These commenters recommended that Treasury presume small businesses operating in QCTs are disproportionately impacted and eligible for broader enumerated uses.

Treasury Response: As discussed in the section Designating a Negative Economic Impact, in the final rule, recipients must identify an economic harm caused or exacerbated by the pandemic on a small business or class of small businesses to provide services that respond.

As discussed above, programs or services in this category must respond to a harm experienced by a small business or class of small businesses as a result of the public health emergency. To identify impacted small businesses and necessary response measures, recipients may consider impacts such as lost revenue or increased costs, challenges covering payroll, rent or mortgage, or other operating costs, the capacity of a small business to weather financial hardships, and general financial insecurity resulting from the public health emergency.

Recognizing the difficulties faced by small businesses in certain communities, the final rule presumes that small businesses operating in QCTs, small businesses operated by Tribal governments or on Tribal Lands, and small businesses operating in the U.S. territories were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. This presumption parallels the final rule's approach to assistance to households, reflecting the more severe pandemic impacts in underserved communities and creating a parallel structure across different categories of eligible uses to make the structure simpler for recipients to understand and navigate.

Treasury notes that recipients may also designate a class of small businesses that experienced a negative economic impact or disproportionate negative economic impact (e.g., microbusinesses, small businesses in certain economic sectors), design an intervention to fit the impact, and

document that the individual entity is a member of the class. Additional information about this framework is included in the section General Provisions: Structure and Standards.

Further, Treasury is maintaining the interim final rule definition of “small business,” which used the Small Business Administration’s (SBA) definition of fewer than 500 employees, or per the standard for that industry, as defined by SBA. This definition includes businesses with very few employees, self-employed individuals, and Tribally owned businesses.²²⁰ Finally, Treasury notes that recipients may award SLFRF funds to many different types of organizations, including small businesses, to function as a subrecipient in carrying out eligible uses of funds on behalf of a recipient government. In this case, a small business need not have experienced a negative economic impact in order to serve as a subrecipient. See section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries for more detailed discussion of interactions with subrecipients, in contrast to beneficiaries of assistance.

Enumerated Eligible Uses for Assistance to Small Businesses

Public Comment: Treasury received comments requesting clarification of the types of assistance available to small businesses. For example, one commenter suggested that outdoor dining be an eligible use for SLFRF funds as assistance to small businesses. Other commenters asked for clarification about how SLFRF funds could be used to support new businesses and start-ups.

Several commenters requested clarification of whether and how recipients may provide services to business districts or downtown areas, particularly those that exist in whole or in part within a QCT, and requested reduced documentation of the specific negative economic impact for the businesses operating within those areas. These commenters argued in favor of allowing redevelopment or other support, including capital investments, in business districts that were

negatively impacted by COVID-19. Several commenters also argued that funds should be available to support and grow microbusinesses, or businesses with five or fewer employees, which are more likely to be owned by women and people of color.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining and clarifying the enumerated eligible uses of funds for assistance to small businesses that are impacted or disproportionately impacted by the pandemic.

Impacted small businesses.

Specifically, Treasury is maintaining enumerated eligible uses from the interim final rule for assistance to impacted small businesses. These include but are not limited to:

- Loans or grants to mitigate financial hardship such as declines in revenues or impacts of periods of business closure, for example by supporting payroll and benefits costs, costs to retain employees, mortgage, rent, or utilities costs, and other operating costs;
- Loans, grants, or in-kind assistance to implement COVID-19 prevention or mitigation tactics (see section Public Health for details on these eligible uses); and
- Technical assistance, counseling, or other services to assist with business planning needs.

Treasury acknowledges a range of potential circumstances in which assisting small businesses could be responsive to the negative economic impacts of COVID-19, including for small businesses startups and microbusinesses and individuals seeking to start small or microbusinesses. For example:

- As noted above, a recipient could assist small business startups or microbusinesses with additional costs associated with COVID-19 mitigation tactics; see section Public Health for details on these eligible uses.
- A recipient could identify and respond to a negative economic impact of COVID-19 on new small business startups or microbusinesses; for example, if small business startups or microbusinesses in a locality faced greater difficulty accessing credit than prior to the pandemic or faced increased costs to starting the business due to the pandemic or if particular small businesses or microbusinesses had lost expected startup capital due to the pandemic.
- The interim final rule also discussed, and the final rule maintains, eligible uses that provide support for individuals who have experienced a negative economic impact from the COVID-19 public health emergency, including uses that provide job training

for unemployed individuals. These initiatives also may support small business start-ups, microbusinesses, and individuals seeking to start small or microbusinesses.

Disproportionately impacted small businesses. Additionally, Treasury agrees with commenters that disproportionately impacted small businesses may benefit from additional assistance to address the sources of that disparate impact.

As such, the final rule provides a broader set of enumerated eligible uses for disproportionately impacted small businesses and/or small businesses in disproportionately impacted business districts. Recipients may use SLFRF funds to assist these businesses with certain capital investments, such as rehabilitation of commercial properties, storefront improvements, and façade improvements. Recipients may also provide disproportionately impacted microbusinesses additional support to operate the business, including financial, childcare, and transportation supports.

Recipients could also provide technical assistance, business incubators, and grants for start-ups or expansion costs for disproportionately impacted small businesses. Note that some of these types of assistance are similar to those eligible to respond to small businesses that experienced a negative economic impact (“impacted” small businesses). However, because the final rule presumes that some small businesses were disproportionately impacted, these enumerated eligible uses can be provided to those businesses without any specific assessment of whether they individually experienced negative economic impacts or disproportionate impacts due to the pandemic.

Cross-References: Recipients providing assistance to small businesses for capital expenditures (*i.e.*, expenditures on property, facilities, or equipment) should also review the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other, which describes eligibility standards that apply to capital expenditures. Recipients should also note that services to address vacant or abandoned commercial or industrial properties are addressed in section Vacant or Abandoned Properties in Assistance to Households.

Loans to Small Businesses

Public Comment: Treasury received many comments requesting clarification on using SLFRF funds to establish funds that provide loans to small businesses. For example, commenters sought clarification of how eligible use

²²⁰ In regard to counting employees, businesses owned and controlled by a Tribal government are not considered affiliates of the Tribal government and are not considered affiliates of other businesses owned by the Tribal government because of their common ownership by the Tribal government or common management, as described in 13 CFR 121.103(b)(2). This definition is consistent with the Small Business Administration (SBA) HUBZone definition of a “small business concern” relating to Tribal governments as well as how Tribal enterprises are defined for the State Small Business Credit Initiative (SSBCI).

requirements and applicable dates for SLFRF funds would apply to third party organizations (like economic development organizations) who receive SLFRF funds in order to establish a loan fund. In addition, commenters requested clarification on what requirements apply to loan programs with available funds remaining after December 31, 2024.

Treasury Response: SLFRF funds may be used to make loans, including to small businesses, provided that the loan is an eligible use, and the cost of the loan is tracked and reported in accordance with Treasury's Compliance and Reporting Guidance. Funds that are unobligated after December 31, 2024 must be returned to Treasury. See section Treatment of Loans for more information about using SLFRF funds for loan programs.

c. Assistance to Nonprofits

Background: Nonprofits have faced significant challenges because of the pandemic, including increased demand for services and changing operational needs.²²¹ Prior to the pandemic, the median U.S. nonprofit reported that it had six months of cash on hand.²²² This varied by sector, however, with some sectors like disaster relief organizations reporting a median of 17 months cash on hand, and others, like mental health and crisis intervention organizations reporting only three months.²²³ Evidence suggests that the pandemic has damaged the financial health of nonprofits, with small nonprofits, which tend to rely more heavily on donations than large nonprofits, reporting relatively larger declines in donations — 42 percent versus 29 percent, respectively.²²⁴ Among nonprofits that collect fees for services, the median revenue amount collected from such fees fell by 30 percent from 2019 to 2020, with arts organization experiencing a 50 percent decline.²²⁵ Nonprofits also experienced significant job losses. While employment in the nonprofit sector has recovered from its low point in 2020, as of November 2021,

the sector remained 485,000 jobs below its pre-pandemic level.²²⁶ In addition, some nonprofits may have experienced declines in volunteer staffing during the pandemic.²²⁷

At the same time, nonprofits provide a host of services for their communities, including helping Americans weather the multitude of challenges presented by the pandemic. The ARPA and the interim final rule recognized this dichotomy—nonprofits as entities that have themselves been negatively impacted by the pandemic and as entities that provide services that respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic on households and others—by creating two roles for nonprofits.

First, under Sections 602(c)(1)(A) and 603(c)(1)(A), recipients may “respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts,” by, among other activities, providing “assistance to . . . nonprofits.” The interim final rule defined assistance to nonprofits to include “loans, grants, in-kind assistance, technical assistance or other services, that responds to the negative economic impacts of the COVID-19 public health emergency,” and “nonprofit” to mean a tax-exempt organization under Section 501(c)(3) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code.²²⁸

Second, as discussed above, ARPA and the interim final rule provided that nonprofit organizations may also receive funds as subrecipients of a recipient government (*i.e.*, a government that received SLFRF funds); subrecipients carry out an eligible use of SLFRF funds on behalf of a recipient government (*e.g.*, a recipient government that would like to provide food assistance to impacted households may grant funds to a nonprofit organization to carry out that eligible use). Recipients generally have wide latitude to award funds to many types of organizations, including nonprofit or for-profit organizations, as subrecipients to carry out eligible uses of funds on their behalf. For further information on distinguishing between beneficiaries and subrecipients, as well as the impacts of the distinction on reporting and other requirements, see section Transfers of Funds and section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries under the Public Health

and Negative Economic Impacts eligible use category.²²⁹

Reorganization and Cross-References: Under the interim final rule, assistance to disproportionately impacted communities was a separate, stand-alone category. The final rule reorganizes the disproportionate impact analysis within the sections Assistance to Households, Assistance to Small Business, and Assistance to Nonprofits to better articulate how recipients can serve disproportionately impacted beneficiaries in each of those categories.

As detailed above in the Public Health subsection, in response to public comments describing uncertainty on which eligible use category should be used to assess different potential uses of funds, Treasury has re-categorized some uses of funds in the final rule to provide greater clarity. For discussion of assistance to nonprofits to implement COVID-19 mitigation and prevention strategies, see section COVID-19 Mitigation and Prevention in Public Health.

Recipients providing assistance via nonprofits involving capital expenditures (*i.e.*, expenditures on property, facilities, or equipment) should also review the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other, which describes eligibility standards for these expenditures. Recipients providing assistances in the form of loans should review the section Treatment of Loans.

Public Comment: Eligible Assistance to Impacted and Disproportionately Impacted Nonprofits: A few commenters asked Treasury to be more explicit in the final rule that recipients may use funds to provide relief directly to nonprofit organizations and to explain how nonprofits might qualify themselves for assistance and what expenses SLFRF funds may be used to cover.²³⁰ Commenters requested that Treasury note that the pandemic is

²²¹ See, *e.g.*, Federal Reserve Bank of San Francisco, Impacts of COVID-19 on Nonprofits in the Western United States (May 2020), <https://www.frbsf.org/community-development/files/impact-of-covid>.

²²² Philanthropy and COVID-19: Measuring one year of giving, Candid and the Center for Disaster Philanthropy. (2021), <https://www.issuelab.org/resources/38039/38039.pdf>.

²²³ *Id.*

²²⁴ Elizabeth T. Boris et al., Nonprofit Trends and Impacts 2021, Urban Institute (October 7, 2021), https://www.urban.org/research/publication/nonprofit-trends-and-impacts-2021/view/full_report.

²²⁵ *Id.*

²²⁶ Chelsea Newhouse, COVID-19 JOBS UPDATE, NOVEMBER 2021: Nonprofits add just 5,000 jobs in November, Center for Civil Society Studies at Johns Hopkins University (December 10, 2021), <http://ccss.jhu.edu/november-2021-jobs/>.

²²⁷ Elizabeth T. Boris et al. *supra* note 224 at p. 38.

²²⁸ § 35.3 Definitions.

²²⁹ The ARPA also states under “Transfer Authority” that a Recipient may transfer funds to a private nonprofit organization such as those defined in paragraph (17) of section 401 of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 11360(17)). See 602 & 603(c)(3) of the Social Security Act. See section Transfers of Funds for additional information on other types of entities, including other forms of nonprofits, that may receive transfers.

²³⁰ While not stated specifically in the interim final rule, the Department does not require or have a preference as to the payment structure for recipients that transfer funds to subrecipients (*e.g.*, advance payments, reimbursement basis, etc.). Ultimately, recipients must comply with the eligible use requirements and any other applicable laws or requirements and are responsible for the actions of their subrecipients or beneficiaries.

leading to a changing financial landscape for nonprofits.

Treasury Response: Eligible Assistance to Impacted and Disproportionately Impacted Nonprofits: The interim final rule provided for, and the final rule maintains, the ability for recipients to provide direct assistance to nonprofits that experienced public health or negative economic impacts of the pandemic. Specifically, recipients may provide direct assistance to nonprofits if the nonprofit has experienced a public health or negative economic impact as a result of the pandemic. For example, if a nonprofit organization experienced impacts like decreased revenues or increased costs (e.g., through reduced contributions or uncompensated increases in service need), and a recipient provides funds to address that impact, then it is providing direct assistance to the nonprofit as a beneficiary under Subsection (c)(1) of Sections 602 and 603. Direct assistance may take the form of loans, grants, in-kind assistance, technical assistance, or other services that respond to the negative economic impacts of the COVID-19 public health emergency.

A recipient may identify a negative economic impact experienced by a nonprofit, or class of nonprofits, and design and implement a response to that negative economic impact, see section Standards: Designating a Negative Economic Impact. The final rule provides a non-exhaustive list of enumerated eligible uses for assistance to nonprofits that are impacted or disproportionately impacted by the pandemic.

A recipient may also identify a class of nonprofits that have been disproportionately impacted by the public health emergency and design and implement a program that responds to the source of that disproportionate impact. For example, a recipient may determine that nonprofits offering after-school programs within its jurisdiction were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic due to the previous in-person, indoors nature of the work and the nonprofits' reliance on fees received for services (e.g., attendance fees). The recipient might then design an intervention to assist those nonprofits in adapting their programming (e.g., to outdoor or online venues), their revenue structure (e.g., adapting the fee for service structure or developing expertise in digital donation campaigns), or both. Additional information about this framework is included in General Provisions: Structure and Standards. In order to ease administrative burden, the final rule presumes that nonprofits

operating in QCTs, operated by Tribal governments or on Tribal Lands, or operating in the U.S. territories were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic.

To summarize, a recipient may determine that certain nonprofits were impacted by the pandemic or were disproportionately impacted by the pandemic and provide responsive services.

Public Comment: Beneficiaries and Subrecipients: As noted elsewhere in this final rule, Treasury received multiple comments expressing uncertainty on how to categorize a particular activity in the eligible use categories. For instance, some commenters requested that recipients be able to use SLFRF funds for certain expenses incurred by nonprofits (e.g., unemployment charges) as a response to a public health or negative economic impact to that nonprofit; others asked if nonprofits providing certain services (e.g., social services) made them eligible for direct assistance. Commenters also requested that Treasury acknowledge that engagement directly with nonprofit organizations in low-income communities and communities of color may allow the recipient to better assess economic harms in these areas.

Treasury Response: Beneficiaries and Subrecipients: Treasury recognizes that many nonprofits play important roles in their communities, and some may have experienced public health or negative economic impacts during the pandemic. As such, under the interim final rule and the final rule, nonprofits may be impacted by the pandemic and receive assistance as a beneficiary, as described above, and/or be a subrecipient providing services on behalf of a recipient.²³¹

Specifically, the interim final rule also allowed for, and the final rule maintains, the ability for the recipient to transfer, e.g., via grant or contract, funds to nonprofit entities to carry out an eligible use on behalf of the recipient. Treasury notes that recipients may award SLFRF funds to many different types of organizations to carry out eligible uses of funds and serve beneficiaries on behalf of a recipient government (e.g., assisting in a vaccination campaign, operating a job training program, developing affordable housing). When a recipient provides funds to an organization to carry out eligible uses of funds and serve

beneficiaries, the organization becomes a subrecipient. In this case, a nonprofit need not have experienced a negative economic impact in order to serve as a subrecipient.

In the context of SLFRF, nonprofits of all types may be subrecipients. Treasury is not restricting the types of nonprofits that can operate as subrecipients, rather allowing recipients to decide what form best meets the needs of their community. Therefore, a "nonprofit" that is acting as subrecipient could include, but is not limited to, a nonprofit as that term is defined in paragraph (17) of section 401 of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance.²³² See section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries for further information. Additional guidance on determining subrecipient status may be found in the Uniform Guidance.²³³

Recipients may transfer funds to subrecipients in several ways, including advance payments and on a reimbursement basis. Ultimately, recipients must comply with the eligible use requirements and any other applicable laws or requirements and are responsible for the actions of their subrecipients or beneficiaries.

As part of accepting the Award Terms and Conditions for SLFRF, each recipient agreed to maintain a conflict-of-interest policy consistent with 2 CFR 200.318(c) that is applicable to all activities funded with the SLFRF award. Pursuant to this requirement, decisions concerning SLFRF funds must be free of undisclosed personal or organizational conflicts of interest, both in fact and in appearance. Recipients may avoid conflicts of interest in providing assistance to nonprofits or making subrecipient awards by, *inter alia*, making aid available to nonprofits on generally applicable terms or utilizing a competitive grant process, respectively. A recipient may not use control over SLFRF funds for their own private gain. Furthermore, no employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest.

Public Comment: Definition of Nonprofit: Treasury also received several requests to expand the definition of nonprofits so that other tax-exempt entities (e.g., 501(c)(7)s, 501(c)(9)s, 501(c)(19)s, nonprofits with "historical

²³¹ Note, this response is meant to clarify the difference between nonprofits as beneficiaries and nonprofits as subrecipients. It is not meant to limit the types of relationships that a recipient may enter into with a nonprofit as permitted under the Uniform Guidance.

²³² See sections 602(c)(3) and 603(c)(3) of the Social Security Act. See also Section 401 of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 11360(17)), which defines a "private nonprofit organization."

significance”) could be eligible for direct assistance as beneficiaries.

Treasury Response: Definition of Nonprofit: The final rule expands the definition of nonprofits to mean 501(c)(3) organizations and 501(c)(19) organizations.²³⁴ The 501(c)(3) classification includes a wide range of organizations with varying charitable or public service-oriented goals (e.g., housing, food assistance, job training). As discussed above, these nonprofit organizations often experienced hardship due to increased needs for services combined with decreased donations and other sources of funding. In response to comments, Treasury has expanded the definition of nonprofit to include 501(c)(19) organizations, which includes veterans’ organizations, to provide recipients more flexibility and in alignment with the definition of nonprofit adopted by the CARES Act, wherein 501(c)(3)s and 501(c)(19)s were eligible for assistance.²³⁵

Public Comment: Reporting Requirements: One commenter asked Treasury to clarify if nonprofits that receive direct assistance as beneficiaries are required to comply with guidelines and reporting requirements.

Treasury Response: Reporting Requirements: Nonprofits that receive direct assistance as beneficiaries are not subrecipients under SLFRF and are therefore not required to comply with SLFRF reporting requirements. However, the recipient must comply with SLFRF reporting requirements, which would require reporting obligations and expenditures for assistance to nonprofits. The recipient may also choose to establish other forms of reporting or accountability as a part of the recipient’s direct assistance program.

A nonprofit entity that receives a transfer from a recipient is a subrecipient. Per the Uniform Guidance, subrecipients must adhere to the same requirements as recipients. Therefore, a nonprofit subrecipient may only receive funds to carry out an eligible use of SLFRF funds and must comply with any reporting and compliance requirements. Note that recipients are ultimately responsible for reporting information to Treasury and must collect any necessary

information from their subrecipients to complete required reporting.

d. Aid to Impacted Industries

The interim final rule allowed for “aid to tourism, travel, and hospitality, and other impacted industries” that responds to the negative economic impacts of the COVID-19 public health emergency. In designating other impacted industries, Treasury specified that recipients should consider the “extent of the economic impact as compared to tourism, travel, and hospitality” and “whether impacts were due to the COVID-19 pandemic, as opposed to longer-term economic or industrial trends unrelated to the pandemic.”²³⁶ Treasury identified declines in employment and revenue as possible metrics to compare the economic impact on a particular industry relative to the tourism, travel, and hospitality industries.

Treasury further provided that aid should be limited to businesses, attractions, business districts, and Tribal development districts²³⁷ that were operating prior to the pandemic and affected by required closures and other efforts to contain the pandemic. Examples of eligible aid include assistance to implement COVID-19 mitigation and infection prevention measures, aid to support safe reopening of businesses in these industries, as well as aid for a planned expansion or upgrade of tourism, travel, and hospitality facilities delayed due to the pandemic. The interim final rule and Treasury’s subsequent Compliance and Reporting Guidance also required governments to publicly report assistance provided to private-sector businesses under this eligible use and maintain records of their assessments to facilitate transparency and accountability.

Reorganization and Cross-References: As detailed above, Treasury has re-categorized some uses of funds in the final rule to provide greater clarity. In the interim final rule, aid to impacted industries to implement COVID-19 mitigation and prevention strategies was categorized under Aid to Impacted Industries; the final rule addresses these items under the section COVID-19 Mitigation and Prevention in Public Health. Recipients should also be aware of the difference between beneficiaries

of assistance and subrecipients when working with impacted industries; for further information, see section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries.

Designating an Impacted Industry

Public Comment: Many commenters requested greater clarity on how to designate “other impacted industries” within their jurisdiction. Commenters requested greater specificity as to the metrics used to measure impact, with some suggesting metrics such as the change in the size of an industry’s workforce due to the pandemic, as well as consideration of whether and why employees are choosing to return to work at slower rates in certain industries. One commenter asked if this meant nearly every industry was “disproportionately impacted.” Some commenters encouraged Treasury to focus on industries most negatively impacted by the pandemic, including disallowing across-the-board business subsidies to businesses that were not negatively impacted by the pandemic and saw revenue or profit growth. Other commenters asked for flexibility for recipients to determine impacted industries based on their local knowledge of the economic landscape.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the interim final rule’s approach of allowing recipients to designate impacted industries outside the travel, tourism, and hospitality industries, and, in response to comments, provides greater clarity as to how recipients may designate such impacted industries.

Sections 602(c)(1)(A) and 603(c)(1)(A) recognize that the tourism, travel, and hospitality industries are severely negatively impacted by the pandemic. Under the final rule, recipients may provide eligible aid (described in further detail herein) to the tourism, travel, and hospitality industries. Treasury considers Tribal development districts, which are commercial centers for Tribal hospitality, gaming, tourism, and entertainment and can include Tribal enterprises, as part of the tourism, travel, and hospitality industries that have been severely hit by the pandemic. Therefore, Treasury reaffirms that Tribal development districts are considered impacted industries and recipients may provide eligible aid to them.

To identify other industries comparably impacted to the tourism, travel, and hospitality industries, recipients should undertake a two-step process: Identifying an industry and determining whether that industry is comparably impacted.

²³⁴ § 35.3 Definitions.

²³⁵ Treasury considered expanding the definition of nonprofit to include 501(c)(6) organizations, as Congress later did in the Coronavirus Response and Consolidated Appropriations Act of 2021, but ultimately decided to retain the original CARES Act definition. To the extent impacted by the pandemic, 501(c)(6) organizations may be eligible to receive funds to support eligible uses that align with their overall purpose (e.g., tourism promotion in aid of an impacted industry).

²³⁶ Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, 86 FR at 26795.

²³⁷ For a definition of “Tribal development districts,” please see FAQ 2.9 at the following: Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

First, recipients should identify an industry to be assessed. In identifying this industry, the final rule provides recipients the flexibility to define its substantive or geographic scope.²³⁸ Recipients may identify a broad sector that encompasses a number of sub-industries, or they may identify a specific sub-industry to be assessed. For example, a recipient may identify “personal care services” as an industry, or they may identify a more specific category within the “personal care services” industry (e.g., barber shops) as an industry. In defining the industry, Treasury encourages recipients to define narrow and discrete industries eligible for aid. Recipients are not required to follow, but may consider following, industry classifications under the North American Industry Classification System (NAICS). Treasury notes that the larger and more diverse the sector, the more difficult it may be to demonstrate that the larger and less specific sector is negatively impacted in the same way given the scale and diversity of businesses within it.

State or territory recipients may also define a constituent industry with greater geographic precision than state or territory-wide. For example, a state may identify a particular industry in a certain region of the state that was negatively impacted by the pandemic, even if the same industry in the rest of the state did not see a meaningful negative economic impact from the pandemic. State recipients oversee large and diverse industries, sometimes with differences in economic activity between geographic regions. Allowing greater geographic precision allows recipients to target aid to those that need it most, ensuring that state averages do not conceal hard-hit areas in their state.

Second, to determine whether the industry is “impacted,” recipients should compare the negative economic impacts of the public health emergency on the identified industry to the impacts observed on the travel, tourism, and hospitality industries.

1. *Simplified test.* An industry is presumed to be impacted if the industry experienced employment loss of at least 8 percent.

Specifically, a recipient should compare the percent change in the

number of employees of the recipient’s identified industry and the national Leisure & Hospitality sector in the three months before the pandemic’s most severe impacts began (a straight three-month average of seasonally-adjusted employment data from December 2019, January 2020, and February 2020) with the latest data as of the final rule release (a straight three-month average of seasonally-adjusted employment data from September 2021, October 2021, and November 2021).²³⁹ The national Leisure & Hospitality sector largely represents the national travel, tourism, and hospitality industries enumerated in the statute. According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, employment has fallen by approximately 8 percent for the national Leisure & Hospitality sector when comparing the most recent three-month period available as of the date of adoption of the final rule to the three-month period immediately before the public health emergency. Therefore, if the identified industry has suffered an employment loss of at least 8 percent, the final rule presumes the industry to be an “impacted industry.”

For parity and simplicity, smaller recipients without employment data that measure industries in their specific jurisdiction may use data available for a broader unit of government for this calculation (e.g., a county may use data from the state in which it is located; a city may use data for the county, if available, or state in which it is located) solely for purposes of determining whether a particular industry is an impacted industry.

2. *If simplified test is not met.* If an industry does not satisfy the test above or data are unavailable, the recipient may still designate the industry as impacted by demonstrating the following:

a. The recipient can show that the totality of relevant major economic indicators demonstrate that the industry is experiencing comparable or worse economic impacts as the national tourism, travel, and hospitality industries at the time of the publication of the final rule, and that the impacts were generally due to the COVID-19 public health emergency. Example economic indicators include gross output, GDP, net profits, employment levels, and projected time to restore employment back to pre-pandemic levels. Recipients may rely on available economic data, government research

publications, research from academic sources, and other quantitative sources for this determination.

If quantitative data is unavailable, the recipient can rely on qualitative data to show that the industry is experiencing comparable or worse economic impacts as the national tourism, travel, and hospitality industries, and the impacts were generally due to the COVID-19 public health emergency. Recipients may rely on sources like community interviews, surveys, and research from relevant state and local government agencies.

As the public health emergency and economic recovery evolves, recipients should assess how industry impacts shift over time. Impacted industries may recover in a short period of time and no longer face a negative economic impact; in those circumstances, the recipient should ensure that the extent and length of aid is reasonably proportional to the negative economic impact that is experienced, as detailed further below and in section General Provisions: Structure and Standards. Recipients may add to their list of impacted industries by showing that the negative economic impacts to the industry at the time of the designation are comparable to the negative economic impacts to the national tourism, travel, and hospitality sectors as of the date of the final rule adoption, as detailed herein.

Eligible Aid

Public Comment: Commenters asked for further clarification as to the definition of eligible aid to an impacted industry, with many requesting that a broad range of aid be eligible. Examples of aid that recipients asked to be considered eligible include aid to businesses to cover COVID-19 mitigation costs and planned renovations or improvements to tourism, travel, and hospitality facilities, as well as marketing and in-kind incentives to attract visitors. Commenters also asked about the eligibility of aid to broadly cover losses incurred by facilities such as convention centers and hotels due to the pandemic’s economic impact. Commenters also asked for further clarification about the requirements related to private-sector reporting. Further, some commenters asked for clarification about eligible aid to impacted industries owned and operated by Tribal governments, including for Tribal construction projects that have been delayed due to the pandemic’s economic impacts, and for deference to Tribal determinations of negative economic impacts.

²³⁸ Once an industry is designated as impacted, aid should be generally broadly available to businesses in the industry that qualify. Recipients should document how they defined the scope of their industry and how they determined that the industry was impacted. For states and territories, this includes documenting their justification for defining a constituent industry with greater geographic precision than state or territory-wide.

²³⁹ National Leisure & Hospitality supersector employment data can be found on the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics website: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Leisure and Hospitality, <https://www.bls.gov/iag/tgs/iag70.htm> (last visited December 7, 2021).

Treasury Response: In response to commenters' requests for clarification on eligible aid, the final rule requires that aid to impacted industries, including to Tribal development districts, be designed to address the harm experienced by the impacted industry.

First, recipients should identify a negative economic impact, *i.e.*, an economic harm, that is experienced by businesses in the impacted industry. Second, recipients should select a response that is designed to address the identified economic harm resulting from or exacerbated by the public health emergency. Responses must also be related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of harm experienced; uses that bear no relation or are grossly disproportionate to the type or extent of harm experienced would not be eligible uses. Recipients should consider the further discussion of this standard provided in the sections Standards: Designating a Public Health Impact and Standards: Designating a Negative Economic Impact.

These responses may take the form of direct spending by recipients to promote an industry or support for businesses within an "impacted" industry that experienced a negative economic impact (*e.g.*, through a grant program). Examples of eligible responses include:

- Aid to mitigate financial hardship due to declines in revenue or profits by supporting payroll costs and compensation of returning employees for lost pay and benefits during the COVID-19 pandemic, as well as support of operations and maintenance of existing equipment and facilities, such as rent, leases, and utilities;
- Aid for technical assistance, counseling, and other services to assist with business planning needs; and
- Aid to implement COVID-19 mitigation and infection prevention measures, such as vaccination or testing programs, is broadly eligible for many types of entities, including travel, tourism, hospitality, and other impacted industries. Recipients providing aid to impacted industries for COVID-19 public health measures should review the section Assistance to Businesses to Implement COVID-19 Strategies in Public Health, which describes types of eligible uses of funds in this category.

To address the identified harms, responses (*e.g.*, aid through a grant program) should be generally broadly available to all businesses within the impacted industry to avoid the risk of self-dealing, preferential treatment, and

conflicts of interest.²⁴⁰ Treasury encourages recipients to design aid programs such that funds are first used for operational expenses that are generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the recipient's operation, such as payroll, before being used on other types of costs. As noted in the section General Standards: Structure and Standards, uses of funds that do not respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic, such as excessive compensation to employees, is ineligible.

The final rule maintains the interim final rule's requirement that aid may only be considered responsive to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic if it supports businesses, attractions, and Tribal development districts operating prior to the pandemic and affected by required closures and other efforts to contain the pandemic. Further, to facilitate transparency and accountability, the final rule maintains the interim final rule's requirement that recipients publicly report assistance provided to private-sector businesses under this eligible use, including tourism, travel, hospitality, and other impacted industries, and its connection to negative economic impacts of the public health emergency. Recipients also should maintain records to support their assessment of how businesses receiving assistance were affected by the negative economic impacts of the public health emergency and how the aid provided responds to these impacts.

Recipients providing aid to impacted industries for capital expenditures (*i.e.*, expenditures on property, facilities, or equipment), including Tribal governments providing aid to Tribal development districts, should also review the section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other, which describes eligibility standards that are applicable to these expenditures, depending on the type of aid. Recipients providing assistance in the form of loans should review the section Treatment of

²⁴⁰ As part of accepting the Award Terms and Conditions for SLFRF, each recipient agreed to maintain a conflict-of-interest policy consistent with 2 CFR 200.318(c) that is applicable to all activities funded with the SLFRF award. Pursuant to this policy, decisions concerning SLFRF must be free of undisclosed personal or organizational conflicts of interest, both in fact and in appearance. Recipients may avoid conflicts of interest in awarding aid to impacted industries by, *inter alia*, making aid available to businesses in the industry on generally applicable terms or utilizing a competitive grant process. A recipient may not use control over SLFRF for their own private gain. Furthermore, no employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest.

Loans in Program Administration Provisions.

4. General Provisions: Other

As noted above, the final rule consolidates into a General Provisions section several types of uses of funds; in the interim final rule, the eligibility of these uses of funds was discussed within specific categories of eligible uses for public health and negative economic impacts. Treasury anticipates that this re-organization will enhance recipient clarity in assessing eligible uses of funds. These General Provisions apply across all uses of funds under public health and negative economic impacts.

Specifically, this section considers eligible uses for:

- *Public Sector Capacity and Workforce*, which includes several separate and non-mutually exclusive categories articulated in the interim final rule: public health and safety staff; rehiring state, local, and Tribal government staff; expenses for administering COVID-19 response programs; expenses to improve the efficacy of public health or economic relief programs; and administrative expenses caused or exacerbated by the pandemic. Treasury recognizes that these are closely related and frequently overlapping categories. The final rule treats them as a single purpose, supporting public sector capacity, and provides coordinated guidance on the standards and presumptions that apply to them.

- *Capital Expenditures*, which was addressed only under Public Health in the interim final rule. The final rule moves this expense to General Provisions and provides more clarity on the eligibility of capital expenditures across all aspects of the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use category.

- *Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries*, which describes the differences between these two categories. Recipient governments responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic may provide assistance to beneficiaries or execute an eligible use of funds through a subrecipient; some types of entities (*e.g.*, nonprofits) could fit into either category depending on the specific purpose of the use of funds.

- *Uses Outside the Scope of this Category*, which addresses uses of funds that are ineligible or generally ineligible under this eligible use category in the interim final rule. These uses of funds remain ineligible under the final rule, but Treasury has re-categorized where they are addressed, as described below.

This section also addresses enumerated eligible uses proposed by commenters that Treasury has not incorporated into the final rule.

Recipients should also note that the Office of Management and Budget's (OMB) *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (commonly called the "Uniform Guidance") generally applies to SLFRF.

a. Public Sector Capacity and Workforce Public Safety, Public Health, and Human Services Staff

Summary of Interim Final Rule: Under the interim final rule, funds may be used for payroll and covered benefits²⁴¹ for *public safety, public health, health care, human services, and similar employees*²⁴² of a recipient government, for the portion of the employee's time that is spent responding to COVID-19. For administrative convenience, the recipient may consider *public health and safety* employees to be entirely devoted to responding to COVID-19, and therefore their full payroll and covered benefits eligible to be covered, if the employee, or his or her operating unit or division, is "primarily dedicated" to responding to COVID-19, meaning that more than half of the employee, unit, or division's time is dedicated to responding to COVID-19. Recipients may consider other presumptions for assessing the extent to which an employee, division, or operating unit is responding to COVID-19. Recipients must periodically reassess their determination and maintain records to support their assessment, such as payroll records, attestations from supervisors or staff, or regular work product or

correspondence; recipients need not track staff hours. The interim final rule also posed a question on how long recipients should be able to use funds for staff responding to COVID-19 and what other measures or presumptions might Treasury consider to assess the extent to which public sector staff are engaged in COVID-19 response in an easily administrable manner.

Treasury also provided further guidance on the types of employees covered by this category of eligible use, specifically: "Public safety employees would include police officers (including state police officers), sheriffs and deputy sheriffs, firefighters, emergency medical responders, correctional and detention officers, and those who directly support such employees such as dispatchers and supervisory personnel. Public health employees²⁴³ would include employees involved in providing medical and other health services to patients and supervisory personnel, including medical staff assigned to schools, prisons, and other such institutions, and other support services essential for patient care (e.g., laboratory technicians, medical examiner, or morgue staff) as well as employees of public health departments directly engaged in matters related to public health and related supervisory personnel. Human services staff include employees providing or administering social services; public benefits; child welfare services; and child, elder, or family care, as well as others."

Public Comment: Measuring Time Spent on COVID-19 Response: Treasury received public comments on several components of this eligible use category. Many commenters argued that it poses an administrative burden to identify the extent to which staff are responding to COVID-19 and to maintain records to support that assessment. Largely citing administrative burden in assessing eligibility, several commenters recommended revisions to the administrative convenience that the full payroll and covered benefits for public health and safety staff "primarily dedicated" to responding to COVID-19 may be paid with SLFRF funds. Some commenters recommended presuming that all public health and safety staff are primarily dedicated to COVID-19 response, while others proposed that public health and safety workers who primarily serve QCTs or low- and moderate-income areas be presumed to be primarily dedicated to COVID-19

response, given the disproportionate impacts of the pandemic in those communities. Similarly, Tribal communities recommended that their public health staff be presumed eligible due to the disproportionate impact of the pandemic on their communities. Some commenters proposed that they be able to use the administrative convenience for staff outside of public health and safety that are responding to COVID-19 (i.e., to be able to pay the full payroll and covered benefits for any staff "primarily dedicated" to COVID-19 response).

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining the approach in the interim final rule, including elaborations issued in further guidance, but providing additional clarification on its application, including methods to apply the approach to minimize administrative burden. Treasury notes that recipients may assess the extent to which staff are dedicated to responding to COVID-19 through a variety of means, including establishing presumptions or assessing public health and safety staff at the division or operating unit level. For example, a recipient could consider the amount of time spent by employees in its public health department's epidemiology division in responding to COVID-19 and, if a majority of its employees are dedicated to responding to COVID-19, determine that the entire division is primarily dedicated to responding to COVID-19. Treasury also clarifies that recipients may use reasonable estimates to establish administrable presumptions; for example, a recipient could estimate, based on discussions with staff, the general share of time that employees in a specific role or type of position spend on COVID-19 related tasks and apply that share of time to all employees in that position.

Recipients are generally required to be able to support uses of SLFRF funds as eligible, including, in this instance, maintenance of records to support an assessment that public health and safety staff are primarily dedicated to responding to COVID-19. As noted above, recipients may use reasonable estimates to implement this provision. Recipients should maintain records on how they developed these estimates and need not track staff hours. Treasury notes that records retained can include payroll records (e.g., the number and type of staff in various positions), attestations from supervisors or staff (e.g., self-attestation of share of time spent on COVID-19), or regular work product or correspondence (e.g., calendars, email correspondence, documents, and other electronic

²⁴¹ In general, if an employee's wages and salaries are an eligible use of SLFRF funds, recipients may treat the employee's covered benefits as an eligible use of SLFRF funds. For purposes of SLFRF funds, covered benefits include costs of all types of leave (vacation, family-related, sick, military, bereavement, sabbatical, jury duty), employee insurance (health, life, dental, vision), retirement (pensions, 401(k)), unemployment benefit plans (federal and state), workers compensation insurance, and Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA) taxes (which includes Social Security and Medicare taxes). As described further in the section Deposits into Pension Funds in Restrictions on Use, that limitation on use does not apply to pension contributions that are part of regular payroll contributions for employees whose wages and salaries are an eligible use of SLFRF funds.

²⁴² Note that the interim final rule adapted prior guidance issued for CRF that described these four categories of employees; however, when listing the specific occupations or types of employees in each of these categories, the guidance collapses health care and public health into one category titled "public health." Therefore, the presumption described around public health employees also covers health care employees.

²⁴³ Note that this category encompasses both public health and health care employees; both are treated as public health employees for the purposes of this eligible use category.

records). Treasury anticipates that these types of records are generally retained in many government settings; recipients should also consult the Award Terms and Conditions for SLFRF funds for requirements on length of record retention. For example, a recipient could establish a reasonable presumption about the share of time that an employee, division, or operating unit is responding to COVID-19 and simply retain those employees' electronic records as a record to support their assessment.

Public Comment: Public Health and Safety Staff Primarily Dedicated to COVID-19 Response: Some commenters recommended expanding the administrative convenience for public health and safety staff primarily dedicated to COVID-19 response to further types of staff, to all public health and safety staff, or to public health and safety staff serving underserved areas.

Treasury Response: The interim final rule recognized that COVID-19 response continues to require substantial staff resources and provides an administrative convenience to make it relatively simpler to identify the eligibility of the types of workers—public health and safety workers—generally most involved in COVID-19 response. At the same time, many public health and safety workers perform roles unrelated to COVID-19; coverage of all roles would be overbroad compared to the workers responding to COVID-19 in actuality. For this reason, the final rule maintains the interim final rule's approach to permitting SLFRF funds to be used for public health and safety staff primarily dedicated to responding to COVID-19. Finally, to the extent that a greater proportion of public health and safety staff time is needed to respond to COVID-19 in disproportionately impacted communities, the "primarily dedicated" approach recognizes this increased need.

Public Comment: Eligible Types of COVID-19 Response: Some public commenters also sought further clarification on how to identify eligible types of "COVID-19 response." For example, commenters requested clarification on delineating COVID-19 response from general public health response and defining COVID-19 response for public safety employees.

Treasury Response: Treasury is clarifying that "responding to" COVID-19 entails work needed to respond to the public health or negative economic impacts of the pandemic, apart from the typical pre-pandemic job duties or workload of an employee in a comparable role, if one existed. For

example, responding to COVID-19 for a public safety worker may entail working in an emergency operations center to coordinate pandemic-related supply distribution, responding to an increased volume of 911 calls, or implementing COVID-19 prevention and mitigation protocols in a carceral setting.

Public Comment: Eligible Employees: Some commenters requested clarification on the types of eligible employees or expansion of eligible employees to include additional types of staff, including in behavioral health; administrative, management, or financial management positions; social services; morgue staff; and nonprofit staff supporting projects to undertake eligible uses of funds under SLFRF.

Treasury Response: Treasury provided further guidance on eligible types of employees following the interim final rule, which expressly included social services and morgue staff, and incorporates that guidance into the final rule. In addition, Treasury is clarifying that public health "employees involved in providing medical and other health services to patients and supervisory personnel" includes behavioral health services as well as physical health services.

Treasury also is clarifying that this provision only addresses employees of the recipient government responding to COVID-19. For discussion of eligible expenses to administer SLFRF, including eligible costs for subrecipients performing eligible activities on behalf of a recipient government, see section Administrative Expenses in Program Administration Provisions.

Finally, Treasury is clarifying that indirect costs for administrative, management, and financial management personnel to support public health and safety staff responding to COVID-19 are not permissible under this provision, given the relatively greater challenge of differentiating the marginal increase in staff time and workload due to pandemic response for indirect versus direct costs.

Public Comment: Time Period: Finally, some commenters made recommendations on the time period during which this eligible use should be available. Some commenters recommended eligibility begin before March 3, 2021, the period when Treasury's interim final rule permitted recipients to begin to incur costs using SLFRF funds; for discussion of this topic, see section Timeline for Use of SLFRF Funds in Program Administration Provisions. As noted above, Treasury also posed a question in the interim final rule asking for how long Treasury should maintain the

administrative convenience that SLFRF funds may be used for the full payroll and covered benefits of public health and safety staff primarily dedicated to COVID-19 response. Several commenters recommended that Treasury maintain this approach throughout the program or through December 31, 2024. Other commenters requested clarification on whether eligibility for this use of funds was tied to the length of the state of emergency or whether a jurisdiction has an active state of emergency.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is clarifying that recipients will be permitted to fund the full payroll and covered benefits of public health and safety staff primarily dedicated to COVID-19 response throughout the period of performance for the SLFRF program, though recipients should periodically reassess their determination of primarily dedicated staff, including as the public health emergency and response evolves.

Government Employment and Rehiring Public Sector Staff

The interim final rule permitted use of funds for costs associated with rehiring state, local, and Tribal government staff in order to bolster the government's ability to effectively administer services. Specifically, recipients may pay for payroll, covered benefits, and other costs associated with the recipient increasing the number of its employees up to the pre-pandemic baseline, or the number of employees that the recipient government employed on January 27, 2020.

Public Comment: Many commenters requested greater flexibility and additional clarification on the provision's requirements, including the pre-pandemic baseline and re-hiring process. Some commenters requested that the final rule allow for hiring above the pre-pandemic baseline given historic underinvestment in the public sector workforce. Commenters suggested a number of adjustments to the pre-pandemic baseline, including adjusting based on population or revenue growth, while some recommended allowing recipients to set their own hiring levels. Others requested clarification on the definition of the baseline and the re-hiring process, including whether the pre-pandemic baseline referred to budgeted or filled positions and whether new hires had to fill the same roles as the previous hires. Commenters also asked whether recipients need to show if the reduction in number of employees was due to the pandemic in order to qualify for funding and requested that workers dedicated to

COVID-19 response be exempted from the calculation of number of employees.

Many commenters also requested an expanded set of eligible uses beyond restoring their workforce up to the pre-pandemic baseline. Commenters requested that funding be able to be used to avoid layoffs, provide back pay, retain employees through pay increases and other retention programs, or reimburse salaries and benefits already paid. Some commenters also requested clarification as to whether recipients can fund re-hired positions through the period of performance and on the definition of payroll and benefits. Other commenters requested preferential hiring for workers laid off, a strong commitment to equity, and a requirement that funds would not be used to pay for contract or temporary replacement workers during a labor dispute.

Treasury Response: The final rule allows for an expanded set of eligible uses to restore and support public sector employment. Eligible uses include hiring up to a pre-pandemic baseline that is adjusted for historic underinvestment in the public sector, providing additional funds for employees who experienced pay cuts or were furloughed, avoiding layoffs, providing worker retention incentives, and paying for ancillary administrative costs related to hiring.

Restoring pre-pandemic employment. In response to comments and recognizing underinvestment in public sector employment, the final rule expands the ability to use SLFRF funds to restore pre-pandemic employment. Treasury is also clarifying how, and the extent to which, recipients may use SLFRF funds to rehire public employees.

The final rule provides two options to restore pre-pandemic employment, depending on recipient's needs. Under the first and simpler option, recipients may use SLFRF funds to rehire staff for pre-pandemic positions that were unfilled or were eliminated due to the pandemic without undergoing further analysis. Under the second option, the final rule provides recipients an option to hire above the pre-pandemic baseline, by adjusting the pre-pandemic baseline for historical growth in public sector employment over time, as well as flexibility on roles for hire. Recipients may choose between these options but cannot use both.

To pursue the first option, recipients may use SLFRF funds to hire employees for the same positions that existed on January 27, 2020 but that were unfilled or eliminated as of March 3, 2021, without undergoing further analysis. For

these employees, recipients may use SLFRF funds for payroll and covered benefit costs that are obligated by December 31, 2024 and expended by December 31, 2026, consistent with the Uniform Guidance's Cost Principles at 2 CFR part 200 Subpart E. This option provides administrative simplicity for recipients that would simply like to restore pre-pandemic positions and would not like to hire above the pre-pandemic baseline.

To pursue the second option, recipients should undergo the analysis provided below. In short, this option allows recipients to pay for payroll and covered benefits associated with the recipient increasing its number of budgeted full-time equivalent employees (FTEs) up to 7.5 percent above its pre-pandemic employment baseline, which adjusts for the continued underinvestment in state and local governments since the Great Recession. State and local government employment as a share of population in 2019 remained considerably below its share prior to the Great Recession in 2007, which presented major risks to recipients mounting a response to the COVID-19 public health emergency. The *adjustment factor* of 7.5 percent results from estimating how much larger 2019 state and local government employment would have needed to be for the share of state and local government employment to population in 2019 to have been back at its 2007 level and is intended to correct for this gap.

Recipients should complete the steps described below. Recipients may choose whether to conduct this analysis on a government-wide basis or for an individual department, agency, or authority.

- **Step One:** Identify the recipient's budgeted FTE level on January 27, 2020. This includes all budgeted positions, filled and unfilled. This is called the *pre-pandemic baseline*.

- **Step Two:** Multiply the *pre-pandemic baseline* by 1.075 (that is, 1 + *adjustment factor*). This is called the *adjusted pre-pandemic baseline*.

- **Step Three:** Identify the recipient's budgeted FTE level on March 3, 2021, which is the beginning of the period of performance for SLFRF funds. Recipients may, but are not required to, exclude FTEs dedicated to responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency.²⁴⁴ This is called the *actual number of FTEs*.

²⁴⁴ Recipients may determine that a portion of an FTE's time is dedicated to responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency. Further, for administrative convenience, the recipient may

- **Step Four:** Subtract the *actual number of FTEs* from the *adjusted pre-pandemic baseline* to calculate the number of FTEs that can be hired and covered by SLFRF funds.

Recipients may use SLFRF funds to cover payroll and covered benefit costs obligated by December 31, 2024, and expended by December 31, 2026, up to the number of FTEs calculated in Step Four, consistent with the Uniform Guidance's Cost Principles at 2 CFR part 200 Subpart E. Recipients may only use SLFRF funds for additional FTEs hired over the March 3, 2021 level of budgeted FTEs (*i.e.*, the *actual number of FTEs*); note again that recipients may choose whether to conduct the analysis of FTEs that can be covered by SLFRF funds on a government-wide basis or for an individual department, agency, or authority.

These FTEs must have begun their employment on or after March 3, 2021, which is the beginning of the period of performance. For administrative convenience, recipients do not need to demonstrate that the reduction in number of FTEs was due to the COVID-19 pandemic, as Treasury assumes the vast majority of employment reductions during this time were due to pandemic fiscal pressures on state and local budgets. Recipients do not need to hire for the same roles that existed pre-pandemic.

For illustration, consider a hypothetical recipient with 1,000 budgeted FTEs on January 27, 2020 (950 filled FTE positions and 50 unfilled FTE positions). The recipient's *pre-pandemic baseline* is 1000 FTEs; its *adjusted pre-pandemic baseline* is $1,000 * 1.075 = 1075$ FTEs. Now, assume that on March 3, 2021, the recipient had 800 budgeted FTEs in total (795 filled FTE positions and 5 unfilled FTE positions), with 50 FTEs primarily dedicated to responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency. The recipient would have the option of using either 800 FTEs or 750 FTEs as its *actual number of FTEs* for the calculation; assuming it chooses the lower number, it would be able to fund up to 325 FTEs with SLFRF funds (that is, $1,075 - 750 = 325$ FTEs).

consider public health and safety FTEs to be entirely devoted to mitigating or responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency if the FTE, or his or her operating unit of division, is primarily dedicated to responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency. Recipients may also consider other presumptions for assessing the extent to which an FTE, division, or operating unit is engaged in activities that respond to the COVID-19 public health emergency, provided that the recipient reassesses periodically and maintains records to support its assessment, such as payroll records, attestations from supervisors or staff, or regular work product or correspondence demonstrating work on the COVID-19 response.

Specifically, the recipient would be able to use SLFRF to fund payroll and covered benefits for up to 325 FTEs that begin their employment on or after March 3, 2021, for costs obligated by December 31, 2024, and expended by December 31, 2026, consistent with the Uniform Guidance's Cost Principles, as long as SLFRF funds are used for additional FTEs hired over the recipient's 750 FTE level (which is its March 3, 2021 budgeted FTE level).

In hiring new employees, the final rule encourages recipients to ensure a diverse workforce. The final rule also prohibits recipients from using funds to temporarily fill positions during a labor dispute, as this would not constitute responding to the public health or negative economic impacts of the pandemic. Further, recipients must ensure that its hiring practices do not violate conflict-of-interest policies.²⁴⁵ Total compensation for a hired employee that is substantially in excess of typical compensation for employees of their experience and tenure within the recipient's government, without a corresponding business case, may indicate a potential conflict-of-interest in fact or appearance.

Providing additional funding for employees who experienced pay cuts and furloughs. In recognition of the economic hardship caused by pay cuts and furloughs, additional funds may be provided to employees who experienced pay cuts or were furloughed since the onset of the pandemic on January 27, 2020. Recipients must be able to substantiate that the pay cut or furlough was substantially due to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts (e.g., fiscal pressures on state and local budgets) and should document their assessment. As a reminder, this additional funding must be reasonably proportional to the negative economic impact of the pay cut or furlough on the employee, which would include taking into account unemployment insurance (UI) benefits that a furloughed employee may have received during the furloughed period. Treasury presumes that additional funds beyond the difference in pay had the

employee not received a pay cut or been furloughed would not be reasonably proportional.

Recipients may also provide premium pay to certain employees, as detailed further in section Premium Pay.

Avoiding layoffs. Funds may be used to maintain current compensation levels, with adjustments for inflation, in order to prevent layoffs that would otherwise be necessary. Recipients must be able to substantiate that layoffs were likely in the absence of SLFRF funds and would be substantially due to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts (e.g., fiscal pressures on state and local budgets) and should document their assessment.

Retaining workers. Funds may be used to provide worker retention incentives, which are designed to persuade employees to remain with the employer as compared to other employment options. Recipients must be able to substantiate that the employees were likely to leave employment in the absence of the retention incentive and should document their assessment. For example, a recipient may determine that a retention bonus is necessary based on the presence of an alternative employment offer for an employee.

All worker retention incentives must be narrowly tailored to need and should not exceed incentives traditionally offered by the recipient or compensation that alternative employers may offer to compete for the employees. Further, because retention incentives are intended to provide additional incentive to remain with the employer, they must be entirely additive to an employee's regular rate of wages and other remuneration and may not be used to reduce or substitute for an employee's normal earnings. Treasury will presume that retention incentives that are less than 25 percent of the rate of base pay for an individual employee or 10 percent for a group or category of employees are reasonably proportional to the need to retain employees, as long as the other requirements are met.

Ancillary administrative costs. Funds may be used to pay for ancillary administrative costs associated with administering SLFRF-funded hiring and retention programs detailed above, including costs to publish job postings, review applications, and onboard and train new hires. For additional information on administrative expenses, see section Administrative Expenses in Program Administration Provisions.

Effective Service Delivery: Administrative Expenses

The interim final rule provided that funds could be used for: "Expenses to improve efficacy of public health or economic relief programs: Administrative costs associated with the recipient's COVID-19 public health emergency assistance programs, including services responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency or its negative economic impacts, that are not federally funded." In the final rule, Treasury is clarifying that there are several categories of eligible administrative expenses.

First, recipients may use funds for administrative costs to improve the efficacy of public health or economic relief programs through tools like program evaluation, data analysis, and targeted consumer outreach (see section Effective Service Delivery: Program Evaluation, Data, and Outreach).

Second, recipients may use funds for administrative costs associated with programs to respond to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts, including programs that are not funded by SLFRF or not federally funded. In other words, Treasury recognizes that responding to the public health and economic impacts of the pandemic requires many programs and activities, some of which are not funded by SLFRF. Executing these programs effectively is a component of responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic.

Finally, recipients may use funds for direct and indirect administrative costs for administering the SLFRF program and projects funded by the SLFRF program. See section Administrative Expenses in Program Administration Provisions for details on this eligible use category.

Effective Service Delivery: Program Evaluation, Data, and Outreach

The Supplementary Information of the interim final rule provided that state, local and Tribal governments may use SLFRF funds to improve the design and execution of programs responding to the COVID-19 pandemic and to improve the efficacy of programs addressing negative economic impacts. The interim final rule included high-level guidance about how SLFRF funds could be used in this eligible use category, including the use of targeted consumer outreach, improvements to data or technology infrastructure, impact evaluations, and data analysis.

Since the publication of the interim final rule, Treasury has also released

²⁴⁵ As part of accepting the Award Terms and Conditions for SLFRF, each recipient agreed to maintain a conflict-of-interest policy consistent with 2 CFR 200.318(c)112 that is applicable to all activities funded with the SLFRF award. Pursuant to this policy, decisions concerning SLFRF must be free of undisclosed personal or organizational conflicts of interest, both in fact and in appearance. A recipient may not use control over SLFRF for their own private gain. Furthermore, no employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest.

supplementary information on data analysis, evidence building, and program evaluation in the Compliance and Reporting Guidance.

Public Comment: Treasury received positive comments about the opportunity to invest in data and technology upgrades with SLFRF funds. For example, one commenter noted that investing in technology for better connectivity, coupled with software and hardware upgrades, will allow the workforce to be more productive. Treasury also received comments seeking clarification on using funds for investments in data and technology, including whether upgrading government websites to improve community outreach and investing in technologies that support social distancing were eligible uses.

Treasury Response: Governments with high capacity to use data and evidence to administer programs are more likely to be responsive to the needs of their community, more transparent about their community impact, and more resilient to emergencies such as the pandemic and its economic impacts.²⁴⁶ Treasury recognizes that collecting high-quality data and developing community-driven, evidence-based programs requires resources to hire and build the capacity of staff, adopt new processes and systems, and use new technology and tools in order to effectively develop, execute, and evaluate programs. As such, Treasury is clarifying that recipients may use SLFRF funds toward the following non-exhaustive list of uses to address the data, evidence, and program administration needs of recipients. Additional information may be provided in the Compliance and Reporting Guidance.

- **Program evaluation and evidence resources** to support building and using evidence to improve outcomes, including development of Learning Agendas²⁴⁷ to support strategic evidence building, selection of evidence-based interventions, and program evaluations including impact evaluations (randomized control trials

and quasi-experimental designs) as well as rapid-cycle evaluations, process or implementation evaluations, outcome evaluations, and cost-benefit analyses. Recipients are encouraged to undertake rigorous program evaluations when practicable, assess the impact of their programs by beneficiary demographics (including race, ethnicity, gender, income, and other relevant factors), and engage with community stakeholders (including intended beneficiaries) when developing Learning Agendas and designing evaluations to ensure that programmatic, cultural, linguistic, and historical nuances are accurately and respectfully addressed.

Recipients are also encouraged to use relevant evidence Clearinghouses,²⁴⁸ among other sources, to assess the level of evidence for their interventions and identify evidence-based models that could be applied in their jurisdiction (meaning models with strong or moderate evidence; see Compliance and Reporting Guidance for details on these terms).

- **Data analysis resources** to gather, assess, and use data for effective policy-making and real-time tracking of program performance to support effective implementation of SLFRF-funded programs and programs that respond to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts, or which households, small businesses, or impacted industries are accessing during the pandemic that are funded by other sources. These resources include but are not limited to data gathering, data cleaning, data analysis, data infrastructure, data management, data sharing, data transparency, performance management, outcomes-based budgeting, outcomes-based procurement, and other data needs. Treasury encourages the disaggregation of data to identify disparate program impacts and the use of cross-jurisdictional data sharing to better measure and implement government programs.

²⁴⁶ Evidence Clearinghouses are databases of research in particular program areas. Frequently these Clearinghouses identify evidence-based programs, the strength of the evidence for those programs, and provide contextual or supporting information in easy to understand formats. Many federal departments have developed rigorous and helpful Clearinghouses that cover a wide range of uses enumerated in this final rule as well as other programs that may be responsive to public health or negative economic impacts of the pandemic. For more information on Clearinghouses, please see the Compliance and Reporting Guidance; U.S. Department of the Treasury, Recipient Compliance and Reporting Responsibilities, as of November 5, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/policy-issues/coronavirus/assistance-for-state-local-and-tribal-governments/state-and-local-fiscal-recovery-funds/recipient-compliance-and-reporting-responsibilities>.

- **Technology infrastructure resources** to improve access to and the user-experience of government information technology systems, including upgrades to hardware and software as well as improvements to public-facing websites or to data management systems, to increase public access and improve public delivery of government programs and services (including in the judicial, legislative, or executive branches).

- **Community outreach and engagement resources** to support the gathering and sharing of information in ways that improve equity and effective implementation of SLFRF-funded programs and programs that respond to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts, or which households, small businesses, or impacted industries are accessing during the pandemic that are funded by other sources. These methods include but are not limited to community meetings, online surveys, focus groups, human-centered design activities, behavioral science techniques, and other community engagement tools.

- **Capacity building resources** to support using data and evidence in designing, executing, and evaluating programs, including hiring public sector staff, contractors, academics, consultants, and others with expertise in evaluation, data, technology, and community engagement as well as technical assistance support for public sector staff, staff of subrecipients, and community partners to support effective implementation of SLFRF-funded programs and programs that respond to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts, or which households, small businesses, or impacted industries are accessing during the pandemic that are funded by other sources.

Administrative Needs Caused or Exacerbated by the Pandemic

As described in guidance and the interim final rule, SLFRF funds may be used to address administrative needs of recipient governments that were caused or exacerbated by the pandemic. Guidance following the interim final rule included several examples of this, for example, uses of funds to address backlogs resulting from pandemic-related shutdowns (e.g., backlogs in court systems).²⁴⁹ This also includes

²⁴⁹ See FAQ 2.19, Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>. In the case of courts specifically, this includes “implementing COVID-19 safety measures to facilitate court operations, hiring additional court staff or attorneys to increase speed of case

²⁴⁶ Results for America, Invest in What Works State Standard of Excellence (August 2020), https://2020state.results4america.org/2020_State-Standard-of-Excellence.pdf.

²⁴⁷ Learning Agendas are systematic plans to identify, prioritize, answer important questions about programs and policies using analytic techniques that are appropriate to the type of question asked. For more information on learning agendas, please see OMB Memorandum M-19-23, available at: <https://www.whitehouse.gov/wp-content/uploads/2019/07/M-19-23.pdf> and OMB Memorandum M-21-27, available at: <https://www.whitehouse.gov/wp-content/uploads/2021/06/M-21-27.pdf>.

using funds for increased repair or maintenance needs to respond to significantly greater use of public facilities during the pandemic (e.g., increased use of parks resulting in damage or increased need for maintenance). Some commenters expressed support for the ability to use funds for these purposes. Treasury is maintaining these enumerated eligible uses in the final rule and clarifying that capital expenditures such as technology infrastructure to adapt government operations to the pandemic (e.g., video-conferencing software, improvements to case management systems or data sharing resources), reduce government backlogs, or meet increased maintenance needs are eligible.

b. Capital Expenditures

The interim final rule expressly permitted use of funds for a limited number of capital expenditures that mostly pertained to COVID-19 prevention and mitigation. These included capital investments in public facilities to meet pandemic operational needs, such as physical plant improvements to public hospitals and health clinics; adaptations to public buildings to implement COVID-19 mitigation tactics; ventilation improvements in congregate settings, health care settings, or other key locations; assistance to small businesses and nonprofits and aid to impacted industries to implement COVID-19 prevention or mitigation tactics, such as physical plant changes to enable social distancing. For disproportionately impacted populations and communities, the interim final rule also expressly permitted development of affordable housing to increase the supply of affordable and high-quality living units.

Public Comment: Many commenters supported the interim final rule's allowance of capital expenditures in facilities to meet pandemic operational needs but requested that the final rule explicitly allow for a broader range of capital expenditures. Commenters expressed an interest in investing in equipment, real property, and facilities that they argued will yield lasting benefits beyond the SLFRF period of performance. Some commenters stated that the approach in the interim final rule limited the vast majority of capital expenditures to governments that experienced revenue loss under Sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C) and that this approach may prevent some governments from fully meeting the needs of their residents. A few

commenters argued that Treasury should limit use of funds on capital expenditures not related to addressing a direct pandemic harm, such as general economic development or workforce development, and some expressed support for generally limiting capital expenditures to those that address the needs of low-income communities and communities of color.

Many commenters requested that capital expenditures related to direct COVID-19 public health response be included as enumerated eligible uses. The requested types of expenditures include improvements and construction of hospitals and health clinics (including behavioral health clinics), as well as other health-related infrastructure improvements, such as improvements to medical equipment or public health information technology. These commenters stated that investments in health and public health systems are vital to ensuring critical infrastructure necessary to respond to continued impacts of COVID-19 or to address disparities in health, due to lack of access to health care, that contributed to disproportionate impacts of COVID-19 on some communities. Further, some commenters requested that construction or improvements of emergency management and public safety facilities be deemed eligible, citing that some of these sites serve as remote vaccination sites or are otherwise crucial to the pandemic public health response.

Commenters also requested use of funds for capital expenditures that support community needs apart from health care, such as new construction or improvements to schools, affordable housing (beyond presumed disproportionately impacted communities), childcare facilities, and community centers; some suggested that all types of projects permissible under the Community Development Block Grant Program should be eligible both for policy and administrability reasons. Further, some commenters also asked for clarification as to whether parks and recreational facilities are eligible if built in certain disproportionately impacted areas, as well as public transportation infrastructure.

Finally, some commenters also requested use of funds for capital expenditures in government administration buildings, such as public courthouses, as well as technology infrastructure that would allow for remote delivery of public benefits. Others also asked about whether funds could be used to renovate vacant business district buildings or commercial spaces to spur economic recovery.

Treasury Response: Capital expenditures, in certain cases, can be appropriate responses to the public health and economic impacts of the pandemic, in addition to programs and services. Like other eligible uses of SLFRF funds in this category, capital expenditures should be a related and reasonably proportional response to a public health or negative economic impact of the pandemic. The final rule clarifies and expands how SLFRF funds may be used for certain capital expenditures, including criteria and documentation requirements specified in this section, as applicable.

Treasury provides presumptions and guidelines for capital expenditures that are enumerated earlier in sections Public Health, Negative Economic Impacts, and General Provisions: Other under the Public Health and Negative Economic Impact eligible use category ("enumerated projects"), along with capital expenditures beyond those enumerated by Treasury. In addition to satisfying the two-part framework in Standards: Designating a Public Health Impact and Standards: Designating a Negative Economic Impact for identifying and designing a response to a pandemic harm, Treasury will require projects with total expected capital expenditure costs of \$1 million or greater to undergo additional analysis to justify their capital expenditure. Increased reporting requirements will be required for projects that are larger in size, as well as projects that are not enumerated as eligible by Treasury, with certain exceptions for Tribal governments discussed below. Smaller projects with total expected capital expenditures below \$1 million will not be required to undergo additional analysis to justify their capital expenditure, as such projects will be presumed to be reasonably proportional, provided that they are responding to a harm caused or exacerbated by the public health emergency. These standards and documentation requirements are designed to minimize administrative burden while also ensuring that projects are reasonably proportional and supporting Treasury's risk-based approach to overall program management and monitoring.

This section provides (1) an overview of general standards governing capital expenditures; (2) presumptions on capital expenditures, which help guide recipients in determining whether the expenditure meets the standards and the associated documentation requirements; and (3) additional standards and requirements that may apply.

resolution, and other expenses to expedite case resolution are eligible uses."

Overview of General Standards

In considering whether a capital expenditure would be eligible under the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use category, recipients must satisfy the requirements for all uses under the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use category, including identifying an impact or harm and designing a response that addresses or responds to the identified impact or harm. Responses must be reasonably designed to benefit the individual or class that experienced the impact or harm and must be related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of impact or harm. Recipients should consult further details on this standard provided in the sections Standards: Designating a Public Health Impact and Standards: Designating a Negative Economic Impact under General Provisions: Structure and Standards.

In addition to the framework described above, for projects with total expected capital expenditures of \$1 million or greater, recipients must complete and meet the substantive requirements of a Written Justification for their capital expenditure, except for Tribal governments as discussed below. This Written Justification helps clarify the application of this interpretive framework to capital expenditures, while recognizing that the needs of communities differ. In particular, this justification reflects the fact that the time required for a large construction project may make capital expenditures less responsive to pandemic-related needs relative to other types of responses. In addition, as discussed in section Timeline for Use of SLFRF Funds of this Supplemental Information, SLFRF funds must be obligated by December 31, 2024 and expended by December 31, 2026. Capital expenditures may involve long lead-times, and the Written Justification may support recipients in analyzing proposed capital expenditures to confirm that they conform to the obligation and expenditure timing requirements. Further, such large projects may be less likely to be reasonably proportional to the harm identified. For example, construction of a new, larger public facility for the purpose of increasing the ability to socially distance generally would not be considered a reasonably proportional response compared to other less time- and resource-intensive options that may be available and would be equally or more effective. Other solutions, such as improvements in ventilation, could be made more quickly and are typically

more cost effective than construction of a new, larger facility. The needs of communities differ, and recipients are responsible for identifying uses of SLFRF funds that best respond to these needs. The Written Justification recognizes this while also establishing consistent documentation and reporting to support monitoring and compliance with the ARPA and final rule. Finally, the Written Justification also reflects the fact that infrastructure projects are generally not within scope of this eligible use category. See section Uses Outside the Scope of this Category in General Provisions: Other.

As noted above, Tribal governments are not required to complete the Written Justification for projects with total capital expenditures of \$1 million or greater. Tribal governments generally have limited administrative capacity due to their small size and corresponding limited ability to supplement staffing for short-term programs. In addition, Tribal governments are already subject to unique considerations that require additional administrative processes and administrative burden for Tribal government decision making, including capital expenditures. Tribal governments generally are subject to a jurisdictionally complex sets of rules and regulations in the case of improvements to land for which the title is held in trust by the United States for a Tribe (Tribal Trust Lands).²⁵⁰ This includes the requirement in certain circumstances to seek the input or approval of one or more federal agencies such as the Department of the Interior, which holds fee title of Tribal Trust Lands.

As a result of their limited administrative capacity and unique and complex rules and regulations applicable to Tribal governments operating on Tribal Trust Lands, Tribal governments would experience significant and redundant administrative burden by also being required to complete a Written Justification for applicable capital expenditures. While Tribal governments are not required to complete the Written Justification for applicable capital expenditures, the associated substantive requirements continue to apply, including the requirement that a capital expenditure must be reasonably designed to benefit the individual or class that experienced the identified impact or harm and must be related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of impact or harm. Note that, as a general matter, Treasury may also

request further information on SLFRF expenditures and projects, including capital expenditures, as part of the regular SLFRF reporting and compliance process, including to assess their eligibility under the final rule.

The Written Justification should (1) describe the harm or need to be addressed; (2) explain why a capital expenditure is appropriate to address the harm or need; and (3) compare the proposed capital expenditure against alternative capital expenditures that could be made. The information required for the Written Justification reflects the framework applicable to all uses under the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use category, providing justification for the reasonable design, relatedness, and reasonable proportionality of the capital expenditure in response to the harm or impact identified.

1. *Description of harm or need to be addressed:* Recipients should provide a description of the specific harm or need to be addressed, and why the harm was exacerbated or caused by the public health emergency. When appropriate, recipients may provide quantitative information on the extent and type of the harm, such as the number of individuals or entities affected.

2. *Explanation of why a capital expenditure is appropriate:* Recipients should provide an independent assessment demonstrating why a capital expenditure is appropriate to address the specified harm or need. This should include an explanation of why existing capital equipment, property, or facilities would be inadequate to addressing the harm or need and why policy changes or additional funding to pertinent programs or services would be insufficient without the corresponding capital expenditures. Recipients are not required to demonstrate that the harm or need would be irremediable but for the additional capital expenditure; rather, they may show that other interventions would be inefficient, costly, or otherwise not reasonably designed to remedy the harm without additional capital expenditure.

3. *Comparison of the proposed capital expenditure against alternative capital expenditures:* Recipients should provide an objective comparison of the proposed capital expenditure against at least two alternative capital expenditures and demonstrate why their proposed capital expenditure is superior to alternative capital expenditures that could be made. Specifically, recipients should assess the proposed capital expenditure against at least two alternative types or sizes of capital expenditures that are potentially effective and reasonably

²⁵⁰ See 25 U.S.C. 5108.

feasible. Where relevant, recipients should compare the proposal against the alternative of improving existing capital assets already owned or leasing other capital assets. Recipients should use quantitative data when available, although they are encouraged to supplement with qualitative information and narrative description. Recipients that complete analyses with minimal or no quantitative data should provide an explanation for doing so.

In determining whether their proposed capital expenditure is superior to alternative capital expenditures, recipients should consider the following factors against each selected alternative.

a. *A comparison of the effectiveness of the capital expenditures in addressing the harm identified.* Recipients should generally consider the effectiveness of the capital expenditures in addressing the harm over the useful life of the capital asset and may consider metrics such as the number of impacted or disproportionately impacted individuals or entities served, when such individuals or entities are estimated to be served, the relative time horizons of the project, and consideration of any uncertainties or risks involved with the capital expenditure.

b. *A comparison of the expected total cost of the capital expenditures.* Recipients should consider the expected total cost of the capital expenditure required to construct, purchase, install, or improve the capital assets intended to address the public health or negative economic impact of the public health emergency. Recipients should include pre-development costs in their calculation and may choose to include information on ongoing operational costs, although this information is not required.

Recipients should balance the effectiveness and costs of the proposed capital expenditure against alternatives and demonstrate that their proposed capital expenditure is superior. Further, recipients should choose the most cost-effective option unless it substantively reduces the effectiveness of the capital investment in addressing the harm identified.

As an example, a recipient considering building a new diagnostic testing laboratory to enhance COVID-19 testing capacity may consider whether existing laboratories sufficiently meet demand for COVID-19 testing, considering the demand for test results (along with their turnaround time) as well as the impact of current testing

availability on the spread of COVID-19. Recipients may also consider other public health impacts of the level of diagnostic testing capacity, for example if insufficient capacity has decreased testing for other health conditions. The recipient may consider alternatives such as expanding existing laboratories or building a laboratory of a different size. In comparing the effectiveness of the capital expenditures, examples of factors that the recipient may consider include when the facilities will become operational and for how long; the daily throughput of COVID-19 tests; and the effect on minimizing delays in test results on the populations that such tests will serve. In comparing costs, the recipient may compare the total expected cost of the new laboratory (including costs of acquisition of real property, construction of the laboratory, and purchase of any necessary equipment needed to operationalize the lab), against the expected costs of expanding existing laboratories (whether by replacing current equipment with higher throughput devices or physically expanding space to accommodate additional capacity) or building a new laboratory of a different size, including by leasing property. As a reminder, recipients should only consider alternatives that are potentially effective and reasonably feasible.

Because, in all cases, uses of SLFRF funds to respond to public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic must be related and reasonably proportional to a harm caused or exacerbated by the pandemic, some capital expenditures may not be eligible. For example, constructing a new correctional facility would generally not be a proportional response to an increase in the rate of certain crimes or overall crime as most correctional facilities have historically accommodated fluctuations in occupancy.²⁵¹ In addition, construction of new congregate facilities, which would generally be expected to involve expenditures greater than \$1 million, would generally not be a proportional response to mitigate or prevent COVID-19, because such construction is generally expected to be more costly than alternative approaches or capital expenditures that may be equally or more effective in decreasing spread of

the disease.²⁵² These alternatives include personal protective equipment, ventilation improvements, utilizing excess capacity in other facilities or wings, or temporary facility capacity expansions.

Large capital expenditures intended for general economic development or to aid the travel, tourism, and hospitality industries—such as convention centers and stadiums—are, on balance, generally not reasonably proportional to addressing the negative economic impacts of the pandemic, as the efficacy of a large capital expenditure intended for general economic development in remedying pandemic harms may be very limited compared to its cost.²⁵³

Presumptions on Capital Expenditures

For administrative convenience, the final rule provides presumptions on whether a Written Justification is required—and required to be submitted to Treasury through reporting—based on the type and size of the capital expenditure, as detailed in the table below.

As discussed above, Tribal governments are not required to complete the Written Justification for applicable capital expenditures, but the associated substantive requirements continue to apply, including the requirement that a capital expenditure must be reasonably designed to benefit the individual or class that experienced the identified impact or harm and must be related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of impact or harm.

²⁵² For instance, the CDC has published detailed recommendations for nursing homes, long-term care facilities, and correctional and detention facilities, on infection prevention and control. Many of these recommendations are relatively low cost, such as proper use of PPE. In addition, increasing vaccination rates among nursing home staff is among the most important ways to decrease the spread of the disease. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Interim Infection Prevention and Control Recommendations to Prevent SARS-CoV-2 Spread in Nursing Homes (September 10, 2021), https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/hcp/long-term-care.html#anchor_1631030153017.

²⁵³ For instance, researchers have found no consistent positive relationship between building sports facilities and local economic development. As Siegfried and Zimbalist (2000, 103) write in a review of the literature, “independent work on the economic impact of stadiums and arenas has uniformly found that there is no statistically significant positive correlation between sports facility construction and economic development.” John Siegfried and Andrew Zimbalist, *The Economics of Sports Facilities and Their Communities*, *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 14, no. 3 (Summer 2000): 95–114, <https://www.aeaweb.org/articles?id=10.1257/jep.14.3.95>.

²⁵¹ See, e.g., “Economic Perspectives on Incarceration and the Criminal Justice System,” Council of Economic Advisers (April 2016), pg. 36–43.

If a project has total expected capital expenditures of	and the use is enumerated by Treasury as eligible, then ²⁵⁴	and the use is beyond those enumerated by Treasury as eligible, then ²⁵⁵
Less than \$1 million	No Written Justification required	No Written Justification required.
Greater than or equal to \$1 million, but less than \$10 million.	Written Justification required but recipients are not required to submit as part of regular reporting to Treasury.	Written Justification required and recipients must submit as part of regular reporting to Treasury.
\$10 million or more	Written Justification required and recipients must submit as part of regular reporting to Treasury.	

In selecting these thresholds, Treasury recognized that capital expenditures vary widely in size and therefore would benefit from tiered treatment to implement eligibility standards while minimizing administrative burden, especially for smaller projects. For example, Treasury selected \$1 million as a threshold for whether a recipient needs to complete a Written Justification as well as a threshold under which capital expenditures would be presumed reasonably proportional. Treasury estimates that \$1 million would encapsulate the costs of a significant portion of equipment or small renovations. These types of smaller projects are often a necessary and reasonably proportional part of a response to the public health emergency; therefore, the \$1 million threshold provides a simplified pathway to complete smaller projects more likely to meet the eligibility standard. At the same time, Treasury selected \$10 million as the threshold for more intensive reporting requirements, estimating that projects larger than \$10 million would likely constitute significant improvements or construction of mid- or large-sized facilities. As discussed above, given their scale and longer time to completion, these types of larger

projects may be less likely to be reasonably proportional responses. The \$10 million threshold also generally aligns with thresholds in other parts of the SLFRF program, such as for enhanced reporting on labor practices.

Expenditures from closely related activities directed toward a common purpose are considered part of the scope of one project. These expenditures can include capital expenditures, as well as expenditures on related programs, services, or other interventions. A project includes expenditures that are interdependent (e.g., acquisition of land, construction of the school on the land, and purchase of school equipment), or are of the same or similar type and would be utilized for a common purpose (e.g., acquisition of a fleet of ambulances that would be used for COVID-19 emergency response). Recipients must not segment a larger project into smaller projects in order to evade review. A recipient undertaking a set of identical or similar projects (e.g., development of a number of new affordable housing complexes across the recipient jurisdiction) may complete one Written Justification comprehensively addressing the entire set of projects.

Projects Enumerated as Eligible by Treasury

Under the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use category, the final rule provides a non-exclusive list of eligible uses of funding for projects that respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts. Treasury has determined that these enumerated projects are related to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts; however, recipients (other than Tribal governments) undertaking these projects with total expected capital expenditures of \$1 million or greater must still complete and meet the substantive requirements of a Written Justification as part of their demonstration that the project is a related and reasonably proportional response to the harm identified.

- *Projects with total expected capital expenditures of under \$1 million:* Treasury provides a safe harbor for

projects with total expected capital expenditures of less than \$1 million and will not require recipients to complete, submit, or meet the substantive requirements of a Written Justification for the capital expenditure. In essence, recipients may pursue an enumerated project with total expected capital expenditures of under \$1 million without having to undergo additional assessments to meet SLFRF requirements.

- *Projects with total expected capital expenditures of at least \$1 million but under \$10 million:* Recipients should complete a Written Justification for the capital expenditure and make an independent assessment of whether their proposed capital expenditure meets the substantive requirements of the Written Justification. Recipients will not be required to submit the Written Justification as part of regular reporting to Treasury but should keep documentation for their records.

- *Projects with total expected capital expenditures of at least \$10 million:* Similar to the above, recipients should complete a Written Justification of the capital expenditure and make an independent assessment of whether their proposed capital expenditure meets the substantive requirements of the Written Justification. Further, recipients will be asked to submit the Written Justification as part of regular reporting to Treasury. Similar to other parts of the SLFRF program, such as on reporting on labor practices, Treasury recognizes that projects with expected total capital expenditures of at least \$10 million may be less likely to meet eligibility requirements and therefore requires recipients to provide an enhanced level of information to Treasury.

Projects Beyond Those Enumerated as Eligible by Treasury

As with all uses, recipients that undertake capital expenditures beyond those enumerated as eligible by Treasury must meet the two-part framework under Standards: Designating a Public Health Impact and Standards: Designating a Negative Economic Impact under General Provisions: Structure and Standards,

²⁵⁴ Whether or not a Written Justification is required, recipients should still determine that the response is related and reasonably proportional to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts. Treasury recognizes that enumerated eligible uses are “related” to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts and presumed to be reasonably proportional, except recipients pursuing projects with expected total capital expenditures equal to or greater than \$1 million should still independently determine that the expenditures are a reasonably proportional response. Enumerated projects with total expected capital expenditures under \$1 million receive a safe harbor and deemed to meet the related and reasonably proportional standard.

²⁵⁵ Whether or not a Written Justification is required, recipients should still determine that the response is related and reasonably proportional to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts. Treasury presumes that projects with total expected capital expenditures under \$1 million are reasonably proportional in size to responding to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts; however, recipients should determine that the response otherwise meets the requirements of the standard, including that the response is related to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts.

including the requirement that responses are related and reasonably proportional to the harm or impact identified. As part of that assessment, these recipients may also be asked to complete a Written Justification. Recipients (other than Tribal governments) are subject to the following presumptions for the Written Justification of the capital expenditure, based on the total expected capital expenditures of the project:

- *Projects with total expected capital expenditures of under \$1 million:*

Treasury provides a safe harbor for unenumerated projects with total expected capital expenditures of under \$1 million and will not require recipients to complete, submit, or meet the substantive requirements of a Written Justification of the capital expenditure. Recipients should still make a determination as to whether the capital expenditure is part of a response that is related and reasonably proportional to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts.

- *Projects with total expected capital expenditures of \$1 million or over:*

Recipients should complete a Written Justification of the capital expenditure and make an independent assessment that their proposed capital expenditure meets the substantive requirements of the Written Justification. Further, recipients will be asked to submit the Written Justification as part of regular reporting to Treasury.

Treasury employs a risk-based approach to overall program management and monitoring, which may result in heightened scrutiny on larger projects. Accordingly, recipients pursuing projects with larger capital expenditures should complete more detailed analyses for their Written Justification, commensurate with the scale of the project.

Additional Provisions, Standards, and Definitions

Strong Labor Standards in Construction

Treasury encourages recipients to carry out projects in ways that produce high-quality work, avert disruptive and costly delays, and promote efficiency. Treasury encourages recipients to use strong labor standards, including project labor agreements (PLAs) and community benefits agreements that offer wages at or above the prevailing rate and include local hire provisions. Treasury also recommends that recipients prioritize in their procurement decisions employers who can demonstrate that their workforce meets high safety and training standards

(e.g., professional certification, licensure, and/or robust in-house training), that hire local workers and/or workers from historically underserved communities, and who directly employ their workforce or have policies and practices in place to ensure contractors and subcontractors meet high labor standards. Treasury further encourages recipients to prioritize employers (including contractors and subcontractors) without recent violations of federal and state labor and employment laws.

Treasury believes that such practices will promote effective and efficient delivery of high-quality projects and support the economic recovery through strong employment opportunities for workers. Such practices will reduce likelihood of potential project challenges like work stoppages or safety accidents, while ensuring a reliable supply of skilled labor and minimizing disruptions, such as those associated with labor disputes or workplace injuries. That will, in turn, promote on-time and on-budget delivery.

Furthermore, among other requirements contained in 2 CFR 200, Appendix II, all contracts made by a recipient or subrecipient in excess of \$100,000 with respect to a capital expenditure that involve employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with certain provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, 40 U.S.C. 3702 and 3704, as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5).

Treasury will seek information from recipients on their workforce plans and practices related to capital expenditures undertaken under the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use category with SLFRF funds. This reporting will support transparency and competition by enhancing available information on the services being provided.

Environmental, Uniform Guidance, and Other Generally Applicable Requirements

Treasury cautions that, as is the case with all projects using SLFRF funds, all projects must comply with applicable federal, state, and local law. In the case of capital expenditures in particular, this includes environmental and permitting laws and regulations. Likewise, as with all capital expenditure projects using the SLFRF funds, projects must be completed in a manner that is technically sound, meaning that it must meet design and construction methods and use materials that are approved, codified, recognized, fall under standard

or acceptable levels of practice, or otherwise are determined to be generally acceptable by the design and construction industry.

Further, as with all other uses of funds under the SLFRF program, the Uniform Guidance at 2 CFR part 200 applies to capital expenditures unless stated otherwise. Importantly, this includes 2 CFR part 200 Subpart D on post-federal award requirements, including property standards pertaining to insurance coverage, real property, and equipment; procurement standards; sub-recipient monitoring and management; and record retention and access.

Definitions

Treasury adopts several definitions from the Uniform Guidance at 2 CFR 200.1 under this section, including for capital expenditures, capital assets, equipment, and supplies.

Per the Uniform Guidance, the term “capital expenditures” means “expenditures to acquire capital assets or expenditures to make additions, improvements, modifications, replacements, rearrangements, reinstallations, renovations, or alterations to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life.” The term “capital assets” means “tangible or intangible assets used in operations having a useful life of more than one year which are capitalized in accordance with [Generally Accepted Accounting Principles].”

Capital assets include lands, facilities, equipment, and intellectual property. Equipment means “tangible personal property (including information technology systems) having a useful life of more than one year and a per-unit acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes, or \$5,000.” Supplies, which means all tangible personal property other than those included as “equipment,” are not considered capital expenditures.

Recipients may also use SLFRF funds for pre-project development costs that are tied to or reasonably expected to lead to an eligible capital expenditure. For example, pre-project costs associated with planning and engineering for an eligible project are considered an eligible use of funds.

c. Distinguishing Subrecipients Versus Beneficiaries

Under the interim final rule, state, local, and Tribal governments that receive a federal award directly from a federal awarding agency, such as Treasury, are designated as “recipients,”

and state, local, and Tribal governments are authorized to transfer funds to other entities, including private entities like nonprofits. The interim final rule stated that, “[a] transferee receiving a transfer from a recipient under sections 602(c)(3) and 603(c)(3) will be a subrecipient. Subrecipients are entities that receive a subaward from a recipient to carry out a program or project on behalf of the recipient with the recipient’s Federal award funding.”

For funds transferred to a subrecipient, the interim final rule noted that “[r]ecipients continue to be responsible for monitoring and overseeing the subrecipient’s use of SLFRF funds and other activities related to the award to ensure that the subrecipient complies with the statutory and regulatory requirements and the terms and conditions of the award. Recipients also remain responsible for reporting to Treasury on their subrecipients’ use of payments from the SLFRF funds for the duration of the award.”

Public Comment: Treasury received many comments requesting clarification about which entities qualify as subrecipients and are, in turn, subject to subrecipient monitoring and reporting requirements. For example, commenters sought clarification about whether a nonprofit that received a grant to provide services under a program to carry out an enumerated eligible use would qualify as a subrecipient and be subject to subrecipient monitoring and reporting requirements. Similarly, commenters also wondered if a nonprofit that received a grant in recognition of experiencing a negative economic impact of the public health emergency would also be a subrecipient and subject to subrecipient reporting requirements.

Treasury Response: Treasury is clarifying the distinction between a subrecipient and beneficiary in the final rule. The Uniform Guidance definitions for subaward and subrecipient inform Treasury’s distinction between subrecipients and beneficiaries.

First, per 2 CFR 200.1 of Uniform Guidance “[s]ubaward means an award provided by a pass-through entity²⁵⁶ to a subrecipient for the subrecipient to carry out part of a Federal award received by the pass-through entity. It does not include payments to a contractor or payments to an individual that is a beneficiary of a Federal program. A subaward may be provided through any form of legal agreement,

including an agreement that the pass-through entity considers a contract.”

Further, 2 CFR 200.1 of the Uniform Guidance defines a subrecipient, in that “[s]ubrecipient means an entity, usually but not limited to non-Federal entities, that receives a subaward from a pass-through entity to carry out part of a Federal award; but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such award. A subrecipient may also be a recipient of other Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency.” Treasury is aligning the definition of subrecipient in the final rule with the definition of subrecipient in the Uniform Guidance.

Treasury is maintaining the monitoring and subrecipient reporting requirements outlined in the final rule. Per 2 CFR 200.101 (b)(2) of the Uniform Guidance, the terms and conditions of federal awards flow down to subawards to subrecipients. Therefore, non-federal entities, as defined in the Uniform Guidance, must comply with the applicable requirements in the Uniform Guidance regardless of whether the non-federal entity is a recipient or subrecipient of a federal award. This includes requirements such as the treatment of eligible uses of funds, procurement, and reporting requirements.

The Uniform Guidance definitions for both subaward and subrecipient specify that payments to individuals or entities that are direct beneficiaries of a federal award are not considered subrecipients. The final rule adopts this definition of a beneficiary and outlines that households, communities, small businesses, nonprofits, and impacted industries are all potential beneficiaries of projects carried out with SLFRF funds. Beneficiaries are not subject to the requirements placed on subrecipients in the Uniform Guidance, including audit pursuant to the Single Audit Act and 2 CFR part 200, subpart F or subrecipient reporting requirements.

The distinction between a subrecipient and a beneficiary, therefore, is contingent upon the rationale for why a recipient is providing funds to the individual or entity. If the recipient is providing funds to the individual or entity for the purpose of carrying out a SLFRF program or project on behalf of the recipient, the individual or entity is acting as a subrecipient. Acting as a subrecipient, the individual or entity is subject to subrecipient monitoring and reporting requirements. Conversely, if the recipient is providing funds to the individual or entity for the purpose of directly benefitting the individual or

entity as a result of experiencing a public health impact or negative economic impact of the pandemic, the individual or entity is acting as a beneficiary. Acting as a beneficiary, the individual or entity is not subject to subrecipient monitoring and reporting requirements.

d. Uses Outside the Scope of This Category

Summary of the Interim Final Rule and Final Rule Structure

In the interim final rule, Treasury noted that certain uses of funds are not permissible under the eligible use category of responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. In the final rule, these uses remain impermissible, but Treasury has re-categorized where they are addressed to increase clarity.

Specifically, the interim final rule provided that the following uses of funds are not eligible under this eligible use category: Contributions to rainy day funds, financial reserves, or similar funds; payment of interest or principal on outstanding debt instruments; fees or issuance costs associated with the issuance of new debt; and satisfaction of any obligation arising under or pursuant to a settlement agreement, judgment, consent decree, or judicially confirmed debt restructuring plan in a judicial, administrative, or regulatory proceeding, except to the extent the judgment or settlement requires the provision of services that would respond to the COVID-19 public health emergency. These uses of funds remain ineligible under the final rule; Treasury has re-categorized these issues to the section Restrictions on Use, which describes restrictions that apply to all eligible use categories, to clarify that these uses are not eligible under any eligible use category of SLFRF. Treasury responds to public comments on this issue in the section Restrictions on Use.

As noted above, the interim final rule also posed several questions on what other types of services or costs Treasury should consider as eligible uses to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of COVID-19, including in disproportionately impacted communities. In this section, Treasury addresses proposed uses of funds suggested by commenters that Treasury has not included as enumerated eligible uses of funds in this eligible use category.

General Eligible Uses

Public Comment: Commenters proposed a wide variety of additional recommended enumerated eligible uses

²⁵⁶ In this context, a pass-through entity means a recipient of SLFRF funds.

in all sections of the public health and negative economic impacts eligible use category, including in impacted and disproportionately impacted communities. The proposed additional uses included general categories of services (e.g., legal and social services, long-term investments to remediate long-term disparities, response to natural disasters). Other suggested uses of funds respond to needs widely experienced across the country (e.g., access to and affordability of health insurance). Finally, other suggested uses of funds were highly specific (e.g., healthcare equipment for a specific health condition, fire hydrants, weather alert systems) or most applicable to the particularized needs to certain populations or geographic areas of the United States (e.g., senior citizens, immigrants, formerly incarcerated individuals, responding to environmental issues in certain geographic regions). Other commenters generally requested a high degree of flexibility to respond to the particular needs of their communities.

Treasury Response: Given the large number and diversity of SLFRF recipients, Treasury has aimed to include as enumerated eligible uses programs, services, and capital expenditures that respond to public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic experienced widely in many jurisdictions across the country, making it clear and simple for recipients to pursue these enumerated eligible uses under the final rule. This provides enumerated eligible uses that many recipients may want to pursue, while including uses that are responsive to the pandemic's impacts across the diverse range of SLFRF recipients. In the final rule, Treasury has clarified several additional uses that generally respond to pandemic impacts experienced broadly across jurisdictions and populations.

Treasury has not chosen to include as enumerated uses all uses proposed by commenters; given the significant range, and in some cases highly specific nature, of the proposed uses Treasury was not able to assess that the proposed uses would respond to negative economic impacts experienced generally across the country, supporting an enumerated eligible use available to all recipients presumptively.

However, Treasury emphasizes that the enumerated eligible uses are non-exhaustive and that other uses, beyond those enumerated, are eligible. Treasury recognizes that the impacts of the pandemic vary over time, by jurisdiction, and by population; as such, the final rule provides flexibility for

recipients to identify other public health or negative economic impacts to additional households, small businesses, or nonprofits, including classes of these entities, and pursue programs and services that respond to those impacts. Treasury also notes that some populations are presumed to be impacted or disproportionately impacted by the pandemic, and thus eligible for responsive services; these presumed eligible populations may encompass many individuals in the specific populations for whom commenters recommended services. For details on these issues, see section General Provisions: Structure and Standards.

Infrastructure, Community Development, and General Economic Development

Some potential additions to enumerated eligible uses were also recommended by several commenters each but are not included as enumerated eligible uses in the final rule.

Public Comment: Infrastructure: In the interim final rule, Treasury noted that a “general infrastructure project, for example, typically would not be included [in this eligible use category] unless the project responded to a specific pandemic public health need.”

Numerous commenters requested that Treasury permit investments in infrastructure as a response to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. While these comments most commonly recommended that constructing and maintaining roads and surface transportation infrastructure be eligible, the proposed uses for infrastructure ranged widely and included parking lots, bridges, traffic management infrastructure, solid waste disposal facilities, and utility infrastructure (outside of water, sewer, and broadband).

Many commenters argued that infrastructure development and maintenance is a pressing need in their communities and that their communities had less need for water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure or other eligible uses to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. Other commenters argued that these uses would stimulate the economy, attract businesses, or allow for tourist movement; these commenters argued that, by generally supporting a stronger economy or facilitating conditions that are more conducive to business activity and tourism, these uses respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining the approach under the interim final rule that general infrastructure projects, including roads, streets, and surface transportation infrastructure, would generally not be eligible, unless the project responded to a specific pandemic public health need or a specific negative economic impact.

The ARPA expressly includes infrastructure if it is “necessary” and in water, sewer, or broadband, suggesting that the statute contemplates only those types of infrastructure. Further, responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic requires identifying whether, and the extent to which, there has been a harm that resulted from the COVID-19 public health emergency and whether, and the extent to which, the use would respond or address this harm. Uses of funds intended to generally grow the economy and therefore enhance opportunities for workers and businesses would not be an eligible use, because such assistance is not reasonably designed to impact individuals or classes that have been identified as having experienced a negative economic impact. In other words, there is not a reasonable connection between the assistance provided and an impact on the beneficiaries. Such an activity would be attenuated from and thus not reasonably designed to benefit the households that experienced the negative economic impact.

Note, however, that Treasury has clarified that capital expenditures that are related and reasonably proportional to responding to the public health and economic impacts of the pandemic are eligible uses of funds, in addition to programs and services; for details on eligibility criteria for capital expenditures, see section Capital Expenditures in General Provisions: Other.

Public Comment: Community Development Block Grant: Several commenters recommended that Treasury enumerate as eligible uses those eligible under the Department of Housing and Urban Development's Community Development Block Grant (CDBG) or the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, which established the CDBG program. Commenters requested that these uses be eligible either to respond to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic, or in the alternate the disproportionate negative economic impacts of the pandemic in certain communities. Under the CDBG program, recipient governments may undertake a wide range of community and economic

development services and projects. Commenters reasoned that many state and local governments are familiar with this program, and that aligning to its eligible uses may help recipients easily understand and pursue eligible projects. Commenters also noted that Treasury had chosen to align with existing federal programs in other eligible use categories, namely water infrastructure, in the interim final rule.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is not including all categories of projects permissible under CDBG as enumerated eligible uses to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. Because CDBG permits such a broad range of activities, including services to individual households, communities, small businesses, general economic development activities, and capital expenditures, Treasury determined that it was more appropriate to assess the underlying types of projects eligible within CDBG and whether each type of project responds to the negative economic impacts of the pandemic. In other words, Treasury considered whether various types of community and economic development projects respond to the impacts of the pandemic in different communities and circumstances. In the final rule, Treasury addresses the eligibility of these various types of projects in each relevant eligible use category within public health and negative economic impacts under SLFRF, including assistance for impacted households, disproportionately impacted households, disproportionately impacted small businesses, and capital expenditures.

Public Comment: General Economic Development: Treasury provided guidance following the interim final rule that general economic development or workforce development would generally not be eligible as it does not respond to a negative economic impact of the COVID-19 public health emergency.

Some commenters recommended that Treasury expand enumerated eligible uses to include general economic development activities, beyond those that respond to negative economic impacts of the pandemic, such as creating an economic development strategy for the jurisdiction's overall economic growth, creating a general workforce development strategy, or providing funds to businesses that did not experience negative economic impacts to carry out economic development activities or to incentivize the addition or retention of jobs. Commenters supportive of assistance to

businesses for general economic development activities argued that subsidies to businesses increase job growth and that, in some cases, assistance to companies that excelled during the public health emergency would help create more job opportunities for workers or expand the jurisdiction's tax base and produce funds to support government services. In contrast, other commenters argued that academic research consistently finds that economic development subsidies have a negligible, or even negative, economic effect, citing research findings to this effect.²⁵⁷

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury maintains the interim final rule's approach that general economic development or workforce development, meaning activities that do not respond to negative economic impacts of the pandemic and rather seek to more generally enhance the jurisdiction's business climate, would generally not be eligible under this eligible use category. As noted above, to identify an eligible use of funds under this category, a recipient must identify a beneficiary or class of beneficiaries that experienced a harm or impact due to the pandemic, and eligible uses of funds must be

reasonably designed to respond to the harm, benefit the beneficiaries that experienced it, and be related and reasonably proportional to that harm or impact.

As noted above, recipients should analyze eligible uses based on the beneficiary of the assistance, and recipients may not provide assistance to small businesses or impacted industries that did not experience a negative economic impact. Provision of assistance to a business that did not experience a negative economic impact, under the theory that such assistance would generally grow the economy and therefore enhance opportunities for workers, would not be an eligible use, because such assistance is not reasonably designed to impact individuals or classes that have been identified as having experienced a negative economic impact. In other words, there is not a reasonable connection between the assistance provided and an impact on the beneficiaries. Such an activity would be attenuated from and thus not reasonably designed to benefit the households that experienced the negative economic impact. Research cited by some commenters finding that business subsidies have limited or negative economic impact also suggests that such a response may not be reasonably designed to benefit households and other entities impacted by the pandemic. Similarly, planning activities for an economic development or workforce strategy regarding general future economic growth do not provide a program, service, or capital expenditure that responds to negative economic impacts of the pandemic.

However, Treasury notes that the final rule includes as enumerated eligible uses many types of assistance that respond to negative economic impacts of the pandemic and may produce economic development benefits. For example, see sections Assistance to Unemployed Workers, Assistance to Small Businesses, and Capital Expenditures.

B. Premium Pay

Background and Summary of the Interim Final Rule

Sections 602(c)(1)(B) and 603(c)(1)(B) of the Social Security Act, as added by the ARPA, provide that SLFRF funds may be used "to respond to workers performing essential work during the COVID-19 public health emergency by providing premium pay to eligible workers of the . . . government that are performing such essential work, or by providing grants to eligible employers

²⁵⁷ See, e.g., Matthew D. Mitchell et al., *The Economics of a Targeted Economic Development Subsidy* (Arlington, VA: Mercatus Center at George Mason University, 2019), 5, available at <https://www.mercatus.org/publications/government-spending/economics-targeted-economic-development-subsidy>; Timothy J. Bartik, *Who Benefits from Economic Development Incentives? How Incentive Effects on Local Incomes and the Income Distribution Vary with Different Assumptions about Incentive Policy and the Local Economy* (Upjohn Institute Technical Report No. 13-034, W.E. Upjohn Institute for Employment Research, March 1, 2018), available at https://research.upjohn.org/up_technicalreports/34/; Cailin Slattery and Owen Zidar, *Evaluating State and Local Business Tax Incentives*, *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 34, no. 2 (2020): 90-118, available at <https://www.aeaweb.org/articles?id=10.1257/jep.34.2.90>; Kenneth Thomas, *The State of State and Local Subsidies to Business* (Mercatus Policy Brief, Mercatus Center at George Mason University, Arlington, VA, October 2019), available at https://www.mercatus.org/system/files/thomas_-_policy_brief_-_the_state_of_state_and_local_subsidies_to_business_-_v1.pdf; Dennis Coates, *Growth Effects of Sports Franchises, Stadiums, and Arenas: 15 Years Later* (Mercatus Working Paper, Mercatus Center at George Mason University, Arlington, VA, September 2015), available at <https://www.mercatus.org/system/files/Coates-Sports-Franchises.pdf>; Dennis Coates and Brad R. Humphreys, *Do Economists Reach a Conclusion on Subsidies for Sports Franchises, Stadiums, and Mega-Events?*, *Econ Journal Watch* 5, no. 3 (2008): 294-315, available at <https://econjwatch.org/articles/do-economists-reach-a-conclusion-on-subsidies-for-sports-franchises-stadiums-and-mega-events>; Matthew D. Mitchell, Daniel Sutter, and Scott Eastman, *The Political Economy of Targeted Economic Development Incentives*, *Review of Regional Studies* 48, no. 1 (2018): 1-9, available at <https://www.mercatus.org/publications/corporate-welfare/political-economy-targeted-economic-development-incentives>.

that have eligible workers who perform essential work.”

Premium pay is designed to compensate workers that, by virtue of their employment, were forced to take on additional burdens and make great personal sacrifices as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic. Premium pay can be thought of as hazard pay by another name.²⁵⁸

During the public health emergency, employers' policies on COVID-19-related premium pay or hazard pay have varied widely, with many essential workers not yet compensated for the heightened risks they have faced and continue to face.²⁵⁹ Many of these workers earn lower wages on average and live in socioeconomically underserved communities as compared to the general population.²⁶⁰ A recent study found that 25 percent of essential workers were estimated to have low household income, with 13 percent in high-risk households.²⁶¹ The low pay of many essential workers makes them less able to cope with the financial consequences of the pandemic or their work-related health risks. As Americans return to work and governments relax certain rules, essential workers will continue to bear the brunt of the risk of maintaining the ongoing operation of vital facilities and services. The added health risk to essential workers is one prominent way in which the pandemic has amplified pre-existing socioeconomic inequities. Premium pay is designed to address the disparity between the critical services provided by and the risks taken by essential workers and the relatively low compensation they tend to receive.

The interim final rule established a three-part framework for recipients seeking to use SLFRF funds for premium pay. First, to receive premium pay one must be an eligible worker. Second, an eligible worker must also perform essential work. Finally, premium pay must respond to workers performing essential work during the COVID-19 public health emergency. Most of the comments received by Treasury pertaining to premium pay related to these three requirements. Comments also addressed the definition of premium pay generally and posed

questions regarding premium pay program structuring. This section responds to the comments by addressing the three requirements in turn, then the overall definition of premium pay and, finally, program structure.

Eligible Workers

The ARPA defines “eligible workers” as “those workers needed to maintain continuity of operations of essential critical infrastructure sectors and additional sectors as each . . . [government] may designate as critical to protect the health and wellbeing of [its] residents.” The interim final rule supplemented this definition by identifying a list of “essential critical infrastructure sectors” whose workers are eligible workers, based on the list of sectors in the HEROES Act, a bill introduced in the House of Representatives in 2020 that would have provided premium pay to essential workers.²⁶² In addition to the critical infrastructure sectors defined in the interim final rule, the chief executive (or equivalent) of a recipient government may designate additional non-public²⁶³ sectors as critical so long as doing so is necessary to protecting the health and wellbeing of the residents of such jurisdiction.

Public Comment: Treasury received multiple comments on the definition of “eligible worker” included in the interim final rule. Many commenters agreed with the definition of eligible worker adopted by Treasury. Other commenters sought clarification about or changes to the definition of eligible worker, including the definition of eligible sectors, the inclusion of government workers in the definition of eligible workers, and the process for designating additional non-public sectors as eligible.

Some commenters asked Treasury to change how it identifies eligible sectors, including suggestions to add to or subtract from the list of eligible sectors. For example, some commenters asked Treasury to consider using Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS)-Standard Occupational Classifications to identify specific sectors or occupations, in contrast to the approach taken in the interim final rule, which included a mixture of economic sectors, industries, and occupations. Many commenters asked Treasury to explicitly clarify that a particular industry or occupation is covered by the definition of “essential critical infrastructure sector.” Some of

these commenters represented public employees, e.g., employees of facilities and public works; public utilities; courthouse employees; police, fire, and emergency medical services; and waste and wastewater services. Others were a mixture of public and private sector employees, e.g., coroners and medical examiners; transportation infrastructure (specifically electric vehicle infrastructure and supply equipment); electric utilities, natural gas, and steam supply; and grocery employees. Other commenters requested that Treasury prohibit certain occupations currently included in the eligible workers definition (e.g., police and corrections officers) from receiving premium pay for performance of regular duties.

Commenters also asked Treasury to clarify which government workers are included in the definition of eligible workers. The interim final rule included as an essential critical infrastructure sector, “any work performed by an employee of a State, local, or Tribal government.” Some commenters requested that Treasury adopt a definition of eligible worker that includes all employees of the recipient government; however, all public employees of state, local, and Tribal governments are already included in the interim final rule definition of “eligible worker.” Commenters asked whether this includes governments that did not receive SLFRF funds (i.e., “non recipient governments”). Many commenters from Tribal governments requested that the definition of eligible worker, which includes “any work performed by an employee of a . . . Tribal government,” also include an employee of a “Tribal enterprise” to remove uncertainty regarding which employees are included.

Finally, commenters made suggestions for the process by which the chief executive (or equivalent) of a recipient government may designate additional non-public sectors as critical. Commenters asked that Treasury adopt a requirement that Treasury must approve or deny any additional non-public sector identified by the chief executive of a recipient government prior to implementation of the recipient's program.

Some commenters asked Treasury to clarify whether their chief executive (or equivalent) could designate particular, and in some cases *all*, employees of the recipient government as eligible for premium pay.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury will preserve the definition of “eligible worker” as it was defined in the interim final rule with minor modifications to clarify that all public

²⁵⁸ See U.S. Department of Labor, *Hazard Pay*, <https://www.dol.gov/general/topic/wages/hazardpay> (last visited October 18, 2021).

²⁵⁹ Economic Policy Institute, Only 30% of those working outside their home are receiving hazard pay (June 16, 2020), <https://www.epi.org/press/only-30-of-those-working-outside-their-home-are-receiving-hazard-pay-black-and-hispanic-workers-are-most-concerned-about-bringing-the-coronavirus-home/>.

²⁶⁰ McCormack, *supra* note 65.

²⁶¹ *Id.*

²⁶² See H.R. 6800, 116th Cong. (2020).

²⁶³ Note that the sectors defined in the interim final rule already include all state, local, and Tribal government employees.

employees of recipient governments are already included in the interim final rule definition of “eligible worker.” A more specific eligibility system (e.g., linking eligibility to specific occupational or industry codes) would have provided more certainty but would have been much more rigid. In contrast, the current definition is flexible enough to give recipients the ability to tailor their premium pay programs to meet their needs while ensuring that programs focus on sectors where workers were forced to shoulder substantial risk as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic. Furthermore, the critical infrastructure sectors defined in the interim final rule already include many of the occupations that commenters requested be added. For example, Treasury received many comments from public workers asking to be included in the definition of “eligible worker” even though these workers already fall within the scope of “any work performed by an employee of a State, local, or Tribal government.” Treasury has clarified in the final rule that the chief executive’s discretion to designate additional sectors as critical relates only to “non-public” sectors, since all public employees of recipient governments are already included in the definition of “eligible worker.” While all such public employees are “eligible workers” and the chief executive (or equivalent) of a recipient government may designate additional non-public sectors as critical, in order to receive premium pay, these workers must still meet the other premium pay requirements (e.g., performing essential work).

Treasury recognizes that the list of “essential critical infrastructure sectors” includes both occupations and sectors. Recipients, if uncertain which occupations are included in a critical infrastructure sector, may consult government occupational classifications if helpful but are not required to do so.²⁶⁴ Furthermore, a recipient government does not need to submit to Treasury for approval its designation of a sector as essential critical infrastructure; rather, Treasury will defer to the reasonable interpretation of the recipient government and the discretion of the recipient’s chief executive in making such designations. If a recipient is unsure if a non-public sector is covered by the definition in the

final rule,²⁶⁵ the chief executive (or equivalent) of a recipient government may also identify the non-public sector as critical so long as the chief executive deems the non-public sector necessary to protecting the health and wellbeing of residents. Treasury has, where possible, clarified the definition of “essential critical infrastructure sectors.” For instance, Treasury has clarified in the final rule that work performed by an employee of a Tribal government includes an employee of a Tribal enterprise and discussed in this Supplementary Information how a recipient may qualify other non-public sectors as essential critical infrastructure.

Essential Work

The interim final rule defined “essential work” as work that (1) is not performed while teleworking from a residence and (2) involves either (i) regular, in-person interactions with patients, the public, or coworkers of the individual that is performing the work or (ii) regular physical handling of items that were handled by, or are to be handled by, patients, the public, or coworkers of the individual that is performing the work. Treasury adopted this definition of essential work to ensure that premium pay is targeted to workers that faced or face heightened risks due to the character of their work during a pandemic.

Public Comment: Some commenters found the definition unclear and asked Treasury to clarify what constitutes “essential work.” Others disagreed with the essential work test altogether, arguing that it forces recipients to distinguish between essential and non-essential employees, which may be difficult to do. Accordingly, these commenters asked Treasury to allow recipients to determine which workers qualify as essential. Treasury also received several requests that specific occupations be explicitly deemed essential, including all public employees, veterinarians, election administrators, detention staff and sheriff’s deputies, and employees of utilities, such as electric power, natural gas, steam supply, water supply, and sewage removal.

Several commenters requested that Treasury not distinguish between remote and in-person work or amend the standard so that employees providing essential services would still be eligible even if they worked remotely. Finally, a few commenters requested clarification as to the

definition of “regular” in-person interactions and whether Treasury could clarify which job functions merit more (or less) premium pay.

Treasury Response: Treasury is maintaining the definition of “essential work” in the final rule without modification. The test adopted in the interim final rule was designed to compensate workers facing disproportionate risk due to the pandemic. COVID-19 is transmitted through person-to-person interactions, and therefore, workers with regular in-person interactions are the primary group facing increased health risks. Although COVID-19 is not transmitted primarily by people handling items, such work may present increased risk in certain cases, and the final rule maintains the interim final rule’s inclusion of such work in order to give recipient governments the flexibility to include workers performing such work as they determine appropriate. Changing the test as some commenters suggested, e.g., by eliminating the in-person work requirement or allowing recipients to designate which employees are essential, even if not working in person, would no longer focus the program on workers taking on additional health risks and instead allow premium pay to be awarded to individuals who experienced relatively little risk of exposure to COVID-19. To maintain flexibility, Treasury is not defining the term “regular” with regard to in-person interactions, allowing recipients to develop programs based on the specific workforce to be served and local circumstances. Generally speaking, however, recipients are encouraged to consider an eligible worker’s risk of exposure in designing premium pay programs.

Respond To

As required by the ARPA, the interim final rule required that premium pay programs “respond to” eligible workers performing essential work during the COVID-19 public health emergency. Premium pay responds to eligible workers performing essential work if it prioritizes low- and moderate-income persons, given the significant share of essential workers that are low- and moderate-income and may be least able to bear added costs associated with illness. The level of the award limit—up to \$13 per hour not to exceed \$25,000 in aggregate—in the ARPA supports this reasoning.

Accordingly, the interim final rule required written justification for how premium pay to certain higher-income workers responds to eligible workers performing essential work: If a recipient

²⁶⁴ See, e.g., sources such as Bureau of Labor Statistics, Occupational Outlook Handbook, which provide information on which professions or occupations are typically included in interpretations of a sector, <https://www.bls.gov/ooh/>.

²⁶⁵ Public sector workers are “eligible workers” under the interim final rule and final rule.

(or grantee) uses SLFRF funds to provide premium pay to an employee and the pay or grant would increase a worker's total pay above 150 percent of their residing state or county's average annual wage for all occupations, as defined by the BLS Occupational Employment and Wage Statistics, whichever is higher, on an annual basis, then the recipient must provide, whether for themselves or on behalf of a grantee, written justification to Treasury detailing how the award responds to eligible workers performing essential work.

Public Comment: Treasury received numerous comments on the wage threshold and the written justification requirement. Several commenters supported the threshold as a way to encourage recipients to target premium pay to lower-income, eligible workers. Some commenters even asked Treasury to make the wage threshold a firm restriction, above which an eligible worker could not receive premium pay. Others agreed with the threshold but also requested flexibility to use existing worker classifications as an administratively simple way to identify workers for whom premium pay would be responsive. For instance, a few commenters asked Treasury to allow recipients or grantees to presume that premium pay “responds to” eligible workers performing essential work when it is provided to employees who are not exempt from the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA) overtime provisions—a test that employers are routinely required to apply.²⁶⁶

In contrast, several commenters disagreed with the threshold and the requirement for written justification. A few commenters thought the threshold was too low to capture employees in certain critical infrastructure sectors (e.g., public safety, waste collection) and that it did not sufficiently account for the variance in economic need across different geographic areas and family structures. Some smaller communities argued that the threshold was difficult to calculate and apply.

Other commenters proposed revisions for how the threshold is calculated. For instance, a few commenters asked Treasury to consider using alternative earnings measures such as median income. Similarly, another commenter asked Treasury to consider the incomes of workers with different levels of seniority in developing any income

thresholds for permitting or reporting on premium pay.

Finally, there was also some uncertainty as to the threshold and the requirement for written justification. Some commenters interpreted the threshold as a hard cap on who was eligible for premium pay, which is not the case. Relatedly, some commenters also requested further guidance on what recipients should include in the written justification submitted to the Secretary.

Treasury Response: The final rule makes some modifications to the determination of when premium pay “responds to” eligible workers performing essential work during the public health emergency. Under the interim final rule, premium pay was responsive if either the workers’ pay was below a wage threshold or, if the pay was above a wage threshold, the recipient submitted written justification to Treasury explaining how the premium pay was responsive. The final rule retains these two means of establishing premium pay in response to workers performing essential work and adds an additional means of demonstrating that premium pay is responsive. Under the final rule, a recipient may also show that premium pay is responsive by demonstrating that the eligible worker receiving premium pay is not exempt from the FLSA overtime provisions.²⁶⁷ This change will expand the number of workers eligible to receive premium pay²⁶⁸ and does not require recipients to provide written justification to Treasury regarding the workers who are not exempt from the FLSA overtime provisions, making the program easier to administer for recipients. Incorporating this change further simplifies application of the

final rule for recipients because Treasury understands that most employers, public and private, are familiar with and are routinely required to apply the FLSA.

With this addition, the final rule provides that premium pay is responsive to eligible workers performing essential work during the public health emergency if each eligible worker who receives premium pay falls into one of three categories: (1) The worker's pay is below the wage threshold, (2) the worker is not exempt from the FLSA overtime provisions, or (3) the recipient has submitted a written justification to Treasury.

The final rule makes it clear that written justification to Treasury is not necessary with respect to eligible workers whose pay is less than the wage threshold. Nor is written justification necessary with respect to eligible workers who are not exempt from the FLSA overtime provisions. The written justification is only necessary if the worker's pay (with or without the premium) exceeds the threshold, and the worker is exempt from the FLSA overtime provisions. The final rule also clarifies that a worker's pay exceeds the threshold if either the premium pay increases the worker's total pay above the wage threshold or the worker's total pay was already above the threshold, before receiving premium pay.

Treasury has also updated the final rule to clarify that written justification means a brief, written narrative justification of how the premium pay or grant is responsive to workers performing essential work during the public health emergency. This could include a description of the essential workers’ duties, health or financial risks faced due to COVID-19, and why the recipient determined that the premium pay was responsive despite the workers’ higher income.

Recipients should refer to SLFRF program reporting guidance, user guides, and other documentation for further guidance on the form and content of the written justification. Treasury anticipates that recipients will easily be able to satisfy the justification requirement for front-line workers, like nurses and hospital staff.

Definition of Premium Pay

The statute defines premium pay as “an amount of up to \$13 per hour . . . , in addition to wages or remuneration the eligible worker otherwise receives, for all work performed by the eligible worker during the COVID-19 public health emergency. Such amount may not exceed \$25,000 with respect to any single eligible worker.” The interim

²⁶⁷ Department of Labor, Overtime Pay, <https://www.dol.gov/agencies/whd/overtime>; see also 29 U.S.C. 207.

²⁶⁸ Among workers that report working overtime, roughly 41–44 percent of workers earn above \$50,000 per year, which is slightly less than the national average annual wage for all employees according to the Bureau of Labor Statistics’ Occupational Employment and Wage Statistics, available at <https://www.bls.gov/oes/>. See also U.S. Census Bureau, Basic Monthly CPS, January 2019 through December 2019, available at <https://www.census.gov/data/datasets/time-series/demo/cps/cps-basic.html>. Notes: Annual earnings reflect weekly wages multiplied by 52. Usual weekly earnings are computed by BLS to include earnings from work such as tips, overtime, regular wages, etc., but not non-labor sources of income such as government transfers and capital gains. Pre-overtime earnings are computed by taking the difference of usual weekly earnings and earnings from overtime last week and multiplying by 52. Note, some sources multiply weekly earnings by 50 instead of 52 to account for unpaid time off and holidays, so these figures may be slightly larger than those reported elsewhere. Either assumption may overestimate earnings if workers do not work year-round.

²⁶⁶ See generally 29 U.S.C. 207(a); U.S. Department of Labor, Overtime Pay Requirements of the FLSA (Fact Sheet No. 23), <https://www.dol.gov/agencies/whd/fact-sheets/23-flsa-overtime-pay>.

final rule incorporated this definition and emphasized that premium pay should be in addition to compensation typically received.

Public Comment: Several submitted comments related to the definition of “premium pay.” Several commenters asked Treasury to clarify certain aspects of the interim final rule and statutory definition of premium pay. For instance, a few commenters asked whether the \$25,000 limit applies to the annual amount of premium pay received or the aggregate amount of premium pay received over the period of performance. A few commenters requested flexibility as to how premium pay may be awarded, including flexibility to make monthly or quarterly payments or lump sum payments. Finally, commenters requested additional clarification as to how premium pay should be calculated. For instance, a commenter asked how to calculate the amount of and account for overtime pay and other incentive pay.²⁶⁹

Treasury Response: Treasury has clarified some of these issues in the final rule. For example, Treasury has clarified in the final rule that the \$25,000 per employee limit is for the entire period of performance, not an annual cap. Further, recipients have discretion with respect to the way in which premium pay is awarded to eligible workers (e.g., monthly, quarterly, lump sum), provided that the total premium pay awarded to any eligible worker does not exceed \$13 per hour or \$25,000 over the period of performance. Finally, a recipient may award premium pay to an eligible worker in addition to the overtime pay already earned by the eligible worker but in no instance may the portion of the compensation funded with SLFRF funds exceed \$13 per hour, even if strict time-and-a-half calculation requires more.²⁷⁰ To the extent that an employer is required under the FLSA to make payments to an eligible worker in excess of \$13 per hour or \$25,000 in the aggregate over the period of performance, the employer must use a source of funding other than the SLFRF funds to satisfy those obligations.

Program Structure

Public Comment: Several commenters also requested elaboration on eligible

types of employees and permissible structures for awarding premium pay. A few commenters asked if premium pay could be awarded to volunteers or those in irregular and non-hourly or salaried employment positions. Similarly, various commenters asked if part-time workers were eligible for premium pay.

Some commenters asked Treasury to provide more detail on when premium pay may be paid retroactively or if a government could reimburse its general fund for hazard pay already paid before the start of the period of performance.

Treasury Response: Treasury has also made clear in the final rule that a recipient may award premium pay to non-hourly or salaried workers as well as part-time workers. Premium pay may not, however, be awarded to volunteers. If a recipient is interested in compensating volunteers with SLFRF funds, then it must do so consistent with the requirements set forth in other eligible use categories; for example, see section Public Sector Capacity and Workforce in Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts.

Under the final rule, recipients may award premium pay retroactively; however, SLFRF funds may not be used to reimburse a recipient or eligible employer grantee for premium pay or hazard pay already received by the employee. To make retroactive premium payments funded with SLFRF funds, a recipient or eligible employer grantee must make a new cash outlay for the premium payments and the payments must be in addition to any wages or remuneration the eligible worker already received, subject to the other requirements and limitations set forth in the ARPA and this final rule.

Finally, as part of accepting the Award Terms and Conditions for SLFRF, each recipient agreed to maintain a conflict-of-interest policy consistent with 2 CFR 200.318(c) that is applicable to all activities funded with the SLFRF award. This award term requires recipients and subrecipients to report to Treasury or the pass-through agency, as appropriate, any potential conflict of interest related to the award funds per 2 CFR 200.112. Pursuant to this policy, decisions concerning SLFRF funds must be free of undisclosed personal or organizational conflicts of interest, both in fact and in appearance. Consistent with this policy, elected officials are prohibited from using their official position and control over SLFRF funds for their own private gain. This policy also prohibits, among other things, elected officials from steering funds to projects in which they have a financial interest or using funds to pay themselves premium pay.

C. Revenue Loss

Background

Sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C) of the Social Security Act provide that SLFRF funds may be used “for the provision of government services to the extent of the reduction in revenue of such . . . government due to the COVID-19 public health emergency relative to revenues collected in the most recent full fiscal year of the . . . government prior to the emergency.” This provision allows recipients experiencing budget shortfalls to use payments from the SLFRF funds to avoid cuts to government services and, thus, enables state, local, and Tribal governments to continue to provide valuable services and ensures that fiscal austerity measures do not hamper the broader economic recovery.

State and local government budgets experienced stress in fiscal year 2020 as delayed tax filings and pandemic-related business closures caused revenues to decline sharply.²⁷¹ Twenty-two state governments took actions to close budget gaps in fiscal year 2020²⁷² and nearly 80 percent of cities reported being less able to meet the fiscal needs of their communities relative to fiscal year 2019.²⁷³ Surveys of Tribal governments and Tribal enterprises conducted in 2020 found majorities of respondents reporting substantial cost increases and revenue decreases, with Tribal governments reporting reductions in health care, housing, social services, and economic development activities as a result of reduced revenues.²⁷⁴

The economic recovery, aided by the broad distribution of COVID-19 vaccines and the deployment of federal stimulus, has led to a strong rebound in total state and local government revenue and is contributing to a brighter fiscal

²⁷¹ In the second quarter of 2020, quarterly state and local tax revenues as reported by the U.S. Census Bureau fell 19 percent compared to the second quarter of 2019; U.S. Census Bureau, Quarterly Summary of State and Local Tax Revenue, <https://www.census.gov/programs-surveys/qtax.html>.

²⁷² National Association of State Budget Officers, Fiscal Survey of the States (Fall 2020), available at https://higherlogicdownload.s3.amazonaws.com/NASBO/9d2d2db1-c943-4f1b-b750-0fca152d64c2/UploadedImages/Fiscal%20Survey/NASBO_Fall_2020_Fiscal_Survey_of_States_S.pdf.

²⁷³ National League of Cities, City Fiscal Conditions (2020), available at https://www.nlc.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/City_Fiscal_Conditions_2020_FINAL.pdf.

²⁷⁴ Surveys conducted by the Center for Indian Country Development at the Federal Reserve Bank of Minneapolis in March, April, and September 2020. Elijah Moreno & Heather Sobrepna, Tribal entities remain resilient as COVID-19 batters their finances, Federal Reserve Bank of Minneapolis (Nov. 10, 2020), <https://www.minneapolisfed.org/article/2020/tribal-entities-remain-resilient-as-covid-19-batters-their-finances>.

²⁶⁹ See 29 U.S.C. 207(a) (“[A]t a rate not less than one and one-half times the regular rate at which he is employed.”).

²⁷⁰ All recipients are required to comply with otherwise applicable laws, including any wage and hour requirements in the Fair Labor Standards Act. See generally, Department of Labor, *Wages and the Fair Labor Standards Act*, <https://www.dol.gov/agencies/whd/flsa>.

outlook for most jurisdictions as compared to the earlier months of the public health emergency. For the fiscal year ending June 30, 2021, total state and local government tax revenues increased 21 percent relative to the same period in 2020, reflecting the combined impact of the modified tax filing deadline in 2020 and an improving economy.²⁷⁵ However, despite a stable budget situation overall, many governments face uncertainty as the COVID-19 pandemic continues to impact commuting patterns, hospitality and tourism, and other drivers of jurisdictions' economies. Thirty-five percent of cities still report being less able to meet financial needs than in fiscal year 2020,²⁷⁶ and over half of surveyed Tribal governments and Tribal enterprises reported losing at least 40 percent of their revenue since the start of the pandemic.²⁷⁷ Budget challenges persist as governments work to mitigate and contain COVID-19 and help citizens weather the economic downturn.

State, local, and Tribal government budgets affect the broader economic recovery. During the period following the 2007–2009 recession, state and local government budget pressures led to fiscal austerity that was a significant drag on the overall economic recovery.²⁷⁸ Inflation-adjusted state and local government revenue did not return to the previous peak until 2013,²⁷⁹ while employment in the sector returned to the previous peak in August 2019, nearly a decade later.²⁸⁰ Just months after recouping losses from the previous downturn, the COVID-19

pandemic caused state and local government employment to contract again, but this time more sharply: By May 2020, state and local government payrolls fell 7.7 percent compared to February 2020. Despite improvement, non-federal public sector job growth continues to lag behind the rest of the U.S. labor market recovery.²⁸¹

Summary of Interim Final Rule

As stated above, the Social Security Act provides that SLFRF funds may be used “for the provision of government services to the extent of the reduction in revenue of such . . . government due to the COVID-19 public health emergency relative to revenues collected in the most recent full fiscal year of the . . . government prior to the emergency.” The interim final rule provided a formula for calculating revenue loss through a four-step process:

- *Step 1:* Identify revenues collected in the most recent full fiscal year prior to the public health emergency (*i.e.*, last full fiscal year before January 27, 2020), called the *base year revenue*.
- *Step 2:* Estimate *counterfactual revenue*, which is the amount of revenue the recipient would have expected in the absence of the downturn caused by the pandemic. The counterfactual revenue is equal to *base year revenue* * [(1 + *growth adjustment*) \wedge (n/12)], where *n* is the number of months elapsed since the end of the base year to the calculation date, and *growth adjustment* is the greater of the average annual growth rate across all State and Local Government “General Revenue from Own Sources” in the most recent three years prior to the

emergency, 5.2 percent, or the recipient's average annual revenue growth in the three full fiscal years prior to the COVID-19 public health emergency.²⁸² This approach to the growth rate provides recipients with the option to use a standardized growth adjustment when calculating the counterfactual revenue trend and thus minimizes administrative burden, while not disadvantaging recipients with revenue growth that exceeded the national average prior to the COVID-19 public health emergency by permitting these recipients to use their own revenue growth rate over the preceding three years.

- *Step 3:* Identify *actual revenue*,²⁸³ which equals revenues collected over the twelve months immediately preceding the calculation date.

- *Step 4:* The extent of the reduction in revenue is equal to *counterfactual revenue* less *actual revenue*. If *actual revenue* exceeds *counterfactual revenue*, the extent of the reduction in revenue is set to zero for that calculation date.

For illustration, consider a hypothetical recipient with *base year revenue* equal to 100 (Step 1) that ends on June 30, 2019. In Step 2, the hypothetical recipient finds that the average annual growth across all state and local government “General Revenue from Own Sources” in the most recent three years of available data, 5.2 percent, is greater than the recipient's average annual revenue growth in the three full fiscal years prior to the public health emergency. In this illustration, *n* (months elapsed) and *counterfactual revenue* would be equal to:

As of:	12/31/2020	12/31/2021	12/31/2022	12/31/2023
<i>n</i> (months elapsed)	18	30	42	54
<i>Counterfactual revenue:</i>	107.9	113.5	119.4	125.6

²⁷⁵ Analysis of Quarterly Summary of State and Local Tax Revenue, U.S. Census Bureau, *supra* note 271.

²⁷⁶ National League of Cities, City Fiscal Conditions (2021), available at <https://www.nlc.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/10/2021-City-Fiscal-Conditions-Report-2021.pdf>.

²⁷⁷ Center for Indian Country Development and Federal Reserve Bank of Minneapolis, One Year Into COVID-19, Pandemic's Negative Effects Persist in Indian Country (May 2021), available at <https://www.minneapolisfed.org/article/2021/one-year-into-covid-19-pandemics-negative-effects-persist-in-indian-country>.

²⁷⁸ See, e.g., Nora Fitzpatrick et al., Fiscal Drag from the State and Local Sector?, Liberty Street Economics Blog, Federal Reserve Bank of New York (June 27, 2012), [https://libertystreeteconomics.newyorkfed.org/2012/06/fiscal-drag-from-the-state-](https://libertystreeteconomics.newyorkfed.org/2012/06/fiscal-drag-from-the-state-and-local-sector.html)

[and-local-sector.html](https://libertystreeteconomics.newyorkfed.org/2012/06/fiscal-drag-from-the-state-and-local-sector.html); Jiri Jonas, Great Recession and Fiscal Squeeze at U.S. Subnational Government Level, IMF Working Paper 12/184, (July 2012), available at <https://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/wp/2012/wp12184.pdf>; Gordon, *supra* note 16.

²⁷⁹ State and local government general revenue from own sources, adjusted for inflation using the Bureau of Economic Analysis' implicit price deflator for GDP. U.S. Census Bureau, Annual Survey of State Government Finances and U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis, National Income and Product Accounts, <https://www.census.gov/programs-surveys/gov-finances.html>.

²⁸⁰ U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, All Employees, State Government [CES9092000001] and All Employees, Local Government [CES9093000001], retrieved from FRED, Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/CES9092000001> and <https://fred.stlouisfed.org/series/CES9093000001>.

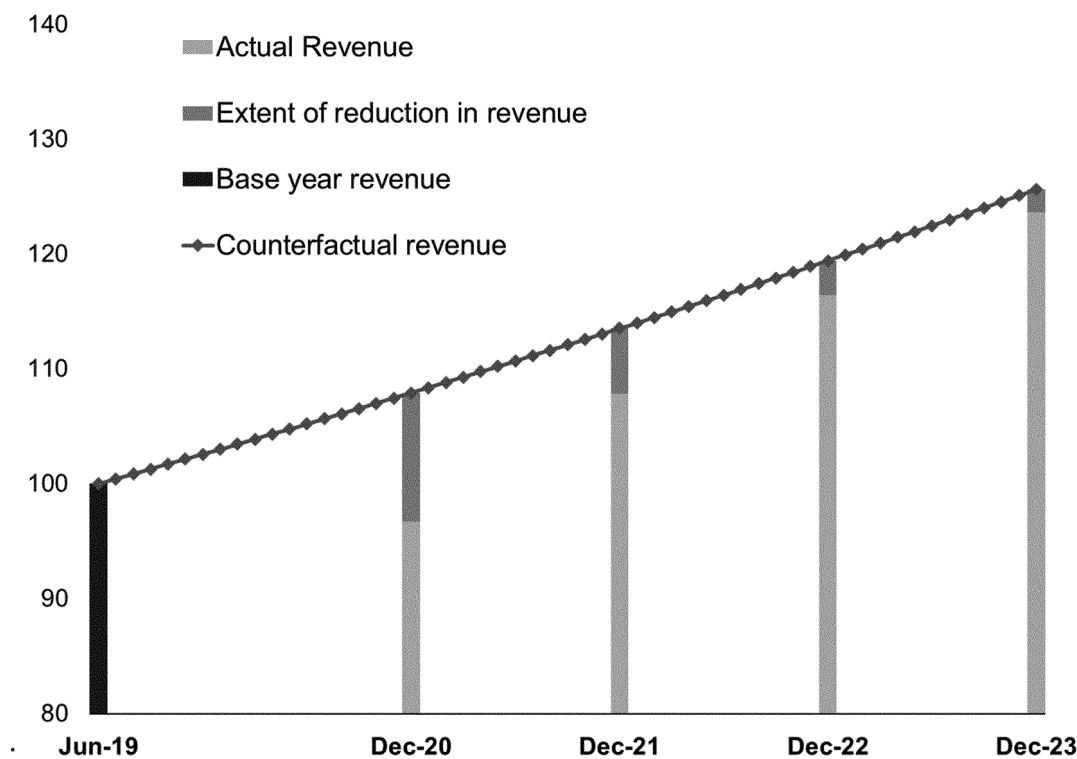
²⁸¹ Pew Research, State and Local Government Job Growth Lags as Economy Recovers (September 2021), available at <https://www.pewtrusts.org/en/research-and-analysis/articles/2021/09/14/state-and-local-government-job-growth-lags-as-economy-recovers>.

²⁸² At the time the interim final rule was published, the average annual growth across all state and local government “General Revenue from Own Sources” in the most recent three years of available data (2015–2018) was 4.1%, which was presented as one option for the growth adjustment. Since the interim final rule was published, 2019 data has been made available, which increases this rate to 5.2%. The final rule updates the percentage to 5.2%, as shown in Step 2.

²⁸³ As explained below, in the final rule, recipients must adjust actual revenue amounts based on certain tax policy changes.

The figure below illustrates the reduction in revenue for the

hypothetical recipient calculated in accordance with the methodology.



Finally, as explained in greater detail below, the clear meaning of the statutory phrase “due to the COVID-19 public health emergency” is that it is referring to revenue reductions caused by the public health emergency. As such, it does not include revenue reduced for reasons other than the public health emergency. Treasury in the interim final rule presumed that any reduction in revenue relative to the counterfactual estimate would be considered revenue lost due to the pandemic and thereby relieved recipients of the administrative burden of determining the extent to which reduction in revenue was due to the public health emergency. The calculation methodology in the interim final rule implicitly assumed that recipients did not suffer a loss in revenue due to the public health emergency if they did not experience a reduction in aggregate revenue compared to the counterfactual estimate. The interim final rule invited comments on whether Treasury should revise its presumption to “take into account other factors, including actions taken by the recipient as well as the expiration of the COVID-19 public health emergency, in determining whether to presume that revenue losses

are ‘due to’ the COVID-19 public health emergency.”

Treasury received a substantial number of comments on the revenue loss provisions set forth in the interim final rule. These comments largely pertained to the following topics: The overall methodology for calculating revenue loss; the definition of “revenue”; whether revenue should be aggregated or calculated on some alternative basis (*e.g.*, source-by-source or fund-by-fund); the appropriate calculation dates (*i.e.*, fiscal year or calendar year); the presumption that all revenue loss is due to the pandemic; the base year; and the definition of “government services.”

Overall Methodology for Calculating Revenue Loss

As noted above, the interim final rule provided a formula for recipients to calculate revenue loss by comparing actual revenues received during a given time-period with a counterfactual amount of revenue based on revenues in the base year and an adjustment for expected growth in revenue each year.

Public Comment: Treasury received many public comments on the overall methodology for calculating revenue loss. Some recipients, including smaller governments, have expressed concern regarding the burden associated with

the calculation of revenue loss, particularly the burden involved in calculating the amount of general revenue, given that the definition of general revenue in the interim final rule does not always align with the definition of revenue already calculated by recipients for other purposes, and requested clarifications regarding a number of components, including the definition of revenue. Commenters also asked for clarification on the relationship between revenue loss calculations across different calculation dates. Other commenters argued that the revenue loss formula does not precisely capture the nuances of local revenues or their particular situation. For example, some commenters stated that requiring that revenues be aggregated fails to capture decreases in revenue sources that cannot easily be made up for with other revenue sources.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury is largely maintaining the revenue loss formula as set forth in the interim final rule. To address comments that the formula for calculating revenue loss was difficult to apply, Treasury is including an option for recipients to use a standard allowance for revenue loss. Specifically, in the final rule, recipients will be permitted to elect a fixed amount of loss that can then be used to fund government services. This fixed

amount, referred to as the “standard allowance,” is set at up to \$10 million total for the entire period of performance not to exceed the recipient’s SLFRF award amount. Although Treasury anticipates that this standard allowance will be most helpful to smaller local governments and Tribal governments, any recipient can use this standard allowance instead of calculating revenue loss pursuant to the formula above, so long as recipients employ a consistent methodology across the period of performance (*i.e.*, choose either the standard allowance or the regular formula). Treasury intends to amend its reporting forms to provide a mechanism for recipients to make a one-time, irrevocable election to utilize either the revenue loss formula or the standard allowance.

The \$10 million level is based on average revenue loss across state and local governments, taking into consideration potential variation in revenue types and losses and continued uncertainty faced by many recipients regarding revenue shortfalls. To calculate this estimate, Treasury applied a variation of the final rule’s revenue loss calculation on available aggregate state and local government tax revenue data as reported by the Census Bureau for the first calculation date of December 31, 2020. This estimate accounts for expected variation across recipient experiences and reflects the fact that the final rule revenue loss calculation provides recipients several options for specific aspects (*e.g.*, calendar year or fiscal year basis; use of average state and local revenue growth rate or specific local rate). Treasury compared actual calendar year 2020 tax revenues, in aggregate for all state and local governments, to several counterfactual trends that vary based on the end date of the fiscal base year.²⁸⁴ Treasury also assessed counterfactual trends using different revenue growth rates (*e.g.*, the three-year average growth rates of total state and local government general revenue for both fiscal years ending in 2016–2018 and fiscal years ending in 2017–2019; the three-year average growth rates of total state and local government tax revenues for fiscal years ending in 2017–2019; and the one-year growth rate for total state and local government tax revenue in the last full fiscal year before the public health emergency). To account for the fact that the initial estimate, based on tax

revenue, only includes a subset of recipient aggregate general revenue, Treasury applied a scaling factor to recognize that tax revenues generally make up just over half of general revenue collected by state and local governments (*i.e.*, Treasury scaled up its estimate based on tax revenue to produce an estimate for total general revenue).²⁸⁵ The resulting calculation was then extrapolated over the four-year period of performance and divided by a population of interest to arrive at an average loss estimate.

As noted above, Treasury estimated a range of scenarios to account for different values of the variables that would impact average losses. For example, the end date of the fiscal base year and growth rate of counterfactual revenue impact the overall estimate of revenue loss. In addition, this estimate takes into consideration the limitations in the available data. The governments covered by the Census Bureau’s survey do not entirely align with SLFRF recipients. The Census Bureau’s figures are based on 50 state governments, all local government property tax collectors and local government non-property tax imposers, representing at a minimum the more than 38,000 “General Purpose Governments” defined by Census. However, there are only roughly 32,000 recipients of SLFRF funds. Thus, Treasury considered the difference between the number and type of entities in the Census Bureau data and the SLFRF recipients.

Based on this methodology, Treasury estimates that average revenue loss (determined by comparing the counterfactual revenue to actual revenue) may range from \$0 to \$11.7 million per recipient over the period of performance.²⁸⁶ Treasury settled on a point estimate toward the upper end of the range of potential averages, in part, to account for significant variation in the experiences of recipient governments: Some recipients likely experienced losses at the upper end of this range of potential averages. A point estimate toward the upper end of the range errs toward ensuring more recipients’ experiences are covered and increases the utility of the standard allowance for SLFRF recipients. Specifically, the program includes a very large number of recipients with relatively smaller awards; these recipients have tended to describe having greater difficulty completing the

regular revenue loss calculation. Thus, selecting a point estimate toward the higher end of the expected range not only increases the likelihood that the standard allowance will reflect the experience of a larger number of SLFRF recipients but is more responsive to the comments of those with smaller awards. In addition, using a point estimate toward the upper end of the range accounts for the difficulty and uncertainty in predicting revenue losses years into the future, throughout the period of performance.²⁸⁷

Finally, Treasury selected a single allowance level, as opposed to varying levels, to further the goals of simplicity, flexibility, and administrability. Furthermore, data limitations make it difficult to distinguish between types of local governments.²⁸⁸

General Revenue

The interim final rule adopted a definition of “general revenue” based largely on the components reported under “General Revenue from Own Sources” in the Census Bureau’s Annual Survey of State and Local Government Finances. Under the interim final rule, general revenue included revenue collected by a recipient and generated from its underlying economy, and it would capture a range of different types of tax revenues, as well as other types of revenue that are available to support government services.²⁸⁹ Specifically, revenue under the interim final rule included money that is received from tax revenue, current charges, and miscellaneous general revenues and excluded refunds and other correcting transactions, proceeds from issuance of debt or the sale of investments, agency or private trust transactions, revenue from utilities, social insurance trust revenues, and intergovernmental

²⁸⁷ See, *e.g.*, Government Accountability Office, State and Local Governments: Fiscal Conditions During the COVID–19 Pandemic in Selected States (July 2021) (noting that “[s]tate and local government revenues partly depend on the overall economy, and actions to stem the spread of the virus drastically reduced economic activity.”); Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, Monetary Policy Report (July 9, 2021) (noting that the pandemic “pushed down state and local government tax collections” and that while some of the drag is “abating” state and local “government payrolls . . . have only edged up from their lows at the onset of the pandemic”).

²⁸⁸ Local government tax revenue data in the Census Bureau’s Quarterly Summary of State and Local Tax Revenue, *supra* note 271, is provided on an aggregated basis.

²⁸⁹ The Department also released guidance clarifying how a recipient may determine whether a particular entity is “part of the recipient’s government.” See FAQ 3.14, Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

²⁸⁴ Because the Census Bureau’s state and local government tax revenue data is reported on a quarterly frequency, fiscal base year end dates of March 31, June 30, September 30, and December 31 were used in this assessment.

²⁸⁵ Annual Survey of State and Local Government Finances (2019).

²⁸⁶ This is the range of averages that Treasury calculated by varying the aforementioned assumptions.

transfers from the federal government, including transfers made pursuant to section 9901 of the ARPA.²⁹⁰ In the case of Tribal governments, it also included revenue from Tribal business enterprises.

Public Comment: Many commenters asked Treasury to include certain items in the definition of “general revenue.” For instance, several commenters that operate their own utilities asked that revenue from utilities be included, arguing that declines in utility revenue directly affect contributions to their general funds. Many of these commenters noted that moratoriums on utility shutoffs and a decline in collections have resulted in significant budgetary pressures.

Some commenters also asked for the exclusion of certain intergovernmental transfers in the definition of general revenue, including transfers of shared revenue from the state.²⁹¹ Other commenters asked for the inclusion of certain transfers from the federal government, including fees paid for services and grants that are, in effect, paid for the provision of services.

Treasury also received multiple requests to include revenue from Tribal enterprises in the definition of “general revenue” and that “Tribal enterprise” be defined broadly. Others asked for the ability to choose whether to include revenue from Tribal enterprises.

Finally, some commenters requested that the definition of general revenue exclude certain sources of revenue, such as revenue sources that do not support a general fund (*i.e.*, revenue sources that are restricted in use). Commenters also asked that general revenue exclude revenue from special assessments, settlements that make the recipient

whole for past expenditures, and one-time revenues such as revenue from the sale of property.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury has maintained the definition of “general revenue” from the interim final rule with two exceptions.

Treasury has adjusted the definition to allow recipients that operate utilities that are part of their own government to choose whether to include revenue from these utilities in their revenue loss calculation. This change responds to comments from recipients indicating that revenue from utilities is used to fund other government services and that utility revenues have declined on aggregate.²⁹² This approach is consistent with other eligible uses, which recognize decreased ability of many households to make utility payments; see section Assistance to Households, which identifies utility assistance as an enumerated eligible use of funds, including through direct or bulk payments to utilities for consumer assistance. Furthermore, for utilities or other entities (*e.g.*, certain service districts) that are not part of the recipient government, a transfer from the utility to the recipient constitutes an intergovernmental transfer and therefore is included in the definition of “general revenue.”²⁹³

Treasury has also added liquor store revenue to the definition of general revenue. The Supplemental Information to the interim final rule stated that the definition of tax revenue would include liquor store revenue, but the text of the rule did not include it. Accordingly, in the final rule, Treasury is clarifying that revenue includes liquor store revenue. However, Treasury believes revenue from government-owned liquor stores is better classified as general revenue than it is as tax revenue, so the final rule includes it as part of general revenue.

In response to requests that the definition of general revenue exclude revenue from special assessments, settlements that make the recipient whole for past expenditures, and one-time revenues such as revenue from the sale of property, Treasury is maintaining its position in the final rule that such revenue is included in general revenue. While such revenues may be less predictable than other sources of

revenue (*e.g.*, property taxes), these are not uncommon sources of revenue for recipients, and their inclusion provides a more complete view of the financial health of a recipient government and is consistent with the Census Bureau methodology. Treasury is also maintaining the exclusion of all payments from the federal government (including payments for services) from general revenue in order to avoid substantial dilution of the definition of revenue, particularly in light of extraordinary fiscal support provided during the pandemic. Treasury is maintaining the inclusion of intergovernmental transfers other than from the federal government for the reasons provided in the Supplemental Information to the interim final rule; to do otherwise would be to significantly distort the revenue calculations for local governments that regularly receive revenue sharing payments, for example, from their state governments. Treasury is also maintaining the approach that “general revenue” includes revenue from Tribal enterprises. This approach recognizes that these enterprises often form the revenue base for Tribal governments’ budgets.

To ease the burden on recipients and account for anomalous variations in revenue, as mentioned above, Treasury has incorporated a “standard allowance” option into the final rule. A recipient may choose to use the standard allowance, which under the final rule is set at up to \$10 million, not to exceed the recipient’s SLFRF award amount, as an alternative to calculating revenue loss according to the formula described above. This addition will promote administrative efficiency and simplify the revenue loss calculation for the vast majority of recipients. Treasury intends to amend its reporting forms to provide a mechanism for recipients to elect to utilize either the revenue loss formula or the standard allowance, in addition to other changes made as part of the final rule.

Aggregate Revenue Loss Calculation

Under the interim final rule, revenue loss was calculated based on aggregate revenues and therefore loss in one type of revenue could be offset by gains in another. The amount of SLFRF funds available to provide government services was based on overall net revenue loss. In the Supplementary Information to the interim final rule, Treasury asked commenters to discuss the advantages and disadvantages of, and any potential concerns with, this approach, including circumstances in which it could be necessary or

²⁹⁰ The interim final rule stated that “general revenue” and “tax revenue” excludes refunds and other correcting transactions. Instead of “excluding” refunds and other correcting transactions, the Census Bureau methodology upon which those definitions are based provides that general revenue and tax revenue are determined “net of” refunds and other correcting transactions. The use of “excluding” in the interim final rule is substantively the same as the Census Bureau methodology. However, to be consistent with the terminology used by the Census Bureau, the final rule uses “net of” instead of “excluding.” Current charges are defined as “charges imposed for providing current services or for the sale of products in connection with general government activities.” It includes revenues such as public education institution, public hospital, and toll revenues. Miscellaneous general revenue comprises of all other general revenue of governments from their own sources (*i.e.*, other than utility and insurance trust revenue), including rents, royalties, lottery proceeds, and fines.

²⁹¹ The interim final rule excluded governmental transfers from the Federal Government, but it did not exclude intergovernmental transfers from other governmental units for purposes of the revenue loss provisions.

²⁹² U.S. Energy Information Administration, Annual Electric Utility Data (October 2021), available at https://www.eia.gov/electricity/sales_revenue_price/.

²⁹³ FAQ 3.14 provides further guidance on how to determine what entities constitute a government for purposes of calculating revenue loss. See Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

appropriate to calculate the reduction in revenue by source.

Public Comment: Treasury received many comments stating that revenue loss should be calculated on a source-by-source basis. Some commenters argued that a source-by-source approach would be administratively simpler. Other commenters argued that calculating revenue loss source-by-source would better reflect the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on their ability to fund government services because revenue gains in one source cannot always be used to make up for losses in another. For similar reasons, other commenters asked that revenue loss be calculated on a fund basis.

Treasury Response: Treasury considered alternative methods (e.g., source-by-source, fund-by-fund) but ultimately determined to maintain the calculation of revenue loss in the aggregate. The pandemic has had different effects on recipients (and their revenues), and Treasury recognized that one particular type of revenue or one particular source may have experienced a greater amount of loss for some recipients. However, the statute refers only to “the reduction in revenue of such State, local government, or Tribal government.” The statute is thus clear that Treasury is to refer to the aggregate revenue reduction of the recipient due to the public health emergency. Further, this provision is designed to address declines in the recipients’ overall ability to pay for governmental services, and calculating revenue loss on an aggregate basis provides a more accurate representation of the effect of the pandemic on overall revenues and the fiscal health of the recipient. In many circumstances, recipient governments have flexibility to use revenues from an array of sources and offset declines in some sources with gains in others. While the details and configuration of this flexibility vary widely across recipient governments, calculating revenue loss on a source-by-source or fund-by-fund basis would not capture how recipient governments balance their budgets in the regular course of business. Accordingly, the final rule maintains the requirement that revenue loss is to be calculated on an aggregate basis.

Calculation Dates

Public Comment: Under the interim final rule, recipients calculate revenue loss as of the end of the calendar year. Treasury received many comments requesting that recipients be permitted to calculate revenue loss as of the end of their fiscal year. Commenters argued that doing so would be simpler and less

burdensome on recipients and that financial data as of the end of the fiscal year is audited and therefore more reliable. Commenters also argued that recipients’ fiscal years are structured around the timing of major revenue sources, and that the Census Bureau uses fiscal years in its Annual Survey.

Treasury also received comments about the use of multiple calculation dates. Several Tribal governments stated that they would not see ongoing revenue losses due to the COVID-19 public health emergency and asked to be able to determine revenue loss as of the first calculation date. Several commenters asked whether revenue loss is determined independently for each year, so that a gain in one year does not offset a loss in another, or whether revenue loss is cumulative from the beginning of the pandemic.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury has made adjustments to give recipients more flexibility with respect to calculation dates and to clarify certain elements. Specifically, the final rule provides recipients the option to choose whether to calculate revenue loss on a fiscal year or calendar year basis, though they must choose a consistent basis for loss calculations throughout the period of performance. Treasury has also clarified in the final rule that revenue loss is calculated separately for each year such that the calculation of revenue lost in one year does not affect the calculation of revenue lost in prior or future years.

Presumption That Revenue Loss Is Due to the Pandemic

As stated above, sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C) of the Social Security Act provide that SLFRF funds may be used “for the provision of government services to the extent of the reduction in revenue of such . . . government due to the COVID-19 public health emergency relative to revenues collected in the most recent full fiscal year of the . . . government prior to the emergency.” As discussed in the interim final rule, although revenue may decline for reasons unrelated to COVID-19, in order to minimize the administrative burden on recipients in calculating revenue loss and take into consideration the devastating effects of the COVID-19 public health emergency, any reduction in revenue relative to the counterfactual estimate was presumed in the interim final rule to be considered revenue lost due to the pandemic.

Treasury stated in the Supplementary Information to the interim final rule that it was considering when, if ever, during the period of performance it would be appropriate to reevaluate the

presumption that all losses are attributable to the public health emergency. Treasury also sought comment on whether to take into account other factors, including actions taken by the recipient as well as the expiration of the COVID-19 public health emergency, in determining whether to presume that revenue losses are “due to” the COVID-19 public health emergency.

Public Comment: Treasury received many comments in support of the presumption, as well as some opposed. Some commenters argued that the presumption eases the administrative burden on recipients because, without it, it would be difficult to identify which losses are attributable to the COVID-19 public health emergency. Many commenters also argued that Treasury should maintain the presumption because recipients are likely to experience losses due to the public health emergency even after the end of the public health emergency. Treasury also received comments asking that it adjust any revenue loss calculation to account for tax changes enacted by the recipient. In particular, some commenters noted that some recipients had increased taxes in order to meet additional demands for government services or to address declines in revenue due to the pandemic. These tax increases have in some cases offset some or all of the actual revenue loss attributable to the public health emergency. Because the interim final rule calculates revenue loss by reference to actual revenue collected, commenters argued that the calculation of revenue loss “due to” the public health emergency needs to take into consideration the effects of tax increases by deducting the effect of these tax increases from actual revenue collected.

Treasury Response: In the final rule, Treasury has maintained the presumption that a reduction in a recipient’s revenue is due to the public health emergency with certain adjustments to respond to comments and to better account for revenue loss “due to the COVID-19 public health emergency.” The final rule makes adjustments to the presumption to take into account certain government actions to change tax policy. In particular, Treasury is adjusting the presumption to account for changes to tax policy by providing that changes in revenue that are caused by tax increases or decreases adopted after the issuance of the final rule will not be treated as due to the public health emergency.

Presumption of Revenue Loss “Due To” the Pandemic

In enacting sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C) of the Social Security Act, Congress provided that a state, local government, or Tribal government could use funds to “cover costs . . . for the provision of government services,” but only “to the extent of the reduction in revenue . . . due to the COVID–19 public health emergency relative to revenues collected in the most recent full fiscal year . . . prior to the emergency.” In doing so, Congress recognized that the pandemic was causing significant disruption to economic activity and sought to minimize the impact of associated revenue losses on the ability of the recipient to provide government services when such services were needed most.²⁹⁴ The text of the statute itself reinforces this important context: The law specifically limits funds to cover revenue losses that both are “due to the COVID–19 public health emergency” and could impact “the provision of government services.”

Courts have recognized that the phrase “due to” can refer to various causal standards.²⁹⁵ Here, in the context of Congress’s addressing economic disruptions caused by the COVID–19 pandemic that could impact both revenues and government services, the key consideration is whether a revenue loss experienced by the recipient resulted from the exogenous impacts of the public health emergency (and were thus “due to” the pandemic) or instead from the recipient’s own discretionary actions (and, in this context, were not “due to” the pandemic). Reductions in revenue due to the public health emergency does not cover revenue reductions that resulted from a recipient’s own discretionary actions.

In the interim final rule, Treasury included a presumption that all revenue loss is due to the pandemic in order to minimize the administrative burden on recipients discussed above and take into consideration the devastating effects of the COVID–19 public health emergency. Based on comments, Treasury believes that the reasons for the presumption continue to be valid and has determined to maintain the presumption in the final rule with certain modifications. In

particular, at this point in the course of the pandemic, with the fiscal pressure on state and local governments having been significantly reduced, it is appropriate for Treasury to reassess aspects of this presumption. As discussed below, the final rule requires recipients to exclude the value of tax policy changes adopted after January 6, 2022.

Recipients of the SLFRF range from states to the smallest local governments. At the time that the interim final rule was adopted, it was important for recipients to be able to calculate with ease and certainty their amount of revenue loss so that they could begin deploying these funds to continue to maintain essential government services. To this end, the presumption in the interim final rule provided a relatively simple formula for all recipients to use, but the exigent need for recipients to immediately deploy funds for the provision of government services has decreased and the benefit of the presumption in reducing administrative burden is less relevant for those governments that are not likely to avail themselves of the standard allowance described above.

Consistent with these considerations, the final rule requires recipients to exclude revenue loss due to tax changes adopted after January 6, 2022. Eliminating revenue loss due to tax changes from the presumption is appropriate given the significance of tax revenue as a portion of all revenue for state and local governments, the direct impact of tax policy decisions on revenue collected, and the relative ease with which recipients can isolate the estimated effect of a tax change on revenue.²⁹⁶ Most state budgeting processes require a “budget score,” often developed through a consensus process with executive and legislative branch experts,²⁹⁷ and Treasury expects that larger localities, those most likely to utilize the revenue loss formula rather than the standard allowance, also regularly use revenue or budget estimates when considering changes to tax policies. As such, in many cases,

recipients already prepare estimates of the impact of tax changes on revenue, and as discussed below, Treasury will generally permit recipients to rely on such estimates in adjusting their revenue loss calculations.

Reductions in revenue that are not attributable to tax changes would continue to be subject to the presumption. A requirement that recipients evaluate the revenue effect of changes in discretionary policy actions other than tax changes would be more difficult for recipients than evaluating the changes attributable to tax changes given that state and local governments do not generally prepare estimates of the revenue effects of other actions. Finally, as noted above, taxes are the single largest source of revenue for state and local government recipients in the aggregate.

Revisions to Presumption To Address Tax Reductions

For these reasons, Treasury is providing in the final rule that changes in general revenue that are caused by tax cuts adopted after the date of adoption of the final rule (January 6, 2022) will not be treated as due to the public health emergency, and the estimated fiscal impact of such tax cuts must be added to the calculation of “actual revenue” for purposes of calculation dates that occur on or after April 1, 2022. Tax cuts include final legislative or regulatory action or a new or changed administrative interpretation that reduces any tax (by providing for a reduction in a rate, a rebate, a deduction, a credit, or otherwise) or delays the imposition of any tax or tax increase and that the recipient assesses has had the effect of reducing tax revenue relative to current law. This includes the phase-in or taking effect of any statute or rule if the phase-in or taking effect was not prescribed prior to the issuance of the final rule.

In assessing whether a tax change has had the effect of reducing tax revenue, recipients may either calculate the actual effect on revenue or rely on estimates prepared at the time the tax change was adopted. More specifically, recipients may rely on information typically prepared in the course of developing the budget (e.g., expected revenues) and/or considering tax changes (e.g., budget scores, revenue notes) to determine the amount of revenue that would have been collected in the absence of the tax cut, as long as those estimates are based on reasonable assumptions and do not use dynamic methodologies that incorporate the projected effects of macroeconomic growth, given that macroeconomic

²⁹⁴ See also sections 602(a)(1) and 603(a) of the Social Security Act (appropriating the funds for payment to recipients in order to “mitigate the fiscal effects stemming from the public health emergency”).

²⁹⁵ *U.S. Postal Service v. Postal Regulatory Comm’n*, 640 F.3d 1263 (D.C. Cir. 2011); see *Kimber v. Thiokol Corp.*, 196 F.3d 1092, 1100 (10th Cir. 1999); *Adams v. Director, OWCP*, 886 F.2d 818, 821 (6th Cir. 1989).

²⁹⁶ Treasury considered whether to also eliminate the presumption with respect to losses resulting from other changes in policy, such as decreases in user fees or fines. However, the effects of these changes are more minor overall and would be more challenging to accurately identify and quantify, so the administrability benefit of the presumption for recipients outweighs whatever distortion there might be as a result of not reflecting such changes.

²⁹⁷ See generally, National Association of State Budget Officers, *Budget Processes in the States*, (2021), available at https://higherlogicdownload.s3.amazonaws.com/NASBO/9d2d2db1-c943-4f1b-b750-0fca152d64c2/UploadedImages/Budget%20Processes/NASBO_2021_Budget_Processes_in_the_States_S.pdf.

growth is accounted for in the counterfactual growth assumptions. Recipients that choose to calculate the actual effect of a tax change on revenue must similarly base their calculations on reasonable estimates that do not use dynamic methodologies. Recipients should apply this adjustment in determining their actual revenue totals at Step 3 in the revenue loss calculation described above.

Revisions to Presumption To Address Tax Increases

As noted above, the calculation methodology in the interim final rule implicitly assumed that recipients did not experience a reduction in revenue due to the public health emergency if they did not experience a reduction in aggregate revenue relative to the counterfactual estimate. Treasury recognizes that some recipients may have experienced a reduction in revenue due to the public health emergency that was offset by other revenue, particularly in the case of increases to tax revenue resulting from a tax increase. The final rule requires recipients that increased taxes to deduct the amount of increases to revenue attributable to such tax increase. This change is also consistent with the incorporation in the interim final rule and final rule of a counterfactual growth rate, which effectively permits recipients to count revenue losses due to the public health emergency that are offset by increased tax revenue resulting from organic growth.

For these reasons, Treasury is providing in the final rule that recipients must subtract from their calculation of actual revenue the effect of tax increases adopted after the date of adoption of this final rule (January 6, 2022) for purposes of calculation dates that occur on or after April 1, 2022. This change and the change to the final rule described above treat tax changes in a consistent manner: In the case of reduction in revenue resulting from a tax cut, a recipient must add the amount of that reduction to its calculation of actual revenue, and in the case of an increase in revenue resulting from a tax increase, a recipient must subtract the amount of additional revenue collected as a result of the tax increase from its calculation of actual revenue.²⁹⁸

²⁹⁸ The final rule does not permit recipients to reflect the effects of other changes in policy, such as increases in fees adopted after adoption of the final rule. Treasury understands that the main beneficiaries of such a change would be those recipients that will benefit from the standard allowance provided for in the final rule and that for other recipients the administrative burden on recipients needed to calculate these adjustments

As is the case with tax cuts, discussed above, tax increases that must be reflected in the calculation of revenue include final legislative or regulatory action or a new or changed administrative interpretation that increases any tax and that the recipient assesses has had the effect of increasing tax revenue relative to current law. In assessing whether a tax change has had the effect of increasing tax revenue, recipients may either calculate the actual effect on revenue or rely on estimates prepared at the time the tax change was adopted. Recipients may rely on information typically prepared in the course of developing the budget (e.g., expected revenues) and/or considering tax changes (e.g., budget scores, revenue notes) to determine the amount of revenue that was collected as a result of the tax increase as long as those estimates are based on reasonable assumptions and do not use dynamic methodologies that incorporate the projected effects of macroeconomic growth, given that macroeconomic growth is accounted for in the counterfactual growth assumptions. Recipients that choose to calculate the actual effect of a tax change on revenue must similarly base their calculations on reasonable estimates that do not use dynamic methodologies. Recipients should apply this adjustment in determining their actual revenue totals at Step 3 in the revenue loss calculation described above.

Previously Adopted Tax Changes

As discussed above, the final rule will not require recipients to reflect the revenue effects of tax increases or decreases adopted prior to the adoption of the final rule. Recipients that adopted a tax change in a previous period will not be required to recalculate the amount of revenue loss as of prior calculation dates or to reflect the fiscal impacts of such tax changes in calculation dates after the effective date of the final rule. However, the final rule will permit recipients to elect to reflect the revenue effects of their tax changes adopted between the beginning of the public health emergency and the adoption of the final rule.²⁹⁹ If a recipient elects to do so, it must do so with respect to all of its tax changes

would outweigh the benefit of having a somewhat larger amount of funds available for government services.

²⁹⁹ The final rule also addresses the possibility that some recipients may have fiscal years ending during the period between January 6, 2022 and April 1, 2022; such recipients' election to reflect tax changes from prior periods would also apply to changes during this period with respect to the calculation date in this period.

adopted between the beginning of the public health emergency and the adoption of the final rule. Treasury intends to revise its reporting requirements to permit recipients to amend their previously reported calculation periods to reflect such changes.

Determination of the Base Year

Under the ARPA and interim final rule, SLFRF funds may be used "for the provision of government services to the extent of the reduction in revenue . . . relative to revenues collected in the most recent full fiscal year" of the recipient. Therefore, the base year for the revenue loss calculation is the most recent full fiscal year prior to the COVID-19 public health emergency.

Public Comment: Treasury received multiple comments asking for flexibility in determining base year revenues. For instance, some commenters asked to use a different base year than the "most recent full fiscal year" prior to the pandemic for calculating revenue loss; others asked to be able to average prior years. Commenters stated that, for various reasons, revenue was artificially low in the last full fiscal year prior to the public health emergency, and, therefore, using revenue in that year as the base year did not accurately reflect expected revenue in a normal year. For example, several Tribes stated that unforeseeable weather events resulted in forced closure of casinos which, in turn, artificially deflated revenues in the base year. Other commenters indicated that one-time anomalies in the timing of tax collection in that year artificially pushed revenue into the following fiscal year. Similarly, a few commenters noted that tax changes that took effect in the middle of the base year may artificially skew the size of the revenue loss experienced by the recipient government.

Treasury Response: Treasury understands that recipients may have experienced events in the base year that led to lower or higher revenues than what they otherwise would have collected. The ARPA provides that revenue loss is to be determined with respect to revenue in the most recent full fiscal year prior to the pandemic, and therefore the final rule maintains its incorporation of the statutory definition.

In calculating revenue loss, recipients may use data on a cash, accrual, or modified accrual basis, provided that recipients are consistent in their choice of methodology throughout the covered period, which might help recipients adjust to certain delays in revenue receipt. Both the standard allowance and elements of the formula (e.g.,

counterfactual growth rate) incorporate generous assumptions to give recipients flexibility and to account for variation among recipients' experiences during the pandemic.

Government Services

The **SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION** to the interim final rule provided a non-exhaustive list of examples of services that are government services. The interim final rule also discussed why neither payment of debt service nor replenishing financial reserves constitutes government services, as these expenditures do not provide services but relate to the financing of such services. Similarly, government services under the interim final rule did not include satisfaction of any obligation arising under or pursuant to a settlement agreement, judgment, consent decree, or judicially confirmed debt restructuring in a judicial, administrative, or regulatory proceeding, unless the judgment or settlement required the provision of government services.

Public Comment: Treasury received several comments requesting further clarification regarding the scope of government services, including asking for either a specific definition of government services or that a specific use be expressly deemed to be a government service. Some commenters disagreed with the exclusions from government services in the interim final rule. For instance, many of the comments Treasury received suggested that replenishing reserve funds and at least certain types of debt service should be treated as providing governmental services. Some commenters also suggested that a recipient should be able to use funds for costs incurred before March 3, 2021. Other commenters asked Treasury to maintain the prohibition on using the funds to pay debt service.

Treasury Response: Treasury continues to believe that the lists of activities that either are or are not providing government services are accurate but is clarifying here that, generally speaking, services provided by the recipient governments are "government services" under the interim final rule and final rule, unless Treasury has stated otherwise. Government services include, but are not limited to, maintenance or pay-go funded building³⁰⁰ of infrastructure, including roads; modernization of cybersecurity, including hardware,

software, and protection of critical infrastructure; health services; environmental remediation; school or educational services; and the provision of police, fire, and other public safety services.

The aforementioned list of government services is not exclusive. However, recipients should be mindful that other restrictions may apply, including those articulated in the section Restrictions on Use. In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining the limitations on government services included in the interim final rule and has addressed and responded to public commenters on these issues in the section Restrictions on Use.

D. Investments in Water, Sewer, and Broadband Infrastructure

Summary of Interim Final Rule

Under the ARPA, recipients may use funds to make necessary investments in water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure. The interim final rule provided recipients with the ability to use funds for a broad array of uses within these categories.

The interim final rule discussed two general provisions that apply across all water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure investments. First, the interim final rule addressed the meaning of "necessary" investments as meaning those designed to provide an adequate minimum level of service and unlikely to be made using private sources of funds. Second, the interim final rule encouraged recipients to use strong labor standards in water, sewer, and broadband projects, as discussed below.

Necessary Investments

The statute limits investments to those that are necessary. As discussed in more detail below, Treasury determined that the types of water and sewer projects that were authorized under the interim final rule by reference to existing Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) programs would in all cases be necessary investments given the conditions applicable to such EPA programs. Similarly, the interim final rule's definition of eligible broadband projects as those designed to provide a certain standard of service to those households and businesses with limited existing service was based on the statutory requirement that investments in water, sewer, and broadband must be "necessary."

As discussed further below, Treasury has expanded the scope of what is an eligible water and sewer infrastructure project to include additional uses. In

particular, the final rule permits use of SLFRF funds for certain dam and reservoir restoration projects and certain drinking water projects to support population growth. The nature of these additional uses is such that additional factors must be considered in determining whether one of these additional uses is a necessary project. In addition, Treasury recognizes that there may be a need for improvements to broadband beyond those households and businesses with limited existing service as defined in the interim final rule. Treasury has replaced this specific requirement based on an understanding that broadband investments may be necessary for a broader set of reasons.

Given this expansion of what is considered in scope as a water, sewer, or broadband infrastructure project, the final rule provides a further elaboration of Treasury's understanding of the conditions under which an infrastructure project will be considered to be a necessary investment. Treasury considers a necessary investment in infrastructure to be one that is (1) responsive to an identified need to achieve or maintain an adequate minimum level of service, which may include a reasonable projection of increased need, whether due to population growth or otherwise and (2) a cost-effective means for meeting that need, taking into account available alternatives. In addition, given that drinking water is a resource that is subject to depletion, in the case of investments in infrastructure that supply drinking water in order to meet projected population growth, the project must be projected to be sustainable over its estimated useful life.

Not included in the list of criteria above is the requirement in the interim final rule that the project be unlikely to be made using private sources of funds. Given that it may be difficult to assess in a particular case what the probability of private investment in a project would be, Treasury has eliminated this standard from the meaning of necessary but still encourages recipients to prioritize projects that would provide the greatest public benefit in their respective jurisdictions.

Strong Labor Standards in Water, Sewer, and Broadband Construction

As stated in the Supplementary Information to the interim final rule, Treasury encourages recipients to carry out investments in water, sewer, or broadband infrastructure in ways that produce high-quality infrastructure, avert disruptive and costly delays, and

³⁰⁰ Pay-go infrastructure funding refers to the practice of funding capital projects with cash-on-hand from taxes, fees, grants, and other sources, rather than with borrowed sums.

promote efficiency.³⁰¹ Treasury encourages recipients to use strong labor standards, including project labor agreements (PLAs) and community benefits agreements that offer wages at or above the prevailing rate and include local hire provisions. Treasury also recommends that recipients prioritize in their procurement decisions employers who can demonstrate that their workforce meets high safety and training standards (e.g., professional certification, licensure, and/or robust in-house training), that hire local workers and/or workers from historically underserved communities, and who directly employ their workforce or have policies and practices in place to ensure contractors and subcontractors meet high labor standards. Treasury further encourages recipients to prioritize employers (including contractors and subcontractors) without recent violations of federal and state labor and employment laws.

Treasury believes that such practices will promote effective and efficient delivery of high-quality infrastructure projects and support the economic recovery through strong employment opportunities for workers. Such practices will also reduce the likelihood of potential project challenges like work stoppages or safety accidents, while ensuring a reliable supply of skilled labor and minimizing disruptions, such as those associated with labor disputes or workplace injuries. That will, in turn, promote on-time and on-budget delivery.

Furthermore, among other requirements contained in 2 CFR 200, Appendix II, all contracts made by a recipient or subrecipient in excess of \$100,000 with respect to water, sewer, or broadband infrastructure project that involve employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with certain provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, 40 U.S.C. 3702 and 3704,

as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5).

Treasury will continue to seek information from recipients on their workforce plans and water, sewer, and broadband projects undertaken with SLFRF funds. This reporting will support transparency and competition by enhancing available information on the services being provided. Since publication of the interim final rule, Treasury has provided recipients with additional guidance and instructions on the reporting requirements.³⁰²

Environmental and Other Generally Applicable Requirements

Treasury cautions that, as is the case with all projects engaged in using the SLFRF funds, all projects must comply with applicable federal, state, and local law. In the case of infrastructure projects in particular, this includes environmental and permitting laws and regulations. Likewise, as with all capital expenditure projects using SLFRF funds, projects must be undertaken and completed in a manner that is technically sound, meaning that they must meet design and construction methods and use materials that are approved, codified, recognized, fall under standard or acceptable levels of practice, or otherwise are determined to be generally acceptable by the design and construction industry.

1. Water and Sewer Infrastructure

Sections 602(c)(1)(D) and Section 603(c)(1)(D) of the Social Security Act provide that recipients may use the SLFRF funds “to make necessary investments in water [and] sewer . . . infrastructure.” The interim final rule permitted a broad range of necessary investments in projects that improve access to clean drinking water and improve wastewater and stormwater infrastructure systems. As discussed below, after review of comments received on the interim final rule, Treasury has made changes in the final rule to expand the scope of eligible water and sewer projects.

Summary of Interim Final Rule and Final Rule Structure

Background: In the interim final rule, Treasury aligned eligible uses of the SLFRF with the wide range of types or categories of projects that would be eligible to receive financial assistance through the Clean Water State Revolving Fund (CWSRF) or Drinking Water State Revolving Fund (DWSRF) administered

by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). By referring to these existing programs, with which many recipients are already familiar, Treasury intended to provide flexibility to recipients to respond to the needs of their communities while facilitating recipients’ identification of eligible projects. Furthermore, by aligning SLFRF eligible uses with these existing programs, Treasury could ensure that projects using the SLFRF are limited to “necessary investments.”

Public Comment: Treasury received many comments responding to the water and sewer infrastructure provisions of the interim final rule from state, local, and Tribal governments, industry trade associations, public interest groups, private individuals, and other interested parties. Commenters requested that Treasury provide a wider set of eligible uses for water and sewer infrastructure beyond those uses articulated by the DWSRF and CWSRF, suggesting that Treasury expand the definition of necessary water and sewer infrastructure.

Treasury Response: In response to commenters, Treasury is expanding the eligible use categories for water and sewer infrastructure, discussed in further detail below. Because the interim final rule aligned the definition of necessary water and sewer infrastructure with the eligible uses included in the DWSRF and CWSRF, Treasury is reflecting in the final rule a revised standard for determining a necessary water and sewer infrastructure investment for eligible water and sewer uses beyond those uses that are eligible under the DWSRF and CWSRF.

Interpretation of Necessary Investments and Water and Sewer Infrastructure

Necessary Investments: As discussed above, Treasury considers an investment in infrastructure to be necessary if it is (1) responsive to an identified need to achieve or maintain an adequate minimum level of service, which for some eligible project categories may include a reasonable projection of increased need, whether due to population growth or otherwise and (2) a cost-effective means for meeting that need, taking into account available alternatives. In addition, in the case of investments in drinking water service infrastructure to supply drinking water to satisfy a projected increase in population, the project must also be projected to be sustainable over its estimated useful life. As detailed further below, DWSRF and CWSRF eligible projects continue to be presumed to be necessary investments under the final

³⁰¹ Treasury received several comments related to its encouragement of certain wage and labor standards in the Supplementary Information to the interim final rule. Some commenters opposed this encouragement, arguing that even encouragement and reference to PLAs and prevailing wage laws could lead to confusion or make it more likely that recipients would apply labor standards in ways that would discourage competition and raise project costs. Conversely, some commenters supported the encouragement of the use of certain standards, including giving preference to employers that meet certain employment standards (e.g., those that maintain high safety and training standards) because it would support the goal of completing water, sewer, and broadband projects efficiently and safely. As in the interim final rule, this encouragement does not impose a legally binding restriction on recipients.

³⁰² See U.S. Department of the Treasury, *Compliance and Reporting Guidance*, 21 (June 24, 2021), <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRF-Compliance-and-Reporting-Guidance.pdf>.

rule, with the exception of projects for the rehabilitation of dams and reservoirs, which the EPA has permitted in certain circumstances under the DWSRF and, as discussed below, are addressed separately in the final rule.

In evaluating whether a project would respond to a need to achieve or maintain an adequate minimum level of service, a recipient should consider whether it would meet the needs of the population to be served and would satisfy applicable standards. For example, a drinking water project must be sized such that it provides an adequate volume of water to households and other customers and must meet applicable standards for drinking water quality under the Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA). Similarly, a centralized wastewater treatment project should be designed to manage updated estimated flow rates and comply with Clean Water Act requirements. These requirements are already reflected in the eligibility criteria of the DWSRF and CWSRF, respectively.

In evaluating whether a project is a cost-effective means of providing the water or sewer service, the recipient should consider the need for the project, the costs and benefits of the project compared to alternatives, and the effectiveness of the project in meeting the identified need. Recipients are not required to conduct a full cost-benefit analysis; however, they should consider and analyze relevant factors. For example, a recipient may not use funds to pursue a costly dam rehabilitation to provide drinking water to a community if it could provide the same service with a significantly smaller investment by drawing water from another available reservoir, assuming that doing so would meet the other requirements of the final rule. As detailed further below, recipients are only required to assess cost-effectiveness of projects for the creation of new drinking water systems, dam and reservoir rehabilitation projects, or projects for the extension of drinking water service to meet population growth needs.

Certain DWSRF eligibilities are already subject to a cost-effectiveness test. Specifically, projects that create new drinking water systems must be a cost-effective solution to addressing the identified problem.³⁰³ The EPA also imposes a cost-effectiveness condition on dam and reservoir rehabilitation projects undertaken pursuant to its class deviation from the DWSRF rule. These projects are particularly expensive and, unlike in the case of other types of eligible projects, there are often

available alternatives to conducting these projects. Projects for the extension of drinking water service to meet population growth needs are also often particularly expensive, and there are often different ways to meet the needs of expanding populations. Treasury will accordingly require that recipients engage in a cost-effectiveness analysis when engaging in projects for the creation of new drinking water systems, dam and reservoir rehabilitation projects, or projects for the extension of drinking water service to meet population growth needs. Other types of eligible water or sewer projects will not be subject to this cost-effectiveness test, including lead line replacement and lead remediation.³⁰⁴

In the case of projects that expand drinking water service infrastructure to satisfy a projected increase in population, the project must also be sustainable, meaning that the project can continue providing the adequate minimum level of service for its estimated useful life, taking into account projected impacts of changes to the climate and other expected demands on the source of water. For example, a reservoir rehabilitation project may not be pursued if the reservoir will no longer be able to provide an adequate source of drinking water before the end of the estimated useful life of the improvements to the reservoir. In areas currently impacted by drought or where drought conditions are expected to be more frequent or more severe in the future, sources of drinking water may be diminished more quickly than in prior periods. In considering how much of a source of water will be available in the future for the drinking water project, a recipient must consider that a source of water may be drawn upon or otherwise used for other current and expected uses, including use by fish and other wildlife.

The final rule applies this sustainability condition to projects that expand drinking water service infrastructure to satisfy a projected increase in population but not to other drinking water projects. When a new source of water is required to remedy an existing threat to public health, as in the case of source projects eligible under the DWSRF, sustainability should be a consideration, but in some cases, the need to replace a contaminated source may mean that a less sustainable choice

may be made. When faced with such an issue, such as in the case of a contaminated well system, a project to replace the contaminated source can be said to be “necessary” even if the replaced source is not sustainable over the long term. Expediency may dictate that a shorter-term solution is pursued if it is cost-effective and will prevent health issues while a longer-term solution can be found. In contrast, an expansion to accommodate population growth cannot be said to be necessary if it is not sustainable over its estimated useful life.

Not included in the list of criteria above is the requirement in the interim final rule that the project be unlikely to be made using private sources of funds. Given that it may be difficult to assess in a particular case what the probability of private investment in a project would be, Treasury has eliminated this standard from the meaning of necessary but nevertheless encourages recipients to apply funds to projects that would provide the greatest public benefit.

Water and Sewer Infrastructure: As stated above, Congress provided that SLFRF funds are available for “necessary water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure.” Treasury interprets the reference to water and sewer uses consistent with the inclusion of broadband uses. Water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure all involve the provision of essential services to residents, businesses, and other consumers. As the pandemic has made clear, access to broadband has itself become essential for individuals and businesses to participate in education, commerce, work, and civic matters and to receive health care and social services.

Water and sewer services provided broadly to the public as essential services include the provision of drinking water and the removal, management, and treatment of wastewater and stormwater.³⁰⁵ Although governments are engaged in other infrastructure related to water, including irrigation projects, transportation projects, and recreation projects, such projects go beyond the scope of what is provided to all residents as an essential service. Provision of drinking water and removal, management, and treatment of

³⁰⁴ In such cases, either the projects are presumptively cost-effective (e.g., lead projects would always be considered cost-effective given the costs imposed by lead poisoning) or a cost-effectiveness test is less relevant given the lack of available alternatives or the relatively low cost of the project.

³⁰⁵ In many jurisdictions, stormwater flows into the sewer system rather than into a separate stormwater system. The separate inclusion of “water” and “sewer” infrastructure also makes clear that “water” in this context cannot refer to all uses relevant to water. Given that sewer systems carry wastewater (and often stormwater), if water infrastructure were to refer to all water-related infrastructure in this context, it would make the inclusion of sewer infrastructure redundant.

³⁰³ See 40 CFR 35.3520(b)(2)(vi).

wastewater and stormwater are the typical responsibilities of “water and sewer” authorities throughout the country, and there is a tremendous need for improvements to the ability of state, local, and Tribal governments to provide such services, including to address the consequences of deferred maintenance and additional resiliency needed to adapt to changes to the climate.³⁰⁶

Although the meaning of water and sewer infrastructure for purposes of sections 602(c)(1)(D) and 603(c)(1)(D) of the Social Security Act does not include all water-related uses, Treasury has made clear in this final rule that investments to infrastructure include a wide variety of projects. Treasury interprets the word “infrastructure” in this context broadly to mean the underlying framework or system for achieving the given public purpose, whether it be provision of drinking water or management of wastewater or stormwater.³⁰⁷ As discussed below, this can include not just storm drains and culverts for the management of stormwater, for example, but also bioretention basins and rain barrels implemented across a watershed, including on both public and private property, that together reduce the amount of runoff that needs to be managed by traditional infrastructure.

Further, Treasury understands that investments in infrastructure include

improvements that increase the capacity of existing infrastructure and extend the useful life of existing infrastructure. Accordingly, water and sewer infrastructure investment projects include those that conserve water, thereby reducing pressure on infrastructure for the provision of drinking water, and that recycle wastewater and stormwater, thereby reducing pressure on the infrastructure for treating and managing wastewater and stormwater.

As with other infrastructure projects and capital expenditure projects that are permitted as responses to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts, costs for planning and design and associated pre-project costs are eligible uses of SLFRF funds. Costs for the acquisition of land are also eligible, but only if needed for the purposes of locating eligible project components. Recipients should ensure that they have the technical, financial, and managerial capability to ensure compliance with the requirements of the SDWA, or that the assistance will ensure compliance and the owners or operators of the systems will undertake feasible and appropriate changes in operations to ensure compliance over the long-term.

Drinking Water State Revolving Fund and Clean Water State Revolving Fund

Background: As stated above, in the interim final rule, Treasury included eligible uses of the DWSRF and the CWSRF as eligible uses of the SLFRF in the water and sewer infrastructure category. By providing that projects eligible under the DWSRF and the CWSRF are also eligible uses of SLFRF funds, the interim final rule permitted a broad range of projects that improve drinking water infrastructure, such as building or upgrading facilities and transmission, distribution, and storage systems, including replacement of lead service lines. With respect to clean water and wastewater infrastructure, the interim final rule provided that recipients may use SLFRF funds to construct publicly owned treatment infrastructure, manage and treat stormwater or subsurface drainage water, and facilitate water reuse, among other uses. Consistent with the DWSRF and the CWSRF, the interim final rule provided that SLFRF funds may be used for cybersecurity needs to protect water or sewer infrastructure, such as developing effective cybersecurity practices and measures at drinking water systems and publicly owned treatment works.

Use of DWSRF and CWSRF to Support Climate Change Adaptations. Many of

the types of projects eligible under either the DWSRF or CWSRF also support efforts to address climate change. For example, by taking steps to manage potential sources of pollution and preventing these sources from reaching sources of drinking water, projects eligible under the DWSRF and CWSRF may reduce energy required to treat drinking water. Similarly, projects eligible under the DWSRF and CWSRF include measures to conserve and reuse water, for example through projects to reuse or recycle wastewater, stormwater, or subsurface drainage water. Treasury encourages recipients to consider green infrastructure investments and projects to improve resilience to the effects of climate change. For example, more frequent and extreme precipitation events combined with construction and development trends have led to increased instances of stormwater runoff, water pollution, and flooding. Green infrastructure projects that support stormwater system resiliency could include bioretention basins that provide water storage and filtration benefits, and green streets, where vegetation, soil, and engineered systems are combined to direct and filter rainwater from impervious surfaces. In cases of a natural disaster, recipients may also use SLFRF funds for water infrastructure to provide relief, such as interconnecting water systems or rehabilitating existing wells during an extended drought.

Public Comment: Many commenters expressed support for the interim final rule's alignment of the use of funds for water and sewer infrastructure under the SLFRF with the project categories provided through the EPA's DWSRF and CWSRF programs.

Many commenters also provided recommendations about the specific types of water infrastructure projects that should be eligible under the final rule. In many of these cases, commenters recommended that Treasury include project types that are already eligible under the DWSRF and CWSRF and thus eligible under the interim final rule and final rule. For example, several commenters requested that aquifer recharge projects, or other groundwater protection and restoration projects, be included as eligible uses of SLFRF when certain aquifer recharge projects that (1) implement a nonpoint source pollution management program³⁰⁸ or (2) constitute reuse of

³⁰⁶ In addition, Treasury interprets the eligible uses of SLFRF funds against the background of the Coronavirus Relief Fund (CRF), for which the SLFRF funds are, in part, a successor. CRF recipients expressed great interest in using the CRF to pursue water infrastructure projects, including provision of drinking water and internal plumbing on Tribal lands and in Alaskan villages, and broadband projects throughout the country; Treasury permitted these projects given the connection to the public health emergency (see Coronavirus Relief Fund for States, Tribal Governments, and Certain Eligible Local Governments, 86 FR 4182, 4190, 4192 (Jan. 15, 2021)), but the short deadline for use of funds made it difficult to use CRF funds in this way. Congress' inclusion of the water, sewer, and broadband clause in the ARPA, along with the SLFRF funds' longer eligible use date, is responsive to this unmet need. As discussed below, Congress in the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act amended sections 602(c) and 603(c) of the Social Security Act to add a new paragraph as sections 602(c)(4) and 603(c)(5), respectively, providing that SLFRF funds may be used to meet non-federal matching requirements of any authorized Bureau of Reclamation project. This authority was added as a separately enumerated eligible use regardless of whether the underlying project would be an eligible use of SLFRF funds under the water and sewer infrastructure eligible use category.

³⁰⁷ See, e.g., section 502 of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1362), defining “green infrastructure” as “the range of measures that use plant or soil systems, permeable pavement or other permeable surfaces or substrates, stormwater harvest and reuse, or landscaping to store, infiltrate, or evapotranspire stormwater and reduce flows to sewer systems or to surface waters.”

³⁰⁸ Specifically, this would include desalination projects that decrease the burden on aquifers where there is causal relationship between aquifer withdrawals and saltwater intrusion if the projects implement a nonpoint source pollution

wastewater, stormwater, or subsurface drainage water are in fact eligible uses under the CWSRF. Furthermore, under the DWSRF, eligible projects include certain aquifer storage and recovery systems for water storage.

Treasury Response: Eligible projects articulated in the DWSRF and CWSRF continue to be eligible uses of SLFRF funds under the final rule. Recognizing that recipients have faced challenges interpreting eligible use categories under the interim final rule or cross-referencing EPA program materials to interpret eligible project types, Treasury is including in this Supplementary Information additional information on the types of projects eligible under the DWSRF and CWSRF. Treasury emphasizes that this further clarification does not represent a change in eligibility. Treasury encourages recipients to reference EPA handbooks for the DWSRF and CWSRF, which provide further information and detail about the types of projects eligible under those programs and thus under the final rule.

Eligible projects under the DWSRF. Eligibilities under the DWSRF, the interim final rule, and the final rule include projects that address present or prevent future violations of health-based drinking water standards. These include projects needed to maintain compliance with existing national primary drinking water regulations for contaminants with acute and chronic health effects. Projects to replace aging infrastructure are also eligible uses if they are needed to maintain compliance or further the public health protection objectives of section 1452 of the SDWA.³⁰⁹ The following project categories are eligible under the DWSRF, were eligible under the interim final rule, and continue to be eligible under the final rule:

(i) *Treatment projects*, including installation or upgrade of facilities to

management program under section 319 of the Clean Water Act. This could include projects in which desalinated seawater is injected into the aquifer to mitigate or prevent salt water intrusion, as well as projects in which brackish water is removed from an aquifer, desalinated, and returned to the aquifer.

³⁰⁹ See 42 U.S.C. 300j–12(a)(2)(B) (limiting financial assistance used by a public water system to expenditures (including expenditures for planning, design, siting, and associated preconstruction activities, or for replacing or rehabilitating aging treatment, storage, or distribution facilities of public water systems, but not including monitoring, operation, and maintenance expenditures of a type or category which the Administrator of the EPA has determined, through guidance, will facilitate compliance with national primary drinking water regulations applicable to the system under 42 U.S.C. 300g–1 or otherwise significantly further the health protection objectives of the SDWA); See also 40 CFR 35.3520(b).

improve the quality of drinking water to comply with primary or secondary standards and point of entry or central treatment under section 1401(4)(B)(i)(III) of the SDWA.

(ii) *Transmission and distribution projects*, including installation or replacement of transmission and distribution pipes to improve water pressure to safe levels or to prevent contamination caused by leaks or breaks in the pipes.

(iii) *Source projects*, including rehabilitation of wells or development of eligible sources to replace contaminated sources.

(iv) *Storage projects*, including installation or upgrade of eligible storage facilities, including finished water reservoirs, to prevent microbiological contaminants from entering a public water system.

(v) *Consolidation projects*, including projects needed to consolidate water supplies where, for example, a supply has become contaminated or a system is unable to maintain compliance for technical, financial, or managerial reasons.

(vi) *Creation of new systems*, including those that, upon completion, will create a community water system to address existing public health problems with serious risks caused by unsafe drinking water provided by individual wells or surface water sources. Eligible projects are also those that create a new regional community water system by consolidating existing systems that have technical, financial, or managerial difficulties. Projects to address existing public health problems associated with individual wells or surface water sources must be limited in scope to the specific geographic area affected by contamination. Projects that create new regional community water systems by consolidating existing systems must be limited in scope to the service area of the systems being consolidated.

Ineligible projects under the DWSRF. Federally-owned public water systems and for-profit noncommunity water systems are not eligible to receive DWSRF funds and therefore SLFRF funds.³¹⁰ The acquisition of water rights, laboratory fees for routine compliance monitoring, and operation and maintenance expenses are not costs associated with investments in infrastructure and thus would not be eligible under the final rule.³¹¹ Projects needed primarily to serve future population growth are also ineligible under the DWSRF; the treatment of such projects under the final rule is discussed

separately below under “Expansion of Drinking Water Service.” Projects eligible under the DWSRF must be sized only to accommodate a reasonable amount of population growth expected to occur over the useful life of the project.

Eligible projects under the CWSRF.

The final rule continues to allow the use of SLFRF funds for projects eligible under the CWSRF, consistent with the interim final rule. Under the CWSRF, a project must meet the criteria of one of the following CWSRF eligibilities to be eligible for assistance. Section 603(c) of the Clean Water Act (CWA)³¹² provides that the CWSRF can provide assistance:

(i) to any municipality, intermunicipal, interstate, or state agency for construction of publicly owned treatment works (as defined in section 212 of the CWA);³¹³

(ii) for the implementation of a management program established under section 319 of the CWA;³¹⁴

(iii) for the development and implementation of a conservation and management plan under section 320 of the CWA;³¹⁵

(iv) for the construction, repair, or replacement of decentralized wastewater treatment systems that treat municipal wastewater or domestic sewage. Eligible projects include, but are not limited to, the construction of new decentralized systems (e.g., individual onsite systems and cluster systems), as well as the upgrade, repair, or replacement of existing systems.

(v) for measures to manage, reduce, treat, or recapture stormwater or subsurface drainage water. Publicly and privately owned, permitted and unpermitted projects that manage, reduce, treat, or recapture stormwater or subsurface drainage water are eligible. For example, projects that are specifically required by a Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) permit are eligible, regardless of ownership. Projects may include, but are not limited to green roofs, bioretention basins, roadside plantings, porous pavement, and rainwater harvesting.

(vi) to any municipality, intermunicipal, interstate, or state agency for measures to reduce the demand for publicly owned treatment works capacity through water conservation, efficiency, or reuse. Eligible projects include, but are not limited to, the installation, replacement, or upgrade of water meters; plumbing fixture retrofits or replacement; and gray water recycling. Water audits and water conservation plans are also eligible.

³¹² 33 U.S.C. 1383(c).

³¹³ 33 U.S.C. 1292.

³¹⁴ 33 U.S.C. 1329.

³¹⁵ 33 U.S.C. 1330.

³¹⁰ See 40 CFR 35.3520(d)(1).

³¹¹ See *id.* at § 35.3520(e)(2)–(4).

Equipment to reuse effluent (e.g., gray water, condensate, and wastewater effluent reuse systems) is eligible.

(vii) for the development and implementation of watershed projects meeting the criteria set forth in section 122 of the CWA.³¹⁶ Projects that develop or implement a watershed pilot project related to at least one of the six areas identified in section 122 of the CWA are eligible: Watershed management of wet weather discharges, stormwater best management practices, watershed partnerships, integrated water resource planning, municipality-wide stormwater management planning, or increased resilience of treatment works.

(viii) to any municipality, intermunicipal, interstate, or state agency for measures to reduce the energy consumption needs for publicly owned treatment works. Projects may include, but are not limited to, the installation of energy efficient lighting, HVAC, process equipment, and electronic equipment and systems at publicly owned treatment works. Planning activities, such as energy audits and optimization studies are also eligible.

(ix) for reusing or recycling wastewater, stormwater, or subsurface drainage water. Projects involving the reuse or recycling of wastewater, stormwater, or subsurface drainage water are eligible. This includes, as part of a reuse project, the purchase and installation of treatment equipment sufficient to meet reuse standards. Other eligible projects include, but are not limited to, distribution systems to support effluent reuse, including piping the effluent on the property of a private consumer, recharge transmission lines, injection wells, and equipment to reuse effluent (e.g., gray water, condensate, and wastewater effluent reuse systems).

(x) for measures to increase the security of publicly owned treatment works. Security measures for publicly owned treatment works might include, but are not limited to, vulnerability assessments, contingency/emergency response plans, fencing, security cameras/lighting, motion detectors, redundancy (systems and power), secure chemical and fuel storage, laboratory equipment, securing large sanitary sewers, and tamper-proof manholes. The CWSRF cannot fund operations and maintenance activities. Therefore, maintaining a human presence (i.e., security guards) and monitoring activities are not eligible.

Other Clarifications of DSWRF and CWSRF Eligible Project Categories

Public Comment: Several commenters requested that Treasury provide clarification of the requirements associated with use of SLFRF funds for necessary investments in water and sewer infrastructure.

Treasury Response: After release of the interim final rule, Treasury clarified in further guidance that, while recipients must ensure that water and sewer infrastructure projects pursued are eligible under the final rule, recipients are not required to obtain project pre-approval from Treasury or any other federal agency when using SLFRF funds for necessary water and sewer infrastructure projects unless otherwise required by federal law. For projects that are being pursued under the eligibility categories provided through the DWSRF or CWSRF programs, project eligibilities are based on federal project categories and definitions for the programs and not on each state's eligibility or definitions. While reference in the final rule to the DWSRF, CWSRF, or other federal water programs is provided to assist recipients in understanding the types of water and sewer infrastructure projects eligible to be funded with SLFRF, recipients do not need to apply for funding from the applicable state programs or through any federal water program. Similarly, besides eligible project categories, the final rule does not incorporate other program requirements or guidance that attach to the DWSRF, CWSRF, or other federal water programs. However, as noted above, recipients should be aware of other federal or state laws or regulations that may apply to construction projects or water and sewer projects, independent of SLFRF funding conditions, and that may require pre-approval from another federal or state agency.

Expanded Eligible Uses for Water and Sewer Infrastructure Summary

Public Comment: Many commenters requested broader flexibility in the use of SLFRF funds for water and sewer infrastructure projects that are not eligible under the DWSRF and CWSRF. These commenters argued that localities are best situated to identify the highest-need water and sewer projects in their communities. Several Tribal government commenters noted that Tribes have different water and sewer infrastructure needs than states and localities and that additional flexibility in the use of funds would lift current

barriers to improving infrastructure on Tribal lands.

To achieve additional flexibility, commenters suggested a range of options for broadening the eligible use of SLFRF funds for necessary water and sewer infrastructure. For example, several commenters suggested Treasury broaden the eligibilities provided under the interim final rule to include project types eligible under other federal water and sewer programs.

Treasury Response: Treasury agrees that additional flexibility for use of SLFRF funds is warranted and is providing expanded eligibilities as described below, several of which address specific areas of need outlined by Tribal and rural communities.

As discussed below, Treasury has incorporated into the final rule projects that are eligible under certain programs established by the EPA under the Water Infrastructure Improvements for the Nation Act (WIIN Act). Other water-related grant programs cited by commenters include projects that are otherwise already covered by the final rule, for example because they are covered as eligible under the DWSRF or the CWSRF, or projects that are ineligible under the final rule because they are beyond the scope of the meaning of water and sewer projects for purposes of ARPA. To minimize the need for recipients of SLFRF funds to cross reference eligibilities across multiple federal programs, which may exacerbate current challenges to understanding eligibility under SLFRF, Treasury is providing detailed information related to expanded eligibilities within the text of this **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** for the final rule.

Stormwater Infrastructure

Public Comment: Several commenters requested that additional stormwater infrastructure projects be included as eligible uses of SLFRF funds under the final rule. Commenters suggested that culvert repair and resizing and replacement of storm sewers is necessary to address increased rainfall brought about by a changing climate. Other commenters noted that rural communities that do not manage their own sewer systems may rely on this type of water infrastructure.

Treasury Response: The CWSRF includes a broad range of stormwater infrastructure projects, and as such these projects were eligible under the interim final rule and continue to be eligible under the final rule. These projects include gray infrastructure projects, such as traditional pipe, storage, and treatment systems. Projects

³¹⁶ 33 U.S.C. 1274.

that manage, reduce, treat, or recapture stormwater or subsurface drainage water are also eligible, including real-time control systems for combined sewer overflow management, and sediment control. Culvert infrastructure projects are eligible under the CWSRF if they (1) implement a nonpoint source management plan, (2) implement National Estuary Program Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan, or (3) implement a stormwater management plan with the goal of providing a water quality benefit. Stormwater projects under the CWSRF also encompass a number of eligible green infrastructure categories, such as green roofs, green streets, and green walls, rainwater harvesting collection, storage, management, and distribution systems, real-time control systems for harvested rainwater, infiltration basins, constructed wetlands, including surface flow and subsurface flow (e.g., gravel) wetlands, bioretention/bioswales (e.g., bioretention basins, tree boxes), permeable pavement, wetland, riparian, or shoreline creation, protection, and restoration, establishment or restoration of urban tree canopy, and replacement of gray infrastructure with green infrastructure including purchase and demolition costs.

In addition to the eligible uses under the CWSRF, Treasury is expanding the eligible uses under the final rule to include stormwater system infrastructure projects regardless of whether there is an expected water quality benefit from the project. Treasury anticipates that this eligible use will allow recipients to manage increased volumes of stormwater as a result of changes to the climate. For example, the final rule now permits the use of SLFRF funds for the repair, replacement, or removal of culverts or other road-stream crossing infrastructure to the extent the purpose of the project is to manage stormwater. In addition, Treasury understands that the repair, replacement, or removal of culverts may necessitate the repair or upgrade of roads. As noted in guidance issued after the interim final rule, recipients may use SLFRF funds for road repairs and upgrades that interact directly with an eligible stormwater infrastructure project. All stormwater infrastructure projects undertaken should incorporate updated design features and current best practices.

Private Wells and Septic Systems

Public Comment: Several commenters requested that the scope of eligible projects be expanded to allow for the expenditure of SLFRF funds on private wells or septic systems. Commenters

noted that wells may be contaminated with dangerous substances, including arsenic, lead, radon, and PFAS (per- and polyfluoroalkyl). Commenters also suggested that, because rural and underserved communities are often reliant on these infrastructure types for their drinking water or wastewater needs, lack of appropriate funding to maintain these systems could present health and safety issues that disproportionately affect certain communities.

Treasury Response: Consistent with the CWSRF, the installation, repair, or replacement of private septic units continues to be an eligible use of SLFRF funds under the final rule. For example, eligible projects include those that address groundwater contamination resulting from faulty septic units and those that would connect failing septic systems to centralized wastewater treatment. Consistent with the DWSRF, connecting homes served by a private well to a public water system is an eligible use of SLFRF funds.

In addition, Treasury has provided in the final rule that recipients may use SLFRF funds for an expanded set of infrastructure projects that improve access to and provision of safe drinking water for individuals served by residential wells. Eligible projects under this category include rehabilitation of private wells, testing initiatives to identify contaminants in wells, and treatment activities and remediation strategies that address contamination.

Remediating Lead in Water

Public Comment: Several commenters emphasized the need to fully remediate lead contamination, especially in structures that serve the public or populations like children that are particularly vulnerable to the effects of lead exposure, such as schools and daycares. Many American households and an estimated 400,000 schools and childcare centers currently lack safe drinking water.³¹⁷

Treasury Response: The replacement of lead service lines, up to premise plumbing, is an eligible use under the DWSRF and continues to be an eligible use of SLFRF funds. Such projects are eligible regardless of the pipe material of the replacement lines and ownership of the property on which the service line is located. Lead service line replacement projects can serve households, schools, or any other

entities. Given the lifelong impacts of lead exposure for children and the widespread prevalence of lead service lines, Treasury encourages recipients to consider projects to replace lead service lines.

In addition, Treasury is providing in the final rule that for lead service line replacement projects, recipients must replace the full length of the service line, and not just a partial portion of the service line. Some water utilities, when replacing service lines, will only replace the “public portion” of the service line and physically slice through the lead service line at the public/private line. This action can result in elevated drinking water lead levels for some period of time after replacement, suggesting the potential for harm, rather than benefit during that time period.³¹⁸ Requiring replacement of the full length of the service line is also consistent with the requirements of the EPA’s Lead and Copper Rule Revisions for water systems that have an action level exceedance for lead³¹⁹ and certain other water systems.³²⁰

Treasury is expanding eligible uses of SLFRF funds to include infrastructure projects eligible under EPA grant programs authorized by the WIIN Act.³²¹ Eligible projects under these programs include the installation or re-optimization of corrosion control treatment, replacing lead service lines, replacing galvanized pipes downstream of a lead service line (other than lead pipes within a home as discussed below), and maintaining an inventory of the drinking water system’s service lines. Water quality testing, compliance monitoring, and remediation activities in schools and other childcare facilities, as well as activities necessary to respond to a contaminant, are eligible uses of SLFRF funds.³²² Remediation

³¹⁸ See EPA Science Advisory Board, Evaluation of the Effectiveness of Partial Lead Service Line Replacements, (September 2011), <https://www.epa.gov/sdwa/science-advisory-board-evaluation-effectiveness-partial-lead-service-line-replacements> (advising against partial lead service line replacement).

³¹⁹ Environmental Protection Agency, *supra* note 188.

³²⁰ Environmental Protection Agency, National Primary Drinking Water Regulations: Lead and Copper Rule Revisions, 86 FR 4198, 40 CFR 141.84, and preamble at 4215, January 15, 2021, <https://www.federalregister.gov/d/2020-28691>; scheduled to become effective December 16, 2021, Environmental Protection Agency, 86 FR 31939, <https://www.federalregister.gov/d/2021-12600>.

³²¹ Eligible uses of funds include those eligible under the Small, Underserved, and Disadvantaged Communities Grant (Section 2104), Reduction in Lead Exposure via Drinking Water Grant Program (Section 2105) and Lead Testing in School and Child Care Program Drinking Water Grant Program (Section 2107).

³²² Such testing and remediation programs would be an eligible use of SLFRF funds given that they

³¹⁷ The White House, Updated Fact Sheet: Bipartisan Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act (August 2, 2021), <https://www.whitehouse.gov/briefing-room/statements-releases/2021/08/02/updated-fact-sheet-bipartisan-infrastructure-investment-and-jobs-act/>.

activities such as replacement of faucets, internal plumbing, and fixtures in schools and childcare facilities are also an eligible use of SLFRF funds.

Consistent with the EPA programs, replacement of lead pipes within a home is not eligible under the final rule because the vast majority of lead contamination cases can be solved by replacing lead service lines (including on public and private property) and faucets and fixtures themselves. As such, replacement of lead pipes within a home would not be considered a cost-effective means for achieving the desired level of service and thus would not be a “necessary” investment. The provision of bottled water is also not an eligible use of SLFRF funds under this eligible use category, as it is not an investment in infrastructure. However, bottled water in areas with an action level exceedance for lead in water may be an eligible use of SLFRF funds under a separate eligible use category for “remediation of lead paint and other lead hazards;” see Assistance to Households in Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts.

Water filtration systems are eligible under the EPA grant programs and the final rule as long as they are installed as a permanent part of a facility’s system and not intended for temporary use. Conducting remediation, follow-up monitoring, and conducting public education and outreach about the availability of infrastructure programs, such as water testing and fixture replacement programs funded with SLFRF funds or otherwise, are also eligible projects. Finally, recipients should note that “remediation of lead paint and other lead hazards” is a separate eligible use category and a broader range of programs and services may be eligible under that section, including investments that are not infrastructure; see the eligible use for “remediation of lead paint and other lead hazards” in section Assistance to Households in Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts.

Dams and Reservoirs

Public Comment: Many commenters requested that Treasury broaden eligibilities to include dams and reservoirs, infrastructure that commenters noted may in its current state be unsafe and could put surrounding communities at risk. Some

commenters argued that dams and reservoirs play an important role in providing municipal water supply and water to irrigate farmland, including in areas impacted by recent droughts. Other commenters noted that a large number of dams are currently classified as high-hazard structures, the failure of which would have severe consequences for public safety and the local environment. With respect to reservoirs, commenters articulated that changing climate conditions have necessitated upgrades to reservoir infrastructure to ensure existing facilities can meet the local water needs of a community. Commenters noted that communities facing drought may also need to adjust or enhance reservoirs to maintain adequate water supply.

In contrast, several commenters suggested that infrastructure projects related to dams and reservoirs should not be considered eligible uses of SLFRF funds. These commenters noted that alternate sources of funding exist for dam and reservoir projects and that dams and reservoir infrastructure could result in negative impacts to Tribal communities and negative environmental impacts, including harm to wildlife habitats.

Treasury Response: Treasury understands that many dams and reservoirs in need of rehabilitation are dams and reservoirs whose primary purpose is to provide drinking water. As discussed above, SLFRF funds are available for projects related to the provision of drinking water. Moreover, since issuance of the interim final rule, the EPA has adopted a class deviation from the DWSRF regulations that permits such dam and reservoir rehabilitation projects in certain circumstances.³²³ In approving this class deviation, the EPA recognized that many dams used for drinking water are aging and deteriorating and pose a public health risk to communities; that current dam conditions do not meet state safety standards; and that reservoir capacity has diminished and requires dredging to meet drinking water needs of the existing population.

Treasury’s final rule provides that funds may be used for rehabilitation of dams and reservoirs if the primary purpose of the dam or reservoir is for drinking water supply and the rehabilitation project is necessary for continued provision of drinking water

supply. In considering whether a dam or reservoir project is necessary for the provision of drinking water supply, a recipient may take into consideration future population growth in certain circumstances, as discussed under “Expansion of Drinking Water Service Infrastructure” below, but the project must in any case be designed to support no more than a reasonable level of projected increased need. The recipient must also determine that the project is cost-effective, *i.e.*, that there are not significantly superior alternatives that are available, taking into consideration the relative costs and benefits of the project as compared to those alternatives.

This change to the final rule would permit a wide variety of projects.³²⁴ The limitation in the final rule to rehabilitation of existing dams and reservoirs reflects the scope of the EPA class deviation referenced above and Treasury’s understanding of the significant need for investments in rehabilitation to address deterioration of dams and the diminished capacity of reservoirs. Further, Treasury expects that in many cases it would be considerably more difficult to demonstrate that construction of a new dam or reservoir would be necessary for the purpose of the provision of drinking water than is the case for rehabilitation of dams and reservoirs already serving that purpose for a particular population, particularly given opportunities to meet drinking water needs through water reuse and conservation efforts. For these reasons, and given that the relatively short period of availability of the funds makes new dam and reservoir construction with these funds less likely, Treasury has limited the scope of the final rule to dam and reservoir rehabilitation projects.

As discussed above, Treasury has determined that ARPA does not authorize the use of SLFRF funds for uses other than the provision of drinking water and the management of wastewater and storm water. As such, the final rule does not include infrastructure projects related to dams and reservoirs as eligible uses of SLFRF funds unless they meet the conditions discussed above.

³²⁴ As noted in the EPA’s class deviation, examples of dam rehabilitation projects include spillway reconstruction or repair; dam resurfacing, patching, or other structural repairs, including minimal height increases if needed to maintain the structural integrity of the dam; grouting for seepage control or liquefaction remediation (*e.g.*, epoxy resin, asphalt, or rock); repair or replacement of drainage systems; and seismic stability efforts (*e.g.*, anchors). Examples of reservoir rehabilitation projects include sedimentation dredging and reservoir lining.

would help a recipient determine whether an infrastructure project, such as a lead line replacement, is necessary. In contrast, as mentioned above, the costs of continual testing that is part of a drinking water or wastewater facilities’ operating costs would not be considered part of an infrastructure project.

³²³ See EPA, Approval of Class Exception from the Regulatory Prohibitions on the Use of Drinking Water State Revolving Fund for Rehabilitation of Dams and Reservoirs (July 14, 2021), available at <https://www.epa.gov/system/files/documents/2021-07/dwsrf-class-deviation-dam-reservoir-rehab-2021-0.pdf>.

Public Comment: Several commenters requested that the removal of dams and associated habitat restoration should be eligible uses of SLFRF funds, noting that in some cases, dam removal will improve water quality while removing long-term operational expenses for the recipient.

Treasury Response: Dam removal projects and associated stream and habitat restoration projects are eligible uses of the CWSRF and continue to be eligible under the final rule when the removal implements either a nonpoint source management program plan or a National Estuary Program Comprehensive Conservation and Management Plan or when the removal will provide a water quality benefit. Habitat restoration projects more generally may also be eligible under the CWSRF and the final rule if they constitute a form of stormwater infrastructure.

Expansion of Drinking Water Service Infrastructure

Public Comment: Commenters asked for the ability to use funds for drinking water projects for the purpose of meeting needs arising from future growth, which, given the restrictions applicable to the DWSRF, was not permitted under the interim final rule.

Treasury Response: As provided for in the SDWA, the DWSRF is meant to serve the public health needs of the existing population. The EPA regulation implementing the DWSRF program provides that projects needed primarily to serve future population growth are not eligible uses of the DWSRF. A project that is intended primarily to address public health or regulatory compliance issues for the existing service population may be sized for a “reasonable” amount of population growth over the useful life of the project.³²⁵

ARPA does not include the same limitation as the SDWA. Accordingly, the final rule provides that recipients may use SLFRF funds for projects that are needed to support increased population in certain cases. ARPA limits projects to those investments that are “necessary.” As discussed above, Treasury interprets this to mean that the investments must be (1) responsive to an identified need to achieve or maintain an adequate minimum level of service, which for some eligible project categories may include a reasonable projection of increased need, whether due to population growth or otherwise and (2) a cost-effective means for meeting that need, taking into account

available alternatives. For this eligible use category, expansion of drinking water service infrastructure, the project must also be projected to be sustainable over its estimated useful life.

Investments must be determined to be necessary when they are initiated. Accordingly, Treasury is clarifying in the final rule that the need identified for a water or sewer project may include a need arising from reasonable expectations of future population growth, provided that it is necessary at the time the investment is initiated for the recipient to make the investment to meet this growth. For example, a recipient expecting increased population during the period of performance may install a drinking water treatment plant to meet that growth. In addition, a recipient expecting increased population growth outside the period of performance may install the treatment plant if the planning and construction timeline for the project would require work to begin during the performance period in order to meet the expected population growth. A recipient may install transmission lines as part of the development of new housing occurring during the period of performance. In this case, the housing development must be in progress; a recipient may not use the SLFRF funds to install a water main, for example, to an undeveloped tract in the expectation that in the future that tract will be developed with housing, because there would be no need for that investment to be made at the time it is initiated.

For the reasons discussed above, if a project is undertaken to address expected growth in population, the project must also be sustainable, meaning that the project can continue providing the adequate minimum level of service for its estimated useful life, taking into account projected impacts of changes to the climate and other expected demands on the source of water. In considering how much of a source of water will be available in the future for the drinking water project, a recipient must consider that a source of water may be drawn upon or otherwise used for other current and expected uses, including use by fish and other wildlife. A drinking water project that is designed to address a growing population cannot be considered a necessary investment if the source of drinking water will cease to be available to meet the population’s needs before the end of the estimated useful life of the project. In such a case, a recipient should consider alternative sources for drinking water. See “Interpretation of Necessary Investments and Water and

Sewer Infrastructure” above for more information.

Non-Federal Matching Requirements for Authorized Bureau of Reclamation Projects

The Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act amends sections 602(c) and 603(c) of the Social Security Act to add an additional eligible use of SLFRF funds, providing that SLFRF funds “may be used for purposes of satisfying any non-Federal matching requirement required for [an authorized Bureau of Reclamation project].”³²⁶

This amendment permits the use of SLFRF funds to meet non-federal matching requirements of any authorized Bureau of Reclamation project, regardless of whether the underlying project would be an eligible use of SLFRF funds under the water and sewer infrastructure eligible use category. These amendments are effective as of March 11, 2021, as if included in the ARPA at the time of its enactment.³²⁷ Treasury will provide further guidance to recipients on the scope of Bureau of Reclamation water projects and expenses covered by this provision.

Floodplain Management and Flood Mitigation Projects

Public Comment: Several commenters requested that projects to address floodwater, including floodplain management and flood mitigation projects, be included as an eligible use of SLFRF funds. Within this category of floodplain management and flood mitigation infrastructure, several commenters requested that the installation of levees, flood walls, sea walls, elevation projects, dredging, or nature-based flood mitigation projects be included as eligible projects.

Treasury Response: Treasury notes that some floodplain management and flood mitigation infrastructure projects, including green infrastructure designed to protect treatment works from flood waters and flood impact are currently eligible under the CWSRF and therefore continue to be eligible under the final rule.

Treasury has not included floodplain management and flood mitigation projects more generally as eligible under the final rule. Although floodplain management and flood mitigation are functions of many state and local governments, they are not the sort of generally-provided essential services included within the meaning of water

³²⁵ See 40 CFR 35.3520(e)(5).

³²⁶ See Public Law 117–58, 40909(a)–(b) (Nov. 15, 2021).

³²⁷ See Public Law 117–58 § 40909(c).

and sewer projects under the ARPA, as discussed above.

Irrigation

Public Comment: Some commenters requested that irrigation projects be an eligible use because they consider such projects to be critical infrastructure. Several commenters supported this request by noting that irrigation systems may be used to replenish aquifers and recharge wells, in addition to delivering water for irrigation. One commenter also noted that the national irrigation system is antiquated and in need of repair.

Treasury Response: Some irrigation projects were eligible under the interim final rule and continue to be eligible under the final rule as a result of their inclusion as eligible projects under the CWSRF. For example, water efficient irrigation equipment that reduces the runoff of nutrients and implements a management program established under section 319 of the CWA and/or a conservation and management plan under section 320 of the CWA are eligible uses under the CWSRF and therefore continue to be an eligible use of SLFRF funds under the final rule. Likewise, projects to receive and distribute reclaimed water for irrigation systems or other agricultural use are eligible under the CWSRF and therefore continue to be an eligible use under the final rule. Unlike projects for the improvement of irrigation systems generally, these reclaimed water projects are related to wastewater treatment and stormwater management, which are within the scope of the meaning of water and sewer infrastructure for purposes of ARPA.

Treasury considered commenter requests for inclusion of additional irrigation infrastructure and determined that irrigation projects more generally are not permitted under the final rule. Although these types of projects may be water-related infrastructure, they are not the sort of generally-provided essential services included within the meaning of water and sewer projects under ARPA, as discussed above.

Consumer Incentive Programs

Public Comment: One commenter requested that consumer incentive programs in the areas of water use efficiency, conservation, green infrastructure, reuse, and other distributed solutions be an allowable use of SLFRF.

Treasury Response: The DWSRF and CWSRF eligibilities include the development and implementation of incentive and educational programs that address and promote water conservation, source water protection,

and efficiency related to infrastructure improvements, e.g., incentives such as rebates to install green infrastructure such as rain barrels or promote other water conservation activities. Treasury clarifies that such project types were eligible under the interim final rule and continue to be eligible under the final rule.

2. Broadband Infrastructure

Under the ARPA, recipient governments may use SLFRF funds to make “necessary investments in . . . broadband infrastructure.” In the Supplementary Information to the interim final rule, Treasury interpreted necessary investments in infrastructure as investments “designed to provide an adequate minimum level of service and [that] are unlikely to be made using private sources of funds.” Treasury explained that, with respect to broadband specifically, such necessary investments include projects that “establish [] or improve [] broadband service to underserved populations to reach an adequate level to permit a household to work or attend school, and that are unlikely to be met with private sources of funds.”

Summary of Interim Final Rule, Public Comments, and Treasury Response

Summary of Interim Final Rule: In implementing the ARPA, the interim final rule provided that eligible broadband infrastructure investments are limited to those that are designed to provide service to unserved or underserved households or businesses, defined as those that lack access to a wireline connection capable of reliably delivering at least minimum speeds of 25 Mbps download and 3 Mbps upload. The interim final rule also provided that eligible projects under the SLFRF are limited to those that are designed to deliver, upon project completion, service that reliably meets or exceeds symmetrical upload and download speeds of 100 Mbps. In instances where it would not be practicable for a project to deliver such service speeds because of the geography, topography, or excessive costs associated with such a project, the interim final rule provided that the project would be required to be designed to deliver, upon project completion, service that reliably meets or exceeds 100 Mbps download speed and between at least 20 Mbps and 100 Mbps upload speeds and be scalable to a minimum of 100 Mbps symmetrical for download and upload speeds.

In addition, Treasury, in the Supplementary Information to the interim final rule, encouraged recipients to pursue a number of other objectives.

First, Treasury encouraged recipients to prioritize investments in fiber-optic infrastructure wherever feasible and focus on projects that deliver a physical broadband connection by prioritizing projects that achieve last-mile connections. Second, Treasury encouraged recipients to integrate affordability options into their program design. Third, Treasury encouraged recipients to prioritize support for local networks owned, operated, or affiliated with local governments, nonprofits, and cooperatives. Fourth, Treasury encouraged recipients to avoid investing in locations with existing agreements to build reliable wireline service with minimum speeds of 100 Mbps download and 20 Mbps upload by December 31, 2024, in order to avoid duplication of efforts and resources. Finally, following release of the interim final rule, Treasury provided further guidance clarifying some aspects of broadband infrastructure eligibility, specifically on flexibility for recipients to determine eligible areas to be served,³²⁸ middle-mile projects,³²⁹ pre-project development costs,³³⁰ broadband connections to schools or libraries,³³¹ and the applicability of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and the Davis-Bacon Act.³³²

Summary of Public Comments: Treasury received several comments on the interim final rule’s requirements regarding eligible areas for investment and build-to speed standards, as well as Treasury’s encouragements in the Supplementary Information of the interim final rule. Many commenters found the interim final rule’s requirement to limit projects to those designed to provide service to unserved or underserved households or businesses to be appropriately focused on hard-to-reach areas. In contrast, other commenters argued that this requirement was too restrictive and that it would limit the ability for some recipients, particularly local governments, to invest in broadband infrastructure.

Separately, some commenters supported the interim final rule’s requirement that eligible projects be built to reliable speeds of 100 Mbps symmetrical, with an exception for areas where it was impracticable, and encouragement that projects be built with fiber-optic infrastructure, while a

³²⁸ See FAQ 6.8, 6.9, 6.11. Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRFPFAQ.pdf>.

³²⁹ See FAQ 6.10. *Id.*

³³⁰ See FAQ 6.12. *Id.*

³³¹ See FAQ 6.16. *Id.*

³³² See FAQ 6.4, 6.17. *Id.*

few others argued that the interim final rule should remain technology-neutral and that lower speed standards would be more appropriate for today's usage needs.

Summary of Treasury Response: In response to the comments, the final rule expands eligible areas for investment by requiring recipients to invest in projects designed to provide service to households and businesses with an identified need for additional broadband infrastructure investment, which would include but not be limited to a lack of broadband service reliably delivering certain speeds. In addition, as discussed further below, the final rule further supports the expansion of affordable access to broadband service for households by requiring that recipients use a provider that participates in a qualifying affordability plan. Treasury encourages recipients to prioritize projects that are designed to provide service to locations not currently served by a wireline connection that reliably delivers at least 100 Mbps of download speed and 20 Mbps of upload speed.

The final rule maintains the interim final rule's requirement that eligible projects be designed to, upon completion, reliably meet or exceed symmetrical 100 Mbps download and upload speeds. As was the case under the interim final rule, in cases where it is not practicable, because of the excessive cost of the project or geography or topography of the area to be served by the project, eligible projects may be designed to reliably meet or exceed 100 Mbps download speed and between at least 20 Mbps and 100 Mbps upload speed and be scalable to a minimum of 100 Mbps download speed and 100 Mbps upload speed. Treasury continues to encourage recipients to prioritize investments in fiber-optic infrastructure wherever feasible and to focus on projects that will achieve last-mile connections, whether by focusing directly on funding last-mile projects or by ensuring that funded middle-mile projects have commitments in place to support new and/or improved last-mile service.

The final rule requires recipients to address the affordability needs of low-income consumers in accessing broadband networks funded by SLFRF, given that such a project cannot be considered a necessary investment in broadband infrastructure if it is not affordable to the population the project would serve. Recipients must require the service provider for a completed broadband infrastructure investment project that provides service to households to either participate in the

Federal Communications Commission's (FCC) Affordable Connectivity Program (ACP), or otherwise provide access to a broad-based affordability program to low-income consumers in the proposed service area of the broadband infrastructure that provides benefits to households commensurate with those provided under the ACP.

Treasury also recognizes the importance of affordable broadband access for all consumers beyond those that are low-income. As part of their project selection process, recipients are encouraged to consult with the community on the general affordability needs of the target markets in the proposed service area. Additionally, recipients are encouraged to require that services provided by a broadband infrastructure project include at least one low-cost option offered without data usage caps and at speeds that are sufficient for a household with multiple users to simultaneously telework and engage in remote learning. Recipients will be required to report speed, pricing, and any data allowance information as part of mandatory reporting to Treasury.

The final rule also clarifies that subsidies to households and communities impacted by the pandemic to access the internet, broadband adoption programs, digital literacy programs, and device programs are eligible programs to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic under sections 602(c)(1)(A) and 603(c)(1)(A). See section Assistance to Households in Negative Economic Impacts.

Treasury continues to encourage recipients to prioritize support for broadband networks owned, operated by, or affiliated with local governments, nonprofits, and cooperatives. In addition, to the extent recipients are considering deploying broadband to locations where there are existing enforceable federal or state funding commitments for reliable service at speeds of at least 100 Mbps download speed and 20 Mbps upload speed, recipients must ensure that SLFRF funds are designed to address an identified need for additional broadband investment that is not met by existing federal or state funding commitments. Recipients must also ensure that SLFRF funds will not be used for costs that will be reimbursed by the other federal or state funding streams. Further, Treasury highlights that recipients are subject to the prohibition on use of grant funds to procure or obtain certain telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment as outlined in 2 CFR 200.216 and 2 CFR

200.471 and clarifies that modernization of cybersecurity for existing and new broadband networks are eligible uses of funds under sections 602(c)(1)(D) and 603(c)(1)(D).

Finally, this Supplementary Information to the final rule incorporates and confirms guidance issued by Treasury following the interim final rule regarding middle-mile projects,³³³ pre-project development costs,³³⁴ broadband connections to schools or libraries,³³⁵ and applicability of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and Davis-Bacon Act.³³⁶

The remainder of this section provides additional details on the final rule. Specifically, these sections address: (1) Eligible areas for investment; (2) build-to speed standards; (3) affordability; (4) public networks; (5) duplication of efforts and resources; (6) cybersecurity; and (7) use of funds to meet non-federal match under the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act.

Eligible Areas for Investment

The interim final rule limited eligible broadband investments to projects focused on delivering service to unserved or underserved locations, defined as households or businesses that lack access to a wireline connection capable of reliably delivering at least minimum speeds of 25 Mbps download and 3 Mbps upload. This targeted approach was generally consistent with certain speed thresholds used in other federal programs to identify eligible areas for federal investment in broadband infrastructure, such as the FCC's Rural Digital Opportunity Fund (RDOF) program and the National Telecommunication and Information Administration's (NTIA's) Broadband Infrastructure Program, and generally aligns with the FCC's benchmark for an "advanced telecommunications capability" for wireline broadband services.

Public Comment: Many commenters discussed the disadvantages of such an approach. Some commenters, including several local government recipients, argued that limiting investments to locations without access to reliable wireline 25/3 Mbps³³⁷ was too

³³³ See FAQ 6.10. Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRFPFAQ.pdf>.

³³⁴ See FAQ 6.12. *Id.*

³³⁵ See FAQ 6.16. *Id.*

³³⁶ See FAQ 6.4, 6.17. *Id.*

³³⁷ In the remainder of this Supplementary Information, "25/3 Mbps" refers to broadband infrastructure that is designed to reliably meet or exceed at least 25 Mbps download speeds and 3

restrictive because some urban jurisdictions are already mostly or entirely covered by a network with at least 25/3 Mbps speeds yet lack widespread broadband adoption for various reasons. Commenters suggested that recipients would benefit from greater flexibility to provide necessary investments in broadband access in areas that are nominally covered by speeds of at least 25/3 Mbps, such as to provide affordable broadband access in low-income areas or to address service quality and reliability issues. Further, commenters argued that Treasury's requirement that new projects meet minimum reliable speeds of 100 Mbps symmetrical was inconsistent with the requirement that broadband infrastructure projects focus on those with access to significantly lower speeds, and further noted that several states have already expanded the focus of their broadband programs beyond those without reliable access to speeds of 25/3 Mbps. Commenters argued that if the limitation to unserved and underserved households and businesses were maintained, the definition of unserved and underserved households and businesses should be revised to include households and businesses currently served by higher standards. Commenters proposed a number of alternative cutoff speeds, including 25/25 Mbps, 50/10 Mbps, and 100 Mbps symmetrical. Others expressed support for providing flexibility for recipients to make their own determination on eligible areas for investment. These commenters referenced studies indicating that 25/3 Mbps is inadequate for today's modern household or business needs.

Some commenters advocated for unserved and underserved areas to be prioritized while providing flexibility for recipients to serve areas beyond those designated as unserved or underserved. Reflecting the perceived restrictiveness of the interim final rule approach, some commenters asked for assurance that projects conducted under other categories of SLFRF eligible uses, specifically to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic under sections 602(c)(1)(A)–(C) and 603(c)(1)(A)–(C), were not barred by the presence of 25/3 Mbps service, including “gap networks,” which are networks designed to offer low-cost or no-cost internet access for lower-income

households with low broadband adoption rates.

Commenters suggested additional factors to be incorporated in the consideration of locations that are eligible to be served. Many commenters suggested that affordability should be considered a key factor when determining whether a community has access to broadband, as the presence of 25/3 Mbps service does not necessarily mean the service is financially accessible to the area's residents. Commenters noted that surveys indicate that affordability, not lack of coverage, is the most significant barrier for most Americans who do not have robust broadband service in their households. Some advocated that the final rule allow for investments in areas with existing reliable wireline access at or above 25/3 Mbps as long as existing broadband service has been unaffordable for a certain segment of the population; others advocated that Treasury presume eligibility when investments are made in certain areas, such as Qualified Census Tracts or neighborhoods with persistent poverty, or are made by Tribal governments. Separately, some commenters noted that Treasury should provide more clarification on what constitutes a “reliabl[e]” connection, including providing details as to latency, jitter, and other technical specifications that would meet that standard, and what it means for certain technologies, such as copper and other outdated technologies, to be deemed presumptively unreliable.

Other commenters supported the interim final rule's approach on eligible areas for investment or suggested tightening eligibility even further. They argued that higher speed thresholds beyond 25/3 Mbps would likely lead to investments in or building of new broadband infrastructure in areas already served by broadband at speeds these commenters considered sufficient; these areas, commenters suggested, are less in need of federal assistance and permitting investments here could divert funding away from rural areas to more densely populated areas.

Treasury Response: The final rule expands eligible areas for investment by requiring recipients to invest in projects designed to provide service to households and businesses with an identified need for additional broadband infrastructure investment. Recipients have flexibility to identify a need for additional broadband infrastructure investment: Examples of need include lack of access to a connection that reliably meets or exceeds symmetrical 100 Mbps download and upload speeds, lack of

affordable access to broadband service, or lack of reliable broadband service. Recipients are encouraged to prioritize projects that are designed to provide service to locations not currently served by a wireline connection that reliably delivers at least 100 Mbps of download speed and 20 Mbps of upload speed, as many commenters indicated that those without such service constitute hard-to-reach areas in need of subsidized broadband deployment.

Households and businesses with an identified need for additional broadband infrastructure investment do not have to be the only ones in the service area served by an eligible broadband infrastructure project. Indeed, serving these households and businesses may require a holistic approach that provides service to a wider area, for example, in order to make ongoing service of certain households or businesses within the service area economical.

Consistent with further guidance issued by Treasury,³³⁸ in determining areas for investment, recipients may choose to consider any available data, including but not limited to documentation of existing broadband internet service performance, federal and/or state collected broadband data, user speed test results, interviews with community members and business owners, reports from community organizations, and any other information they deem relevant.

In evaluating such data, recipients may take into account a variety of factors, including whether users actually receive internet service at or above the speed thresholds at all hours of the day, whether factors other than speed such as latency, jitter, or deterioration of the existing connections make their user experience unreliable, and whether the existing service is being delivered by legacy technologies, such as copper telephone lines (typically using Digital Subscriber Line technology) or early versions of cable system technology (DOCSIS 2.0 or earlier),³³⁹ and other factors related to

³³⁸ See FAQ 6.11. Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

³³⁹ Legacy technologies such as copper telephone lines (typically using Digital Subscriber Line technology) and early versions of cable system technology (DOCSIS 2.0 or earlier) typically lag on speeds, latency, and other factors, as compared to more modern technologies like fiber-optic. See, e.g., https://www.fcc.gov/sites/default/files/tech_transitions_network_upgrades_that_may_affect_your_service.pdf (comparing copper to fiber and noting that copper wire networks have “limited speeds,” are “susceptible to signal interference/loss,” and have a “relatively short life”); <https://>

Continued

Mbps upload speeds. “100 Mbps” symmetrical refers to broadband infrastructure that is designed to reliably meet or exceed at least 100 Mbps download speeds and 100 Mbps upload speeds.

the services to be provided by the project. In addition, recipients may consider the actual experience of current broadband customers when making their determinations; whether there is a provider serving the area that advertises or otherwise claims to offer broadband at a given speed is not dispositive.

Build-To Speed Standards

The interim final rule provided that a recipient may use funds to make investments in broadband infrastructure that is designed to, upon completion, reliably meet or exceed symmetrical 100 Mbps download and upload speeds. In cases where it is not practicable, because of the excessive cost of the project or the geography or topography of the area to be served by the project, eligible projects may be designed to reliably meet or exceed 100 Mbps download speed and between at least 20 Mbps and 100 Mbps upload speed, so long as it is scalable to a minimum of 100 Mbps download speed and 100 Mbps upload speed. Relatedly, Treasury in the **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** to the interim final rule encouraged recipients to prioritize investments in fiber-optic infrastructure wherever feasible and to prioritize projects that achieve last-mile connections.

Public Comment: Many commenters discussed the advantages of setting minimum symmetrical download and upload speeds of reliable 100 Mbps as the speed threshold for new projects. Some commenters indicated support for the interim final rule's standard as it takes into account growing demands on internet use resulting from pandemic broadband usage and suggested that such a standard will help to ensure that networks built with SLFRF funds remain valuable for years to come, even as demands continue to accelerate, particularly on upload speeds. Some also indicated that the interim final rule standard has the effect of prioritizing the use of fiber-optic infrastructure to deliver such speeds, which some noted was a "gold standard" future-proof technology, although some commenters noted that other technologies like fixed wireless have been shown to deliver such speeds in certain circumstances.

Other commenters suggested that 100 Mbps symmetrical speeds were unnecessary given current broadband

usage needs and that such high standards may have the potential to slow down expansion to unserved or underserved rural areas. Some argued that setting this symmetrical threshold may limit the type of technologies that can be used, thereby decreasing competition and limiting flexibility to recipients whose communities might be better served by technologies such as wireless solutions or inexpensive gap networks. Commenters suggested alternate minimum speeds, ranging from 25/3 Mbps (which some argued best balances reaching all communities and maximizing the impact of federal funds) to 100/20 Mbps (which some argued best serves the typical broadband usage patterns of households and businesses, including new pandemic-driven needs). A few commenters suggested a higher minimum speed, such as gigabit speeds, advocating that such speeds were necessary for a network to last at least a decade.

Many commenters supported the interim final rule's lower speed standards for projects where it is impracticable to meet minimum reliable speeds of 100 Mbps symmetrical, as it provides flexibility for recipients to invest in hard-to-reach areas, such as those in mountainous regions. A few commenters indicated that Treasury should more clearly define the characteristics of a location eligible for this exception. Some indicated that the minimum standard for all new projects should be 100 Mbps symmetrical. In contrast, others argued that scalability to 100 Mbps symmetrical should not be a requirement to meet today's demands, particularly in hard-to-reach areas.

Some commenters requested that Treasury clarify eligibility for middle-mile projects as these projects potentially provide connectivity to far-reaching areas, while other commenters suggested that last-mile projects generally require more capital investment and are therefore most in need of government support.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the interim final rule's requirement that eligible projects be designed to, upon completion, reliably meet or exceed symmetrical 100 Mbps download and upload speeds, with the interim final rule's exception for projects where it is impracticable to build to such speeds due to excessive cost, geography, or topography of the area to be served by the project. Given the build time associated with broadband infrastructure projects, these standards will enable SLFRF funds to fund lasting infrastructure that will be able to accommodate increased network demand once the network is

complete,³⁴⁰ while providing flexibility for certain locations to meet lower speed standards where 100 Mbps symmetrical speeds are impracticable.

To illustrate the accelerating need for higher upload speeds, by one measure, mean upload speeds as of October 2021 increased to 75.21 Mbps as compared to 62.11 Mbps a year earlier.³⁴¹ Jurisdictions are increasingly responding to the growing demands of their communities for high speeds; for example, Illinois requires 100 Mbps symmetrical service as the construction standard for their state broadband grant programs. The 100 Mbps symmetrical standard accounts for increased pandemic internet usage and provides adequate upload speeds for individuals and businesses to accommodate interactive applications such as virtual learning and videoconferencing, while also helping ensure that funding is responsibly used to provide a true and lasting benefit for years to come. Treasury continues to encourage recipients to prioritize investments in fiber-optic infrastructure wherever feasible, as such advanced technology enables the next generation of application solutions for all communities and is capable of delivering superior, reliable performance and is generally most efficiently scalable to meet future needs.³⁴² In designing these projects, recipients should ensure that the broadband infrastructure provides "reliable" service at required speeds and are not required to rely on providers' advertised speeds in their assessments.

Consistent with further guidance issued by Treasury,³⁴³ while recipients are permitted to make investments in "middle-mile" connections that otherwise satisfy the requirements of the final rule, Treasury continues to encourage recipients to focus on

³⁴⁰ Using the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Broadband Speed Guide, a household with two telecommuters and two to three remote learners today is estimated to need 100 Mbps download to work simultaneously. See Federal Communications Commission, Broadband Speed Guide, available at <https://www.fcc.gov/consumers/guides/broadband-speed-guide> (last visited October 28, 2021).

³⁴¹ United States' Mobile and Broadband Internet Speeds—Speedtest Global Index, available at <https://www.speedtest.net/global-index/united-states#fixed>.

³⁴² Bennett Cyphers, The Case for Fiber to the Home, Today: Why Fiber is a Superior Medium for 21st Century Broadband, Electronic Frontier Foundation (October 16, 2019), <https://www.eff.org/wp/case-fiber-home-today-why-fiber-superior-medium-21st-century-broadband>.

³⁴³ See FAQ 6.10, Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

data.fcc.gov/download/measuring-broadband-america/2020/2020-Fixed-Measuring-Broadband-America-Report.pdf (comparing fiber with DSL and cable technologies on a number of dimensions); <https://www.eff.org/wp/case-fiber-home-today-why-fiber-superior-medium-21st-century-broadband> (providing a technical background comparing fiber technology to other legacy technologies).

projects that will achieve last-mile connections—whether by focusing directly on funding last-mile projects or by ensuring that funded middle-mile projects have commitments in place to support new and/or improved last-mile service.

Affordability

The interim final rule encouraged recipients to consider ways to integrate affordability options into their program design but did not require recipients to take particular actions. The interim final rule also provided that assisting households with internet access and digital literacy is an eligible use of SLFRF funds under sections 602(c)(1)(A) and 603(c)(1)(A) to respond to the negative economic impacts of COVID–19.

Public Comment: Many commenters suggested that Treasury provide recipients with a broader set of tools to tackle what the commenters characterized as an affordability crisis in the broadband sector. As noted above, some commenters proposed that Treasury consider affordability when determining whether an area is unserved or underserved by broadband. Some commenters indicated that the final rule should allow for the construction of broadband networks in low-income neighborhoods including low-cost or no-cost gap networks, even in areas with existing service at the speeds required under the interim final rule. Other commenters voiced support for direct subsidies to low-income communities to afford broadband service, which would provide additional incentives for providers to serve these communities.

Treasury Response: In response to many commenters that highlighted the importance of affordability in providing meaningful access to necessary broadband infrastructure, the final rule provides additional requirements to address the affordability needs of low-income consumers in accessing broadband networks funded by SLFRF. Recipients must require the service provider for a completed broadband infrastructure investment project that provides service to households to:

- Participate in the Federal Communications Commission's (FCC) Affordable Connectivity Program (ACP); or
- Otherwise provide access to a broad-based affordability program to low-income consumers in the proposed service area of the broadband infrastructure that provides benefits to households commensurate with those provided under the ACP.

Recipients must require providers to participate in or provide access to these programs through the life of the ACP. This requirement will no longer apply once the SLFRF-funded broadband infrastructure is no longer in use.

Furthermore, Treasury also recognizes the importance of affordable broadband access for all consumers beyond those that are low income. As part of their project selection process, recipients are encouraged to consult with the community on the general affordability needs of the target markets in the proposed service area. Additionally, recipients are encouraged to require that services provided by a broadband infrastructure project include at least one low-cost option offered without data usage caps at speeds that are sufficient for a household with multiple users to simultaneously telework and engage in remote learning. Treasury will require recipients to report speed, pricing, and any data allowance information as part of their mandatory reporting to Treasury.

Further, Treasury is clarifying that, as a response to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic, recipients may provide households and communities impacted by the pandemic with subsidies to help pay for internet service, digital literacy programs, broadband adoption programs, and device programs that provide discounted or no-cost devices for low-income households to access the internet. For further discussion of this eligible use category, see the section internet Assistance in Assistance to Households in Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts.

Public Networks

The interim final rule encouraged recipients to prioritize support for local networks owned, operated, or affiliated with local governments, nonprofits, and cooperatives.

Public Comment: Many commenters voiced their support for Treasury's encouragement that recipients work with governmental or community entities to establish local networks, arguing that they have been shown to effectively provide broadband access to areas that would otherwise be left with unaffordable or insufficient service. These commenters suggested that, since these entities are less driven by financial returns to investment than private providers, in some circumstances they may be able to provide robust service at a lower price as compared to private providers, along with potentially increasing local competition in a service area.

Other commenters argued against Treasury's encouragement, remarking that private businesses have a robust track record of serving hard-to-reach customers. These commenters argued that commercial providers have greater technical and operational expertise in deploying and operating broadband networks and may be able to construct broadband networks with greater efficiency. Additionally, some commenters argued that providing what they considered an unfair competitive advantage for government- or community-owned or operated networks may hurt consumers over time.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the interim final rule's encouragement for recipients to prioritize support for broadband networks owned, operated by, or affiliated with local governments, nonprofits, and cooperatives, given that these networks have less pressure to generate profits and a commitment to serve entire communities.³⁴⁴ This encouragement provides flexibility for recipients to select providers that best fit their needs, while noting the critical role that networks owned, operated, or affiliated with local governments and community organizations can play in providing sufficient coverage, affordable access, or increased competition in the broadband sector.

Duplication of Efforts and Resources

Public Comment: Some commenters raised concerns that Treasury's encouragement in the interim final rule that recipients avoid funding projects in locations with an existing agreement to provide service that reliably delivers 100/20 Mbps by December 31, 2024 was too restrictive. Commenters noted that many plans do not always lead to a successful and complete deployment, as issues may arise that prevent such infrastructure from deploying on time or at all, and that several existing federal grants were designed and awarded before the onset of the COVID–19 pandemic and do not meet the critical broadband needs highlighted by the pandemic. Other commenters argued that Treasury's encouragement to avoid duplication of resources should be strengthened, as investing in areas with existing agreements would be an inefficient duplication of efforts.

Treasury Response: Given the final rule's revised requirements on eligible areas for investment, this

³⁴⁴ The Executive Office of the President, Community-Based Broadband Solutions (January 2015), https://obamawhitehouse.archives.gov/sites/default/files/docs/community-based_broadband_report_by_executive_office_of_the_president.pdf.

Supplementary Information to the final rule also modifies the interim final rule's requirements around duplication of resources. Since recipients must ensure that the objective of the broadband projects is to serve locations with an identified need for additional broadband investment, the final rule provides that, to the extent recipients are considering deploying broadband to locations where there are existing enforceable federal or state funding commitments for reliable service at speeds of at least 100 Mbps download speed and 20 Mbps upload speed, recipients must ensure that SLFRF funds are designed to address an identified need for additional broadband investment that is not met by existing federal or state funding commitments. Recipients must also ensure that SLFRF funds will not be used for costs that will be reimbursed by the other federal or state funding streams.

Cybersecurity

Public Comment: Several commenters expressed concern about the cybersecurity of new broadband projects funded with SLFRF funds and urged Treasury to prohibit recipients from utilizing SLFRF funds to procure equipment from certain providers from the People's Republic of China that may pose a national security risk. These commenters pointed out that the 2019 National Defense Authorization Act (NDAA) and the FCC's Universal Service Fund have similar prohibitions. Further, several commenters requested that Treasury explicitly include cybersecurity costs as an eligible use for broadband infrastructure investment given the growing threat of cyber-attacks and cyber-intrusions into the nation's infrastructure.

Treasury Response: Treasury highlights that investments in broadband infrastructure must be carried out in ways that comply with applicable federal laws, including the 2019 NDAA. Among other requirements contained in 2 CFR part 200, 2 CFR 200.216 implements certain provisions of the NDAA and contains prohibitions on the use of federal financial assistance to procure or obtain certain telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment provided or produced by designated entities, including certain entities owned or controlled by the People's Republic of China. In addition, 2 CFR 200.471 provides that certain telecommunications and video surveillance costs associated with 2 CFR 200.216 are unallowable.

Further, the final rule allows for modernization of cybersecurity for existing and new broadband infrastructure as an eligible use under sections 602(c)(1)(D) and 603(c)(1)(D) as such investments are necessary for the reliability and resiliency of broadband infrastructure.³⁴⁵ Recipients may provide necessary investments in cybersecurity, including modernization of hardware and software, for existing and new broadband infrastructure regardless of their speed delivery standards. The final rule maintains the interim final rule's provision that allows for broader modernization of cybersecurity, including hardware, software, and protection of critical infrastructure as an eligible provision of government services, to the extent of revenue loss due to the pandemic, under sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C).

Use of Funds To Meet Non-Federal Match Under the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act

The Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act specifies that, except as otherwise provided, an entity using funding under section 60102 of the law for broadband deployment "shall provide, or require a subgrantee to provide, a contribution, derived from non-Federal funds (or funds from a Federal regional commission or authority) . . . of not less than 25 percent of project costs."³⁴⁶ It further states that the matching contribution may include funds provided to an eligible entity or subgrantee under the American Rescue Plan Act for the purpose of deployment of broadband service, which includes funds provided under the SLFRF program.

SLFRF and the program established under section 60102 of the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act are separate programs with separate requirements. While section 60102 allows states and other eligible entities to use SLFRF funds as the source of matching funds for broadband deployment, the requirements of the SLFRF program still apply. As such, recipients that use SLFRF funds to meet the section 60102 matching requirement will continue to be subject to the requirements of the SLFRF program.

³⁴⁵ For more on the importance of cybersecurity to the reliability and resiliency of broadband networks, see: Federal Communications Commission, <https://docs.fcc.gov/public/attachments/FCC-10-63A1.doc>; Brookings Institute, Protecting the Cybersecurity of America's Networks (February 11, 2021), <https://www.brookings.edu/blog/techtank/2021/02/11/protecting-the-cybersecurity-of-americas-networks/>.

³⁴⁶ See Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act, Public Law 117–58 (2021).

III. Restrictions on Use

While recipients have considerable flexibility to use funds to address the diverse needs of their communities, some restrictions on use of funds apply. The ARPA includes two statutory provisions that further define the boundaries of the statute's eligible uses. First, section 602(c)(2)(A) of the Social Security Act provides that states and territories may not "use the funds . . . to either directly or indirectly offset a reduction in . . . net tax revenue . . . resulting from a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation during the covered period that reduces any tax . . . or delays the imposition of any tax or tax increase." Second, sections 602(c)(2)(B) and 603(c)(2) prohibit all recipients, except Tribal governments, from using funds for deposit into any pension fund. These restrictions support use of funds only for the congressionally permitted purposes described in the Eligible Uses section by providing a backstop against the use of funds for purposes outside of the eligible use categories provided for in the statute.

In addition to the restrictions on use of funds provided for in the ARPA statute, the interim final rule noted that several uses of funds would be ineligible under any eligible use category, including as a response to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic or as a "government service" under the revenue loss eligible use category. Specifically, use of funds for debt service, to replenish financial reserves, or to satisfy an obligation arising from a judicial settlement or judgment were ineligible uses of funds under the eligible use categories for public health and negative economic impacts and revenue loss. These restrictions apply to all recipients.

Recipients should note that restrictions on use of funds for debt service, to replenish financial reserves, or to satisfy an obligation arising from a judicial settlement or judgment apply to all eligible use categories, not just the eligible use categories in which they were discussed in the interim final rule.

Recipients are also subject to other restrictions on use of funds in the ARPA, the Award Terms and Conditions, and other federal laws. As discussed further below, uses of funds may not conflict with the overall statutory purpose of the ARPA to reduce the spread of COVID–19. Per the Award Terms and Conditions, recipients must adopt and abide by policies to prevent conflicts of interest. Finally, recipients are reminded that other federal laws

also apply to uses of funds, including environmental and civil rights laws.

To enhance clarity, this

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION for the final rule consolidates these restrictions on use of funds into one section and makes clear that they apply to all eligible use categories and any use of funds under the program by recipients to whom each specific restriction applies.

This section discusses the aforementioned restrictions, public comments received, and Treasury's response to these comments. For clarity, Treasury has divided the following discussion into (A) statutory restrictions under the ARPA, which include (1) offsetting a reduction in net tax revenue, and (2) deposits into pension funds, and (B) other restrictions on use, which include (1) debt service and replenishing reserves, (2) settlements and judgments, and (3) general restrictions.

A. Ineligible Uses of Funds Under the ARPA Statute

1. Offset a Reduction in Net Tax Revenue

For states and territories (recipient governments³⁴⁷), section 602(c)(2)(A)—the offset provision—prohibits the use of SLFRF funds to directly or indirectly offset a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation³⁴⁸ during the covered period. If a state or territory uses SLFRF funds to offset a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from a change in law, regulation, or interpretation, the ARPA provides that the state or territory must repay to Treasury an amount equal to the lesser of (i) the amount of the applicable reduction attributable to the impermissible offset and (ii) the amount of SLFRF funds received by the state or territory. A state or territory that uses SLFRF funds to offset a reduction in net tax revenue does not forfeit its entire allocation of SLFRF funds (unless it misused the full allocation to offset a reduction in net tax revenue) or any non-SLFRF funding.

The interim final rule implements these conditions by establishing a framework for states and territories to determine the cost of changes in law, regulation, or interpretation that reduce tax revenue and to identify and value

the sources of funds that will offset—*i.e.*, cover the cost of—any reduction in net tax revenue resulting from such changes. The interim final rule recognizes three sources of funds that may offset a reduction in net tax revenue other than SLFRF funds: Organic revenue growth, increases in revenue due to policy changes (*e.g.*, an increase in a tax rate), and certain cuts in spending.

Specifically, the interim final rule establishes a step-by-step process for determining whether, and the extent to which, SLFRF funds have been used to offset a reduction in net tax revenue, based on information reported by the recipient government:

- First, each year, each recipient government will identify and value the changes in law, regulation, or interpretation that would result in a reduction in net tax revenue, as it would in the ordinary course of its budgeting process. The sum of these values in the year for which the government is reporting is the amount it needs to “pay for” with sources other than SLFRF funds (total value of revenue reducing changes).

- Second, the interim final rule recognizes that it may be difficult to predict how a change would affect net tax revenue in future years and, accordingly, provides that if the total value of the changes in the year for which the recipient government is reporting is below a de minimis level, as discussed below, the recipient government need not identify any sources of funding to pay for revenue reducing changes and will not be subject to recoupment.

- Third, a recipient government will consider the amount of actual tax revenue recorded in the year for which it is reporting. If the recipient government's actual tax revenue is greater than the amount of tax revenue received by the recipient for the fiscal year ending 2019, adjusted annually for inflation, the recipient government will not be considered to have violated the offset provision because there will not have been a reduction in net tax revenue.

- Fourth, if the recipient government's actual tax revenue is less than the amount of tax revenue received by the recipient government for the fiscal year ending 2019, adjusted annually for inflation, in the reporting year the recipient government will identify any sources of funds that have been used to permissibly offset the total value of covered tax changes other than SLFRF funds. These are:

- State or territory tax changes that would increase any source of general

fund revenue, such as a change that would increase a tax rate; and

- Spending cuts in areas not being replaced by SLFRF funds.

The recipient government will calculate the value of revenue reduction remaining after applying these sources of offsetting funding to the total value of revenue reducing changes—that is, how much of the tax change has not been paid for. The recipient government will then compare that value to the difference between the baseline and actual tax revenue. A recipient government will not be required to repay to Treasury an amount that is greater than the recipient government's actual tax revenue shortfall relative to the baseline (*i.e.*, fiscal year 2019 tax revenue adjusted for inflation). This “revenue reduction cap,” together with Step 3, ensures that recipient governments can use organic revenue growth to offset the cost of revenue reductions.

- Finally, if there are any amounts that could be subject to recoupment, Treasury will provide notice to the recipient government of such amounts along with an explanation of such amounts. This process is discussed in greater detail in section Remediation and Recoupment of this Supplementary Information.

Together, these steps allow Treasury to identify the amount of reduction in net tax revenue that both is attributable to covered changes and has been directly or indirectly offset with SLFRF funds.

Overview of Comments: Many commenters supported the framework established under the interim final rule. These commenters argued that the offset provision, and the interim final rule's implementation of the offset provision, was essential to ensuring SLFRF funds are used in a manner consistent with the statute's defined eligible uses and, in particular, to support the use of SLFRF funds to build public sector capacity. Several commenters argued that the framework should be made more restrictive; for example, some comments advocated that the offset provision be applied to local governments.

Other commenters argued that the offset provision and the interim final rule's implementation of the offset provision is too restrictive, with some asserting that the offset provision prohibits states from making changes to reduce taxes. Many of these commenters argued that the offset provision presents constitutional concerns. These commenters asserted that the offset provision is ambiguous and the restriction is unrelated to the purpose of the ARPA. These commenters also

³⁴⁷ In this sub-section, “recipient governments” refers only to states and territories. In other sections, “recipient governments” refers more broadly to eligible governments receiving funding from the SLFRF.

³⁴⁸ For brevity, this phrase is referred to as “changes in law, regulation, or interpretation” for the remainder of this **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION**.

argued that the generous amount of SLFRF funds provided to those governments gave recipient governments little choice as to whether to accept the SLFRF funds and, as a result, the offset provision is coercive. In describing these concerns and arguments, several of these commenters referenced litigation regarding the offset provision.³⁴⁹ Many of these commenters also expressed concern regarding the interim final rule's implementation of the offset provision. Some of these commenters argued that Treasury lacked the authority to implement the provision, asserting that the significance of the provision required Congress to make an explicit delegation of rulemaking authority and provide clearer principles by which Treasury should implement the provision. Finally, one commenter argued that the offset provision should only apply if the recipient expressly and intentionally uses SLFRF funds to offset a reduction in revenue, arguing that the term "offset" implies a deliberate use SLFRF funds to "pay for" a tax cut.

As discussed in the interim final rule, the offset provision does not prevent a recipient government from enacting a broad variety of tax changes. Rather, the offset provision prevents a recipient government from using SLFRF funds to offset a revenue reduction resulting from a tax cut. A recipient government would only be considered to have used SLFRF funds to offset a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from changes in law, regulation, or interpretation if, and to the extent that, the recipient government could not identify sufficient funds from sources other than SLFRF funds to offset the reduction in net tax revenue. Only if sufficient funds from other sources cannot be identified to cover the full cost of the reduction in net tax revenue resulting from changes in law, regulation, or interpretation, will the remaining amount not covered by these sources be considered to have been offset by SLFRF funds, in contravention of the offset provision. Consistent with the statutory text, the approach taken in the interim final rule recognizes that, because money is fungible, even if SLFRF funds are not explicitly or directly used to cover the costs of changes that reduce net tax revenue, those funds may be used in a manner inconsistent with the statute by indirectly being used to substitute for the state's or territory's funds that

would otherwise have been needed to cover the costs of the reduction. As discussed below, the scope of changes in law, regulation, or interpretation is further limited to those that the recipient government voluntarily enacted during the covered period.

Congress has the authority under the Spending Clause in Article I, section 8 of the Constitution to specify the permissible and impermissible uses of federal grants. The Supreme Court has repeatedly "upheld Congress's authority to condition the receipt of funds on the States' complying with restrictions on the use of those funds, because that is the means by which Congress ensures that the funds are spent according to its view of the 'general Welfare.'" ³⁵⁰ "The power to keep a watchful eye on expenditures . . . is bound up with congressional authority to spend in the first place." ³⁵¹ Assertions that the amount of SLFRF funds are sufficiently large to be coercive are inconsistent with the Supreme Court's reasoning in *NFIB*, which distinguished between conditions placed on new federal funds and conditions placed on existing federal funds and not based on the size of funds.³⁵² Further, the conditions placed on the use of SLFRF funds under the ARPA—both the eligible uses and additional limitations on deposits into pension funds and the offset provision—were well known to recipient governments prior to recipient governments requesting to receive SLFRF funds. Finally, the ARPA provides Treasury with the express authority "to issue such regulations as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out" section 602, which includes the offset provision.

A number of commenters expressed concern regarding the burden associated with complying with the offset provision and the interim final rule. Similarly, other commenters argued that the framework provided in the interim final rule complicated implementation

of the offset provision. Treasury took several steps to minimize burden for recipient governments in the interim final rule. For example, the interim final rule incorporates the types of information and modeling already used by states and territories in their own fiscal and budgeting processes. By incorporating existing budgeting processes and capabilities, states and territories will be able to assess and evaluate the relationship of tax and budget decisions to uses of SLFRF funds based on information they likely have or can readily obtain. This approach ensures that recipient governments have the information they need to understand the implications of their decisions regarding the use of SLFRF funds—and, in particular, whether they are using the funds to directly or indirectly offset a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from a change in law, regulation, or interpretation, making the funds potentially subject to recoupment. To further reduce burden, Treasury is considering whether the scope of reporting requirements can be further tailored.

As described in greater detail below, Treasury is finalizing its implementation of the offset provision largely without change. This approach is consistent with the text of the ARPA. The remainder of this section discusses and responds to comments on specific aspects of the framework.

1. Definitions

Covered change. The offset provision is triggered by a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from "a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation." Consistent with this language, the interim final rule defines a "covered change" to include any final legislative or regulatory action, a new or changed administrative interpretation, and the phase-in or taking effect of any statute or rule where the phase-in or taking effect was not prescribed prior to the start of the covered period. Thus, the offset provision applies only to actions for which the change in policy occurs during the covered period; it excludes regulations or other actions that implement a change or law substantively enacted prior to March 3, 2021. For example, covered changes do not include a change in rate that is triggered automatically and based on statutory or regulatory criteria in effect prior to the covered period.³⁵³ Changed

³⁵⁰ *National Fed'n of Indep. Bus. v. Sebelius* (*NFIB*), 567 U.S. 519, 580 (2012) (plurality opinion); see, e.g., *South Dakota v. Dole*, 483 U.S. 203, 206–208 (1987); *Gruver v. Louisiana Bd. of Supervisors for Louisiana State Univ. Agric. & Mech. Coll.*, 959 F.3d 178, 183 (5th Cir.), cert. denied, 141 S. Ct. 901 (2020). For additional discussion of these issues, see, e.g., *Brief Reply for Appellants, Ohio v. Yellen*, No. 21–3787 (6th Cir. Oct. 26, 2021).

³⁵¹ *Sabri v. United States*, 541 U.S. 600, 608 (2004).

³⁵² The new federal funds offered by the Affordable Care Act totaled \$100 billion per year. Even the dissenting Justices agreed that "Congress could have made just the new funding provided under the ACA contingent on acceptance of the terms of the Medicaid Expansion," although they disagreed with the majority about whether that funding condition was severable. *NFIB* at 687–688 (joint dissent).

³⁴⁹ See, e.g., *State of West Virginia v. U.S. Department of the Treasury*, No. 7:21-cv-00465–LSC, 2021 WL 2952863 (N.D. Ala. Jul. 14, 2021); *State of Ohio v. Yellen*, No. 1:21-cv-181, 2021 WL 2712220 (S.D. Ohio Jul. 1, 2021).

³⁵³ For example, a state law that sets its earned income tax credit (EITC) at a fixed percentage of the federal EITC will see its EITC payments automatically increase—and thus its tax revenue reduced—because of the federal government's expansion of the EITC in the ARPA. See, e.g., Tax

administrative interpretations would not include corrections to replace prior inaccurate interpretations; such corrections would instead be treated as changes implementing legislation enacted or regulations issued prior to the covered period. The operative change in those circumstances is the underlying legislation or regulation that occurred prior to the covered period. Moreover, only changes within the control of the state or territory are considered covered changes. Finally, covered changes do not include changes that simply conform with recent changes in federal law (including those to conform to recent changes in federal taxation of unemployment insurance benefits and taxation of loan forgiveness under the Paycheck Protection Program).

Scope of Covered Changes

Public Comment: Several commenters argued that the definition of covered change, and thus the limitations of the offset provision, should apply to subsidies for businesses. Similarly, other commenters requested that Treasury clarify that the offset provision applies to tax abatements and reductions in corporate taxes, even if administered by a sub-unit of the recipient government. Citing to empirical research and other evidence, these commenters argued that these types of economic development policies were poorly administered, reduced public sector capacity, and were ineffective at achieving stated objectives of creating jobs, increasing income, and increasing economic growth. On the other hand, some commenters argued that, because subsidies were economically similar to some tax cuts, neither action should be considered a covered change and subject to the offset provision. Finally, other commenters requested that Treasury clarify whether covered changes must be broad-based policies or whether administrative decisions applicable to individuals would be considered covered changes.

Treasury Response: Section 602(c)(2)(A) applies to any change that “reduces any tax (by providing for a reduction in a rate, a rebate, a deduction, a credit, or otherwise or delays the imposition of any tax or tax increase.” Accordingly, and consistent with this statutory text, the final rule applies to covered changes that reduce any tax, which can include tax abatements, but does not apply to loans,

grants, or other types of interventions that do not reduce tax revenue.³⁵⁴ In addition, by including changes in regulation or administrative interpretation, in addition to changes in law, within the scope of the offset provision, the ARPA recognizes that a recipient government may make a covered change through its legislature or may delegate the authority to make a covered change including, but not limited to, to a sub-unit of government. Treasury has revised the definition of “covered change” in the final rule using the statutory language above to make clear that the offset provision only applies to such changes in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation. With respect to the question of whether covered changes could include administrative decisions applicable to individuals, as discussed above, a covered change includes a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation that reduces any tax. Such changes may apply to one or more individuals or entities, provided that—consistent with the statutory text—they result from a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation.

Prior Enactment and Phase-In

Public Comment: A number of commenters expressed concern, or requested clarification, regarding changes that were enacted prior to the covered period but take effect or phase-in during the covered period. Several commenters argued that the definition of covered change should include changes that were made prior to the covered period but that phase-in during the covered period.

Treasury Response: As discussed above, the offset provision is triggered by a reduction in net tax revenue resulting from “a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation” made during the covered period. Consistent with the statutory text, “covered change” is defined to include any final legislative or regulatory action, a new or changed administrative interpretation, and the phase-in or taking effect of any statute or rule where the phase-in or taking effect was not prescribed prior to the start of the covered period.

Conformity

Public Comment: A number of commenters requested clarification on the scope of covered changes. Specifically, several commenters

requested clarification on the scope of changes that would be considered as conforming to recent changes in federal law. These commenters requested that Treasury clarify whether actions to selectively conform with federal law would be considered covered changes and requested clarification regarding the extent to which changes would be considered “recent.” For example, these commenters requested clarification regarding conformance with the Global Intangible Low-Taxed Income provision of the 2017 Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. Some commenters further argued that changes that selectively conform or decouple from the Internal Revenue Code should be included within scope of covered changes and thus subject to the offset provision.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the treatment of changes that simply conform with recent changes in federal law, such as those to conform to recent changes in federal taxation of unemployment insurance benefits and taxation of loan forgiveness under the Paycheck Protection Program³⁵⁵ and including other changes over the past several years. Regardless of the particular method of conformity and the effect on net tax revenue, Treasury views such changes as permissible under the offset provision.

Accordingly, and for the reasons discussed above, Treasury is maintaining the definition of covered change without change.

Tax revenue. The interim final rule’s definition of “tax revenue” is based on the Census Bureau’s definition of taxes, used for its Annual Survey of State Government Finances.³⁵⁶ It provides a consistent, well-established definition with which states and territories will be familiar and is consistent with the approach taken in section Revenue Loss of this **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** describing the implementation of sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C) of the Social Security Act regarding revenue loss. A number of commenters expressed concern and requested clarification regarding the definition of “tax revenue.” These comments and responses are discussed in section Revenue Loss of this Supplemental Information and, for the reasons discussed above, Treasury is finalizing the definition of tax revenue without

Policy Center, How do state earned income tax credits work?, <https://www.taxpolicycenter.org/briefing-book/how-do-state-earned-income-tax-credits-work/> (last visited May 9, 2021).

³⁵⁴ Assistance must be consistent with eligible uses of SLFRF funds. See section Eligible Uses of this **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION**.

³⁵⁵ See Statement on State Fiscal Recovery Funds and Tax Conformity, April 7, 2021, available at <https://home.treasury.gov/news/press-releases/jy0113>.

³⁵⁶ U.S. Census Bureau, Annual Survey of State and Local Government Finances Glossary, <https://www.census.gov/programs-surveys/state/about/glossary.html> (last visited Apr. 30, 2021).

change and maintaining a consistent definition of “tax revenue.”³⁵⁷

Baseline. For purposes of measuring a reduction in net tax revenue, the interim final rule measures actual changes in tax revenue relative to a revenue baseline (baseline). The baseline is calculated as fiscal year 2019 (FY 2019) tax revenue indexed for inflation in each year of the covered period, with inflation calculated using the Bureau of Economic Analysis’s Implicit Price Deflator.³⁵⁸

Public Comment: Some commenters expressed concern regarding the choice of FY 2019 as the baseline, arguing that the choice lacked justification and would make the offset provision more restrictive as applied to recipient governments that experienced a decline in revenue independent of making any covered changes.

Treasury Response: Measuring a “reduction” in net tax revenue requires identification of a baseline. In other words, a “reduction” can be assessed only by comparing two amounts. The Act defines “covered period” to begin on March 3, 2021, and thus the baseline year must end prior to March 3, 2021. As discussed in the interim final rule, FY 2019 is the last full fiscal year prior to the COVID–19 public health emergency, and thus is consistent with the statutory definition and does not include the extraordinary effects of the pandemic that began in 2020. Further, as discussed above, the interim final rule recognizes three potential ways that a recipient government may offset or “pay for” a reduction in net tax revenue due to a covered change: Increases in taxes, decreases in spending, and organic revenue growth. U.S. gross domestic product rebounded to exceed its pre-pandemic level in 2021,³⁵⁹ suggesting that an FY 2019 pre-

pandemic baseline is a reasonable comparator for future revenue levels and provides recipients with flexibility to identify organic growth as a permissible offset. Finally, this baseline year is consistent with the approach directed by sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C), which identify the “most recent full fiscal year of the [state, territory, or Tribal government] prior to the emergency” as the comparator for measuring revenue loss. For these reasons, Treasury is finalizing the definition of “baseline” without change.

The interim final rule includes several other definitions that are applicable to the implementation of the offset provision, such as the term “reporting year.”³⁶⁰ Commenters did not express concern regarding other definitions in the interim final rule.

2. Framework

The interim final rule provides a step-by-step framework, to be used in each reporting year, to determine whether a state or territory used SLFRF funds to offset a reduction in net tax revenue. Consistent with section 602(c)(2) and the interim final rule, the final rule applies to states and territories:

(1) *Covered changes that reduce tax revenue.* Under the interim final rule, a recipient government identifies and values covered changes that the recipient government predicts will have the effect of reducing tax revenue in a given reporting year, similar to the way it would in the ordinary course of its budgeting process. The interim final rule states that the value of these covered changes may be reported based on estimated values produced by a budget model, incorporating reasonable assumptions, that aligns with the recipient government’s existing approach for measuring the effects of fiscal policies, and that measures these effects relative to a current law baseline. If the recipient would prefer, the covered changes may also be reported based on actual values using a statistical methodology to isolate the change in year-over-year revenue attributable to the covered change(s), relative to the current law baseline prior to the change(s).³⁶¹ Further, estimation approaches may not use dynamic methodologies that incorporate the

projected effects of macroeconomic growth because macroeconomic growth is accounted for separately in the framework.

Estimation

Public Comment: A number of commenters expressed concern that estimating the value of covered changes required a number of assumptions and that the actual effects of covered changes on tax revenue would be difficult to predict. Several commenters expressed support for the interim final rule’s approach to dynamic scoring methodologies, and one commenter argued that the final rule should prohibit the use of prior cash balances in calculations of permissible tax cuts.

Treasury Response: Treasury recognizes that estimating the effects of covered changes requires assumptions and that many other factors influence the amount of tax revenue received. The interim final rule addresses these concerns in several ways. First, in general and where possible, reporting should be produced by the agency of the recipient government responsible for estimating the costs and effects of fiscal policy changes. This approach offers recipient governments the flexibility to determine their reporting methodology based on their existing budget scoring practices and capabilities. In addition, by relying on scoring methodologies that do not incorporate projected effects of macroeconomic growth, the estimation of the value of covered changes relies on fewer assumptions and thus provide greater consistency among states and territories. Finally, as discussed below, the interim final rule includes a de minimis threshold, below which the sum of covered changes will be deemed not to have any revenue-reducing effects.

Timing of the Impact of Covered Changes

Public Comment: Several commenters expressed concern that recipient governments, to evade the offset provision, may backload the costs of certain covered changes outside of the covered period, and advocated that covered changes be instead evaluated as the net present value in the year that the covered change is enacted. These commenters argued that some tax cuts could have effects on tax revenue for many decades or could be structured to take effect after the end of the covered period.

Treasury Response: As discussed in section Timeline for Use of SLFRF Funds, SLFRF funds must be used to cover costs incurred prior to December 31, 2024. Accordingly, SLFRF funds

³⁵⁷ As discussed in section Revenue Loss of this Supplementary Information, for purposes of measuring revenue lost due to the pandemic under sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C), recipients must adjust the amount of revenue lost to reflect changes that resulted from a tax increase or decrease. These adjustments do not apply to or affect the definition of tax revenue.

³⁵⁸ U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis, GDP Price Deflator, <https://www.bea.gov/data/prices-inflation/gdp-price-deflator> (last visited Apr. 30, 2021). The FY 2019 baseline revenue is adjusted annually for inflation to allow for direct comparison of actual tax revenue in each year (reported in nominal terms) to baseline revenue in common units of measurement; without inflation adjustment, each dollar of reported actual tax revenue would be worth less than each dollar of baseline revenue expressed in 2019 terms.

³⁵⁹ Economy Statement by Catherine Wolfram, Acting Assistant Secretary for Economy Policy, for the Treasury Borrowing Advisory Committee November 1, 2021 (Nov. 1, 2021), available at <https://home.treasury.gov/news/press-releases/jy0453>.

³⁶⁰ One commenter requested clarification that references to fiscal year refer to the fiscal year of the recipient. “Reporting year” is defined in the interim final rule and final rule to mean “a single year or partial year within the covered period, aligned to the current fiscal year of the State or Territory during the covered period.”

³⁶¹ By permitting recipient governments to use actual or estimated values, the interim final rule and final rule provide flexibility to recipients and thus minimizes burden.

generally would not be able to offset a reduction in net tax revenue occurring after December 31, 2024.

For these reasons, Treasury is maintaining this element of the interim final rule without change.

(2) *In excess of the de minimis.* Under the framework established in the interim final rule, after establishing that a covered change occurred, the recipient government next calculates the total value of all covered changes in the reporting year resulting in revenue reductions, identified in Step 1. If the total value of the revenue reductions resulting from these changes is below the de minimis level, the recipient government is deemed not to have any revenue-reducing changes for the purpose of determining the recognized net reduction. If the total is above the de minimis level, the recipient government must identify sources of in-year revenue to cover the full costs of changes that reduce tax revenue. Under the interim final rule, the de minimis level is calculated as 1 percent of the reporting year's baseline.

Public Comment: Many commenters supported the inclusion of the de minimis, noting that the de minimis protects recipients from penalty resulting from minor or incidental changes, minimizes administrative burden, and enhances predictability of the application of the offset provision. Some commenters expressed concern that the fixed threshold could result in cliff effects.

Treasury Response: A clear de minimis threshold supports recipient governments' compliance with the offset provision. A de minimis level recognizes the inherent challenges and uncertainties that recipient governments face, and thus allows relatively small reductions in tax revenue without consequence. In other words, states and territories may make many small changes to alter the composition of their tax revenues or implement other policies with marginal effects on tax revenues. They may also make changes based on projected revenue effects that turn out to differ from actual effects, unintentionally resulting in minor revenue changes that are not fairly described as "resulting from" tax law changes. However, a de minimis does not automatically result in consequences under the offset provision, since a recipient government could demonstrate that other, non-SLFRF funds to offset a net reduction in tax revenue. Accordingly, any cliff effects associated with a clear de minimis threshold are mitigated by other aspects of the framework.

Public Comment: Commenters expressed a range of views regarding the amount of the de minimis. Some commenters argued that the de minimis was too generous, noting that the choice of 1 percent could, in some cases, permit reductions in net tax revenue of hundreds of millions of dollars. These commenters advocated that the de minimis be lowered (e.g., to 25 basis points) or be tied to a fixed amount. Other commenters argued that the choice of de minimis was not well supported by the statute, advocated for a larger de minimis and suggested that the amount be tied to the recipient government's total expenditures in the prior fiscal year.

Treasury Response: Treasury adopted a de minimis threshold as an administrative accommodation for the reasons discussed above. As discussed in the interim final rule, Treasury determined that the 1 percent de minimis level reflects the historical reductions in revenue due to minor changes in state fiscal policies and was determined by assessing the historical effects of state-level tax policy changes in state EITCs implemented to effect policy goals other than reducing net tax revenues.³⁶²

For these reasons, Treasury is adopting the 1 percent de minimis without change.

(3) *Safe harbor.* Next, under the interim final rule, if the revenue reduction caused by the covered changes exceeds the 1 percent de minimis threshold, the recipient government compares the reporting year's actual tax revenue to the baseline. If actual tax revenue is greater than the baseline, Treasury will deem the recipient government not to have any recognized net reduction for the reporting year, and therefore to be in a safe harbor and outside the ambit of the offset provision. This approach is consistent with the ARPA, which contemplates recoupment of SLFRF funds only in the event that such funds are used to offset a reduction in net tax revenue. If net tax revenue has not been reduced, the offset provision does not apply. In the event that actual tax revenue is above the baseline, the organic revenue growth that has occurred, plus any other revenue-raising changes, by definition must have been enough to offset the in-year costs of any covered changes. One commenter argued that the offset for organic growth be adjusted to reflect population growth. To minimize administrative burden, and

for the reasons discussed above, Treasury is maintaining the measurement of actual tax revenue without adjustment for population growth.

(4) *Consideration of other sources of funding.* The recipient government will then identify and calculate the total value of changes that could pay for revenue reduction due to covered changes and sum these items. This amount can be used to pay for up to the total value of revenue-reducing changes in the reporting year. These changes consist of two categories:

(a) *Tax and other increases in revenue.* The recipient government must identify and consider covered changes in policy that the recipient government predicts will have the effect of increasing general revenue in a given reporting year. Recipient governments should use the same approach to identify and value covered changes that increase tax revenue as applied to covered changes that reduce tax revenue. For the reasons discussed above, Treasury is adopting these aspects of identifying and valuing covered changes without change.

(b) *Covered spending cuts.* A recipient government also may cut spending in certain areas to pay for covered changes that reduce tax revenue, up to the amount of the recipient government's net reduction in total spending as described below. These changes must be reductions in government outlays in an area where the recipient government has not spent SLFRF funds. To better align with existing reporting and accounting, the interim final rule considers the department, agency, or authority from which spending has been cut and whether the recipient government has spent SLFRF funds on that same department, agency, or authority. If the recipient government has not spent SLFRF funds in a department, agency, or authority, the full amount of the reduction in spending counts as a covered spending cut, up to the recipient government's net reduction in total spending. If they have spent SLFRF funds in such department, agency, or authority, the SLFRF funds generally would be deemed to have replaced the amount of spending cut and only reductions in spending above the amount of SLFRF funds spent on the department, agency, or authority would count. This approach—allowing only spending reductions in areas where the recipient government has not spent SLFRF funds to be used as an offset for a reduction in net tax revenue—aims to prevent recipient governments from using SLFRF funds to supplant state or territory funding in the eligible use

³⁶² Data provided by the Urban-Brookings Tax Policy Center for state-level EITC changes for 2004–2017.

areas, and then using those state or territory funds to offset tax cuts. Such an approach helps ensure that SLFRF funds are not used to “indirectly” offset revenue reductions due to covered changes.

Department, Agency, or Authority

Public Comment: Several commenters supported the interim final rule’s approach to considering spending cuts at the department, agency, or authority level, on the basis that this approach is supported by the statutory language prohibiting SLFRF funds from being used to “directly or indirectly” offset a reduction in net tax revenue. On the other hand, some commenters argued that the methodology for identifying offsetting spending cuts was too restrictive; specifically, that measurement at the agency or department-level may not adequately account for the size and various programs that could occur in one agency or department. One commenter argued that recipient governments should instead be permitted to consider spending cuts on a more granular sub-unit of a department but noted that this additional flexibility would come at the cost of transparency and clarity.

Treasury Comment: Treasury recognizes that some recipients may vary in their budgeting processes, with some budgeting on a department level and others budgeting at more or less granular sub-units of government. Relying on spending at a department, agency, or authority level allows recipient governments to report how SLFRF funds have been spent using reporting units already incorporated into their budgeting process.

Spending Cuts Baseline

Under the interim final rule, to calculate the amount of spending cuts that are available to offset a reduction in tax revenue, the recipient government must first consider whether there has been a reduction in total net spending, excluding SLFRF funds (net reduction in total spending). This approach ensures that reported spending cuts actually create fiscal space, rather than simply offset other spending increases. A net reduction in total spending is measured as the difference between total spending in each reporting year, excluding SLFRF funds spent, relative to total spending for the recipient’s fiscal year ending in 2019, adjusted for inflation. Measuring reductions in spending relative to 2019 reflects the fact that the fiscal space created by a spending cut persists so long as spending remains below its original

level, even if it does not decline further, relative to the same amount of revenue.

Public Comment: Several commenters expressed concern regarding the measurement of spending cuts relative to the recipient’s FY 2019, for example arguing that the choice did not take into account increases in spending in 2020. As one commenter noted, the fiscal year 2020 required extraordinary intervention by recipient governments and the ongoing public health emergency continues to require extraordinary intervention.

Treasury Response: FY 2019 provides a reasonable and relatively generous baseline for considering spending because it is the last full fiscal year prior to the COVID–19 public health emergency and governments’ extraordinary efforts to address the impact of the pandemic. This approach also aligns with the FY 2019 baseline for measuring revenue loss. Measuring spending cuts from year to year would, by contrast, not recognize any available funds to offset revenue reductions unless spending continued to decline, failing to reflect the actual availability of funds created by a persistent change and limiting the discretion of states and territories.

For the reasons discussed above, Treasury is adopting the approach taken in the interim final rule without change.

(5) *Identification of amounts subject to recoupment.* If a recipient government (i) reports covered changes that reduce tax revenue (Step 1); (ii) to a degree greater than the de minimis (Step 2); (iii) has experienced a reduction in net tax revenue (Step 3); and (iv) lacks sufficient revenue from other, permissible sources to pay for the entirety of the reduction (Step 4), then the recipient government will be considered to have used SLFRF funds to offset a reduction in net tax revenue, up to the amount that revenue has actually declined. That is, the maximum value of the reduction revenue due to covered changes that a recipient government must cover is capped at the difference between the baseline and actual tax revenue.³⁶³ In the event that the baseline is above actual tax revenue but the difference between them is less than the sum of revenue reducing changes that are not paid for with other, permissible sources, organic revenue growth has implicitly offset a portion of the reduction. The revenue reduction cap implements this approach for

permitting organic revenue growth to cover the cost of tax cuts.

Finally, a recipient government may request reconsideration of any amounts identified in a notice from Treasury as subject to recoupment under this framework. Comments and responses to the recoupment process are discussed in section Remediation and Recoupment of this Supplemental Information.

3. Reporting

To facilitate the implementation of the framework above, and in addition to reporting required on eligible uses, recipient governments are required to report certain information. The interim final rule indicated that Treasury would provide additional guidance at a later date and that, on an annual basis, it expected each recipient government would be required to provide the following information:

- Actual net tax revenue for the reporting year;
- Each revenue-reducing change made to date during the covered period and the in-year value of each change;
- Each revenue-raising change made to date during the covered period and the in-year value of each change; and
- Each covered spending cut made to date during the covered period, the in-year value of each cut, and documentation demonstrating that each spending cut is covered as prescribed under the interim final rule.

Since the adoption of the interim final rule, Treasury has provided guidance on reporting regarding eligible uses and has required recipient governments to indicate whether they have made covered changes and the value of such changes.³⁶⁴

Reporting Burden

Public Comment: Some commenters argued that the framework for identifying and reporting impermissible offsets was burdensome and that the burdens should be accounted for under Executive Order 13132 (Federalism, August 4, 1999).

Treasury Response: Taking into consideration comments received regarding burden, Treasury is considering a tiered approach to reporting on the offset provision. Specifically, under this approach, a recipient would only be required to report information to the extent needed to determine whether SLFRF funds had been used to offset a reduction in net tax revenue. For example, a recipient government would be required to report

³⁶³ This cap is applied in section 35.8(c) of the final rule, calculating the amount of funds used in violation of the tax offset provision.

³⁶⁴ See Reporting Guidance, Section C.11, available at <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRF-Compliance-and-Reporting-Guidance.pdf>.

information regarding permissible offsets only if it had also reported covered changes that were in excess of the de minimis and had reported a net reduction in tax revenue. Treasury will provide additional guidance and instructions on the reporting requirements at a later date.

As discussed in section Regulatory Analyses of this Supplemental Information, Treasury maintains that the final rule does not have federalism implications within the meaning of Executive Order 13132 (Federalism, August 4, 1999). In the ARPA, Congress requires states and territories to repay the Secretary for amounts used in violation of the prohibition on using SLFRF funds to offset reductions in net tax revenue, and it authorizes the Secretary to issue regulations to carry out this limitation and other requirements of the statute. Section 6(b) of Executive Order 13132 contemplates that certain regulations will be required by statute, as is the case with the interim final rule and the final rule, in which case section 6(b)(2)(B)'s requirement to include a federalism summary impact statement in the Supplementary Information to the regulation does not apply. Notwithstanding the above, Treasury has engaged in efforts to consult and work cooperatively with affected state, local, and Tribal government officials and associations in the process of developing the interim final rule.

Reporting Transparency

Public Comment: Several commenters argued that information supporting the net tax offset calculation should be publicly available. Some of these commenters requested that reporting be made available in a machine-readable format, and others advocated that recipient governments disclose this information on their local budget agency's website. These commenters argued that making information regarding tax changes publicly available would increase transparency and accountability. Further, several commenters suggested that Treasury provide a mechanism for citizens to register their concerns about particular tax actions.

Treasury Response: As discussed in other sections, reporting requirements promote transparency and accountability for the general public and constituents of recipient governments to understand how state, local, and Tribal governments have used SLFRF funds. Since the publication of the interim final rule, Treasury issued supplementary reporting guidance in the Compliance and Reporting Guidance

and in the User Guide: Treasury's Portal for Recipient Reporting (User Guide), which addresses the particular content and form of required reporting. Treasury will continue to issue updated guidance prior to each reporting period clarifying any modifications to requested report content and will continue to consider how reporting can best support transparency and accountability while minimizing recipient administrative burden. Further, as discussed in the section Remediation and Recoupment, Treasury may address potential violations of this final rule based on both information submitted from recipients, either through quarterly reports or self-reporting, and from other sources of information (e.g., information submitted from the public).

2. Deposit Into Pension Funds

Background: Subsection 602(c)(2)(B) of the Social Security Act provides that "[n]o State or territory may use funds made available under this section for deposit into any pension fund." Similarly, subsection 603(c)(2) of the Social Security Act provides that "[n]o metropolitan city, nonentitlement unit of local government, or county may use funds made available under this section for deposit into any pension fund."

For purposes of this restriction on pension deposits, the interim final rule defined deposit to mean "an extraordinary payment of an accrued, unfunded liability." The interim final rule also specified that a deposit does not include routine contributions made as part of a payroll obligation, such as the normal cost component of a pension contribution or the component that consists of amortization of unfunded liabilities calculated by reference to the employer's payroll costs. The interim final rule applied the restriction on pension deposits to all recipients.

Public Comment: Several commenters observed that the statutory restriction on deposits into pension funds does not apply to Tribal governments.

Treasury Response: In response, Treasury is clarifying in the final rule that the pension restriction does not apply to Tribal governments.

Public Comment: Treasury also received a comment expressing concern that the interim final rule permitted recipients to make a larger than usual pension contribution, so long as the timing of that contribution aligns with the historical timing of contributions.

Treasury Response: The interim final rule prohibited the use of SLFRF funds from the ARPA to make extraordinary payments, and the **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** to the interim final rule said that a payment would be an

extraordinary payment if it reduces a liability incurred prior to the start of the COVID-19 public health emergency and occurs outside the recipient's regular timing for making the payment. At the same time, however, as suggested by the comment Treasury received, a payment made at the regular time for pension contributions may very well be an extraordinary payment, for example, if it is larger than a regular payment would have been. Such a payment would be a restricted use.

Public Comment: Other commenters asked which pension contributions are permitted.

Treasury Response: To be an eligible use of SLFRF funds, a use must (1) be eligible under one of the eligible use categories and (2) not contravene any of the applicable restrictions on uses of funds. Some pension contributions may be eligible because they both fit within an eligible use category and do not contravene the restriction on deposits into pension funds (i.e., they are not an extraordinary payment of an accrued, unfunded liability). For example, payroll and covered benefits for public health and safety staff responding to COVID-19 are an eligible use of funds to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic; routine pension contributions as part of an employee's regular covered benefits are permissible under that eligible use category.

B. Other Restrictions on Use of Funds

1. Debt Service and Replenishing Financial Reserves

The **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** to the interim final rule provided that debt service is not an eligible use of funds either to respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts or as a provision of government services to the extent of revenue loss.³⁶⁵ The interim final rule also provided that replenishing financial reserves (e.g., rainy day funds) is not an eligible use of funds either to respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts or as a provision of

³⁶⁵ "[G]overnment services would not include interest or principal on any outstanding debt instrument, including, for example, short-term revenue or tax anticipation notes, or fees or issuance costs associated with the issuance of new debt. For the same reasons, government services would not include satisfaction of any obligation arising under or pursuant to a settlement agreement, judgment, consent decree, or judicially confirmed debt restructuring in a judicial, administrative, or regulatory proceeding, except if the judgment or settlement required the provision of government services." 86 FR 26796-97 (May 17, 2021).

government services to the extent of revenue loss.³⁶⁶

As explained in greater detail below, Treasury, in the final rule, has retained these restrictions and is clarifying that these restrictions on the use of SLFRF funds apply to all eligible use categories.

Public Comments

Several commenters suggested that debt service and reserve replenishment should qualify as the provision of a government service and be an eligible use of funds, up to the amount of revenue loss due to the pandemic. Many commenters indicated that they had been forced to borrow money or dip into reserve funds to continue providing government services during the public health emergency and that using SLFRF funds for resulting debt service or reserve replenishment costs should therefore be considered a government service.

Many comments from Tribal governments noted that their governments depend on revenue from Tribal enterprises to pay government debts and provide services. The comments suggest that it should be an eligible use of SLFRF to replace lost revenue from these enterprises that would typically be used to pay debt service costs. Other commenters argued that paying the interest or principal on debt should in some cases be considered provision of government services and an eligible use of funds as such expenditures facilitate the provision of government services.

Some commenters argued that debt costs or reserve drawdowns during the public health emergency constitute a negative economic impact to recipient governments, and thus debt service or reserve replenishment should be an eligible use to respond to that negative economic impact. For example, several commenters suggested that there should be a specific carve-out allowing the use of SLFRF funds for debt service on debt incurred for government services after January 27, 2020, the start of the public health emergency, or short-term debt incurred for this purpose. Others suggested that recipient governments should be able to service debt, up to the amount of debt incurred in direct response to the pandemic. These commenters generally reasoned that the cost of responding to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts prior to APRA's passage

constitutes a negative economic impact of the pandemic.

Some commenters argued that the specific impacts of the pandemic on the travel, tourism, and hospitality sector had affected their ability to meet debt service costs. For example, some commenters explained that specific tax streams (*e.g.*, hotel room taxes) or revenue sources (*e.g.*, hospitality generally) are tied to specific debt instruments and that these revenue sources had declined during the public health emergency; commenters argued that this constitutes a negative economic impact that SLFRF funds should be permitted to address.

Finally, some commenters questioned why servicing debt incurred after March 3, 2021 for an otherwise eligible project (*e.g.*, a broadband infrastructure project) would not be an eligible use of funds.

On the other hand, many commenters expressed support for the interim final rule's prohibition on use of funds for debt service and reserve replenishment. These commenters largely argued that SLFRF funds should be used to provide current services to communities in response to the public health emergency and that use of funds for debt service or reserve replenishment represented, respectively, payment for past costs or savings for potential future costs. In addition to the prohibition on debt service and reserve replenishment, some commenters suggested that the final rule should also prevent funds from being used for state UI trust fund replenishment or for paying off debt owed through UI trust funds. One commenter argued that Treasury should further restrict recipient governments, for example by preventing recipients from making cuts to an allowable budget item, filling the budget gap with SLFRF funds, and then using the savings from the initial cut for debt service or reserve replenishment.

Treasury Response

The final rule maintains the restriction on the use of funds for debt service or reserve replenishment for the reasons described below and clarifies that this restriction applies to all eligible use categories.

First, debt service and reserve replenishment costs do not constitute the provision of services to constituents. As noted in the interim final rule, financing expenses—such as issuance of debt or payment of debt service—do not provide services or aid to citizens. Similarly, contributions to rainy day funds and similar financial reserves constitute savings for future spending needs. As such, these expenses do not respond to the current and ongoing

public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic, nor do they provide a government service.

Second, payments from the SLFRF are intended to be used prospectively (see section Timeline for Use of SLFRF Funds). The interim final rule provided that funds may be used for costs incurred beginning on March 3, 2021, which Treasury has maintained in the final rule. Use of funds for debt service on indebtedness issued prior to March 3, 2021 necessarily entails using funds for costs incurred during prior time periods, rather than the present response to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts or to provide government services.

Third, SLFRF funds provide recipients with substantial latitude to use funds to support the diverse needs in their communities. With SLFRF resources available, recipients have less need to incur debt for otherwise-eligible SLFRF uses.

Finally, given the strong performance of overall revenues and low municipal bond yields, state and local governments generally do not face high levels of fiscal stress. Limits on debt service or replenishment of reserves would not have a substantial impact on recipients' ability to provide services. The ratio of state and local debt-to-GDP, which spiked briefly during the pandemic, has recovered to its pre-pandemic level and remains well below levels seen during the Great Recession.³⁶⁷

2. Settlements and Judgments

The interim final rule also provided that satisfaction of any obligation arising under or pursuant to a settlement agreement, judgment, consent decree, or judicially confirmed debt restructuring in a judicial, administrative, or regulatory proceeding would not be an eligible use of funds to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic or as a government service provided under the revenue loss eligible use category. However, if the judgment or settlement requires the recipient to provide services that are otherwise eligible under an SLFRF eligible use category, specifically if the settlement or judgment requires the recipient to provide services to respond to the COVID-19 public health emergency or its negative economic impacts or to provide government services, then those costs are eligible uses of SLFRF funds.

³⁶⁶ "In addition, replenishing financial reserves (*e.g.*, rainy day or other reserve funds) would not be considered provision of a government service, since such expenses do not directly relate to the provision of government services."

³⁶⁷ Table Z.1 of the Financial Accounts of the United States, Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and Table 1.1.5 of National Income and Product Accounts, Bureau of Economic Analysis.

In other words, satisfaction of a settlement or judgment itself is not itself an eligible use of funds, unless the settlement requires the recipient to provide services or incur other costs that are eligible uses of SLFRF funds.

In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining the interim final rule approach and clarifying that it applies to all eligible use categories and any use of funds under the SLFRF program.

3. General Restrictions

In addition to the above restrictions, there are three general restrictions that apply to SLFRF funds. These restrictions, which reflect existing laws and regulations, the Award Terms and Conditions, and application of the ARPA statute, applied under the interim final rule, and they continue to apply under the final rule.

A primary purpose of the SLFRF in the ARPA is to support efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19.³⁶⁸ As discussed above, recipients of SLFRF funds are required to comply with the Award Terms and Conditions established for the use of such funds. The interim final rule and final rule implement this objective by, in part, providing that recipients may use SLFRF funds for COVID-19 mitigation and prevention.³⁶⁹ See section Public Health in Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts.

The CDC has provided recommendations and guidelines to help mitigate and prevent COVID-19 and has identified vaccines and masks as two of the best tools to prevent the spread of COVID-19. The interim final rule and final rule help support recipients in stopping the spread of COVID-19 through these recommendations and guidelines. Consistent with the purpose of the ARPA and as implemented through the interim final rule and final rule, a recipient may not use SLFRF funds for a program, service, or capital expenditure that includes a term or condition that undermines efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19. A program or service that imposes conditions on participation or acceptance of the service that would undermine efforts to stop the spread of COVID-19 or discourage compliance with recommendations and guidelines in CDC guidance for stopping the spread of COVID-19 is not a permissible use of SLFRF funds.

In other words, recipients may not use funds for a program that undermines

practices included in the CDC's guidelines and recommendations for stopping the spread of COVID-19. This includes programs that impose a condition to discourage compliance with practices in line with CDC guidance (e.g., paying off fines to businesses incurred for violation of COVID-19 vaccination or safety requirements), as well as programs that require households, businesses, nonprofits, or other entities not to use practices in line with CDC guidance as a condition of receiving funds (e.g., requiring that businesses abstain from requiring mask use or employee vaccination as a condition of receiving SLFRF funds).

Second, a recipient may not use SLFRF funds in violation of the conflict of interest requirements contained in the Award Terms and Conditions or the Office of Management and Budget's Uniform Guidance, including any self-dealing or violation of ethics rules. Recipients are required to establish policies and procedures to manage potential conflicts of interest.³⁷⁰ Treasury may provide further guidance on the types of activities or conflicts that the recipient's policies and procedures must cover.

Lastly, recipients should also be cognizant that federal, state, and local laws and regulations, outside of SLFRF program requirements, may apply. Recipients may not use revenue loss funds, for instance, to violate other background laws that limit the scope of activities that may be conducted as "government services," including other state and federal laws. State and local procurement, contracting, and conflicts-of-interest laws and regulations may include applicable requirements, including, for example, required procurement processes for contractor selection or competitive price setting. Furthermore, recipients are also required to comply with other federal, state, and local background laws, including environmental laws³⁷¹ and federal civil rights and nondiscrimination requirements, which include prohibitions on discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, (including sexual orientation

and gender identity), religion, disability, or age, or familial status (having children under the age of 18).

IV. Program Administration Provisions

The interim final rule included several sections that described the processes and requirements for administering the program on an ongoing basis, specifically: Distribution of funds, transfer of funds, use of funds for program administration, reporting on the use of funds, and remediation and recoupment of funds used for ineligible purposes.

To enhance clarity, this **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** for the final rule organizes these issues into one section on Program Administration Provisions. Recipients should also consult Treasury's Compliance and Reporting Guidance for additional information on program administration processes and requirements, including the applicability of the Uniform Guidance.

A. Payments in Tranches to Local Governments and Certain States

Section 602(b)(6)(A)(ii) of the Social Security Act authorizes the Secretary to withhold payment of up to 50 percent of the amount allocated to each state and territory for a period of up to 12 months from the date on which the state or territory provides its statutorily-required certification to the Secretary. The Social Security Act requires any such withholding be based on the unemployment rate in the state or territory as of the date of the certification.

Under the interim final rule, Treasury provided that it would withhold 50 percent of the amount allocated from any state that had an unemployment rate less than two percentage points above its unemployment rate in February 2020 as of the date the state submitted its initial certification for payment of funds pursuant to section 602(d)(1) of the Social Security Act. Based on data available at the time of the issuance of the interim final rule, this threshold was expected to result in a majority of states being paid in two tranches. Treasury did not split the payments of any territories.

Public Comment: One commenter asked Treasury to allow a state to request release of the portion of the state's second tranche payment after the state could demonstrate that it had allocated the entirety of the first tranche, a need to continue ongoing programs, and a desire to avoid borrowing costs. Another commenter asked Treasury to clarify whether states that received half their funding in the

³⁶⁸ See Sec. 602(a)(1); 603(a)(1); 602(c)(1); 603(c)(1).

³⁶⁹ See 35.6(b); Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, 86 FR at 26786.

³⁷⁰ Specifically, the Award Terms and Conditions provide that "[r]ecipient understands and agrees it must maintain a conflict of interest policy consistent with 2 CFR 200.318(c), and that such conflict-of-interest policy is applicable to each activity funded under this award. Recipients and subrecipients must disclose in writing to Treasury or the pass-through agency, as appropriate, any potential conflict of interest affecting the awarded funds in accordance with 2 CFR 200.112."

³⁷¹ An exception is statutes that do not apply unless explicitly stated, including, e.g., the National Environmental Policy Act and the Davis-Bacon Act.

first payment would receive their second half payment within 12 months. Similarly, some recipients requested clarification on whether they could obligate second tranche funds before receipt or use second tranche funds for costs incurred prior to receipt.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the approach in the interim final rule with two modifications. As described in the interim final rule, splitting payments for most states provides consistency with payments to local governments and encourages states to adapt their use of funds to developments that arise in the course of the economic recovery. Moreover, SLFRF funds may be used for costs incurred during the period of performance. Recipients may use their jurisdiction's budgeting and procurement practices and laws to determine how and when second tranche funds may be obligated.

The final rule makes two adjustments for operational purposes. First, the final rule provides that Treasury expects to make all second tranche payments to states available beginning 12 months from the date that funding was first made available by Treasury (May 10, 2021) regardless of when each individual state submitted its initial certification. This should increase clarity and consistency on the timing of second tranche payments for both states and Treasury. Second, also to ease recipient states' administrative burden, the final rule strikes a requirement from the interim final rule that states must certify for their second tranche payments and file all required reports at least 30 days prior to the date on which their second payment is made available. The final rule simply requires that states certify for their second tranche payment and file all required reports before receiving their second tranche payment, with no 30 day wait period required.

B. Payments to Nonentitlement Units of Local Government (NEUs) and Units of Local Government (UGLGs) Within Non-UGLG Counties

The interim final rule established requirements related to distributions of SLFRF funds by states and territories to NEUs and UGLGs within non-UGLG counties. Specifically, the interim final rule provided that the total distribution to an NEU cannot exceed 75 percent of the most recent budget for the NEU (the 75 percent budget cap); a requirement set forth in section 603(b)(2)(C)(iii) of the Social Security Act. The interim final rule **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** defined the NEU's budget for purposes of calculating the 75 percent budget cap as the NEU's "most recent annual total

operating budget, including its general fund and other funds, as of January 27, 2020." The interim final rule further provided that states and territories must permit NEUs without formal budgets as of January 27, 2020 to self-certify their most recent annual expenditures as of January 27, 2020 for the purpose of calculating the 75 percent budget cap. Further, the interim final rule prohibited states and territories from placing additional conditions or requirements on distributions to NEUs beyond those required by the statute, the interim final rule, or Treasury's guidance and from offsetting any debt owed by such NEUs against such distributions.

Commenters predominantly focused on the definition of an NEU's budget for purposes of calculating the 75 percent budget cap, NEU allocations and eligibility, and the prohibition on states and territories imposing additional conditions or requirements in the NEU distribution process.

Definition of NEU Budget

Public Comment: Commenters suggested that Treasury provide greater clarification on the definition of an NEU's "most recent budget" for purposes of the 75 percent budget cap calculation. Treasury provided updated guidance on its interpretation of the 75 percent budget cap on June 30, 2021, and a commenter suggested that Treasury incorporate such updated interpretation into the **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** of the final rule.

Treasury Response: Consistent with the Update on Interpretation for the 75 Percent Budget Cap Calculation published on June 30, 2021,³⁷² the **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** of the final rule defines an NEU's budget for purposes of calculating the 75 percent budget cap as its total annual budget, including both operating and capital expenditure budgets, in effect as of January 27, 2020. The guidance also gives states and territories flexibility to provide further guidance to their NEUs to operationalize the 75 percent budget cap. Given the variance in local financial accounting, this updated definition will better facilitate states' and territories' distribution of SLFRF funds to NEUs.

Allocations and Eligibility

Public Comment: Many commenters provided feedback on specific allocation calculations and eligibility of local governments for NEU funding.

³⁷² Treasury's Update on Interpretation for the 75 Percent Budget Cap Calculation can be found at: <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/NEU-Update-75-Percent-Budget-Cap.pdf>.

Commenters addressed how a locality was classified as an NEU or metropolitan city, deviations between Treasury's allocation calculations and earlier estimates from other sources, treatment of unincorporated areas, sources for population data, and Treasury's allocation of NEU funding to states and territories based on the population of a state and territory outside of its metropolitan cities. Two commenters proposed that Treasury provide an appeal process for localities that were not identified on the List of Local Governments used by states and territories as part of the process in which a state or territory determines the eligibility of an NEU in accordance with Treasury guidance, or for Minor Civil Divisions (MCDs) that were denied funding as part of a facts-and-circumstances test undertaken by a weak-MCD state.

Treasury Response: Neither the interim final rule nor the final rule addresses eligibility or allocations issues, and comments on these topics are outside the scope of this rulemaking. These questions are addressed in other Treasury guidance, including the Guidance on Distribution of Funds to Non-entitlement Units of Local Government and Non-entitlement Unit of Local Government Definitional and Data Methodology guidance documents available on Treasury's website.³⁷³ Because Treasury interpreted the definition of an NEU³⁷⁴ in accordance with the statute and established an NEU distribution process in May 2021, the final rule does not incorporate an appeals process regarding the definitions or the facts-and-circumstances test used for eligibility determinations.

Prohibition on Additional Conditions or Requirements in the NEU Distribution Process

Public Comment: One commenter expressed support for Treasury's prohibition on states and territories

³⁷³ The Guidance on Distribution of Funds to Nonentitlement Units of Local Government can be found at this link: https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/NEU_Guidance.pdf. The Nonentitlement Unit of Local Government Definitional and Data Methodology can be found at this link: https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/NEU_Methodology.pdf.

³⁷⁴ Treasury has interpreted NEU to generally include both incorporated places and MCDs with active functioning governments, subject to the state determining, in the case of weak-MCD States, that a weak MCD has the legal and operational capacity to accept SLFRF funds and provides a broad range of services that would constitute eligible uses under ARPA. More details can be found in the Nonentitlement Unit of Local Government Definitional and Data Methodology, available at https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/NEU_Methodology.pdf.

placing additional conditions or requirements on distributions to NEUs. This prohibition restricts states and territories from imposing limitations on NEUs' use of SLFRF funds based on an NEU's proposed spending plan or other policies, offsetting any debt owed by an NEU against the NEU's distribution, or providing funding on a reimbursement model. In particular, the commenter noted that a reimbursement model would lead to inequities in accessing SLFRF funds.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains and finalizes the prohibition on states and territories placing additional conditions or requirements on distributions to NEUs as well as to any UGLGs within counties that are non-UGLGs. Such conditions or requirements may contravene the statutory requirement that states and territories make distributions based on population and within the statutorily defined timeframe.

Other Provisions

Treasury did not receive substantive comments on the requirement that states and territories permit NEUs without formal budgets as of January 27, 2020 to self-certify their most recent annual expenditures as of January 27, 2020 for the purpose of calculating the 75 percent budget cap, or Treasury's interpretation of the 75 percent budget cap applying only to a consolidated government's NEU allocation under section 603(b)(2) but not to a consolidated government's county allocation under section 603(b)(3). Further, Treasury did not receive substantive comments on the interim final rule's allowance that states and territories be able to use SLFRF funds under section 602(c)(1)(A) to fund expenses related to administering payments to NEUs and units of general local government. As such, the final rule maintains these provisions as written in the interim final rule without modification.

Treasury received some comments that are not addressed because they are beyond the scope of the NEU provision of the interim final rule or not authorized by the statute, including comments related to state accounting practices, re-allocations of NEU allocations that exceed the 75 percent budget cap, and concerns around eligible uses under SLFRF that small local governments may find particularly salient.

C. Timeline for Use of SLFRF Funds

The interim final rule provided that “[a] recipient may only use funds to cover costs incurred during the period

beginning March 3, 2021 and ending December 31, 2024.” The interim final rule also provides that the period of performance will run until December 31, 2026, which will provide recipients an additional two years during which they may expend funds for costs incurred (*i.e.*, obligated).

As explained in more detail below, in the final rule Treasury is maintaining these time periods. Treasury will retain March 3, 2021 as the first date when costs may be incurred, to provide for forward-looking or prospective use of funds and to align with the start date of the “covered period” as such term is used in section 602(c)(2)(A). The deadline for costs to be incurred—which the final rule clarifies means obligated—December 31, 2024, is specified in the ARPA statute, and Treasury will retain December 31, 2026 as the end of the period of performance to provide a reasonable amount of time for recipients to liquidate obligations incurred by the statutory deadline.

Public Comments. Some commenters expressed concerns about costs incurred before March 3, 2021 not being covered and recommended the “start date” be changed to January 2020 to coincide with the declaration of the public health emergency. These commenters argued that recipient governments began incurring costs to respond to COVID-19 and its economic impacts in January 2020 and that prior federal fiscal relief, such as relief provided in the Coronavirus Aid, Relief, and Economic Security Act, did not fully compensate recipient governments for these costs. These commenters recommended that costs incurred before March 3, 2021 that otherwise fit within eligible use categories for SLFRF should be permissible uses of funds.

Some commenters asked Treasury to clarify whether local governments are subject to the same covered period as states and territories beginning March 3, 2021. Commenters noted that section 603(g) of the Social Security Act does not contain the same definition of “covered period” as section 602(g)(1) of the Social Security Act, which references a statutory provision that only applies to states and territories.

Many commenters requested that the deadline for costs to be incurred and the period of performance be extended due to the longer timeline for completing water and sewer projects. One commenter requested that recipients be able to split projects into different phases so that funds could be expended on larger, longer term projects (*e.g.*, by obligating funds on one portion of the project by the statutory deadline). One commenter recommended that the

period of performance be extended for at least two additional years beyond the expenditure deadline set forth in the interim final rule, *i.e.*, until December 31, 2028. One commenter wrote that the final rule should allow for extended projects (*e.g.*, over a time horizon of more than ten years) for recipients working to develop long-term water supplies to prepare for extreme drought.

Treasury Response. In the final rule, Treasury is maintaining March 3, 2021 as the date when recipients may begin to incur costs using SLFRF funds. As described in the interim final rule, use of SLFRF funds is forward looking and the eligible use categories provided by statute are all prospective in nature. While recipients may identify and respond to negative economic impacts that occurred during 2020, the costs incurred to respond to these impacts remain prospective. Further, Treasury considers the beginning of the covered period for purposes of determining compliance with section 602(c)(2)(A) to be a relevant reference point for this purpose that provides some flexibility for recipients that began incurring costs in the anticipation of enactment of the ARPA or in advance of the issuance of the interim final rule and receipt of payment.

Finally, establishing an earlier start date would permit governments to use funds received in 2021 to satisfy obligations incurred in 2020. This use raises a substantial risk of SLFRF funds being used to supplant other recipient funds previously used to pay for such 2020 obligations, freeing funds for recipients to use for any purpose rather than eligible uses of SLFRF funds under the ARPA. Permitting such usage would undermine the provisions setting forth permissible and impermissible uses in the statute. Therefore, a reading of the statute permitting use of funds prior to March 3, 2021 would be inconsistent with the statutory structure.

In the final rule, Treasury is also maintaining the deadlines by which funds must be obligated (*i.e.*, December 31, 2024) and by which such obligations must be liquidated (*i.e.*, December 31, 2026). The December 31, 2024 deadline by which eligible costs must be incurred is established by statute. Treasury is finalizing its interpretation of “incurred” to be equivalent to the definition of “obligation,” based on the definition used for purposes of the Uniform Guidance. Treasury is also maintaining the period of performance, which will run through December 31, 2026, and provides the deadline by which recipients must expend obligated funds. Most recipients received SLFRF funds in the spring and summer of 2021,

meaning that they have over three years to obligate and over five years to expend funds. This provides a sufficient amount of time for recipients to plan and execute projects.

D. Transfers of Funds

Under section 602(c)(3) of the Social Security Act, a state, territory, or Tribal government may transfer SLFRF funds to a “private nonprofit organization . . . a Tribal organization . . . a public benefit corporation involved in the transportation of passengers or cargo, or a special-purpose unit of state or local government.” Similarly, section 603(c)(3) authorizes a local government to transfer SLFRF funds to the same entities (other than Tribal organizations). Separately, section 603(c)(4) authorizes a local government to transfer SLFRF funds to the state in which it is located.

Entities Eligible for a Transfer Under Sections 602(c)(3) and 603(c)(3)

Regarding transfers permitted under sections 602(c)(3) and 603(c)(3) of the Act, the interim final rule Supplementary Information clarified that the lists of transferees in these sections are not exclusive and that state, local, territorial, and Tribal governments may transfer funds to other constituent units of government or private entities beyond those specified in the statute.

Public Comment: Several commenters supported Treasury’s interpretation of eligible transferees in sections 602(c)(3) and 603(c)(3) as nonexclusive. However, many commenters asked for greater clarity as to whether specific entities not listed in Treasury’s examples of eligible subrecipients, such as nonprofits and Tribal governments, were eligible transferees. One commenter also asked whether a recipient may transfer SLFRF funds to a higher level of government, such as a locality to the county in which it is located.

Treasury Response: The final rule clarifies that, in addition to the entities enumerated in sections 602(c)(3) and 603(c)(3), recipients may transfer SLFRF funds to any entity to carry out as a subrecipient an eligible use of funds by the transferor, as long as they comply with the Award Terms and Conditions and other applicable requirements, including the Uniform Guidance at 2 CFR 200.331–200.333. Eligible subrecipients include, but are not limited to, other units of government (including Tribal governments), nonprofits and other civil society organizations, and private entities. Further, the final rule clarifies that transfers may be made to both constituent or non-constituent units of

government. For example, county A may transfer SLFRF funds to county B as long as county B abides by the use restrictions applicable to county A and the transfer would constitute an eligible use of the funds by county A. County A must receive a benefit proportionate to the amount transferred.

As detailed in the interim final rule Supplementary Information, once transfers are received, the transferee must abide by the restrictions on use applicable to the transferor under the ARPA and other applicable law, regulations, and program guidance. Further, the transferor remains responsible for monitoring and overseeing the subrecipient’s use of SLFRF funds and other activities related to the award to ensure that the subrecipient complies with the statutory and regulatory requirements and the Award Terms and Conditions. Recipients also remain responsible for reporting to Treasury on their subrecipients’ use of payments from the SLFRF for the duration of the award.

Pooling Funds

Public Comment: Several commenters asked for clarification about whether they may pool SLFRF funds for a project with other recipients, including when doing so involves a transfer to another entity, such as a regional organization or government that undertakes projects on behalf of a number of local governments. Commenters also asked for clarification on the oversight and reporting obligations that would result from such transfers.

Treasury Response: Consistent with guidance issued following the interim final rule,³⁷⁵ the final rule clarifies that recipients may pool SLFRF funds for projects, provided that the project is itself an eligible use of SLFRF funds for each recipient that is contributing to the pool of funds and that recipients are able to track the use of funds in line with the reporting and compliance requirements of the SLFRF. In general, when pooling funds for regional projects, recipients may expend funds directly on the project or transfer funds to another government or other entity that is undertaking the project on behalf of multiple recipients. To the extent recipients undertake regional projects via transfer to another organization or government, recipients would need to comply with the rules on transfers specified in the final rule

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION. A

³⁷⁵ Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

recipient may transfer funds to a government outside its boundaries (e.g., county transfers to a neighboring county), provided that the transferor can document that the transfer constitutes an eligible expense of the transferor government and that its jurisdiction receives a benefit proportionate to the amount transferred.

Blending and Braiding of Funds

Treasury is clarifying in the final rule that, consistent with further guidance issued by Treasury following the interim final rule,³⁷⁶ recipients may fund a project with both SLFRF funds and other sources of funding, provided that the costs are eligible costs under each source program and are compliant with all other related statutory and regulatory requirements and policies. The recipient must comply with applicable reporting requirements for all sources of funds supporting the SLFRF projects and with any requirements and restrictions on the use of funds from the supplemental funding sources and the SLFRF program. Specifically,

- All funds provided under the SLFRF program must be used for projects, investments, or services that are eligible under the SLFRF program. SLFRF funds may not be used to fund an activity that is not, in its entirety, an eligible use under the SLFRF program. For example:

- SLFRF funds may be used in conjunction with other sources of funds to make an investment in water infrastructure that is eligible under section 602 or 603 of the Social Security Act and the final rule.

- SLFRF funds could *not* be used to fund the entirety of a water infrastructure project that was partially, although not entirely, an eligible use under Treasury’s final rule. However, the recipient could use SLFRF funds only for a smaller component project that does constitute an eligible use, while using other funds for the remaining portions of the larger planned water infrastructure project that do not constitute an eligible use. In this case, the “project” for SLFRF purposes under this program would be only the eligible use component of the larger project.

- In addition, because SLFRF funds must be obligated by December 31, 2024, and recipients must expend all funds under the award no later than December 31, 2026, recipients must be able to, at a minimum, determine and report to Treasury on the amount of SLFRF funds obligated and expended and when such funds were obligated and expended.

³⁷⁶ See FAQ 4.10. *Id.*

Scope of a 603(c)(4) Transfer

Unlike in the case of a transfer under sections 602(c)(3) or 603(c)(3), the interim final rule **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** specified that transfers from a local government to the state under section 603(c)(4) will result in a cancellation or termination of the award on the part of the transferor local government and a modification of the award to the transferee state.

Public Comment: Two commenters suggested that Treasury expand section 603(c)(4) beyond transfers from localities to the state to include transfers from counties to their constituent local governments, which would incentivize counties to augment funds to address the needs of local governments. These commenters noted that counties are disincentivized to make transfers under section 603(c)(3), as is currently allowed, as such transfers would require that counties provide oversight and monitoring over its subrecipients.

Treasury Response: Section 603(c)(4), by its terms, applies only to transfers from local governments to states. Accordingly, the final rule must maintain the interim final rule's limitation of section 603(c)(4) transfers as applicable only to transfers from local governments to states. Expansions of section 603(c)(4) transfer authority beyond transfers from local governments to states were not explicitly authorized by Congress. As such, transfers under section 603(c)(4) may only be made by local governments to the state in which they are located.

Congress enumerated two separate transfer provisions for local governments—section 603(c)(3) and section 603(c)(4)—that use different language and were intended to operate differently. Section 603(c)(4) contains prefatory language (“Notwithstanding paragraph (1)”—a reference to the eligible SLFRF uses) that section 603(c)(3) does not. In other words, section 603(c)(4) transfers are not required to constitute an eligible use of the funds from the perspective of the transferor local government, but section 603(c)(3) transfers are required to constitute an eligible use. A transfer to accomplish an eligible use fits within the recipient-subrecipient framework.

Further, treating section 603(c)(3) transfers as leading to a cancellation of the award for the transferor local government would result in scenarios that are inconsistent with the statutory language. An award cancellation pursuant to a section 603(c)(3) transfer would result in either (1) non-governmental entities becoming award recipients under the program, which

would contravene the purpose of SLFRF or (2) transfers to governmental and non-governmental entities being treated in a distinct and inconsistent manner. That is, section 603(c)(3) transfers to governmental entities would lead to award cancellation but section 603(c)(3) transfers to non-governmental entities would lead to a recipient-subrecipient relationship. Therefore, in the final rule, Treasury maintains its distinct treatment of a section 603(c)(3) transfer and section 603(c)(4) transfer.

The final rule clarifies that a transfer under section 603(c)(4) will result in a modification, termination, or cancellation of the award on the part of the transferor local government and a modification of the award to the transferee state or territory. As detailed in the **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** to the interim final rule, the transferor must provide notice of the transfer to Treasury in a format specified by Treasury. Until the local government provides such notice and Treasury provides confirmation of its acceptance of the notice, the local government will remain responsible for ensuring that the SLFRF award is being used in accordance with the Award Terms and Conditions, section 602 or 603 of the Social Security Act, the final rule, and program guidance including reporting on such uses of the award funds to Treasury.

A state that receives a transfer from a local government under section 603(c)(4) will be bound, by statute, by all of the use restrictions set forth in section 602(c) with respect to the use of those SLFRF funds, including the prohibitions on use of such SLFRF funds to offset certain reductions in taxes or to make deposits into pension funds. The state will be responsible as the prime recipient for the use and reporting on any funds transferred under section 603(c)(4) by the local government. Such transferred funds will be subject to the Award Terms and Conditions previously accepted by the state in connection with its SLFRF award.

Subrecipient Transfers

Public Comment: Commenters sought clarification as to how funds may be transferred from a recipient to another entity. For instance, one commenter requested that recipients be able to advance funds to subrecipients as opposed to reimbursing subrecipients for expenses incurred.

Treasury Response: Treasury did not specify in the interim final rule whether recipients may advance funds to subrecipients. This omission was not intended to prevent recipients from

advancing funds to subrecipients, consistent with the various methods permitted under the Uniform Guidance. Given the broad flexibility that recipients have in selecting eligible uses and the broad variety of potential subrecipients, Treasury believes that specifying a single method of advancement or reimbursement would add unnecessary administrative difficulty to program administration. Recipients may determine the optimal payment structure for the transfer of funds (e.g., advance payments, reimbursement basis, etc.) from recipients to subrecipients. Ultimately, recipients must comply with the eligible use requirements and any other applicable laws or requirements and are responsible for the actions of their subrecipients.

E. Administrative Expenses

The interim final rule permitted, under the heading “[e]xpenses to improve efficacy of public health or economic relief programs,” use of funds for “[a]dministrative costs associated with the recipient’s COVID-19 public health emergency assistance programs, including services responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency or its negative economic impacts, that are not federally funded.”

Following release of the interim final rule, Treasury issued Compliance and Reporting Guidance that provided that “recipients may use funds for administering the SLFRF program, including costs of consultants to support effective management and oversight, including consultation for ensuring compliance with legal, regulatory, and other requirements. Further, costs must be reasonable and allocable as outlined in 2 CFR 200.404 and 2 CFR 200.405. Pursuant to the SLFRF Award Terms and Conditions, recipients are permitted to charge both direct and indirect costs to their SLFRF award as administrative costs. Direct costs are those that are identified specifically as costs of implementing the SLFRF program objectives, such as contract support, materials, and supplies for a project. Indirect costs are general overhead costs of an organization where a portion of such costs are [sic] allocable to the SLFRF award such as the cost of facilities or administrative functions like a director’s office.”³⁷⁷ Several commenters

³⁷⁷ U.S. Department of the Treasury, Recipient Compliance and Reporting Responsibilities, as of November 5, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/policy-issues/coronavirus/assistance-for-state-local-and-tribal-governments/state-and-local-fiscal>

requested clarity on which administrative expenses are permissible uses of funds and how recipients should structure administrative costs.

In the final rule, Treasury is clarifying that direct and indirect administrative expenses are permissible uses of SLFRF funds and are a separate eligible use category from “[e]xpenses to improve efficacy of public health or economic relief programs,” which refers to efforts to improve the effectiveness of public health and economic programs through use of data, evidence, and targeted consumer outreach. For details on permissible direct and indirect administrative costs, recipients should refer to Treasury’s Compliance and Reporting Guidance.³⁷⁸ Costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances must be treated consistently as either direct or indirect costs.

F. Treatment of Loans

The interim final rule allowed recipients to use SLFRF funds to make loans for uses that are otherwise eligible (for example, for small business assistance). Subsequent guidance clarified how recipients must track and dispose of program income from loans, consistent with the statutory requirements for the timing of SLFRF expenditures.

SLFRF funds must be used to cover “costs incurred” by the recipient between March 3, 2021 and December 31, 2024. The interim final rule provided that SLFRF funds must be obligated by December 31, 2024 and expended by December 31, 2026. In using SLFRF funds to make loans, recipients must be able to determine the amount of funds used to make a loan and must comply with restrictions on the timing of the use of funds and with restrictions in the Uniform Guidance.

When SLFRF funds are used as the principal for loans, there is an expectation that a significant share of the loaned funds will be repaid. Thus, recipients may not simply consider the full amount of loaned funds to be permanently expended and must appropriately account for the return of loaned funds.

For loans that mature or are forgiven on or before December 31, 2026, the recipient must account for the use of funds on a cash flow basis, consistent with Treasury’s guidance regarding loans made by recipients using payments from the Coronavirus Relief

Fund.³⁷⁹ Recipients may use SLFRF funds to fund the principal of the loan and in that case must track repayment of principal and interest (*i.e.*, “program income,” as defined under 2 CFR 200). When the loan is made, recipients must report the principal of the loan as an expense.

Repayment of principal may be re-used only for eligible uses and is subject to restrictions on the timing of the use of funds. Interest payments received prior to the end of the period of performance will be considered an addition to the total award and may be used for any purpose that is an eligible use of funds under the statute and final rule. Recipients are not subject to restrictions under 2 CFR 200.307(e)(1) with respect to such payments.

For loans with maturities longer than December 31, 2026, the recipient must estimate the cost to the recipient of extending the loan over the life of the loan. In other words, at origination, the recipient must measure the projected cost of the loan and may use SLFRF funds for the projected cost of the loan. Recipients have two options for estimating this amount: They may estimate the subsidy cost (*i.e.*, net present value of estimated cash flows) or the discounted cash flow under current expected credit losses (*i.e.*, CECL method). See further guidance issued by Treasury for further explanation.³⁸⁰

Public Comment: Many commenters asked for further clarification on the treatment of loans and the calculation of “costs incurred.” Some commenters requested that grants made for eligible activities prior to December 31, 2024 to a revolving loan fund, an economic development corporation, a land bank, or a similar facility should be considered obligated and expended at the time of the grant. This would allow funds to be expended by the grantee beyond the covered period and for funds returned to the grantee to be re-invested in further uses outside of the covered period.

Treasury Response: The final rule maintains the treatment of loans from the interim final rule and subsequent guidance, as discussed above. This approach is consistent with the statutory requirement that funds be used for costs incurred for eligible purposes by December 31, 2024 and is consistent

with standard accounting practices and the Uniform Guidance.

G. Use of Funds for Match or Cost-Share Requirements

As a general matter and as referenced in the **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** to the interim final rule, funds provided under one federal program may not be used by a recipient to meet the non-federal match or cost-share requirements of another federal program.

However, Treasury has since determined that, consistent with this general principle and the requirements of the Uniform Guidance at 2 CFR 200.306(b)(5), the funds available under sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C) of the Social Security Act for the provision of government services, up to the amount of the recipient’s reduction in revenue due to the public health emergency, generally may be used to meet the non-federal cost-share or matching requirements of other federal programs. Federal funds that constitute revenue sharing to state and local governments may generally be used to meet non-federal match requirements.³⁸¹ The broad eligible uses of the SLFRF funds available under sections 602(c)(1)(C) and 603(c)(1)(C) of the Social Security Act, combined with the purpose of these provisions (which is to provide general fiscal assistance to governments facing revenue losses due to the public health emergency), demonstrate that these funds are revenue sharing. They thus should generally be permitted to be used to meet the non-federal match and cost-share requirements of other federal programs. As such, the SLFRF funds available for the provision of government services, up to the amount of the recipient’s reduction in revenue due to the public health emergency, may be used to meet the non-federal match requirements of the Drinking Water State Revolving Fund and Clean Water State Revolving Fund programs administered by the EPA, for example.

Pursuant to 2 CFR 200.306(b) of the Uniform Guidance, if funds are legally available to meet the match or cost-share requirements of an agency’s federal program, such awarding agency is required to accept such funds for the purpose of that program’s match or cost-share requirements except in the circumstances enumerated in that section. The Office of Management and Budget has authority under 2 CFR

recovery-funds/recipient-compliance-and-reporting-responsibilities.

³⁷⁸ *Id.*

³⁷⁹ Coronavirus Relief Fund for States, Tribal Governments, and Certain Eligible Local Governments, 86 FR at 4192.

³⁸⁰ See *FAQ 4.11*. Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

³⁸¹ See U.S. Government Accountability Office, *Principles of Federal Appropriations Law, Third Edition, Volume II*, p. 10–99, GAO–06–382SP (February 2006), <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-06-382sp.pdf>.

200.102 of the Uniform Guidance to issue waivers of this requirement on request of the relevant awarding agency. Analogous requirements and waiver authorities may be present in other regulations. If a recipient seeks to use SLFRF funds to satisfy match or cost-share requirements for a federal grant program, it should first confirm with the relevant awarding agency that no waiver has been granted for that program, that no other circumstances enumerated under 2 CFR 200.306(b) would limit the use of SLFRF funds to meet the match or cost-share requirement, and that there is no other statutory or regulatory impediment to using the SLFRF funds for the match or cost-share requirement. Note that SLFRF funds may not be used as the non-federal share for purposes of a state's Medicaid and CHIP programs because the Office of Management and Budget has approved a waiver as requested by the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services pursuant to 2 CFR 200.102 of the Uniform Guidance and related regulations.

SLFRF funds beyond those that are available under sections 602(c)(1)(C) or 603(c)(1)(C) of the Social Security Act for the provision of government services may not be used to meet the non-federal match or cost-share requirements of other federal programs other than as specifically provided for by statute. For example, as discussed in other sections of this final rule, section 40909 of the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act provides that SLFRF funds may be used to meet the non-federal match requirements of any authorized Bureau of Reclamation project, and section 60102 of the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act provides that the SLFRF may be used to meet the non-federal match requirements of the broadband infrastructure program authorized under that section (see sections Water and Sewer Infrastructure and Broadband Infrastructure).

H. Reporting

The interim final rule established Treasury's authority to collect information from recipients through requested reports and any additional requests for information. The interim final rule also provided Treasury flexibility to extend or accelerate reporting deadlines and to modify requested content for the Interim Report, Project and Expenditure reports, and Recovery Plan Performance reports.

The **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** of the interim final rule provided initial guidance on the reporting requirements for the SLFRF funds. States (defined to include the District of Columbia), territories, metropolitan cities, counties,

and Tribal governments were required to submit one interim report and quarterly Project and Expenditure reports thereafter. Non-entitlement units of local government were not required to submit an interim report. States, territories, and metropolitan cities and counties with a population greater than 250,000 residents were also required to submit an annual Recovery Plan Performance report to Treasury. The Supplementary Information of the interim final rule provided guidance on the deadlines and content required for each type of report.

Public Comment: Treasury received many comments on the content and specific data elements required of program reporting. Some commenters expressed enthusiasm for including particular details in reporting to promote transparency. Other commenters requested that Treasury streamline reporting requirements to avoid imposing undue administrative burdens and compliance costs. Many commenters requested further clarification on or amendments to particular elements of reporting content. Some commenters requested that reports and specific reporting elements be public, including a request for a public website with a number of programmatic data metrics about the use of SLFRF funds. Some commenters sought clarification and guidance for using the reporting portal, which allows recipients to upload the required information, or requested user modifications to the portal. Finally, some commenters requested that Treasury provide example materials and reporting metrics to aid recipient understanding.

Treasury Response: Since the publication of the interim final rule, Treasury issued supplementary reporting guidance in the Compliance and Reporting Guidance and in the User Guide: Treasury's Portal for Recipient Reporting (User Guide).³⁸² Treasury has addressed many of these comments in the Compliance and Reporting Guidance and User Guide and will continue to issue updated guidance prior to each reporting period clarifying any modifications to requested report content. Treasury notes that the interim final rule did not address the specific content and data elements required in reporting, the reporting portal or submission process, and the specific

form of reporting (e.g., example templates, machine readability); comments on these topics are outside the scope of the final rule and, as noted, are addressed instead in Compliance and Reporting Guidance.

Reporting Deadlines

Public Comment: Treasury received comments requesting various changes to reporting deadlines to ease compliance burdens. For example, Treasury received several comments requesting that Treasury delay early reporting deadlines for various reasons, including to align with the timeline for issuing a final rule and to allow for more time for recipients to determine SLFRF allocations. Commenters also requested changes to the immediacy of reporting, for example requesting that Treasury allow expenses to be reported with a lag instead of the quarter in which they were accrued or that reports be due 90 days after period close instead of 30 days after the close of a reporting period. Some commenters requested changes to the reporting frequency, for example to report biannually rather than quarterly.

Treasury Response: Treasury has clarified reporting deadlines in the Compliance and Reporting guidance.³⁸³ Treasury is retaining the reporting deadline of 30 days after the close of the reporting period to ensure timely accounting of the use of SLFRF funds; this timeline also aligns with practices in many other federal programs. The final rule maintains Treasury's discretion to extend or delay reporting deadlines.

Administrative Costs for Reporting and Compliance

Public Comment: Many commenters sought clarification about whether various administrative costs related to reporting and compliance were eligible uses of funds and asked for clarification on the limits of such use.

Treasury Response: Treasury notes that administrative costs are generally allowable uses of SLFRF funds, including for reporting. For additional information on administrative expenses, please see section Administrative Expenses under Program Administration Provisions.

Uniform Guidance

Public Comment: The **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** of the interim final rule clarified that SLFRF funds were generally subject to the provisions of the Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit

³⁸² U.S. Department of the Treasury, Recipient Compliance and Reporting Responsibilities, as of November 5, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/policy-issues/coronavirus/assistance-for-state-local-and-tribal-governments/state-and-local-fiscal-recovery-funds/recipient-compliance-and-reporting-responsibilities>.

³⁸³ *Id.*

Requirements for Federal Awards (2 CFR part 200) (the Uniform Guidance), including the cost principles and restrictions on general provisions for selected items of cost. Treasury received many comments requesting clarification about or modifications to the applicability of the Uniform Guidance on various issues.

For example, one commenter requested that Treasury remove requirements that expenditures of funds be made in conformance with the Uniform Guidance, particularly in case of expenditures made during period from March 3, 2021 to the release of the interim final rule, while other comments requested that Treasury raise the single-audit threshold from \$750,000 to \$5 million. Commenters sought clarification on items such as: The applicability of the Uniform Guidance for funds that are used for the provision of government services, the applicability of particular sections of the cost principles provided in subpart E of the Uniform Guidance, the applicability of the procurement provisions of the Uniform Guidance, and requirements for subrecipient reporting.

Treasury Response: Recipients of SLFRF funds are subject to the provisions of the Uniform Guidance (2 CFR part 200) from the date of award to the end of the period of performance on December 31, 2026 unless otherwise specified in this rule or program-specific guidance. Costs must follow the requirements in 2 CFR 200 Subpart E, Cost Principles, including procurement standards. Recipients that receive an aggregate amount of federal financial assistance in a given fiscal year that exceeds the Single Audit threshold are subject to the requirements in 2 CFR 200 Subpart F, Audit Requirements, unless otherwise specified in program-specific guidance.

SLFRF funds transferred to subrecipients are also subject to reporting and Uniform Guidance requirements. Additional information about the definition of subrecipients is available in the section Distinguishing Subrecipients versus Beneficiaries.

Recipients should refer to the Assistance Listing for details on the specific provisions of the Uniform Guidance that do not apply to this program. The Assistance Listing is available on SAM.gov. Additional changes to compliance and reporting guidelines, including any clarifications on Uniform Guidance requirements, will be addressed in Compliance and Reporting Guidance and the User Guide.³⁸⁴

I. Remediation and Recoupment

Sections 602(e) and 603(e) of the Social Security Act provide the Secretary with the power to recoup “funds used in violation” of the Social Security Act. The interim final rule implemented these provisions by establishing a process for recoupment. Treasury may identify funds used in violation of the Social Security Act based on information submitted by recipients, including as part of reporting requirements, as well as information from other sources.³⁸⁵ If a potential violation is identified, Treasury will provide the recipient an initial written notice of the amount subject to recoupment along with an explanation of such amounts. A recipient then has 60 calendar days following receipt of a recoupment notice to submit a request for reconsideration containing any information it believes supports its use of funds. Within 60 calendar days of receipt of the request for reconsideration, the interim final rule provided that a recipient will receive a final notice of the Secretary’s decision to affirm, withdraw, or modify the recoupment notice. If the recipient did not submit a request for reconsideration, the initial notice of recoupment would be deemed a final notice. A recipient would then be required to repay any amounts subject to recoupment within 120 calendar days of either the initial recoupment notice, if the recipient does not request reconsideration, or the final recoupment notice, if the recipient does request reconsideration.

Public Comments

Treasury received several comments on the process for recoupment. For instance, some commenters, including many Tribal governments, requested additional time to file a request for reconsideration and submit repayment to ensure that small entities have the time necessary to carry out any logistical steps and consult with counsel. Treasury was also asked to align its recoupment process with that of the Office of the Inspector General and other departmental administrative processes to resolve findings, agency decisions, and related timelines. One commenter asked if the 120-calendar-day time limit for repayment was based on the initial notice, rather than a final decision issued by the Secretary. Several commenters expressed concern regarding the recoupment process, arguing that consideration of “all relevant facts and circumstances” provided Treasury with too much

authority and created ambiguity. Other commenters urged Treasury to establish a robust enforcement and compliance program and process and advocated for the creation of a whistleblower mechanism or public complaint process to allow public and private entities to report suspected misuses of funds. Finally, some commenters requested clarification regarding the process after a violation is identified and becomes final. One commenter also asked to allow recipients to amend reports deemed to contain ineligible expenses and inform recipients how the agency intends to resolve instances where a use was later deemed unacceptable. Another commenter asked if recouped funds could be released back to the recipient.

Commenters also expressed concern about Treasury’s authority to recoup funds used in violation of the tax offset provision. Some commenters requested additional clarity around when tax cuts would trigger Treasury’s recoupment authority and the duration of Treasury’s authority to seek recoupment of such funds.

Treasury Response

The final rule largely preserves the process established in the interim final rule but includes several adjustments to clarify certain elements.

Like the interim final rule, the final rule provides that, after an initial determination is made that a recipient has used SLFRF funds in violation of the law, a recipient may submit a request for reconsideration concerning any amounts identified in a notice provided by Treasury. If a recipient chooses to seek reconsideration of the initial notice, the recipient must submit a request for reconsideration as provided under the final rule. If a recipient does not request reconsideration, the initial notice that the recipient received will be deemed the final notice.³⁸⁶ Treasury has clarified that a recipient must invoke and exhaust the procedures available under section 35.10 of the final rule prior to seeking judicial review of a recoupment decision. Consistent with Section 602(b)(6)(A)(ii)(III) of the Social Security Act, if a state or territory is required to repay funds pursuant to the Secretary’s recoupment authority, the Secretary may reduce the amount payable to the state or territory in a second tranche payment by the amount that the state or territory would be required to repay as recoupment.

In the final rule, Treasury has clarified that, if it identifies a potential

³⁸⁴ *Id.*

³⁸⁵ Treasury will also consider the tax offset provision on an annual basis.

³⁸⁶ Funds subject to recoupment cannot later be returned.

violation,³⁸⁷ it may request additional information from a recipient before initiating the recoupment process and, where necessary, provide written notice to the recipient along with an explanation of such amounts potentially subject to recoupment. Furthermore, Treasury has also made clear that it retains the ability to expedite or extend timelines in any adjudication or pre-adjudication process pursuant to section 35.4(b) of the final rule, although the general timelines set forth in the interim final rule are maintained in the final rule.

This process is intended to provide the recipient with an adequate opportunity to present additional information regarding its uses of funds and provides flexibility for recipients to determine the information relevant to the particular facts and circumstances. It is also flexible enough to align with other adjudication procedures in other ARPA recovery programs administered by the Office of Recovery Programs at Treasury. As discussed above, the initial notice will provide recipients with an explanation of the identified potential violation in order to provide recipients with a meaningful opportunity to respond. Such initial notice will generally include information regarding the specific use of SLFRF funds and the source of such information.³⁸⁸ This process also will allow the Secretary to take into consideration the information provided by recipients, along with other relevant information, to ensure SLFRF funds are used in a manner consistent with the Social Security Act.

Finally, Treasury expects to work with recipients to support the use of SLFRF funds consistent with the law. For example, Treasury may request additional information from a recipient before initiating the recoupment process. In addition, Treasury may pursue other forms of remediation and monitoring in conjunction with, or as an alternative to, recoupment.³⁸⁹ These efforts may include working with recipients to identify and substitute permissible uses of SLFRF funds or amending uses of SLFRF funds to comply with applicable restrictions.

In response to comments regarding the amount of time provided to respond to an initial notice, the final rule clarifies that Treasury retains the ability

to expedite or extend timelines in any adjudication or pre-adjudication process pursuant to section 35.4(b) of the final rule, although the general timelines set forth in the interim final rule are maintained in the final rule.

V. Regulatory Analyses

Executive Orders 12866 and 13563

Regulatory Impact Assessment

This final rule is a “significant regulatory action” under section 3(f) of Executive Order 12866 for the purposes of Executive Orders 12866 and 13563 because it is likely to have an annual effect on the economy of \$100 million or more.

As explained below, this regulation meets a substantial need: ensuring that recipients—states, territories, Tribal governments, and local governments—of SLFRF funds fully understand the requirements and parameters of the program as set forth in the statute and deploy funds in a manner that best reflects Congress’ intent to provide necessary relief to recipient governments adversely impacted by the COVID–19 public health emergency. Furthermore, as required by Executive Orders 12866 and 13563, Treasury has weighed the costs and benefits of this final rule and varying alternatives and has reasonably determined that the benefits of the final rule to recipients and their communities far outweigh any costs.

The rule has been reviewed by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) in accordance with Executive Order 12866.

Executive Orders 12866 and 13563

Under Executive Order 12866, OMB must determine whether this regulatory action is “significant,” and therefore, subject to the requirements of the Executive Order and subject to review by OMB. Section 3(f) of Executive Order 12866 defines a significant regulatory action as an action likely to result in a rule that may, among other things, have an annual effect on the economy of \$100 million or more. This rule is likely to have an annual effect on the economy of \$100 million or more, and therefore, it is subject to review by OMB under section 3(f) of Executive Order 12866.

Treasury has also reviewed these regulations under Executive Order 13563, which supplements and explicitly reaffirms the principles, structures, and definitions governing regulatory review established in Executive Order 12866. To the extent permitted by law, section 1(b) of Executive Order 13563 requires that an agency: (1) Propose or adopt regulations

only upon a reasoned determination that their benefits justify their costs (recognizing that some benefits and costs are difficult to quantify); (2) tailor its regulations to impose the least burden on society, consistent with obtaining regulatory objectives taking into account, among other things, and to the extent practicable, the costs of cumulative regulations; (3) select, in choosing among alternative regulatory approaches, those approaches that maximize net benefits (including potential economic, environmental, public health and safety, and other advantages; distributive impacts; and equity); (4) to the extent feasible, specify performance objectives, rather than the behavior or manner of compliance a regulated entity must adopt; and (5) identify and assess available alternatives to direct regulation, including providing economic incentives—such as user fees or marketable permits—to encourage the desired behavior, or providing information that enables the public to make choices. Executive Order 13563 also requires an agency “to use the best available techniques to quantify anticipated present and future benefits and costs as accurately as possible.” OMB’s Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs (OIRA) has emphasized that these techniques may include “identifying changing future compliance costs that might result from technological innovation or anticipated behavioral changes.”

Based on the analysis that follows and the reasons stated elsewhere in this document, Treasury believes that this final rule is consistent with the principles set forth in Executive Orders 12866 and 13563. This Regulatory Impact Analysis discusses the need for regulatory action, the potential benefits, and the potential costs. Treasury has assessed the potential costs and benefits, both quantitative and qualitative, of this regulatory action, and is issuing this final rule only on a reasoned determination that the benefits exceed the costs. In choosing among alternative regulatory approaches, Treasury selected those approaches that would maximize net benefits.

Need for Regulatory Action

This final rule implements the \$350 billion SLFRF program of the ARPA, which Congress passed to help states, territories, Tribal governments, and localities respond to the ongoing COVID–19 public health emergency and its economic impacts. As the agency charged with execution of these programs, Treasury has concluded that this final rule is needed to ensure that recipients of SLFRF funds fully

³⁸⁸ Treasury may address potential violations based on information submitted from recipients, either through quarterly reports or self-reported information, and from other sources of information as Treasury deems necessary and appropriate (e.g., press, information submitted from the public).

³⁸⁹ Treasury intends to work with recipients to support the use of SLFRF funds consistent with the law.

understand the requirements and parameters of the program as set forth in the statute and deploy funds in a manner that best reflects Congress' mandate for targeted fiscal relief. This final rule governs the use of \$350 billion in grant funds from the federal government to states, territories, Tribal governments, and localities, generating a significant macroeconomic effect on the U.S. economy. Treasury has sought to implement the program in ways that maximize its potential benefits while minimizing its costs. It has done so by: aiming to target relief in key areas according to the congressional mandate; offering clarity to states, territories, Tribal governments, and localities while maintaining their flexibility to respond to local needs; and limiting administrative burdens.

Analysis of Benefits

Relative to a pre-statutory baseline, the SLFRF funds provide a combined \$350 billion to state, local, and Tribal governments for fiscal relief and support for costs incurred responding to the COVID-19 pandemic. Treasury believes that this transfer will generate substantial additional economic activity, although given the flexibility accorded to recipients in the use of funds, it is not possible to precisely estimate the extent to which this will occur and the timing with which it will occur. Economic research has demonstrated that state fiscal relief is an efficient and effective way to mitigate declines in jobs and output during an economic downturn.³⁹⁰ Absent such fiscal relief, fiscal austerity among state, local, and Tribal governments could exert a prolonged drag on the overall economic recovery, as occurred following the 2007–2009 recession.³⁹¹

This final rule provides benefits across several areas by implementing the four eligible use categories, as defined in statute: strengthening the response to the COVID-19 public health emergency and its negative economic impacts; replacing lost revenue to ease fiscal pressure on state, local, and Tribal governments that might otherwise lead to harmful cutbacks in employment or government services; providing premium pay to essential workers; and making necessary investments in water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure.

These benefits are achieved in the final rule through a broadly flexible

approach that sets clear guidelines on eligible uses of SLFRF funds and provides state, local, and Tribal government officials discretion within those eligible uses to direct SLFRF funds to areas of greatest need within their jurisdiction. While preserving recipients' overall flexibility, the final rule includes several provisions that implement statutory requirements and will help support use of SLFRF funds to achieve the intended benefits. Preserving flexibility for recipients not only serves an important public policy goal by allowing them to meet particularized and diverse needs of their local communities but also enhances the economic benefits of the final rule by allowing recipients to choose eligible uses of funds that provide the highest utility in their jurisdictions.

In implementing the ARPA, Treasury has also prioritized supporting underserved communities that have been disproportionately impacted by the pandemic. The SLFRF program as implemented by the final rule provides even greater flexibility to recipients for uses of funds in underserved communities, recognizing that pre-existing health and economic disparities in these communities amplified the impact of the pandemic there. In general, investments in improving health outcomes and economic opportunities provide high economic returns, so this approach is likely to achieve substantial near-term economic and public health benefits, in addition to the longer-term benefits arising from the allowable investments in water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure.

The remainder of this section clarifies how Treasury's approach to key provisions in the final rule will contribute to greater realization of benefits from the program.

Public Health and Negative Economic Impacts

The eligible use category for responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic covers a wide range of eligible uses of funds. Treasury addresses several key uses of funds in this analysis, as well as ways that Treasury has structured this eligible use to minimize recipient administrative burden while also maintaining targeting of the funding to entities that experienced negative impacts from the pandemic.

Government Employment: In order to bolster the government's ability to effectively administer services, the final rule allows for a broader set of eligible uses to restore and support public sector employment relative to the interim final

rule. In particular, eligible uses include hiring up to a pre-pandemic baseline that is adjusted for historic underinvestment in the public sector by allowing funds to be used to pay for payroll and covered benefits associated with the recipient increasing its number of employees up to 7.5 percent above its pre-pandemic baseline. Eligible uses also include providing additional funds for employees who experienced pay cuts or were furloughed, avoiding layoffs, providing worker retention incentives, and paying for ancillary administrative costs related to hiring.

Treasury believes this expanded approach, relative to the interim final rule, provides useful flexibility to recipients, which may increase a state or local government's ability to effectively deliver services to its residents. While the interim final rule already explicitly permitted using funds to restore recipients' workforces up to pre-pandemic levels, the final rule's inclusion of an upward adjustment factor recognizes that, as the population or economy of a jurisdiction grows over time, more workers are generally needed to effectively meet responsibilities. It also provides recipients greater room to employ funds toward building back the public sector workforce after years of chronic underinvestment since the Great Recession. Treasury arrived at the 7.5 percent adjustment factor through an analysis of data from the Bureau of Labor Statistics on state and local government employment and data from the Census Bureau on population to estimate the extent of underinvestment in the public sector since the onset of the Great Recession. While Treasury considered a range of methodologies and point estimates to set the adjustment factor, a 7.5 percent factor errs on the side of recipient flexibility. Treasury believes this adjustment enhances recipients' ability to identify and meet the particularized needs of their communities. Treasury also believes that the additional enumerated eligible uses for supporting the workforce provide recipients several means to help retain current workers, decreasing turnover costs.

Identifying Eligible Populations

Treasury has provided several methods for recipients to identify households, populations, and communities eligible for services that respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. In general, these methods seek to provide recipients options to identify eligible populations with minimal administrative burden, while also maintaining targeting of the funds

³⁹⁰ See, e.g., Gabriel Chodorow-Reich et al., *Does state Fiscal Relief During Recessions Increase Employment? Evidence from the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act*, 4 American Economic Journal 118–145 (2012) <http://dx.doi.org/10.1257/pol.4.3.118>.

³⁹¹ See, e.g., Fitzpatrick, *supra* note 278.

to entities impacted by the pandemic. Recipients also retain flexibility to identify and serve other populations and entities that experienced pandemic impacts, ensuring that recipients can meet the particularized needs of their local communities.

Defining Low and Moderate Income: To streamline the provision of funds relating to negative economic impacts resulting from the pandemic, Treasury has created an eligibility standard making it easier for recipients to provide assistance to low- and moderate-income populations without needing to identify and document a specific negative economic impact. Populations falling under the definition of low income are presumed to have been disproportionately impacted by the pandemic, while those falling under the definition of moderate income are presumed to have been impacted by the pandemic. In addition, the final rule recognizes categorical eligibility for certain enumerated programs and populations if a recipient chooses to implement categorical eligibility when identifying impacted and disproportionately impacted populations. Treasury considered several options for eligibility standards that would reduce administrative burdens for recipients when determining who qualifies as low and moderate income.

One option involved defining a household as low income or moderate income based only on FPG thresholds and could use levels lower than those selected. This option involved setting uniform thresholds throughout the country.

A second option took a broader approach, defining a household as low income if it has (i) income at or below 185 percent of the FPG for the size of its household or (ii) income at or below 40 percent of the AMI for its county and size of household. The option defined a household as moderate income if it has (i) income at or below 300 percent of the FPG for the size of its household or (ii) income at or below 65 percent of the AMI for its county and size of household. The combination of an FPG floor with AMI allows for a regional adjustment in areas with substantially higher costs and incomes. Finally, Treasury also considered a range of FPG and AMI thresholds above and below these levels.

Treasury chose the second option. Treasury believes that the higher FPG floor will ease administrative burdens by making more households presumptively eligible for funds meant to address negative economic impacts in a targeted manner. With respect to the

low-income cutoff, 185 percent of the FPG for a family of four is \$49,025, which is approximately the wage earnings for a two-earner household where both earners receive the median wage in occupations, such as waiters and waitresses and hotel clerks, that were heavily impacted by COVID-19. As such, this cutoff is likely to include more workers in industries heavily impacted by COVID-19, who may be most likely to face disproportionate impacts of the pandemic, than a lower threshold.³⁹² With respect to the moderate-income cutoff, many households with incomes between 200 percent and 300 percent of the FPG struggle with a lack of economic security, suggesting that 300 percent of the FPG was an appropriate cutoff for moderate income.

Treasury also considered relatively higher thresholds for both an FPG and AMI approach; however, increasing income thresholds for presumed eligibility increases the likelihood that higher-income workers, who generally experienced fewer economic impacts from the pandemic, would become presumed eligible for responsive services. Providing services to households that did not experience a negative economic impact, or experienced a relatively minimal impact, would provide much less benefit than serving households that experienced more severe impacts, diluting the benefits of the SLFRF funds.

In all, Treasury anticipates that these selected thresholds, combined with the regional adjustment, will allow resources to be targeted toward individuals and households with the greatest need while also reducing administrative burdens on recipients.

Disproportionately Impacted Populations: In the interim final rule, Treasury enumerated a broader set of eligible uses for disproportionately impacted communities, in recognition of the pre-existing health, economic, and social disparities that contributed to disproportionate pandemic impacts in certain communities and that addressing root causes of those disparities constitutes responding to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic. To identify these communities and reduce administrative burden, Treasury allowed recipients to presume that certain populations—those in QCTs and those being served by Tribal

governments—were disproportionately impacted. In the final rule, to further decrease administrative burden and enhance recipient flexibility, Treasury is allowing recipients to also presume that low-income households were disproportionately impacted. Treasury anticipates that adding low-income households as a presumed eligible population will maintain targeting of funds to populations and communities most likely to have experienced severe pandemic impacts, while providing a more flexible approach for recipients.

Identifying Impacted Classes: In the final rule, Treasury reiterated its stance in the interim final rule allowing recipients to designate a class of households or other entities as impacted or disproportionately impacted and provide responsive services. After designating a class, recipients can serve a household or entity by simply identifying that the household or entity is a member of the class. Relative to restricting services to only presumed eligible populations identified by Treasury, this decision provides vital administrative flexibility for recipients that may identify particular impacted classes in the context of their jurisdiction. Treasury anticipates that SLFRF funds will be targeted to impacted or disproportionately impacted communities, as recipients must demonstrate that the designated class experienced negative economic impacts or meaningfully more severe negative economic impacts. This approach maintains the requirement that entities served have to have experienced a negative economic impact, while simultaneously minimizing any administrative costs associated with meeting this requirement.

Additional Enumerated Uses

The interim final rule enumerated eligible uses of SLFRF funds to serve both impacted and disproportionately impacted communities. For example, enumerated eligible uses to serve impacted communities included food assistance; rent, mortgage, or utility assistance; and counselling and legal aid to prevent eviction or homelessness. Examples of enumerated eligible uses to serve disproportionately impacted communities included remediation of lead paint or other lead hazards and housing vouchers and assistance relocating to neighborhoods with higher levels of economic opportunity. In the final rule, Treasury had the option to retain, expand, or reduce enumerated eligible uses, or shift use eligibility between disproportionately impacted and impacted communities. Many

³⁹² See U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, Occupational Employment and Wage Estimates, https://www.bls.gov/oes/current/oes_nat.htm (last visited November 9, 2021).

public comments suggested potential expansions of uses, including shifting enumerated eligible uses for disproportionately impacted communities to serve a broader population of impacted communities. Taking these comments into account, Treasury generally took this approach, in anticipation that the benefits of the program will increase while recipient administrative costs in identifying and justifying non-enumerated uses of funds will decrease.

Specifically, Treasury added enumerated eligible uses for impacted populations including paid sick, medical, or family leave; health insurance subsidies; and services for the unbanked and underbanked, on the basis that impacts of the pandemic that were broadly experienced by many communities would be addressed by these uses. Treasury also shifted some eligible uses, formerly restricted only to disproportionately impacted communities, to impacted communities. These uses included community violence intervention, assistance accessing or applying to public benefits and services, affordable housing development, and services to promote healthy childhood environments like childcare and early learning. These uses were shifted on the basis that the associated impacts of the pandemic were experienced by a broader population, and responses are, accordingly, eligible to benefit a broader population.

Additionally, the final rule clarified that investments in parks and other public outdoor recreation spaces are enumerated eligible uses for disproportionately impacted communities. In including these uses, Treasury took into account evidence on the social determinants of health, or the ways that social context, like the neighborhood built environment, impacts health outcomes. By taking a more holistic approach to public health, the final rule allows recipients to respond more broadly to factors that contributed to the pandemic's health impacts and more fully mitigate those health impacts.

To balance administrative flexibility with a maintenance of focus on impacts of the pandemic, Treasury considered, but did not include, other proposed enumerated uses that did not respond to the impacts of the pandemic or responded to impacts that were not experienced generally across the country by many jurisdictions and populations. For example, Treasury did not include pollution remediation broadly, a proposed enumerated eligible use for disproportionately impacted

communities, on the basis that associated projects would only respond to disproportionate impacts of the pandemic depending on the specific issue addressed. In sum, Treasury expanded enumerated eligible uses while retaining a focus on broadly experienced impacts of the pandemic. Treasury anticipates that this will give recipients further flexibility to presume eligibility and respond to pandemic impacts without increasing administrative burden.

Capital Expenditures: In the interim final rule, Treasury permitted funds to be used for a limited number of capital expenditures mostly related to the COVID-19 public health response. This decision granted recipients some discretion to use SLFRF funds to address COVID-19 prevention and mitigation through certain investments in equipment, real property, and facilities, which Treasury recognized as critical components of the public health response. In the final rule, Treasury considered maintaining the provisions in the interim final rule or expanding allowable capital expenditures to provide recipients greater flexibility to pursue other capital investments that are responsive to the public health emergency and its negative economic impacts. While expanding allowable capital expenditures may increase the risk that recipients will undertake large expenditures that do not sufficiently address intended harms, or address harms in a less cost-efficient manner than an alternative investment (e.g., a program or service), expanding allowable capital expenditures would likely help fill critical gaps in recipients' response to the pandemic and provide equipment and facilities that generate benefits beyond SLFRF's period of performance. To preserve flexibility while mitigating risks, the final rule allows recipients to undertake an expanded set of capital expenditures while requiring additional written justifications for projects with an expected total cost at or over \$1 million. Treasury believes this approach balances the implementation of appropriate risk-based compliance requirements and the provision of administrative convenience for smaller capital expenditures, while generally allowing recipients the flexibility to undertake a greater variety of responsive capital expenditures.

Revenue Loss

Revenue Loss Formula: In this final rule, Treasury's approach to revenue loss allows recipients to compute the extent of reduction in revenue by comparing actual revenue to a

counterfactual trend representing what could have plausibly been expected to occur in the absence of the pandemic. The counterfactual trend begins with the last full fiscal year prior to the public health emergency (as required by statute) and projects forward with an annualized growth adjustment. Treasury has made several adjustments in the final rule to decrease administrative burden, reducing costs for recipients, while still accurately capturing reductions in revenue due to the pandemic.

Under the interim final rule, Treasury specified that recipients calculate revenue loss on a calendar year basis. In this final rule, Treasury is providing recipients the option to calculate revenue loss on a calendar year or fiscal year basis, which will allow recipients the administrative flexibility to minimize administrative burdens based on the data available to them.

Treasury's decision to incorporate a growth adjustment into the calculation of revenue loss ensures that the formula more fully captures revenue shortfalls relative to recipients' pre-pandemic expectations. Recipients will have the opportunity to calculate revenue loss at several points throughout the program, recognizing that some recipients may experience revenue effects with a lag. This option to re-calculate revenue loss on an ongoing basis is intended to result in more support for recipients to avoid harmful cutbacks in future years. In calculating revenue loss, recipients will look at general revenue in the aggregate, rather than on a source-by-source basis, given that recipients may have experienced offsetting changes in revenues across sources. The final rule also provides for removing the impact of tax increasing or decreasing changes, which affect the amount of revenue collected but are not "due to" the pandemic, from the calculation of revenue loss due to the public health emergency. Both of these components of Treasury's approach provide a more accurate representation of the effect of the pandemic on overall revenues.

Revenue Loss Standard Allowance: In addition to largely preserving the formula to calculate revenue loss from the interim final rule, Treasury also added an alternative "standard allowance" option for the revenue loss calculation to this final rule. Treasury's decision to elect to allow a fixed amount of loss that can be used to fund "government services" allows recipients the flexibility to use minimal administrative capacity on the calculation if desired. The decision also benefits recipients by allowing them to avoid expending administrative

resources to determine how unique variations in revenue interact with the revenue loss formula.

Premium Pay

Per the ARPA statute, recipients have broad latitude to designate critical infrastructure sectors and make grants to third-party employers for the purpose of providing premium pay. While the final rule provides significant flexibility to implement the statutory requirement that premium pay respond to essential workers, it requires recipients give written justification in the case that premium pay would increase a worker's annual pay above a certain threshold or is awarded to an individual whose annual pay is already above that threshold. To set this threshold, Treasury analyzed data from the Bureau of Labor Statistics to determine a level that would not require further justification for premium pay to the vast majority of essential workers, while requiring higher scrutiny for provision of premium pay to higher earners who, even without premium pay, would likely have greater personal financial resources to cope with the effects of the pandemic. Alternatively, a recipient need not submit written justification to Treasury if the worker receiving premium pay is eligible for overtime under the FLSA. Treasury believes this alternative, which is an addition to the final rule, will give recipients more flexibility and will simplify application of the final rule as employers, public and private, are already legally required to determine whether an employee is eligible for overtime pay under the FLSA. Treasury believes the threshold and overtime eligibility provision in the final rule strike the appropriate balance between preserving flexibility and helping encourage use of these resources to help those in greatest need. The final rule also requires that workers eligible for premium pay have regular in-person interactions or regular physical handling of items that were also handled by others. This requirement will help encourage use of financial resources for those who have endured the heightened risk of performing essential work.

Water and Sewer Infrastructure

In the interim final rule, Treasury aligned eligible uses of funds for water and sewer infrastructure to those projects eligible to receive financial assistance through the DWSRF and CWSRF administered by the EPA.

The benefits of this approach included giving recipients an existing list that would provide them clarity as well as flexibility in identifying eligible

projects, particularly given the broad range of projects eligible under the CWSRF and DWSRF. The approach also ensured that projects would conform to vetted project types from a widely used program. Treasury received comments from recipients requesting additional project categories to be considered eligible, indicating a potential cost to maintaining alignment with the CWSRF and DWSRF.

For the final rule, Treasury has expanded eligibility to include several additional project types beyond those covered by the CWSRF and DWSRF.

Treasury believes that expanded eligibility will benefit recipients by allowing them additional flexibility to pursue beneficial projects, including project categories that support the provision of drinking water and the removal, management, and treatment of wastewater and stormwater: Additional stormwater management projects, private well infrastructure, additional projects that address lead in water, and certain dam and reservoir rehabilitation projects undertaken to address the provision of drinking water. A potential cost of this approach is that uses beyond the CWSRF and DWSRF may have less public guidance available to understand project eligibilities. However, Treasury anticipates that this eligibility expansion will provide a net benefit to recipients by allowing them to pursue projects relevant to their goals that were ineligible under the interim final rule.

The expansion to allow private well infrastructure may also affect the distributional impact of SLFRF. Private wells disproportionately serve rural Americans, including low-income households, and expanding eligibility to include this use may allow SLFRF funds to benefit such households. While distributional impacts are uncertain, Treasury believes that the potential for benefits to accrue to rural and low-income households makes it important to clarify that these types of projects are eligible.

Broadband Infrastructure

In the final rule, Treasury expands eligible areas for broadband investment by requiring that recipients invest in projects designed to provide service to households and businesses with an identified need for additional broadband investment, including increasing access to high-speed broadband, increasing the affordability of broadband services, and improving the reliability of broadband service.³⁹³

³⁹³ Further, the final rule encourages, but does not require, that recipients pursue broadband infrastructure projects in locations not currently

Treasury considered multiple alternatives when selecting this standard. The threshold for the interim final rule allowed benefits to accrue in a more targeted manner to the approximately 9 percent of the country with access to speeds under the 25/3 Mbps threshold.³⁹⁴ However, since SLFRF funds are distributed to tens of thousands of governments across the country with a variety of broadband needs, Treasury believes that allowing recipients greater flexibility to determine locations to serve in their jurisdictions—including considering affordability and competition barriers—will lead to greater long-term public benefit. Further, given that many federal broadband grant programs are focused solely on unserved and underserved areas, Treasury believes that the final rule's flexibility enables these funds to fill an important role in the overall federal broadband landscape.

In the final rule, Treasury also requires that broadband projects must meet a standard of reliably delivering at least 100 Mbps download speeds and upload speeds, or in cases where it is not practicable to do so, reliably delivering at least 100 Mbps download speed and between at least 20 Mbps and 100 Mbps upload speed while being scalable to 100 Mbps upload and download speeds. Treasury expects that this threshold will yield long-term benefits and allow networks to meet both pandemic-related and future needs. The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) estimates that currently a household with two to three remote learners using the internet simultaneously needs a connection supporting 100 Mbps download speeds.³⁹⁵ While a lower threshold may have resulted in lower near-term costs to build, it would have potentially constrained future utility from the infrastructure by producing infrastructure that would more quickly—potentially in the near-term—become obsolete and no longer meet household needs, potentially requiring sooner replacement and generally decreasing the return on investment. As

served by a wireline connection that reliably delivers at least 100 Mbps of download speed and 20 Mbps of upload speed.

³⁹⁴ Data from the Federal Communications Commission shows that as of June 2020, 9.07 percent of the U.S. population had no available cable or fiber broadband providers providing greater than 25 Mbps download speeds and 3 Mbps upload speeds. Federal Communications Commission, Fixed Broadband Deployment, <https://broadbandmap.fcc.gov/#/> (last visited May 9, 2021).

³⁹⁵ See Federal Communications Commission, Broadband Speed Guide, available at <https://www.fcc.gov/consumers/guides/broadband-speed-guide> (last visited October 28, 2021).

such, projects meeting a lower threshold could not be considered “necessary” investments in broadband infrastructure, so Treasury has retained the threshold from the interim final rule.

Further, the final rule adds a requirement that recipients address the affordability needs of low-income consumers in accessing broadband networks funded by SLFRF, either by requiring service providers that provide service to households to either participate in the FCC’s Affordable Connectivity Program (ACP), or a broad-based affordability program with commensurate benefits. Treasury believes that this requirement will increase the number of customers that are able to take advantage of broadband infrastructure funded by SLFRF, increasing the effectiveness of funds in connecting households and businesses to high-speed internet that is critical to work, health, and education. There is a potential that this requirement may marginally increase project costs for recipients and providers, but this impact is uncertain, given the varying business models and pricing structures of broadband projects and providers.

Labor Standards

In this Supplementary Information for the final rule, Treasury encourages recipients to ensure that capital expenditures to respond to the public health and negative economic impacts of the pandemic and water, sewer, and broadband projects use strong labor standards, including, for example, project labor agreements and community benefits agreements that offer wages at or above the prevailing rate and include local hire provisions. Treasury believes that its encouragement of labor standards carries benefits because it will ensure that workers have access to strong employment opportunities associated with infrastructure projects, which will in turn aid the economic recovery. Treasury believes that infrastructure projects may also benefit from stronger labor standards due to the potential of these standards to ensure a stronger skilled labor supply and minimize labor disputes and workplace injuries, which can result in costly disruptions to projects. Treasury assesses that these benefits will increase the economy and efficiency of infrastructure projects undertaken through SLFRF and will outweigh the potential for a marginal increase in labor costs.

Splitting Payments to Recipients

Treasury is required by statute to deliver funds to local governments in

two payments separated by at least twelve months, and the interim final rule provided for split payments to a majority of states as well. As discussed above, splitting payments ensures that recipients can adapt spending plans to evolving economic conditions and that at least some of the economic benefits will be realized in 2022 or later. However, consistent with authorities granted to Treasury in the statute, Treasury recognizes that a subset of states with significant remaining elevation in the unemployment rate could face heightened additional near term needs to aid unemployed workers and stimulate the recovery. Therefore, for a subset of state governments, Treasury has provided funds in one payment. Treasury believes that this approach strikes an appropriate balance between the general reasons to provide funds in two payments and the heightened additional near-term needs in specific states. As discussed above, Treasury set a threshold based on historical analysis of unemployment rates in recessions.

Reaching Underserved Communities

Finally, the final rule aims to promote and streamline the provision of assistance to individuals and communities in greatest need, particularly communities that have been historically underserved and have experienced disproportionate impacts of the COVID–19 crisis. Targeting relief is in line with Executive Order 13985, “Advancing Racial Equity and Support for Underserved Communities Through the Federal Government,” which laid out an Administration-wide priority to support “equity for all, including people of color and others who have been historically underserved, marginalized, and adversely affected by persistent poverty and inequality.” To this end, the final rule enumerates a list of services that may be provided using SLFRF funds in disproportionately impacted communities, including low-income areas, to address the more severe impacts of the pandemic in these communities; establishes the characteristics of essential workers eligible for premium pay and encouragement to serve workers based on financial need; provides that recipients may use SLFRF funds to restore state and local workforces, where women and people of color are disproportionately represented; and requires that broadband infrastructure projects participate in programs to support affordability of broadband service. Collectively, these provisions will promote use of resources to facilitate the provision of assistance to

individuals and communities with the greatest need.

Analysis of Costs

This regulatory action will generate administrative costs relative to a pre-statutory baseline. This includes, chiefly, costs required to administer SLFRF funds, oversee subrecipients and beneficiaries, and file periodic reports with Treasury. It also requires states to allocate SLFRF funds to nonentitlement units, which are smaller units of local government that are statutorily required to receive their funds through states. Treasury expects that the administrative burden associated with this program will be moderate for a grant program of its size. Treasury expects that many recipients receive direct or indirect funding from federal government programs and that many have familiarity with how to administer and report on federal funds or grant funding provided by other entities. In particular, states, territories, and large localities will have received funds from the Coronavirus Relief Fund (CRF) and Treasury expects them to rely heavily on established processes developed through that program or other prior grant funding, mitigating burden on these governments. Treasury has enhanced the level of recipient reporting as compared to the CRF, incorporating feedback from the Government Accountability Office and others that additions would improve the oversight of recipients’ use of funds. To balance the oversight benefits with the costs of added reporting burdens, Treasury has incorporated other mechanisms to mitigate burden. For example, Treasury is “tiering” reporting requirements so that recipients that receive relatively lesser amounts of SLFRF funds are required to submit less frequent reports than recipients receiving greater amounts of funds. Treasury is noting administrative costs as a generally allowable use of SLFRF funds, which defrays administrative expenses to recipients that may be needed to comply with reporting requirements. Treasury has also provided options for recipients to use eligibility thresholds they are already familiar with during administration of SLFRF funds, which will enable recipients to avoid the costs of setting up new programs and reporting mechanisms to meet reporting and compliance requirements. For example, Treasury has permitted recipients to use “categorical eligibility” when delivering assistance to particular groups, such as impacted or disproportionately impacted households.

In making implementation choices, Treasury has hosted numerous consultations with a diverse range of direct recipients—states, cities, counties, and Tribal governments—along with various communities across the United States, including those that are underserved. Furthermore, Treasury has made clear in guidance that SLFRF funds may be used to cover certain expenses related to administering programs established using SLFRF funds.³⁹⁶

Executive Order 13132

Executive Order 13132 (entitled Federalism) prohibits an agency from publishing any rule that has federalism implications if the rule either imposes substantial, direct compliance costs on state, local, and Tribal governments, and is not required by statute, or preempts state law, unless the agency meets the consultation and funding requirements of section 6 of the Executive Order. This final rule does not have federalism implications within the meaning of the Executive Order and does not impose substantial, direct compliance costs on state, local, and Tribal governments or preempt state law within the meaning of the Executive Order. The compliance costs are imposed on state, local, and Tribal governments by sections 602 and 603 of the Social Security Act, as enacted by the ARPA. Notwithstanding the above, Treasury has engaged in efforts to consult and work cooperatively with affected state, local, and Tribal government officials and

associations in the process of developing the interim final rule and this final rule. Pursuant to the requirements set forth in section 8(a) of Executive Order 13132, Treasury certifies that it has complied with the requirements of Executive Order 13132.

Administrative Procedure Act

The Administrative Procedure Act (APA), 5 U.S.C. 551 *et seq.*, generally requires public notice and an opportunity for comment before a rule becomes effective. However, the APA provides that the requirements of 5 U.S.C. 553 do not apply “to the extent that there is involved . . . a matter relating to agency . . . grants.” The APA also provides an exception to ordinary notice-and-comment procedures “when the agency for good cause finds (and incorporates the finding and a brief statement of reasons therefor in the rules issued) that notice and public procedure thereon are impracticable, unnecessary, or contrary to the public interest.” 5 U.S.C. 553(b)(B). The interim final rule was issued without prior notice and comment procedures because it implemented statutory conditions on the eligible uses of SLFRF funds, and addressed the payment of those funds, the reporting on uses of funds, and potential consequences of ineligible uses to help address the economic and public health emergency. See the **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION** section of the May 17, 2021 interim final rule for the applicability of the requirements of

5 U.S.C. 553. In addition, under the exception discussed in that section for matters relating to agency grants, the requirements of 5 U.S.C. 553 also do not apply to this final rule. After careful consideration of the comments received, this final rule adopts the May 17, 2021 interim final rule with the revisions discussed in this **SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION**.

Congressional Review Act

The Administrator of OIRA has determined that this is a major rule for purposes of Subtitle E of the Small Business Regulatory Enforcement and Fairness Act of 1996 (also known as the Congressional Review Act or CRA) (5 U.S.C. 804(2) *et seq.*). Under the CRA, a major rule generally may take effect no earlier than 60 days after the rule is published in the **Federal Register**. 5 U.S.C. 801(a)(3).

Paperwork Reduction Act

The information collections associated with the SLFRF program have been reviewed and approved by OMB pursuant to the Paperwork Reduction Act (44 U.S.C. Chapter 35) (PRA) and assigned control number 1505–0271. Under the PRA, an agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a respondent is not required to respond to, an information collection unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

Estimates of hourly burden under this program are set forth in the table below.

Reporting	Number respondents	Number responses per respondent	Total responses	Hours per response	Total burden in hours	Cost to respondents (\$48.80 per hour*)
Recipient Payment Form	5,050	1	5,050	.25 (15 minutes)	1,262.5	\$61,610
Acceptance of Award Terms	5,050	1	5,050	.25 (15 minutes)	1,262.5	61,610
Title VI Assurances	5,050	1	5,050	.50 (30 minutes)	2,525	123,220
Tribal Employment Information Form	584	1	584	.75 (45 minutes)	438	21,374
Request for Extension Form	96	1	96	1	96	4,685
Annual Recovery Plan Performance Report	430	1	430	100	43,000	2,098,400
NEU Distribution Template	55	2	110	10	1,100	53,680
Non-UGLG Distribution Template	55	2	110	5	550	26,840
Transfer Forms	1,500	1	1,500	1	1,500	73,200
Project and Expenditure Report	37,000	1	37,000	5	185,000	9,028,000
Total	54,870	54,980	236,735	11,552,619

* Bureau of Labor Statistics, U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Outlook Handbook, Accountants and Auditors, on the internet at <https://www.bls.gov/ooh/business-and-financial/accountants-and-auditors.htm> (visited March 28, 2020). Base wage of \$33.89/hour increased by 44 percent to account for fully loaded employer cost of employee compensation (benefits, etc.) for a fully loaded wage rate of \$48.80.

Regulatory Flexibility Analysis

The Regulatory Flexibility Act (RFA) generally requires that when an agency issues a proposed rule, or a final rule pursuant to section 553(b) of the

Administrative Procedure Act or another law, the agency must prepare a regulatory flexibility analysis that meets the requirements of the RFA and

publish such analysis in the **Federal Register**. 5 U.S.C. 603, 604.

Rules that are exempt from notice and comment under the APA or any other law are also exempt from the RFA

³⁹⁶ See Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds, Frequently Asked Questions, 10.2,

as of July 19, 2021; <https://home.treasury.gov/system/files/136/SLFRPFAQ.pdf>.

requirements, including the requirement to conduct a regulatory flexibility analysis, when among other things the agency for good cause finds that notice and public procedure are impracticable, unnecessary, or contrary to the public interest. Because this rule is exempt from the notice and comment requirements of the APA, Treasury is not required to conduct a regulatory flexibility analysis.

Rule Text

List of Subjects in 31 CFR Part 35

Executive compensation, State and Local Governments, Tribal Governments, Public health emergency.

For the reasons stated in the preamble, the United States Department of the Treasury amends 31 CFR part 35 as follows:

PART 35—PANDEMIC RELIEF PROGRAMS

■ 1. Revise Subpart A to read as follows:

Subpart A—Coronavirus State and Local Fiscal Recovery Funds

- Sec.
- 35.1 Purpose.
- 35.2 Applicability.
- 35.3 Definitions.
- 35.4 Reservation of authority, reporting.
- 35.5 Use of funds.
- 35.6 Eligible uses.
- 35.7 Pensions.
- 35.8 Tax.
- 35.9. Compliance with applicable laws.
- 35.10. Recoupment.
- 35.11 Payments to States.
- 35.12. Distributions to nonentitlement units of local government and units of general local government.

Authority: 42 U.S.C. 802(f); 42 U.S.C. 803(f).

§ 35.1 Purpose.

This part implements section 9901 of the American Rescue Plan Act (Subtitle M of Title IX of Pub. L. 117–2), which amends Title VI of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 801 *et seq.*) by adding sections 602 and 603 to establish the Coronavirus State Fiscal Recovery Fund and Coronavirus Local Fiscal Recovery Fund.

§ 35.2 Applicability.

This part applies to states, territories, Tribal governments, metropolitan cities, nonentitlement units of local government, counties, and units of general local government that accept a payment or transfer of funds made under section 602 or 603 of the Social Security Act.

§ 35.3 Definitions.

Baseline means tax revenue of the recipient for its fiscal year ending in 2019, adjusted for inflation in each reporting year using the Bureau of Economic Analysis's Implicit Price Deflator for the gross domestic product of the United States.

Capital expenditures has the same meaning given in 2 CFR 200.1.

County means a county, parish, or other equivalent county division (as defined by the Census Bureau).

Covered benefits include, but are not limited to, the costs of all types of leave (vacation, family-related, sick, military, bereavement, sabbatical, jury duty), employee insurance (health, life, dental, vision), retirement (pensions, 401(k)), unemployment benefit plans (Federal and State), workers' compensation insurance, and Federal Insurance Contributions Act taxes (which includes Social Security and Medicare taxes).

Covered change means a change in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation that reduces any tax (by providing for a reduction in a rate, a rebate, a deduction, a credit, or otherwise) or delays the imposition of any tax or tax increase. A change in law includes any final legislative or regulatory action, a new or changed administrative interpretation, and the phase-in or taking effect of any statute or rule if the phase-in or taking effect was not prescribed prior to the start of the covered period.

Covered period means, with respect to a state or territory, the period that:

- (1) Begins on March 3, 2021; and
- (2) Ends on the last day of the fiscal year of such State or territory in which all funds received by the State or territory from a payment made under section 602 or 603 of the Social Security Act have been expended or returned to, or recovered by, the Secretary.

COVID-19 means the Coronavirus Disease 2019.

COVID-19 public health emergency means the period beginning on January 27, 2020 and lasting until the termination of the national emergency concerning the COVID-19 outbreak declared pursuant to the National Emergencies Act (50 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*).

Deposit means an extraordinary payment of an accrued, unfunded liability. The term deposit does not refer to routine contributions made by an employer to pension funds as part of the employer's obligations related to payroll, such as either a pension contribution consisting of a normal cost component related to current employees or a component addressing the amortization of unfunded liabilities

calculated by reference to the employer's payroll costs.

Eligible employer means an employer of an eligible worker who performs essential work.

Eligible workers means workers needed to maintain continuity of operations of essential critical infrastructure sectors, including health care; emergency response; sanitation, disinfection, and cleaning work; maintenance work; grocery stores, restaurants, food production, and food delivery; pharmacy; biomedical research; behavioral health work; medical testing and diagnostics; home- and community-based health care or assistance with activities of daily living; family or childcare; social services work; public health work; vital services to Tribes; any work performed by an employee of a State, local, or Tribal government; educational work, school nutrition work, and other work required to operate a school facility; laundry work; elections work; solid waste or hazardous materials management, response, and cleanup work; work requiring physical interaction with patients; dental care work; transportation and warehousing; work at hotel and commercial lodging facilities that are used for COVID-19 mitigation and containment; work in a mortuary; and work in critical clinical research, development, and testing necessary for COVID-19 response.

(1) With respect to a recipient that is a metropolitan city, nonentitlement unit of local government, or county, workers in any additional non-public sectors as each chief executive officer of such recipient may designate as critical to protect the health and well-being of the residents of their metropolitan city, nonentitlement unit of local government, or county; or

(2) With respect to a State, territory, or Tribal government, workers in any additional non-public sectors as each Governor of a State or territory, or each Tribal government, may designate as critical to protect the health and well-being of the residents of their State, territory, or Tribal government.

Essential work means work that:

- (1) Is not performed while teleworking from a residence; and
- (2) Involves:

(i) Regular in-person interactions with patients, the public, or coworkers of the individual that is performing the work; or

(ii) Regular physical handling of items that were handled by, or are to be handled by patients, the public, or coworkers of the individual that is performing the work.

Funds means, with respect to a recipient, amounts provided to the recipient pursuant to a payment made under section 602(b) or 603(b) of the Social Security Act or transferred to the recipient pursuant to section 603(c)(4) of the Social Security Act.

General revenue means money that is received from tax revenue, current charges, and miscellaneous general revenue, excluding refunds and other correcting transactions and proceeds from issuance of debt or the sale of investments, agency or private trust transactions, and intergovernmental transfers from the Federal Government, including transfers made pursuant to section 9901 of the American Rescue Plan Act. General revenue also includes revenue from liquor stores that are owned and operated by state and local governments. General revenue does not include revenues from utilities, except recipients may choose to include revenue from utilities that are part of their own government as general revenue provided the recipient does so consistently over the remainder of the period of performance. Revenue from Tribal business enterprises must be included in general revenue.

Intergovernmental transfers means money received from other governments, including grants and shared taxes.

Low-income household means a household with:

(1) Income at or below 185 percent of the Federal Poverty Guidelines for the size of its household based on the poverty guidelines published most recently by the Department of Health and Human Services; or

(2) Income at or below 40 percent of the Area Median Income for its county and size of household based on data published most recently by the Department of Housing and Urban Development.

Micro-business means a small business that has five or fewer employees, one or more of whom owns the small business.

Moderate-income household means a household with:

(1) Income at or below 300 percent of the Federal Poverty Guidelines for the size of its household based on poverty guidelines published most recently by the Department of Health and Human Services; or

(2) Income at or below 65 percent of the Area Median Income for its county and size of household based on data published most recently by the Department of Housing and Urban Development.

Metropolitan city has the meaning given that term in section 102(a)(4) of

the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5302(a)(4)) and includes cities that relinquish or defer their status as a metropolitan city for purposes of receiving allocations under section 106 of such Act (42 U.S.C. 5306) for fiscal year 2021.

Net reduction in total spending is measured as the State or territory's total spending for a given reporting year excluding its spending of funds, subtracted from its total spending for its fiscal year ending in 2019, adjusted for inflation using the Bureau of Economic Analysis's Implicit Price Deflator for the gross domestic product of the United States for that reporting year.

Nonentitlement unit of local government means a "city," as that term is defined in section 102(a)(5) of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5302(a)(5)), that is not a metropolitan city.

Nonprofit means a nonprofit organization that is exempt from Federal income taxation and that is described in section 501(c)(3) or 501(c)(19) of the Internal Revenue Code.

Obligation means an order placed for property and services and entering into contracts, subawards, and similar transactions that require payment.

Pension fund means a defined benefit plan and does not include a defined contribution plan.

Period of performance means the time period described in § 35.5 during which a recipient may obligate and expend funds in accordance with sections 602(c)(1) and 603(c)(1) of the Social Security Act and this subpart.

Premium pay means an amount of up to \$13 per hour that is paid to an eligible worker, in addition to wages or remuneration the eligible worker otherwise receives, for all work performed by the eligible worker during the COVID-19 public health emergency. Such amount may not exceed \$25,000 in total over the period of performance with respect to any single eligible worker. Premium pay may be awarded to non-hourly and part-time eligible workers performing essential work. Premium pay will be considered to be in addition to wages or remuneration the eligible worker otherwise receives if, as measured on an hourly rate, the premium pay is:

(1) With regard to work that the eligible worker previously performed, pay and remuneration equal to the sum of all wages and remuneration previously received plus up to \$13 per hour with no reduction, substitution, offset, or other diminishment of the eligible worker's previous, current, or prospective wages or remuneration; or

(2) With regard to work that the eligible worker continues to perform, pay of up to \$13 per hour that is in addition to the eligible worker's regular rate of wages or remuneration, with no reduction, substitution, offset, or other diminishment of the worker's current and prospective wages or remuneration.

Qualified census tract has the same meaning given in 26 U.S.C. 42(d)(5)(B)(ii)(I).

Recipient means a State, territory, Tribal government, metropolitan city, nonentitlement unit of local government, county, or unit of general local government that receives a payment made under section 602(b) or 603(b) of the Social Security Act or transfer pursuant to section 603(c)(4) of the Social Security Act.

Reporting year means a single year or partial year within the covered period, aligned to the current fiscal year of the State or territory during the covered period.

Secretary means the Secretary of the Treasury.

State means each of the 50 States and the District of Columbia.

Small business means a business concern or other organization that:

(1) Has no more than 500 employees or, if applicable, the size standard in number of employees established by the Administrator of the Small Business Administration for the industry in which the business concern or organization operates, and

(2) Is a small business concern as defined in section 3 of the Small Business Act (15 U.S.C. 632).

Tax revenue means revenue received from a compulsory contribution that is exacted by a government for public purposes excluding refunds and corrections and, for purposes of § 35.8, intergovernmental transfers. Tax revenue does not include payments for a special privilege granted or service rendered, employee or employer assessments and contributions to finance retirement and social insurance trust systems, or special assessments to pay for capital improvements.

Territory means the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the United States Virgin Islands, Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, or American Samoa.

Title I eligible schools means schools eligible to receive services under section 1113 of Title I, Part A of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965, as amended (20 U.S.C. 6313), including schools served under section 1113(b)(1)(C) of that Act.

Tribal enterprise means a business concern:

(1) That is wholly owned by one or more Tribal governments, or by a corporation that is wholly owned by one or more Tribal governments; or

(2) That is owned in part by one or more Tribal governments, or by a corporation that is wholly owned by one or more Tribal governments, if all other owners are either United States citizens or small business concerns, as these terms are used and consistent with the definitions in 15 U.S.C. 657a(b)(2)(D).

Tribal government means the recognized governing body of any Indian or Alaska Native Tribe, band, nation, pueblo, village, community, component band, or component reservation, individually identified (including parenthetically) in the list published on January 29, 2021, pursuant to section 104 of the Federally Recognized Indian Tribe List Act of 1994 (25 U.S.C. 5131).

Unemployment rate means the U-3 unemployment rate provided by the Bureau of Labor Statistics as part of the Local Area Unemployment Statistics program, measured as total unemployment as a percentage of the civilian labor force.

Unemployment trust fund means an unemployment trust fund established under section 904 of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1104).

Unit of general local government has the meaning given to that term in section 102(a)(1) of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 5302(a)(1)).

§ 35.4 Reservation of authority, reporting.

(a) *Reservation of authority.* Nothing in this part shall limit the authority of the Secretary to take action to enforce conditions or violations of law, including actions necessary to prevent evasions of this subpart.

(b) *Extensions or accelerations of timing.* The Secretary may extend or accelerate any deadline or compliance date of this part, including reporting requirements that implement this subpart, if the Secretary determines that such extension or acceleration is appropriate. In determining whether an extension or acceleration is appropriate, the Secretary will consider the period of time that would be extended or accelerated and how the modified timeline would facilitate compliance with this subpart.

(c) *Reporting and requests for other information.* During the period of performance, recipients shall provide to the Secretary periodic reports providing detailed accounting of the uses of funds, modifications to a State or Territory's tax revenue sources, and such other information as the Secretary may

require for the administration of this section. In addition to regular reporting requirements, the Secretary may request other additional information as may be necessary or appropriate, including as may be necessary to prevent evasions of the requirements of this subpart. False statements or claims made to the Secretary may result in criminal, civil, or administrative sanctions, including fines, imprisonment, civil damages and penalties, debarment from participating in Federal awards or contracts, and/or any other remedy available by law.

§ 35.5 Use of funds.

(a) *In general.* A recipient may only use funds to cover costs incurred during the period beginning March 3, 2021, and ending December 31, 2024, for one or more of the purposes enumerated in sections 602(c)(1) and 603(c)(1) of the Social Security Act, as applicable, including those enumerated in § 35.6, subject to the restrictions set forth in sections 602(c)(2) and 603(c)(2) of the Social Security Act, as applicable.

(b) *Costs incurred.* A cost shall be considered to have been incurred for purposes of paragraph (a) of this section if the recipient has incurred an obligation with respect to such cost by December 31, 2024.

(c) *Return of funds.* A recipient must return any funds not obligated by December 31, 2024. A recipient must also return funds obligated by December 31, 2024 but not expended by December 31, 2026.

§ 35.6 Eligible uses.

(a) *In general.* Subject to §§ 35.7 and 35.8, a recipient may use funds for one or more of the purposes described in paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section.

(b) *Responding to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts.* A recipient may use funds to respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts if the use meets the criteria provided in paragraph (b)(1) of this section or is enumerated in paragraph (b)(3) of this section; provided that, in the case of a use of funds for a capital expenditure under paragraphs (b)(1) or (b)(3) of this section, the use of funds must also meet the criteria provided in paragraph (b)(4) of this section. Treasury may also articulate additional eligible programs, services, or capital expenditures from time to time that satisfy the eligibility criteria of this paragraph (b), which shall be eligible under this paragraph (b).

(1) *Identifying eligible responses to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts.* (i) A

program, service, or capital expenditure is eligible under this paragraph (b)(1) if a recipient identifies a harm or impact to a beneficiary or class of beneficiaries caused or exacerbated by the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts and the program, service, or capital expenditure responds to such harm.

(ii) A program, service, or capital expenditure responds to a harm or impact experienced by an identified beneficiary or class of beneficiaries if it is reasonably designed to benefit the beneficiary or class of beneficiaries that experienced the harm or impact and is related and reasonably proportional to the extent and type of harm or impact experienced.

(2) *Identified harms: Presumptions of impacted and disproportionately impacted beneficiaries.* A recipient may rely on the following presumptions to identify beneficiaries presumptively impacted or disproportionately impacted by the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts for the purpose of providing a response under paragraph (b)(1) or (b)(3) of this section:

(i) Households or populations that experienced unemployment; experienced increased food or housing insecurity; qualify for the Children's Health Insurance Program (42 U.S.C. 1397aa *et seq.*), Childcare Subsidies through the Child Care and Development Fund Program (42 U.S.C. 9857 *et seq.* and 42 U.S.C. 618), or Medicaid (42 U.S.C. 1396 *et seq.*); if funds are to be used for affordable housing programs, qualify for the National Housing Trust Fund (12 U.S.C. 4568) or the Home Investment Partnerships Program (42 U.S.C. 12721 *et seq.*); if funds are to be used to address impacts of lost instructional time for students in kindergarten through twelfth grade, any student who did not have access to in-person instruction for a significant period of time; and low- and moderate-income households and populations are presumed to be impacted by the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts;

(ii) The general public is presumed to be impacted by the public health emergency for the purposes of providing the uses set forth in subparagraphs (b)(3)(i)(A) and (b)(3)(i)(C); and

(iii) The following households, communities, small businesses, and nonprofit organizations are presumed to be disproportionately impacted by the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts:

(A) Households and populations residing in a qualified census tract;

households and populations receiving services provided by Tribal governments; households and populations residing in the territories; households and populations receiving services provided by territorial governments; low-income households and populations; households that qualify for Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (42 U.S.C. 601 *et seq.*), the Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program (7 U.S.C. 2011 *et seq.*), Free and Reduced Price School Lunch and/or Breakfast programs (42 U.S.C. 1751 *et seq.* and 42 U.S.C. 1773), Medicare Part D Low-income Subsidies (42 U.S.C. 1395w–114), Supplemental Security Income (42 U.S.C. 1381 *et seq.*), Head Start (42 U.S.C. 9831 *et seq.*), Early Head Start (42 U.S.C. 9831 *et seq.*), the Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants, and Children (42 U.S.C. 1786), Section 8 Vouchers (42 U.S.C. 1437f), the Low-Income Home Energy Assistance Program (42 U.S.C. 8621 *et seq.*), Pell Grants (20 U.S.C. 1070a), and, if SLFRF funds are to be used for services to address educational disparities, Title I eligible schools;

(B) Small businesses operating in a qualified census tract, operated by Tribal governments or on Tribal lands, or operating in the territories; and

(C) Nonprofit organizations operating in a qualified census tract, operated by Tribal governments or on Tribal lands, or operating in the territories.

(3) *Enumerated eligible uses:* Responses presumed reasonably proportional. A recipient may use funds to respond to the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts on a beneficiary or class of beneficiaries for one or more of the following purposes unless such use is grossly disproportionate to the harm caused or exacerbated by the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts:

(i) Responding to the public health impacts of the public health emergency for purposes including:

(A) COVID–19 mitigation and prevention in a manner that is consistent with recommendations and guidance from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, including vaccination programs and incentives; testing programs; contact tracing; isolation and quarantine; mitigation and prevention practices in congregate settings; acquisition and distribution of medical equipment for prevention and treatment of COVID–19, including personal protective equipment; COVID–19 prevention and treatment expenses for public hospitals or health care facilities, including temporary medical

facilities; establishing or enhancing public health data systems; installation and improvement of ventilation systems in congregate settings, health facilities, or other public facilities; and assistance to small businesses, nonprofits, or impacted industries to implement mitigation measures;

(B) Medical expenses related to testing and treating COVID–19 that are provided in a manner consistent with recommendations and guidance from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, including emergency medical response expenses, treatment of long-term symptoms or effects of COVID–19, and costs to medical providers or to individuals for testing or treating COVID–19;

(C) Behavioral health care, including prevention, treatment, emergency or first-responder programs, harm reduction, supports for long-term recovery, and behavioral health facilities and equipment; and

(D) Preventing and responding to increased violence resulting from the public health emergency, including community violence intervention programs, or responding to increased gun violence resulting from the public health emergency, including payroll and covered benefits associated with community policing strategies; enforcement efforts to reduce gun violence; and investing in technology and equipment;

(ii) Responding to the negative economic impacts of the public health emergency for purposes including:

(A) Assistance to households and individuals, including:

(1) Assistance for food; emergency housing needs; burials, home repairs, or weatherization; internet access or digital literacy; cash assistance; and assistance accessing public benefits;

(2) Paid sick, medical, or family leave programs, or assistance to expand access to health insurance;

(3) Childcare, early learning services, home visiting, or assistance for child welfare-involved families or foster youth;

(4) Programs to address the impacts of lost instructional time for students in kindergarten through twelfth grade;

(5) Development, repair, and operation of affordable housing and services or programs to increase long-term housing security;

(6) Financial services that facilitate the delivery of Federal, State, or local benefits for unbanked and underbanked individuals;

(7) Benefits for the surviving family members of individuals who have died from COVID–19, including cash assistance to surviving spouses or

dependents of individuals who died of COVID–19;

(8) Assistance for individuals who want and are available for work, including those who are unemployed, have looked for work sometime in the past 12 months, who are employed part time but who want and are available for full-time work, or who are employed but seeking a position with greater opportunities for economic advancement;

(9) Facilities and equipment related to the provision of services to households provided in subparagraphs (b)(3)(ii)(A)(1)–(8);

(10) The following expenses related to Unemployment Trust Funds:

(i) Contributions to a recipient Unemployment Trust Fund and repayment of principal amounts due on advances received under Title XII of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1321) up to an amount equal to the difference between the balance in the recipient's Unemployment Trust Fund as of January 27, 2020 and the balance of such account as of May 17, 2021 plus the principal amount outstanding as of May 17, 2021 on any advances received under Title XII of the Social Security Act between January 27, 2020 and May 17, 2021; provided that if a recipient repays principal on Title XII advances or makes a contribution to an Unemployment Trust Fund after April 1, 2022, such recipient shall not reduce average weekly benefit amounts or maximum benefit entitlements prior to December 31, 2024; and

(ii) Any interest due on such advances received under Title XII of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1321); and

(11) A program, service, capital expenditure, or other assistance that is provided to a disproportionately impacted household, population, or community, including:

(i) Services to address health disparities of the disproportionately impacted household, population, or community;

(ii) Housing vouchers and relocation assistance;

(iii) Investments in communities to promote improved health outcomes and public safety such as parks, recreation facilities, and programs that increase access to healthy foods;

(iv) Capital expenditures and other services to address vacant or abandoned properties;

(v) Services to address educational disparities; and

(vi) Facilities and equipment related to the provision of these services to the disproportionately impacted household, population, or community.

(B) Assistance to small businesses, including:

(1) Programs, services, or capital expenditures that respond to the negative economic impacts of the COVID-19 public health emergency, including loans or grants to mitigate financial hardship such as declines in revenues or impacts of periods of business closure, or providing technical assistance; and

(2) A program, service, capital expenditure, or other assistance that responds to disproportionately impacted small businesses, including rehabilitation of commercial properties; storefront and façade improvements; technical assistance, business incubators, and grants for start-ups or expansion costs for small businesses; and programs or services to support micro-businesses;

(C) Assistance to nonprofit organizations including programs, services, or capital expenditures, including loans or grants to mitigate financial hardship such as declines in revenues or increased costs, or technical assistance;

(D) Assistance to tourism, travel, hospitality, and other impacted industries for programs, services, or

capital expenditures, including support for payroll costs and covered benefits for employees, compensating returning employees, support for operations and maintenance of existing equipment and facilities, and technical assistance; and

(E) Expenses to support public sector capacity and workforce, including:

(1) Payroll and covered benefit expenses for public safety, public health, health care, human services, and similar employees to the extent that the employee's time is spent mitigating or responding to the COVID-19 public health emergency;

(2) Payroll, covered benefit, and other costs associated with programs or services to support the public sector workforce and with the recipient:

(i) Hiring or rehiring staff to fill budgeted full-time equivalent positions that existed on January 27, 2020 but that were unfilled or eliminated as of March 3, 2021; or

(ii) Increasing the number of its budgeted full-time equivalent employees by up to the difference between the number of its budgeted full-time equivalent employees on January 27, 2020, multiplied by 1.075, and the number of its budgeted full-time equivalent employees on March 3, 2021,

provided that funds shall only be used for additional budgeted full-time equivalent employees above the recipient's number of budgeted full-time equivalent employees as of March 3, 2021;

(3) Costs to improve the design and execution of programs responding to the COVID-19 pandemic and to administer or improve the efficacy of programs addressing the public health emergency or its negative economic impacts; and

(4) Costs associated with addressing administrative needs of recipient governments that were caused or exacerbated by the pandemic.

(4) *Capital expenditures.* A recipient, other than a Tribal government, must prepare a written justification for certain capital expenditures according to Table 1 to paragraph (b)(4) of this section. Such written justification must include the following elements:

(i) Describe the harm or need to be addressed;

(ii) Explain why a capital expenditure is appropriate; and

(iii) Compare the proposed capital expenditure to at least two alternative capital expenditures and demonstrate why the proposed capital expenditure is superior.

TABLE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (b)(4)

If a project has total expected capital expenditures of	and the use is enumerated in (b)(3), then	and the use is not enumerated in (b)(3), then
Less than \$1 million	No Written Justification required	No Written Justification required.
Greater than or equal to \$1 million, but less than \$10 million.	Written Justification required but recipients are not required to submit as part of regular reporting to Treasury.	Written Justification required and recipients must submit as part of regular reporting to Treasury.
\$10 million or more	Written Justification required and recipients must submit as part of regular reporting to Treasury.	

(c) *Providing premium pay to eligible workers.* A recipient may use funds to provide premium pay to eligible workers of the recipient who perform essential work or to provide grants to eligible employers that have eligible workers who perform essential work, provided that any premium pay or grants provided under this paragraph (c) must respond to eligible workers performing essential work during the COVID-19 public health emergency. A recipient uses premium pay or grants provided under this paragraph (c) to respond to eligible workers performing essential work during the COVID-19 public health emergency if:

(1) The eligible worker's total wages and remuneration, including the premium pay, is less than or equal to 150 percent of the greater of such eligible worker's residing State's or county's average annual wage for all

occupations as defined by the Bureau of Labor Statistics' Occupational Employment and Wage Statistics;

(2) The eligible worker is not exempt from the Fair Labor Standards Act overtime provisions (29 U.S.C. 207); or

(3) The recipient has submitted to the Secretary a written justification that explains how providing premium pay to the eligible worker is responsive to the eligible worker performing essential work during the COVID-19 public health emergency (such as a description of the eligible workers' duties, health, or financial risks faced due to COVID-19, and why the recipient determined that the premium pay was responsive despite the worker's higher income).

(d) *Providing government services.* A recipient may use funds for the provision of government services to the extent of the reduction in the recipient's general revenue due to the public health

emergency, calculated according to this paragraph (d). A recipient must make a one-time election to calculate the amount of the reduction in the recipient's general revenue due to the public health emergency according to either paragraph (d)(1) or (d)(2) of this section:

(1) *Standard allowance.* The reduction in the recipient's general revenue due to the public health emergency over the period of performance will be deemed to be ten million dollars; or

(2) *Formula.* The reduction in the recipient's general revenue due to the public health emergency over the period of performance equals the sum of the reduction in revenue, calculated as of each date identified in paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section and according to the formula in paragraph (d)(2)(ii) of this section:

(i) A recipient must make a one-time election to calculate the reduction in its general revenue using information as of either:

(A) December 31, 2020, December 31, 2021, December 31, 2022, and December 31, 2023; or

(B) The last day of each of the recipient's fiscal years ending in 2020, 2021, 2022, and 2023.

(ii) A reduction in a recipient's general revenue for each date identified in paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section equals:

$$\text{Max} \{ [\text{Base Year Revenue} * (1 + \text{Growth Adjustment})^{(n/12)}] - \text{Actual General Revenue}; 0 \}$$

Where:

(A) Base Year Revenue is the recipient's general revenue for the most recent full fiscal year prior to the COVID-19 public health emergency;

(B) Growth Adjustment is equal to the greater of 5.2 percent (or 0.052) and the recipient's average annual revenue growth over the three full fiscal years prior to the COVID-19 public health emergency;

(C) n equals the number of months elapsed from the end of the base year to the calculation date;

(D) Subscript t denotes the specific calculation date; and

(E) Actual General Revenue is a recipient's actual general revenue collected during the 12-month period ending on each calculation date identified in paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section, except:

(1) For purposes of all calculation dates on or after April 1, 2022, in the case of any change made after January 6, 2022 to any law, regulation, or administrative interpretation that reduces any tax (by providing for a reduction in a rate, a rebate, a deduction, a credit, or otherwise) or delays the imposition of any tax or tax increase and that the recipient assesses has had the effect of decreasing the amount of tax revenue collected during the 12-month period ending on the calculation date relative to the amount of tax revenue that would have been collected in the absence of such change, the recipient must add to actual general revenue the amount of such decrease in tax revenue;

(2) For purposes of any calculation date on or after April 1, 2022, in the case of any change made after January 6, 2022 to any law, regulation, or administrative interpretation that increases any tax (by providing for an increase in a rate, the reduction of a rebate, a deduction, or a credit, or otherwise) or accelerates the imposition of any tax or tax increase and that the

recipient assesses has had the effect of increasing the amount of tax revenue collected during the 12-month period ending on the calculation date relative to the amount of tax revenue that would have been collected in the absence of such change, the recipient must subtract from actual general revenue the amount of such increase in tax revenue;

(3) If the recipient makes a one-time election to adjust general revenue to reflect tax changes made during the period beginning on January 27, 2020 and ending on January 6, 2022, for purposes of each calculation date identified in paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section:

(i) In the case of any change made during such prior period to any law, regulation, or administrative interpretation that reduces any tax (by providing for a reduction in a rate, a rebate, a deduction, a credit, or otherwise) or delays the imposition of any tax or tax increase and that the recipient assesses has had the effect of decreasing the amount of tax revenue collected during the 12-month period ending on the calculation date relative to the amount of tax revenue that would have been collected in the absence of such change, the recipient must add to actual general revenue the amount of such decrease in tax revenue; and

(ii) In the case of any change made during such prior period to any law, regulation, or administrative interpretation that increases any tax (by providing for an increase in a rate, the reduction of a rebate, a deduction, or a credit, or otherwise) or accelerates the imposition of any tax or tax increase and that the recipient assesses has had the effect of increasing the amount of tax revenue collected during the 12-month period ending on the calculation date relative to the amount of tax revenue that would have been collected in the absence of such change, the recipient must subtract from actual general revenue the amount of such increase in tax revenue; and

(4) With respect to any calculation date during the period beginning on January 6, 2022 and ending on March 31, 2022, if the recipient makes the election in paragraph (d)(3) of this section, the recipient must also make the adjustments referenced in paragraph (d)(3) of this section with respect to any such changes in law, regulation, or administrative interpretation during the period beginning on January 6, 2022 and ending on such calculation date.

(e) *Making necessary investments in water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure.* A recipient may use funds to make the following

investments in water, sewer, and broadband infrastructure.

(1) *Water and sewer investments—(i) Clean Water State Revolving Fund projects.* Projects or activities of the type that meet the eligibility requirements of section 603(c) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1383(c));

(ii) *Additional stormwater projects.* Projects to manage, reduce, treat, or recapture stormwater or subsurface drainage water regardless of whether such projects would improve water quality if such projects would otherwise meet the eligibility requirements of section 603(c)(5) of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1383(c)(5));

(iii) *Drinking Water State Revolving Fund projects.* Projects or activities of the type that meet the eligibility requirements of section 1452 of the Safe Drinking Water Act (42 U.S.C. 300j-12) as implemented by the regulations adopted by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) under 40 CFR 35.3520, provided that:

(A) The recipient is not required to comply with the limitation under 40 CFR 35.3520(c)(2) to acquisitions of land from willing sellers or the prohibition under 40 CFR 35.3520(e)(6) on uses of funds for certain Tribal projects; and

(B) In the case of lead service line replacement projects, the recipient must replace the full length of the service line and may not replace only a partial portion of the service line.

(iv) *Additional lead remediation and household water quality testing.* Projects or activities to address lead in drinking water or provide household water quality testing that are within the scope of the programs the EPA is authorized to establish under sections 1459A(b)(2), 1459B(b)(1), 1464(d)(2), and 1465 of the Safe Drinking Water Act (42 U.S.C. 300j-19a(b)(2), 300j-19b(b)(1), 300j-24(d)(2), and 300j-25), provided that:

(A) In the case of lead service line replacement projects, the recipient must replace the full length of the service line and may not replace only a partial portion of the service line; and

(B) In the case of projects within the scope of the program the EPA is authorized to establish under section 1459B(b)(1) of the Safe Drinking Water Act, the recipient may determine the income eligibility of homeowners served by lead service line replacement projects in its discretion.

(v) *Drinking water projects to support increased population.* Projects of the type that meet the eligibility requirements of 40 CFR 35.3520 other than the requirement of subparagraph

(b)(1) of such regulation to address present or prevent future violations of health-based drinking water standards, if the following conditions are met:

(A) The project is needed to support increased population, with need assessed as of the time the project is undertaken;

(B) The project is designed to support no more than a reasonable level of projected increased need, whether due to population growth or otherwise;

(C) The project is a cost-effective means for achieving the desired level of service; and

(D) The project is projected to continue to provide an adequate level of drinking water over its estimated useful life.

(vi) *Dams and reservoirs.*

Rehabilitation of dams and reservoirs if the following conditions are met:

(A) The project meets the requirements of 40 CFR 35.3520 other than the following requirements:

(1) The prohibition on the rehabilitation of dams and reservoirs in 40 CFR 35.3520(e)(1) and (3); and

(2) The requirement in 40 CFR 35.3520(b)(1) that the project is needed to address present or prevent future violations of health-based drinking water standards, provided that if the dam or reservoir project does not meet this requirement, the project must be needed to support increased population, with need assessed as of the time the project is undertaken, and the project must be projected to continue to provide an adequate level of drinking water over its estimated useful life;

(B) The primary purpose of the dam or reservoir is for drinking water supply;

(C) The project is needed for the provision of drinking water supply, with need assessed as of the time the project is initiated;

(D) The project is designed to support no more than a reasonable level of projected increased need, whether due to population growth or otherwise; and

(E) The project is a cost-effective means for achieving the desired level of service.

(vii) *Private wells.* Rehabilitation of private wells, testing initiatives to identify contaminants in private wells, and treatment activities and remediation projects that address contamination in private wells, if the project meets the requirements of 40 CFR 35.3520 other than the limitation to certain eligible systems under 40 CFR 35.3520(a).

(2) *Broadband investments—(i) General.* Broadband infrastructure if the following conditions are met:

(A) The broadband infrastructure is designed to provide service to households and businesses with an

identified need, as determined by the recipient, for such infrastructure;

(B) The broadband infrastructure is designed to, upon completion:

(1) Reliably meet or exceed symmetrical 100 Mbps download speed and upload speeds; or

(2) In cases where it is not practicable, because of the excessive cost of the project or geography or topography of the area to be served by the project, to provide service reliably meeting or exceeding symmetrical 100 Mbps download speed and upload speeds:

(i) Reliably meet or exceed 100 Mbps download speed and between at least 20 Mbps and 100 Mbps upload speed; and

(ii) Be scalable to a minimum of 100 Mbps download speed and 100 Mbps upload speed; and

(C) The service provider for a completed broadband infrastructure investment project that provides service to households is required, for as long as the SLFRF-funded broadband infrastructure is in use, by the recipient to:

(1) Participate in the Federal Communications Commission's Affordable Connectivity Program (ACP) through the lifetime of the ACP; or

(2) Otherwise provide access to a broad-based affordability program to low-income consumers in the proposed service area of the broadband infrastructure that provides benefits to households commensurate with those provided under the ACP through the lifetime of the ACP.

(ii) *Cybersecurity infrastructure investments.* Cybersecurity infrastructure investments that are designed to improve the reliability and resiliency of new and existing broadband infrastructure. Such investments may include the addition or modernization of network security hardware and software tools designed to strengthen cybersecurity for the end-users of these networks.

(f) *Meeting the non-federal matching requirements for Bureau of Reclamation projects.* A recipient may use funds to meet the non-federal matching requirements of any authorized Bureau of Reclamation project.

§ 35.7 Pensions.

A recipient (other than a Tribal government) may not use funds for deposit into any pension fund.

§ 35.8 Tax.

(a) *Restriction.* A State or Territory shall not use funds to either directly or indirectly offset a reduction in the net tax revenue of the State or Territory resulting from a covered change during the covered period.

(b) *Violation.* Treasury will consider a State or Territory to have used funds to offset a reduction in net tax revenue if, during a reporting year:

(1) *Covered change.* The State or Territory has made a covered change that, either based on a reasonable statistical methodology to isolate the impact of the covered change in actual revenue or based on projections that use reasonable assumptions and do not incorporate the effects of macroeconomic growth to reduce or increase the projected impact of the covered change, the State or Territory assesses has had or predicts to have the effect of reducing tax revenue relative to current law;

(2) *Exceeds the de minimis threshold.* The aggregate amount of the measured or predicted reductions in tax revenue caused by covered changes identified under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, in the aggregate, exceeds 1 percent of the State's or Territory's baseline;

(3) *Reduction in net tax revenue.* The State or Territory reports a reduction in net tax revenue, measured as the difference between actual tax revenue and the State's or Territory's baseline, each measured as of the end of the reporting year; and

(4) *Consideration of other changes.* The aggregate amount of measured or predicted reductions in tax revenue caused by covered changes is greater than the sum of the following, in each case, as calculated for the reporting year:

(i) The aggregate amount of the expected increases in tax revenue caused by one or more covered changes that, either based on a reasonable statistical methodology to isolate the impact of the covered change in actual revenue or based on projections that use reasonable assumptions and do not incorporate the effects of macroeconomic growth to reduce or increase the projected impact of the covered change, the State or Territory assesses has had or predicts to have the effect of increasing tax revenue; and

(ii) Reductions in spending, up to the amount of the State's or Territory's net reduction in total spending, that are in:

(A) Departments, agencies, or authorities in which the State or Territory is not using funds; and

(B) Departments, agencies, or authorities in which the State or Territory is using funds, in an amount equal to the value of the spending cuts in those departments, agencies, or authorities, minus funds used.

(c) *Amount and revenue reduction cap.* If a State or Territory is considered to be in violation pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section, the amount used in

violation of paragraph (a) of this section is equal to the lesser of:

(1) The reduction in net tax revenue of the State or Territory for the reporting year, measured as the difference between the State's or Territory's baseline and its actual tax revenue, each measured as of the end of the reporting year; and,

(2) The aggregate amount of the reductions in tax revenues caused by covered changes identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, minus the sum of the amounts in identified in paragraphs (b)(4)(i) and (ii) of this section.

§ 35.9 Compliance with applicable laws.

A recipient must comply with all other applicable Federal statutes, regulations, and executive orders, and a recipient shall provide for compliance with the American Rescue Plan Act, this subpart, and any interpretive guidance by other parties in any agreements it enters into with other parties relating to these funds.

§ 35.10 Recoupment.

(a) *Identification of violations*—(1) *In general.* Any amount used in violation of § 35.5, 35.6, or 35.7 may be identified at any time prior to December 31, 2026.

(2) *Annual reporting of amounts of violations.* On an annual basis, a recipient that is a State or territory must calculate and report any amounts used in violation of § 35.8.

(b) *Calculation of amounts subject to recoupment*—(1) *In general.* Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, the Secretary will calculate any amounts subject to recoupment resulting from a violation of § 35.5, 35.6 or 35.7 as the amounts used in violation of such restrictions.

(2) *Violations of § 35.8.* The Secretary will calculate any amounts subject to recoupment resulting from a violation of § 35.8, equal to the lesser of:

(i) The amount set forth in § 35.8(c); and,

(ii) The amount of funds received by such recipient.

(c) *Initial notice.* If the Secretary calculates an amount subject to recoupment under paragraph (b) of this section, Treasury will provide the recipient an initial written notice of the amount subject to recoupment along with an explanation of such amounts.

(d) *Request for reconsideration.* Unless the Secretary extends or accelerates the time period, within 60 calendar days of receipt of an initial notice of recoupment provided under paragraph (c) of this section, a recipient may submit a written request to the Secretary requesting reconsideration of any amounts subject to recoupment

under paragraph (b) of this section. To request reconsideration of any amounts subject to recoupment, a recipient must submit to the Secretary a written request that includes:

(1) An explanation of why the recipient believes all or some of the amount should not be subject to recoupment; and

(2) A discussion of supporting reasons, along with any additional information.

(e) *Final amount subject to recoupment.* Unless the Secretary extends or accelerates the time period, within 60 calendar days of receipt of the recipient's request for reconsideration provided pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section or the expiration of the period for requesting reconsideration provided under paragraph (d), the recipient will be notified of the Secretary's decision to affirm, withdraw, or modify the notice of recoupment. Such notification will include an explanation of the decision, including responses to the recipient's supporting reasons and consideration of additional information provided. A recipient must invoke and exhaust the procedures available under this subpart prior to seeking judicial review of a decision under § 35.10.

(f) *Repayment of funds.* Unless the Secretary extends or accelerates the time period, a recipient shall repay to the Secretary any amounts subject to recoupment in accordance with instructions provided by the Secretary:

(1) Within 120 calendar days of receipt of the notice of recoupment provided under paragraph (c) of this section, in the case of a recipient that does not submit a request for reconsideration in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (d) of this section; or

(2) Within 120 calendar days of receipt of the Secretary's decision under paragraph (e) of this section, in the case of a recipient that submits a request for reconsideration in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (d) of this section.

(g) *Other remedial actions.* Prior to seeking recoupment or taking other appropriate action pursuant to paragraph (c), (d), (e), or (f) of this section, the Secretary may notify the recipient of potential violations and provide the recipient an opportunity for informal consultation and remediation.

§ 35.11 Payments to States.

(a) *In general.* With respect to any State or Territory that has an unemployment rate as of the date that it submits an initial certification for payment of funds pursuant to section

602(d)(1) of the Social Security Act that is less than two percentage points above its unemployment rate in February 2020, the Secretary will withhold 50 percent of the amount of funds allocated under section 602(b) of the Social Security Act to such State or territory until at least May 10, 2022 and not more than twelve months from the date such initial certification is provided to the Secretary.

(b) *Payment of withheld amount.* In order to receive the amount withheld under paragraph (a) of this section, the State or Territory must submit to the Secretary the following information:

(1) A certification, in the form provided by the Secretary, that such State or Territory requires the payment to carry out the activities specified in section 602(c) of the Social Security Act and will use the payment in compliance with section 602(c) of the Social Security Act; and

(2) Any reports required to be filed by that date pursuant to this part that have not yet been filed.

§ 35.12 Distributions to nonentitlement units of local government and units of general local government.

(a) *Nonentitlement units of local government.* Each State or Territory that receives a payment from the Secretary pursuant to section 603(b)(2)(B) of the Social Security Act shall distribute the amount of the payment to nonentitlement units of local government in such State or Territory in accordance with the requirements set forth in section 603(b)(2)(C) of the Social Security Act and without offsetting any debt owed by such nonentitlement units of local governments against such payments.

(b) *Budget cap.* A State or Territory may not make a payment to a nonentitlement unit of local government pursuant to section 603(b)(2)(C) of the Social Security Act and paragraph (a) of this section in excess of the amount equal to 75 percent of the most recent budget for the nonentitlement unit of local government as of January 27, 2020. For purposes of this section 35.12, a nonentitlement unit of local government's most recent budget shall mean the nonentitlement unit of local government's total annual budget, including both operating and capital expenditure budgets, in effect as of January 27, 2020. A State or Territory shall permit a nonentitlement unit of local government without a formal budget as of January 27, 2020, to provide a certification from an authorized officer of the nonentitlement unit of local government of its most recent annual expenditures as of

January 27, 2020, and a State or Territory may rely on such certification for purposes of complying with this section 35.12.

(c) *Units of general local government.* Each State or Territory that receives a payment from the Secretary pursuant to section 603(b)(3)(B)(ii) of the Social Security Act, in the case of an amount to be paid to a county that is not a unit of general local government, shall

distribute the amount of the payment to units of general local government within such county in accordance with the requirements set forth in section 603(b)(3)(B)(ii) of the Social Security Act and without offsetting any debt owed by such units of general local government against such payments.

(d) *Additional conditions.* A State or Territory may not place additional conditions or requirements on

distributions to nonentitlement units of local government or units of general local government beyond those required by section 603 of the Social Security Act or this subpart.

Jacob Leibenluft,

Chief Recovery Officer.

[FR Doc. 2022–00292 Filed 1–26–22; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE P

Attachment B

PART 200—UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS, COST PRINCIPLES, AND AUDIT REQUIREMENTS FOR FEDERAL AWARDS

Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions

ACRONYMS

Sec.		
200.0	Acronyms.	200.50 Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards (GAGAS).
200.1	Definitions.	200.51 Grant agreement.
200.2	Acquisition cost.	200.52 Hospital.
200.3	Advance payment.	200.53 Improper payment.
200.4	Allocation.	200.54 Indian tribe (or “federally recognized Indian tribe”).
200.5	Audit finding.	200.55 Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs).
200.6	Auditee.	200.56 Indirect (facilities & administrative (F&A)) costs.
200.7	Auditor.	200.57 Indirect cost rate proposal.
200.8	Budget.	200.58 Information technology systems.
200.9	Central service cost allocation plan.	200.59 Intangible property.
200.10	Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number.	200.60 Intermediate cost objective.
200.11	CFDA program title.	200.61 Internal controls.
200.12	Capital assets.	200.62 Internal control over compliance requirements for Federal awards.
200.13	Capital expenditures.	200.63 Loan.
200.14	Claim.	200.64 Local government.
200.15	Class of Federal awards.	200.65 Major program.
200.16	Closeout.	200.66 Management decision.
200.17	Cluster of programs.	200.67 Micro-purchase.
200.18	Cognizant agency for audit.	200.68 Modified Total Direct Cost (MTDC).
200.19	Cognizant agency for indirect costs.	200.69 Non-Federal entity.
200.20	Computing devices.	200.70 Nonprofit organization.
200.21	Compliance supplement.	200.71 Obligations.
200.22	Contract.	200.72 Office of Management and Budget (OMB).
200.23	Contractor.	200.73 Oversight agency for audit.
200.24	Cooperative agreement.	200.74 Pass-through entity.
200.25	Cooperative audit resolution.	200.75 Participant support costs.
200.26	Corrective action.	200.76 Performance goal.
200.27	Cost allocation plan.	200.77 Period of performance.
200.28	Cost objective.	200.78 Personal property.
200.29	Cost sharing or matching.	200.79 Personally Identifiable Information (PII).
200.30	Cross-cutting audit finding.	200.80 Program income.
200.31	[Reserved]	200.81 Property.
200.32	Data Universal Numbering System (DUNS) number.	200.82 Protected Personally Identifiable Information (Protected PII).
200.33	Equipment.	200.83 Project cost.
200.34	Expenditures.	200.84 Questioned cost.
200.35	Federal agency.	200.85 Real property.
200.36	Federal Audit Clearinghouse (FAC).	200.86 Recipient.
200.37	Federal awarding agency.	200.87 Research and Development (R&D).
200.38	Federal award.	200.88 Simplified acquisition threshold.
200.39	Federal award date.	200.89 Special purpose equipment.
200.40	Federal financial assistance.	200.90 State.
200.41	Federal interest.	200.91 Student Financial Aid (SFA).
200.42	Federal program.	200.92 Subaward.
200.43	Federal share.	200.93 Subrecipient.
200.44	Final cost objective.	200.94 Supplies.
200.45	Fixed amount awards.	200.95 Termination.
200.46	Foreign public entity.	200.96 Third-party in-kind contributions.
200.47	Foreign organization.	200.97 Unliquidated obligations.
200.48	General purpose equipment.	200.98 Unobligated balance.
200.49	Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).	200.99 Voluntary committed cost sharing.

Subpart B—General Provisions

200.100	Purpose.
200.101	Applicability.

Pt. 200

- 200.102 Exceptions.
- 200.103 Authorities.
- 200.104 Supersession.
- 200.105 Effect on other issuances.
- 200.106 Agency implementation.
- 200.107 OMB responsibilities.
- 200.108 Inquiries.
- 200.109 Review date.
- 200.110 Effective/applicability date.
- 200.111 English language.
- 200.112 Conflict of interest.
- 200.113 Mandatory disclosures.

Subpart C—Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards

- 200.200 Purpose.
- 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts.
- 200.202 Program planning and design.
- 200.203 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs.
- 200.204 Notices of funding opportunities.
- 200.205 Federal awarding agency review of merit of proposals.
- 200.206 Federal awarding agency review of risk posed by applicants.
- 200.207 Standard application requirements.
- 200.208 Specific conditions.
- 200.209 Certifications and representations.
- 200.210 Pre-award costs.
- 200.211 Information contained in a Federal award.
- 200.212 Public access to Federal award information.
- 200.213 Reporting a determination that a non-Federal entity is not qualified for a Federal award.
- 200.214 Suspension and debarment.
- 200.215 Never contract with the enemy.
- 200.216 Prohibition on certain telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment.

Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements

- 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements.
- 200.301 Performance measurement.
- 200.302 Financial management.
- 200.303 Internal controls.
- 200.304 Bonds.
- 200.305 Federal payment.
- 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.
- 200.307 Program income.
- 200.308 Revision of budget and program plans.
- 200.309 Modifications to period of performance.

PROPERTY STANDARDS

- 200.310 Insurance coverage.
- 200.311 Real property.

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

- 200.312 Federally-owned and exempt property.
- 200.313 Equipment.
- 200.314 Supplies.
- 200.315 Intangible property.
- 200.316 Property trust relationship.

PROCUREMENT STANDARDS

- 200.317 Procurements by states.
- 200.318 General procurement standards.
- 200.319 Competition.
- 200.320 Methods of procurement to be followed.
- 200.321 Contracting with small and minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms.
- 200.322 Domestic preferences for procurements.
- 200.323 Procurement of recovered materials.
- 200.324 Contract cost and price.
- 200.325 Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity review.
- 200.326 Bonding requirements.
- 200.327 Contract provisions.

PERFORMANCE AND FINANCIAL MONITORING AND REPORTING

- 200.328 Financial reporting.
- 200.329 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
- 200.330 Reporting on real property.

SUBRECIPIENT MONITORING AND MANAGEMENT

- 200.331 Subrecipient and contractor determinations.
- 200.332 Requirements for pass-through entities.
- 200.333 Fixed amount subawards.

RECORD RETENTION AND ACCESS

- 200.334 Retention requirements for records.
- 200.335 Requests for transfer of records.
- 200.336 Methods for collection, transmission, and storage of information.
- 200.337 Access to records.
- 200.338 Restrictions on public access to records.

REMEDIES FOR NONCOMPLIANCE

- 200.339 Remedies for noncompliance.
- 200.340 Termination.
- 200.341 Notification of termination requirement.
- 200.342 Opportunities to object, hearings, and appeals.
- 200.343 Effects of suspension and termination.

CLOSEOUT

- 200.344 Closeout.

POST-CLOSEOUT ADJUSTMENTS AND CONTINUING RESPONSIBILITIES

- 200.345 Post-closeout adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

OMB Guidance

Pt. 200

COLLECTION OF AMOUNTS DUE

200.346 Collection of amounts due.

Subpart E—Cost Principles

GENERAL PROVISIONS

200.400 Policy guide.

200.401 Application.

BASIC CONSIDERATIONS

200.402 Composition of costs.

200.403 Factors affecting allowability of costs.

200.404 Reasonable costs.

200.405 Allocable costs.

200.406 Applicable credits.

200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval).

200.408 Limitation on allowance of costs.

200.409 Special considerations.

200.410 Collection of unallowable costs.

200.411 Adjustment of previously negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates containing unallowable costs.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT (F&A) COSTS

200.412 Classification of costs.

200.413 Direct costs.

200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs.

200.415 Required certifications.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR STATES, LOCAL GOVERNMENTS AND INDIAN TRIBES

200.416 Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals.

200.417 Interagency service.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER EDUCATION

200.418 Costs incurred by states and local governments.

200.419 Cost accounting standards and disclosure statement.

GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR SELECTED ITEMS OF COST

200.420 Considerations for selected items of cost.

200.421 Advertising and public relations.

200.422 Advisory councils.

200.423 Alcoholic beverages.

200.424 Alumni/ae activities.

200.425 Audit services.

200.426 Bad debts.

200.427 Bonding costs.

200.428 Collections of improper payments.

200.429 Commencement and convocation costs.

200.430 Compensation—personal services.

200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits.

200.432 Conferences.

200.433 Contingency provisions.

200.434 Contributions and donations.

200.435 Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringements.

200.436 Depreciation.

200.437 Employee health and welfare costs.

200.438 Entertainment costs.

200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

200.440 Exchange rates.

200.441 Fines, penalties, damages and other settlements.

200.442 Fund raising and investment management costs.

200.443 Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable assets.

200.444 General costs of government.

200.445 Goods or services for personal use.

200.446 Idle facilities and idle capacity.

200.447 Insurance and indemnification.

200.448 Intellectual property.

200.449 Interest.

200.450 Lobbying.

200.451 Losses on other awards or contracts.

200.452 Maintenance and repair costs.

200.453 Materials and supplies costs, including costs of computing devices.

200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.

200.455 Organization costs.

200.456 Participant support costs.

200.457 Plant and security costs.

200.458 Pre-award costs.

200.459 Professional service costs.

200.460 Proposal costs.

200.461 Publication and printing costs.

200.462 Rearrangement and reconversion costs.

200.463 Recruiting costs.

200.464 Relocation costs of employees.

200.465 Rental costs of real property and equipment.

200.466 Scholarships and student aid costs.

200.467 Selling and marketing costs.

200.468 Specialized service facilities.

200.469 Student activity costs.

200.470 Taxes (including Value Added Tax).

200.471 Telecommunication costs and video surveillance costs.

200.472 Termination costs.

200.473 Training and education costs.

200.474 Transportation costs.

200.475 Travel costs.

200.476 Trustees.

Subpart F—Audit Requirements

GENERAL

200.500 Purpose.

AUDITS

200.501 Audit requirements.

200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards expended.

200.503 Relation to other audit requirements.

200.504 Frequency of audits.

§ 200.0

- 200.505 Sanctions.
- 200.506 Audit costs.
- 200.507 Program-specific audits.

AUDITEES

- 200.508 Auditee responsibilities.
- 200.509 Auditor selection.
- 200.510 Financial statements.
- 200.511 Audit findings follow-up.
- 200.512 Report submission.

FEDERAL AGENCIES

- 200.513 Responsibilities.

AUDITORS

- 200.514 Scope of audit.
- 200.515 Audit reporting.
- 200.516 Audit findings.
- 200.517 Audit documentation.
- 200.518 Major program determination.
- 200.519 Criteria for Federal program risk.
- 200.520 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.

MANAGEMENT DECISIONS

- 200.521 Management decision.

APPENDIX I TO PART 200—FULL TEXT OF NOTICE OF FUNDING OPPORTUNITY

APPENDIX II TO PART 200—CONTRACT PROVISIONS FOR NON-FEDERAL ENTITY CONTRACTS UNDER FEDERAL AWARDS

APPENDIX III TO PART 200—INDIRECT (F&A) COSTS IDENTIFICATION AND ASSIGNMENT, AND RATE DETERMINATION FOR INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER EDUCATION (IHES)

APPENDIX IV TO PART 200—INDIRECT (F&A) COSTS IDENTIFICATION AND ASSIGNMENT, AND RATE DETERMINATION FOR NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS

APPENDIX V TO PART 200—STATE/LOCAL GOVERNMENTWIDE CENTRAL SERVICE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

APPENDIX VI TO PART 200—PUBLIC ASSISTANCE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

APPENDIX VII TO PART 220—STATES AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND INDIAN TRIBE INDIRECT COST PROPOSALS

APPENDIX VIII TO PART 200—NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS EXEMPTED FROM SUBPART E OF PART 200

APPENDIX IX TO PART 200—HOSPITAL COST PRINCIPLES

APPENDIX X TO PART 200—DATA COLLECTION FORM (FORM SF-SAC)

APPENDIX XI TO PART 200—COMPLIANCE SUPPLEMENT

APPENDIX XII TO PART 200—AWARD TERM AND CONDITION FOR RECIPIENT INTEGRITY AND PERFORMANCE MATTERS

AUTHORITY: 31 U.S.C. 503

SOURCE: 78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, unless otherwise noted.

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions

ACRONYMS

§ 200.0 Acronyms.

ACRONYM	TERM
---------	------

CAS	Cost Accounting Standards
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CMIA	Cash Management Improvement Act
COG	Councils Of Governments
COSO	Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission

EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
ERISA	Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1301–1461)
EUI	Energy Usage Index
F&A	Facilities and Administration
FAC	Federal Audit Clearinghouse
FAIN	Federal Award Identification Number
FAPIIS	Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System
FAR	Federal Acquisition Regulation
FFATA	Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act of 2006 or Transparency Act—Public Law 109–282, as amended by section 6202(a) of Public Law 110–252 (31 U.S.C. 6101)
FICA	Federal Insurance Contributions Act
FOIA	Freedom of Information Act
FR	Federal Register
FTE	Full-time equivalent
GAAP	Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
GAGAS	Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards
GAO	Government Accountability Office
GOCO	Government owned, contractor operated
GSA	General Services Administration
IBS	Institutional Base Salary
IHE	Institutions of Higher Education
IRC	Internal Revenue Code
ISDEAA	Indian Self-Determination and Education and Assistance Act
MTC	Modified Total Cost
MTDC	Modified Total Direct Cost
NFE	Non-Federal Entity

OMB Guidance

§ 200.1

OMB Office of Management and Budget
PII Personally Identifiable Information
PMS Payment Management System
PRHP Post-retirement Health Plans
PTE Pass-through Entity
REUI Relative Energy Usage Index
SAM System for Award Management
SFA Student Financial Aid
SNAP Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program
SPOC Single Point of Contact
TANF Temporary Assistance for Needy Families
TFM Treasury Financial Manual
U.S.C. United States Code
VAT Value Added Tax

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 43308, July 22, 2015; 85 FR 49529, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.1 Definitions.

These are the definitions for terms used in this part. Different definitions may be found in Federal statutes or regulations that apply more specifically to particular programs or activities. These definitions could be supplemented by additional instructional information provided in governmentwide standard information collections. For purposes of this part, the following definitions apply:

Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to ready the asset for its intended use. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Acquisition costs for software includes those development costs capitalized in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the non-Federal entity's regular accounting practices.

Advance payment means a payment that a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity makes by any appropriate payment mechanism, including a predetermined payment schedule,

before the non-Federal entity disburses the funds for program purposes.

Allocation means the process of assigning a cost, or a group of costs, to one or more cost objective(s), in reasonable proportion to the benefit provided or other equitable relationship. The process may entail assigning a cost(s) directly to a final cost objective or through one or more intermediate cost objectives.

Assistance listings refers to the publicly available listing of Federal assistance programs managed and administered by the General Services Administration, formerly known as the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA).

Assistance listing number means a unique number assigned to identify a Federal Assistance Listings, formerly known as the CFDA Number.

Assistance listing program title means the title that corresponds to the Federal Assistance Listings Number, formerly known as the CFDA program title.

Audit finding means deficiencies which the auditor is required by § 200.516(a) to report in the schedule of findings and questioned costs.

Auditee means any non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards which must be audited under subpart F of this part.

Auditor means an auditor who is a public accountant or a Federal, State, local government, or Indian tribe audit organization, which meets the general standards specified for external auditors in generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS). The term auditor does not include internal auditors of nonprofit organizations.

Budget means the financial plan for the Federal award that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity approves during the Federal award process or in subsequent amendments to the Federal award. It may include the Federal and non-Federal share or only the Federal share, as determined by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

Budget period means the time interval from the start date of a funded portion of an award to the end date of that funded portion during which recipients are authorized to expend the funds

§ 200.1

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

awarded, including any funds carried forward or other revisions pursuant to § 200.308.

Capital assets means:

(1) Tangible or intangible assets used in operations having a useful life of more than one year which are capitalized in accordance with GAAP. Capital assets include:

(i) Land, buildings (facilities), equipment, and intellectual property (including software) whether acquired by purchase, construction, manufacture, exchange, or through a lease accounted for as financed purchase under Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB) standards or a finance lease under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) standards; and

(ii) Additions, improvements, modifications, replacements, rearrangements, reinstallations, renovations or alterations to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life (not ordinary repairs and maintenance).

(2) For purpose of this part, capital assets do not include intangible right-to-use assets (per GASB) and right-to-use operating lease assets (per FASB). For example, assets capitalized that recognize a lessee's right to control the use of property and/or equipment for a period of time under a lease contract. See also § 200.465.

Capital expenditures means expenditures to acquire capital assets or expenditures to make additions, improvements, modifications, replacements, rearrangements, reinstallations, renovations, or alterations to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life.

Central service cost allocation plan means the documentation identifying, accumulating, and allocating or developing billing rates based on the allowable costs of services provided by a State or local government or Indian tribe on a centralized basis to its departments and agencies. The costs of these services may be allocated or billed to users.

Claim means, depending on the context, either:

(1) A written demand or written assertion by one of the parties to a Federal award seeking as a matter of right:

(i) The payment of money in a sum certain;

(ii) The adjustment or interpretation of the terms and conditions of the Federal award; or

(iii) Other relief arising under or relating to a Federal award.

(2) A request for payment that is not in dispute when submitted.

Class of Federal awards means a group of Federal awards either awarded under a specific program or group of programs or to a specific type of non-Federal entity or group of non-Federal entities to which specific provisions or exceptions may apply.

Closeout means the process by which the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the Federal award have been completed and takes actions as described in § 200.344.

Cluster of programs means a grouping of closely related programs that share common compliance requirements. The types of clusters of programs are research and development (R&D), student financial aid (SFA), and other clusters. "Other clusters" are as defined by OMB in the compliance supplement or as designated by a State for Federal awards the State provides to its subrecipients that meet the definition of a cluster of programs. When designating an "other cluster," a State must identify the Federal awards included in the cluster and advise the subrecipients of compliance requirements applicable to the cluster, consistent with § 200.332(a). A cluster of programs must be considered as one program for determining major programs, as described in § 200.518, and, with the exception of R&D as described in § 200.501(c), whether a program-specific audit may be elected.

Cognizant agency for audit means the Federal agency designated to carry out the responsibilities described in § 200.513(a). The cognizant agency for audit is not necessarily the same as the cognizant agency for indirect costs. A list of cognizant agencies for audit can be found on the Federal Audit Clearinghouse (FAC) website.

Cognizant agency for indirect costs means the Federal agency responsible

OMB Guidance

§ 200.1

for reviewing, negotiating, and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals developed under this part on behalf of all Federal agencies. The cognizant agency for indirect cost is not necessarily the same as the cognizant agency for audit. For assignments of cognizant agencies see the following:

(1) For Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs): Appendix III to this part, paragraph C.11.

(2) For nonprofit organizations: Appendix IV to this part, paragraph C.2.a.

(3) For State and local governments: Appendix V to this part, paragraph F.1.

(4) For Indian tribes: Appendix VII to this part, paragraph D.1.

Compliance supplement means an annually updated authoritative source for auditors that serves to identify existing important compliance requirements that the Federal Government expects to be considered as part of an audit. Auditors use it to understand the Federal program's objectives, procedures, and compliance requirements, as well as audit objectives and suggested audit procedures for determining compliance with the relevant Federal program.

Computing devices means machines used to acquire, store, analyze, process, and publish data and other information electronically, including accessories (or "peripherals") for printing, transmitting and receiving, or storing electronic information. See also the definitions of *supplies* and *information technology systems* in this section.

Contract means, for the purpose of Federal financial assistance, a legal instrument by which a recipient or subrecipient purchases property or services needed to carry out the project or program under a Federal award. For additional information on subrecipient and contractor determinations, see § 200.331. See also the definition of *subaward* in this section.

Contractor means an entity that receives a contract as defined in this section.

Cooperative agreement means a legal instrument of financial assistance between a Federal awarding agency and a recipient or a pass-through entity and a subrecipient that, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6302-6305:

(1) Is used to enter into a relationship the principal purpose of which is to transfer anything of value to carry out a public purpose authorized by a law of the United States (see 31 U.S.C. 6101(3)); and not to acquire property or services for the Federal Government or pass-through entity's direct benefit or use;

(2) Is distinguished from a grant in that it provides for substantial involvement of the Federal awarding agency in carrying out the activity contemplated by the Federal award.

(3) The term does not include:

(i) A cooperative research and development agreement as defined in 15 U.S.C. 3710a; or

(ii) An agreement that provides only:

(A) Direct United States Government cash assistance to an individual;

(B) A subsidy;

(C) A loan;

(D) A loan guarantee; or

(E) Insurance.

Cooperative audit resolution means the use of audit follow-up techniques which promote prompt corrective action by improving communication, fostering collaboration, promoting trust, and developing an understanding between the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. This approach is based upon:

(1) A strong commitment by Federal agency and non-Federal entity leadership to program integrity;

(2) Federal agencies strengthening partnerships and working cooperatively with non-Federal entities and their auditors; and non-Federal entities and their auditors working cooperatively with Federal agencies;

(3) A focus on current conditions and corrective action going forward;

(4) Federal agencies offering appropriate relief for past noncompliance when audits show prompt corrective action has occurred; and

(5) Federal agency leadership sending a clear message that continued failure to correct conditions identified by audits which are likely to cause improper payments, fraud, waste, or abuse is unacceptable and will result in sanctions.

Corrective action means action taken by the auditee that:

(1) Corrects identified deficiencies;

(2) Produces recommended improvements; or

§ 200.1

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(3) Demonstrates that audit findings are either invalid or do not warrant auditee action.

Cost allocation plan means central service cost allocation plan or public assistance cost allocation plan.

Cost objective means a program, function, activity, award, organizational subdivision, contract, or work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, products, jobs, capital projects, etc. A cost objective may be a major function of the non-Federal entity, a particular service or project, a Federal award, or an indirect (Facilities & Administrative (F&A)) cost activity, as described in subpart E of this part. See also the definitions of *final cost objective* and *intermediate cost objective* in this section.

Cost sharing or matching means the portion of project costs not paid by Federal funds or contributions (unless otherwise authorized by Federal statute). See also § 200.306.

Cross-cutting audit finding means an audit finding where the same underlying condition or issue affects all Federal awards (including Federal awards of more than one Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity).

Disallowed costs means those charges to a Federal award that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines to be unallowable, in accordance with the applicable Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

Discretionary award means an award in which the Federal awarding agency, in keeping with specific statutory authority that enables the agency to exercise judgment (“discretion”), selects the recipient and/or the amount of Federal funding awarded through a competitive process or based on merit of proposals. A discretionary award may be selected on a non-competitive basis, as appropriate.

Equipment means tangible personal property (including information technology systems) having a useful life of more than one year and a per-unit acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes, or \$5,000. See also the definitions of *capital as-*

sets, computing devices, general purpose equipment, information technology systems, special purpose equipment, and supplies in this section.

Expenditures means charges made by a non-Federal entity to a project or program for which a Federal award was received.

(1) The charges may be reported on a cash or accrual basis, as long as the methodology is disclosed and is consistently applied.

(2) For reports prepared on a cash basis, expenditures are the sum of:

(i) Cash disbursements for direct charges for property and services;

(ii) The amount of indirect expense charged;

(iii) The value of third-party in-kind contributions applied; and

(iv) The amount of cash advance payments and payments made to sub-recipients.

(3) For reports prepared on an accrual basis, expenditures are the sum of:

(i) Cash disbursements for direct charges for property and services;

(ii) The amount of indirect expense incurred;

(iii) The value of third-party in-kind contributions applied; and

(iv) The net increase or decrease in the amounts owed by the non-Federal entity for:

(A) Goods and other property received;

(B) Services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients, and other payees; and

(C) Programs for which no current services or performance are required such as annuities, insurance claims, or other benefit payments.

Federal agency means an “agency” as defined at 5 U.S.C. 551(1) and further clarified by 5 U.S.C. 552(f).

Federal Audit Clearinghouse (FAC) means the clearinghouse designated by OMB as the repository of record where non-Federal entities are required to transmit the information required by subpart F of this part.

Federal award has the meaning, depending on the context, in either paragraph (1) or (2) of this definition:

(1)(i) The Federal financial assistance that a recipient receives directly from

OMB Guidance

§ 200.1

a Federal awarding agency or indirectly from a pass-through entity, as described in § 200.101; or

(ii) The cost-reimbursement contract under the Federal Acquisition Regulations that a non-Federal entity receives directly from a Federal awarding agency or indirectly from a pass-through entity, as described in § 200.101.

(2) The instrument setting forth the terms and conditions. The instrument is the grant agreement, cooperative agreement, other agreement for assistance covered in paragraph (2) of the definition of *Federal financial assistance* in this section, or the cost-reimbursement contract awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulations.

(3) Federal award does not include other contracts that a Federal agency uses to buy goods or services from a contractor or a contract to operate Federal Government owned, contractor operated facilities (GOCOs).

(4) See also definitions of Federal financial assistance, grant agreement, and cooperative agreement.

Federal award date means the date when the Federal award is signed by the authorized official of the Federal awarding agency.

Federal financial assistance means

(1) Assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of:

- (i) Grants;
- (ii) Cooperative agreements;
- (iii) Non-cash contributions or donations of property (including donated surplus property);
- (iv) Direct appropriations;
- (v) Food commodities; and
- (vi) Other financial assistance (except assistance listed in paragraph (2) of this definition).

(2) For § 200.203 and subpart F of this part, *Federal financial assistance* also includes assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of:

- (i) Loans;
- (ii) Loan Guarantees;
- (iii) Interest subsidies; and
- (iv) Insurance.

(3) For § 200.216, Federal financial assistance includes assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of:

- (i) Grants;

(ii) Cooperative agreements;

(iii) Loans; and

(iv) Loan Guarantees.

(4) Federal financial assistance does not include amounts received as reimbursement for services rendered to individuals as described in § 200.502(h) and (i).

Federal interest means, for purposes of § 200.330 or when used in connection with the acquisition or improvement of real property, equipment, or supplies under a Federal award, the dollar amount that is the product of the:

(1) The percentage of Federal participation in the total cost of the real property, equipment, or supplies; and

(2) Current fair market value of the property, improvements, or both, to the extent the costs of acquiring or improving the property were included as project costs.

Federal program means:

(1) All Federal awards which are assigned a single Assistance Listings Number.

(2) When no Assistance Listings Number is assigned, all Federal awards from the same agency made for the same purpose must be combined and considered one program.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2) of this definition, a cluster of programs. The types of clusters of programs are:

- (i) Research and development (R&D);
- (ii) Student financial aid (SFA); and
- (iii) “Other clusters,” as described in the definition of *cluster of programs* in this section.

Federal share means the portion of the Federal award costs that are paid using Federal funds.

Final cost objective means a cost objective which has allocated to it both direct and indirect costs and, in the non-Federal entity’s accumulation system, is one of the final accumulation points, such as a particular award, internal project, or other direct activity of a non-Federal entity. See also the definitions of *cost objective* and *intermediate cost objective* in this section.

Financial obligations, when referencing a recipient’s or subrecipient’s use of funds under a Federal award, means orders placed for property and services, contracts and subawards

made, and similar transactions that require payment.

Fixed amount awards means a type of grant or cooperative agreement under which the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity provides a specific level of support without regard to actual costs incurred under the Federal award. This type of Federal award reduces some of the administrative burden and record-keeping requirements for both the non-Federal entity and Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity. Accountability is based primarily on performance and results. See §§ 200.102(c), 200.201(b), and 200.333.

Foreign organization means an entity that is:

(1) A public or private organization located in a country other than the United States and its territories that is subject to the laws of the country in which it is located, irrespective of the citizenship of project staff or place of performance;

(2) A private nongovernmental organization located in a country other than the United States that solicits and receives cash contributions from the general public;

(3) A charitable organization located in a country other than the United States that is nonprofit and tax exempt under the laws of its country of domicile and operation, and is not a university, college, accredited degree-granting institution of education, private foundation, hospital, organization engaged exclusively in research or scientific activities, church, synagogue, mosque or other similar entities organized primarily for religious purposes; or

(4) An organization located in a country other than the United States not recognized as a foreign public entity.

Foreign public entity means:

(1) A foreign government or foreign governmental entity;

(2) A public international organization, which is an organization entitled to enjoy privileges, exemptions, and immunities as an international organization under the International Organizations Immunities Act (22 U.S.C. 288–288f);

(3) An entity owned (in whole or in part) or controlled by a foreign government; or

(4) Any other entity consisting wholly or partially of one or more foreign governments or foreign governmental entities.

General purpose equipment means equipment which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles. See also the definitions of *equipment* and *special purpose equipment* in this section.

Generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) has the meaning specified in accounting standards issued by the GASB and the FASB.

Generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS), also known as the Yellow Book, means generally accepted government auditing standards issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, which are applicable to financial audits.

Grant agreement means a legal instrument of financial assistance between a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and a non-Federal entity that, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6302, 6304:

(1) Is used to enter into a relationship the principal purpose of which is to transfer anything of value to carry out a public purpose authorized by a law of the United States (see 31 U.S.C. 6101(3)); and not to acquire property or services for the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity's direct benefit or use;

(2) Is distinguished from a cooperative agreement in that it does not provide for substantial involvement of the Federal awarding agency in carrying out the activity contemplated by the Federal award.

(3) Does not include an agreement that provides only:

(i) Direct United States Government cash assistance to an individual;

(ii) A subsidy;

(iii) A loan;

(vi) A loan guarantee; or

(v) Insurance.

Highest level owner means the entity that owns or controls an immediate owner of the offeror, or that owns or

OMB Guidance

§ 200.1

controls one or more entities that control an immediate owner of the offeror. No entity owns or exercises control of the highest-level owner as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) (48 CFR 52.204-17).

Hospital means a facility licensed as a hospital under the law of any state or a facility operated as a hospital by the United States, a state, or a subdivision of a state.

Improper payment means:

(1) Any payment that should not have been made or that was made in an incorrect amount under statutory, contractual, administrative, or other *legally applicable* requirements.

(i) Incorrect amounts are overpayments or underpayments that are made to eligible recipients (including inappropriate denials of payment or service, any payment that does not account for credit for applicable discounts, payments that are for an incorrect amount, and duplicate payments). An improper payment also includes any payment that was made to an ineligible recipient or for an ineligible good or service, or payments for goods or services not received (except for such payments authorized by law).

Note 1 to paragraph (1)(i) of this definition. Applicable discounts are only those discounts where it is both advantageous and within the agency's control to claim them.

(ii) When an agency's review is unable to discern whether a payment was proper as a result of insufficient or lack of documentation, this payment should also be considered an improper payment. When establishing documentation requirements for payments, agencies should ensure that all documentation requirements are necessary and should refrain from imposing additional burdensome documentation requirements.

(iii) Interest or other fees that may result from an underpayment by an agency are not considered an improper payment if the interest was paid correctly. These payments are generally separate transactions and may be necessary under certain statutory, contractual, administrative, or other *legally applicable* requirements.

(iv) A "questioned cost" (as defined in this section) should not be consid-

ered an improper payment until the transaction has been completely reviewed and is confirmed to be improper.

(v) The term "payment" in this definition means any disbursement or transfer of Federal funds (including a commitment for future payment, such as cash, securities, loans, loan guarantees, and insurance subsidies) to any non-Federal person, non-Federal entity, or Federal employee, that is made by a Federal agency, a Federal contractor, a Federal grantee, or a governmental or other organization administering a Federal program or activity.

(vi) The term "payment" includes disbursements made pursuant to prime contracts awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulation and Federal awards subject to this part that are expended by recipients.

(2) See definition of improper payment in OMB Circular A-123 appendix C, part I A (1) "What is an improper payment?" Questioned costs, including those identified in audits, are not an improper payment until reviewed and confirmed to be improper as defined in OMB Circular A-123 appendix C.

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaska Native village or regional or village corporation as defined in or established pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. Chapter 33), which is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians (25 U.S.C. 450b(e)). See annually published Bureau of Indian Affairs list of Indian Entities Recognized and Eligible to Receive Services.

Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs) is defined at 20 U.S.C. 1001.

Indirect (facilities & administrative (F&A)) costs means those costs incurred for a common or joint purpose benefiting more than one cost objective, and not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefitted, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. To facilitate equitable distribution of indirect expenses to the cost objectives served, it may be necessary to establish a number of pools of indirect (F&A) costs. Indirect (F&A)

cost pools must be distributed to benefit cost objectives on bases that will produce an equitable result in consideration of relative benefits derived.

Indirect cost rate proposal means the documentation prepared by a non-Federal entity to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate as described in appendices III through VII and appendix IX to this part.

Information technology systems means computing devices, ancillary equipment, software, firmware, and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources. See also the definitions of *computing devices* and *equipment* in this section.

Intangible property means property having no physical existence, such as trademarks, copyrights, patents and patent applications and property, such as loans, notes and other debt instruments, lease agreements, stock and other instruments of property ownership (whether the property is tangible or intangible).

Intermediate cost objective means a cost objective that is used to accumulate indirect costs or service center costs that are subsequently allocated to one or more indirect cost pools or final cost objectives. See also the definitions of *cost objective* and *final cost objective* in this section.

Internal controls for non-Federal entities means:

(1) Processes designed and implemented by non-Federal entities to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

- (i) Effectiveness and efficiency of operations;
- (ii) Reliability of reporting for internal and external use; and
- (iii) Compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

(2) Federal awarding agencies are required to follow internal control compliance requirements in OMB Circular No. A-123, Management's Responsibility for Enterprise Risk Management and Internal Control.

Loan means a Federal loan or loan guarantee received or administered by a non-Federal entity, except as used in the definition of *program income* in this section.

(1) The term "direct loan" means a disbursement of funds by the Federal Government to a non-Federal borrower under a contract that requires the repayment of such funds with or without interest. The term includes the purchase of, or participation in, a loan made by another lender and financing arrangements that defer payment for more than 90 days, including the sale of a Federal Government asset on credit terms. The term does not include the acquisition of a federally guaranteed loan in satisfaction of default claims or the price support loans of the Commodity Credit Corporation.

(2) The term "direct loan obligation" means a binding agreement by a Federal awarding agency to make a direct loan when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower.

(3) The term "loan guarantee" means any Federal Government guarantee, insurance, or other pledge with respect to the payment of all or a part of the principal or interest on any debt obligation of a non-Federal borrower to a non-Federal lender, but does not include the insurance of deposits, shares, or other withdrawable accounts in financial institutions.

(4) The term "loan guarantee commitment" means a binding agreement by a Federal awarding agency to make a loan guarantee when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower, the lender, or any other party to the guarantee agreement.

Local government means any unit of government within a state, including a:

- (1) County;
- (2) Borough;
- (3) Municipality;
- (4) City;
- (5) Town;
- (6) Township;
- (7) Parish;
- (8) Local public authority, including any public housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937;
- (9) Special district;
- (10) School district;
- (11) Intrastate district;
- (12) Council of governments, whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under State law; and
- (13) Any other agency or instrumentality of a multi-, regional, or intra-State or local government.

OMB Guidance

§ 200.1

Major program means a Federal program determined by the auditor to be a major program in accordance with § 200.518 or a program identified as a major program by a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity in accordance with § 200.503(e).

Management decision means the Federal awarding agency's or pass-through entity's written determination, provided to the auditee, of the adequacy of the auditee's proposed corrective actions to address the findings, based on its evaluation of the audit findings and proposed corrective actions.

Micro-purchase means a purchase of supplies or services, the aggregate amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold. Micro-purchases comprise a subset of a non-Federal entity's small purchases as defined in § 200.320.

Micro-purchase threshold means the dollar amount at or below which a non-Federal entity may purchase property or services using micro-purchase procedures (see § 200.320). Generally, the micro-purchase threshold for procurement activities administered under Federal awards is not to exceed the amount set by the FAR at 48 CFR part 2, subpart 2.1, unless a higher threshold is requested by the non-Federal entity and approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

Modified Total Direct Cost (MTDC) means all direct salaries and wages, applicable fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and up to the first \$25,000 of each subaward (regardless of the period of performance of the subawards under the award). MTDC excludes equipment, capital expenditures, charges for patient care, rental costs, tuition remission, scholarships and fellowships, participant support costs and the portion of each subaward in excess of \$25,000. Other items may only be excluded when necessary to avoid a serious inequity in the distribution of indirect costs, and with the approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

Non-discretionary award means an award made by the Federal awarding agency to specific recipients in accordance with statutory, eligibility and compliance requirements, such that in keeping with specific statutory author-

ity the agency has no ability to exercise judgement ("discretion"). A non-discretionary award amount could be determined specifically or by formula.

Non-Federal entity (NFE) means a State, local government, Indian tribe, Institution of Higher Education (IHE), or nonprofit organization that carries out a Federal award as a recipient or subrecipient.

Nonprofit organization means any corporation, trust, association, cooperative, or other organization, not including IHEs, that:

(1) Is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest;

(2) Is not organized primarily for profit; and

(3) Uses net proceeds to maintain, improve, or expand the operations of the organization.

Notice of funding opportunity means a formal announcement of the availability of Federal funding through a financial assistance program from a Federal awarding agency. The notice of funding opportunity provides information on the award, who is eligible to apply, the evaluation criteria for selection of an awardee, required components of an application, and how to submit the application. The notice of funding opportunity is any paper or electronic issuance that an agency uses to announce a funding opportunity, whether it is called a "program announcement," "notice of funding availability," "broad agency announcement," "research announcement," "solicitation," or some other term.

Office of Management and Budget (OMB) means the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

Oversight agency for audit means the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of funding directly (direct funding) (as listed on the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards, see § 200.510(b)) to a non-Federal entity unless OMB designates a specific cognizant agency for audit. When the direct funding represents less than 25 percent of the total Federal expenditures (as direct and sub-awards) by the non-Federal entity, then the Federal agency with the predominant

amount of total funding is the designated cognizant agency for audit. When there is no direct funding, the Federal awarding agency which is the predominant source of pass-through funding must assume the oversight responsibilities. The duties of the oversight agency for audit and the process for any reassignments are described in § 200.513(b).

Participant support costs means direct costs for items such as stipends or subsistence allowances, travel allowances, and registration fees paid to or on behalf of participants or trainees (but not employees) in connection with conferences, or training projects.

Pass-through entity (PTE) means a non-Federal entity that provides a subaward to a subrecipient to carry out part of a Federal program.

Performance goal means a target level of performance expressed as a tangible, measurable objective, against which actual achievement can be compared, including a goal expressed as a quantitative standard, value, or rate. In some instances (e.g., discretionary research awards), this may be limited to the requirement to submit technical performance reports (to be evaluated in accordance with agency policy).

Period of performance means the total estimated time interval between the start of an initial Federal award and the planned end date, which may include one or more funded portions, or budget periods. Identification of the period of performance in the Federal award per § 200.211(b)(5) does not commit the awarding agency to fund the award beyond the currently approved budget period.

Personal property means property other than real property. It may be tangible, having physical existence, or intangible.

Personally Identifiable Information (PII) means information that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity, either alone or when combined with other personal or identifying information that is linked or linkable to a specific individual. Some information that is considered to be PII is available in public sources such as telephone books, public websites, and university listings. This type of information is considered to be Public

PII and includes, for example, first and last name, address, work telephone number, email address, home telephone number, and general educational credentials. The definition of PII is not anchored to any single category of information or technology. Rather, it requires a case-by-case assessment of the specific risk that an individual can be identified. Non-PII can become PII whenever additional information is made publicly available, in any medium and from any source, that, when combined with other available information, could be used to identify an individual.

Program income means gross income earned by the non-Federal entity that is directly generated by a supported activity or earned as a result of the Federal award during the period of performance except as provided in § 200.307(f). (See the definition of *period of performance* in this section.) Program income includes but is not limited to income from fees for services performed, the use or rental of real or personal property acquired under Federal awards, the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a Federal award, license fees and royalties on patents and copyrights, and principal and interest on loans made with Federal award funds. Interest earned on advances of Federal funds is not program income. Except as otherwise provided in Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award, program income does not include rebates, credits, discounts, and interest earned on any of them. See also § 200.407. See also 35 U.S.C. 200–212 “Disposition of Rights in Educational Awards” applies to inventions made under Federal awards.

Project cost means total allowable costs incurred under a Federal award and all required cost sharing and voluntary committed cost sharing, including third-party contributions.

Property means real property or personal property. See also the definitions of *real property* and *personal property* in this section.

Protected Personally Identifiable Information (Protected PII) means an individual's first name or first initial and last name in combination with any one or

more of types of information, including, but not limited to, social security number, passport number, credit card numbers, clearances, bank numbers, biometrics, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, criminal, medical and financial records, educational transcripts. This does not include PII that is required by law to be disclosed. See also the definition of *Personally Identifiable Information (PII)* in this section.

Questioned cost means a cost that is questioned by the auditor because of an audit finding:

(1) Which resulted from a violation or possible violation of a statute, regulation, or the terms and conditions of a Federal award, including for funds used to match Federal funds;

(2) Where the costs, at the time of the audit, are not supported by adequate documentation; or

(3) Where the costs incurred appear unreasonable and do not reflect the actions a prudent person would take in the circumstances.

(4) Questioned costs are not an improper payment until reviewed and confirmed to be improper as defined in OMB Circular A-123 appendix C. (See also the definition of *Improper payment* in this section).

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, but excludes moveable machinery and equipment.

Recipient means an entity, usually but not limited to non-Federal entities that receives a Federal award directly from a Federal awarding agency. The term recipient does not include sub-recipients or individuals that are beneficiaries of the award.

Renewal award means an award made subsequent to an expiring Federal award for which the start date is contiguous with, or closely follows, the end of the expiring Federal award. A renewal award's start date will begin a distinct period of performance.

Research and Development (R&D) means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are performed by non-Federal entities. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize

the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function. "Research" is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. "Development" is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes.

Simplified acquisition threshold means the dollar amount below which a non-Federal entity may purchase property or services using small purchase methods (see §200.320). Non-Federal entities adopt small purchase procedures in order to expedite the purchase of items at or below the simplified acquisition threshold. The simplified acquisition threshold for procurement activities administered under Federal awards is set by the FAR at 48 CFR part 2, subpart 2.1. The non-Federal entity is responsible for determining an appropriate simplified acquisition threshold based on internal controls, an evaluation of risk, and its documented procurement procedures. However, in no circumstances can this threshold exceed the dollar value established in the FAR (48 CFR part 2, subpart 2.1) for the simplified acquisition threshold. Recipients should determine if local government laws on purchasing apply.

Special purpose equipment means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers. See also the definitions of *equipment* and *general purpose equipment* in this section.

State means any state of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any agency or instrumentality thereof exclusive of local governments.

Student Financial Aid (SFA) means Federal awards under those programs of general student assistance, such as those authorized by Title IV of the

§ 200.2

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

Higher Education Act of 1965, as amended, (20 U.S.C. 1070–1099d), which are administered by the U.S. Department of Education, and similar programs provided by other Federal agencies. It does not include Federal awards under programs that provide fellowships or similar Federal awards to students on a competitive basis, or for specified studies or research.

Subaward means an award provided by a pass-through entity to a subrecipient for the subrecipient to carry out part of a Federal award received by the pass-through entity. It does not include payments to a contractor or payments to an individual that is a beneficiary of a Federal program. A subaward may be provided through any form of legal agreement, including an agreement that the pass-through entity considers a contract.

Subrecipient means an entity, usually but not limited to non-Federal entities, that receives a subaward from a pass-through entity to carry out part of a Federal award; but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such award. A subrecipient may also be a recipient of other Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency.

Subsidiary means an entity in which more than 50 percent of the entity is owned or controlled directly by a parent corporation or through another subsidiary of a parent corporation.

Supplies means all tangible personal property other than those described in the definition of *equipment* in this section. A computing device is a supply if the acquisition cost is less than the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes or \$5,000, regardless of the length of its useful life. See also the definitions of *computing devices* and *equipment* in this section.

Telecommunications cost means the cost of using communication and telephony technologies such as mobile phones, land lines, and internet.

Termination means the ending of a Federal award, in whole or in part at any time prior to the planned end of period of performance. A lack of available funds is not a termination.

Third-party in-kind contributions means the value of non-cash contributions (*i.e.*, property or services) that—

(1) Benefit a federally-assisted project or program; and

(2) Are contributed by non-Federal third parties, without charge, to a non-Federal entity under a Federal award.

Unliquidated financial obligations means, for financial reports prepared on a cash basis, financial obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity that have not been paid (liquidated). For reports prepared on an accrual expenditure basis, these are financial obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity for which an expenditure has not been recorded.

Unobligated balance means the amount of funds under a Federal award that the non-Federal entity has not obligated. The amount is computed by subtracting the cumulative amount of the non-Federal entity's unliquidated financial obligations and expenditures of funds under the Federal award from the cumulative amount of the funds that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity authorized the non-Federal entity to obligate.

Voluntary committed cost sharing means cost sharing specifically pledged on a voluntary basis in the proposal's budget on the part of the non-Federal entity and that becomes a binding requirement of Federal award. See also § 200.306.

[85 FR 49529, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.2 Acquisition cost.

Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to ready the asset for its intended use. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Acquisition costs for software includes those development costs capitalized in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the non-

OMB Guidance

§ 200.13

Federal entity's regular accounting practices.

§ 200.3 Advance payment.

Advance payment means a payment that a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity makes by any appropriate payment mechanism, including a predetermined payment schedule, before the non-Federal entity disburses the funds for program purposes.

§ 200.4 Allocation.

Allocation means the process of assigning a cost, or a group of costs, to one or more cost objective(s), in reasonable proportion to the benefit provided or other equitable relationship. The process may entail assigning a cost(s) directly to a final cost objective or through one or more intermediate cost objectives.

§ 200.5 Audit finding.

Audit finding means deficiencies which the auditor is required by § 200.516 Audit findings, paragraph (a) to report in the schedule of findings and questioned costs.

§ 200.6 Auditee.

Auditee means any non-Federal entity that expends Federal awards which must be audited under Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this part.

§ 200.7 Auditor.

Auditor means an auditor who is a public accountant or a Federal, state, local government, or Indian tribe audit organization, which meets the general standards specified for external auditors in generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS). The term auditor does not include internal auditors of nonprofit organizations.

[79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.8 Budget.

Budget means the financial plan for the project or program that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity approves during the Federal award process or in subsequent amendments to the Federal award. It may include the Federal and non-Federal share or only the Federal share, as de-

termined by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

§ 200.9 Central service cost allocation plan.

Central service cost allocation plan means the documentation identifying, accumulating, and allocating or developing billing rates based on the allowable costs of services provided by a state, local government, or Indian tribe on a centralized basis to its departments and agencies. The costs of these services may be allocated or billed to users.

§ 200.10 Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number.

CFDA number means the number assigned to a Federal program in the CFDA.

§ 200.11 CFDA program title.

CFDA program title means the title of the program under which the Federal award was funded in the CFDA.

§ 200.12 Capital assets.

Capital assets means tangible or intangible assets used in operations having a useful life of more than one year which are capitalized in accordance with GAAP. Capital assets include:

(a) Land, buildings (facilities), equipment, and intellectual property (including software) whether acquired by purchase, construction, manufacture, lease-purchase, exchange, or through capital leases; and

(b) Additions, improvements, modifications, replacements, rearrangements, reinstallations, renovations or alterations to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life (not ordinary repairs and maintenance).

§ 200.13 Capital expenditures.

Capital expenditures means expenditures to acquire capital assets or expenditures to make additions, improvements, modifications, replacements, rearrangements, reinstallations, renovations, or alterations to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life.

§ 200.14

§ 200.14 Claim.

Claim means, depending on the context, either:

(a) A written demand or written assertion by one of the parties to a Federal award seeking as a matter of right:

(1) The payment of money in a sum certain;

(2) The adjustment or interpretation of the terms and conditions of the Federal award; or

(3) Other relief arising under or relating to a Federal award.

(b) A request for payment that is not in dispute when submitted.

§ 200.15 Class of Federal awards.

Class of Federal awards means a group of Federal awards either awarded under a specific program or group of programs or to a specific type of non-Federal entity or group of non-Federal entities to which specific provisions or exceptions may apply.

§ 200.16 Closeout.

Closeout means the process by which the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the Federal award have been completed and takes actions as described in § 200.343 Closeout.

§ 200.17 Cluster of programs.

Cluster of programs means a grouping of closely related programs that share common compliance requirements. The types of clusters of programs are research and development (R&D), student financial aid (SFA), and other clusters. “Other clusters” are as defined by OMB in the compliance supplement or as designated by a state for Federal awards the state provides to its subrecipients that meet the definition of a cluster of programs. When designating an “other cluster,” a state must identify the Federal awards included in the cluster and advise the subrecipients of compliance requirements applicable to the cluster, consistent with § 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities, paragraph (a). A cluster of programs must be considered as one program for determining major programs, as described in § 200.518 Major program

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

determination, and, with the exception of R&D as described in § 200.501 Audit requirements, paragraph (c), whether a program-specific audit may be elected.

§ 200.18 Cognizant agency for audit.

Cognizant agency for audit means the Federal agency designated to carry out the responsibilities described in § 200.513 Responsibilities, paragraph (a). The cognizant agency for audit is not necessarily the same as the cognizant agency for indirect costs. A list of cognizant agencies for audit may be found at the FAC Web site.

§ 200.19 Cognizant agency for indirect costs.

Cognizant agency for indirect costs means the Federal agency responsible for reviewing, negotiating, and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals developed under this part on behalf of all Federal agencies. The cognizant agency for indirect cost is not necessarily the same as the cognizant agency for audit. For assignments of cognizant agencies see the following:

(a) For IHEs: Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs), paragraph C.11.

(b) For nonprofit organizations: Appendix IV to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Nonprofit Organizations, paragraph C.2.a.

(c) For state and local governments: Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Governmentwide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans, paragraph F.1.

(d) For Indian tribes: Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposal, paragraph D.1.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 54407, Sept. 10, 2015]

§ 200.20 Computing devices.

Computing devices means machines used to acquire, store, analyze, process, and publish data and other information electronically, including accessories (or “peripherals”) for printing, transmitting and receiving, or storing electronic information. See also §§ 200.94

OMB Guidance

§ 200.28

Supplies and 200.58 Information technology systems.

§ 200.21 Compliance supplement.

Compliance supplement means Appendix XI to Part 200—Compliance Supplement (previously known as the Circular A-133 Compliance Supplement).

§ 200.22 Contract.

Contract means a legal instrument by which a non-Federal entity purchases property or services needed to carry out the project or program under a Federal award. The term as used in this part does not include a legal instrument, even if the non-Federal entity considers it a contract, when the substance of the transaction meets the definition of a Federal award or subaward (see § 200.92 Subaward).

§ 200.23 Contractor.

Contractor means an entity that receives a contract as defined in § 200.22 Contract.

§ 200.24 Cooperative agreement.

Cooperative agreement means a legal instrument of financial assistance between a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and a non-Federal entity that, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6302-6305:

(a) Is used to enter into a relationship the principal purpose of which is to transfer anything of value from the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to the non-Federal entity to carry out a public purpose authorized by a law of the United States (see 31 U.S.C. 6101(3)); and not to acquire property or services for the Federal Government or pass-through entity's direct benefit or use;

(b) Is distinguished from a grant in that it provides for substantial involvement between the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity in carrying out the activity contemplated by the Federal award.

(c) The term does not include:

(1) A cooperative research and development agreement as defined in 15 U.S.C. 3710a; or

(2) An agreement that provides only:

(i) Direct United States Government cash assistance to an individual;

- (ii) A subsidy;
- (iii) A loan;
- (iv) A loan guarantee; or
- (v) Insurance.

§ 200.25 Cooperative audit resolution.

Cooperative audit resolution means the use of audit follow-up techniques which promote prompt corrective action by improving communication, fostering collaboration, promoting trust, and developing an understanding between the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. This approach is based upon:

(a) A strong commitment by Federal agency and non-Federal entity leadership to program integrity;

(b) Federal agencies strengthening partnerships and working cooperatively with non-Federal entities and their auditors; and non-Federal entities and their auditors working cooperatively with Federal agencies;

(c) A focus on current conditions and corrective action going forward;

(d) Federal agencies offering appropriate relief for past noncompliance when audits show prompt corrective action has occurred; and

(e) Federal agency leadership sending a clear message that continued failure to correct conditions identified by audits which are likely to cause improper payments, fraud, waste, or abuse is unacceptable and will result in sanctions.

§ 200.26 Corrective action.

Corrective action means action taken by the auditee that:

(a) Corrects identified deficiencies;

(b) Produces recommended improvements; or

(c) Demonstrates that audit findings are either invalid or do not warrant auditee action.

§ 200.27 Cost allocation plan.

Cost allocation plan means central service cost allocation plan or public assistance cost allocation plan.

§ 200.28 Cost objective.

Cost objective means a program, function, activity, award, organizational subdivision, contract, or work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, products, jobs, capital projects, etc. A

§ 200.29

cost objective may be a major function of the non-Federal entity, a particular service or project, a Federal award, or an indirect (Facilities & Administrative (F&A)) cost activity, as described in Subpart E—Cost Principles of this Part. See also §§ 200.44 Final cost objective and 200.60 Intermediate cost objective.

§ 200.29 Cost sharing or matching.

Cost sharing or matching means the portion of project costs not paid by Federal funds (unless otherwise authorized by Federal statute). See also § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.

§ 200.30 Cross-cutting audit finding.

Cross-cutting audit finding means an audit finding where the same underlying condition or issue affects Federal awards of more than one Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

§ 200.31 Disallowed costs.

Disallowed costs means those charges to a Federal award that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines to be unallowable, in accordance with the applicable Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

§ 200.32 [Reserved]

§ 200.33 Equipment.

Equipment means tangible personal property (including information technology systems) having a useful life of more than one year and a per-unit acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes, or \$5,000. See also §§ 200.12 Capital assets, 200.20 Computing devices, 200.48 General purpose equipment, 200.58 Information technology systems, 200.89 Special purpose equipment, and 200.94 Supplies.

§ 200.34 Expenditures.

Expenditures means charges made by a non-Federal entity to a project or program for which a Federal award was received.

(a) The charges may be reported on a cash or accrual basis, as long as the

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

methodology is disclosed and is consistently applied.

(b) For reports prepared on a cash basis, expenditures are the sum of:

(1) Cash disbursements for direct charges for property and services;

(2) The amount of indirect expense charged;

(3) The value of third-party in-kind contributions applied; and

(4) The amount of cash advance payments and payments made to subrecipients.

(c) For reports prepared on an accrual basis, expenditures are the sum of:

(1) Cash disbursements for direct charges for property and services;

(2) The amount of indirect expense incurred;

(3) The value of third-party in-kind contributions applied; and

(4) The net increase or decrease in the amounts owed by the non-Federal entity for:

(i) Goods and other property received;

(ii) Services performed by employees, contractors, subrecipients, and other payees; and

(iii) Programs for which no current services or performance are required such as annuities, insurance claims, or other benefit payments.

§ 200.35 Federal agency.

Federal agency means an “agency” as defined at 5 U.S.C. 551(1) and further clarified by 5 U.S.C. 552(f).

§ 200.36 Federal Audit Clearinghouse (FAC).

FAC means the clearinghouse designated by OMB as the repository of record where non-Federal entities are required to transmit the reporting packages required by Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this part. The mailing address of the FAC is Federal Audit Clearinghouse, Bureau of the Census, 1201 E. 10th Street, Jeffersonville, IN 47132 and the web address is: <http://hartervester.census.gov/sac/>. Any future updates to the location of the FAC may be found at the OMB Web site.

OMB Guidance

§ 200.42

§ 200.37 Federal awarding agency.

Federal awarding agency means the Federal agency that provides a Federal award directly to a non-Federal entity.

§ 200.38 Federal award.

Federal award has the meaning, depending on the context, in either paragraph (a) or (b) of this section:

(a)(1) The Federal financial assistance that a non-Federal entity receives directly from a Federal awarding agency or indirectly from a pass-through entity, as described in § 200.101 Applicability; or

(2) The cost-reimbursement contract under the Federal Acquisition Regulations that a non-Federal entity receives directly from a Federal awarding agency or indirectly from a pass-through entity, as described in § 200.101 Applicability.

(b) The instrument setting forth the terms and conditions. The instrument is the grant agreement, cooperative agreement, other agreement for assistance covered in paragraph (b) of § 200.40 Federal financial assistance, or the cost-reimbursement contract awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulations.

(c) Federal award does not include other contracts that a Federal agency uses to buy goods or services from a contractor or a contract to operate Federal Government owned, contractor operated facilities (GOCOs).

(d) See also definitions of Federal financial assistance, grant agreement, and cooperative agreement.

§ 200.39 Federal award date.

Federal award date means the date when the Federal award is signed by the authorized official of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.40 Federal financial assistance.

(a) *Federal financial assistance* means assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of:

- (1) Grants;
- (2) Cooperative agreements;
- (3) Non-cash contributions or donations of property (including donated surplus property);
- (4) Direct appropriations;
- (5) Food commodities; and

(6) Other financial assistance (except assistance listed in paragraph (b) of this section).

(b) For § 200.202 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs and Subpart F—Audit Requirements of this part, *Federal financial assistance* also includes assistance that non-Federal entities receive or administer in the form of:

- (1) Loans;
- (2) Loan Guarantees;
- (3) Interest subsidies; and
- (4) Insurance.

(c) *Federal financial assistance* does not include amounts received as reimbursement for services rendered to individuals as described in § 200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards *expended*, paragraph (h) and (i) of this part.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 80 FR 54407, Sept. 10, 2015]

§ 200.41 Federal interest.

Federal interest means, for purposes of § 200.329 Reporting on real property or when used in connection with the acquisition or improvement of real property, equipment, or supplies under a Federal award, the dollar amount that is the product of the:

- (a) Federal share of total project costs; and
- (b) Current fair market value of the property, improvements, or both, to the extent the costs of acquiring or improving the property were included as project costs.

§ 200.42 Federal program.

Federal program means:

(a) All Federal awards which are assigned a single number in the CFDA.

(b) When no CFDA number is assigned, all Federal awards to non-Federal entities from the same agency made for the same purpose must be combined and considered one program.

(c) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) and (b) of this definition, a cluster of programs. The types of clusters of programs are:

- (1) Research and development (R&D);
- (2) Student financial aid (SFA); and

§ 200.43

(3) “Other clusters,” as described in the definition of Cluster of Programs.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.43 Federal share.

Federal share means the portion of the total project costs that are paid by Federal funds.

§ 200.44 Final cost objective.

Final cost objective means a cost objective which has allocated to it both direct and indirect costs and, in the non-Federal entity’s accumulation system, is one of the final accumulation points, such as a particular award, internal project, or other direct activity of a non-Federal entity. See also §§ 200.28 Cost objective and 200.60 Intermediate cost objective.

§ 200.45 Fixed amount awards.

Fixed amount awards means a type of grant agreement under which the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity provides a specific level of support without regard to actual costs incurred under the Federal award. This type of Federal award reduces some of the administrative burden and record-keeping requirements for both the non-Federal entity and Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity. Accountability is based primarily on performance and results. See §§ 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts, paragraph (b) and 200.332 Fixed amount subawards.

§ 200.46 Foreign public entity.

Foreign public entity means:

(a) A foreign government or foreign governmental entity;

(b) A public international organization, which is an organization entitled to enjoy privileges, exemptions, and immunities as an international organization under the International Organizations Immunities Act (22 U.S.C. 288–288f);

(c) An entity owned (in whole or in part) or controlled by a foreign government; or

(d) Any other entity consisting wholly or partially of one or more foreign

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

governments or foreign governmental entities.

§ 200.47 Foreign organization.

Foreign organization means an entity that is:

(a) A public or private organization located in a country other than the United States and its territories that is subject to the laws of the country in which it is located, irrespective of the citizenship of project staff or place of performance;

(b) A private nongovernmental organization located in a country other than the United States that solicits and receives cash contributions from the general public;

(c) A charitable organization located in a country other than the United States that is nonprofit and tax exempt under the laws of its country of domicile and operation, and is not a university, college, accredited degree-granting institution of education, private foundation, hospital, organization engaged exclusively in research or scientific activities, church, synagogue, mosque or other similar entities organized primarily for religious purposes; or

(d) An organization located in a country other than the United States not recognized as a Foreign Public Entity.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.48 General purpose equipment.

General purpose equipment means equipment which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles. See also Equipment and Special Purpose Equipment.

§ 200.49 Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).

GAAP has the meaning specified in accounting standards issued by the Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB) and the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB).

OMB Guidance

§ 200.56

§ 200.50 Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards (GAGAS).

GAGAS, also known as the Yellow Book, means generally accepted government auditing standards issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, which are applicable to financial audits.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.51 Grant agreement.

Grant agreement means a legal instrument of financial assistance between a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and a non-Federal entity that, consistent with 31 U.S.C. 6302, 6304:

(a) Is used to enter into a relationship the principal purpose of which is to transfer anything of value from the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to the non-Federal entity to carry out a public purpose authorized by a law of the United States (see 31 U.S.C. 6101(3)); and not to acquire property or services for the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity's direct benefit or use;

(b) Is distinguished from a cooperative agreement in that it does not provide for substantial involvement between the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity in carrying out the activity contemplated by the Federal award.

(c) Does not include an agreement that provides only:

- (1) Direct United States Government cash assistance to an individual;
- (2) A subsidy;
- (3) A loan;
- (4) A loan guarantee; or
- (5) Insurance.

§ 200.52 Hospital.

Hospital means a facility licensed as a hospital under the law of any state or a facility operated as a hospital by the United States, a state, or a subdivision of a state.

§ 200.53 Improper payment.

(a) *Improper payment* means any payment that should not have been made or that was made in an incorrect amount (including overpayments and underpayments) under statutory, con-

tractual, administrative, or other legally applicable requirements; and

(b) *Improper payment* includes any payment to an ineligible party, any payment for an ineligible good or service, any duplicate payment, any payment for a good or service not received (except for such payments where authorized by law), any payment that does not account for credit for applicable discounts, and any payment where insufficient or lack of documentation prevents a reviewer from discerning whether a payment was proper.

§ 200.54 Indian tribe (or “federally recognized Indian tribe”).

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaska Native village or regional or village corporation as defined in or established pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. Chapter 33), which is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians (25 U.S.C. 450b(e)). See annually published Bureau of Indian Affairs list of Indian Entities Recognized and Eligible to Receive Services.

§ 200.55 Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs).

IHE is defined at 20 U.S.C. 1001.

§ 200.56 Indirect (facilities & administrative (F&A)) costs.

Indirect (F&A) costs means those costs incurred for a common or joint purpose benefitting more than one cost objective, and not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefitted, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. To facilitate equitable distribution of indirect expenses to the cost objectives served, it may be necessary to establish a number of pools of indirect (F&A) costs. Indirect (F&A) cost pools must be distributed to benefitted cost objectives on bases that will produce an equitable result in consideration of relative benefits derived.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.57

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

§ 200.57 Indirect cost rate proposal.

Indirect cost rate proposal means the documentation prepared by a non-Federal entity to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate as described in Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs) through Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals of this part, and Appendix IX to Part 200—Hospital Cost Principles.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.58 Information technology systems.

Information technology systems means computing devices, ancillary equipment, software, firmware, and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources. See also §§ 200.20 Computing devices and 200.33 Equipment.

§ 200.59 Intangible property.

Intangible property means property having no physical existence, such as trademarks, copyrights, patents and patent applications and property, such as loans, notes and other debt instruments, lease agreements, stock and other instruments of property ownership (whether the property is tangible or intangible).

§ 200.60 Intermediate cost objective.

Intermediate cost objective means a cost objective that is used to accumulate indirect costs or service center costs that are subsequently allocated to one or more indirect cost pools or final cost objectives. See also § 200.28 Cost objective and § 200.44 Final cost objective.

§ 200.61 Internal controls.

Internal controls means a process, implemented by a non-Federal entity, designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

- (a) Effectiveness and efficiency of operations;
- (b) Reliability of reporting for internal and external use; and

- (c) Compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

§ 200.62 Internal control over compliance requirements for Federal awards.

Internal control over compliance requirements for Federal awards means a process implemented by a non-Federal entity designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of the following objectives for Federal awards:

- (a) Transactions are properly recorded and accounted for, in order to:
 - (1) Permit the preparation of reliable financial statements and Federal reports;
 - (2) Maintain accountability over assets; and
 - (3) Demonstrate compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award;
- (b) Transactions are executed in compliance with:
 - (1) Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award that could have a direct and material effect on a Federal program; and
 - (2) Any other Federal statutes and regulations that are identified in the Compliance Supplement; and
- (c) Funds, property, and other assets are safeguarded against loss from unauthorized use or disposition.

§ 200.63 Loan.

Loan means a Federal loan or loan guarantee received or administered by a non-Federal entity, except as used in the definition of § 200.80 Program income.

- (a) The term “direct loan” means a disbursement of funds by the Federal Government to a non-Federal borrower under a contract that requires the repayment of such funds with or without interest. The term includes the purchase of, or participation in, a loan made by another lender and financing arrangements that defer payment for more than 90 days, including the sale of a Federal Government asset on credit terms. The term does not include the acquisition of a federally guaranteed loan in satisfaction of default claims or the price support loans of the Commodity Credit Corporation.

OMB Guidance

§ 200.69

(b) The term “direct loan obligation” means a binding agreement by a Federal awarding agency to make a direct loan when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower.

(c) The term “loan guarantee” means any Federal Government guarantee, insurance, or other pledge with respect to the payment of all or a part of the principal or interest on any debt obligation of a non-Federal borrower to a non-Federal lender, but does not include the insurance of deposits, shares, or other withdrawable accounts in financial institutions.

(d) The term “loan guarantee commitment” means a binding agreement by a Federal awarding agency to make a loan guarantee when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower, the lender, or any other party to the guarantee agreement.

§ 200.64 Local government.

Local government means any unit of government within a state, including a:

- (a) County;
- (b) Borough;
- (c) Municipality;
- (d) City;
- (e) Town;
- (f) Township;
- (g) Parish;
- (h) Local public authority, including any public housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937;
- (i) Special district;
- (j) School district;
- (k) Intrastate district;
- (l) Council of governments, whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law; and
- (m) Any other agency or instrumentality of a multi-, regional, or intrastate or local government.

§ 200.65 Major program.

Major program means a Federal program determined by the auditor to be a major program in accordance with § 200.518 Major program determination or a program identified as a major program by a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity in accordance with § 200.503 Relation to other audit requirements, paragraph (e).

§ 200.66 Management decision.

Management decision means the evaluation by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity of the audit findings and corrective action plan and the issuance of a written decision to the auditee as to what corrective action is necessary.

§ 200.67 Micro-purchase.

Micro-purchase means a purchase of supplies or services using simplified acquisition procedures, the aggregate amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold. Micro-purchase procedures comprise a subset of a non-Federal entity’s small purchase procedures. The non-Federal entity uses such procedures in order to expedite the completion of its lowest-dollar small purchase transactions and minimize the associated administrative burden and cost. The micro-purchase threshold is set by the Federal Acquisition Regulation at 48 CFR Subpart 2.1 (Definitions). It is \$3,000 except as otherwise discussed in Subpart 2.1 of that regulation, but this threshold is periodically adjusted for inflation.

§ 200.68 Modified Total Direct Cost (MTDC).

MTDC means all direct salaries and wages, applicable fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and up to the first \$25,000 of each subaward (regardless of the period of performance of the subawards under the award). MTDC excludes equipment, capital expenditures, charges for patient care, rental costs, tuition remission, scholarships and fellowships, participant support costs and the portion of each subaward in excess of \$25,000. Other items may only be excluded when necessary to avoid a serious inequity in the distribution of indirect costs, and with the approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

[79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.69 Non-Federal entity.

Non-Federal entity means a state, local government, Indian tribe, institution of higher education (IHE), or nonprofit organization that carries out a Federal award as a recipient or sub-recipient.

§ 200.70

§ 200.70 Nonprofit organization.

Nonprofit organization means any corporation, trust, association, cooperative, or other organization, not including IHEs, that:

(a) Is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest;

(b) Is not organized primarily for profit; and

(c) Uses net proceeds to maintain, improve, or expand the operations of the organization.

§ 200.71 Obligations.

When used in connection with a non-Federal entity's utilization of funds under a Federal award, *obligations* means orders placed for property and services, contracts and subawards made, and similar transactions during a given period that require payment by the non-Federal entity during the same or a future period.

§ 200.72 Office of Management and Budget (OMB).

OMB means the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

§ 200.73 Oversight agency for audit.

Oversight agency for audit means the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of funding directly to a non-Federal entity not assigned a cognizant agency for audit. When there is no direct funding, the Federal awarding agency which is the predominant source of pass-through funding must assume the oversight responsibilities. The duties of the oversight agency for audit and the process for any reassignments are described in § 200.513 Responsibilities, paragraph (b).

§ 200.74 Pass-through entity.

Pass-through entity means a non-Federal entity that provides a subaward to a subrecipient to carry out part of a Federal program.

§ 200.75 Participant support costs.

Participant support costs means direct costs for items such as stipends or subsistence allowances, travel allowances, and registration fees paid to or on be-

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

half of participants or trainees (but not employees) in connection with conferences, or training projects.

§ 200.76 Performance goal.

Performance goal means a target level of performance expressed as a tangible, measurable objective, against which actual achievement can be compared, including a goal expressed as a quantitative standard, value, or rate. In some instances (e.g., discretionary research awards), this may be limited to the requirement to submit technical performance reports (to be evaluated in accordance with agency policy).

§ 200.77 Period of performance.

Period of performance means the time during which the non-Federal entity may incur new obligations to carry out the work authorized under the Federal award. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must include start and end dates of the period of performance in the Federal award (see §§ 200.210 Information contained in a Federal award paragraph (a)(5) and 200.331 Requirements for pass-through entities, paragraph (a)(1)(iv)).

§ 200.78 Personal property.

Personal property means property other than real property. It may be tangible, having physical existence, or intangible.

§ 200.79 Personally Identifiable Information (PII).

PII means information that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity, either alone or when combined with other personal or identifying information that is linked or linkable to a specific individual. Some information that is considered to be PII is available in public sources such as telephone books, public Web sites, and university listings. This type of information is considered to be Public PII and includes, for example, first and last name, address, work telephone number, email address, home telephone number, and general educational credentials. The definition of PII is not anchored to any single category of information or technology. Rather, it requires a case-by-case assessment of the specific risk that an individual can be

OMB Guidance

§ 200.87

identified. Non-PII can become PII whenever additional information is made publicly available, in any medium and from any source, that, when combined with other available information, could be used to identify an individual.

§ 200.80 Program income.

Program income means gross income earned by the non-Federal entity that is directly generated by a supported activity or earned as a result of the Federal award during the period of performance except as provided in §200.307 paragraph (f). (See §200.77 Period of performance.) Program income includes but is not limited to income from fees for services performed, the use or rental of real or personal property acquired under Federal awards, the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a Federal award, license fees and royalties on patents and copyrights, and principal and interest on loans made with Federal award funds. Interest earned on advances of Federal funds is not program income. Except as otherwise provided in Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award, program income does not include rebates, credits, discounts, and interest earned on any of them. See also §200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval). See also 35 U.S.C. 200-212 “Disposition of Rights in Educational Awards” applies to inventions made under Federal awards.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.81 Property.

Property means real property or personal property.

§ 200.82 Protected Personally Identifiable Information (Protected PII).

Protected PII means an individual’s first name or first initial and last name in combination with any one or more of types of information, including, but not limited to, social security number, passport number, credit card numbers, clearances, bank numbers, biometrics, date and place of birth, mother’s maiden name, criminal, medical and financial records, educational transcripts. This does not include PII that is required by law to be disclosed. (See also

§ 200.79 Personally Identifiable Information (PII)).

§ 200.83 Project cost.

Project cost means total allowable costs incurred under a Federal award and all required cost sharing and voluntary committed cost sharing, including third-party contributions.

§ 200.84 Questioned cost.

Questioned cost means a cost that is questioned by the auditor because of an audit finding:

(a) Which resulted from a violation or possible violation of a statute, regulation, or the terms and conditions of a Federal award, including for funds used to match Federal funds;

(b) Where the costs, at the time of the audit, are not supported by adequate documentation; or

(c) Where the costs incurred appear unreasonable and do not reflect the actions a prudent person would take in the circumstances.

§ 200.85 Real property.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, but excludes moveable machinery and equipment.

§ 200.86 Recipient.

Recipient means a non-Federal entity that receives a Federal award directly from a Federal awarding agency to carry out an activity under a Federal program. The term recipient does not include subrecipients. See also §200.69 Non-Federal entity.

§ 200.87 Research and Development (R&D).

R&D means all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are performed by non-Federal entities. The term research also includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function.

“Research” is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. “Development” is

§ 200.88

the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes.

§ 200.88 Simplified acquisition threshold.

Simplified acquisition threshold means the dollar amount below which a non-Federal entity may purchase property or services using small purchase methods. Non-Federal entities adopt small purchase procedures in order to expedite the purchase of items costing less than the simplified acquisition threshold. The simplified acquisition threshold is set by the Federal Acquisition Regulation at 48 CFR Subpart 2.1 (Definitions) and in accordance with 41 U.S.C. 1908. As of the publication of this part, the simplified acquisition threshold is \$150,000, but this threshold is periodically adjusted for inflation. (Also see definition of §200.67 Micro-purchase.)

§ 200.89 Special purpose equipment.

Special purpose equipment means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers. See also §§200.33 Equipment and 200.48 General purpose equipment.

§ 200.90 State.

State means any state of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and any agency or instrumentality thereof exclusive of local governments.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75880, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.91 Student Financial Aid (SFA).

SFA means Federal awards under those programs of general student assistance, such as those authorized by Title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965, as amended, (20 U.S.C. 1070–1099d), which are administered by the U.S. Department of Education, and similar

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

programs provided by other Federal agencies. It does not include Federal awards under programs that provide fellowships or similar Federal awards to students on a competitive basis, or for specified studies or research.

§ 200.92 Subaward.

Subaward means an award provided by a pass-through entity to a sub-recipient for the subrecipient to carry out part of a Federal award received by the pass-through entity. It does not include payments to a contractor or payments to an individual that is a beneficiary of a Federal program. A subaward may be provided through any form of legal agreement, including an agreement that the pass-through entity considers a contract.

§ 200.93 Subrecipient.

Subrecipient means a non-Federal entity that receives a subaward from a pass-through entity to carry out part of a Federal program; but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such program. A subrecipient may also be a recipient of other Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.94 Supplies.

Supplies means all tangible personal property other than those described in §200.33 Equipment. A computing device is a supply if the acquisition cost is less than the lesser of the capitalization level established by the non-Federal entity for financial statement purposes or \$5,000, regardless of the length of its useful life. See also §§200.20 Computing devices and 200.33 Equipment.

§ 200.95 Termination.

Termination means the ending of a Federal award, in whole or in part at any time prior to the planned end of period of performance.

§ 200.96 Third-party in-kind contributions.

Third-party in-kind contributions means the value of non-cash contributions (i.e., property or services) that—

(a) Benefit a federally assisted project or program; and

OMB Guidance

§ 200.100

(b) Are contributed by non-Federal third parties, without charge, to a non-Federal entity under a Federal award.

§ 200.97 Unliquidated obligations.

Unliquidated obligations means, for financial reports prepared on a cash basis, obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity that have not been paid (liquidated). For reports prepared on an accrual expenditure basis, these are obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity for which an expenditure has not been recorded.

§ 200.98 Unobligated balance.

Unobligated balance means the amount of funds under a Federal award that the non-Federal entity has not obligated. The amount is computed by subtracting the cumulative amount of the non-Federal entity's unliquidated obligations and expenditures of funds under the Federal award from the cumulative amount of the funds that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity authorized the non-Federal entity to obligate.

§ 200.99 Voluntary committed cost sharing.

Voluntary committed cost sharing means cost sharing specifically pledged on a voluntary basis in the proposal's budget or the Federal award on the part of the non-Federal entity and that becomes a binding requirement of Federal award.

Subpart B—General Provisions

§ 200.100 Purpose.

(a) *Purpose.* (1) This part establishes uniform administrative requirements, cost principles, and audit requirements for Federal awards to non-Federal entities, as described in § 200.101. Federal awarding agencies must not impose additional or inconsistent requirements, except as provided in §§ 200.102 and 200.211, or unless specifically required by Federal statute, regulation, or Executive order.

(2) This part provides the basis for a systematic and periodic collection and uniform submission by Federal agencies of information on all Federal financial assistance programs to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB).

It also establishes Federal policies related to the delivery of this information to the public, including through the use of electronic media. It prescribes the manner in which General Services Administration (GSA), OMB, and Federal agencies that administer Federal financial assistance programs are to carry out their statutory responsibilities under the Federal Program Information Act (31 U.S.C. 6101–6106).

(b) *Administrative requirements.* Subparts B through D of this part set forth the uniform administrative requirements for grant and cooperative agreements, including the requirements for Federal awarding agency management of Federal grant programs before the Federal award has been made, and the requirements Federal awarding agencies may impose on non-Federal entities in the Federal award.

(c) *Cost principles.* Subpart E of this part establishes principles for determining the allowable costs incurred by non-Federal entities under Federal awards. The principles are for the purpose of cost determination and are not intended to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of Federal Government participation in the financing of a particular program or project. The principles are designed to provide that Federal awards bear their fair share of cost recognized under these principles except where restricted or prohibited by statute.

(d) *Single Audit Requirements and Audit Follow-up.* Subpart F of this part is issued pursuant to the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507). It sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit of non-Federal entities expending Federal awards. These provisions also provide the policies and procedures for Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities when using the results of these audits.

(e) *Guidance on challenges and prizes.* For OMB guidance to Federal awarding agencies on challenges and prizes, please see memo M–10–11 Guidance on the Use of Challenges and Prizes to Promote Open Government, issued March 8, 2010, or its successor.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49536, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.101 Applicability.

(a) *General applicability to Federal agencies.* (1) The requirements established in this part apply to Federal agencies that make Federal awards to non-Federal entities. These requirements are applicable to all costs related to Federal awards.

(2) Federal awarding agencies may apply subparts A through E of this part to Federal agencies, for-profit entities, foreign public entities, or foreign organizations, except where the Federal awarding agency determines that the application of these subparts would be inconsistent with the international responsibilities of the United States or the statutes or regulations of a foreign government.

(b) *Applicability to different types of Federal awards.* (1) Throughout this part when the word “must” is used it indicates a requirement. Whereas, use of the word “should” or “may” indi-

cates a best practice or recommended approach rather than a requirement and permits discretion.

(2) The following table describes what portions of this part apply to which types of Federal awards. The terms and conditions of Federal awards (including this part) flow down to subawards to subrecipients unless a particular section of this part or the terms and conditions of the Federal award specifically indicate otherwise. This means that non-Federal entities must comply with requirements in this part regardless of whether the non-Federal entity is a recipient or subrecipient of a Federal award. Pass-through entities must comply with the requirements described in subpart D of this part, §§ 200.331 through 200.333, but not any requirements in this part directed towards Federal awarding agencies unless the requirements of this part or the terms and conditions of the Federal award indicate otherwise.

TABLE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (b)

The following portions of this Part	Are applicable to the following types of Federal Awards and Fixed-Price Contracts and Subcontracts (except as noted in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section):	Are NOT applicable to the following types of Federal Awards and Fixed-Price Contracts and Subcontracts:
Subpart A—Acronyms and Definitions	—All.	
Subpart B—General Provisions, except for §§ 200.111 English Language, 200.112 Conflict of Interest, 200.113 Mandatory Disclosures.	—All.	
§§ 200.111 English Language, 200.112 Conflict of Interest, 200.113 Mandatory Disclosures.	—Grant Agreements and cooperative agreements.	—Agreements for loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies and insurance. —Procurement contracts awarded by Federal Agencies under the Federal Acquisition Regulation and subcontracts under those contracts.
Subparts C–D, except for §§ 200.203 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs, 200.303 Internal controls, 200.331–333 Subrecipient Monitoring and Management.	—Grant Agreements and cooperative agreements.	—Agreements for loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies and insurance. —Procurement contracts awarded by Federal Agencies under the Federal Acquisition Regulation and subcontracts under those contracts.
§ 200.203 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs.	—Grant Agreements and cooperative agreements. —Agreements for loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies and insurance.	—Procurement contracts awarded by Federal Agencies under the Federal Acquisition Regulation and subcontracts under those contracts.
§§ 200.303 Internal controls, 200.331–333 Subrecipient Monitoring and Management.	—All.	
Subpart E—Cost Principles	—Grant Agreements and cooperative agreements, except those providing food commodities. —All procurement contracts under the Federal Acquisition Regulations except those that are not negotiated.	—Grant agreements and cooperative agreements providing foods commodities. —Fixed amount awards. —Agreements for loans, loans guarantees, interest subsidies and insurance. —Federal awards to hospitals (see Appendix IX Hospital Cost Principles).

TABLE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (b)—Continued

The following portions of this Part	Are applicable to the following types of Federal Awards and Fixed-Price Contracts and Subcontracts (except as noted in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section):	Are NOT applicable to the following types of Federal Awards and Fixed-Price Contracts and Subcontracts:
Subpart F—Audit Requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> —Grant Agreements and cooperative agreements. —Contracts and subcontracts, except for fixed price contracts and subcontracts, awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulation. —Agreements for loans, loans guarantees, interest subsidies and insurance and other forms of Federal Financial Assistance as defined by the Single Audit Act Amendment of 1996. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> —Fixed-price contracts and subcontracts awarded under the Federal Acquisition Regulation.

(c) *Federal award of cost-reimbursement contract under the FAR to a non-Federal entity.* When a non-Federal entity is awarded a cost-reimbursement contract, only subpart D, §§ 200.331 through 200.333, and subparts E and F of this part are incorporated by reference into the contract, but the requirements of subparts D, E, and F are supplementary to the FAR and the contract. When the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) are applicable to the contract, they take precedence over the requirements of this part, including subpart F of this part, which are supplementary to the CAS requirements. In addition, costs that are made unallowable under 10 U.S.C. 2324(e) and 41 U.S.C. 4304(a) as described in the FAR 48 CFR part 31, subpart 31.2, and 48 CFR 31.603 are always unallowable. For requirements other than those covered in subpart D, §§ 200.331 through 200.333, and subparts E and F of this part, the terms of the contract and the FAR apply. Note that when a non-Federal entity is awarded a FAR contract, the FAR applies, and the terms and conditions of the contract shall prevail over the requirements of this part.

(d) *Governing provisions.* With the exception of subpart F of this part, which is required by the Single Audit Act, in any circumstances where the provisions of Federal statutes or regulations differ from the provisions of this part, the provision of the Federal statutes or regulations govern. This includes, for agreements with Indian tribes, the provisions of the Indian Self-Determination and Education and Assistance Act

(ISDEAA), as amended, 25 U.S.C 450–458ddd–2.

(e) *Program applicability.* Except for §§ 200.203 and 200.331 through 200.333, the requirements in subparts C, D, and E of this part do not apply to the following programs:

(1) The block grant awards authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (including Community Services), except to the extent that subpart E of this part apply to sub-recipients of Community Services Block Grant funds pursuant to 42 U.S.C. 9916(a)(1)(B);

(2) Federal awards to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 7702–7703b, (portions of the Impact Aid program);

(3) Payments under the Department of Veterans Affairs' State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 1741); and

(4) Federal awards authorized under the Child Care and Development Block Grant Act of 1990, as amended:

(i) Child Care and Development Block Grant (42 U.S.C. 9858).

(ii) Child Care Mandatory and Matching Funds of the Child Care and Development Fund (42 U.S.C. 9858).

(f) *Additional program applicability.* Except for § 200.203, the guidance in subpart C of this part does not apply to the following programs:

(1) Entitlement Federal awards to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (title IV–A of the Social Security Act, 42 U.S.C. 601–619);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (title IV–D

§ 200.102

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

of the Social Security Act, 42 U.S.C. 651–669b);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (title IV–E of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 670–679c);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (titles I, X, XIV, and XVI–AABD of the Act, as amended);

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (title XIX of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1396–1396w–5) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B) of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1396b(a)(6)(B)); and

(vi) Children’s Health Insurance Program (title XXI of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1397aa–1397mm).

(2) A Federal award for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a Federal award listed in paragraph (f)(1) of this section.

(3) Federal awards under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits (8 U.S.C. 1522(e)).

(4) Entitlement awards under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

(i) National School Lunch Program (section 4 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1753);

(ii) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1755);

(iii) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1759a);

(iv) Summer Food Service Program for Children (section 13 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1761); and

(v) Child and Adult Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1766).

(5) Entitlement awards under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

(i) Special Milk Program (section 3 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1772);

(ii) School Breakfast Program (section 4 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1773); and

(iii) State Administrative Expenses (section 7 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 1776).

(6) Entitlement awards for State Administrative Expenses under The Food and Nutrition Act of 2008 (section 16 of the Act, 7 U.S.C. 2025).

(7) Non-discretionary Federal awards under the following non-entitlement programs:

(i) Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants and Children (section 17 of the Child Nutrition Act of 1966) 42 U.S.C. 1786;

(ii) The Emergency Food Assistance Programs (Emergency Food Assistance Act of 1983) 7 U.S.C. 7501 note; and

(iii) Commodity Supplemental Food Program (section 5 of the Agriculture and Consumer Protection Act of 1973) 7 U.S.C. 612c note.

[85 FR 49536, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.102 Exceptions.

(a) With the exception of subpart F of this part, OMB may allow exceptions for classes of Federal awards or non-Federal entities subject to the requirements of this part when exceptions are not prohibited by statute. In the interest of maximum uniformity, exceptions from the requirements of this part will be permitted as described in this section.

(b) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis for individual non-Federal entities may be authorized by the Federal awarding agency or cognizant agency for indirect costs, except where otherwise required by law or where OMB or other approval is expressly required by this part.

(c) The Federal awarding agency may apply adjust requirements to a class of Federal awards or non-Federal entities when approved by OMB, or when required by Federal statutes or regulations, except for the requirements in subpart F of this part. A Federal awarding agency may apply less restrictive requirements when making fixed amount awards as defined in subpart A of this part, except for those requirements imposed by statute or in subpart F of this part.

(d) Federal awarding agencies may request exceptions in support of innovative program designs that apply a risk-based, data-driven framework to

OMB Guidance

§ 200.106

alleviate select compliance requirements and hold recipients accountable for good performance. See also § 200.206.

[85 FR 49538, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.103 Authorities.

This part is issued under the following authorities.

(a) Subparts B through D of this part are authorized under 31 U.S.C. 503 (the Chief Financial Officers Act, Functions of the Deputy Director for Management), 41 U.S.C. 1101–1131 (the Office of Federal Procurement Policy Act), Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970, and Executive Order 11541 (“Prescribing the Duties of the Office of Management and Budget and the Domestic Policy Council in the Executive Office of the President”), the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507), as well as The Federal Program Information Act (Pub. L. 95–220 and Pub. L. 98–169, as amended, codified at 31 U.S.C. 6101–6106).

(b) Subpart E of this part is authorized under the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, as amended; the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950, as amended (31 U.S.C. 1101–1125); the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 (31 U.S.C. 503–504); Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; and Executive Order 11541, “Prescribing the Duties of the Office of Management and Budget and the Domestic Policy Council in the Executive Office of the President.”

(c) Subpart F of this part is authorized under the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507).

[85 FR 49538, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.104 Supersession.

As described in § 200.110, this part supersedes the following OMB guidance documents and regulations under title 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations:

(a) A–21, “Cost Principles for Educational Institutions” (2 CFR part 220);

(b) A–87, “Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments” (2 CFR part 225) and also FEDERAL REGISTER notice 51 FR 552 (January 6, 1986);

(c) A–89, “Federal Domestic Assistance Program Information”;

(d) A–102, “Grant Awards and Cooperative Agreements with State and Local Governments”;

(e) A–110, “Uniform Administrative Requirements for Awards and Other Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-profit Organizations” (codified at 2 CFR 215);

(f) A–122, “Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations” (2 CFR part 230);

(g) A–133, “Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations”;

(h) Those sections of A–50 related to audits performed under subpart F of this part.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75882, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49538, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.105 Effect on other issuances.

(a) *Superseding inconsistent requirements.* For Federal awards subject to this part, all administrative requirements, program manuals, handbooks and other non-regulatory materials that are inconsistent with the requirements of this part must be superseded upon implementation of this part by the Federal agency, except to the extent they are required by statute or authorized in accordance with the provisions in § 200.102.

(b) *Imposition of requirements on recipients.* Agencies may impose legally binding requirements on recipients only through the notice and public comment process through an approved agency process, including as authorized by this part, other statutes or regulations, or as incorporated into the terms of a Federal award.

[85 FR 49538, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.106 Agency implementation.

The specific requirements and responsibilities of Federal agencies and non-Federal entities are set forth in this part. Federal agencies making Federal awards to non-Federal entities must implement the language in subparts C through F of this part in codified regulations unless different provisions are required by Federal statute or are approved by OMB.

[85 FR 49538, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.107

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

§ 200.107 OMB responsibilities.

OMB will review Federal agency regulations and implementation of this part, and will provide interpretations of policy requirements and assistance to ensure effective and efficient implementation. Any exceptions will be subject to approval by OMB. Exceptions will only be made in particular cases where adequate justification is presented.

§ 200.108 Inquiries.

Inquiries concerning this part may be directed to the Office of Federal Financial Management Office of Management and Budget, in Washington, DC. Non-Federal entities' inquiries should be addressed to the Federal awarding agency, cognizant agency for indirect costs, cognizant or oversight agency for audit, or pass-through entity as appropriate.

§ 200.109 Review date.

OMB will review this part at least every five years after December 26, 2013.

§ 200.110 Effective/applicability date.

(a) The standards set forth in this part that affect the administration of Federal awards issued by Federal awarding agencies become effective once implemented by Federal awarding agencies or when any future amendment to this part becomes final.

(b) Existing negotiated indirect cost rates (as of the publication date of the revisions to the guidance) will remain in place until they expire. The effective date of changes to indirect cost rates must be based upon the date that a newly re-negotiated rate goes into effect for a specific non-Federal entity's fiscal year. Therefore, for indirect cost rates and cost allocation plans, the revised Uniform Guidance (as of the publication date for revisions to the guidance) become effective in generating proposals and negotiating a new rate (when the rate is re-negotiated).

[85 FR 49538, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.111 English language.

(a) All Federal financial assistance announcements and Federal award information must be in the English lan-

guage. Applications must be submitted in the English language and must be in the terms of U.S. dollars. If the Federal awarding agency receives applications in another currency, the Federal awarding agency will evaluate the application by converting the foreign currency to United States currency using the date specified for receipt of the application.

(b) Non-Federal entities may translate the Federal award and other documents into another language. In the event of inconsistency between any terms and conditions of the Federal award and any translation into another language, the English language meaning will control. Where a significant portion of the non-Federal entity's employees who are working on the Federal award are not fluent in English, the non-Federal entity must provide the Federal award in English and the language(s) with which employees are more familiar.

§ 200.112 Conflict of interest.

The Federal awarding agency must establish conflict of interest policies for Federal awards. The non-Federal entity must disclose in writing any potential conflict of interest to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity in accordance with applicable Federal awarding agency policy.

§ 200.113 Mandatory disclosures.

The non-Federal entity or applicant for a Federal award must disclose, in a timely manner, in writing to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity all violations of Federal criminal law involving fraud, bribery, or gratuity violations potentially affecting the Federal award. Non-Federal entities that have received a Federal award including the term and condition outlined in appendix XII to this part are required to report certain civil, criminal, or administrative proceedings to SAM (currently FAPIIS). Failure to make required disclosures can result in any of the remedies described in § 200.339. (See also 2 CFR part 180, 31 U.S.C. 3321, and 41 U.S.C. 2313.)

[85 FR 49539, Aug. 13, 2020]

Subpart C—Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards

SOURCE: 85 FR 49539, Aug. 13, 2020, unless otherwise noted.

§ 200.200 Purpose.

Sections 200.201 through 200.216 prescribe instructions and other pre-award matters to be used by Federal awarding agencies in the program planning, announcement, application and award processes.

§ 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts.

(a) *Federal award instrument.* The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must decide on the appropriate instrument for the Federal award (*i.e.*, grant agreement, cooperative agreement, or contract) in accordance with the Federal Grant and Cooperative Agreement Act (31 U.S.C. 6301-08).

(b) *Fixed amount awards.* In addition to the options described in paragraph (a) of this section, Federal awarding agencies, or pass-through entities as permitted in § 200.333, may use fixed amount awards (see *Fixed amount awards* in § 200.1) to which the following conditions apply:

(1) The Federal award amount is negotiated using the cost principles (or other pricing information) as a guide. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may use fixed amount awards if the project scope has measurable goals and objectives and if adequate cost, historical, or unit pricing data is available to establish a fixed amount award based on a reasonable estimate of actual cost. Payments are based on meeting specific requirements of the Federal award. Accountability is based on performance and results. Except in the case of termination before completion of the Federal award, there is no governmental review of the actual costs incurred by the non-Federal entity in performance of the award. Some of the ways in which the Federal award may be paid include, but are not limited to:

(i) In several partial payments, the amount of each agreed upon in ad-

vance, and the “milestone” or event triggering the payment also agreed upon in advance, and set forth in the Federal award;

(ii) On a unit price basis, for a defined unit or units, at a defined price or prices, agreed to in advance of performance of the Federal award and set forth in the Federal award; or,

(iii) In one payment at Federal award completion.

(2) A fixed amount award cannot be used in programs which require mandatory cost sharing or match.

(3) The non-Federal entity must certify in writing to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity at the end of the Federal award that the project or activity was completed or the level of effort was expended. If the required level of activity or effort was not carried out, the amount of the Federal award must be adjusted.

(4) Periodic reports may be established for each Federal award.

(5) Changes in principal investigator, project leader, project partner, or scope of effort must receive the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

§ 200.202 Program planning and design.

The Federal awarding agency must design a program and create an Assistance Listing before announcing the Notice of Funding Opportunity. The program must be designed with clear goals and objectives that facilitate the delivery of meaningful results consistent with the Federal authorizing legislation of the program. Program performance shall be measured based on the goals and objectives developed during program planning and design. See § 200.301 for more information on performance measurement. Performance measures may differ depending on the type of program. The program must align with the strategic goals and objectives within the Federal awarding agency's performance plan and should support the Federal awarding agency's performance measurement, management, and reporting as required by Part 6 of OMB Circular A-11 (Preparation, Submission, and Execution of the

§ 200.203

Budget). The program must also be designed to align with the Program Management Improvement Accountability Act (Pub. L. 114-264).

§ 200.203 Requirement to provide public notice of Federal financial assistance programs.

(a) The Federal awarding agency must notify the public of Federal programs in the Federal Assistance Listings maintained by the General Services Administration (GSA).

(1) The Federal Assistance Listings is the single, authoritative, government-wide comprehensive source of Federal financial assistance program information produced by the executive branch of the Federal Government.

(2) The information that the Federal awarding agency must submit to GSA for approval by OMB is listed in paragraph (b) of this section. GSA must prescribe the format for the submission in coordination with OMB.

(3) The Federal awarding agency may not award Federal financial assistance without assigning it to a program that has been included in the Federal Assistance Listings as required in this section unless there are exigent circumstances requiring otherwise, such as timing requirements imposed by statute.

(b) For each program that awards discretionary Federal awards, non-discretionary Federal awards, loans, insurance, or any other type of Federal financial assistance, the Federal awarding agency must, to the extent practicable, create, update, and manage Assistance Listings entries based on the authorizing statute for the program and comply with additional guidance provided by GSA in consultation with OMB to ensure consistent, accurate information is available to prospective applicants. Accordingly, Federal awarding agencies must submit the following information to GSA:

(1) *Program Description, Purpose, Goals, and Measurement.* A brief summary of the statutory or regulatory requirements of the program and its intended outcome. Where appropriate, the Program Description, Purpose, Goals, and Measurement should align with the strategic goals and objectives within the Federal awarding agency's

2 CFR Ch. II (1-1-21 Edition)

performance plan and should support the Federal awarding agency's performance measurement, management, and reporting as required by Part 6 of OMB Circular A-11;

(2) *Identification.* Identification of whether the program makes Federal awards on a discretionary basis or the Federal awards are prescribed by Federal statute, such as in the case of formula grants.

(3) *Projected total amount of funds available for the program.* Estimates based on previous year funding are acceptable if current appropriations are not available at the time of the submission;

(4) *Anticipated source of available funds.* The statutory authority for funding the program and, to the extent possible, agency, sub-agency, or, if known, the specific program unit that will issue the Federal awards, and associated funding identifier (*e.g.*, Treasury Account Symbol(s));

(5) *General eligibility requirements.* The statutory, regulatory or other eligibility factors or considerations that determine the applicant's qualification for Federal awards under the program (*e.g.*, type of non-Federal entity); and

(6) *Applicability of Single Audit Requirements.* Applicability of Single Audit Requirements as required by subpart F of this part.

§ 200.204 Notices of funding opportunities.

For discretionary grants and cooperative agreements that are competed, the Federal awarding agency must announce specific funding opportunities by providing the following information in a public notice:

(a) *Summary information in notices of funding opportunities.* The Federal awarding agency must display the following information posted on the OMB-designated governmentwide website for funding and applying for Federal financial assistance, in a location preceding the full text of the announcement:

(1) Federal Awarding Agency Name;

(2) Funding Opportunity Title;

(3) Announcement Type (whether the funding opportunity is the initial announcement of this funding opportunity or a modification of a previously announced opportunity);

OMB Guidance

§ 200.206

(4) Funding Opportunity Number (required, if applicable). If the Federal awarding agency has assigned or will assign a number to the funding opportunity announcement, this number must be provided;

(5) Assistance Listings Number(s);

(6) Key Dates. Key dates include due dates for applications or Executive Order 12372 submissions, as well as for any letters of intent or pre-applications. For any announcement issued before a program's application materials are available, key dates also include the date on which those materials will be released; and any other additional information, as deemed applicable by the relevant Federal awarding agency.

(b) *Availability period.* The Federal awarding agency must generally make all funding opportunities available for application for at least 60 calendar days. The Federal awarding agency may make a determination to have a less than 60 calendar day availability period but no funding opportunity should be available for less than 30 calendar days unless exigent circumstances require as determined by the Federal awarding agency head or delegate.

(c) *Full text of funding opportunities.* The Federal awarding agency must include the following information in the full text of each funding opportunity. For specific instructions on the content required in this section, refer to appendix I to this part.

(1) Full programmatic description of the funding opportunity.

(2) Federal award information, including sufficient information to help an applicant make an informed decision about whether to submit an application. (See also § 200.414(c)(4)).

(3) Specific eligibility information, including any factors or priorities that affect an applicant's or its application's eligibility for selection.

(4) Application Preparation and Submission Information, including the applicable submission dates and time.

(5) Application Review Information including the criteria and process to be used to evaluate applications. See also §§ 200.205 and 200.206.

(6) Federal Award Administration Information. See also § 200.211.

(7) Applicable terms and conditions for resulting awards, including any exceptions from these standard terms.

§ 200.205 Federal awarding agency review of merit of proposals.

For discretionary Federal awards, unless prohibited by Federal statute, the Federal awarding agency must design and execute a merit review process for applications, with the objective of selecting recipients most likely to be successful in delivering results based on the program objectives outlined in section § 200.202. A merit review is an objective process of evaluating Federal award applications in accordance with written standards set forth by the Federal awarding agency. This process must be described or incorporated by reference in the applicable funding opportunity (see appendix I to this part.). See also § 200.204. The Federal awarding agency must also periodically review its merit review process.

§ 200.206 Federal awarding agency review of risk posed by applicants.

(a) *Review of OMB-designated repositories of governmentwide data.* (1) Prior to making a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency is required by the Improper Payments Elimination and Recovery Improvement Act of 2012, 31 U.S.C. 3321 note, and 41 U.S.C. 2313 to review information available through any OMB-designated repositories of governmentwide eligibility qualification or financial integrity information as appropriate. See also suspension and debarment requirements at 2 CFR part 180 as well as individual Federal agency suspension and debarment regulations in title 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(2) In accordance 41 U.S.C. 2313, the Federal awarding agency is required to review the non-public segment of the OMB-designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM (currently the Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System (FAPIIS)) prior to making a Federal award where the Federal share is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, defined in 41 U.S.C. 134, over the period of performance. As required by Public Law 112-239, National Defense Authorization Act for

§ 200.207

Fiscal Year 2013, prior to making a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency must consider all of the information available through FAPIIS with regard to the applicant and any immediate highest level owner, predecessor (i.e.; a non-Federal entity that is replaced by a successor), or subsidiary, identified for that applicant in FAPIIS, if applicable. At a minimum, the information in the system for a prior Federal award recipient must demonstrate a satisfactory record of executing programs or activities under Federal grants, cooperative agreements, or procurement awards; and integrity and business ethics. The Federal awarding agency may make a Federal award to a recipient who does not fully meet these standards, if it is determined that the information is not relevant to the current Federal award under consideration or there are specific conditions that can appropriately mitigate the effects of the non-Federal entity's risk in accordance with § 200.208.

(b) *Risk evaluation.* (1) The Federal awarding agency must have in place a framework for evaluating the risks posed by applicants before they receive Federal awards. This evaluation may incorporate results of the evaluation of the applicant's eligibility or the quality of its application. If the Federal awarding agency determines that a Federal award will be made, special conditions that correspond to the degree of risk assessed may be applied to the Federal award. Criteria to be evaluated must be described in the announcement of funding opportunity described in § 200.204.

(2) In evaluating risks posed by applicants, the Federal awarding agency may use a risk-based approach and may consider any items such as the following:

(i) *Financial stability.* Financial stability;

(ii) *Management systems and standards.* Quality of management systems and ability to meet the management standards prescribed in this part;

(iii) *History of performance.* The applicant's record in managing Federal awards, if it is a prior recipient of Federal awards, including timeliness of compliance with applicable reporting requirements, conformance to the

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

terms and conditions of previous Federal awards, and if applicable, the extent to which any previously awarded amounts will be expended prior to future awards;

(iv) *Audit reports and findings.* Reports and findings from audits performed under subpart F of this part or the reports and findings of any other available audits; and

(v) *Ability to effectively implement requirements.* The applicant's ability to effectively implement statutory, regulatory, or other requirements imposed on non-Federal entities.

(c) *Risk-based requirements adjustment.* The Federal awarding agency may adjust requirements when a risk-evaluation indicates that it may be merited either pre-award or post-award.

(d) *Suspension and debarment compliance.* (1) The Federal awarding agency must comply with the guidelines on governmentwide suspension and debarment in 2 CFR part 180, and must require non-Federal entities to comply with these provisions. These provisions restrict Federal awards, subawards and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal programs or activities.

§ 200.207 Standard application requirements.

(a) *Paperwork clearances.* The Federal awarding agency may only use application information collections approved by OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 and OMB's implementing regulations in 5 CFR part 1320 and in alignment with OMB-approved, governmentwide data elements available from the OMB-designated standards lead. Consistent with these requirements, OMB will authorize additional information collections only on a limited basis.

(b) *Information collection.* If applicable, the Federal awarding agency may inform applicants and recipients that they do not need to provide certain information otherwise required by the relevant information collection.

§ 200.208 Specific conditions.

(a) Federal awarding agencies are responsible for ensuring that specific

OMB Guidance

§ 200.211

Federal award conditions are consistent with the program design reflected in § 200.202 and include clear performance expectations of recipients as required in § 200.301.

(b) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may adjust specific Federal award conditions as needed, in accordance with this section, based on an analysis of the following factors:

(1) Based on the criteria set forth in § 200.206;

(2) The applicant or recipient's history of compliance with the general or specific terms and conditions of a Federal award;

(3) The applicant or recipient's ability to meet expected performance goals as described in § 200.211; or

(4) A responsibility determination of an applicant or recipient.

(c) Additional Federal award conditions may include items such as the following:

(1) Requiring payments as reimbursements rather than advance payments;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given performance period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Requiring additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the non-Federal entity to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(d) If the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity is imposing additional requirements, they must notify the applicant or non-Federal entity as to:

(1) The nature of the additional requirements;

(2) The reason why the additional requirements are being imposed;

(3) The nature of the action needed to remove the additional requirement, if applicable;

(4) The time allowed for completing the actions if applicable; and

(5) The method for requesting reconsideration of the additional requirements imposed.

(e) Any additional requirements must be promptly removed once the condi-

tions that prompted them have been satisfied.

§ 200.209 Certifications and representations.

Unless prohibited by the U.S. Constitution, Federal statutes or regulations, each Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity is authorized to require the non-Federal entity to submit certifications and representations required by Federal statutes, or regulations on an annual basis. Submission may be required more frequently if the non-Federal entity fails to meet a requirement of a Federal award.

§ 200.210 Pre-award costs.

For requirements on costs incurred by the applicant prior to the start date of the period of performance of the Federal award, see § 200.458.

§ 200.211 Information contained in a Federal award.

A Federal award must include the following information:

(a) *Federal award performance goals.* Performance goals, indicators, targets, and baseline data must be included in the Federal award, where applicable. The Federal awarding agency must also specify how performance will be assessed in the terms and conditions of the Federal award, including the timing and scope of expected performance. See §§ 200.202 and 200.301 for more information on Federal award performance goals.

(b) *General Federal award information.* The Federal awarding agency must include the following general Federal award information in each Federal award:

(1) Recipient name (which must match the name associated with its unique entity identifier as defined at 2 CFR 25.315);

(2) Recipient's unique entity identifier;

(3) Unique Federal Award Identification Number (FAIN);

(4) Federal Award Date (see Federal award date in § 200.201);

(5) Period of Performance Start and End Date;

(6) Budget Period Start and End Date;

§ 200.212

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(7) Amount of Federal Funds Obligated by this action;

(8) Total Amount of Federal Funds Obligated;

(9) Total Approved Cost Sharing or Matching, where applicable;

(10) Total Amount of the Federal Award including approved Cost Sharing or Matching;

(11) Budget Approved by the Federal Awarding Agency;

(11) Federal award description, (to comply with statutory requirements (*e.g.*, FFATA));

(12) Name of Federal awarding agency and contact information for awarding official,

(13) Assistance Listings Number and Title;

(14) Identification of whether the award is R&D; and

(15) Indirect cost rate for the Federal award (including if the de minimis rate is charged per § 200.414).

(c) *General terms and conditions.* (1) Federal awarding agencies must incorporate the following general terms and conditions either in the Federal award or by reference, as applicable:

(i) *Administrative requirements.* Administrative requirements implemented by the Federal awarding agency as specified in this part.

(ii) *National policy requirements.* These include statutory, executive order, other Presidential directive, or regulatory requirements that apply by specific reference and are not program-specific. See § 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements.

(iii) *Recipient integrity and performance matters.* If the total Federal share of the Federal award may include more than \$500,000 over the period of performance, the Federal awarding agency must include the term and condition available in appendix XII of this part. See also § 200.113.

(iv) *Future budget periods.* If it is anticipated that the period of performance will include multiple budget periods, the Federal awarding agency must indicate that subsequent budget periods are subject to the availability of funds, program authority, satisfactory performance, and compliance with the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(v) *Termination provisions.* Federal awarding agencies must make recipients aware, in a clear and unambiguous manner, of the termination provisions in § 200.340, including the applicable termination provisions in the Federal awarding agency's regulations or in each Federal award.

(2) The Federal award must incorporate, by reference, all general terms and conditions of the award, which must be maintained on the agency's website.

(3) If a non-Federal entity requests a copy of the full text of the general terms and conditions, the Federal awarding agency must provide it.

(4) Wherever the general terms and conditions are publicly available, the Federal awarding agency must maintain an archive of previous versions of the general terms and conditions, with effective dates, for use by the non-Federal entity, auditors, or others.

(d) *Federal awarding agency, program, or Federal award specific terms and conditions.* The Federal awarding agency must include with each Federal award any terms and conditions necessary to communicate requirements that are in addition to the requirements outlined in the Federal awarding agency's general terms and conditions. See also § 200.208. Whenever practicable, these specific terms and conditions also should be shared on the agency's website and in notices of funding opportunities (as outlined in § 200.204) in addition to being included in a Federal award. See also § 200.207.

(e) *Federal awarding agency requirements.* Any other information required by the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.212 Public access to Federal award information.

(a) In accordance with statutory requirements for Federal spending transparency (*e.g.*, FFATA), except as noted in this section, for applicable Federal awards the Federal awarding agency must announce all Federal awards publicly and publish the required information on a publicly available OMB-designated governmentwide website.

(b) All information posted in the designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM (currently FAPIIS) on or after April 15, 2011 will

OMB Guidance

§ 200.213

be publicly available after a waiting period of 14 calendar days, except for:

(1) Past performance reviews required by Federal Government contractors in accordance with the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 48 CFR part 42, subpart 42.15;

(2) Information that was entered prior to April 15, 2011; or

(3) Information that is withdrawn during the 14-calendar day waiting period by the Federal Government official.

(c) Nothing in this section may be construed as requiring the publication of information otherwise exempt under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C 552), or controlled unclassified information pursuant to Executive Order 13556.

§ 200.213 Reporting a determination that a non-Federal entity is not qualified for a Federal award.

(a) If a Federal awarding agency does not make a Federal award to a non-Federal entity because the official determines that the non-Federal entity does not meet either or both of the minimum qualification standards as described in § 200.206(a)(2), the Federal awarding agency must report that determination to the designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM (currently FAPIIS), only if all of the following apply:

(1) The only basis for the determination described in this paragraph (a) is the non-Federal entity's prior record of executing programs or activities under Federal awards or its record of integrity and business ethics, as described in § 200.206(a)(2) (*i.e.*, the entity was determined to be qualified based on all factors other than those two standards); and

(2) The total Federal share of the Federal award that otherwise would be made to the non-Federal entity is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold over the period of performance.

(b) The Federal awarding agency is not required to report a determination that a non-Federal entity is not qualified for a Federal award if they make the Federal award to the non-Federal entity and include specific award terms and conditions, as described in § 200.208.

(c) If a Federal awarding agency reports a determination that a non-Federal entity is not qualified for a Federal award, as described in paragraph (a) of this section, the Federal awarding agency also must notify the non-Federal entity that—

(1) The determination was made and reported to the designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM, and include with the notification an explanation of the basis for the determination;

(2) The information will be kept in the system for a period of five years from the date of the determination, as required by section 872 of Public Law 110-417, as amended (41 U.S.C. 2313), then archived;

(3) Each Federal awarding agency that considers making a Federal award to the non-Federal entity during that five year period must consider that information in judging whether the non-Federal entity is qualified to receive the Federal award when the total Federal share of the Federal award is expected to include an amount of Federal funding in excess of the simplified acquisition threshold over the period of performance;

(4) The non-Federal entity may go to the awardee integrity and performance portal accessible through SAM (currently the Contractor Performance Assessment Reporting System (CPARS)) and comment on any information the system contains about the non-Federal entity itself; and

(5) Federal awarding agencies will consider that non-Federal entity's comments in determining whether the non-Federal entity is qualified for a future Federal award.

(d) If a Federal awarding agency enters information into the designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM about a determination that a non-Federal entity is not qualified for a Federal award and subsequently:

(1) Learns that any of that information is erroneous, the Federal awarding agency must correct the information in the system within three business days; and

(2) Obtains an update to that information that could be helpful to other Federal awarding agencies, the Federal

§ 200.214

awarding agency is strongly encouraged to amend the information in the system to incorporate the update in a timely way.

(e) Federal awarding agencies must not post any information that will be made publicly available in the non-public segment of designated integrity and performance system that is covered by a disclosure exemption under the Freedom of Information Act. If the recipient asserts within seven calendar days to the Federal awarding agency that posted the information that some or all of the information made publicly available is covered by a disclosure exemption under the Freedom of Information Act, the Federal awarding agency that posted the information must remove the posting within seven calendar days of receiving the assertion. Prior to reposting the releasable information, the Federal awarding agency must resolve the issue in accordance with the agency's Freedom of Information Act procedures.

§ 200.214 Suspension and debarment.

Non-Federal entities are subject to the non-procurement debarment and suspension regulations implementing Executive Orders 12549 and 12689, 2 CFR part 180. The regulations in 2 CFR part 180 restrict awards, subawards, and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or activities.

§ 200.215 Never contract with the enemy.

Federal awarding agencies and recipients are subject to the regulations implementing Never Contract with the Enemy in 2 CFR part 183. The regulations in 2 CFR part 183 affect covered contracts, grants and cooperative agreements that are expected to exceed \$50,000 within the period of performance, are performed outside the United States and its territories, and are in support of a contingency operation in which members of the Armed Forces are actively engaged in hostilities.

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

§ 200.216 Prohibition on certain telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment.

(a) Recipients and subrecipients are prohibited from obligating or expending loan or grant funds to:

- (1) Procure or obtain;
- (2) Extend or renew a contract to procure or obtain; or
- (3) Enter into a contract (or extend or renew a contract) to procure or obtain equipment, services, or systems that uses covered telecommunications equipment or services as a substantial or essential component of any system, or as critical technology as part of any system. As described in Public Law 115–232, section 889, covered telecommunications equipment is telecommunications equipment produced by Huawei Technologies Company or ZTE Corporation (or any subsidiary or affiliate of such entities).

(i) For the purpose of public safety, security of government facilities, physical security surveillance of critical infrastructure, and other national security purposes, video surveillance and telecommunications equipment produced by Hytera Communications Corporation, Hangzhou Hikvision Digital Technology Company, or Dahua Technology Company (or any subsidiary or affiliate of such entities).

(ii) Telecommunications or video surveillance services provided by such entities or using such equipment.

(iii) Telecommunications or video surveillance equipment or services produced or provided by an entity that the Secretary of Defense, in consultation with the Director of the National Intelligence or the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, reasonably believes to be an entity owned or controlled by, or otherwise connected to, the government of a covered foreign country.

(b) In implementing the prohibition under Public Law 115–232, section 889, subsection (f), paragraph (1), heads of executive agencies administering loan, grant, or subsidy programs shall prioritize available funding and technical support to assist affected businesses, institutions and organizations as is reasonably necessary for those affected entities to transition from covered communications equipment and

services, to procure replacement equipment and services, and to ensure that communications service to users and customers is sustained.

(c) See Public Law 115-232, section 889 for additional information.

(d) See also § 200.471.

Subpart D—Post Federal Award Requirements

SOURCE: 85 FR 49543, Aug. 13, 2020, unless otherwise noted.

§ 200.300 Statutory and national policy requirements.

(a) The Federal awarding agency must manage and administer the Federal award in a manner so as to ensure that Federal funding is expended and associated programs are implemented in full accordance with the U.S. Constitution, Federal Law, and public policy requirements: Including, but not limited to, those protecting free speech, religious liberty, public welfare, the environment, and prohibiting discrimination. The Federal awarding agency must communicate to the non-Federal entity all relevant public policy requirements, including those in general appropriations provisions, and incorporate them either directly or by reference in the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(b) The non-Federal entity is responsible for complying with all requirements of the Federal award. For all Federal awards, this includes the provisions of FFATA, which includes requirements on executive compensation, and also requirements implementing the Act for the non-Federal entity at 2 CFR parts 25 and 170. See also statutory requirements for whistleblower protections at 10 U.S.C. 2409, 41 U.S.C. 4712, and 10 U.S.C. 2324, 41 U.S.C. 4304 and 4310.

§ 200.301 Performance measurement.

(a) The Federal awarding agency must measure the recipient's performance to show achievement of program goals and objectives, share lessons learned, improve program outcomes, and foster adoption of promising practices. Program goals and objectives should be derived from program planning and design. See § 200.202 for more

information. Where appropriate, the Federal award may include specific program goals, indicators, targets, baseline data, data collection, or expected outcomes (such as outputs, or services performance or public impacts of any of these) with an expected timeline for accomplishment. Where applicable, this should also include any performance measures or independent sources of data that may be used to measure progress. The Federal awarding agency will determine how performance progress is measured, which may differ by program. Performance measurement progress must be both measured and reported. See § 200.329 for more information on monitoring program performance. The Federal awarding agency may include program-specific requirements, as applicable. These requirements must be aligned, to the extent permitted by law, with the Federal awarding agency strategic goals, strategic objectives or performance goals that are relevant to the program. See also OMB Circular A-11, Preparation, Submission, and Execution of the Budget Part 6.

(b) The Federal awarding agency should provide recipients with clear performance goals, indicators, targets, and baseline data as described in § 200.211. Performance reporting frequency and content should be established to not only allow the Federal awarding agency to understand the recipient progress but also to facilitate identification of promising practices among recipients and build the evidence upon which the Federal awarding agency's program and performance decisions are made. See § 200.328 for more information on reporting program performance.

(c) This provision is designed to operate in tandem with evidence-related statutes (*e.g.*; The Foundations for Evidence-Based Policymaking Act of 2018, which emphasizes collaboration and coordination to advance data and evidence-building functions in the Federal government). The Federal awarding agency should also specify any requirements of award recipients' participation in a federally funded evaluation, and any evaluation activities required to be conducted by the Federal award.

§ 200.302 Financial management.

(a) Each state must expend and account for the Federal award in accordance with state laws and procedures for expending and accounting for the state's own funds. In addition, the state's and the other non-Federal entity's financial management systems, including records documenting compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award, must be sufficient to permit the preparation of reports required by general and program-specific terms and conditions; and the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have been used according to the Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award. See also § 200.450.

(b) The financial management system of each non-Federal entity must provide for the following (see also §§ 200.334, 200.335, 200.336, and 200.337):

(1) Identification, in its accounts, of all Federal awards received and expended and the Federal programs under which they were received. Federal program and Federal award identification must include, as applicable, the Assistance Listings title and number, Federal award identification number and year, name of the Federal agency, and name of the pass-through entity, if any.

(2) Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of each Federal award or program in accordance with the reporting requirements set forth in §§ 200.328 and 200.329. If a Federal awarding agency requires reporting on an accrual basis from a recipient that maintains its records on other than an accrual basis, the recipient must not be required to establish an accrual accounting system. This recipient may develop accrual data for its reports on the basis of an analysis of the documentation on hand. Similarly, a pass-through entity must not require a subrecipient to establish an accrual accounting system and must allow the subrecipient to develop accrual data for its reports on the basis of an analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) Records that identify adequately the source and application of funds for

federally-funded activities. These records must contain information pertaining to Federal awards, authorizations, financial obligations, unobligated balances, assets, expenditures, income and interest and be supported by source documentation.

(4) Effective control over, and accountability for, all funds, property, and other assets. The non-Federal entity must adequately safeguard all assets and assure that they are used solely for authorized purposes. See § 200.303.

(5) Comparison of expenditures with budget amounts for each Federal award.

(6) Written procedures to implement the requirements of § 200.305.

(7) Written procedures for determining the allowability of costs in accordance with subpart E of this part and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

§ 200.303 Internal controls.

The non-Federal entity must:

(a) Establish and maintain effective internal control over the Federal award that provides reasonable assurance that the non-Federal entity is managing the Federal award in compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award. These internal controls should be in compliance with guidance in “Standards for Internal Control in the Federal Government” issued by the Comptroller General of the United States or the “Internal Control Integrated Framework”, issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

(b) Comply with the U.S. Constitution, Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Federal awards.

(c) Evaluate and monitor the non-Federal entity's compliance with statutes, regulations and the terms and conditions of Federal awards.

(d) Take prompt action when instances of noncompliance are identified including noncompliance identified in audit findings.

(e) Take reasonable measures to safeguard protected personally identifiable information and other information the Federal awarding agency or pass-

OMB Guidance

§ 200.305

through entity designates as sensitive or the non-Federal entity considers sensitive consistent with applicable Federal, State, local, and tribal laws regarding privacy and responsibility over confidentiality.

§ 200.304 Bonds.

The Federal awarding agency may include a provision on bonding, insurance, or both in the following circumstances:

(a) Where the Federal Government guarantees or insures the repayment of money borrowed by the recipient, the Federal awarding agency, at its discretion, may require adequate bonding and insurance if the bonding and insurance requirements of the non-Federal entity are not deemed adequate to protect the interest of the Federal Government.

(b) The Federal awarding agency may require adequate fidelity bond coverage where the non-Federal entity lacks sufficient coverage to protect the Federal Government's interest.

(c) Where bonds are required in the situations described above, the bonds must be obtained from companies holding certificates of authority as acceptable sureties, as prescribed in 31 CFR part 223.

§ 200.305 Federal payment.

(a) For states, payments are governed by Treasury-State Cash Management Improvement Act (CMIA) agreements and default procedures codified at 31 CFR part 205 and Treasury Financial Manual (TFM) 4A-2000, "Overall Disbursing Rules for All Federal Agencies".

(b) For non-Federal entities other than states, payments methods must minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the United States Treasury or the pass-through entity and the disbursement by the non-Federal entity whether the payment is made by electronic funds transfer, or issuance or redemption of checks, warrants, or payment by other means. See also § 200.302(b)(6). Except as noted elsewhere in this part, Federal agencies must require recipients to use only OMB-approved, governmentwide information collection requests to request payment.

(1) The non-Federal entity must be paid in advance, provided it maintains or demonstrates the willingness to maintain both written procedures that minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the non-Federal entity, and financial management systems that meet the standards for fund control and accountability as established in this part. Advance payments to a non-Federal entity must be limited to the minimum amounts needed and be timed to be in accordance with the actual, immediate cash requirements of the non-Federal entity in carrying out the purpose of the approved program or project. The timing and amount of advance payments must be as close as is administratively feasible to the actual disbursements by the non-Federal entity for direct program or project costs and the proportionate share of any allowable indirect costs. The non-Federal entity must make timely payment to contractors in accordance with the contract provisions.

(2) Whenever possible, advance payments must be consolidated to cover anticipated cash needs for all Federal awards made by the Federal awarding agency to the recipient.

(i) Advance payment mechanisms include, but are not limited to, Treasury check and electronic funds transfer and must comply with applicable guidance in 31 CFR part 208.

(ii) Non-Federal entities must be authorized to submit requests for advance payments and reimbursements at least monthly when electronic fund transfers are not used, and as often as they like when electronic transfers are used, in accordance with the provisions of the Electronic Fund Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 1693-1693r).

(3) Reimbursement is the preferred method when the requirements in this paragraph (b) cannot be met, when the Federal awarding agency sets a specific condition per § 200.208, or when the non-Federal entity requests payment by reimbursement. This method may be used on any Federal award for construction, or if the major portion of the construction project is accomplished through private market financing or Federal loans, and the Federal award constitutes a minor portion of the

project. When the reimbursement method is used, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must make payment within 30 calendar days after receipt of the billing, unless the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity reasonably believes the request to be improper.

(4) If the non-Federal entity cannot meet the criteria for advance payments and the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the non-Federal entity lacks sufficient working capital, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may provide cash on a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must advance cash payments to the non-Federal entity to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the non-Federal entity's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must reimburse the non-Federal entity for its actual cash disbursements. Use of the working capital advance method of payment requires that the pass-through entity provide timely advance payments to any subrecipients in order to meet the subrecipient's actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment must not be used by the pass-through entity if the reason for using this method is the unwillingness or inability of the pass-through entity to provide timely advance payments to the subrecipient to meet the subrecipient's actual cash disbursements.

(5) To the extent available, the non-Federal entity must disburse funds available from program income (including repayments to a revolving fund), rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries, and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(6) Unless otherwise required by Federal statutes, payments for allowable costs by non-Federal entities must not be withheld at any time during the period of performance unless the conditions of § 200.208, subpart D of this part, including § 200.339, or one or more of the following applies:

(i) The non-Federal entity has failed to comply with the project objectives, Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(ii) The non-Federal entity is delinquent in a debt to the United States as defined in OMB Circular A-129, "Policies for Federal Credit Programs and Non-Tax Receivables." Under such conditions, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may, upon reasonable notice, inform the non-Federal entity that payments must not be made for financial obligations incurred after a specified date until the conditions are corrected or the indebtedness to the Federal Government is liquidated.

(iii) A payment withheld for failure to comply with Federal award conditions, but without suspension of the Federal award, must be released to the non-Federal entity upon subsequent compliance. When a Federal award is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with § 200.343.

(iv) A payment must not be made to a non-Federal entity for amounts that are withheld by the non-Federal entity from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. A payment must be made when the non-Federal entity actually disburses the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(7) Standards governing the use of banks and other institutions as depositories of advance payments under Federal awards are as follows.

(i) The Federal awarding agency and pass-through entity must not require separate depository accounts for funds provided to a non-Federal entity or establish any eligibility requirements for depositories for funds provided to the non-Federal entity. However, the non-Federal entity must be able to account for funds received, obligated, and expended.

(ii) Advance payments of Federal funds must be deposited and maintained in insured accounts whenever possible.

(8) The non-Federal entity must maintain advance payments of Federal awards in interest-bearing accounts, unless the following apply:

OMB Guidance

§ 200.305

(i) The non-Federal entity receives less than \$250,000 in Federal awards per year.

(ii) The best reasonably available interest-bearing account would not be expected to earn interest in excess of \$500 per year on Federal cash balances.

(iii) The depository would require an average or minimum balance so high that it would not be feasible within the expected Federal and non-Federal cash resources.

(iv) A foreign government or banking system prohibits or precludes interest-bearing accounts.

(9) Interest earned amounts up to \$500 per year may be retained by the non-Federal entity for administrative expense. Any additional interest earned on Federal advance payments deposited in interest-bearing accounts must be remitted annually to the Department of Health and Human Services Payment Management System (PMS) through an electronic medium using either Automated Clearing House (ACH) network or a Fedwire Funds Service payment.

(i) For returning interest on Federal awards paid through PMS, the refund should:

(A) Provide an explanation stating that the refund is for interest;

(B) List the PMS Payee Account Number(s) (PANs);

(C) List the Federal award number(s) for which the interest was earned; and

(D) Make returns payable to: Department of Health and Human Services.

(ii) For returning interest on Federal awards not paid through PMS, the refund should:

(A) Provide an explanation stating that the refund is for interest;

(B) Include the name of the awarding agency;

(C) List the Federal award number(s) for which the interest was earned; and

(D) Make returns payable to: Department of Health and Human Services.

(10) Funds, principal, and excess cash returns must be directed to the original Federal agency payment system. The non-Federal entity should review instructions from the original Federal agency payment system. Returns should include the following information:

(i) Payee Account Number (PAN), if the payment originated from PMS, or Agency information to indicate whom to credit the funding if the payment originated from ASAP, NSF, or another Federal agency payment system.

(ii) PMS document number and sub-account(s), if the payment originated from PMS, or relevant account numbers if the payment originated from another Federal agency payment system.

(iii) The reason for the return (*e.g.*, excess cash, funds not spent, interest, part interest part other, etc.)

(11) When returning funds or interest to PMS you must include the following as applicable:

(i) For ACH Returns:

Routing Number: 051036706

Account number: 303000

Bank Name and Location: Credit Gateway—ACH Receiver St. Paul, MN

(ii) For Fedwire Returns¹:

Routing Number: 021030004

Account number: 75010501

Bank Name and Location: Federal Reserve Bank Treas NYC/Funds Transfer Division New York, NY

¹Please note that the organization initiating payment is likely to incur a charge from their Financial Institution for this type of payment.

(iii) For International ACH Returns:

Beneficiary Account: Federal Reserve

Bank of New York/ITS (FRBNY/ITS)

Bank: Citibank N.A. (New York)

Swift Code: CITIUS33

Account Number: 36838868

Bank Address: 388 Greenwich Street, New York, NY 10013 USA

Payment Details (Line 70): Agency Locator Code (ALC): 75010501

Name (abbreviated when possible) and ALC Agency POC

(iv) For recipients that do not have electronic remittance capability, please make check² payable to: "The Department of Health and Human Services."

Mail Check to Treasury approved lockbox:

HHS Program Support Center, P.O. Box 530231, Atlanta, GA 30353-0231

²Please allow 4-6 weeks for processing of a payment by check to be applied to the appropriate PMS account.

§ 200.306

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(v) Questions can be directed to PMS at 877-614-5533 or PMSSupport@psc.hhs.gov.

§ 200.306 Cost sharing or matching.

(a) Under Federal research proposals, voluntary committed cost sharing is not expected. It cannot be used as a factor during the merit review of applications or proposals, but may be considered if it is both in accordance with Federal awarding agency regulations and specified in a notice of funding opportunity. Criteria for considering voluntary committed cost sharing and any other program policy factors that may be used to determine who may receive a Federal award must be explicitly described in the notice of funding opportunity. See also §§ 200.414 and 200.204 and appendix I to this part.

(b) For all Federal awards, any shared costs or matching funds and all contributions, including cash and third-party in-kind contributions, must be accepted as part of the non-Federal entity's cost sharing or matching when such contributions meet all of the following criteria:

- (1) Are verifiable from the non-Federal entity's records;
- (2) Are not included as contributions for any other Federal award;
- (3) Are necessary and reasonable for accomplishment of project or program objectives;
- (4) Are allowable under subpart E of this part;
- (5) Are not paid by the Federal Government under another Federal award, except where the Federal statute authorizing a program specifically provides that Federal funds made available for such program can be applied to matching or cost sharing requirements of other Federal programs;
- (6) Are provided for in the approved budget when required by the Federal awarding agency; and
- (7) Conform to other provisions of this part, as applicable.

(c) Unrecovered indirect costs, including indirect costs on cost sharing or matching may be included as part of cost sharing or matching only with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. Unrecovered indirect cost means the difference between the amount charged to the Federal award

and the amount which could have been charged to the Federal award under the non-Federal entity's approved negotiated indirect cost rate.

(d) Values for non-Federal entity contributions of services and property must be established in accordance with the cost principles in subpart E of this part. If a Federal awarding agency authorizes the non-Federal entity to donate buildings or land for construction/facilities acquisition projects or long-term use, the value of the donated property for cost sharing or matching must be the lesser of paragraph (d)(1) or (2) of this section.

(1) The value of the remaining life of the property recorded in the non-Federal entity's accounting records at the time of donation.

(2) The current fair market value. However, when there is sufficient justification, the Federal awarding agency may approve the use of the current fair market value of the donated property, even if it exceeds the value described in paragraph (d)(1) of this section at the time of donation.

(e) Volunteer services furnished by third-party professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor may be counted as cost sharing or matching if the service is an integral and necessary part of an approved project or program. Rates for third-party volunteer services must be consistent with those paid for similar work by the non-Federal entity. In those instances in which the required skills are not found in the non-Federal entity, rates must be consistent with those paid for similar work in the labor market in which the non-Federal entity competes for the kind of services involved. In either case, paid fringe benefits that are reasonable, necessary, allocable, and otherwise allowable may be included in the valuation.

(f) When a third-party organization furnishes the services of an employee, these services must be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay plus an amount of fringe benefits that is reasonable, necessary, allocable, and otherwise allowable, and indirect costs at either the third-party organization's approved federally-negotiated indirect cost rate or, a rate in accordance with

OMB Guidance

§ 200.307

§ 200.414(d) provided these services employ the same skill(s) for which the employee is normally paid. Where donated services are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donated services so that reimbursement for the donated services will not be made.

(g) Donated property from third parties may include such items as equipment, office supplies, laboratory supplies, or workshop and classroom supplies. Value assessed to donated property included in the cost sharing or matching share must not exceed the fair market value of the property at the time of the donation.

(h) The method used for determining cost sharing or matching for third-party-donated equipment, buildings and land for which title passes to the non-Federal entity may differ according to the purpose of the Federal award, if paragraph (h)(1) or (2) of this section applies.

(1) If the purpose of the Federal award is to assist the non-Federal entity in the acquisition of equipment, buildings or land, the aggregate value of the donated property may be claimed as cost sharing or matching.

(2) If the purpose of the Federal award is to support activities that require the use of equipment, buildings or land, normally only depreciation charges for equipment and buildings may be made. However, the fair market value of equipment or other capital assets and fair rental charges for land may be allowed, provided that the Federal awarding agency has approved the charges. See also § 200.420.

(i) The value of donated property must be determined in accordance with the usual accounting policies of the non-Federal entity, with the following qualifications:

(1) The value of donated land and buildings must not exceed its fair market value at the time of donation to the non-Federal entity as established by an independent appraiser (*e.g.*, certified real property appraiser or General Services Administration representative) and certified by a responsible official of the non-Federal entity as required by the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, as amended,

(42 U.S.C. 4601–4655) (Uniform Act) except as provided in the implementing regulations at 49 CFR part 24, “Uniform Relocation Assistance And Real Property Acquisition For Federal And Federally-Assisted Programs”.

(2) The value of donated equipment must not exceed the fair market value of equipment of the same age and condition at the time of donation.

(3) The value of donated space must not exceed the fair rental value of comparable space as established by an independent appraisal of comparable space and facilities in a privately-owned building in the same locality.

(4) The value of loaned equipment must not exceed its fair rental value.

(j) For third-party in-kind contributions, the fair market value of goods and services must be documented and to the extent feasible supported by the same methods used internally by the non-Federal entity.

(k) For IHEs, see also OMB memorandum M–01–06, dated January 5, 2001, Clarification of OMB A–21 Treatment of Voluntary Uncommitted Cost Sharing and Tuition Remission Costs.

§ 200.307 Program income.

(a) *General.* Non-Federal entities are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs where appropriate.

(b) *Cost of generating program income.* If authorized by Federal regulations or the Federal award, costs incidental to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income, provided these costs have not been charged to the Federal award.

(c) *Governmental revenues.* Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a non-Federal entity are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the Federal award or Federal awarding agency regulations as program income.

(d) *Property.* Proceeds from the sale of real property, equipment, or supplies are not program income; such proceeds will be handled in accordance with the requirements of the Property Standards §§ 200.311, 200.313, and 200.314, or as specifically identified in Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(e) *Use of program income.* If the Federal awarding agency does not specify in its regulations or the terms and conditions of the Federal award, or give prior approval for how program income is to be used, paragraph (e)(1) of this section must apply. For Federal awards made to IHEs and nonprofit research institutions, if the Federal awarding agency does not specify in its regulations or the terms and conditions of the Federal award how program income is to be used, paragraph (e)(2) of this section must apply. In specifying alternatives to paragraphs (e)(1) and (2) of this section, the Federal awarding agency may distinguish between income earned by the recipient and income earned by subrecipients and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When the Federal awarding agency authorizes the approaches in paragraphs (e)(2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any amounts specified must also be deducted from expenditures.

(1) *Deduction.* Ordinarily program income must be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income must be used for current costs unless the Federal awarding agency authorizes otherwise. Program income that the non-Federal entity did not anticipate at the time of the Federal award must be used to reduce the Federal award and non-Federal entity contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) *Addition.* With prior approval of the Federal awarding agency (except for IHEs and nonprofit research institutions, as described in this paragraph (e)) program income may be added to the Federal award by the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. The program income must be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the Federal award.

(3) *Cost sharing or matching.* With prior approval of the Federal awarding agency, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the Federal award. The amount of the Federal award remains the same.

(f) *Income after the period of performance.* There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of in-

come earned after the end of the period of performance for the Federal award, unless the Federal awarding agency regulations or the terms and conditions of the Federal award provide otherwise. The Federal awarding agency may negotiate agreements with recipients regarding appropriate uses of income earned after the period of performance as part of the grant closeout process. See also § 200.344.

(g) *License fees and royalties.* Unless the Federal statute, regulations, or terms and conditions for the Federal award provide otherwise, the non-Federal entity is not accountable to the Federal awarding agency with respect to program income earned from license fees and royalties for copyrighted material, patents, patent applications, trademarks, and inventions made under a Federal award to which 37 CFR part 401 is applicable.

§ 200.308 Revision of budget and program plans.

(a) The approved budget for the Federal award summarizes the financial aspects of the project or program as approved during the Federal award process. It may include either the Federal and non-Federal share (see definition for *Federal share* in § 200.1) or only the Federal share, depending upon Federal awarding agency requirements. The budget and program plans include considerations for performance and program evaluation purposes whenever required in accordance with the terms and conditions of the award.

(b) Recipients are required to report deviations from budget or project scope or objective, and request prior approvals from Federal awarding agencies for budget and program plan revisions, in accordance with this section.

(c) For non-construction Federal awards, recipients must request prior approvals from Federal awarding agencies for the following program or budget-related reasons:

(1) Change in the scope or the objective of the project or program (even if there is no associated budget revision requiring prior written approval).

(2) Change in a key person specified in the application or the Federal award.

(3) The disengagement from the project for more than three months, or a 25 percent reduction in time devoted to the project, by the approved project director or principal investigator.

(4) The inclusion, unless waived by the Federal awarding agency, of costs that require prior approval in accordance with subpart E of this part as applicable.

(5) The transfer of funds budgeted for participant support costs to other categories of expense.

(6) Unless described in the application and funded in the approved Federal awards, the subawarding, transferring or contracting out of any work under a Federal award, including fixed amount subawards as described in § 200.333. This provision does not apply to the acquisition of supplies, material, equipment or general support services.

(7) Changes in the approved cost-sharing or matching provided by the non-Federal entity.

(8) The need arises for additional Federal funds to complete the project.

(d) No other prior approval requirements for specific items may be imposed unless an exception has been approved by OMB. See also §§ 200.102 and 200.407.

(e) Except for requirements listed in paragraphs (c)(1) through (8) of this section, the Federal awarding agency is authorized, at its option, to waive other cost-related and administrative prior written approvals contained in subparts D and E of this part. Such waivers may include authorizing recipients to do any one or more of the following:

(1) Incur project costs 90 calendar days before the Federal awarding agency makes the Federal award. Expenses more than 90 calendar days pre-award require prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. All costs incurred before the Federal awarding agency makes the Federal award are at the recipient's risk (*i.e.*, the Federal awarding agency is not required to reimburse such costs if for any reason the recipient does not receive a Federal award or if the Federal award is less than anticipated and inadequate to cover such costs). See also § 200.458.

(2) Initiate a one-time extension of the period of performance by up to 12

months unless one or more of the conditions outlined in paragraphs (e)(2)(i) through (iii) of this section apply. For one-time extensions, the recipient must notify the Federal awarding agency in writing with the supporting reasons and revised period of performance at least 10 calendar days before the end of the period of performance specified in the Federal award. This one-time extension must not be exercised merely for the purpose of using unobligated balances. Extensions require explicit prior Federal awarding agency approval when:

(i) The terms and conditions of the Federal award prohibit the extension.

(ii) The extension requires additional Federal funds.

(iii) The extension involves any change in the approved objectives or scope of the project.

(3) Carry forward unobligated balances to subsequent budget periods.

(4) For Federal awards that support research, unless the Federal awarding agency provides otherwise in the Federal award or in the Federal awarding agency's regulations, the prior approval requirements described in this paragraph (e) are automatically waived (*i.e.*, recipients need not obtain such prior approvals) unless one of the conditions included in paragraph (e)(2) of this section applies.

(f) The Federal awarding agency may, at its option, restrict the transfer of funds among direct cost categories or programs, functions and activities for Federal awards in which the Federal share of the project exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold and the cumulative amount of such transfers exceeds or is expected to exceed 10 percent of the total budget as last approved by the Federal awarding agency. The Federal awarding agency cannot permit a transfer that would cause any Federal appropriation to be used for purposes other than those consistent with the appropriation.

(g) All other changes to non-construction budgets, except for the changes described in paragraph (c) of this section, do not require prior approval (see also § 200.407).

§ 200.309

(h) For construction Federal awards, the recipient must request prior written approval promptly from the Federal awarding agency for budget revisions whenever paragraph (h)(1), (2), or (3) of this section applies:

(1) The revision results from changes in the scope or the objective of the project or program.

(2) The need arises for additional Federal funds to complete the project.

(3) A revision is desired which involves specific costs for which prior written approval requirements may be imposed consistent with applicable OMB cost principles listed in subpart E.

(4) No other prior approval requirements for budget revisions may be imposed unless an exception has been approved by OMB.

(5) When a Federal awarding agency makes a Federal award that provides support for construction and non-construction work, the Federal awarding agency may require the recipient to obtain prior approval from the Federal awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfers between the two types of work supported.

(i) When requesting approval for budget revisions, the recipient must use the same format for budget information that was used in the application, unless the Federal awarding agency indicates a letter of request suffices.

(j) Within 30 calendar days from the date of receipt of the request for budget revisions, the Federal awarding agency must review the request and notify the recipient whether the budget revisions have been approved. If the revision is still under consideration at the end of 30 calendar days, the Federal awarding agency must inform the recipient in writing of the date when the recipient may expect the decision.

§ 200.309 Modifications to Period of Performance.

If a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity approves an extension, or if a recipient extends under § 200.308(e)(2), the Period of Performance will be amended to end at the completion of the extension. If a termination occurs, the Period of Performance will be amended to end upon the effective date of termination. If a re-

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

newal award is issued, a distinct Period of Performance will begin.

PROPERTY STANDARDS

§ 200.310 Insurance coverage.

The non-Federal entity must, at a minimum, provide the equivalent insurance coverage for real property and equipment acquired or improved with Federal funds as provided to property owned by the non-Federal entity. Federally-owned property need not be insured unless required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

§ 200.311 Real property.

(a) *Title.* Subject to the requirements and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired or improved under a Federal award will vest upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity.

(b) *Use.* Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes or by the Federal awarding agency, real property will be used for the originally authorized purpose as long as needed for that purpose, during which time the non-Federal entity must not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) *Disposition.* When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the non-Federal entity must obtain disposition instructions from the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity. The instructions must provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) Retain title after compensating the Federal awarding agency. The amount paid to the Federal awarding agency will be computed by applying the Federal awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase (and costs of any improvements) to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where the non-Federal entity is disposing of real property acquired or improved with a Federal award and acquiring replacement real property under the same Federal award, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.

(2) Sell the property and compensate the Federal awarding agency. The amount due to the Federal awarding

agency will be calculated by applying the Federal awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase (and cost of any improvements) to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the Federal award has not been closed out, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When the non-Federal entity is directed to sell property, sales procedures must be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) Transfer title to the Federal awarding agency or to a third party designated/approved by the Federal awarding agency. The non-Federal entity is entitled to be paid an amount calculated by applying the non-Federal entity's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property (and cost of any improvements) to the current fair market value of the property.

§ 200.312 Federally-owned and exempt property.

(a) Title to federally-owned property remains vested in the Federal Government. The non-Federal entity must submit annually an inventory listing of federally-owned property in its custody to the Federal awarding agency. Upon completion of the Federal award or when the property is no longer needed, the non-Federal entity must report the property to the Federal awarding agency for further Federal agency utilization.

(b) If the Federal awarding agency has no further need for the property, it must declare the property excess and report it for disposal to the appropriate Federal disposal authority, unless the Federal awarding agency has statutory authority to dispose of the property by alternative methods (*e.g.*, the authority provided by the Federal Technology Transfer Act (15 U.S.C. 3710 (i)) to donate research equipment to educational and nonprofit organizations in accordance with Executive Order 12999, "Educational Technology: Ensuring Opportunity for All Children in the Next Century."). The Federal awarding agency must issue appropriate instructions to the non-Federal entity.

(c) Exempt property means property acquired under a Federal award where the Federal awarding agency has chosen to vest title to the property to the non-Federal entity without further responsibility to the Federal Government, based upon the explicit terms and conditions of the Federal award. The Federal awarding agency may exercise this option when statutory authority exists. Absent statutory authority and specific terms and conditions of the Federal award, title to exempt property acquired under the Federal award remains with the Federal Government.

§ 200.313 Equipment.

See also § 200.439.

(a) *Title.* Subject to the requirements and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a Federal award will vest upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity. Unless a statute specifically authorizes the Federal agency to vest title in the non-Federal entity without further responsibility to the Federal Government, and the Federal agency elects to do so, the title must be a conditional title. Title must vest in the non-Federal entity subject to the following conditions:

(1) Use the equipment for the authorized purposes of the project during the period of performance, or until the property is no longer needed for the purposes of the project.

(2) Not encumber the property without approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(3) Use and dispose of the property in accordance with paragraphs (b), (c), and (e) of this section.

(b) *General.* A state must use, manage and dispose of equipment acquired under a Federal award by the state in accordance with state laws and procedures. Other non-Federal entities must follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) *Use.* (1) Equipment must be used by the non-Federal entity in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by the Federal award, and the non-Federal entity must not encumber the property without prior

approval of the Federal awarding agency. The Federal awarding agency may require the submission of the applicable common form for equipment. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities supported by the Federal awarding agency, in the following order of priority:

(i) Activities under a Federal award from the Federal awarding agency which funded the original program or project, then

(ii) Activities under Federal awards from other Federal awarding agencies. This includes consolidated equipment for information technology systems.

(2) During the time that equipment is used on the project or program for which it was acquired, the non-Federal entity must also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, provided that such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use must be given to other programs or projects supported by Federal awarding agency that financed the equipment and second preference must be given to programs or projects under Federal awards from other Federal awarding agencies. Use for non-federally-funded programs or projects is also permissible. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in § 200.307 to earn program income, the non-Federal entity must not use equipment acquired with the Federal award to provide services for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services unless specifically authorized by Federal statute for as long as the Federal Government retains an interest in the equipment.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the non-Federal entity may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property.

(d) *Management requirements.* Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part under a

Federal award, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of funding for the property (including the FAIN), who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the project costs for the Federal award under which the property was acquired, the location, use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft must be investigated.

(4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.

(5) If the non-Federal entity is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) *Disposition.* When original or replacement equipment acquired under a Federal award is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal awarding agency, except as otherwise provided in Federal statutes, regulations, or Federal awarding agency disposition instructions, the non-Federal entity must request disposition instructions from the Federal awarding agency if required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. Disposition of the equipment will be made as follows, in accordance with Federal awarding agency disposition instructions:

(1) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value of \$5,000 or less may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further responsibility to the Federal awarding agency.

(2) Except as provided in § 200.312(b), or if the Federal awarding agency fails

to provide requested disposition instructions within 120 days, items of equipment with a current per-unit fair market value in excess of \$5,000 may be retained by the non-Federal entity or sold. The Federal awarding agency is entitled to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the Federal awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase. If the equipment is sold, the Federal awarding agency may permit the non-Federal entity to deduct and retain from the Federal share \$500 or ten percent of the proceeds, whichever is less, for its selling and handling expenses.

(3) The non-Federal entity may transfer title to the property to the Federal Government or to an eligible third party provided that, in such cases, the non-Federal entity must be entitled to compensation for its attributable percentage of the current fair market value of the property.

(4) In cases where a non-Federal entity fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the Federal awarding agency may direct the non-Federal entity to take disposition actions.

§ 200.314 Supplies.

See also § 200.453.

(a) Title to supplies will vest in the non-Federal entity upon acquisition. If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding \$5,000 in total aggregate value upon termination or completion of the project or program and the supplies are not needed for any other Federal award, the non-Federal entity must retain the supplies for use on other activities or sell them, but must, in either case, compensate the Federal Government for its share. The amount of compensation must be computed in the same manner as for equipment. See § 200.313 (e)(2) for the calculation methodology.

(b) As long as the Federal Government retains an interest in the supplies, the non-Federal entity must not use supplies acquired under a Federal award to provide services to other organizations for a fee that is less than private companies charge for equivalent services, unless specifically authorized by Federal statute.

§ 200.315 Intangible property.

(a) Title to intangible property (see definition for *Intangible property* in § 200.1) acquired under a Federal award vests upon acquisition in the non-Federal entity. The non-Federal entity must use that property for the originally-authorized purpose, and must not encumber the property without approval of the Federal awarding agency. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, disposition of the intangible property must occur in accordance with the provisions in § 200.313(e).

(b) The non-Federal entity may copy-right any work that is subject to copyright and was developed, or for which ownership was acquired, under a Federal award. The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive and irrevocable right to reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the work for Federal purposes, and to authorize others to do so.

(c) The non-Federal entity is subject to applicable regulations governing patents and inventions, including governmentwide regulations issued by the Department of Commerce at 37 CFR part 401, "Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Awards, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements."

(d) The Federal Government has the right to:

(1) Obtain, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use the data produced under a Federal award; and

(2) Authorize others to receive, reproduce, publish, or otherwise use such data for Federal purposes.

(e)(1) In response to a Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) request for research data relating to published research findings produced under a Federal award that were used by the Federal Government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law, the Federal awarding agency must request, and the non-Federal entity must provide, within a reasonable time, the research data so that they can be made available to the public through the procedures established under the FOIA. If the Federal awarding agency obtains the research data solely in response to a FOIA request,

§ 200.316

the Federal awarding agency may charge the requester a reasonable fee equaling the full incremental cost of obtaining the research data. This fee should reflect costs incurred by the Federal agency and the non-Federal entity. This fee is in addition to any fees the Federal awarding agency may assess under the FOIA (5 U.S.C. 552(a)(4)(A)).

(2) Published research findings means when:

(i) Research findings are published in a peer-reviewed scientific or technical journal; or

(ii) A Federal agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law. “Used by the Federal Government in developing an agency action that has the force and effect of law” is defined as when an agency publicly and officially cites the research findings in support of an agency action that has the force and effect of law.

(3) Research data means the recorded factual material commonly accepted in the scientific community as necessary to validate research findings, but not any of the following: Preliminary analyses, drafts of scientific papers, plans for future research, peer reviews, or communications with colleagues. This “recorded” material excludes physical objects (*e.g.*, laboratory samples). Research data also do not include:

(i) Trade secrets, commercial information, materials necessary to be held confidential by a researcher until they are published, or similar information which is protected under law; and

(ii) Personnel and medical information and similar information the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy, such as information that could be used to identify a particular person in a research study.

§ 200.316 Property trust relationship.

Real property, equipment, and intangible property, that are acquired or improved with a Federal award must be held in trust by the non-Federal entity as trustee for the beneficiaries of the project or program under which the property was acquired or improved. The Federal awarding agency may re-

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

quire the non-Federal entity to record liens or other appropriate notices of record to indicate that personal or real property has been acquired or improved with a Federal award and that use and disposition conditions apply to the property.

Procurement Standards

§ 200.317 Procurements by states.

When procuring property and services under a Federal award, a State must follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will comply with §§ 200.321, 200.322, and 200.323 and ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by § 200.327. All other non-Federal entities, including sub-recipients of a State, must follow the procurement standards in §§ 200.318 through 200.327.

§ 200.318 General procurement standards.

(a) The non-Federal entity must have and use documented procurement procedures, consistent with State, local, and tribal laws and regulations and the standards of this section, for the acquisition of property or services required under a Federal award or subaward. The non-Federal entity’s documented procurement procedures must conform to the procurement standards identified in §§ 200.317 through 200.327.

(b) Non-Federal entities must maintain oversight to ensure that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(c)(1) The non-Federal entity must maintain written standards of conduct covering conflicts of interest and governing the actions of its employees engaged in the selection, award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a Federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest. Such a conflict of interest would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any

member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in or a tangible personal benefit from a firm considered for a contract. The officers, employees, and agents of the non-Federal entity may neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors or parties to subcontracts. However, non-Federal entities may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct must provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the non-Federal entity.

(2) If the non-Federal entity has a parent, affiliate, or subsidiary organization that is not a State, local government, or Indian tribe, the non-Federal entity must also maintain written standards of conduct covering organizational conflicts of interest. Organizational conflicts of interest means that because of relationships with a parent company, affiliate, or subsidiary organization, the non-Federal entity is unable or appears to be unable to be impartial in conducting a procurement action involving a related organization.

(d) The non-Federal entity's procedures must avoid acquisition of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(e) To foster greater economy and efficiency, and in accordance with efforts to promote cost-effective use of shared services across the Federal Government, the non-Federal entity is encouraged to enter into state and local inter-governmental agreements or inter-entity agreements where appropriate for procurement or use of common or shared goods and services. Competition requirements will be met with applied to documented procurement actions

using strategic sourcing, shared services, and other similar procurement arrangements.

(f) The non-Federal entity is encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(g) The non-Federal entity is encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(h) The non-Federal entity must award contracts only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources. See also § 200.214.

(i) The non-Federal entity must maintain records sufficient to detail the history of procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following: Rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(j)(1) The non-Federal entity may use a time-and-materials type contract only after a determination that no other contract is suitable and if the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk. Time-and-materials type contract means a contract whose cost to a non-Federal entity is the sum of:

- (i) The actual cost of materials; and
- (ii) Direct labor hours charged at fixed hourly rates that reflect wages, general and administrative expenses, and profit.

(2) Since this formula generates an open-ended contract price, a time-and-materials contract provides no positive profit incentive to the contractor for cost control or labor efficiency. Therefore, each contract must set a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its

own risk. Further, the non-Federal entity awarding such a contract must assert a high degree of oversight in order to obtain reasonable assurance that the contractor is using efficient methods and effective cost controls.

(k) The non-Federal entity alone must be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to, source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the non-Federal entity of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. The Federal awarding agency will not substitute its judgment for that of the non-Federal entity unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, state, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

§ 200.319 Competition.

(a) All procurement transactions for the acquisition of property or services required under a Federal award must be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of this section and § 200.320.

(b) In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work, or invitations for bids or requests for proposals must be excluded from competing for such procurements. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

- (1) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business;
- (2) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding;
- (3) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies;
- (4) Noncompetitive contracts to consultants that are on retainer contracts;
- (5) Organizational conflicts of interest;
- (6) Specifying only a “brand name” product instead of allowing “an equal”

product to be offered and describing the performance or other relevant requirements of the procurement; and

(7) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(c) The non-Federal entity must conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed state, local, or tribal geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts state licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criterion provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(d) The non-Federal entity must have written procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures must ensure that all solicitations:

(1) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description must not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured and, when necessary, must set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a “brand name or equivalent” description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offers must be clearly stated; and

(2) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(e) The non-Federal entity must ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used

in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, the non-Federal entity must not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(f) Noncompetitive procurements can only be awarded in accordance with § 200.320(c).

§ 200.320 Methods of procurement to be followed.

The non-Federal entity must have and use documented procurement procedures, consistent with the standards of this section and §§ 200.317, 200.318, and 200.319 for any of the following methods of procurement used for the acquisition of property or services required under a Federal award or subaward.

(a) *Informal procurement methods.* When the value of the procurement for property or services under a Federal award does not exceed the *simplified acquisition threshold (SAT)*, as defined in § 200.1, or a lower threshold established by a non-Federal entity, formal procurement methods are not required. The non-Federal entity may use informal procurement methods to expedite the completion of its transactions and minimize the associated administrative burden and cost. The informal methods used for procurement of property or services at or below the SAT include:

(1) *Micro-purchases*—(i) *Distribution.* The acquisition of supplies or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold (See the definition of *micro-purchase* in § 200.1). To the maximum extent practicable, the non-Federal entity should distribute micro-purchases equitably among qualified suppliers.

(ii) *Micro-purchase awards.* Micro-purchases may be awarded without soliciting competitive price or rate quotations if the non-Federal entity considers the price to be reasonable based on research, experience, purchase history or other information and documents it files accordingly. Purchase cards can be used for micro-purchases if procedures are documented and approved by the non-Federal entity.

(iii) *Micro-purchase thresholds.* The non-Federal entity is responsible for determining and documenting an appropriate micro-purchase threshold based on internal controls, an evaluation of risk, and its documented procurement procedures. The micro-purchase threshold used by the non-Federal entity must be authorized or not prohibited under State, local, or tribal laws or regulations. Non-Federal entities may establish a threshold higher than the Federal threshold established in the Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) in accordance with paragraphs (a)(1)(iv) and (v) of this section.

(iv) *Non-Federal entity increase to the micro-purchase threshold up to \$50,000.* Non-Federal entities may establish a threshold higher than the micro-purchase threshold identified in the FAR in accordance with the requirements of this section. The non-Federal entity may self-certify a threshold up to \$50,000 on an annual basis and must maintain documentation to be made available to the Federal awarding agency and auditors in accordance with § 200.334. The self-certification must include a justification, clear identification of the threshold, and supporting documentation of any of the following:

(A) A qualification as a low-risk auditee, in accordance with the criteria in § 200.520 for the most recent audit;

(B) An annual internal institutional risk assessment to identify, mitigate, and manage financial risks; or,

(C) For public institutions, a higher threshold consistent with State law.

(v) *Non-Federal entity increase to the micro-purchase threshold over \$50,000.* Micro-purchase thresholds higher than \$50,000 must be approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. The non-federal entity must submit a request with the requirements included in paragraph (a)(1)(iv) of this section. The increased threshold is valid until there is a change in status in which the justification was approved.

(2) *Small purchases*—(i) *Small purchase procedures.* The acquisition of property or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which is higher than the micro-purchase threshold but does not exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations must

be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources as determined appropriate by the non-Federal entity.

(ii) *Simplified acquisition thresholds.* The non-Federal entity is responsible for determining an appropriate simplified acquisition threshold based on internal controls, an evaluation of risk and its documented procurement procedures which must not exceed the threshold established in the FAR. When applicable, a lower simplified acquisition threshold used by the non-Federal entity must be authorized or not prohibited under State, local, or tribal laws or regulations.

(b) *Formal procurement methods.* When the value of the procurement for property or services under a Federal financial assistance award exceeds the SAT, or a lower threshold established by a non-Federal entity, formal procurement methods are required. Formal procurement methods require following documented procedures. Formal procurement methods also require public advertising unless a non-competitive procurement can be used in accordance with § 200.319 or paragraph (c) of this section. The following formal methods of procurement are used for procurement of property or services above the simplified acquisition threshold or a value below the simplified acquisition threshold the non-Federal entity determines to be appropriate:

(1) *Sealed bids.* A procurement method in which bids are publicly solicited and a firm fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bids method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) Bids must be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources, providing them sufficient response time prior to the date set for opening the bids, for local, and tribal governments, the invitation for bids must be publicly advertised;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, must define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids, and for local and tribal governments, the bids must be opened publicly;

(D) A firm fixed price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs must be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(2) *Proposals.* A procurement method in which either a fixed price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. Proposals are generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. They are awarded in accordance with the following requirements:

(i) Requests for proposals must be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Proposals must be solicited from an adequate number of qualified offerors. Any response to publicized requests for proposals must be considered to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) The non-Federal entity must have a written method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and making selections;

(iii) Contracts must be awarded to the responsible offeror whose proposal is most advantageous to the non-Federal entity, with price and other factors considered; and

(iv) The non-Federal entity may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby offeror's qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified offeror is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms that are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(c) *Noncompetitive procurement.* There are specific circumstances in which noncompetitive procurement can be used. Noncompetitive procurement can only be awarded if one or more of the following circumstances apply:

(1) The acquisition of property or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold (see paragraph (a)(1) of this section);

(2) The item is available only from a single source;

(3) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from publicizing a competitive solicitation;

(4) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity expressly authorizes a noncompetitive procurement in response to a written request from the non-Federal entity; or

(5) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

§ 200.321 Contracting with small and minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms.

(a) The non-Federal entity must take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(b) Affirmative steps must include:

(1) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(2) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(3) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller

tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;

(4) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;

(5) Using the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(6) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (b)(1) through (5) of this section.

§ 200.322 Domestic preferences for procurements.

(a) As appropriate and to the extent consistent with law, the non-Federal entity should, to the greatest extent practicable under a Federal award, provide a preference for the purchase, acquisition, or use of goods, products, or materials produced in the United States (including but not limited to iron, aluminum, steel, cement, and other manufactured products). The requirements of this section must be included in all subawards including all contracts and purchase orders for work or products under this award.

(b) For purposes of this section:

(1) "Produced in the United States" means, for iron and steel products, that all manufacturing processes, from the initial melting stage through the application of coatings, occurred in the United States.

(2) "Manufactured products" means items and construction materials composed in whole or in part of non-ferrous metals such as aluminum; plastics and polymer-based products such as polyvinyl chloride pipe; aggregates such as concrete; glass, including optical fiber; and lumber.

§ 200.323 Procurement of recovered materials.

A non-Federal entity that is a state agency or agency of a political subdivision of a state and its contractors must comply with section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the

§ 200.324

Resource Conservation and Recovery Act. The requirements of Section 6002 include procuring only items designated in guidelines of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) at 40 CFR part 247 that contain the highest percentage of recovered materials practicable, consistent with maintaining a satisfactory level of competition, where the purchase price of the item exceeds \$10,000 or the value of the quantity acquired during the preceding fiscal year exceeded \$10,000; procuring solid waste management services in a manner that maximizes energy and resource recovery; and establishing an affirmative procurement program for procurement of recovered materials identified in the EPA guidelines.

§ 200.324 Contract cost and price.

(a) The non-Federal entity must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action in excess of the Simplified Acquisition Threshold including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, the non-Federal entity must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals.

(b) The non-Federal entity must negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration must be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(c) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under the Federal award are allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices would be allowable for the non-Federal entity under subpart E of this part. The non-Federal entity may reference its own cost principles that comply with the Federal cost principles.

(d) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting must not be used.

§ 200.325 Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity review.

(a) The non-Federal entity must make available, upon request of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity believes such review is needed to ensure that the item or service specified is the one being proposed for acquisition. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the non-Federal entity desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(b) The non-Federal entity must make available upon request, for the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity pre-procurement review, procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, or independent cost estimates, when:

(1) The non-Federal entity's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this part;

(2) The procurement is expected to exceed the Simplified Acquisition Threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation;

(3) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, specifies a "brand name" product;

(4) The proposed contract is more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(5) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the Simplified Acquisition Threshold.

2 CFR Ch. II (1-1-21 Edition)

(c) The non-Federal entity is exempt from the pre-procurement review in paragraph (b) of this section if the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this part.

(1) The non-Federal entity may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews must occur where there is continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis;

(2) The non-Federal entity may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification must not limit the Federal awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, the Federal awarding agency may rely on written assurances from the non-Federal entity that it is complying with these standards. The non-Federal entity must cite specific policies, procedures, regulations, or standards as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

§ 200.326 Bonding requirements.

For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the non-Federal entity provided that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity has made a determination that the Federal interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements must be as follows:

(a) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The "bid guarantee" must consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of the bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(b) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the

contract price. A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's requirements under such contract.

(c) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

§ 200.327 Contract provisions.

The non-Federal entity's contracts must contain the applicable provisions described in appendix II to this part.

PERFORMANCE AND FINANCIAL MONITORING AND REPORTING

§ 200.328 Financial reporting.

Unless otherwise approved by OMB, the Federal awarding agency must solicit only the OMB-approved governmentwide data elements for collection of financial information (at time of publication the Federal Financial Report or such future, OMB-approved, governmentwide data elements available from the OMB-designated standards lead. This information must be collected with the frequency required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award, but no less frequently than annually nor more frequently than quarterly except in unusual circumstances, for example where more frequent reporting is necessary for the effective monitoring of the Federal award or could significantly affect program outcomes, and preferably in coordination with performance reporting. The Federal awarding agency must use OMB-approved common information collections, as applicable, when providing financial and performance reporting information.

§ 200.329 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) *Monitoring by the non-Federal entity.* The non-Federal entity is responsible for oversight of the operations of the Federal award supported activities. The non-Federal entity must monitor its activities under Federal awards to

assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and performance expectations are being achieved. Monitoring by the non-Federal entity must cover each program, function or activity. See also § 200.332.

(b) *Reporting program performance.* The Federal awarding agency must use OMB-approved common information collections, as applicable, when providing financial and performance reporting information. As appropriate and in accordance with above mentioned information collections, the Federal awarding agency must require the recipient to relate financial data and accomplishments to performance goals and objectives of the Federal award. Also, in accordance with above mentioned common information collections, and when required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award, recipients must provide cost information to demonstrate cost effective practices (*e.g.*, through unit cost data). In some instances (*e.g.*, discretionary research awards), this will be limited to the requirement to submit technical performance reports (to be evaluated in accordance with Federal awarding agency policy). Reporting requirements must be clearly articulated such that, where appropriate, performance during the execution of the Federal award has a standard against which non-Federal entity performance can be measured.

(c) *Non-construction performance reports.* The Federal awarding agency must use standard, governmentwide OMB-approved data elements for collection of performance information including performance progress reports, Research Performance Progress Reports.

(1) The non-Federal entity must submit performance reports at the interval required by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to best inform improvements in program outcomes and productivity. Intervals must be no less frequent than annually nor more frequent than quarterly except in unusual circumstances, for example where more frequent reporting is necessary for the effective monitoring of the Federal award or could significantly affect program outcomes. Reports submitted annually by the non-

Federal entity and/or pass-through entity must be due no later than 90 calendar days after the reporting period. Reports submitted quarterly or semi-annually must be due no later than 30 calendar days after the reporting period. Alternatively, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may require annual reports before the anniversary dates of multiple year Federal awards. The final performance report submitted by the non-Federal entity and/or pass-through entity must be due no later than 120 calendar days after the period of performance end date. A subrecipient must submit to the pass-through entity, no later than 90 calendar days after the period of performance end date, all final performance reports as required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. See also § 200.344. If a justified request is submitted by a non-Federal entity, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report.

(2) As appropriate in accordance with above mentioned performance reporting, these reports will contain, for each Federal award, brief information on the following unless other data elements are approved by OMB in the agency information collection request:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives of the Federal award established for the period. Where the accomplishments of the Federal award can be quantified, a computation of the cost (for example, related to units of accomplishment) may be required if that information will be useful. Where performance trend data and analysis would be informative to the Federal awarding agency program, the Federal awarding agency should include this as a performance reporting requirement.

(ii) The reasons why established goals were not met, if appropriate.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(d) *Construction performance reports.* For the most part, onsite technical inspections and certified percentage of completion data are relied on heavily by Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities to monitor progress under Federal awards and subawards

OMB Guidance

§ 200.331

for construction. The Federal awarding agency may require additional performance reports only when considered necessary.

(e) *Significant developments.* Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates that have significant impact upon the supported activity. In such cases, the non-Federal entity must inform the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the Federal award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more or different beneficial results than originally planned.

(f) *Site visits.* The Federal awarding agency may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(g) *Performance report requirement waiver.* The Federal awarding agency may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

§ 200.330 Reporting on real property.

The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must require a non-Federal entity to submit reports at least annually on the status of real property in which the Federal Government retains an interest, unless the Federal interest in the real property extends 15 years or longer. In those instances where the Federal interest attached is for a period of 15 years or more, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, at its option, may require the non-Federal entity to report at various multi-year frequencies (*e.g.*, every two years or every three years, not to exceed a five-year reporting period; or a Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may require annual reporting for the first three years of a Federal award and thereafter require reporting every five years).

SUBRECIPIENT MONITORING AND MANAGEMENT

§ 200.331 Subrecipient and contractor determinations.

The non-Federal entity may concurrently receive Federal awards as a recipient, a subrecipient, and a contractor, depending on the substance of its agreements with Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities. Therefore, a pass-through entity must make case-by-case determinations whether each agreement it makes for the disbursement of Federal program funds casts the party receiving the funds in the role of a subrecipient or a contractor. The Federal awarding agency may supply and require recipients to comply with additional guidance to support these determinations provided such guidance does not conflict with this section.

(a) *Subrecipients.* A subaward is for the purpose of carrying out a portion of a Federal award and creates a Federal assistance relationship with the subrecipient. See definition for *Subaward* in § 200.1 of this part. Characteristics which support the classification of the non-Federal entity as a subrecipient include when the non-Federal entity:

(1) Determines who is eligible to receive what Federal assistance;

(2) Has its performance measured in relation to whether objectives of a Federal program were met;

(3) Has responsibility for programmatic decision-making;

(4) Is responsible for adherence to applicable Federal program requirements specified in the Federal award; and

(5) In accordance with its agreement, uses the Federal funds to carry out a program for a public purpose specified in authorizing statute, as opposed to providing goods or services for the benefit of the pass-through entity.

(b) *Contractors.* A contract is for the purpose of obtaining goods and services for the non-Federal entity's own use and creates a procurement relationship with the contractor. See the definition of *contract* in § 200.1 of this part. Characteristics indicative of a procurement relationship between the non-Federal entity and a contractor are when the contractor:

§ 200.332

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(1) Provides the goods and services within normal business operations;

(2) Provides similar goods or services to many different purchasers;

(3) Normally operates in a competitive environment;

(4) Provides goods or services that are ancillary to the operation of the Federal program; and

(5) Is not subject to compliance requirements of the Federal program as a result of the agreement, though similar requirements may apply for other reasons.

(c) *Use of judgment in making determination.* In determining whether an agreement between a pass-through entity and another non-Federal entity casts the latter as a subrecipient or a contractor, the substance of the relationship is more important than the form of the agreement. All of the characteristics listed above may not be present in all cases, and the pass-through entity must use judgment in classifying each agreement as a subaward or a procurement contract.

§ 200.332 Requirements for pass-through entities.

All pass-through entities must:

(a) Ensure that every subaward is clearly identified to the subrecipient as a subaward and includes the following information at the time of the subaward and if any of these data elements change, include the changes in subsequent subaward modification. When some of this information is not available, the pass-through entity must provide the best information available to describe the Federal award and subaward. Required information includes:

(1) Federal award identification.

(i) Subrecipient name (which must match the name associated with its unique entity identifier);

(ii) Subrecipient's unique entity identifier;

(iii) Federal Award Identification Number (FAIN);

(iv) Federal Award Date (see the definition of *Federal award date* in § 200.1 of this part) of award to the recipient by the Federal agency;

(v) Subaward Period of Performance Start and End Date;

(vi) Subaward Budget Period Start and End Date;

(vii) Amount of Federal Funds Obligated by this action by the pass-through entity to the subrecipient;

(viii) Total Amount of Federal Funds Obligated to the subrecipient by the pass-through entity including the current financial obligation;

(ix) Total Amount of the Federal Award committed to the subrecipient by the pass-through entity;

(x) Federal award project description, as required to be responsive to the Federal Funding Accountability and Transparency Act (FFATA);

(xi) Name of Federal awarding agency, pass-through entity, and contact information for awarding official of the Pass-through entity;

(xii) Assistance Listings number and Title; the pass-through entity must identify the dollar amount made available under each Federal award and the Assistance Listings Number at time of disbursement;

(xiii) Identification of whether the award is R&D; and

(xiv) Indirect cost rate for the Federal award (including if the de minimis rate is charged) per § 200.414.

(2) All requirements imposed by the pass-through entity on the subrecipient so that the Federal award is used in accordance with Federal statutes, regulations and the terms and conditions of the Federal award;

(3) Any additional requirements that the pass-through entity imposes on the subrecipient in order for the pass-through entity to meet its own responsibility to the Federal awarding agency including identification of any required financial and performance reports;

(4)(i) An approved federally recognized indirect cost rate negotiated between the subrecipient and the Federal Government. If no approved rate exists, the pass-through entity must determine the appropriate rate in collaboration with the subrecipient, which is either:

(A) The negotiated indirect cost rate between the pass-through entity and the subrecipient; which can be based on a prior negotiated rate between a different PTE and the same subrecipient. If basing the rate on a previously negotiated rate, the pass-through entity is

not required to collect information justifying this rate, but may elect to do so;

(B) The de minimis indirect cost rate.

(ii) The pass-through entity must not require use of a de minimis indirect cost rate if the subrecipient has a Federally approved rate. Subrecipients can elect to use the cost allocation method to account for indirect costs in accordance with § 200.405(d).

(5) A requirement that the subrecipient permit the pass-through entity and auditors to have access to the subrecipient's records and financial statements as necessary for the pass-through entity to meet the requirements of this part; and

(6) Appropriate terms and conditions concerning closeout of the subaward.

(b) Evaluate each subrecipient's risk of noncompliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the subaward for purposes of determining the appropriate subrecipient monitoring described in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section, which may include consideration of such factors as:

(1) The subrecipient's prior experience with the same or similar subawards;

(2) The results of previous audits including whether or not the subrecipient receives a Single Audit in accordance with Subpart F of this part, and the extent to which the same or similar subaward has been audited as a major program;

(3) Whether the subrecipient has new personnel or new or substantially changed systems; and

(4) The extent and results of Federal awarding agency monitoring (*e.g.*, if the subrecipient also receives Federal awards directly from a Federal awarding agency).

(c) Consider imposing specific subaward conditions upon a subrecipient if appropriate as described in § 200.208.

(d) Monitor the activities of the subrecipient as necessary to ensure that the subaward is used for authorized purposes, in compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the subaward; and that subaward performance goals are

achieved. Pass-through entity monitoring of the subrecipient must include:

(1) Reviewing financial and performance reports required by the pass-through entity.

(2) Following-up and ensuring that the subrecipient takes timely and appropriate action on all deficiencies pertaining to the Federal award provided to the subrecipient from the pass-through entity detected through audits, on-site reviews, and written confirmation from the subrecipient, highlighting the status of actions planned or taken to address Single Audit findings related to the particular subaward.

(3) Issuing a management decision for applicable audit findings pertaining only to the Federal award provided to the subrecipient from the pass-through entity as required by § 200.521.

(4) The pass-through entity is responsible for resolving audit findings specifically related to the subaward and not responsible for resolving cross-cutting findings. If a subrecipient has a current Single Audit report posted in the Federal Audit Clearinghouse and has not otherwise been excluded from receipt of Federal funding (*e.g.*, has been debarred or suspended), the pass-through entity may rely on the subrecipient's cognizant audit agency or cognizant oversight agency to perform audit follow-up and make management decisions related to cross-cutting findings in accordance with section § 300.513(a)(3)(vii). Such reliance does not eliminate the responsibility of the pass-through entity to issue subawards that conform to agency and award-specific requirements, to manage risk through ongoing subaward monitoring, and to monitor the status of the findings that are specifically related to the subaward.

(e) Depending upon the pass-through entity's assessment of risk posed by the subrecipient (as described in paragraph (b) of this section), the following monitoring tools may be useful for the pass-through entity to ensure proper accountability and compliance with program requirements and achievement of performance goals:

§ 200.333

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(1) Providing subrecipients with training and technical assistance on program-related matters; and

(2) Performing on-site reviews of the subrecipient's program operations;

(3) Arranging for agreed-upon-procedures engagements as described in § 200.425.

(f) Verify that every subrecipient is audited as required by Subpart F of this part when it is expected that the subrecipient's Federal awards expended during the respective fiscal year equaled or exceeded the threshold set forth in § 200.501.

(g) Consider whether the results of the subrecipient's audits, on-site reviews, or other monitoring indicate conditions that necessitate adjustments to the pass-through entity's own records.

(h) Consider taking enforcement action against noncompliant subrecipients as described in § 200.339 of this part and in program regulations.

§ 200.333 Fixed amount subawards.

With prior written approval from the Federal awarding agency, a pass-through entity may provide subawards based on fixed amounts up to the Simplified Acquisition Threshold, provided that the subawards meet the requirements for fixed amount awards in § 200.201.

RECORD RETENTION AND ACCESS

§ 200.334 Retention requirements for records.

Financial records, supporting documents, statistical records, and all other non-Federal entity records pertinent to a Federal award must be retained for a period of three years from the date of submission of the final expenditure report or, for Federal awards that are renewed quarterly or annually, from the date of the submission of the quarterly or annual financial report, respectively, as reported to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient. Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities must not impose any other record retention requirements upon non-Federal entities. The only exceptions are the following:

(a) If any litigation, claim, or audit is started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until all litigation, claims, or audit findings involving the records have been resolved and final action taken.

(b) When the non-Federal entity is notified in writing by the Federal awarding agency, cognizant agency for audit, oversight agency for audit, cognizant agency for indirect costs, or pass-through entity to extend the retention period.

(c) Records for real property and equipment acquired with Federal funds must be retained for 3 years after final disposition.

(d) When records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the non-Federal entity.

(e) Records for program income transactions after the period of performance. In some cases recipients must report program income after the period of performance. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the program income starts from the end of the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in which the program income is earned.

(f) Indirect cost rate proposals and cost allocations plans. This paragraph applies to the following types of documents and their supporting records: Indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(1) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the pass-through entity) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(2) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the pass-through entity) for negotiation

OMB Guidance

§ 200.338

purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal, plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from the end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

§ 200.335 Requests for transfer of records.

The Federal awarding agency must request transfer of certain records to its custody from the non-Federal entity when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. However, in order to avoid duplicate recordkeeping, the Federal awarding agency may make arrangements for the non-Federal entity to retain any records that are continuously needed for joint use.

§ 200.336 Methods for collection, transmission, and storage of information.

The Federal awarding agency and the non-Federal entity should, whenever practicable, collect, transmit, and store Federal award-related information in open and machine-readable formats rather than in closed formats or on paper in accordance with applicable legislative requirements. A machine-readable format is a format in a standard computer language (not English text) that can be read automatically by a web browser or computer system. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must always provide or accept paper versions of Federal award-related information to and from the non-Federal entity upon request. If paper copies are submitted, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must not require more than an original and two copies. When original records are electronic and cannot be altered, there is no need to create and retain paper copies. When original records are paper, electronic versions may be substituted through the use of duplication or other forms of electronic media provided that they are subject to periodic quality control reviews, provide reasonable safeguards against alteration, and remain readable.

§ 200.337 Access to records.

(a) *Records of non-Federal entities.* The Federal awarding agency, Inspectors General, the Comptroller General of the United States, and the pass-through entity, or any of their authorized representatives, must have the right of access to any documents, papers, or other records of the non-Federal entity which are pertinent to the Federal award, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts. The right also includes timely and reasonable access to the non-Federal entity's personnel for the purpose of interview and discussion related to such documents.

(b) *Extraordinary and rare circumstances.* Only under extraordinary and rare circumstances would such access include review of the true name of victims of a crime. Routine monitoring cannot be considered extraordinary and rare circumstances that would necessitate access to this information. When access to the true name of victims of a crime is necessary, appropriate steps to protect this sensitive information must be taken by both the non-Federal entity and the Federal awarding agency. Any such access, other than under a court order or subpoena pursuant to a bona fide confidential investigation, must be approved by the head of the Federal awarding agency or delegate.

(c) *Expiration of right of access.* The rights of access in this section are not limited to the required retention period but last as long as the records are retained. Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities must not impose any other access requirements upon non-Federal entities.

§ 200.338 Restrictions on public access to records.

No Federal awarding agency may place restrictions on the non-Federal entity that limit public access to the records of the non-Federal entity pertinent to a Federal award, except for protected personally identifiable information (PII) or when the Federal awarding agency can demonstrate that such records will be kept confidential and would have been exempted from disclosure pursuant to the Freedom of

§ 200.339

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) or controlled unclassified information pursuant to Executive Order 13556 if the records had belonged to the Federal awarding agency. The Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) (FOIA) does not apply to those records that remain under a non-Federal entity's control except as required under § 200.315. Unless required by Federal, state, local, and tribal statute, non-Federal entities are not required to permit public access to their records. The non-Federal entity's records provided to a Federal agency generally will be subject to FOIA and applicable exemptions.

REMEDIES FOR NONCOMPLIANCE

§ 200.339 Remedies for noncompliance.

If a non-Federal entity fails to comply with the U.S. Constitution, Federal statutes, regulations or the terms and conditions of a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may impose additional conditions, as described in § 200.208. If the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that non-compliance cannot be remedied by imposing additional conditions, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

- (a) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the non-Federal entity or more severe enforcement action by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.
- (b) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and any applicable matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.
- (c) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the Federal award.
- (d) Initiate suspension or debarment proceedings as authorized under 2 CFR part 180 and Federal awarding agency regulations (or in the case of a pass-through entity, recommend such a proceeding be initiated by a Federal awarding agency).
- (e) Withhold further Federal awards for the project or program.
- (f) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

§ 200.340 Termination.

(a) The Federal award may be terminated in whole or in part as follows:

(1) By the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, if a non-Federal entity fails to comply with the terms and conditions of a Federal award;

(2) By the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity, to the greatest extent authorized by law, if an award no longer effectuates the program goals or agency priorities;

(3) By the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity with the consent of the non-Federal entity, in which case the two parties must agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated;

(4) By the non-Federal entity upon sending to the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity written notification setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and, in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines in the case of partial termination that the reduced or modified portion of the Federal award or subaward will not accomplish the purposes for which the Federal award was made, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may terminate the Federal award in its entirety; or

(5) By the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity pursuant to termination provisions included in the Federal award.

(b) A Federal awarding agency should clearly and unambiguously specify termination provisions applicable to each Federal award, in applicable regulations or in the award, consistent with this section.

(c) When a Federal awarding agency terminates a Federal award prior to the end of the period of performance due to the non-Federal entity's material failure to comply with the Federal award terms and conditions, the Federal awarding agency must report the termination to the OMB-designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM (currently FAPIIS).

(1) The information required under paragraph (c) of this section is not to be reported to designated integrity and performance system until the non-Federal entity either—

(i) Has exhausted its opportunities to object or challenge the decision, see § 200.342; or

(ii) Has not, within 30 calendar days after being notified of the termination, informed the Federal awarding agency that it intends to appeal the Federal awarding agency's decision to terminate.

(2) If a Federal awarding agency, after entering information into the designated integrity and performance system about a termination, subsequently:

(i) Learns that any of that information is erroneous, the Federal awarding agency must correct the information in the system within three business days;

(ii) Obtains an update to that information that could be helpful to other Federal awarding agencies, the Federal awarding agency is strongly encouraged to amend the information in the system to incorporate the update in a timely way.

(3) Federal awarding agencies, must not post any information that will be made publicly available in the non-public segment of designated integrity and performance system that is covered by a disclosure exemption under the Freedom of Information Act. If the non-Federal entity asserts within seven calendar days to the Federal awarding agency who posted the information, that some of the information made publicly available is covered by a disclosure exemption under the Freedom of Information Act, the Federal awarding agency who posted the information must remove the posting within seven calendar days of receiving the assertion. Prior to reposting the releasable information, the Federal agency must resolve the issue in accordance with the agency's Freedom of Information Act procedures.

(d) When a Federal award is terminated or partially terminated, both the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity remain responsible for compliance with the requirements in §§ 200.344 and 200.345.

§ 200.341 Notification of termination requirement.

(a) The Federal agency or pass-through entity must provide to the non-Federal entity a notice of termination.

(b) If the Federal award is terminated for the non-Federal entity's material failure to comply with the U.S. Constitution, Federal statutes, regulations, or terms and conditions of the Federal award, the notification must state that—

(1) The termination decision will be reported to the OMB-designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM (currently FAPIIS);

(2) The information will be available in the OMB-designated integrity and performance system for a period of five years from the date of the termination, then archived;

(3) Federal awarding agencies that consider making a Federal award to the non-Federal entity during that five year period must consider that information in judging whether the non-Federal entity is qualified to receive the Federal award, when the Federal share of the Federal award is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold over the period of performance;

(4) The non-Federal entity may comment on any information the OMB-designated integrity and performance system contains about the non-Federal entity for future consideration by Federal awarding agencies. The non-Federal entity may submit comments to the awardee integrity and performance portal accessible through SAM (currently CPARS).

(5) Federal awarding agencies will consider non-Federal entity comments when determining whether the non-Federal entity is qualified for a future Federal award.

(c) Upon termination of a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency must provide the information required under FFATA to the Federal website established to fulfill the requirements of FFATA, and update or notify any other relevant governmentwide systems or entities of any indications of poor performance as required by 41 U.S.C. 417b and 31 U.S.C. 3321 and implementing guidance at 2 CFR part 77

§ 200.342

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(forthcoming at time of publication). See also the requirements for Suspension and Debarment at 2 CFR part 180.

§ 200.342 Opportunities to object, hearings, and appeals.

Upon taking any remedy for non-compliance, the Federal awarding agency must provide the non-Federal entity an opportunity to object and provide information and documentation challenging the suspension or termination action, in accordance with written processes and procedures published by the Federal awarding agency. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must comply with any requirements for hearings, appeals or other administrative proceedings to which the non-Federal entity is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

§ 200.343 Effects of suspension and termination.

Costs to the non-Federal entity resulting from financial obligations incurred by the non-Federal entity during a suspension or after termination of a Federal award or subaward are not allowable unless the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. However, costs during suspension or after termination are allowable if:

(a) The costs result from financial obligations which were properly incurred by the non-Federal entity before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it; and

(b) The costs would be allowable if the Federal award was not suspended or expired normally at the end of the period of performance in which the termination takes effect.

CLOSEOUT

§ 200.344 Closeout.

The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity will close out the Federal award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the Federal award have been completed by the non-Federal entity. If the non-Federal entity

fails to complete the requirements, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity will proceed to close out the Federal award with the information available. This section specifies the actions the non-Federal entity and Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must take to complete this process at the end of the period of performance.

(a) The recipient must submit, no later than 120 calendar days after the end date of the period of performance, all financial, performance, and other reports as required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. A subrecipient must submit to the pass-through entity, no later than 90 calendar days (or an earlier date as agreed upon by the pass-through entity and subrecipient) after the end date of the period of performance, all financial, performance, and other reports as required by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may approve extensions when requested and justified by the non-Federal entity, as applicable.

(b) Unless the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity authorizes an extension, a non-Federal entity must liquidate all financial obligations incurred under the Federal award no later than 120 calendar days after the end date of the period of performance as specified in the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(c) The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must make prompt payments to the non-Federal entity for costs meeting the requirements in Subpart E of this part under the Federal award being closed out.

(d) The non-Federal entity must promptly refund any balances of unobligated cash that the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity paid in advance or paid and that are not authorized to be retained by the non-Federal entity for use in other projects. See OMB Circular A-129 and see § 200.346, for requirements regarding unreturned amounts that become delinquent debts.

(e) Consistent with the terms and conditions of the Federal award, the Federal awarding agency or pass-

through entity must make a settlement for any upward or downward adjustments to the Federal share of costs after closeout reports are received.

(f) The non-Federal entity must account for any real and personal property acquired with Federal funds or received from the Federal Government in accordance with §§200.310 through 200.316 and 200.330.

(g) When a recipient or subrecipient completes all closeout requirements, the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must promptly complete all closeout actions for Federal awards. The Federal awarding agency must make every effort to complete closeout actions no later than one year after the end of the period of performance unless otherwise directed by authorizing statutes. Closeout actions include Federal awarding agency actions in the grants management and payment systems.

(h) If the non-Federal entity does not submit all reports in accordance with this section and the terms and conditions of the Federal Award, the Federal awarding agency must proceed to close out with the information available within one year of the period of performance end date.

(i) If the non-Federal entity does not submit all reports in accordance with this section within one year of the period of performance end date, the Federal awarding agency must report the non-Federal entity's material failure to comply with the terms and conditions of the award with the OMB-designated integrity and performance system (currently FAPIIS). Federal awarding agencies may also pursue other enforcement actions per §200.339.

POST-CLOSEOUT ADJUSTMENTS AND CONTINUING RESPONSIBILITIES

§ 200.345 Post-closeout adjustments and continuing responsibilities.

(a) The closeout of a Federal award does not affect any of the following:

(1) The right of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity must make any cost disallowance determination and notify

the non-Federal entity within the record retention period.

(2) The requirement for the non-Federal entity to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions including final indirect cost rate adjustments.

(3) The ability of the Federal awarding agency to make financial adjustments to a previously closed award such as resolving indirect cost payments and making final payments.

(4) Audit requirements in subpart F of this part.

(5) Property management and disposition requirements in §§200.310 through 200.316 of this subpart.

(6) Records retention as required in §§200.334 through 200.337 of this subpart.

(b) After closeout of the Federal award, a relationship created under the Federal award may be modified or ended in whole or in part with the consent of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity and the non-Federal entity, provided the responsibilities of the non-Federal entity referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, including those for property management as applicable, are considered and provisions made for continuing responsibilities of the non-Federal entity, as appropriate.

COLLECTION OF AMOUNTS DUE

§ 200.346 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to the non-Federal entity in excess of the amount to which the non-Federal entity is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the Federal award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within 90 calendar days after demand, the Federal awarding agency may reduce the debt by:

(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements;

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the non-Federal entity; or

(3) Other action permitted by Federal statute.

(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal awarding agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with

§ 200.400

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

the Federal Claims Collection Standards (31 CFR parts 900 through 999). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

Subpart E—Cost Principles

GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 200.400 Policy guide.

The application of these cost principles is based on the fundamental premises that:

(a) The non-Federal entity is responsible for the efficient and effective administration of the Federal award through the application of sound management practices.

(b) The non-Federal entity assumes responsibility for administering Federal funds in a manner consistent with underlying agreements, program objectives, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(c) The non-Federal entity, in recognition of its own unique combination of staff, facilities, and experience, has the primary responsibility for employing whatever form of sound organization and management techniques may be necessary in order to assure proper and efficient administration of the Federal award.

(d) The application of these cost principles should require no significant changes in the internal accounting policies and practices of the non-Federal entity. However, the accounting practices of the non-Federal entity must be consistent with these cost principles and support the accumulation of costs as required by the principles, and must provide for adequate documentation to support costs charged to the Federal award.

(e) In reviewing, negotiating and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals, the cognizant agency for indirect costs should generally assure that the non-Federal entity is applying these cost accounting principles on a consistent basis during their review and negotiation of indirect cost proposals. Where wide variations exist in the treatment of a given cost item by the non-Federal entity, the reasonableness and equity of such treatments should be fully considered.

See the definition of *indirect (facilities & administrative (F&A)) costs* in § 200.1 of this part.

(f) For non-Federal entities that educate and engage students in research, the dual role of students as both trainees and employees (including pre- and post-doctoral staff) contributing to the completion of Federal awards for research must be recognized in the application of these principles.

(g) The non-Federal entity may not earn or keep any profit resulting from Federal financial assistance, unless explicitly authorized by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. See also § 200.307.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49561, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.401 Application.

(a) *General.* These principles must be used in determining the allowable costs of work performed by the non-Federal entity under Federal awards. These principles also must be used by the non-Federal entity as a guide in the pricing of fixed-price contracts and subcontracts where costs are used in determining the appropriate price. The principles do not apply to:

(1) Arrangements under which Federal financing is in the form of loans, scholarships, fellowships, traineeships, or other fixed amounts based on such items as education allowance or published tuition rates and fees.

(2) For IHEs, capitation awards, which are awards based on case counts or number of beneficiaries according to the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(3) Fixed amount awards. See also § 200.1 Definitions and 200.201.

(4) Federal awards to hospitals (see appendix IX to this part).

(5) Other awards under which the non-Federal entity is not required to account to the Federal Government for actual costs incurred.

(b) *Federal contract.* Where a Federal contract awarded to a non-Federal entity is subject to the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS), it incorporates the applicable CAS clauses, Standards, and CAS administration requirements per the 48 CFR Chapter 99 and 48 CFR part 30 (FAR Part 30). CAS applies directly

OMB Guidance

§ 200.404

to the CAS-covered contract and the Cost Accounting Standards at 48 CFR parts 9904 or 9905 takes precedence over the cost principles in this subpart E with respect to the allocation of costs. When a contract with a non-Federal entity is subject to full CAS coverage, the allowability of certain costs under the cost principles will be affected by the allocation provisions of the Cost Accounting Standards (*e.g.*, CAS 414—48 CFR 9904.414, Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Facilities Capital, and CAS 417—48 CFR 9904.417, Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Capital Assets Under Construction), apply rather the allowability provisions of §200.449. In complying with those requirements, the non-Federal entity's application of cost accounting practices for estimating, accumulating, and reporting costs for other Federal awards and other cost objectives under the CAS-covered contract still must be consistent with its cost accounting practices for the CAS-covered contracts. In all cases, only one set of accounting records needs to be maintained for the allocation of costs by the non-Federal entity.

(c) *Exemptions.* Some nonprofit organizations, because of their size and nature of operations, can be considered to be similar to for-profit entities for purpose of applicability of cost principles. Such nonprofit organizations must operate under Federal cost principles applicable to for-profit entities located at 48 CFR 31.2. A listing of these organizations is contained in appendix VIII to this part. Other organizations, as approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs, may be added from time to time.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

BASIC CONSIDERATIONS

§ 200.402 Composition of costs.

Total cost. The total cost of a Federal award is the sum of the allowable direct and allocable indirect costs less any applicable credits.

§ 200.403 Factors affecting allowability of costs.

Except where otherwise authorized by statute, costs must meet the fol-

lowing general criteria in order to be allowable under Federal awards:

(a) Be necessary and reasonable for the performance of the Federal award and be allocable thereto under these principles.

(b) Conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles or in the Federal award as to types or amount of cost items.

(c) Be consistent with policies and procedures that apply uniformly to both federally-financed and other activities of the non-Federal entity.

(d) Be accorded consistent treatment. A cost may not be assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances has been allocated to the Federal award as an indirect cost.

(e) Be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), except, for state and local governments and Indian tribes only, as otherwise provided for in this part.

(f) Not be included as a cost or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of any other federally-financed program in either the current or a prior period. See also §200.306(b).

(g) Be adequately documented. See also §§200.300 through 200.309 of this part.

(h) Cost must be incurred during the approved budget period. The Federal awarding agency is authorized, at its discretion, to waive prior written approvals to carry forward unobligated balances to subsequent budget periods pursuant to §200.308(e)(3).

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.404 Reasonable costs.

A cost is reasonable if, in its nature and amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the cost. The question of reasonableness is particularly important when the non-Federal entity is predominantly federally-funded. In determining reasonableness of a given cost, consideration must be given to:

§ 200.405

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(a) Whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the non-Federal entity or the proper and efficient performance of the Federal award.

(b) The restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as: sound business practices; arm's-length bargaining; Federal, state, local, tribal, and other laws and regulations; and terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(c) Market prices for comparable goods or services for the geographic area.

(d) Whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances considering their responsibilities to the non-Federal entity, its employees, where applicable its students or membership, the public at large, and the Federal Government.

(e) Whether the non-Federal entity significantly deviates from its established practices and policies regarding the incurrence of costs, which may unjustifiably increase the Federal award's cost.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.405 Allocable costs.

(a) A cost is allocable to a particular Federal award or other cost objective if the goods or services involved are chargeable or assignable to that Federal award or cost objective in accordance with relative benefits received. This standard is met if the cost:

(1) Is incurred specifically for the Federal award;

(2) Benefits both the Federal award and other work of the non-Federal entity and can be distributed in proportions that may be approximated using reasonable methods; and

(3) Is necessary to the overall operation of the non-Federal entity and is assignable in part to the Federal award in accordance with the principles in this subpart.

(b) All activities which benefit from the non-Federal entity's indirect (F&A) cost, including unallowable activities and donated services by the non-Federal entity or third parties, will receive an appropriate allocation of indirect costs.

(c) Any cost allocable to a particular Federal award under the principles provided for in this part may not be charged to other Federal awards to overcome fund deficiencies, to avoid restrictions imposed by Federal statutes, regulations, or terms and conditions of the Federal awards, or for other reasons. However, this prohibition would not preclude the non-Federal entity from shifting costs that are allowable under two or more Federal awards in accordance with existing Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal awards.

(d) Direct cost allocation principles: If a cost benefits two or more projects or activities in proportions that can be determined without undue effort or cost, the cost must be allocated to the projects based on the proportional benefit. If a cost benefits two or more projects or activities in proportions that cannot be determined because of the interrelationship of the work involved, then, notwithstanding paragraph (c) of this section, the costs may be allocated or transferred to benefited projects on any reasonable documented basis. Where the purchase of equipment or other capital asset is specifically authorized under a Federal award, the costs are assignable to the Federal award regardless of the use that may be made of the equipment or other capital asset involved when no longer needed for the purpose for which it was originally required. See also §§ 200.310 through 200.316 and 200.439.

(e) If the contract is subject to CAS, costs must be allocated to the contract pursuant to the Cost Accounting Standards. To the extent that CAS is applicable, the allocation of costs in accordance with CAS takes precedence over the allocation provisions in this part.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.406 Applicable credits.

(a) Applicable credits refer to those receipts or reduction-of-expenditure-type transactions that offset or reduce expense items allocable to the Federal award as direct or indirect (F&A) costs. Examples of such transactions are: purchase discounts, rebates or allowances,

OMB Guidance

§ 200.409

recoveries or indemnities on losses, insurance refunds or rebates, and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. To the extent that such credits accruing to or received by the non-Federal entity relate to allowable costs, they must be credited to the Federal award either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate.

(b) In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal Government to finance activities or service operations of the non-Federal entity should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items (including any amounts used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements) must be recognized in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to the Federal award. (See §§ 200.436 and 200.468, for areas of potential application in the matter of Federal financing of activities.)

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.407 Prior written approval (prior approval).

Under any given Federal award, the reasonableness and allocability of certain items of costs may be difficult to determine. In order to avoid subsequent disallowance or dispute based on unreasonableness or nonallocability, the non-Federal entity may seek the prior written approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs or the Federal awarding agency in advance of the incurrence of special or unusual costs. Prior written approval should include the timeframe or scope of the agreement. The absence of prior written approval on any element of cost will not, in itself, affect the reasonableness or allocability of that element, unless prior approval is specifically required for allowability as described under certain circumstances in the following sections of this part:

- (a) § 200.201 Use of grant agreements (including fixed amount awards), cooperative agreements, and contracts, paragraph (b)(5);
- (b) § 200.306 Cost sharing or matching;
- (c) § 200.307 Program income;
- (d) § 200.308 Revision of budget and program plans;
- (e) § 200.311 Real property;

- (f) § 200.313 Equipment;
- (g) § 200.333 Fixed amount subawards;
- (h) § 200.413 Direct costs, paragraph (c);
- (i) § 200.430 Compensation—personal services, paragraph (h);
- (j) § 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits;
- (k) § 200.438 Entertainment costs;
- (l) § 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures;
- (m) § 200.440 Exchange rates;
- (n) § 200.441 Fines, penalties, damages and other settlements;
- (o) § 200.442 Fund raising and investment management costs;
- (p) § 200.445 Goods or services for personal use;
- (q) § 200.447 Insurance and indemnification;
- (r) § 200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs, paragraph (c);
- (s) § 200.455 Organization costs;
- (t) § 200.456 Participant support costs;
- (u) § 200.458 Pre-award costs;
- (v) § 200.462 Rearrangement and re-conversion costs;
- (w) § 200.467 Selling and marketing costs;
- (x) § 200.470 Taxes (including Value Added Tax); and
- (y) § 200.475 Travel costs.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.408 Limitation on allowance of costs.

The Federal award may be subject to statutory requirements that limit the allowability of costs. When the maximum amount allowable under a limitation is less than the total amount determined in accordance with the principles in this part, the amount not recoverable under the Federal award may not be charged to the Federal award.

§ 200.409 Special considerations.

In addition to the basic considerations regarding the allowability of costs highlighted in this subtitle, other subtitles in this part describe special considerations and requirements applicable to states, local governments, Indian tribes, and IHEs. In addition, certain provisions among the items of cost in this subpart are only applicable to

§ 200.410

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

certain types of non-Federal entities, as specified in the following sections:

(a) Direct and Indirect (F&A) Costs (§§ 200.412–200.415) of this subpart;

(b) Special Considerations for States, Local Governments and Indian Tribes (§§ 200.416 and 200.417) of this subpart; and

(c) Special Considerations for Institutions of Higher Education (§§ 200.418 and 200.419) of this subpart.

[85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.410 Collection of unallowable costs.

Payments made for costs determined to be unallowable by either the Federal awarding agency, cognizant agency for indirect costs, or pass-through entity, either as direct or indirect costs, must be refunded (including interest) to the Federal Government in accordance with instructions from the Federal agency that determined the costs are unallowable unless Federal statute or regulation directs otherwise. See also §§ 200.300 through 200.309 in subpart D of this part.

[85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.411 Adjustment of previously negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates containing unallowable costs.

(a) Negotiated indirect (F&A) cost rates based on a proposal later found to have included costs that:

(1) Are unallowable as specified by Federal statutes, regulations or the terms and conditions of a Federal award; or

(2) Are unallowable because they are not allocable to the Federal award(s), must be adjusted, or a refund must be made, in accordance with the requirements of this section. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the proposals used to establish the rates and do not constitute a reopening of the rate negotiation. The adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (pre-determined, final, fixed, or provisional).

(b) For rates covering a future fiscal year of the non-Federal entity, the unallowable costs will be removed from the indirect (F&A) cost pools and the rates appropriately adjusted.

(c) For rates covering a past period, the Federal share of the unallowable costs will be computed for each year involved and a cash refund (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable regulations) will be made to the Federal Government. If cash refunds are made for past periods covered by provisional or fixed rates, appropriate adjustments will be made when the rates are finalized to avoid duplicate recovery of the unallowable costs by the Federal Government.

(d) For rates covering the current period, either a rate adjustment or a refund, as described in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, must be required by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. The choice of method must be at the discretion of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, based on its judgment as to which method would be most practical.

(e) The amount or proportion of unallowable costs included in each year's rate will be assumed to be the same as the amount or proportion of unallowable costs included in the base year proposal used to establish the rate.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT (F&A) COSTS

§ 200.412 Classification of costs.

There is no universal rule for classifying certain costs as either direct or indirect (F&A) under every accounting system. A cost may be direct with respect to some specific service or function, but indirect with respect to the Federal award or other final cost objective. Therefore, it is essential that each item of cost incurred for the same purpose be treated consistently in like circumstances either as a direct or an indirect (F&A) cost in order to avoid possible double-charging of Federal awards. Guidelines for determining direct and indirect (F&A) costs charged to Federal awards are provided in this subpart.

§ 200.413 Direct costs.

(a) *General.* Direct costs are those costs that can be identified specifically with a particular final cost objective, such as a Federal award, or other internally or externally funded activity, or that can be directly assigned to such activities relatively easily with a high

degree of accuracy. Costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances must be treated consistently as either direct or indirect (F&A) costs. See also § 200.405.

(b) *Application to Federal awards.* Identification with the Federal award rather than the nature of the goods and services involved is the determining factor in distinguishing direct from indirect (F&A) costs of Federal awards. Typical costs charged directly to a Federal award are the compensation of employees who work on that award, their related fringe benefit costs, the costs of materials and other items of expense incurred for the Federal award. If directly related to a specific award, certain costs that otherwise would be treated as indirect costs may also be considered direct costs. Examples include extraordinary utility consumption, the cost of materials supplied from stock or services rendered by specialized facilities, program evaluation costs, or other institutional service operations.

(c) The salaries of administrative and clerical staff should normally be treated as indirect (F&A) costs. Direct charging of these costs may be appropriate only if all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Administrative or clerical services are integral to a project or activity;

(2) Individuals involved can be specifically identified with the project or activity;

(3) Such costs are explicitly included in the budget or have the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency; and

(4) The costs are not also recovered as indirect costs.

(d) *Minor items.* Any direct cost of minor amount may be treated as an indirect (F&A) cost for reasons of practicality where such accounting treatment for that item of cost is consistently applied to all Federal and non-Federal cost objectives.

(e) The costs of certain activities are not allowable as charges to Federal awards. However, even though these costs are unallowable for purposes of computing charges to Federal awards, they nonetheless must be treated as direct costs for purposes of determining

indirect (F&A) cost rates and be allocated their equitable share of the non-Federal entity's indirect costs if they represent activities which:

(1) Include the salaries of personnel,

(2) Occupy space, and

(3) Benefit from the non-Federal entity's indirect (F&A) costs.

(f) For nonprofit organizations, the costs of activities performed by the non-Federal entity primarily as a service to members, clients, or the general public when significant and necessary to the non-Federal entity's mission must be treated as direct costs whether or not allowable, and be allocated an equitable share of indirect (F&A) costs. Some examples of these types of activities include:

(1) Maintenance of membership rolls, subscriptions, publications, and related functions. See also § 200.454.

(2) Providing services and information to members, legislative or administrative bodies, or the public. See also §§ 200.454 and 200.450.

(3) Promotion, lobbying, and other forms of public relations. See also §§ 200.421 and 200.450.

(4) Conferences except those held to conduct the general administration of the non-Federal entity. See also § 200.432.

(5) Maintenance, protection, and investment of special funds not used in operation of the non-Federal entity. See also § 200.442.

(6) Administration of group benefits on behalf of members or clients, including life and hospital insurance, annuity or retirement plans, and financial aid. See also § 200.431.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75885, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49562, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.414 Indirect (F&A) costs.

(a) *Facilities and administration classification.* For major Institutions of Higher Education (IHE) and major nonprofit organizations, indirect (F&A) costs must be classified within two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration." "Facilities" is defined as depreciation on buildings, equipment and capital improvement, interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, and operations and

maintenance expenses. “Administration” is defined as general administration and general expenses such as the director’s office, accounting, personnel and all other types of expenditures not listed specifically under one of the sub-categories of “Facilities” (including cross allocations from other pools, where applicable). For nonprofit organizations, library expenses are included in the “Administration” category; for IHEs, they are included in the “Facilities” category. Major IHEs are defined as those required to use the Standard Format for Submission as noted in appendix III to this part, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education paragraph C. 11. Major nonprofit organizations are those which receive more than \$10 million dollars in direct Federal funding.

(b) *Diversity of nonprofit organizations.* Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of nonprofit organizations, it is not possible to specify the types of cost which may be classified as indirect (F&A) cost in all situations. Identification with a Federal award rather than the nature of the goods and services involved is the determining factor in distinguishing direct from indirect (F&A) costs of Federal awards. However, typical examples of indirect (F&A) cost for many nonprofit organizations may include depreciation on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities, and general administration and general expenses, such as the salaries and expenses of executive officers, personnel administration, and accounting.

(c) *Federal Agency Acceptance of Negotiated Indirect Cost Rates.* (See also § 200.306.)

(1) The negotiated rates must be accepted by all Federal awarding agencies. A Federal awarding agency may use a rate different from the negotiated rate for a class of Federal awards or a single Federal award only when required by Federal statute or regulation, or when approved by a Federal awarding agency head or delegate based on documented justification as described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(2) The Federal awarding agency head or delegate must notify OMB of any approved deviations.

(3) The Federal awarding agency must implement, and make publicly available, the policies, procedures and general decision-making criteria that their programs will follow to seek and justify deviations from negotiated rates.

(4) As required under § 200.204, the Federal awarding agency must include in the notice of funding opportunity the policies relating to indirect cost rate reimbursement, matching, or cost share as approved under paragraph (e)(1) of this section. As appropriate, the Federal agency should incorporate discussion of these policies into Federal awarding agency outreach activities with non-Federal entities prior to the posting of a notice of funding opportunity.

(d) Pass-through entities are subject to the requirements in § 200.332(a)(4).

(e) Requirements for development and submission of indirect (F&A) cost rate proposals and cost allocation plans are contained in Appendices III–VII and Appendix IX as follows:

(1) Appendix III to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs);

(2) Appendix IV to Part 200—Indirect (F&A) Costs Identification and Assignment, and Rate Determination for Nonprofit Organizations;

(3) Appendix V to Part 200—State/Local Governmentwide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans;

(4) Appendix VI to Part 200—Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans;

(5) Appendix VII to Part 200—States and Local Government and Indian Tribe Indirect Cost Proposals; and

(6) Appendix IX to Part 200—Hospital Cost Principles.

(f) In addition to the procedures outlined in the appendices in paragraph (e) of this section, any non-Federal entity that does not have a current negotiated (including provisional) rate, except for those non-Federal entities described in appendix VII to this part, paragraph D.1.b, may elect to charge a de minimis rate of 10% of modified total direct costs (MTDC) which may be used indefinitely. No documentation

OMB Guidance

§ 200.415

is required to justify the 10% de minimis indirect cost rate. As described in § 200.403, costs must be consistently charged as either indirect or direct costs, but may not be double charged or inconsistently charged as both. If chosen, this methodology once elected must be used consistently for all Federal awards until such time as a non-Federal entity chooses to negotiate for a rate, which the non-Federal entity may apply to do at any time.

(g) Any non-Federal entity that has a current federally-negotiated indirect cost rate may apply for a one-time extension of the rates in that agreement for a period of up to four years. This extension will be subject to the review and approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs. If an extension is granted the non-Federal entity may not request a rate review until the extension period ends. At the end of the 4-year extension, the non-Federal entity must re-apply to negotiate a rate. Subsequent one-time extensions (up to four years) are permitted if a renegotiation is completed between each extension request.

(h) The federally negotiated indirect rate, distribution base, and rate type for a non-Federal entity (except for the Indian tribes or tribal organizations, as defined in the Indian Self Determination, Education and Assistance Act, 25 U.S.C. 450b(1)) must be available publicly on an OMB-designated Federal website.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49563, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.415 Required certifications.

Required certifications include:

(a) To assure that expenditures are proper and in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Federal award and approved project budgets, the annual and final fiscal reports or vouchers requesting payment under the agreements must include a certification, signed by an official who is authorized to legally bind the non-Federal entity, which reads as follows: “By signing this report, I certify to the best of my knowledge and belief that the report is true, complete, and accurate, and the expenditures, disbursements and cash receipts are for the purposes

and objectives set forth in the terms and conditions of the Federal award. I am aware that any false, fictitious, or fraudulent information, or the omission of any material fact, may subject me to criminal, civil or administrative penalties for fraud, false statements, false claims or otherwise. (U.S. Code Title 18, Section 1001 and Title 31, Sections 3729-3730 and 3801-3812).”

(b) Certification of cost allocation plan or indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal. Each cost allocation plan or indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal must comply with the following:

(1) A proposal to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect (F&A) cost rate, whether submitted to a Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs or maintained on file by the non-Federal entity, must be certified by the non-Federal entity using the Certificate of Cost Allocation Plan or Certificate of Indirect Costs as set forth in appendices III through VII, and IX of this part. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the non-Federal entity by an individual at a level no lower than vice president or chief financial officer of the non-Federal entity that submits the proposal.

(2) Unless the non-Federal entity has elected the option under § 200.414(f), the Federal Government may either disallow all indirect (F&A) costs or unilaterally establish such a plan or rate when the non-Federal entity fails to submit a certified proposal for establishing such a plan or rate in accordance with the requirements. Such a plan or rate may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant agency for indirect costs and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate is unilaterally established by the Federal Government because the non-Federal entity failed to submit a certified proposal, the plan or rate established will be set to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.

(c) Certifications by nonprofit organizations as appropriate that they did not meet the definition of a major nonprofit organization as defined in § 200.414(a).

§ 200.416

(d) See also § 200.450 for another required certification.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49563, Aug. 13, 2020]

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR STATES, LOCAL GOVERNMENTS AND INDIAN TRIBES

§ 200.416 Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals.

(a) For states, local governments and Indian tribes, certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., are provided to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Since Federal awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process whereby these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan provides that process.

(b) Individual operating agencies (governmental department or agency), normally charge Federal awards for indirect costs through an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) proposal for each operating agency is usually necessary to claim indirect costs under Federal awards. Indirect costs include:

(1) The indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and

(2) The costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan and not otherwise treated as direct costs.

(c) The requirements for development and submission of cost allocation plans (for central service costs and public assistance programs) and indirect cost rate proposals are contained in appendices IV, V and VI to this part.

§ 200.417 Interagency service.

The cost of services provided by one agency to another within the governmental unit may include allowable direct costs of the service plus a prorated share of indirect costs. A standard indirect cost allowance equal to ten percent of the direct salary and wage cost of providing the service (excluding overtime, shift premiums, and

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

fringe benefits) may be used in lieu of determining the actual indirect costs of the service. These services do not include centralized services included in central service cost allocation plans as described in Appendix V to Part 200.

[85 FR 49564, Aug. 13, 2020]

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER EDUCATION

§ 200.418 Costs incurred by states and local governments.

Costs incurred or paid by a state or local government on behalf of its IHEs for fringe benefit programs, such as pension costs and FICA and any other costs specifically incurred on behalf of, and in direct benefit to, the IHEs, are allowable costs of such IHEs whether or not these costs are recorded in the accounting records of the institutions, subject to the following:

(a) The costs meet the requirements of § 200.402–411 of this subpart;

(b) The costs are properly supported by approved cost allocation plans in accordance with applicable Federal cost accounting principles in this part; and

(c) The costs are not otherwise borne directly or indirectly by the Federal Government.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49564, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.419 Cost accounting standards and disclosure statement.

(a) An IHE that receive an aggregate total \$50 million or more in Federal awards and instruments subject to this subpart (as specified in § 200.101) in its most recently completed fiscal year must comply with the Cost Accounting Standards Board's cost accounting standards located at 48 CFR 9905.501, 9905.502, 9905.505, and 9905.506. CAS-covered contracts and subcontracts awarded to the IHEs are subject to the broader range of CAS requirements at 48 CFR 9900 through 9999 and 48 CFR part 30 (FAR Part 30).

(b) *Disclosure statement.* An IHE that receives an aggregate total \$50 million or more in Federal awards and instruments subject to this subpart (as specified in § 200.101) during its most recently completed fiscal year must disclose their cost accounting practices by filing a Disclosure Statement (DS–

2), which is reproduced in Appendix III to Part 200. With the approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, an IHE may meet the DS-2 submission by submitting the DS-2 for each business unit that received \$50 million or more in Federal awards and instruments.

(1) The DS-2 must be submitted to the cognizant agency for indirect costs with a copy to the IHE's cognizant agency for audit. The initial DS-2 and revisions to the DS-2 must be submitted in coordination with the IHE's indirect (F&A) rate proposal, unless an earlier submission is requested by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. IHEs with CAS-covered contracts or subcontracts meeting the dollar threshold in 48 CFR 9903.202-1(f) must submit their initial DS-2 or revisions no later than prior to the award of a CAS-covered contract or subcontract.

(2) An IHE must maintain an accurate DS-2 and comply with disclosed cost accounting practices. An IHE must file amendments to the DS-2 to the cognizant agency for indirect costs in advance of a disclosed practice being changed to comply with a new or modified standard, or when a practice is changed for other reasons. An IHE may proceed with implementing the change after it has notified the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs. If the change represents a variation from 2 CFR part 200, the change may require approval by the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs, in accordance with § 200.102(b). Amendments of a DS-2 may be submitted at any time. Re-submission of a complete, updated DS-2 is discouraged except when there are extensive changes to disclosed practices.

(3) *Cost and funding adjustments.* Cost adjustments must be made by the cognizant agency for indirect costs if an IHE fails to comply with the cost policies in this part or fails to consistently follow its established or disclosed cost accounting practices when estimating, accumulating or reporting the costs of Federal awards, and the aggregate cost impact on Federal awards is material. The cost adjustment must normally be made on an aggregate basis for all affected Federal awards through an adjustment of the IHE's future F&A costs rates or other means considered appro-

priate by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Under the terms of CAS covered contracts, adjustments in the amount of funding provided may also be required when the estimated proposal costs were not determined in accordance with established cost accounting practices.

(4) *Overpayments.* Excess amounts paid in the aggregate by the Federal Government under Federal awards due to a noncompliant cost accounting practice used to estimate, accumulate, or report costs must be credited or refunded, as deemed appropriate by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Interest applicable to the excess amounts paid in the aggregate during the period of noncompliance must also be determined and collected in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations.

(5) *Compliant cost accounting practice changes.* Changes from one compliant cost accounting practice to another compliant practice that are approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs may require cost adjustments if the change has a material effect on Federal awards and the changes are deemed appropriate by the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

(6) *Responsibilities.* The cognizant agency for indirect cost must:

(i) Determine cost adjustments for all Federal awards in the aggregate on behalf of the Federal Government. Actions of the cognizant agency for indirect cost in making cost adjustment determinations must be coordinated with all affected Federal awarding agencies to the extent necessary.

(ii) Prescribe guidelines and establish internal procedures to promptly determine on behalf of the Federal Government that a DS-2 adequately discloses the IHE's cost accounting practices and that the disclosed practices are compliant with applicable CAS and the requirements of this part.

(iii) Distribute to all affected Federal awarding agencies any DS-2 determination of adequacy or noncompliance.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49564, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.420

GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR SELECTED ITEMS OF COST

§ 200.420 Considerations for selected items of cost.

This section provides principles to be applied in establishing the allowability of certain items involved in determining cost, in addition to the requirements of Subtitle II of this subpart. These principles apply whether or not a particular item of cost is properly treated as direct cost or indirect (F&A) cost. Failure to mention a particular item of cost is not intended to imply that it is either allowable or unallowable; rather, determination as to allowability in each case should be based on the treatment provided for similar or related items of cost, and based on the principles described in §§ 200.402 through 200.411. In case of a discrepancy between the provisions of a specific Federal award and the provisions below, the Federal award governs. Criteria outlined in § 200.403 must be applied in determining allowability. See also § 200.102.

[85 FR 49564, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.421 Advertising and public relations.

(a) The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs. Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.

(b) The only allowable advertising costs are those which are solely for:

(1) The recruitment of personnel required by the non-Federal entity for performance of a Federal award (See also § 200.463);

(2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a Federal award;

(3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a Federal award except when non-Federal entities are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or

(4) Program outreach and other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the Federal award.

(c) The term “public relations” includes community relations and means

those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the non-Federal entity or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.

(d) The only allowable public relations costs are:

(1) Costs specifically required by the Federal award;

(2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of the Federal award (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the Federal award); or

(3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison necessary to keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of funding opportunities, financial matters, etc.

(e) Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:

(1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in paragraphs (b) and (d) of this section;

(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the entity (see also § 200.432), including:

(i) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;

(ii) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and

(iii) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the non-Federal entity.

[78 FR 76808, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49564, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.422 Advisory councils.

Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are unallowable unless authorized by statute, the Federal

OMB Guidance

§ 200.428

awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to Federal awards. See § 200.444, applicable to States, local governments, and Indian tribes.

[85 FR 49564, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.423 Alcoholic beverages.

Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

§ 200.424 Alumni/ae activities.

Costs incurred by IHEs for, or in support of, alumni/ae activities are unallowable.

§ 200.425 Audit services.

(a) A reasonably proportionate share of the costs of audits required by, and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507), as implemented by requirements of this part, are allowable. However, the following audit costs are unallowable:

(1) Any costs when audits required by the Single Audit Act and subpart F of this part have not been conducted or have been conducted but not in accordance therewith; and

(2) Any costs of auditing a non-Federal entity that is exempted from having an audit conducted under the Single Audit Act and subpart F of this part because its expenditures under Federal awards are less than \$750,000 during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year.

(b) The costs of a financial statement audit of a non-Federal entity that does not currently have a Federal award may be included in the indirect cost pool for a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal.

(c) Pass-through entities may charge Federal awards for the cost of agreed-upon-procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients (in accordance with subpart D, §§ 200.331–333) who are exempted from the requirements of the Single Audit Act and subpart F of this part. This cost is allowable only if the agreed-upon-procedures engagements are:

(1) Conducted in accordance with GAGAS attestation standards;

(2) Paid for and arranged by the pass-through entity; and

(3) Limited in scope to one or more of the following types of compliance requirements: activities allowed or unallowed; allowable costs/cost principles; eligibility; and reporting.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49564, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.426 Bad debts.

Bad debts (debts which have been determined to be uncollectable), including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectable accounts and other claims, are unallowable. Related collection costs, and related legal costs, arising from such debts after they have been determined to be uncollectable are also unallowable. See also § 200.428.

[85 FR 49565, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.427 Bonding costs.

(a) Bonding costs arise when the Federal awarding agency requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the non-Federal entity. They arise also in instances where the non-Federal entity requires similar assurance, including: bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds for employees and officials.

(b) Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms and conditions of the Federal award are allowable.

(c) Costs of bonding required by the non-Federal entity in the general conduct of its operations are allowable as an indirect cost to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

§ 200.428 Collections of improper payments.

The costs incurred by a non-Federal entity to recover improper payments are allowable as either direct or indirect costs, as appropriate. Amounts collected may be used by the non-Federal entity in accordance with cash management standards set forth in § 200.305.

[85 FR 49565, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.429 Commencement and convocation costs.

For IHEs, costs incurred for commencements and convocations are unallowable, except as provided for in (B)(9) Student Administration and Services, in appendix III to this part, as activity costs.

[85 FR 49565, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.430 Compensation—personal services.

(a) *General.* Compensation for personal services includes all remuneration, paid currently or accrued, for services of employees rendered during the period of performance under the Federal award, including but not necessarily limited to wages and salaries. Compensation for personal services may also include fringe benefits which are addressed in § 200.431. Costs of compensation are allowable to the extent that they satisfy the specific requirements of this part, and that the total compensation for individual employees:

(1) Is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established written policy of the non-Federal entity consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities;

(2) Follows an appointment made in accordance with a non-Federal entity's laws and/or rules or written policies and meets the requirements of Federal statute, where applicable; and

(3) Is determined and supported as provided in paragraph (i) of this section, when applicable.

(b) *Reasonableness.* Compensation for employees engaged in work on Federal awards will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is consistent with that paid for similar work in other activities of the non-Federal entity. In cases where the kinds of employees required for Federal awards are not found in the other activities of the non-Federal entity, compensation will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is comparable to that paid for similar work in the labor market in which the non-Federal entity competes for the kind of employees involved.

(c) *Professional activities outside the non-Federal entity.* Unless an arrangement is specifically authorized by a

Federal awarding agency, a non-Federal entity must follow its written non-Federal entity-wide policies and practices concerning the permissible extent of professional services that can be provided outside the non-Federal entity for non-organizational compensation. Where such non-Federal entity-wide written policies do not exist or do not adequately define the permissible extent of consulting or other non-organizational activities undertaken for extra outside pay, the Federal Government may require that the effort of professional staff working on Federal awards be allocated between:

(1) Non-Federal entity activities, and

(2) Non-organizational professional activities. If the Federal awarding agency considers the extent of non-organizational professional effort excessive or inconsistent with the conflicts-of-interest terms and conditions of the Federal award, appropriate arrangements governing compensation will be negotiated on a case-by-case basis.

(d) *Unallowable costs.* (1) Costs which are unallowable under other sections of these principles must not be allowable under this section solely on the basis that they constitute personnel compensation.

(2) The allowable compensation for certain employees is subject to a ceiling in accordance with statute. For the amount of the ceiling for cost-reimbursement contracts, the covered compensation subject to the ceiling, the covered employees, and other relevant provisions, see 10 U.S.C. 2324(e)(1)(P), and 41 U.S.C. 1127 and 4304(a)(16). For other types of Federal awards, other statutory ceilings may apply.

(e) *Special considerations.* Special considerations in determining allowability of compensation will be given to any change in a non-Federal entity's compensation policy resulting in a substantial increase in its employees' level of compensation (particularly when the change was concurrent with an increase in the ratio of Federal awards to other activities) or any change in the treatment of allowability of specific types of compensation due to changes in Federal policy.

(f) *Incentive compensation.* Incentive compensation to employees based on

cost reduction, or efficient performance, suggestion awards, safety awards, etc., is allowable to the extent that the overall compensation is determined to be reasonable and such costs are paid or accrued pursuant to an agreement entered into in good faith between the non-Federal entity and the employees before the services were rendered, or pursuant to an established plan followed by the non-Federal entity so consistently as to imply, in effect, an agreement to make such payment.

(g) *Nonprofit organizations.* For compensation to members of nonprofit organizations, trustees, directors, associates, officers, or the immediate families thereof, determination must be made that such compensation is reasonable for the actual personal services rendered rather than a distribution of earnings in excess of costs. This may include director's and executive committee member's fees, incentive awards, allowances for off-site pay, incentive pay, location allowances, hardship pay, and cost-of-living differentials.

(h) *Institutions of Higher Education (IHEs).* (1) Certain conditions require special consideration and possible limitations in determining allowable personnel compensation costs under Federal awards. Among such conditions are the following:

(i) Allowable activities. Charges to Federal awards may include reasonable amounts for activities contributing and directly related to work under an agreement, such as delivering special lectures about specific aspects of the ongoing activity, writing reports and articles, developing and maintaining protocols (human, animals, etc.), managing substances/chemicals, managing and securing project-specific data, coordinating research subjects, participating in appropriate seminars, consulting with colleagues and graduate students, and attending meetings and conferences.

(ii) Incidental activities. Incidental activities for which supplemental compensation is allowable under written institutional policy (at a rate not to exceed institutional base salary) need not be included in the records described in paragraph (i) of this section to directly charge payments of incidental

activities, such activities must either be specifically provided for in the Federal award budget or receive prior written approval by the Federal awarding agency.

(2) *Salary basis.* Charges for work performed on Federal awards by faculty members during the academic year are allowable at the IBS rate. Except as noted in paragraph (h)(1)(ii) of this section, in no event will charges to Federal awards, irrespective of the basis of computation, exceed the proportionate share of the IBS for that period. This principle applies to all members of faculty at an institution. IBS is defined as the annual compensation paid by an IHE for an individual's appointment, whether that individual's time is spent on research, instruction, administration, or other activities. IBS excludes any income that an individual earns outside of duties performed for the IHE. Unless there is prior approval by the Federal awarding agency, charges of a faculty member's salary to a Federal award must not exceed the proportionate share of the IBS for the period during which the faculty member worked on the award.

(3) *Intra-Institution of Higher Education (IHE) consulting.* Intra-IHE consulting by faculty should be undertaken as an IHE responsibility requiring no compensation in addition to IBS. However, in unusual cases where consultation is across departmental lines or involves a separate or remote operation, and the work performed by the faculty member is in addition to his or her regular responsibilities, any charges for such work representing additional compensation above IBS are allowable provided that such consulting arrangements are specifically provided for in the Federal award or approved in writing by the Federal awarding agency.

(4) Extra Service Pay normally represents overload compensation, subject to institutional compensation policies for services above and beyond IBS. Where extra service pay is a result of Intra-IHE consulting, it is subject to the same requirements of paragraph (b) above. It is allowable if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) The non-Federal entity establishes consistent written policies which

apply uniformly to all faculty members, not just those working on Federal awards.

(ii) The non-Federal entity establishes a consistent written definition of work covered by IBS which is specific enough to determine conclusively when work beyond that level has occurred. This may be described in appointment letters or other documentations.

(iii) The supplementation amount paid is commensurate with the IBS rate of pay and the amount of additional work performed. See paragraph (h)(2) of this section.

(iv) The salaries, as supplemented, fall within the salary structure and pay ranges established by and documented in writing or otherwise applicable to the non-Federal entity.

(v) The total salaries charged to Federal awards including extra service pay are subject to the Standards of Documentation as described in paragraph (i) of this section.

(5) *Periods outside the academic year.*

(i) Except as specified for teaching activity in paragraph (h)(5)(ii) of this section, charges for work performed by faculty members on Federal awards during periods not included in the base salary period will be at a rate not in excess of the IBS.

(ii) Charges for teaching activities performed by faculty members on Federal awards during periods not included in IBS period will be based on the normal written policy of the IHE governing compensation to faculty members for teaching assignments during such periods.

(6) *Part-time faculty.* Charges for work performed on Federal awards by faculty members having only part-time appointments will be determined at a rate not in excess of that regularly paid for part-time assignments.

(7) *Sabbatical leave costs.* Rules for sabbatical leave are as follow:

(i) Costs of leaves of absence by employees for performance of graduate work or sabbatical study, travel, or research are allowable provided the IHE has a uniform written policy on sabbatical leave for persons engaged in instruction and persons engaged in research. Such costs will be allocated on an equitable basis among all related activities of the IHE.

(ii) Where sabbatical leave is included in fringe benefits for which a cost is determined for assessment as a direct charge, the aggregate amount of such assessments applicable to all work of the institution during the base period must be reasonable in relation to the IHE's actual experience under its sabbatical leave policy.

(8) *Salary rates for non-faculty members.* Non-faculty full-time professional personnel may also earn "extra service pay" in accordance with the non-Federal entity's written policy and consistent with paragraph (h)(1)(i) of this section.

(i) *Standards for Documentation of Personnel Expenses* (1) Charges to Federal awards for salaries and wages must be based on records that accurately reflect the work performed. These records must:

(i) Be supported by a system of internal control which provides reasonable assurance that the charges are accurate, allowable, and properly allocated;

(ii) Be incorporated into the official records of the non-Federal entity;

(iii) Reasonably reflect the total activity for which the employee is compensated by the non-Federal entity, not exceeding 100% of compensated activities (for IHE, this per the IHE's definition of IBS);

(iv) Encompass federally-assisted and all other activities compensated by the non-Federal entity on an integrated basis, but may include the use of subsidiary records as defined in the non-Federal entity's written policy;

(v) Comply with the established accounting policies and practices of the non-Federal entity (See paragraph (h)(1)(ii) above for treatment of incidental work for IHEs.); and

(vi) [Reserved]

(vii) Support the distribution of the employee's salary or wages among specific activities or cost objectives if the employee works on more than one Federal award; a Federal award and non-Federal award; an indirect cost activity and a direct cost activity; two or more indirect activities which are allocated using different allocation bases; or an unallowable activity and a direct or indirect cost activity.

(viii) Budget estimates (i.e., estimates determined before the services

are performed) alone do not qualify as support for charges to Federal awards, but may be used for interim accounting purposes, provided that:

(A) The system for establishing the estimates produces reasonable approximations of the activity actually performed;

(B) Significant changes in the corresponding work activity (as defined by the non-Federal entity's written policies) are identified and entered into the records in a timely manner. Short term (such as one or two months) fluctuation between workload categories need not be considered as long as the distribution of salaries and wages is reasonable over the longer term; and

(C) The non-Federal entity's system of internal controls includes processes to review after-the-fact interim charges made to a Federal award based on budget estimates. All necessary adjustment must be made such that the final amount charged to the Federal award is accurate, allowable, and properly allocated.

(ix) Because practices vary as to the activity constituting a full workload (for IHEs, IBS), records may reflect categories of activities expressed as a percentage distribution of total activities.

(x) It is recognized that teaching, research, service, and administration are often inextricably intermingled in an academic setting. When recording salaries and wages charged to Federal awards for IHEs, a precise assessment of factors that contribute to costs is therefore not always feasible, nor is it expected.

(2) For records which meet the standards required in paragraph (i)(1) of this section, the non-Federal entity will not be required to provide additional support or documentation for the work performed, other than that referenced in paragraph (i)(3) of this section.

(3) In accordance with Department of Labor regulations implementing the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA) (29 CFR part 516), charges for the salaries and wages of nonexempt employees, in addition to the supporting documentation described in this section, must also be supported by records indicating the total number of hours worked each day.

(4) Salaries and wages of employees used in meeting cost sharing or matching requirements on Federal awards must be supported in the same manner as salaries and wages claimed for reimbursement from Federal awards.

(5) For states, local governments and Indian tribes, substitute processes or systems for allocating salaries and wages to Federal awards may be used in place of or in addition to the records described in paragraph (1) if approved by the cognizant agency for indirect cost. Such systems may include, but are not limited to, random moment sampling, "rolling" time studies, case counts, or other quantifiable measures of work performed.

(i) Substitute systems which use sampling methods (primarily for Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF), the Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program (SNAP), Medicaid, and other public assistance programs) must meet acceptable statistical sampling standards including:

(A) The sampling universe must include all of the employees whose salaries and wages are to be allocated based on sample results except as provided in paragraph (i)(5)(iii) of this section;

(B) The entire time period involved must be covered by the sample; and

(C) The results must be statistically valid and applied to the period being sampled.

(ii) Allocating charges for the sampled employees' supervisors, clerical and support staffs, based on the results of the sampled employees, will be acceptable.

(iii) Less than full compliance with the statistical sampling standards noted in subsection (5)(i) may be accepted by the cognizant agency for indirect costs if it concludes that the amounts to be allocated to Federal awards will be minimal, or if it concludes that the system proposed by the non-Federal entity will result in lower costs to Federal awards than a system which complies with the standards.

(6) Cognizant agencies for indirect costs are encouraged to approve alternative proposals based on outcomes and milestones for program performance where these are clearly documented. Where approved by the Federal

cognizant agency for indirect costs, these plans are acceptable as an alternative to the requirements of paragraph (i)(1) of this section.

(7) For Federal awards of similar purpose activity or instances of approved blended funding, a non-Federal entity may submit performance plans that incorporate funds from multiple Federal awards and account for their combined use based on performance-oriented metrics, provided that such plans are approved in advance by all involved Federal awarding agencies. In these instances, the non-Federal entity must submit a request for waiver of the requirements based on documentation that describes the method of charging costs, relates the charging of costs to the specific activity that is applicable to all fund sources, and is based on quantifiable measures of the activity in relation to time charged.

(8) For a non-Federal entity where the records do not meet the standards described in this section, the Federal Government may require personnel activity reports, including prescribed certifications, or equivalent documentation that support the records as required in this section.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49565, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.431 Compensation—fringe benefits.

(a) *General.* Fringe benefits are allowances and services provided by employers to their employees as compensation in addition to regular salaries and wages. Fringe benefits include, but are not limited to, the costs of leave (vacation, family-related, sick or military), employee insurance, pensions, and unemployment benefit plans. Except as provided elsewhere in these principles, the costs of fringe benefits are allowable provided that the benefits are reasonable and are required by law, non-Federal entity-employee agreement, or an established policy of the non-Federal entity.

(b) *Leave.* The cost of fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as for annual leave, family-related leave, sick leave, holidays, court leave, mili-

tary leave, administrative leave, and other similar benefits, are allowable if all of the following criteria are met:

(1) They are provided under established written leave policies;

(2) The costs are equitably allocated to all related activities, including Federal awards; and,

(3) The accounting basis (cash or accrual) selected for costing each type of leave is consistently followed by the non-Federal entity or specified grouping of employees.

(i) When a non-Federal entity uses the cash basis of accounting, the cost of leave is recognized in the period that the leave is taken and paid for. Payments for unused leave when an employee retires or terminates employment are allowable in the year of payment.

(ii) The accrual basis may be only used for those types of leave for which a liability as defined by GAAP exists when the leave is earned. When a non-Federal entity uses the accrual basis of accounting, allowable leave costs are the lesser of the amount accrued or funded.

(c) *Fringe benefits.* The cost of fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security; employee life, health, unemployment, and worker's compensation insurance (except as indicated in § 200.447); pension plan costs (see paragraph (i) of this section); and other similar benefits are allowable, provided such benefits are granted under established written policies. Such benefits, must be allocated to Federal awards and all other activities in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits attributable to the individuals or group(s) of employees whose salaries and wages are chargeable to such Federal awards and other activities, and charged as direct or indirect costs in accordance with the non-Federal entity's accounting practices.

(d) *Cost objectives.* Fringe benefits may be assigned to cost objectives by identifying specific benefits to specific individual employees or by allocating on the basis of entity-wide salaries and wages of the employees receiving the benefits. When the allocation method is used, separate allocations must be

made to selective groupings of employees, unless the non-Federal entity demonstrates that costs in relationship to salaries and wages do not differ significantly for different groups of employees.

(e) *Insurance.* See also § 200.447(d)(1) and (2).

(1) Provisions for a reserve under a self-insurance program for unemployment compensation or workers' compensation are allowable to the extent that the provisions represent reasonable estimates of the liabilities for such compensation, and the types of coverage, extent of coverage, and rates and premiums would have been allowable had insurance been purchased to cover the risks. However, provisions for self-insured liabilities which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made must not exceed the present value of the liability.

(2) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibility are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation. The costs of such insurance when the non-Federal entity is named as beneficiary are unallowable.

(3) Actual claims paid to or on behalf of employees or former employees for workers' compensation, unemployment compensation, severance pay, and similar employee benefits (*e.g.*, post-retirement health benefits), are allowable in the year of payment provided that the non-Federal entity follows a consistent costing policy.

(f) *Automobiles.* That portion of automobile costs furnished by the non-Federal entity that relates to personal use by employees (including transportation to and from work) is unallowable as fringe benefit or indirect (F&A) costs regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

(g) *Pension plan costs.* Pension plan costs which are incurred in accordance with the established policies of the non-Federal entity are allowable, provided that:

(1) Such policies meet the test of reasonableness.

(2) The methods of cost allocation are not discriminatory.

(3) Except for State and Local Governments, the cost assigned to each fiscal year should be determined in accordance with GAAP.

(4) The costs assigned to a given fiscal year are funded for all plan participants within six months after the end of that year. However, increases to normal and past service pension costs caused by a delay in funding the actuarial liability beyond 30 calendar days after each quarter of the year to which such costs are assignable are unallowable. Non-Federal entity may elect to follow the "Cost Accounting Standard for Composition and Measurement of Pension Costs" (48 CFR 9904.412).

(5) Pension plan termination insurance premiums paid pursuant to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1301-1461) are allowable. Late payment charges on such premiums are unallowable. Excise taxes on accumulated funding deficiencies and other penalties imposed under ERISA are unallowable.

(6) Pension plan costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the non-Federal entity.

(i) For pension plans financed on a pay-as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(ii) Pension costs calculated using an actuarial cost-based method recognized by GAAP are allowable for a given fiscal year if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six-month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency for indirect costs) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency for indirect costs may agree to an extension of the six-month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursement and the non-Federal entity's contribution to the pension fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal Government

for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the pension fund.

(iii) Amounts funded by the non-Federal entity in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the non-Federal entity's contribution in future periods.

(iv) When a non-Federal entity converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method, as defined by GAAP, and funds pension costs in accordance with this method, the unfunded liability at the time of conversion is allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP.

(v) The Federal Government must receive an equitable share of any previously allowed pension costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the non-Federal entity in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

(h) *Post-retirement health.* Post-retirement health plans (PRHP) refers to costs of health insurance or health services not included in a pension plan covered by paragraph (g) of this section for retirees and their spouses, dependents, and survivors. PRHP costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the non-Federal entity.

(1) For PRHP financed on a pay-as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(2) PRHP costs calculated using an actuarial cost method recognized by GAAP are allowable if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six-month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs may agree to an extension of the six-month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursements and the non-Federal entity's contributions to the PRHP fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund, reduction in current year's PRHP costs, or other equitable procedures to

compensate the Federal Government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the PRHP fund.

(3) Amounts funded in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the non-Federal entity contribution in a future period.

(4) When a non-Federal entity converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method and funds PRHP costs in accordance with this method, the initial unfunded liability attributable to prior years is allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP, or, if no such GAAP period exists, over a period negotiated with the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

(5) To be allowable in the current year, the PRHP costs must be paid either to:

(i) An insurer or other benefit provider as current year costs or premiums, or

(ii) An insurer or trustee to maintain a trust fund or reserve for the sole purpose of providing post-retirement benefits to retirees and other beneficiaries.

(6) The Federal Government must receive an equitable share of any amounts of previously allowed post-retirement benefit costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the non-Federal entity in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

(i) *Severance pay.* (1) Severance pay, also commonly referred to as dismissal wages, is a payment in addition to regular salaries and wages, by non-Federal entities to workers whose employment is being terminated. Costs of severance pay are allowable only to the extent that in each case, it is required by

(i) Law;

(ii) Employer-employee agreement;

(iii) Established policy that constitutes, in effect, an implied agreement on the non-Federal entity's part; or

(iv) Circumstances of the particular employment.

(2) Costs of severance payments are divided into two categories as follows:

(i) Actual normal turnover severance payments must be allocated to all activities; or, where the non-Federal entity provides for a reserve for normal

severances, such method will be acceptable if the charge to current operations is reasonable in light of payments actually made for normal severances over a representative past period, and if amounts charged are allocated to all activities of the non-Federal entity.

(ii) Measurement of costs of abnormal or mass severance pay by means of an accrual will not achieve equity to both parties. Thus, accruals for this purpose are not allowable. However, the Federal Government recognizes its responsibility to participate, to the extent of its fair share, in any specific payment. Prior approval by the Federal awarding agency or cognizant agency for indirect cost, as appropriate, is required.

(3) Costs incurred in certain severance pay packages which are in an amount in excess of the normal severance pay paid by the non-Federal entity to an employee upon termination of employment and are paid to the employee contingent upon a change in management control over, or ownership of, the non-Federal entity's assets, are unallowable.

(4) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the non-Federal entity outside the United States, to the extent that the amount exceeds the customary or prevailing practices for the non-Federal entity in the United States, are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by the Federal awarding agency.

(5) Severance payments to foreign nationals employed by the non-Federal entity outside the United States due to the termination of the foreign national as a result of the closing of, or curtailment of activities by, the non-Federal entity in that country, are unallowable, unless they are necessary for the performance of Federal programs and approved by the Federal awarding agency.

(j) *For IHEs only.* (1) Fringe benefits in the form of undergraduate and graduate tuition or remission of tuition for individual employees are allowable, provided such benefits are granted in accordance with established non-Federal entity policies, and are distributed to all non-Federal entity activities on

an equitable basis. Tuition benefits for family members other than the employee are unallowable.

(2) Fringe benefits in the form of tuition or remission of tuition for individual employees not employed by IHEs are limited to the tax-free amount allowed per section 127 of the Internal Revenue Code as amended.

(3) IHEs may offer employees tuition waivers or tuition reductions, provided that the benefit does not discriminate in favor of highly compensated employees. Employees can exercise these benefits at other institutions according to institutional policy. See §200.466, for treatment of tuition remission provided to students.

(k) *Fringe benefit programs and other benefit costs.* For IHEs whose costs are paid by state or local governments, fringe benefit programs (such as pension costs and FICA) and any other benefits costs specifically incurred on behalf of, and in direct benefit to, the non-Federal entity, are allowable costs of such non-Federal entities whether or not these costs are recorded in the accounting records of the non-Federal entities, subject to the following:

(1) The costs meet the requirements of Basic Considerations in §§200.402 through 200.411;

(2) The costs are properly supported by approved cost allocation plans in accordance with applicable Federal cost accounting principles; and

(3) The costs are not otherwise borne directly or indirectly by the Federal Government.

[85 FR 49565, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.432 Conferences.

A conference is defined as a meeting, retreat, seminar, symposium, workshop or event whose primary purpose is the dissemination of technical information beyond the non-Federal entity and is necessary and reasonable for successful performance under the Federal award. Allowable conference costs paid by the non-Federal entity as a sponsor or host of the conference may include rental of facilities, speakers' fees, costs of meals and refreshments, local transportation, and other items incidental to such conferences unless further restricted by the terms and conditions of the Federal award. As

§ 200.433

needed, the costs of identifying, but not providing, locally available dependent-care resources are allowable. Conference hosts/sponsors must exercise discretion and judgment in ensuring that conference costs are appropriate, necessary and managed in a manner that minimizes costs to the Federal award. The Federal awarding agency may authorize exceptions where appropriate for programs including Indian tribes, children, and the elderly. See also §§ 200.438, 200.456, and 200.475.

[85 FR 49567, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.433 Contingency provisions.

(a) Contingency is that part of a budget estimate of future costs (typically of large construction projects, IT systems, or other items as approved by the Federal awarding agency) which is associated with possible events or conditions arising from causes the precise outcome of which is indeterminable at the time of estimate, and that experience shows will likely result, in aggregate, in additional costs for the approved activity or project. Amounts for major project scope changes, unforeseen risks, or extraordinary events may not be included.

(b) It is permissible for contingency amounts other than those excluded in paragraph (a) of this section to be explicitly included in budget estimates, to the extent they are necessary to improve the precision of those estimates. Amounts must be estimated using broadly-accepted cost estimating methodologies, specified in the budget documentation of the Federal award, and accepted by the Federal awarding agency. As such, contingency amounts are to be included in the Federal award. In order for actual costs incurred to be allowable, they must comply with the cost principles and other requirements in this part (see also §§ 200.300 and 200.403 of this part); be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient accomplishment of project or program objectives, and be verifiable from the non-Federal entity's records.

(c) Payments made by the Federal awarding agency to the non-Federal entity's "contingency reserve" or any similar payment made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

with certainty as to the time or intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable, except as noted in §§ 200.431 and 200.447.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49567, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.434 Contributions and donations.

(a) Costs of contributions and donations, including cash, property, and services, from the non-Federal entity to other entities, are unallowable.

(b) It is permissible for contingency amounts other than those excluded in paragraph (a) of this section to be explicitly included in budget estimates, to the extent they are necessary to improve the precision of those estimates. Amounts must be estimated using broadly-accepted cost estimating methodologies, specified in the budget documentation of the Federal award, and accepted by the Federal awarding agency. As such, contingency amounts are to be included in the Federal award. In order for actual costs incurred to be allowable, they must comply with the cost principles and other requirements in this part (see also §§ 200.300 and 200.403 of this part); be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient accomplishment of project or program objectives, and be verifiable from the non-Federal entity's records.

(c) Payments made by the Federal awarding agency to the non-Federal entity's "contingency reserve" or any similar payment made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to the time or intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable, except as noted in §§ 200.431 and 200.447.

(d) To the extent feasible, services donated to the non-Federal entity will be supported by the same methods used to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

(e) The following provisions apply to nonprofit organizations. The value of services donated to the nonprofit organization utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity must be considered in the determination of the non-Federal entity's indirect cost rate(s) and, accordingly, must be allocated a

proportionate share of applicable indirect costs when the following circumstances exist:

(1) The aggregate value of the services is material;

(2) The services are supported by a significant amount of the indirect costs incurred by the non-Federal entity;

(i) In those instances where there is no basis for determining the fair market value of the services rendered, the non-Federal entity and the cognizant agency for indirect costs must negotiate an appropriate allocation of indirect cost to the services.

(ii) Where donated services directly benefit a project supported by the Federal award, the indirect costs allocated to the services will be considered as a part of the total costs of the project. Such indirect costs may be reimbursed under the Federal award or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements.

(f) Fair market value of donated services must be computed as described in § 200.306.

(g) Personal Property and Use of Space.

(1) Donated personal property and use of space may be furnished to a non-Federal entity. The value of the personal property and space may not be charged to the Federal award either as a direct or indirect cost.

(2) The value of the donations may be used to meet cost sharing or matching share requirements under the conditions described in § 200.300 of this part. The value of the donations must be determined in accordance with § 200.300. Where donations are treated as indirect costs, indirect cost rates will separate the value of the donations so that reimbursement will not be made.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49567, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.435 Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, claims, appeals and patent infringements.

(a) *Definitions for the purposes of this section.* (1) *Conviction* means a judgment or conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon verdict or a plea,

including a conviction due to a plea of nolo contendere.

(2) *Costs* include the services of in-house or private counsel, accountants, consultants, or others engaged to assist the non-Federal entity before, during, and after commencement of a judicial or administrative proceeding, that bear a direct relationship to the proceeding.

(3) *Fraud* means:

(i) Acts of fraud or corruption or attempts to defraud the Federal Government or to corrupt its agents,

(ii) Acts that constitute a cause for debarment or suspension (as specified in agency regulations), and

(iii) Acts which violate the False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. 3729–3732) or the Anti-kickback Act (41 U.S.C. 1320a–7b(b)).

(4) *Penalty* does not include restitution, reimbursement, or compensatory damages.

(5) *Proceeding* includes an investigation.

(b) *Costs.* (1) Except as otherwise described herein, costs incurred in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceeding (including filing of a false certification) commenced by the Federal Government, a state, local government, or foreign government, or joined by the Federal Government (including a proceeding under the False Claims Act), against the non-Federal entity, (or commenced by third parties or a current or former employee of the non-Federal entity who submits a whistleblower complaint of reprisal in accordance with 10 U.S.C. 2409 or 41 U.S.C. 4712), are not allowable if the proceeding:

(i) Relates to a violation of, or failure to comply with, a Federal, state, local or foreign statute, regulation or the terms and conditions of the Federal award, by the non-Federal entity (including its agents and employees); and

(ii) Results in any of the following dispositions:

(A) In a criminal proceeding, a conviction.

(B) In a civil or administrative proceeding involving an allegation of fraud or similar misconduct, a determination of non-Federal entity liability.

(C) In the case of any civil or administrative proceeding, the disallowance of costs or the imposition of a monetary penalty, or an order issued by the Federal awarding agency head or delegate to the non-Federal entity to take corrective action under 10 U.S.C. 2409 or 41 U.S.C. 4712.

(D) A final decision by an appropriate Federal official to debar or suspend the non-Federal entity, to rescind or void a Federal award, or to terminate a Federal award by reason of a violation or failure to comply with a statute, regulation, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(E) A disposition by consent or compromise, if the action could have resulted in any of the dispositions described in paragraphs (b)(1)(ii)(A) through (D) of this section.

(2) If more than one proceeding involves the same alleged misconduct, the costs of all such proceedings are unallowable if any results in one of the dispositions shown in paragraph (b) of this section.

(c) If a proceeding referred to in paragraph (b) of this section is commenced by the Federal Government and is resolved by consent or compromise pursuant to an agreement by the non-Federal entity and the Federal Government, then the costs incurred may be allowed to the extent specifically provided in such agreement.

(d) If a proceeding referred to in paragraph (b) of this section is commenced by a state, local or foreign government, the authorized Federal official may allow the costs incurred if such authorized official determines that the costs were incurred as a result of:

(1) A specific term or condition of the Federal award, or

(2) Specific written direction of an authorized official of the Federal awarding agency.

(e) Costs incurred in connection with proceedings described in paragraph (b) of this section, which are not made unallowable by that subsection, may be allowed but only to the extent that:

(1) The costs are reasonable and necessary in relation to the administration of the Federal award and activities required to deal with the proceeding and the underlying cause of action;

(2) Payment of the reasonable, necessary, allocable and otherwise allowable costs incurred is not prohibited by any other provision(s) of the Federal award;

(3) The costs are not recovered from the Federal Government or a third party, either directly as a result of the proceeding or otherwise; and,

(4) An authorized Federal official must determine the percentage of costs allowed considering the complexity of litigation, generally accepted principles governing the award of legal fees in civil actions involving the United States, and such other factors as may be appropriate. Such percentage must not exceed 80 percent. However, if an agreement reached under paragraph (c) of this section has explicitly considered this 80 percent limitation and permitted a higher percentage, then the full amount of costs resulting from that agreement are allowable.

(f) Costs incurred by the non-Federal entity in connection with the defense of suits brought by its employees or ex-employees under section 2 of the Major Fraud Act of 1988 (18 U.S.C. 1031), including the cost of all relief necessary to make such employee whole, where the non-Federal entity was found liable or settled, are unallowable.

(g) Costs of prosecution of claims against the Federal Government, including appeals of final Federal agency decisions, are unallowable.

(h) Costs of legal, accounting, and consultant services, and related costs, incurred in connection with patent infringement litigation, are unallowable unless otherwise provided for in the Federal award.

(i) Costs which may be unallowable under this section, including directly associated costs, must be segregated and accounted for separately. During the pendency of any proceeding covered by paragraphs (b) and (f) of this section, the Federal Government must generally withhold payment of such costs. However, if in its best interests, the Federal Government may provide for conditional payment upon provision of adequate security, or other adequate assurance, and agreement to repay all unallowable costs, plus interest, if the

OMB Guidance

§ 200.436

costs are subsequently determined to be unallowable.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.436 Depreciation.

(a) Depreciation is the method for allocating the cost of fixed assets to periods benefitting from asset use. The non-Federal entity may be compensated for the use of its buildings, capital improvements, equipment, and software projects capitalized in accordance with GAAP, provided that they are used, needed in the non-Federal entity's activities, and properly allocated to Federal awards. Such compensation must be made by computing depreciation.

(b) The allocation for depreciation must be made in accordance with Appendices III through IX.

(c) Depreciation is computed applying the following rules. The computation of depreciation must be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. For an asset donated to the non-Federal entity by a third party, its fair market value at the time of the donation must be considered as the acquisition cost. Such assets may be depreciated or claimed as matching but not both. For the computation of depreciation, the acquisition cost will exclude:

(1) The cost of land;

(2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal Government, irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it is presently located;

(3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the non-Federal entity that are already claimed as matching or where law or agreement prohibits recovery;

(4) Any asset acquired solely for the performance of a non-Federal award; and

(d) When computing depreciation charges, the following must be observed:

(1) The period of useful service or useful life established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment, technological developments in the particular area, historical data, and the renewal and replacement policies fol-

lowed for the individual items or classes of assets involved.

(2) The depreciation method used to charge the cost of an asset (or group of assets) to accounting periods must reflect the pattern of consumption of the asset during its useful life. In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater in the early portions than in the later portions of its useful life, the straight-line method must be presumed to be the appropriate method. Depreciation methods once used may not be changed unless approved in advance by the cognizant agency. The depreciation methods used to calculate the depreciation amounts for indirect (F&A) rate purposes must be the same methods used by the non-Federal entity for its financial statements.

(3) The entire building, including the shell and all components, may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life. A building may also be divided into multiple components. Each component item may then be depreciated over its estimated useful life. The building components must be grouped into three general components of a building: building shell (including construction and design costs), building services systems (e.g., elevators, HVAC, plumbing system and heating and air-conditioning system) and fixed equipment (e.g., sterilizers, casework, fume hoods, cold rooms and glassware/washers). In exceptional cases, a cognizant agency may authorize a non-Federal entity to use more than these three groupings. When a non-Federal entity elects to depreciate its buildings by its components, the same depreciation methods must be used for indirect (F&A) purposes and financial statements purposes, as described in paragraphs (d)(1) and (2) of this section.

(4) No depreciation may be allowed on any assets that have outlived their depreciable lives.

(5) Where the depreciation method is introduced to replace the use allowance method, depreciation must be computed as if the asset had been depreciated over its entire life (i.e., from the date the asset was acquired and ready for use to the date of disposal or

§ 200.437

withdrawal from service). The total amount of use allowance and depreciation for an asset (including imputed depreciation applicable to periods prior to the conversion from the use allowance method as well as depreciation after the conversion) may not exceed the total acquisition cost of the asset.

(e) Charges for depreciation must be supported by adequate property records, and physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years to ensure that the assets exist and are usable, used, and needed. Statistical sampling techniques may be used in taking these inventories. In addition, adequate depreciation records showing the amount of depreciation must be maintained.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49568, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.437 Employee health and welfare costs.

(a) Costs incurred in accordance with the non-Federal entity's documented policies for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee health, and employee performance are allowable.

(b) Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the non-Federal entity. Income generated from any of these activities will be credited to the cost thereof unless such income has been irrevocably sent to employee welfare organizations.

(c) Losses resulting from operating food services are allowable only if the non-Federal entity's objective is to operate such services on a break-even basis. Losses sustained because of operating objectives other than the above are allowable only:

(1) Where the non-Federal entity can demonstrate unusual circumstances; and

(2) With the approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

§ 200.438 Entertainment costs.

Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any associated costs are unallowable, except where specific costs that might otherwise be considered entertainment have a programmatic purpose and are authorized

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

either in the approved budget for the Federal award or with prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.439 Equipment and other capital expenditures.

(a) See § 200.1 for the definitions of *capital expenditures*, *equipment*, *special purpose equipment*, *general purpose equipment*, *acquisition cost*, and *capital assets*.

(b) The following rules of allowability must apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except with the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of \$5,000 or more have the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency, or pass-through entity. See § 200.436, for rules on the allowability of depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. See also § 200.465.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to paragraphs (b)(1) through (3) of this section, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate and negotiated with the Federal awarding agency.

(5) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the Federal cognizant agency for indirect cost.

(6) Cost of equipment disposal. If the non-Federal entity is instructed by the Federal awarding agency to otherwise dispose of or transfer the equipment

OMB Guidance

§ 200.443

the costs of such disposal or transfer are allowable.

(7) Equipment and other capital expenditures are unallowable as indirect costs. See § 200.436.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49568, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.440 Exchange rates.

(a) Cost increases for fluctuations in exchange rates are allowable costs subject to the availability of funding. Prior approval of exchange rate fluctuations is required only when the change results in the need for additional Federal funding, or the increased costs result in the need to significantly reduce the scope of the project. The Federal awarding agency must however ensure that adequate funds are available to cover currency fluctuations in order to avoid a violation of the Anti-Deficiency Act.

(b) The non-Federal entity is required to make reviews of local currency gains to determine the need for additional federal funding before the expiration date of the Federal award. Subsequent adjustments for currency increases may be allowable only when the non-Federal entity provides the Federal awarding agency with adequate source documentation from a commonly used source in effect at the time the expense was made, and to the extent that sufficient Federal funds are available.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.441 Fines, penalties, damages and other settlements.

Costs resulting from non-Federal entity violations of, alleged violations of, or failure to comply with, Federal, state, tribal, local or foreign laws and regulations are unallowable, except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of the Federal award, or with prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency. See also § 200.435.

[85 FR 49568, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.442 Fund raising and investment management costs.

(a) Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, endowment drives, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred to raise capital or obtain contributions are unallowable. Fund raising costs for the purposes of meeting the Federal program objectives are allowable with prior written approval from the Federal awarding agency. Proposal costs are covered in § 200.460.

(b) Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred to enhance income from investments are unallowable except when associated with investments covering pension, self-insurance, or other funds which include Federal participation allowed by this part.

(c) Costs related to the physical custody and control of monies and securities are allowable.

(d) Both allowable and unallowable fund-raising and investment activities must be allocated as an appropriate share of indirect costs under the conditions described in § 200.413.

[85 FR 49568, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.443 Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable assets.

(a) Gains and losses on the sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property must be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to the asset cost grouping(s) in which the property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate asset cost grouping(s) is the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(b) Gains and losses from the disposition of depreciable property must not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(1) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under §§ 200.436 and 200.439.

(2) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.

§ 200.444

(3) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in § 200.447.

(4) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation.

(5) Gains and losses arising from mass or extraordinary sales, retirements, or other dispositions must be considered on a case-by-case basis.

(c) Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in paragraph (a) of this section, e.g., land, must be excluded in computing Federal award costs.

(d) When assets acquired with Federal funds, in part or wholly, are disposed of, the distribution of the proceeds must be made in accordance with §§ 200.310 through 200.316 of this part.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49568, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.444 General costs of government.

(a) For states, local governments, and Indian Tribes, the general costs of government are unallowable (except as provided in § 200.475). Unallowable costs include:

(1) Salaries and expenses of the Office of the Governor of a state or the chief executive of a local government or the chief executive of an Indian tribe;

(2) Salaries and other expenses of a state legislature, tribal council, or similar local governmental body, such as a county supervisor, city council, school board, etc., whether incurred for purposes of legislation or executive direction;

(3) Costs of the judicial branch of a government;

(4) Costs of prosecutorial activities unless treated as a direct cost to a specific program if authorized by statute or regulation (however, this does not preclude the allowability of other legal activities of the Attorney General as described in § 200.435); and

(5) Costs of other general types of government services normally provided to the general public, such as fire and police, unless provided for as a direct cost under a program statute or regulation.

(b) For Indian tribes and Councils of Governments (COGs) (see definition for

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

Local government in § 200.1 of this part), up to 50% of salaries and expenses directly attributable to managing and operating Federal programs by the chief executive and his or her staff can be included in the indirect cost calculation without documentation.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49568, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.445 Goods or services for personal use.

(a) Costs of goods or services for personal use of the non-Federal entity's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

(b) Costs of housing (e.g., depreciation, maintenance, utilities, furnishings, rent), housing allowances and personal living expenses are only allowable as direct costs regardless of whether reported as taxable income to the employees. In addition, to be allowable direct costs must be approved in advance by a Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.446 Idle facilities and idle capacity.

(a) As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth in this section:

(1) Facilities means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the non-Federal entity.

(2) Idle facilities means completely unused facilities that are excess to the non-Federal entity's current needs.

(3) Idle capacity means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between:

(i) That which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays and;

(ii) The extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g., insurance, interest, and depreciation. These costs could include the costs of idle public safety emergency facilities, telecommunications, or information technology system capacity that is built to withstand major fluctuations in load, e.g., consolidated data centers.

(b) The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet workload requirements which may fluctuate and are allocated appropriately to all benefiting programs; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subsection, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

(c) The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary to carry out the purpose of the Federal award or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other Federal awards, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

§ 200.447 Insurance and indemnification.

(a) Costs of insurance required or approved and maintained, pursuant to the Federal award, are allowable.

(b) Costs of other insurance in connection with the general conduct of ac-

tivities are allowable subject to the following limitations:

(1) Types and extent and cost of coverage are in accordance with the non-Federal entity's policy and sound business practice.

(2) Costs of insurance or of contributions to any reserve covering the risk of loss of, or damage to, Federal Government property are unallowable except to the extent that the Federal awarding agency has specifically required or approved such costs.

(3) Costs allowed for business interruption or other similar insurance must exclude coverage of management fees.

(4) Costs of insurance on the lives of trustees, officers, or other employees holding positions of similar responsibilities are allowable only to the extent that the insurance represents additional compensation (see § 200.431). The cost of such insurance when the non-Federal entity is identified as the beneficiary is unallowable.

(5) Insurance against defects. Costs of insurance with respect to any costs incurred to correct defects in the non-Federal entity's materials or workmanship are unallowable.

(6) Medical liability (malpractice) insurance. Medical liability insurance is an allowable cost of Federal research programs only to the extent that the Federal research programs involve human subjects or training of participants in research techniques. Medical liability insurance costs must be treated as a direct cost and must be assigned to individual projects based on the manner in which the insurer allocates the risk to the population covered by the insurance.

(c) Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (through a self-insurance program or otherwise) are unallowable, unless expressly provided for in the Federal award. However, costs incurred because of losses not covered under nominal deductible insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound management practice, and minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage, and disappearance of small hand tools, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

§ 200.448

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(d) Contributions to a reserve for certain self-insurance programs including workers' compensation, unemployment compensation, and severance pay are allowable subject to the following provisions:

(1) The type of coverage and the extent of coverage and the rates and premiums would have been allowed had insurance (including reinsurance) been purchased to cover the risks. However, provision for known or reasonably estimated self-insured liabilities, which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made, must not exceed the discounted present value of the liability. The rate used for discounting the liability must be determined by giving consideration to such factors as the non-Federal entity's settlement rate for those liabilities and its investment rate of return.

(2) Earnings or investment income on reserves must be credited to those reserves.

(3)(i) Contributions to reserves must be based on sound actuarial principles using historical experience and reasonable assumptions. Reserve levels must be analyzed and updated at least biennially for each major risk being insured and take into account any reinsurance, coinsurance, etc. Reserve levels related to employee-related coverages will normally be limited to the value of claims:

(A) Submitted and adjudicated but not paid;

(B) Submitted but not adjudicated; and

(C) Incurred but not submitted.

(ii) Reserve levels in excess of the amounts based on the above must be identified and justified in the cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal.

(4) Accounting records, actuarial studies, and cost allocations (or billings) must recognize any significant differences due to types of insured risk and losses generated by the various insured activities or agencies of the non-Federal entity. If individual departments or agencies of the non-Federal entity experience significantly different levels of claims for a particular risk, those differences are to be recognized by the use of separate allocations

or other techniques resulting in an equitable allocation.

(5) Whenever funds are transferred from a self-insurance reserve to other accounts (e.g., general fund or unrestricted account), refunds must be made to the Federal Government for its share of funds transferred, including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer and debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect cost, claims collection regulations.

(e) Insurance refunds must be credited against insurance costs in the year the refund is received.

(f) Indemnification includes securing the non-Federal entity against liabilities to third persons and other losses not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal Government is obligated to indemnify the non-Federal entity only to the extent expressly provided for in the Federal award, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49568, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.448 Intellectual property.

(a) *Patent costs.* (1) The following costs related to securing patents and copyrights are allowable:

(i) Costs of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the Federal award, and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures;

(ii) Costs of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal Government to be conveyed to the Federal Government; and

(iii) General counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee intellectual property agreements (See also § 200.459).

(2) The following costs related to securing patents and copyrights are unallowable:

(i) Costs of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents, and of searching the art to make disclosures not required by the Federal award;

(ii) Costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application, or any United States patent application, where the Federal award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal Government.

(b) *Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights.* (1) Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the Federal award are allowable unless:

(i) The Federal Government already has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.

(ii) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.

(iii) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.

(iv) The patent or copyright is expired.

(2) Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have been arrived at as a result of less-than-arm's-length bargaining, such as:

(i) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the non-Federal entity.

(ii) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a Federal award would be made.

(iii) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after a Federal award is made to a non-Federal entity.

(3) In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the non-Federal entity, the amount of royalty allowed must not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the non-Federal entity retained title thereto.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75886, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.449 Interest.

(a) *General.* Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital, temporary use of endowment funds, or the use of the non-Federal entity's own funds, however represented, are unallowable. Financing costs (including interest) to

acquire, construct, or replace capital assets are allowable, subject to the conditions in this section.

(b) *Capital assets.* (1) Capital assets is defined as noted in §200.1 of this part. An asset cost includes (as applicable) acquisition costs, construction costs, and other costs capitalized in accordance with GAAP.

(2) For non-Federal entity fiscal years beginning on or after January 1, 2016, intangible assets include patents and computer software. For software development projects, only interest attributable to the portion of the project costs capitalized in accordance with GAAP is allowable.

(c) *Conditions for all non-Federal entities.* (1) The non-Federal entity uses the capital assets in support of Federal awards;

(2) The allowable asset costs to acquire facilities and equipment are limited to a fair market value available to the non-Federal entity from an unrelated (arm's length) third party.

(3) The non-Federal entity obtains the financing via an arm's-length transaction (that is, a transaction with an unrelated third party); or claims reimbursement of actual interest cost at a rate available via such a transaction.

(4) The non-Federal entity limits claims for Federal reimbursement of interest costs to the least expensive alternative. For example, a lease contract that transfers ownership by the end of the contract may be determined less costly than purchasing through other types of debt financing, in which case reimbursement must be limited to the amount of interest determined if leasing had been used.

(5) The non-Federal entity expenses or capitalizes allowable interest cost in accordance with GAAP.

(6) Earnings generated by the investment of borrowed funds pending their disbursement for the asset costs are used to offset the current period's allowable interest cost, whether that cost is expensed or capitalized. Earnings subject to being reported to the Federal Internal Revenue Service under arbitrage requirements are excludable.

(7) The following conditions must apply to debt arrangements over \$1

§ 200.450

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

million to purchase or construct facilities, unless the non-Federal entity makes an initial equity contribution to the purchase of 25 percent or more. For this purpose, “initial equity contribution” means the amount or value of contributions made by the non-Federal entity for the acquisition of facilities prior to occupancy.

(i) The non-Federal entity must reduce claims for reimbursement of interest cost by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow attributable to the portion of the facility used for Federal awards.

(ii) The non-Federal entity must impute interest on excess cash flow as follows:

(A) Annually, the non-Federal entity must prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. For this purpose, inflows consist of Federal reimbursement for depreciation, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest cost. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro-rata share attributable to the cost of land), and interest payments.

(B) To compute monthly cash inflows and outflows, the non-Federal entity must divide the annual amounts determined in step (i) by the number of months in the year (usually 12) that the building is in service.

(C) For any month in which cumulative cash inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest must be calculated on the excess inflows for that month and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest cost. The rate of interest to be used must be the three-month Treasury bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(8) Interest attributable to a fully depreciated asset is unallowable.

(d) Additional conditions for states, local governments and Indian tribes. For costs to be allowable, the non-Federal entity must have incurred the interest costs for buildings after October 1, 1980, or for land and equipment after September 1, 1995.

(1) The requirement to offset interest earned on borrowed funds against current allowable interest cost (paragraph

(c)(5), above) also applies to earnings on debt service reserve funds.

(2) The non-Federal entity will negotiate the amount of allowable interest cost related to the acquisition of facilities with asset costs of \$1 million or more, as outlined in paragraph (c)(7) of this section. For this purpose, a non-Federal entity must consider only cash inflows and outflows attributable to that portion of the real property used for Federal awards.

(e) Additional conditions for IHEs. For costs to be allowable, the IHE must have incurred the interest costs after July 1, 1982, in connection with acquisitions of capital assets that occurred after that date.

(f) Additional condition for nonprofit organizations. For costs to be allowable, the nonprofit organization incurred the interest costs after September 29, 1995, in connection with acquisitions of capital assets that occurred after that date.

(g) The interest allowability provisions of this section do not apply to a nonprofit organization subject to “full coverage” under the Cost Accounting Standards (CAS), as defined at 48 CFR 9903.201–2(a). The non-Federal entity’s Federal awards are instead subject to CAS 414 (48 CFR 9904.414), “Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Facilities Capital”, and CAS 417 (48 CFR 9904.417), “Cost of Money as an Element of the Cost of Capital Assets Under Construction”.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 80 FR 54409, Sept. 10, 2015; 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.450 Lobbying.

(a) The cost of certain influencing activities associated with obtaining grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements, or loans is an unallowable cost. Lobbying with respect to certain grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, and loans is governed by relevant statutes, including among others, the provisions of 31 U.S.C. 1352, as well as the common rule, “New Restrictions on Lobbying” published on February 26, 1990, including definitions, and the Office of Management and Budget “Governmentwide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying” and notices published on December 20, 1989,

June 15, 1990, January 15, 1992, and January 19, 1996.

(b) *Executive lobbying costs.* Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the executive branch of the Federal Government to give consideration or to act regarding a Federal award or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a Federal award or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

(c) In addition to the above, the following restrictions are applicable to nonprofit organizations and IHEs:

(1) Costs associated with the following activities are unallowable:

(i) Attempts to influence the outcomes of any Federal, state, or local election, referendum, initiative, or similar procedure, through in-kind or cash contributions, endorsements, publicity, or similar activity;

(ii) Establishing, administering, contributing to, or paying the expenses of a political party, campaign, political action committee, or other organization established for the purpose of influencing the outcomes of elections in the United States;

(iii) Any attempt to influence:

(A) The introduction of Federal or state legislation;

(B) The enactment or modification of any pending Federal or state legislation through communication with any member or employee of the Congress or state legislature (including efforts to influence state or local officials to engage in similar lobbying activity);

(C) The enactment or modification of any pending Federal or state legislation by preparing, distributing, or using publicity or propaganda, or by urging members of the general public, or any segment thereof, to contribute to or participate in any mass demonstration, march, rally, fund raising drive, lobbying campaign or letter writing or telephone campaign; or

(D) Any government official or employee in connection with a decision to sign or veto enrolled legislation;

(iv) Legislative liaison activities, including attendance at legislative ses-

sions or committee hearings, gathering information regarding legislation, and analyzing the effect of legislation, when such activities are carried on in support of or in knowing preparation for an effort to engage in unallowable lobbying.

(2) The following activities are excepted from the coverage of paragraph (c)(1) of this section:

(i) Technical and factual presentations on topics directly related to the performance of a grant, contract, or other agreement (through hearing testimony, statements, or letters to the Congress or a state legislature, or subdivision, member, or cognizant staff member thereof), in response to a documented request (including a Congressional Record notice requesting testimony or statements for the record at a regularly scheduled hearing) made by the non-Federal entity's member of congress, legislative body or a subdivision, or a cognizant staff member thereof, provided such information is readily obtainable and can be readily put in deliverable form, and further provided that costs under this section for travel, lodging or meals are unallowable unless incurred to offer testimony at a regularly scheduled Congressional hearing pursuant to a written request for such presentation made by the Chairman or Ranking Minority Member of the Committee or Subcommittee conducting such hearings;

(ii) Any lobbying made unallowable by paragraph (c)(1)(iii) of this section to influence state legislation in order to directly reduce the cost, or to avoid material impairment of the non-Federal entity's authority to perform the grant, contract, or other agreement; or

(iii) Any activity specifically authorized by statute to be undertaken with funds from the Federal award.

(iv) Any activity excepted from the definitions of "lobbying" or "influencing legislation" by the Internal Revenue Code provisions that require nonprofit organizations to limit their participation in direct and "grass roots" lobbying activities in order to retain their charitable deduction status and avoid punitive excise taxes, I.R.C. §§ 501(c)(3), 501(h), 4911(a), including:

§ 200.451

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(A) Nonpartisan analysis, study, or research reports;

(B) Examinations and discussions of broad social, economic, and similar problems; and

(C) Information provided upon request by a legislator for technical advice and assistance, as defined by I.R.C. § 4911(d)(2) and 26 CFR 56.4911–2(c)(1)–(c)(3).

(v) When a non-Federal entity seeks reimbursement for indirect (F&A) costs, total lobbying costs must be separately identified in the indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal, and thereafter treated as other unallowable activity costs in accordance with the procedures of § 200.413.

(vi) The non-Federal entity must submit as part of its annual indirect (F&A) cost rate proposal a certification that the requirements and standards of this section have been complied with. (See also § 200.415.)

(vii)(A) Time logs, calendars, or similar records are not required to be created for purposes of complying with the record keeping requirements in § 200.302 with respect to lobbying costs during any particular calendar month when:

(1) The employee engages in lobbying (as defined in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section) 25 percent or less of the employee's compensated hours of employment during that calendar month; and

(2) Within the preceding five-year period, the non-Federal entity has not materially misstated allowable or unallowable costs of any nature, including legislative lobbying costs.

(B) When conditions in paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(A)(1) and (2) of this section are met, non-Federal entities are not required to establish records to support the allowability of claimed costs in addition to records already required or maintained. Also, when conditions in paragraphs (c)(2)(vii)(A)(1) and (2) of this section are met, the absence of time logs, calendars, or similar records will not serve as a basis for disallowing costs by contesting estimates of lobbying time spent by employees during a calendar month.

(viii) The Federal awarding agency must establish procedures for resolving in advance, in consultation with OMB,

any significant questions or disagreements concerning the interpretation or application of this section. Any such advance resolutions must be binding in any subsequent settlements, audits, or investigations with respect to that grant or contract for purposes of interpretation of this part, provided, however, that this must not be construed to prevent a contractor or non-Federal entity from contesting the lawfulness of such a determination.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.451 Losses on other awards or contracts.

Any excess of costs over income under any other award or contract of any nature is unallowable. This includes, but is not limited to, the non-Federal entity's contributed portion by reason of cost-sharing agreements or any under-recoveries through negotiation of flat amounts for indirect (F&A) costs. Also, any excess of costs over authorized funding levels transferred from any award or contract to another award or contract is unallowable. All losses are not allowable indirect (F&A) costs and are required to be included in the appropriate indirect cost rate base for allocation of indirect costs.

§ 200.452 Maintenance and repair costs.

Costs incurred for utilities, insurance, security, necessary maintenance, janitorial services, repair, or upkeep of buildings and equipment (including Federal property unless otherwise provided for) which neither add to the permanent value of the property nor appreciably prolong its intended life, but keep it in an efficient operating condition, are allowable. Costs incurred for improvements which add to the permanent value of the buildings and equipment or appreciably prolong their intended life must be treated as capital expenditures (see § 200.439). These costs are only allowable to the extent not paid through rental or other agreements.

[85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.453 Materials and supplies costs, including costs of computing devices.

(a) Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.

(b) Purchased materials and supplies must be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms must be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.

(c) Materials and supplies used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs. In the specific case of computing devices, charging as direct costs is allowable for devices that are essential and allocable, but not solely dedicated, to the performance of a Federal award.

(d) Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the Federal award, such materials will be used without charge.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.454 Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.

(a) Costs of the non-Federal entity's membership in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

(b) Costs of the non-Federal entity's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

(c) Costs of membership in any civic or community organization are allowable with prior approval by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(d) Costs of membership in any country club or social or dining club or organization are unallowable.

(e) Costs of membership in organizations whose primary purpose is lobbying are unallowable. See also § 200.450.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.455 Organization costs.

Costs such as incorporation fees, brokers' fees, fees to promoters, organizers or management consultants, attorneys, accountants, or investment counselor, whether or not employees of the non-Federal entity in connection with establishment or reorganization of an organization, are unallowable except with prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.456 Participant support costs.

Participant support costs as defined in § 200.1 are allowable with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

[85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.457 Plant and security costs.

Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for protection and security of facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; protective (non-military) gear, devices, and equipment; contractual security services; and consultants. Capital expenditures for plant security purposes are subject to § 200.439.

[85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.458 Pre-award costs.

Pre-award costs are those incurred prior to the effective date of the Federal award or subaward directly pursuant to the negotiation and in anticipation of the Federal award where such costs are necessary for efficient and timely performance of the scope of work. Such costs are allowable only to the extent that they would have been allowable if incurred after the date of the Federal award and only with the written approval of the Federal awarding agency. If charged to the award, these costs must be charged to the initial budget period of the award, unless otherwise specified by the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

[85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.459

§ 200.459 Professional service costs.

(a) Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the non-Federal entity, are allowable, subject to paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government. In addition, legal and related services are limited under § 200.435.

(b) In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

(1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.

(2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the non-Federal entity's capability in the particular area.

(3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to Federal awards.

(4) The impact of Federal awards on the non-Federal entity's business (i.e., what new problems have arisen).

(5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the non-Federal entity's total business is such as to influence the non-Federal entity in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal awards.

(6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.

(7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-federally funded activities.

(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service (e.g., description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

(c) In addition to the factors in paragraph (b) of this section, to be allowable, retainer fees must be supported

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

by evidence of bona fide services available or rendered.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.460 Proposal costs.

Proposal costs are the costs of preparing bids, proposals, or applications on potential Federal and non-Federal awards or projects, including the development of data necessary to support the non-Federal entity's bids or proposals. Proposal costs of the current accounting period of both successful and unsuccessful bids and proposals normally should be treated as indirect (F&A) costs and allocated currently to all activities of the non-Federal entity. No proposal costs of past accounting periods will be allocable to the current period.

§ 200.461 Publication and printing costs.

(a) Publication costs for electronic and print media, including distribution, promotion, and general handling are allowable. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the non-Federal entity.

(b) Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable where:

(1) The publications report work supported by the Federal Government; and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all items published by the journal, whether or not under a Federal award.

(3) The non-Federal entity may charge the Federal award during close-out for the costs of publication or sharing of research results if the costs are not incurred during the period of performance of the Federal award. If charged to the award, these costs must be charged to the final budget period of the award, unless otherwise specified by the Federal awarding agency.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.462 Rearrangement and reversion costs.

(a) Costs incurred for ordinary and normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable as indirect

OMB Guidance

§ 200.464

costs. Special arrangements and alterations costs incurred specifically for a Federal award are allowable as a direct cost with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.

(b) Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the non-Federal entity's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of Federal awards, less costs related to normal wear and tear, are allowable.

§ 200.463 Recruiting costs.

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, and provided that the size of the staff recruited and maintained is in keeping with workload requirements, costs of "help wanted" advertising, operating costs of an employment office necessary to secure and maintain an adequate staff, costs of operating an aptitude and educational testing program, travel costs of employees while engaged in recruiting personnel, travel costs of applicants for interviews for prospective employment, and relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of new employees, are allowable to the extent that such costs are incurred pursuant to the non-Federal entity's standard recruitment program. Where the non-Federal entity uses employment agencies, costs not in excess of standard commercial rates for such services are allowable.

(b) Special emoluments, fringe benefits, and salary allowances incurred to attract professional personnel that do not meet the test of reasonableness or do not conform with the established practices of the non-Federal entity, are unallowable.

(c) Where relocation costs incurred incident to recruitment of a new employee have been funded in whole or in part to a Federal award, and the newly hired employee resigns for reasons within the employee's control within 12 months after hire, the non-Federal entity will be required to refund or credit the Federal share of such relocation costs to the Federal Government. See also § 200.464.

(d) Short-term, travel visa costs (as opposed to longer-term, immigration visas) are generally allowable expenses

that may be proposed as a direct cost. Since short-term visas are issued for a specific period and purpose, they can be clearly identified as directly connected to work performed on a Federal award. For these costs to be directly charged to a Federal award, they must:

(1) Be critical and necessary for the conduct of the project;

(2) Be allowable under the applicable cost principles;

(3) Be consistent with the non-Federal entity's cost accounting practices and non-Federal entity policy; and

(4) Meet the definition of "direct cost" as described in the applicable cost principles.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.464 Relocation costs of employees.

(a) Relocation costs are costs incident to the permanent change of duty assignment (for an indefinite period or for a stated period of not less than 12 months) of an existing employee or upon recruitment of a new employee. Relocation costs are allowable, subject to the limitations described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, provided that:

(1) The move is for the benefit of the employer.

(2) Reimbursement to the employee is in accordance with an established written policy consistently followed by the employer.

(3) The reimbursement does not exceed the employee's actual (or reasonably estimated) expenses.

(b) Allowable relocation costs for current employees are limited to the following:

(1) The costs of transportation of the employee, members of his or her immediate family and his household, and personal effects to the new location.

(2) The costs of finding a new home, such as advance trips by employees and spouses to locate living quarters and temporary lodging during the transition period, up to maximum period of 30 calendar days.

(3) Closing costs, such as brokerage, legal, and appraisal fees, incident to the disposition of the employee's former home. These costs, together

with those described in (4), are limited to 8 per cent of the sales price of the employee's former home.

(4) The continuing costs of ownership (for up to six months) of the vacant former home after the settlement or lease date of the employee's new permanent home, such as maintenance of buildings and grounds (exclusive of fixing-up expenses), utilities, taxes, and property insurance.

(5) Other necessary and reasonable expenses normally incident to relocation, such as the costs of canceling an unexpired lease, transportation of personal property, and purchasing insurance against loss of or damages to personal property. The cost of canceling an unexpired lease is limited to three times the monthly rental.

(c) Allowable relocation costs for new employees are limited to those described in paragraphs (b)(1) and (2) of this section. When relocation costs incurred incident to the recruitment of new employees have been charged to a Federal award and the employee resigns for reasons within the employee's control within 12 months after hire, the non-Federal entity must refund or credit the Federal Government for its share of the cost. If dependents are not permitted at the location for any reason and the costs do not include costs of transporting household goods, the costs of travel to an overseas location must be considered travel costs in accordance with § 200.474 Travel costs, and not this relocations costs of employees (See also § 200.464).

(d) The following costs related to relocation are unallowable:

(1) Fees and other costs associated with acquiring a new home.

(2) A loss on the sale of a former home.

(3) Continuing mortgage principal and interest payments on a home being sold.

(4) Income taxes paid by an employee related to reimbursed relocation costs.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.465 Rental costs of real property and equipment.

(a) Subject to the limitations described in paragraphs (b) through (d) of

this section, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

(b) Rental costs under "sale and lease back" arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the non-Federal entity continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

(c) Rental costs under "less-than-arm's-length" leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in paragraph (b) of this section). For this purpose, a less-than-arm's-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between:

(1) Divisions of the non-Federal entity;

(2) The non-Federal entity under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and

(3) The non-Federal entity and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the non-Federal entity or an immediate family member, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, the non-Federal entity may establish a separate corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the non-Federal entity.

(4) Family members include one party with any of the following relationships to another party:

- (i) Spouse, and parents thereof;
- (ii) Children, and spouses thereof;
- (iii) Parents, and spouses thereof;
- (iv) Siblings, and spouses thereof;
- (v) Grandparents and grandchildren, and spouses thereof;

(vi) Domestic partner and parents thereof, including domestic partners of any individual in 2 through 5 of this definition; and

OMB Guidance

§ 200.466

(vii) Any individual related by blood or affinity whose close association with the employee is the equivalent of a family relationship.

(5) Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in paragraph (b) of this section) that would be allowed had the non-Federal entity purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of GAAP must be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in §200.449 Interest. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the non-Federal entity purchased the property.

(6) The rental of any property owned by any individuals or entities affiliated with the non-Federal entity, to include commercial or residential real estate, for purposes such as the home office workspace is unallowable.

(d) Rental costs under leases which are required to be accounted for as a financed purchase under GASB standards or a finance lease under FASB standards under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in paragraph (b) of this section) that would be allowed had the non-Federal entity purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. Interest costs related to these leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in §200.449. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the non-Federal entity purchased the property.

(e) Rental or lease payments are allowable under lease contracts where the non-Federal entity is required to recognize an intangible right-to-use lease asset (per GASB) or right of use operating lease asset (per FASB) for purposes of financial reporting in accordance with GAAP.

(f) The rental of any property owned by any individuals or entities affiliated with the non-Federal entity, to include commercial or residential real estate,

for purposes such as the home office workspace is unallowable.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.466 Scholarships and student aid costs.

(a) Costs of scholarships, fellowships, and other programs of student aid at IHEs are allowable only when the purpose of the Federal award is to provide training to selected participants and the charge is approved by the Federal awarding agency. However, tuition remission and other forms of compensation paid as, or in lieu of, wages to students performing necessary work are allowable provided that:

(1) The individual is conducting activities necessary to the Federal award;

(2) Tuition remission and other support are provided in accordance with established policy of the IHE and consistently provided in a like manner to students in return for similar activities conducted under Federal awards as well as other activities; and

(3) During the academic period, the student is enrolled in an advanced degree program at a non-Federal entity or affiliated institution and the activities of the student in relation to the Federal award are related to the degree program;

(4) The tuition or other payments are reasonable compensation for the work performed and are conditioned explicitly upon the performance of necessary work; and

(5) It is the IHE's practice to similarly compensate students under Federal awards as well as other activities.

(b) Charges for tuition remission and other forms of compensation paid to students as, or in lieu of, salaries and wages must be subject to the reporting requirements in §200.430, and must be treated as direct or indirect cost in accordance with the actual work being performed. Tuition remission may be charged on an average rate basis. See also §200.431.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.467

§ 200.467 Selling and marketing costs.

Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the non-Federal entity (unless allowed under § 200.421) are unallowable, except as direct costs, with prior approval by the Federal awarding agency when necessary for the performance of the Federal award.

[85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.468 Specialized service facilities.

(a) The costs of services provided by highly complex or specialized facilities operated by the non-Federal entity, such as computing facilities, wind tunnels, and reactors are allowable, provided the charges for the services meet the conditions of either paragraph (b) or (c) of this section, and, in addition, take into account any items of income or Federal financing that qualify as applicable credits under § 200.406.

(b) The costs of such services, when material, must be charged directly to applicable awards based on actual usage of the services on the basis of a schedule of rates or established methodology that:

(1) Does not discriminate between activities under Federal awards and other activities of the non-Federal entity, including usage by the non-Federal entity for internal purposes, and

(2) Is designed to recover only the aggregate costs of the services. The costs of each service must consist normally of both its direct costs and its allocable share of all indirect (F&A) costs. Rates must be adjusted at least biennially, and must take into consideration over/under-applied costs of the previous period(s).

(c) Where the costs incurred for a service are not material, they may be allocated as indirect (F&A) costs.

(d) Under some extraordinary circumstances, where it is in the best interest of the Federal Government and the non-Federal entity to establish alternative costing arrangements, such arrangements may be worked out with the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49569, Aug. 13, 2020]

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

§ 200.469 Student activity costs.

Costs incurred for intramural activities, student publications, student clubs, and other student activities, are unallowable, unless specifically provided for in the Federal award.

§ 200.470 Taxes (including Value Added Tax).

(a) For states, local governments and Indian tribes:

(1) Taxes that a governmental unit is legally required to pay are allowable, except for self-assessed taxes that disproportionately affect Federal programs or changes in tax policies that disproportionately affect Federal programs.

(2) Gasoline taxes, motor vehicle fees, and other taxes that are in effect user fees for benefits provided to the Federal Government are allowable.

(3) This provision does not restrict the authority of the Federal awarding agency to identify taxes where Federal participation is inappropriate. Where the identification of the amount of unallowable taxes would require an inordinate amount of effort, the cognizant agency for indirect costs may accept a reasonable approximation thereof.

(b) For nonprofit organizations and IHEs:

(1) In general, taxes which the non-Federal entity is required to pay and which are paid or accrued in accordance with GAAP, and payments made to local governments in lieu of taxes which are commensurate with the local government services received are allowable, except for:

(i) Taxes from which exemptions are available to the non-Federal entity directly or which are available to the non-Federal entity based on an exemption afforded the Federal Government and, in the latter case, when the Federal awarding agency makes available the necessary exemption certificates,

(ii) Special assessments on land which represent capital improvements, and

(iii) Federal income taxes.

(2) Any refund of taxes, and any payment to the non-Federal entity of interest thereon, which were allowed as Federal award costs, will be credited either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate, to the Federal

Government. However, any interest actually paid or credited to a non-Federal entity incident to a refund of tax, interest, and penalty will be paid or credited to the Federal Government only to the extent that such interest accrued over the period during which the non-Federal entity has been reimbursed by the Federal Government for the taxes, interest, and penalties.

(c) Value Added Tax (VAT) Foreign taxes charged for the purchase of goods or services that a non-Federal entity is legally required to pay in country is an allowable expense under Federal awards. Foreign tax refunds or applicable credits under Federal awards refer to receipts, or reduction of expenditures, which operate to offset or reduce expense items that are allocable to Federal awards as direct or indirect costs. To the extent that such credits accrued or received by the non-Federal entity relate to allowable cost, these costs must be credited to the Federal awarding agency either as costs or cash refunds. If the costs are credited back to the Federal award, the non-Federal entity may reduce the Federal share of costs by the amount of the foreign tax reimbursement, or where Federal award has not expired, use the foreign government tax refund for approved activities under the Federal award with prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

§ 200.471 Telecommunication costs and video surveillance costs.

(a) Costs incurred for telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment such as phones, internet, video surveillance, cloud servers are allowable except for the following circumstances:

(b) Obligor or expending covered telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment or services as described in § 200.216 to:

- (1) Procure or obtain, extend or renew a contract to procure or obtain;
- (2) Enter into a contract (or extend or renew a contract) to procure; or
- (3) Obtain the equipment, services, or systems.

[85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.472 Termination costs.

Termination of a Federal award generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the Federal award not been terminated. Cost principles covering these items are set forth in this section. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this part in termination situations.

(a) The cost of items reasonably usable on the non-Federal entity's other work must not be allowable unless the non-Federal entity submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the non-Federal entity, the Federal awarding agency should consider the non-Federal entity's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity. Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the non-Federal entity must be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the non-Federal entity's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the Federal award must be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

(b) If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the non-Federal entity, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this part, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the non-Federal entity to discontinue such costs must be unallowable.

(c) Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and equipment is generally allowable if:

- (1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the non-Federal entity,
- (2) The interest of the Federal Government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the Federal awarding agency (see also § 200.313 (d)), and

§ 200.473

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated Federal award is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the Federal award bears to the entire terminated Federal award and other Federal awards for which the special tooling, machinery, or equipment was acquired.

(d) Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated Federal award less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) The amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the Federal award and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) The non-Federal entity makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the Federal award, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

(e) Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(i) The preparation and presentation to the Federal awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the Federal award, unless the termination is for cause (see subpart D, including §§ 200.339–200.343); and

(ii) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal Government or acquired or produced for the Federal award.

(f) Claims under subawards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the Federal award and to other work of the non-Federal entity, are generally allowable. An appropriate share of the non-Federal entity's indirect costs may be allocated to the amount of settlements with contractors and/or subrecipients, provided that

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in § 200.414. The indirect costs so allocated must exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013. Redesignated and amended at 85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.473 Training and education costs.

The cost of training and education provided for employee development is allowable.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013. Redesignated at 85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.474 Transportation costs.

Costs incurred for freight, express, cartage, postage, and other transportation services relating either to goods purchased, in process, or delivered, are allowable. When such costs can readily be identified with the items involved, they may be charged directly as transportation costs or added to the cost of such items. Where identification with the materials received cannot readily be made, inbound transportation cost may be charged to the appropriate indirect (F&A) cost accounts if the non-Federal entity follows a consistent, equitable procedure in this respect. Outbound freight, if reimbursable under the terms and conditions of the Federal award, should be treated as a direct cost.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013. Redesignated at 85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.475 Travel costs.

(a) *General.* Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the non-Federal entity. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the non-Federal entity's non-federally-funded activities and in accordance with non-Federal entity's written travel reimbursement

OMB Guidance

§ 200.500

policies. Notwithstanding the provisions of § 200.444, travel costs of officials covered by that section are allowable with the prior written approval of the Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity when they are specifically related to the Federal award.

(b) *Lodging and subsistence.* Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, must be considered reasonable and otherwise allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the non-Federal entity in its regular operations as the result of the non-Federal entity's written travel policy. In addition, if these costs are charged directly to the Federal award documentation must justify that:

(1) Participation of the individual is necessary to the Federal award; and

(2) The costs are reasonable and consistent with non-Federal entity's established travel policy.

(c)(1) Temporary dependent care costs (as dependent is defined in 26 U.S.C. 152) above and beyond regular dependent care that directly results from travel to conferences is allowable provided that:

(i) The costs are a direct result of the individual's travel for the Federal award;

(ii) The costs are consistent with the non-Federal entity's documented travel policy for all entity travel; and

(iii) Are only temporary during the travel period.

(2) Travel costs for dependents are unallowable, except for travel of duration of six months or more with prior approval of the Federal awarding agency. See also § 200.432.

(d) In the absence of an acceptable, written non-Federal entity policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under 5 U.S.C. 5701-11, ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter must apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).

(e) *Commercial air travel.* (1) Airfare costs in excess of the basic least expen-

sive unrestricted accommodations class offered by commercial airlines are unallowable except when such accommodations would:

(i) Require circuitous routing;

(ii) Require travel during unreasonable hours;

(iii) Excessively prolong travel;

(iv) Result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or

(v) Offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The non-Federal entity must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class or business-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal Government will generally not question a non-Federal entity's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the non-Federal entity can demonstrate that such airfare was not available in the specific case.

(f) *Air travel by other than commercial carrier.* Costs of travel by non-Federal entity-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of airfare as provided for in paragraph (d) of this section, is unallowable.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014. Redesignated and amended at 85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.476 Trustees.

Travel and subsistence costs of trustees (or directors) at IHEs and nonprofit organizations are allowable. See also § 200.475.

[85 FR 49571, Aug. 13, 2020]

Subpart F—Audit Requirements

GENERAL

§ 200.500 Purpose.

This part sets forth standards for obtaining consistency and uniformity among Federal agencies for the audit

§ 200.501

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

of non-Federal entities expending Federal awards.

AUDITS

§ 200.501 Audit requirements.

(a) *Audit required.* A non-Federal entity that expends \$750,000 or more during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in Federal awards must have a single or program-specific audit conducted for that year in accordance with the provisions of this part.

(b) *Single audit.* A non-Federal entity that expends \$750,000 or more during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in Federal awards must have a single audit conducted in accordance with § 200.514 except when it elects to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) *Program-specific audit election.* When an auditee expends Federal awards under only one Federal program (excluding R&D) and the Federal program's statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal award do not require a financial statement audit of the auditee, the auditee may elect to have a program-specific audit conducted in accordance with § 200.507. A program-specific audit may not be elected for R&D unless all of the Federal awards expended were received from the same Federal agency, or the same Federal agency and the same pass-through entity, and that Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a subrecipient, approves in advance a program-specific audit.

(d) *Exemption when Federal awards expended are less than \$750,000.* A non-Federal entity that expends less than \$750,000 during the non-Federal entity's fiscal year in Federal awards is exempt from Federal audit requirements for that year, except as noted in § 200.503, but records must be available for review or audit by appropriate officials of the Federal agency, pass-through entity, and Government Accountability Office (GAO).

(e) *Federally Funded Research and Development Centers (FFRDC).* Management of an auditee that owns or operates a FFRDC may elect to treat the FFRDC as a separate entity for purposes of this part.

(f) *Subrecipients and contractors.* An auditee may simultaneously be a recipient, a subrecipient, and a contractor. Federal awards expended as a recipient or a subrecipient are subject to audit under this part. The payments received for goods or services provided as a contractor are not Federal awards. Section § 200.331 sets forth the considerations in determining whether payments constitute a Federal award or a payment for goods or services provided as a contractor.

(g) *Compliance responsibility for contractors.* In most cases, the auditee's compliance responsibility for contractors is only to ensure that the procurement, receipt, and payment for goods and services comply with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards. Federal award compliance requirements normally do not pass through to contractors. However, the auditee is responsible for ensuring compliance for procurement transactions which are structured such that the contractor is responsible for program compliance or the contractor's records must be reviewed to determine program compliance. Also, when these procurement transactions relate to a major program, the scope of the audit must include determining whether these transactions are in compliance with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards.

(h) *For-profit subrecipient.* Since this part does not apply to for-profit subrecipients, the pass-through entity is responsible for establishing requirements, as necessary, to ensure compliance by for-profit subrecipients. The agreement with the for-profit subrecipient must describe applicable compliance requirements and the for-profit subrecipient's compliance responsibility. Methods to ensure compliance for Federal awards made to for-profit subrecipients may include pre-award audits, monitoring during the agreement, and post-award audits. See also § 200.332.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49571, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.502 Basis for determining Federal awards expended.

(a) *Determining Federal awards expended.* The determination of when a Federal award is expended must be based on when the activity related to the Federal award occurs. Generally, the activity pertains to events that require the non-Federal entity to comply with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards, such as: expenditure/expense transactions associated with awards including grants, cost-reimbursement contracts under the FAR, compacts with Indian Tribes, cooperative agreements, and direct appropriations; the disbursement of funds to subrecipients; the use of loan proceeds under loan and loan guarantee programs; the receipt of property; the receipt of surplus property; the receipt or use of program income; the distribution or use of food commodities; the disbursement of amounts entitling the non-Federal entity to an interest subsidy; and the period when insurance is in force.

(b) *Loan and loan guarantees (loans).* Since the Federal Government is at risk for loans until the debt is repaid, the following guidelines must be used to calculate the value of Federal awards expended under loan programs, except as noted in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section:

(1) Value of new loans made or received during the audit period; plus

(2) Beginning of the audit period balance of loans from previous years for which the Federal Government imposes continuing compliance requirements; plus

(3) Any interest subsidy, cash, or administrative cost allowance received.

(c) *Loan and loan guarantees (loans) at IHEs.* When loans are made to students of an IHE but the IHE does not make the loans, then only the value of loans made during the audit period must be considered Federal awards expended in that audit period. The balance of loans for previous audit periods is not included as Federal awards expended because the lender accounts for the prior balances.

(d) *Prior loan and loan guarantees (loans).* Loans, the proceeds of which were received and expended in prior years, are not considered Federal

awards expended under this part when the Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards pertaining to such loans impose no continuing compliance requirements other than to repay the loans.

(e) *Endowment funds.* The cumulative balance of Federal awards for endowment funds that are federally restricted are considered Federal awards expended in each audit period in which the funds are still restricted.

(f) *Free rent.* Free rent received by itself is not considered a Federal award expended under this part. However, free rent received as part of a Federal award to carry out a Federal program must be included in determining Federal awards expended and subject to audit under this part.

(g) *Valuing non-cash assistance.* Federal non-cash assistance, such as free rent, food commodities, donated property, or donated surplus property, must be valued at fair market value at the time of receipt or the assessed value provided by the Federal agency.

(h) *Medicare.* Medicare payments to a non-Federal entity for providing patient care services to Medicare-eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this part.

(i) *Medicaid.* Medicaid payments to a subrecipient for providing patient care services to Medicaid-eligible individuals are not considered Federal awards expended under this part unless a state requires the funds to be treated as Federal awards expended because reimbursement is on a cost-reimbursement basis.

(j) *Certain loans provided by the National Credit Union Administration.* For purposes of this part, loans made from the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund and the Central Liquidity Facility that are funded by contributions from insured non-Federal entities are not considered Federal awards expended.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014]

§ 200.503 Relation to other audit requirements.

(a) An audit conducted in accordance with this part must be in lieu of any financial audit of Federal awards which

a non-Federal entity is required to undergo under any other Federal statute or regulation. To the extent that such audit provides a Federal agency with the information it requires to carry out its responsibilities under Federal statute or regulation, a Federal agency must rely upon and use that information.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), a Federal agency, Inspectors General, or GAO may conduct or arrange for additional audits which are necessary to carry out its responsibilities under Federal statute or regulation. The provisions of this part do not authorize any non-Federal entity to constrain, in any manner, such Federal agency from carrying out or arranging for such additional audits, except that the Federal agency must plan such audits to not be duplicative of other audits of Federal awards. Prior to commencing such an audit, the Federal agency or pass-through entity must review the FAC for recent audits submitted by the non-Federal entity, and to the extent such audits meet a Federal agency or pass-through entity's needs, the Federal agency or pass-through entity must rely upon and use such audits. Any additional audits must be planned and performed in such a way as to build upon work performed, including the audit documentation, sampling, and testing already performed, by other auditors.

(c) The provisions of this part do not limit the authority of Federal agencies to conduct, or arrange for the conduct of, audits and evaluations of Federal awards, nor limit the authority of any Federal agency Inspector General or other Federal official. For example, requirements that may be applicable under the FAR or CAS and the terms and conditions of a cost-reimbursement contract may include additional applicable audits to be conducted or arranged for by Federal agencies.

(d) *Federal agency to pay for additional audits.* A Federal agency that conducts or arranges for additional audits must, consistent with other applicable Federal statutes and regulations, arrange for funding the full cost of such additional audits.

(e) *Request for a program to be audited as a major program.* A Federal awarding

agency may request that an auditee have a particular Federal program audited as a major program in lieu of the Federal awarding agency conducting or arranging for the additional audits. To allow for planning, such requests should be made at least 180 calendar days prior to the end of the fiscal year to be audited. The auditee, after consultation with its auditor, should promptly respond to such a request by informing the Federal awarding agency whether the program would otherwise be audited as a major program using the risk-based audit approach described in §200.518 and, if not, the estimated incremental cost. The Federal awarding agency must then promptly confirm to the auditee whether it wants the program audited as a major program. If the program is to be audited as a major program based upon this Federal awarding agency request, and the Federal awarding agency agrees to pay the full incremental costs, then the auditee must have the program audited as a major program. A pass-through entity may use the provisions of this paragraph for a sub-recipient.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49570, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.504 Frequency of audits.

Except for the provisions for biennial audits provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, audits required by this part must be performed annually. Any biennial audit must cover both years within the biennial period.

(a) A state, local government, or Indian tribe that is required by constitution or statute, in effect on January 1, 1987, to undergo its audits less frequently than annually, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this part biennially. This requirement must still be in effect for the biennial period.

(b) Any nonprofit organization that had biennial audits for all biennial periods ending between July 1, 1992, and January 1, 1995, is permitted to undergo its audits pursuant to this part biennially.

§ 200.505 Sanctions.

In cases of continued inability or unwillingness to have an audit conducted in accordance with this part, Federal

OMB Guidance

§ 200.507

agencies and pass-through entities must take appropriate action as provided in § 200.339.

[85 FR 49571, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.506 Audit costs.

See § 200.425.

[85 FR 49571, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.507 Program-specific audits.

(a) *Program-specific audit guide available.* In some cases, a program-specific audit guide will be available to provide specific guidance to the auditor with respect to internal controls, compliance requirements, suggested audit procedures, and audit reporting requirements. A listing of current program-specific audit guides can be found in the compliance supplement, Part 8, Appendix VI, Program-Specific Audit Guides, which includes a website where a copy of the guide can be obtained. When a current program-specific audit guide is available, the auditor must follow GAGAS and the guide when performing a program-specific audit.

(b) *Program-specific audit guide not available.* (1) When a current program-specific audit guide is not available, the auditee and auditor must have basically the same responsibilities for the Federal program as they would have for an audit of a major program in a single audit.

(2) The auditee must prepare the financial statement(s) for the Federal program that includes, at a minimum, a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the program and notes that describe the significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule, a summary schedule of prior audit findings consistent with the requirements of § 200.511(b), and a corrective action plan consistent with the requirements of § 200.511(c).

(3) The auditor must:

(i) Perform an audit of the financial statement(s) for the Federal program in accordance with GAGAS;

(ii) Obtain an understanding of internal controls and perform tests of internal controls over the Federal program consistent with the requirements of § 200.514(c) for a major program;

(iii) Perform procedures to determine whether the auditee has complied with

Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards that could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program consistent with the requirements of § 200.514(d) for a major program;

(iv) Follow up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with the requirements of § 200.511, and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding; and

(v) Report any audit findings consistent with the requirements of § 200.516.

(4) The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) must state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this part and include the following:

(i) An opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the financial statement(s) of the Federal program is presented fairly in all material respects in accordance with the stated accounting policies;

(ii) A report on internal control related to the Federal program, which must describe the scope of testing of internal control and the results of the tests;

(iii) A report on compliance which includes an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) as to whether the auditee complied with laws, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards which could have a direct and material effect on the Federal program; and

(iv) A schedule of findings and questioned costs for the Federal program that includes a summary of the auditor's results relative to the Federal program in a format consistent with § 200.515(d)(1) and findings and questioned costs consistent with the requirements of § 200.515(d)(3).

(c) *Report submission for program-specific audits.* (1) The audit must be completed and the reporting required by paragraph (c)(2) or (c)(3) of this section

§ 200.508

submitted within the earlier of 30 calendar days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period, unless a different period is specified in a program-specific audit guide. Unless restricted by Federal law or regulation, the auditee must make report copies available for public inspection. Auditees and auditors must ensure that their respective parts of the reporting package do not include protected personally identifiable information.

(2) When a program-specific audit guide is available, the auditee must electronically submit to the FAC the data collection form prepared in accordance with §200.512(b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and the reporting required by the program-specific audit guide.

(3) When a program-specific audit guide is not available, the reporting package for a program-specific audit must consist of the financial statement(s) of the Federal program, a summary schedule of prior audit findings, and a corrective action plan as described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, and the auditor's report(s) described in paragraph (b)(4) of this section. The data collection form prepared in accordance with §200.512(b), as applicable to a program-specific audit, and one copy of this reporting package must be electronically submitted to the FAC.

(d) *Other sections of this part may apply.* Program-specific audits are subject to:

(1) 200.500 Purpose through 200.503 Relation to other audit requirements, paragraph (d);

(2) 200.504 Frequency of audits through 200.506 Audit costs;

(3) 200.508 Auditee responsibilities through 200.509 Auditor selection;

(4) 200.511 Audit findings follow-up;

(5) 200.512 Report submission, paragraphs (e) through (h);

(6) 200.513 Responsibilities;

(7) 200.516 Audit findings through 200.517 Audit documentation;

(8) 200.521 Management decision; and

(9) Other referenced provisions of this part unless contrary to the provisions of this section, a program-specific

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

audit guide, or program statutes and regulations.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49571, Aug. 13, 2020]

AUDITEES

§ 200.508 Auditee responsibilities.

The auditee must:

(a) Procure or otherwise arrange for the audit required by this part in accordance with §200.509, and ensure it is properly performed and submitted when due in accordance with §200.512.

(b) Prepare appropriate financial statements, including the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards in accordance with §200.510.

(c) Promptly follow up and take corrective action on audit findings, including preparation of a summary schedule of prior audit findings and a corrective action plan in accordance with §200.511(b) and (c), respectively.

(d) Provide the auditor with access to personnel, accounts, books, records, supporting documentation, and other information as needed for the auditor to perform the audit required by this part.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49572, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.509 Auditor selection.

(a) *Auditor procurement.* In procuring audit services, the auditee must follow the procurement standards prescribed by the Procurement Standards in §§200.317 through 200.326 of subpart D of this part or the FAR (48 CFR part 42), as applicable. When procuring audit services, the objective is to obtain high-quality audits. In requesting proposals for audit services, the objectives and scope of the audit must be made clear and the non-Federal entity must request a copy of the audit organization's peer review report which the auditor is required to provide under GAGAS. Factors to be considered in evaluating each proposal for audit services include the responsiveness to the request for proposal, relevant experience, availability of staff with professional qualifications and technical abilities, the results of peer and external quality control reviews, and price. Whenever possible, the auditee must

OMB Guidance

§ 200.511

make positive efforts to utilize small businesses, minority-owned firms, and women's business enterprises, in procuring audit services as stated in § 200.321, or the FAR (48 CFR part 42), as applicable.

(b) *Restriction on auditor preparing indirect cost proposals.* An auditor who prepares the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan may not also be selected to perform the audit required by this part when the indirect costs recovered by the auditee during the prior year exceeded \$1 million. This restriction applies to the base year used in the preparation of the indirect cost proposal or cost allocation plan and any subsequent years in which the resulting indirect cost agreement or cost allocation plan is used to recover costs.

(c) *Use of Federal auditors.* Federal auditors may perform all or part of the work required under this part if they comply fully with the requirements of this part.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49572, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.510 Financial statements.

(a) *Financial statements.* The auditee must prepare financial statements that reflect its financial position, results of operations or changes in net assets, and, where appropriate, cash flows for the fiscal year audited. The financial statements must be for the same organizational unit and fiscal year that is chosen to meet the requirements of this part. However, non-Federal entity-wide financial statements may also include departments, agencies, and other organizational units that have separate audits in accordance with § 200.514(a) and prepare separate financial statements.

(b) *Schedule of expenditures of Federal awards.* The auditee must also prepare a schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for the period covered by the auditee's financial statements which must include the total Federal awards expended as determined in accordance with § 200.502. While not required, the auditee may choose to provide information requested by Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities to make the schedule easier to use. For example, when a Federal program has multiple Federal award years, the

auditee may list the amount of Federal awards expended for each Federal award year separately. At a minimum, the schedule must:

(1) List individual Federal programs by Federal agency. For a cluster of programs, provide the cluster name, list individual Federal programs within the cluster of programs, and provide the applicable Federal agency name. For R&D, total Federal awards expended must be shown either by individual Federal award or by Federal agency and major subdivision within the Federal agency. For example, the National Institutes of Health is a major subdivision in the Department of Health and Human Services.

(2) For Federal awards received as a subrecipient, the name of the pass-through entity and identifying number assigned by the pass-through entity must be included.

(3) Provide total Federal awards expended for each individual Federal program and the Assistance Listings Number or other identifying number when the Assistance Listings information is not available. For a cluster of programs also provide the total for the cluster.

(4) Include the total amount provided to subrecipients from each Federal program.

(5) For loan or loan guarantee programs described in § 200.502(b), identify in the notes to the schedule the balances outstanding at the end of the audit period. This is in addition to including the total Federal awards expended for loan or loan guarantee programs in the schedule.

(6) Include notes that describe that significant accounting policies used in preparing the schedule, and note whether or not the auditee elected to use the 10% de minimis cost rate as covered in § 200.414.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49572, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.511 Audit findings follow-up.

(a) *General.* The auditee is responsible for follow-up and corrective action on all audit findings. As part of this responsibility, the auditee must prepare a summary schedule of prior audit findings. The auditee must also prepare a

§ 200.512

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

corrective action plan for current year audit findings. The summary schedule of prior audit findings and the corrective action plan must include the reference numbers the auditor assigns to audit findings under § 200.516(c). Since the summary schedule may include audit findings from multiple years, it must include the fiscal year in which the finding initially occurred. The corrective action plan and summary schedule of prior audit findings must include findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(b) *Summary schedule of prior audit findings.* The summary schedule of prior audit findings must report the status of all audit findings included in the prior audit's schedule of findings and questioned costs. The summary schedule must also include audit findings reported in the prior audit's summary schedule of prior audit findings except audit findings listed as corrected in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section, or no longer valid or not warranting further action in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(1) When audit findings were fully corrected, the summary schedule need only list the audit findings and state that corrective action was taken.

(2) When audit findings were not corrected or were only partially corrected, the summary schedule must describe the reasons for the finding's recurrence and planned corrective action, and any partial corrective action taken. When corrective action taken is significantly different from corrective action previously reported in a corrective action plan or in the Federal agency's or pass-through entity's management decision, the summary schedule must provide an explanation.

(3) When the auditee believes the audit findings are no longer valid or do not warrant further action, the reasons for this position must be described in the summary schedule. A valid reason for considering an audit finding as not warranting further action is that all of the following have occurred:

(i) Two years have passed since the audit report in which the finding occurred was submitted to the FAC;

(ii) The Federal agency or pass-through entity is not currently following up with the auditee on the audit finding; and

(iii) A management decision was not issued.

(c) *Corrective action plan.* At the completion of the audit, the auditee must prepare, in a document separate from the auditor's findings described in § 200.516, a corrective action plan to address each audit finding included in the current year auditor's reports. The corrective action plan must provide the name(s) of the contact person(s) responsible for corrective action, the corrective action planned, and the anticipated completion date. If the auditee does not agree with the audit findings or believes corrective action is not required, then the corrective action plan must include an explanation and specific reasons.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49572, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.512 Report submission.

(a) *General.* (1) The audit must be completed and the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section must be submitted within the earlier of 30 calendar days after receipt of the auditor's report(s), or nine months after the end of the audit period. If the due date falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, the reporting package is due the next business day.

(2) Unless restricted by Federal statutes or regulations, the auditee must make copies available for public inspection. Auditees and auditors must ensure that their respective parts of the reporting package do not include protected personally identifiable information.

(b) *Data collection.* The FAC is the repository of record for subpart F of this part reporting packages and the data collection form. All Federal agencies, pass-through entities and others interested in a reporting package and data collection form must obtain it by accessing the FAC.

(1) The auditee must submit required data elements described in Appendix X to Part 200, which state whether the audit was completed in accordance

with this part and provides information about the auditee, its Federal programs, and the results of the audit. The data must include information available from the audit required by this part that is necessary for Federal agencies to use the audit to ensure integrity for Federal programs. The data elements and format must be approved by OMB, available from the FAC, and include collections of information from the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section. A senior level representative of the auditee (*e.g.*, state controller, director of finance, chief executive officer, or chief financial officer) must sign a statement to be included as part of the data collection that says that the auditee complied with the requirements of this part, the data were prepared in accordance with this part (and the instructions accompanying the form), the reporting package does not include protected personally identifiable information, the information included in its entirety is accurate and complete, and that the FAC is authorized to make the reporting package and the form publicly available on a website.

(2) *Exception for Indian Tribes and Tribal Organizations.* An auditee that is an Indian tribe or a tribal organization (as defined in the Indian Self-Determination, Education and Assistance Act (ISDEAA), 25 U.S.C. 450b(1)) may opt not to authorize the FAC to make the reporting package publicly available on a Web site, by excluding the authorization for the FAC publication in the statement described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section. If this option is exercised, the auditee becomes responsible for submitting the reporting package directly to any pass-through entities through which it has received a Federal award and to pass-through entities for which the summary schedule of prior audit findings reported the status of any findings related to Federal awards that the pass-through entity provided. Unless restricted by Federal statute or regulation, if the auditee opts not to authorize publication, it must make copies of the reporting package available for public inspection.

(3) Using the information included in the reporting package described in

paragraph (c) of this section, the auditor must complete the applicable data elements of the data collection form. The auditor must sign a statement to be included as part of the data collection form that indicates, at a minimum, the source of the information included in the form, the auditor's responsibility for the information, that the form is not a substitute for the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section, and that the content of the form is limited to the collection of information prescribed by OMB.

(c) *Reporting package.* The reporting package must include the:

(1) Financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards discussed in § 200.510(a) and (b), respectively;

(2) Summary schedule of prior audit findings discussed in § 200.511(b);

(3) Auditor's report(s) discussed in § 200.515; and

(4) Corrective action plan discussed in § 200.511(c).

(d) *Submission to FAC.* The auditee must electronically submit to the FAC the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(e) *Requests for management letters issued by the auditor.* In response to requests by a Federal agency or pass-through entity, auditees must submit a copy of any management letters issued by the auditor.

(f) *Report retention requirements.* Auditees must keep one copy of the data collection form described in paragraph (b) of this section and one copy of the reporting package described in paragraph (c) of this section on file for three years from the date of submission to the FAC.

(g) *FAC responsibilities.* The FAC must make available the reporting packages received in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section and § 200.507(c) to the public, except for Indian tribes exercising the option in (b)(2) of this section, and maintain a data base of completed audits, provide appropriate information to Federal agencies, and follow up with known auditees that have not submitted the required data collection forms and reporting packages.

(h) *Electronic filing.* Nothing in this part must preclude electronic submissions to the FAC in such manner as may be approved by OMB.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49573, Aug. 13, 2020]

FEDERAL AGENCIES

§ 200.513 Responsibilities.

(a)(1) *Cognizant agency for audit responsibilities.* A non-Federal entity expending more than \$50 million a year in Federal awards must have a cognizant agency for audit. The designated cognizant agency for audit must be the Federal awarding agency that provides the predominant amount of funding directly (direct funding) (as listed on the Schedule of expenditures of Federal awards, see § 200.510(b)) to a non-Federal entity unless OMB designates a specific cognizant agency for audit. When the direct funding represents less than 25 percent of the total expenditures (as direct and subawards) by the non-Federal entity, then the Federal agency with the predominant amount of total funding is the designated cognizant agency for audit.

(2) To provide for continuity of cognizance, the determination of the predominant amount of direct funding must be based upon direct Federal awards expended in the non-Federal entity's fiscal years ending in 2019, and every fifth year thereafter.

(3) Notwithstanding the manner in which audit cognizance is determined, a Federal awarding agency with cognizance for an auditee may reassign cognizance to another Federal awarding agency that provides substantial funding and agrees to be the cognizant agency for audit. Within 30 calendar days after any reassignment, both the old and the new cognizant agency for audit must provide notice of the change to the FAC, the auditee, and, if known, the auditor. The cognizant agency for audit must:

(i) Provide technical audit advice and liaison assistance to auditees and auditors.

(ii) Obtain or conduct quality control reviews on selected audits made by non-Federal auditors, and provide the results to other interested organiza-

tions. Cooperate and provide support to the Federal agency designated by OMB to lead a governmentwide project to determine the quality of single audits by providing a reliable estimate of the extent that single audits conform to applicable requirements, standards, and procedures; and to make recommendations to address noted audit quality issues, including recommendations for any changes to applicable requirements, standards and procedures indicated by the results of the project. The governmentwide project can rely on the current and on-going quality control review work performed by the agencies, State auditors, and professional audit associations. This governmentwide audit quality project must be performed once every 6 years (or at such other interval as determined by OMB), and the results must be public.

(iii) Promptly inform other affected Federal agencies and appropriate Federal law enforcement officials of any direct reporting by the auditee or its auditor required by GAGAS or statutes and regulations.

(iv) Advise the community of independent auditors of any noteworthy or important factual trends related to the quality of audits stemming from quality control reviews. Significant problems or quality issues consistently identified through quality control reviews of audit reports must be referred to appropriate state licensing agencies and professional bodies.

(v) Advise the auditor, Federal awarding agencies, and, where appropriate, the auditee of any deficiencies found in the audits when the deficiencies require corrective action by the auditor. When advised of deficiencies, the auditee must work with the auditor to take corrective action. If corrective action is not taken, the cognizant agency for audit must notify the auditor, the auditee, and applicable Federal awarding agencies and pass-through entities of the facts and make recommendations for follow-up action. Major inadequacies or repetitive substandard performance by auditors must be referred to appropriate state licensing agencies and professional bodies for disciplinary action.

(vi) Coordinate, to the extent practical, audits or reviews made by or for

Federal agencies that are in addition to the audits made pursuant to this part, so that the additional audits or reviews build upon rather than duplicate audits performed in accordance with this part.

(vii) Coordinate a management decision for cross-cutting audit findings (see in §200.1 of this part) that affect the Federal programs of more than one agency when requested by any Federal awarding agency whose awards are included in the audit finding of the auditee.

(viii) Coordinate the audit work and reporting responsibilities among auditors to achieve the most cost-effective audit.

(ix) Provide advice to auditees as to how to handle changes in fiscal years.

(b) *Oversight agency for audit responsibilities.* An auditee who does not have a designated cognizant agency for audit will be under the general oversight of the Federal agency determined in accordance with §200.1 *oversight agency for audit*. A Federal agency with oversight for an auditee may reassign oversight to another Federal agency that agrees to be the oversight agency for audit. Within 30 calendar days after any reassignment, both the old and the new oversight agency for audit must provide notice of the change to the FAC, the auditee, and, if known, the auditor. The oversight agency for audit:

(1) Must provide technical advice to auditees and auditors as requested.

(2) May assume all or some of the responsibilities normally performed by a cognizant agency for audit.

(c) *Federal awarding agency responsibilities.* The Federal awarding agency must perform the following for the Federal awards it makes (See also the requirements of §200.211):

(1) Ensure that audits are completed and reports are received in a timely manner and in accordance with the requirements of this part.

(2) Provide technical advice and counsel to auditees and auditors as requested.

(3) Follow-up on audit findings to ensure that the recipient takes appropriate and timely corrective action. As part of audit follow-up, the Federal awarding agency must:

(i) Issue a management decision as prescribed in §200.521;

(ii) Monitor the recipient taking appropriate and timely corrective action;

(iii) Use cooperative audit resolution mechanisms (see the definition of *cooperative audit resolution* in §200.1 of this part) to improve Federal program outcomes through better audit resolution, follow-up, and corrective action; and

(iv) Develop a baseline, metrics, and targets to track, over time, the effectiveness of the Federal agency's process to follow-up on audit findings and on the effectiveness of Single Audits in improving non-Federal entity accountability and their use by Federal awarding agencies in making award decisions.

(4) Provide OMB annual updates to the compliance supplement and work with OMB to ensure that the compliance supplement focuses the auditor to test the compliance requirements most likely to cause improper payments, fraud, waste, abuse or generate audit finding for which the Federal awarding agency will take sanctions.

(5) Provide OMB with the name of a single audit accountable official from among the senior policy officials of the Federal awarding agency who must be:

(i) Responsible for ensuring that the agency fulfills all the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section and effectively uses the single audit process to reduce improper payments and improve Federal program outcomes.

(ii) Held accountable to improve the effectiveness of the single audit process based upon metrics as described in paragraph (c)(3)(iv) of this section.

(iii) Responsible for designating the Federal agency's key management single audit liaison.

(6) Provide OMB with the name of a key management single audit liaison who must:

(i) Serve as the Federal awarding agency's management point of contact for the single audit process both within and outside the Federal Government.

(ii) Promote interagency coordination, consistency, and sharing in areas such as coordinating audit follow-up; identifying higher-risk non-Federal entities; providing input on single audit and follow-up policy; enhancing the utility of the FAC; and studying ways

§ 200.514

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

to use single audit results to improve Federal award accountability and best practices.

(iii) Oversee training for the Federal awarding agency's program management personnel related to the single audit process.

(iv) Promote the Federal awarding agency's use of cooperative audit resolution mechanisms.

(v) Coordinate the Federal awarding agency's activities to ensure appropriate and timely follow-up and corrective action on audit findings.

(vi) Organize the Federal cognizant agency for audit's follow-up on cross-cutting audit findings that affect the Federal programs of more than one Federal awarding agency.

(vii) Ensure the Federal awarding agency provides annual updates of the compliance supplement to OMB.

(viii) Support the Federal awarding agency's single audit accountable official's mission.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49573, Aug. 13, 2020]

AUDITORS

§ 200.514 Scope of audit.

(a) *General.* The audit must be conducted in accordance with GAGAS. The audit must cover the entire operations of the auditee, or, at the option of the auditee, such audit must include a series of audits that cover departments, agencies, and other organizational units that expended or otherwise administered Federal awards during such audit period, provided that each such audit must encompass the financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards for each such department, agency, and other organizational unit, which must be considered to be a non-Federal entity. The financial statements and schedule of expenditures of Federal awards must be for the same audit period.

(b) *Financial statements.* The auditor must determine whether the financial statements of the auditee are presented fairly in all material respects in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. The auditor must also determine whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is stat-

ed fairly in all material respects in relation to the auditee's financial statements as a whole.

(c) *Internal control.* (1) The compliance supplement provides guidance on internal controls over Federal programs based upon the guidance in Standards for Internal Control in the Federal Government issued by the Comptroller General of the United States and the Internal Control—Integrated Framework, issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

(2) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor must perform procedures to obtain an understanding of internal control over Federal programs sufficient to plan the audit to support a low assessed level of control risk of noncompliance for major programs.

(3) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(4) of this section, the auditor must:

(i) Plan the testing of internal control over compliance for major programs to support a low assessed level of control risk for the assertions relevant to the compliance requirements for each major program; and

(ii) Perform testing of internal control as planned in paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) When internal control over some or all of the compliance requirements for a major program are likely to be ineffective in preventing or detecting noncompliance, the planning and performing of testing described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section are not required for those compliance requirements. However, the auditor must report a significant deficiency or material weakness in accordance with § 200.516 Audit findings, assess the related control risk at the maximum, and consider whether additional compliance tests are required because of ineffective internal control.

(d) *Compliance.* (1) In addition to the requirements of GAGAS, the auditor must determine whether the auditee has complied with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards that may have a direct and material effect on each of its major programs.

(2) The principal compliance requirements applicable to most Federal programs and the compliance requirements of the largest Federal programs are included in the compliance supplement.

(3) For the compliance requirements related to Federal programs contained in the compliance supplement, an audit of these compliance requirements will meet the requirements of this part. Where there have been changes to the compliance requirements and the changes are not reflected in the compliance supplement, the auditor must determine the current compliance requirements and modify the audit procedures accordingly. For those Federal programs not covered in the compliance supplement, the auditor must follow the compliance supplement's guidance for programs not included in the supplement.

(4) When internal control over some or all of the compliance requirements for a major program are likely to be ineffective in preventing or detecting noncompliance, the planning and performing of testing described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section are not required for those compliance requirements. However, the auditor must report a significant deficiency or material weakness in accordance with § 200.516, assess the related control risk at the

(e) *Audit follow-up.* The auditor must follow-up on prior audit findings, perform procedures to assess the reasonableness of the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § 200.511(b), and report, as a current year audit finding, when the auditor concludes that the summary schedule of prior audit findings materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding. The auditor must perform audit follow-up procedures regardless of whether a prior audit finding relates to a major program in the current year.

(f) *Data collection form.* As required in § 200.512(b)(3), the auditor must complete and sign specified sections of the data collection form.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49574, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.515 Audit reporting.

The auditor's report(s) may be in the form of either combined or separate reports and may be organized differently from the manner presented in this section. The auditor's report(s) must state that the audit was conducted in accordance with this part and include the following:

(a) *Financial statements.* The auditor must determine and provide an opinion (or disclaimer of opinion) whether the financial statements of the auditee are presented fairly in all materials respects in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (or a special purpose framework such as cash, modified cash, or regulatory as required by state law). The auditor must also decide whether the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards is stated fairly in all material respects in relation to the auditee's financial statements as a whole.

(b) A report on internal control over financial reporting and compliance with provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and award agreements, non-compliance with which could have a material effect on the financial statements. This report must describe the scope of testing of internal control and compliance and the results of the tests, and, where applicable, it will refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) A report on compliance for each major program and a report on internal control over compliance. This report must describe the scope of testing of internal control over compliance, include an opinion or disclaimer of opinion as to whether the auditee complied with Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards which could have a direct and material effect on each major program and refer to the separate schedule of findings and questioned costs described in paragraph (d) of this section.

(d) A schedule of findings and questioned costs which must include the following three components:

(1) A summary of the auditor's results, which must include:

§ 200.516

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

(i) The type of report the auditor issued on whether the financial statements audited were prepared in accordance with GAAP (i.e., unmodified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(ii) Where applicable, a statement about whether significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control were disclosed by the audit of the financial statements;

(iii) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any noncompliance that is material to the financial statements of the auditee;

(iv) Where applicable, a statement about whether significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in internal control over major programs were disclosed by the audit;

(v) The type of report the auditor issued on compliance for major programs (i.e., unmodified opinion, qualified opinion, adverse opinion, or disclaimer of opinion);

(vi) A statement as to whether the audit disclosed any audit findings that the auditor is required to report under § 200.516(a);

(vii) An identification of major programs by listing each individual major program; however, in the case of a cluster of programs, only the cluster name as shown on the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards is required;

(viii) The dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs, as described in § 200.518(b)(1) or (3) when a recalculation of the Type A threshold is required for large loan or loan guarantees; and

(ix) A statement as to whether the auditee qualified as a low-risk auditee under § 200.520.

(2) Findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(3) Findings and questioned costs for Federal awards which must include audit findings as defined in § 200.516(a).

(i) Audit findings (e.g., internal control findings, compliance findings, questioned costs, or fraud) that relate to the same issue must be presented as a single audit finding. Where practical, audit findings should be organized by Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(ii) Audit findings that relate to both the financial statements and Federal

awards, as reported under paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section, respectively, must be reported in both sections of the schedule. However, the reporting in one section of the schedule may be in summary form with a reference to a detailed reporting in the other section of the schedule.

(e) Nothing in this part precludes combining of the audit reporting required by this section with the reporting required by § 200.512(b) when allowed by GAGAS and appendix X to this part.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49574, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.516 Audit findings.

(a) *Audit findings reported.* The auditor must report the following as audit findings in a schedule of findings and questioned costs:

(1) Significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in internal control over major programs and significant instances of abuse relating to major programs. The auditor's determination of whether a deficiency in internal control is a significant deficiency or a material weakness for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program identified in the Compliance Supplement.

(2) Material noncompliance with the provisions of Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of Federal awards related to a major program. The auditor's determination of whether a noncompliance with the provisions of Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of Federal awards is material for the purpose of reporting an audit finding is in relation to a type of compliance requirement for a major program identified in the compliance supplement.

(3) Known questioned costs that are greater than \$25,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. Known questioned costs are those specifically identified by the auditor. In evaluating the effect of questioned costs on the opinion on compliance, the auditor considers the best estimate of total costs questioned (likely questioned costs), not just the questioned costs specifically identified

(known questioned costs). The auditor must also report known questioned costs when likely questioned costs are greater than \$25,000 for a type of compliance requirement for a major program. In reporting questioned costs, the auditor must include information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the questioned costs.

(4) Known questioned costs that are greater than \$25,000 for a Federal program which is not audited as a major program. Except for audit follow-up, the auditor is not required under this part to perform audit procedures for such a Federal program; therefore, the auditor will normally not find questioned costs for a program that is not audited as a major program. However, if the auditor does become aware of questioned costs for a Federal program that is not audited as a major program (e.g., as part of audit follow-up or other audit procedures) and the known questioned costs are greater than \$25,000, then the auditor must report this as an audit finding.

(5) The circumstances concerning why the auditor's report on compliance for each major program is other than an unmodified opinion, unless such circumstances are otherwise reported as audit findings in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards.

(6) Known or likely fraud affecting a Federal award, unless such fraud is otherwise reported as an audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs for Federal awards. This paragraph does not require the auditor to report publicly information which could compromise investigative or legal proceedings or to make an additional reporting when the auditor confirms that the fraud was reported outside the auditor's reports under the direct reporting requirements of GAGAS.

(7) Instances where the results of audit follow-up procedures disclosed that the summary schedule of prior audit findings prepared by the auditee in accordance with § 200.511(b) materially misrepresents the status of any prior audit finding.

(b) *Audit finding detail and clarity.* Audit findings must be presented in sufficient detail and clarity for the

auditee to prepare a corrective action plan and take corrective action, and for Federal agencies and pass-through entities to arrive at a management decision. The following specific information must be included, as applicable, in audit findings:

(1) Federal program and specific Federal award identification including the Assistance Listings title and number, Federal award identification number and year, name of Federal agency, and name of the applicable pass-through entity. When information, such as the Assistance Listings title and number or Federal award identification number, is not available, the auditor must provide the best information available to describe the Federal award.

(2) The criteria or specific requirement upon which the audit finding is based, including the Federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of the Federal awards. Criteria generally identify the required or desired state or expectation with respect to the program or operation. Criteria provide a context for evaluating evidence and understanding findings.

(3) The condition found, including facts that support the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(4) A statement of cause that identifies the reason or explanation for the condition or the factors responsible for the difference between the situation that exists (condition) and the required or desired state (criteria), which may also serve as a basis for recommendations for corrective action.

(5) The possible asserted effect to provide sufficient information to the auditee and Federal agency, or pass-through entity in the case of a sub-recipient, to permit them to determine the cause and effect to facilitate prompt and proper corrective action. A statement of the effect or potential effect should provide a clear, logical link to establish the impact or potential impact of the difference between the condition and the criteria.

(6) Identification of questioned costs and how they were computed. Known questioned costs must be identified by applicable Assistance Listings number(s) and applicable Federal award identification number(s).

§ 200.517

(7) Information to provide proper perspective for judging the prevalence and consequences of the audit findings, such as whether the audit findings represent an isolated instance or a systemic problem. Where appropriate, instances identified must be related to the universe and the number of cases examined and be quantified in terms of dollar value. The auditor should report whether the sampling was a statistically valid sample.

(8) Identification of whether the audit finding was a repeat of a finding in the immediately prior audit and if so any applicable prior year audit finding numbers.

(9) Recommendations to prevent future occurrences of the deficiency identified in the audit finding.

(10) Views of responsible officials of the auditee.

(c) *Reference numbers.* Each audit finding in the schedule of findings and questioned costs must include a reference number in the format meeting the requirements of the data collection form submission required by § 200.512(b) to allow for easy referencing of the audit findings during follow-up.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49574, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.517 Audit documentation.

(a) *Retention of audit documentation.* The auditor must retain audit documentation and reports for a minimum of three years after the date of issuance of the auditor's report(s) to the auditee, unless the auditor is notified in writing by the cognizant agency for audit, oversight agency for audit, cognizant agency for indirect costs, or pass-through entity to extend the retention period. When the auditor is aware that the Federal agency, pass-through entity, or auditee is contesting an audit finding, the auditor must contact the parties contesting the audit finding for guidance prior to destruction of the audit documentation and reports.

(b) *Access to audit documentation.* Audit documentation must be made available upon request to the cognizant or oversight agency for audit or its designee, cognizant agency for indirect cost, a Federal agency, or GAO at the completion of the audit, as part of a

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

quality review, to resolve audit findings, or to carry out oversight responsibilities consistent with the purposes of this part. Access to audit documentation includes the right of Federal agencies to obtain copies of audit documentation, as is reasonable and necessary.

§ 200.518 Major program determination.

(a) *General.* The auditor must use a risk-based approach to determine which Federal programs are major programs. This risk-based approach must include consideration of: current and prior audit experience, oversight by Federal agencies and pass-through entities, and the inherent risk of the Federal program. The process in paragraphs (b) through (h) of this section must be followed.

(b) *Step one.* (1) The auditor must identify the larger Federal programs, which must be labeled Type A programs. Type A programs are defined as Federal programs with Federal awards expended during the audit period exceeding the levels outlined in the table in this paragraph (b)(1):

Total Federal awards expended	Type A/B threshold
Equal to or exceed \$750,000 but less than or equal to \$25 million.	\$750,000.
Exceed \$25 million but less than or equal to \$100 million.	Total Federal awards expended times .03.
Exceed \$100 million but less than or equal to \$1 billion.	\$3 million.
Exceed \$1 billion but less than or equal to \$10 billion.	Total Federal awards expended times .003.
Exceed \$10 billion but less than or equal to \$20 billion.	\$30 million.
Exceed \$20 billion	Total Federal awards expended times .0015.

(2) Federal programs not labeled Type A under paragraph (b)(1) of this section must be labeled Type B programs.

(3) The inclusion of large loan and loan guarantees (loans) must not result in the exclusion of other programs as Type A programs. When a Federal program providing loans exceeds four times the largest non-loan program it is considered a large loan program, and the auditor must consider this Federal program as a Type A program and exclude its values in determining other

Type A programs. This recalculation of the Type A program is performed after removing the total of all large loan programs. For the purposes of this paragraph a program is only considered to be a Federal program providing loans if the value of Federal awards expended for loans within the program comprises fifty percent or more of the total Federal awards expended for the program. A cluster of programs is treated as one program and the value of Federal awards expended under a loan program is determined as described in § 200.502.

(4) For biennial audits permitted under § 200.504, the determination of Type A and Type B programs must be based upon the Federal awards expended during the two-year period.

(c) *Step two.* (1) The auditor must identify Type A programs which are low-risk. In making this determination, the auditor must consider whether the requirements in § 200.519(c), the results of audit follow-up, or any changes in personnel or systems affecting the program indicate significantly increased risk and preclude the program from being low risk. For a Type A program to be considered low-risk, it must have been audited as a major program in at least one of the two most recent audit periods (in the case of a biennial audit), and, in the most recent audit period, the program must have not had:

(i) Internal control deficiencies which were identified as material weaknesses in the auditor's report on internal control for major programs as required under § 200.515(c);

(ii) A modified opinion on the program in the auditor's report on major programs as required under § 200.515(c); or

(iii) Known or likely questioned costs that exceed five percent of the total Federal awards expended for the program.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (c)(1) of this section, OMB may approve a Federal awarding agency's request that a Type A program may not be considered low risk for a certain recipient. For example, it may be necessary for a large Type A program to be audited as a major program each year at a par-

ticular recipient to allow the Federal awarding agency to comply with 31 U.S.C. 3515. The Federal awarding agency must notify the recipient and, if known, the auditor of OMB's approval at least 180 calendar days prior to the end of the fiscal year to be audited.

(d) *Step three.* (1) The auditor must identify Type B programs which are high-risk using professional judgment and the criteria in § 200.519. However, the auditor is not required to identify more high-risk Type B programs than at least one fourth the number of low-risk Type A programs identified as low-risk under Step 2 (paragraph (c) of this section). Except for known material weakness in internal control or compliance problems as discussed in § 200.519(b)(1) and (2) and (c)(1), a single criterion in risk would seldom cause a Type B program to be considered high-risk. When identifying which Type B programs to risk assess, the auditor is encouraged to use an approach which provides an opportunity for different high-risk Type B programs to be audited as major over a period of time.

(2) The auditor is not expected to perform risk assessments on relatively small Federal programs. Therefore, the auditor is only required to perform risk assessments on Type B programs that exceed twenty-five percent (0.25) of the Type A threshold determined in Step 1 (paragraph (b) of this section).

(e) *Step four.* At a minimum, the auditor must audit all of the following as major programs:

(1) All Type A programs not identified as low risk under step two (paragraph (c)(1) of this section).

(2) All Type B programs identified as high-risk under step three (paragraph (d) of this section).

(3) Such additional programs as may be necessary to comply with the percentage of coverage rule discussed in paragraph (f) of this section. This may require the auditor to audit more programs as major programs than the number of Type A programs.

(f) *Percentage of coverage rule.* If the auditee meets the criteria in § 200.520, the auditor need only audit the major programs identified in Step 4 (paragraphs (e)(1) and (2) of this section) and such additional Federal programs with

Federal awards expended that, in aggregate, all major programs encompass at least 20 percent (0.20) of total Federal awards expended. Otherwise, the auditor must audit the major programs identified in Step 4 (paragraphs (e)(1) and (2) of this section) and such additional Federal programs with Federal awards expended that, in aggregate, all major programs encompass at least 40 percent (0.40) of total Federal awards expended.

(g) *Documentation of risk.* The auditor must include in the audit documentation the risk analysis process used in determining major programs.

(h) *Auditor's judgment.* When the major program determination was performed and documented in accordance with this Subpart, the auditor's judgment in applying the risk-based approach to determine major programs must be presumed correct. Challenges by Federal agencies and pass-through entities must only be for clearly improper use of the requirements in this part. However, Federal agencies and pass-through entities may provide auditors guidance about the risk of a particular Federal program and the auditor must consider this guidance in determining major programs in audits not yet completed.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75887, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49574, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.519 Criteria for Federal program risk.

(a) *General.* The auditor's determination should be based on an overall evaluation of the risk of noncompliance occurring that could be material to the Federal program. The auditor must consider criteria, such as described in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, to identify risk in Federal programs. Also, as part of the risk analysis, the auditor may wish to discuss a particular Federal program with auditee management and the Federal agency or pass-through entity.

(b) *Current and prior audit experience.* (1) Weaknesses in internal control over Federal programs would indicate higher risk. Consideration should be given to the control environment over Federal programs and such factors as the expectation of management's adher-

ence to Federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of Federal awards and the competence and experience of personnel who administer the Federal programs.

(i) A Federal program administered under multiple internal control structures may have higher risk. When assessing risk in a large single audit, the auditor must consider whether weaknesses are isolated in a single operating unit (e.g., one college campus) or pervasive throughout the entity.

(ii) When significant parts of a Federal program are passed through to subrecipients, a weak system for monitoring subrecipients would indicate higher risk.

(2) Prior audit findings would indicate higher risk, particularly when the situations identified in the audit findings could have a significant impact on a Federal program or have not been corrected.

(3) Federal programs not recently audited as major programs may be of higher risk than Federal programs recently audited as major programs without audit findings.

(c) *Oversight exercised by Federal agencies and pass-through entities.* (1) Oversight exercised by Federal agencies or pass-through entities could be used to assess risk. For example, recent monitoring or other reviews performed by an oversight entity that disclosed no significant problems would indicate lower risk, whereas monitoring that disclosed significant problems would indicate higher risk.

(2) Federal agencies, with the concurrence of OMB, may identify Federal programs that are higher risk. OMB will provide this identification in the compliance supplement.

(d) *Inherent risk of the Federal program.* (1) The nature of a Federal program may indicate risk. Consideration should be given to the complexity of the program and the extent to which the Federal program contracts for goods and services. For example, Federal programs that disburse funds through third-party contracts or have eligibility criteria may be of higher risk. Federal programs primarily involving staff payroll costs may have

OMB Guidance

§ 200.521

high risk for noncompliance with requirements of § 200.430, but otherwise be at low risk.

(2) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the Federal agency may indicate risk. For example, a new Federal program with new or interim regulations may have higher risk than an established program with time-tested regulations. Also, significant changes in Federal programs, statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of Federal awards may increase risk.

(3) The phase of a Federal program in its life cycle at the auditee may indicate risk. For example, during the first and last years that an auditee participates in a Federal program, the risk may be higher due to start-up or close-out of program activities and staff.

(4) Type B programs with larger Federal awards expended would be of higher risk than programs with substantially smaller Federal awards expended.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49575, Aug. 13, 2020]

§ 200.520 Criteria for a low-risk auditee.

An auditee that meets all of the following conditions for each of the preceding two audit periods must qualify as a low-risk auditee and be eligible for reduced audit coverage in accordance with § 200.518.

(a) Single audits were performed on an annual basis in accordance with the provisions of this Subpart, including submitting the data collection form and the reporting package to the FAC within the timeframe specified in § 200.512. A non-Federal entity that has biennial audits does not qualify as a low-risk auditee.

(b) The auditor's opinion on whether the financial statements were prepared in accordance with GAAP, or a basis of accounting required by state law, and the auditor's in relation to opinion on the schedule of expenditures of Federal awards were unmodified.

(c) There were no deficiencies in internal control which were identified as material weaknesses under the requirements of GAGAS.

(d) The auditor did not report a substantial doubt about the auditee's ability to continue as a going concern.

(e) None of the Federal programs had audit findings from any of the following in either of the preceding two audit periods in which they were classified as Type A programs:

(1) Internal control deficiencies that were identified as material weaknesses in the auditor's report on internal control for major programs as required under § 200.515(c);

(2) A modified opinion on a major program in the auditor's report on major programs as required under § 200.515(c); or

(3) Known or likely questioned costs that exceeded five percent of the total Federal awards expended for a Type A program during the audit period.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49575, Aug. 13, 2020]

MANAGEMENT DECISIONS

§ 200.521 Management decision.

(a) *General.* The management decision must clearly state whether or not the audit finding is sustained, the reasons for the decision, and the expected auditee action to repay disallowed costs, make financial adjustments, or take other action. If the auditee has not completed corrective action, a timetable for follow-up should be given. Prior to issuing the management decision, the Federal agency or pass-through entity may request additional information or documentation from the auditee, including a request for auditor assurance related to the documentation, as a way of mitigating disallowed costs. The management decision should describe any appeal process available to the auditee. While not required, the Federal agency or pass-through entity may also issue a management decision on findings relating to the financial statements which are required to be reported in accordance with GAGAS.

(b) *Federal agency.* As provided in § 200.513(a)(3)(vii), the cognizant agency for audit must be responsible for coordinating a management decision for audit findings that affect the programs of more than one Federal agency. As provided in § 200.513(c)(3)(i), a Federal

awarding agency is responsible for issuing a management decision for findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to non-Federal entities.

(c) *Pass-through entity*. As provided in § 200.332(d), the pass-through entity must be responsible for issuing a management decision for audit findings that relate to Federal awards it makes to subrecipients.

(d) *Time requirements*. The Federal awarding agency or pass-through entity responsible for issuing a management decision must do so within six months of acceptance of the audit report by the FAC. The auditee must initiate and proceed with corrective action as rapidly as possible and corrective action should begin no later than upon receipt of the audit report.

(e) *Reference numbers*. Management decisions must include the reference numbers the auditor assigned to each audit finding in accordance with § 200.516(c).

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49575, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX I TO PART 200—FULL TEXT OF NOTICE OF FUNDING OPPORTUNITY

The full text of the notice of funding opportunity is organized in sections. The required format outlined in this appendix indicates immediately following the title of each section whether that section is required in every announcement or is a Federal awarding agency option. The format is designed so that similar types of information will appear in the same sections in announcements of different Federal funding opportunities. Toward that end, there is text in each of the following sections to describe the types of information that a Federal awarding agency would include in that section of an actual announcement.

A Federal awarding agency that wishes to include information that the format does not specifically discuss may address that subject in whatever section(s) is most appropriate. For example, if a Federal awarding agency chooses to address performance goals in the announcement, it might do so in the funding opportunity description, the application content, or the reporting requirements.

Similarly, when this format calls for a type of information to be in a particular section, a Federal awarding agency wishing to address that subject in other sections may elect to repeat the information in those sections or use cross references between the sections (there should be hyperlinks for cross-references in any electronic versions of the

announcement). For example, a Federal awarding agency may want to include Section A information about the types of non-Federal entities who are eligible to apply. The format specifies a standard location for that information in Section C.1 but does not preclude repeating the information in Section A or creating a cross reference between Section A and C.1, as long as a potential applicant can find the information quickly and easily from the standard location.

The sections of the full text of the announcement are described in the following paragraphs.

A. PROGRAM DESCRIPTION—REQUIRED

This section contains the full program description of the funding opportunity. It may be as long as needed to adequately communicate to potential applicants the areas in which funding may be provided. It describes the Federal awarding agency's funding priorities or the technical or focus areas in which the Federal awarding agency intends to provide assistance. As appropriate, it may include any program history (*e.g.*, whether this is a new program or a new or changed area of program emphasis). This section must include program goals and objectives, a reference to the relevant Assistance Listings, a description of how the award will contribute to the achievement of the program's goals and objectives, and the expected performance goals, indicators, targets, baseline data, data collection, and other outcomes such Federal awarding agency expects to achieve, and may include examples of successful projects that have been funded previously. This section also may include other information the Federal awarding agency deems necessary, and must at a minimum include citations for authorizing statutes and regulations for the funding opportunity.

B. FEDERAL AWARD INFORMATION—REQUIRED

This section provides sufficient information to help an applicant make an informed decision about whether to submit a proposal. Relevant information could include the total amount of funding that the Federal awarding agency expects to award through the announcement; the expected performance indicators, targets, baseline data, and data collection; the anticipated number of Federal awards; the expected amounts of individual Federal awards (which may be a range); the amount of funding per Federal award, on average, experienced in previous years; and the anticipated start dates and periods of performance for new Federal awards. This section also should address whether applications for renewal or supplementation of existing projects are eligible to compete with applications for new Federal awards.

This section also must indicate the type(s) of assistance instrument (*e.g.*, grant, cooperative agreement) that may be awarded if applications are successful. If cooperative agreements may be awarded, this section either should describe the “substantial involvement” that the Federal awarding agency expects to have or should reference where the potential applicant can find that information (*e.g.*, in the funding opportunity description in Section A. or Federal award administration information in Section D. If procurement contracts also may be awarded, this must be stated.

C. ELIGIBILITY INFORMATION

This section addresses the considerations or factors that determine applicant or application eligibility. This includes the eligibility of particular types of applicant organizations, any factors affecting the eligibility of the principal investigator or project director, and any criteria that make particular projects ineligible. Federal agencies should make clear whether an applicant's failure to meet an eligibility criterion by the time of an application deadline will result in the Federal awarding agency returning the application without review or, even though an application may be reviewed, will preclude the Federal awarding agency from making a Federal award. Key elements to be addressed are:

1. *Eligible Applicants—Required.* Announcements must clearly identify the types of entities that are eligible to apply. If there are no restrictions on eligibility, this section may simply indicate that all potential applicants are eligible. If there are restrictions on eligibility, it is important to be clear about the specific types of entities that are eligible, not just the types that are ineligible. For example, if the program is limited to nonprofit organizations subject to 26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3) of the tax code (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)), the announcement should say so. Similarly, it is better to state explicitly that Native American tribal organizations are eligible than to assume that they can unambiguously infer that from a statement that nonprofit organizations may apply. Eligibility also can be expressed by exception, (*e.g.*, open to all types of domestic applicants other than individuals). This section should refer to any portion of Section D specifying documentation that must be submitted to support an eligibility determination (*e.g.*, proof of 501(c)(3) status as determined by the Internal Revenue Service or an authorizing tribal resolution). To the extent that any funding restriction in Section D.6 could affect the eligibility of an applicant or project, the announcement must either restate that restriction in this section or provide a cross-reference to its description in Section D.6.

2. *Cost Sharing or Matching—Required.* Announcements must state whether there is required cost sharing, matching, or cost participation without which an application would be ineligible (if cost sharing is not required, the announcement must explicitly say so). Required cost sharing may be a certain percentage or amount, or may be in the form of contributions of specified items or activities (*e.g.*, provision of equipment). It is important that the announcement be clear about any restrictions on the types of cost (*e.g.*, in-kind contributions) that are acceptable as cost sharing. Cost sharing as an eligibility criterion includes requirements based in statute or regulation, as described in §200.306 of this Part. This section should refer to the appropriate portion(s) of section D, stating any pre-award requirements for submission of letters or other documentation to verify commitments to meet cost-sharing requirements if a Federal award is made.

3. *Other—Required, if applicable.* If there are other eligibility criteria (*i.e.*, criteria that have the effect of making an application or project ineligible for Federal awards, whether referred to as “responsiveness” criteria, “go-no go” criteria, “threshold” criteria, or in other ways), must be clearly stated and must include a reference to the regulation of requirement that describes the restriction, as applicable. For example, if entities that have been found to be in violation of a particular Federal statute are ineligible, it is important to say so. This section must also state any limit on the number of applications an applicant may submit under the announcement and make clear whether the limitation is on the submitting organization, individual investigator/program director, or both. This section should also address any eligibility criteria for beneficiaries or for program participants other than Federal award recipients.

D. APPLICATION AND SUBMISSION INFORMATION

1. *Address to Request Application Package—Required.* Potential applicants must be told how to get application forms, kits, or other materials needed to apply (if this announcement contains everything needed, this section need only say so). An Internet address where the materials can be accessed is acceptable. However, since high-speed Internet access is not yet universally available for downloading documents, and applicants may have additional accessibility requirements, there also should be a way for potential applicants to request paper copies of materials, such as a U.S. Postal Service mailing address, telephone or FAX number, Telephone Device for the Deaf (TDD), Text Telephone (TTY) number, and/or Federal Information Relay Service (FIRS) number.

2. *Content and Form of Application Submission—Required.* This section must identify

the required content of an application and the forms or formats that an applicant must use to submit it. If any requirements are stated elsewhere because they are general requirements that apply to multiple programs or funding opportunities, this section should refer to where those requirements may be found. This section also should include required forms or formats as part of the announcement or state where the applicant may obtain them.

This section should specifically address content and form or format requirements for:

i. Pre-applications, letters of intent, or white papers required or encouraged (see Section D.4), including any limitations on the number of pages or other formatting requirements similar to those for full applications.

ii. The application as a whole. For all submissions, this would include any limitations on the number of pages, font size and typeface, margins, paper size, number of copies, and sequence or assembly requirements. If electronic submission is permitted or required, this could include special requirements for formatting or signatures.

iii. Component pieces of the application (e.g., if all copies of the application must bear original signatures on the face page or the program narrative may not exceed 10 pages). This includes any pieces that may be submitted separately by third parties (e.g., references or letters confirming commitments from third parties that will be contributing a portion of any required cost sharing).

iv. Information that successful applicants must submit after notification of intent to make a Federal award, but prior to a Federal award. This could include evidence of compliance with requirements relating to human subjects or information needed to comply with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) (42 U.S.C. 4321–4370h).

3. *Unique entity identifier and System for Award Management (SAM)—Required.* This paragraph must state clearly that each applicant (unless the applicant is an individual or Federal awarding agency that is excepted from those requirements under 2 CFR 25.110(b) or (c), or has an exception approved by the Federal awarding agency under 2 CFR 25.110(d)) is required to: (i) Be registered in SAM before submitting its application; (ii) Provide a valid unique entity identifier in its application; and (iii) Continue to maintain an active SAM registration with current information at all times during which it has an active Federal award or an application or plan under consideration by a Federal awarding agency. It also must state that the Federal awarding agency may not make a Federal award to an applicant until the applicant has complied with all applicable unique entity identifier and SAM requirements and,

if an applicant has not fully complied with the requirements by the time the Federal awarding agency is ready to make a Federal award, the Federal awarding agency may determine that the applicant is not qualified to receive a Federal award and use that determination as a basis for making a Federal award to another applicant.

4. *Submission Dates and Times—Required.* Announcements must identify due dates and times for all submissions. This includes not only the full applications but also any preliminary submissions (e.g., letters of intent, white papers, or pre-applications). It also includes any other submissions of information before Federal award that are separate from the full application. If the funding opportunity is a general announcement that is open for a period of time with no specific due dates for applications, this section should say so. Note that the information on dates that is included in this section also must appear with other overview information in a location preceding the full text of the announcement (see § 200.204 of this part).

5. *Intergovernmental Review—Required, if applicable.* If the funding opportunity is subject to Executive Order 12372, “Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs,” the notice must say so and applicants must contact their state’s Single Point of Contact (SPOC) to find out about and comply with the state’s process under Executive Order 12372, it may be useful to inform potential applicants that the names and addresses of the SPOCs are listed in the Office of Management and Budget’s website.

6. *Funding Restrictions—Required.* Notices must include information on funding restrictions in order to allow an applicant to develop an application and budget consistent with program requirements. Examples are whether construction is an allowable activity, if there are any limitations on direct costs such as foreign travel or equipment purchases, and if there are any limits on indirect costs (or facilities and administrative costs). Applicants must be advised if Federal awards will not allow reimbursement of pre-Federal award costs.

7. *Other Submission Requirements—Required.* This section must address any other submission requirements not included in the other paragraphs of this section. This might include the format of submission, i.e., paper or electronic, for each type of required submission. Applicants should not be required to submit in more than one format and this section should indicate whether they may choose whether to submit applications in hard copy or electronically, may submit only in hard copy, or may submit only electronically.

This section also must indicate where applications (and any pre-applications) must be submitted if sent by postal mail, electronic means, or hand-delivery. For postal mail

submission, this must include the name of an office, official, individual or function (e.g., application receipt center) and a complete mailing address. For electronic submission, this must include the URL or email address; whether a password(s) is required; whether particular software or other electronic capabilities are required; what to do in the event of system problems and a point of contact who will be available in the event the applicant experiences technical difficulties.¹

E. APPLICATION REVIEW INFORMATION

1. *Criteria—Required.* This section must address the criteria that the Federal awarding agency will use to evaluate applications. This includes the merit and other review criteria that evaluators will use to judge applications, including any statutory, regulatory, or other preferences (e.g., minority status or Native American tribal preferences) that will be applied in the review process. These criteria are distinct from eligibility criteria that are addressed before an application is accepted for review and any program policy or other factors that are applied during the selection process, after the review process is completed. The intent is to make the application process transparent so applicants can make informed decisions when preparing their applications to maximize fairness of the process. The announcement should clearly describe all criteria, including any sub-criteria. If criteria vary in importance, the announcement should specify the relative percentages, weights, or other means used to distinguish among them. For statutory, regulatory, or other preferences, the announcement should provide a detailed explanation of those preferences with an explicit indication of their effect (e.g., whether they result in additional points being assigned).

If an applicant's proposed cost sharing will be considered in the review process (as opposed to being an eligibility criterion described in Section C.2), the announcement must specifically address how it will be considered (e.g., to assign a certain number of additional points to applicants who offer cost sharing, or to break ties among applications with equivalent scores after evaluation against all other factors). If cost sharing will not be considered in the evaluation, the announcement should say so, so that there is no ambiguity for potential applicants. Vague statements that cost sharing is encouraged, without clarification as to what that means, are unhelpful to applicants. It also is impor-

tant that the announcement be clear about any restrictions on the types of cost (e.g., in-kind contributions) that are acceptable as cost sharing.

2. *Review and Selection Process—Required.* This section may vary in the level of detail provided. The announcement must list any program policy or other factors or elements, other than merit criteria, that the selecting official may use in selecting applications for Federal award (e.g., geographical dispersion, program balance, or diversity). The Federal awarding agency may also include other appropriate details. For example, this section may indicate who is responsible for evaluation against the merit criteria (e.g., peers external to the Federal awarding agency or Federal awarding agency personnel) and/or who makes the final selections for Federal awards. If there is a multi-phase review process (e.g., an external panel advising internal Federal awarding agency personnel who make final recommendations to the deciding official), the announcement may describe the phases. It also may include: the number of people on an evaluation panel and how it operates, the way reviewers are selected, reviewer qualifications, and the way that conflicts of interest are avoided. With respect to electronic methods for providing information about funding opportunities or accepting applicants' submissions of information, each Federal awarding agency is responsible for compliance with Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794d).

In addition, if the Federal awarding agency permits applicants to nominate suggested reviewers of their applications or suggest those they feel may be inappropriate due to a conflict of interest, that information should be included in this section.

3. For any Federal award under a notice of funding opportunity, if the Federal awarding agency anticipates that the total Federal share will be greater than the simplified acquisition threshold on any Federal award under a notice of funding opportunity may include, over the period of performance, this section must also inform applicants:

i. That the Federal awarding agency, prior to making a Federal award with a total amount of Federal share greater than the simplified acquisition threshold, is required to review and consider any information about the applicant that is in the designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM (currently FAPIIS) (see 41 U.S.C. 2313);

ii. That an applicant, at its option, may review information in the designated integrity and performance systems accessible through SAM and comment on any information about itself that a Federal awarding agency previously entered and is currently in the designated integrity and performance system accessible through SAM;

¹With respect to electronic methods for providing information about funding opportunities or accepting applicants' submissions of information, each Federal awarding agency is responsible for compliance with Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794d).

iii. That the Federal awarding agency will consider any comments by the applicant, in addition to the other information in the designated integrity and performance system, in making a judgment about the applicant's integrity, business ethics, and record of performance under Federal awards when completing the review of risk posed by applicants as described in § 200.206.

4. *Anticipated Announcement and Federal Award Dates—Optional.* This section is intended to provide applicants with information they can use for planning purposes. If there is a single application deadline followed by the simultaneous review of all applications, the Federal awarding agency can include in this section information about the anticipated dates for announcing or notifying successful and unsuccessful applicants and for having Federal awards in place. If applications are received and evaluated on a “rolling” basis at different times during an extended period, it may be appropriate to give applicants an estimate of the time needed to process an application and notify the applicant of the Federal awarding agency's decision.

F. FEDERAL AWARD ADMINISTRATION INFORMATION

1. *Federal Award Notices—Required.* This section must address what a successful applicant can expect to receive following selection. If the Federal awarding agency's practice is to provide a separate notice stating that an application has been selected before it actually makes the Federal award, this section would be the place to indicate that the letter is not an authorization to begin performance (to the extent that it allows charging to Federal awards of pre-award costs at the non-Federal entity's own risk). This section should indicate that the notice of Federal award signed by the grants officer (or equivalent) is the authorizing document, and whether it is provided through postal mail or by electronic means and to whom. It also may address the timing, form, and content of notifications to unsuccessful applicants. See also § 200.211.

2. *Administrative and National Policy Requirements—Required.* This section must identify the usual administrative and national policy requirements the Federal awarding agency's Federal awards may include. Providing this information lets a potential applicant identify any requirements with which it would have difficulty complying if its application is successful. In those cases, early notification about the requirements allows the potential applicant to decide not to apply or to take needed actions before receiving the Federal award. The announcement need not include all of the terms and conditions of the Federal award, but may refer to a document (with information about

how to obtain it) or Internet site where applicants can see the terms and conditions. If this funding opportunity will lead to Federal awards with some special terms and conditions that differ from the Federal awarding agency's usual (sometimes called “general”) terms and conditions, this section should highlight those special terms and conditions. Doing so will alert applicants that have received Federal awards from the Federal awarding agency previously and might not otherwise expect different terms and conditions. For the same reason, the announcement should inform potential applicants about special requirements that could apply to particular Federal awards after the review of applications and other information, based on the particular circumstances of the effort to be supported (e.g., if human subjects were to be involved or if some situations may justify special terms on intellectual property, data sharing or security requirements).

3. *Reporting—Required.* This section must include general information about the type (e.g., financial or performance), frequency, and means of submission (paper or electronic) of post-Federal award reporting requirements. Highlight any special reporting requirements for Federal awards under this funding opportunity that differ (e.g., by report type, frequency, form/format, or circumstances for use) from what the Federal awarding agency's Federal awards usually require. Federal awarding agencies must also describe in this section all relevant requirements such as those at 2 CFR 180.335 and 180.350.

If the Federal share of any Federal award may include more than \$500,000 over the period of performance, this section must inform potential applicants about the post award reporting requirements reflected in appendix XII to this part.

G. FEDERAL AWARDING AGENCY CONTACT(S)—REQUIRED

The announcement must give potential applicants a point(s) of contact for answering questions or helping with problems while the funding opportunity is open. The intent of this requirement is to be as helpful as possible to potential applicants, so the Federal awarding agency should consider approaches such as giving:

i. Points of contact who may be reached in multiple ways (e.g., by telephone, FAX, and/or email, as well as regular mail).

ii. A fax or email address that multiple people access, so that someone will respond even if others are unexpectedly absent during critical periods.

iii. Different contacts for distinct kinds of help (e.g., one for questions of programmatic content and a second for administrative questions).

H. OTHER INFORMATION—OPTIONAL

This section may include any additional information that will assist a potential applicant. For example, the section might:

- i. Indicate whether this is a new program or a one-time initiative.
- ii. Mention related programs or other upcoming or ongoing Federal awarding agency funding opportunities for similar activities.
- iii. Include current Internet addresses for Federal awarding agency Web sites that may be useful to an applicant in understanding the program.
- iv. Alert applicants to the need to identify proprietary information and inform them about the way the Federal awarding agency will handle it.
- v. Include certain routine notices to applicants (e.g., that the Federal Government is not obligated to make any Federal award as a result of the announcement or that only grants officers can bind the Federal Government to the expenditure of funds).

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 80 FR 43310, July 22, 2015; 85 FR 49575, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX II TO PART 200—CONTRACT PROVISIONS FOR NON-FEDERAL ENTITY CONTRACTS UNDER FEDERAL AWARDS

In addition to other provisions required by the Federal agency or non-Federal entity, all contracts made by the non-Federal entity under the Federal award must contain provisions covering the following, as applicable.

(A) Contracts for more than the simplified acquisition threshold, which is the inflation adjusted amount determined by the Civilian Agency Acquisition Council and the Defense Acquisition Regulations Council (Councils) as authorized by 41 U.S.C. 1908, must address administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as appropriate.

(B) All contracts in excess of \$10,000 must address termination for cause and for convenience by the non-Federal entity including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement.

(C) Equal Employment Opportunity. Except as otherwise provided under 41 CFR Part 60, all contracts that meet the definition of “federally assisted construction contract” in 41 CFR Part 60-1.3 must include the equal opportunity clause provided under 41 CFR 60-1.4(b), in accordance with Executive Order 11246, “Equal Employment Opportunity” (30 FR 12319, 12935, 3 CFR Part, 1964-1965 Comp., p. 339), as amended by Executive Order 11375, “Amending Executive Order 11246 Relating to Equal Employment Opportunity,” and implementing regulations at 41 CFR part 60, “Office of Federal Contract

Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor.”

(D) Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 3141-3148). When required by Federal program legislation, all prime construction contracts in excess of \$2,000 awarded by non-Federal entities must include a provision for compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 3141-3144, and 3146-3148) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5, “Labor Standards Provisions Applicable to Contracts Covering Federally Financed and Assisted Construction”). In accordance with the statute, contractors must be required to pay wages to laborers and mechanics at a rate not less than the prevailing wages specified in a wage determination made by the Secretary of Labor. In addition, contractors must be required to pay wages not less than once a week. The non-Federal entity must place a copy of the current prevailing wage determination issued by the Department of Labor in each solicitation. The decision to award a contract or subcontract must be conditioned upon the acceptance of the wage determination. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency. The contracts must also include a provision for compliance with the Copeland “Anti-Kickback” Act (40 U.S.C. 3145), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3, “Contractors and Subcontractors on Public Building or Public Work Financed in Whole or in Part by Loans or Grants from the United States”). The Act provides that each contractor or subrecipient must be prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed in the construction, completion, or repair of public work, to give up any part of the compensation to which he or she is otherwise entitled. The non-Federal entity must report all suspected or reported violations to the Federal awarding agency.

(E) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3701-3708). Where applicable, all contracts awarded by the non-Federal entity in excess of \$100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers must include a provision for compliance with 40 U.S.C. 3702 and 3704, as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). Under 40 U.S.C. 3702 of the Act, each contractor must be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and a half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week. The requirements of 40 U.S.C. 3704 are applicable to construction work and provide that no laborer or mechanic must be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary,

hazardous or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

(F) Rights to Inventions Made Under a Contract or Agreement. If the Federal award meets the definition of “funding agreement” under 37 CFR §401.2 (a) and the recipient or subrecipient wishes to enter into a contract with a small business firm or nonprofit organization regarding the substitution of parties, assignment or performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under that “funding agreement,” the recipient or subrecipient must comply with the requirements of 37 CFR Part 401, “Rights to Inventions Made by Nonprofit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts and Cooperative Agreements,” and any implementing regulations issued by the awarding agency.

(G) Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401–7671q.) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (33 U.S.C. 1251–1387), as amended—Contracts and subgrants of amounts in excess of \$150,000 must contain a provision that requires the non-Federal award to agree to comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401–7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251–1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

(H) Debarment and Suspension (Executive Orders 12549 and 12689)—A contract award (see 2 CFR 180.220) must not be made to parties listed on the governmentwide exclusions in the System for Award Management (SAM), in accordance with the OMB guidelines at 2 CFR 180 that implement Executive Orders 12549 (3 CFR part 1986 Comp., p. 189) and 12689 (3 CFR part 1989 Comp., p. 235), “Debarment and Suspension.” SAM Exclusions contains the names of parties debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded by agencies, as well as parties declared ineligible under statutory or regulatory authority other than Executive Order 12549.

(I) Byrd Anti-Lobbying Amendment (31 U.S.C. 1352)—Contractors that apply or bid for an award exceeding \$100,000 must file the required certification. Each tier certifies to the tier above that it will not and has not used Federal appropriated funds to pay any person or organization for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a member of Congress, officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a member of Congress in connection with obtaining any Federal contract, grant or any other award covered by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Each tier must also disclose any lobbying with non-Federal funds that takes place in connection with obtaining any Federal award.

Such disclosures are forwarded from tier to tier up to the non-Federal award.

(J) See §200.323.

(K) See §200.216.

(L) See §200.322.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75888, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49577, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX III TO PART 200—INDIRECT (F&A) COSTS IDENTIFICATION AND ASSIGNMENT, AND RATE DETERMINATION FOR INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER EDUCATION (IHES)

A. GENERAL

This appendix provides criteria for identifying and computing indirect (or indirect (F&A)) rates at IHES (institutions). Indirect (F&A) costs are those that are incurred for common or joint objectives and therefore cannot be identified readily and specifically with a particular sponsored project, an instructional activity, or any other institutional activity. See subsection B.1 for a discussion of the components of indirect (F&A) costs.

1. Major Functions of an Institution

Refers to instruction, organized research, other sponsored activities and other institutional activities as defined in this section:

a. *Instruction* means the teaching and training activities of an institution. Except for research training as provided in subsection b, this term includes all teaching and training activities, whether they are offered for credits toward a degree or certificate or on a non-credit basis, and whether they are offered through regular academic departments or separate divisions, such as a summer school division or an extension division. Also considered part of this major function are departmental research, and, where agreed to, university research.

(1) *Sponsored instruction and training* means specific instructional or training activity established by grant, contract, or cooperative agreement. For purposes of the cost principles, this activity may be considered a major function even though an institution's accounting treatment may include it in the instruction function.

(2) *Departmental research* means research, development and scholarly activities that are not organized research and, consequently, are not separately budgeted and accounted for. Departmental research, for purposes of this document, is not considered as a major function, but as a part of the instruction function of the institution.

(3) Only mandatory cost sharing or cost sharing specifically committed in the project budget must be included in the organized research base for computing the indirect (F&A)

cost rate or reflected in any allocation of indirect costs. Salary costs above statutory limits are not considered cost sharing.

b. *Organized research* means all research and development activities of an institution that are separately budgeted and accounted for. It includes:

(1) *Sponsored research* means all research and development activities that are sponsored by Federal and non-Federal agencies and organizations. This term includes activities involving the training of individuals in research techniques (commonly called research training) where such activities utilize the same facilities as other research and development activities and where such activities are not included in the instruction function.

(2) *University research* means all research and development activities that are separately budgeted and accounted for by the institution under an internal application of institutional funds. University research, for purposes of this document, must be combined with sponsored research under the function of organized research.

c. *Other sponsored activities* means programs and projects financed by Federal and non-Federal agencies and organizations which involve the performance of work other than instruction and organized research. Examples of such programs and projects are health service projects and community service programs. However, when any of these activities are undertaken by the institution without outside support, they may be classified as other institutional activities.

d. *Other institutional activities* means all activities of an institution except for instruction, departmental research, organized research, and other sponsored activities, as defined in this section; indirect (F&A) cost activities identified in this Appendix paragraph B, Identification and assignment of indirect (F&A) costs; and specialized services facilities described in §200.468 of this part.

2. Criteria for Distribution

a. *Base period.* A base period for distribution of indirect (F&A) costs is the period during which the costs are incurred. The base period normally should coincide with the fiscal year established by the institution, but in any event the base period should be so selected as to avoid inequities in the distribution of costs.

b. *Need for cost groupings.* The overall objective of the indirect (F&A) cost allocation process is to distribute the indirect (F&A) costs described in Section B, Identification and assignment of indirect (F&A) costs, to the major functions of the institution in proportions reasonably consistent with the nature and extent of their use of the institution's resources. In order to achieve this objective, it may be necessary to provide for selective distribution by establishing separate

groupings of cost within one or more of the indirect (F&A) cost categories referred to in subsection B.1. In general, the cost groupings established within a category should constitute, in each case, a pool of those items of expense that are considered to be of like nature in terms of their relative contribution to (or degree of remoteness from) the particular cost objectives to which distribution is appropriate. Cost groupings should be established considering the general guides provided in subsection c of this section. Each such pool or cost grouping should then be distributed individually to the related cost objectives, using the distribution base or method most appropriate in light of the guidelines set forth in subsection d of this section.

c. *General considerations on cost groupings.* The extent to which separate cost groupings and selective distribution would be appropriate at an institution is a matter of judgment to be determined on a case-by-case basis. Typical situations which may warrant the establishment of two or more separate cost groupings (based on account classification or analysis) within an indirect (F&A) cost category include but are not limited to the following:

(1) If certain items or categories of expense relate solely to one of the major functions of the institution or to less than all functions, such expenses should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for direct assignment or selective allocation in accordance with the guides provided in subsections b and d.

(2) If any types of expense ordinarily treated as general administration or departmental administration are charged to Federal awards as direct costs, expenses applicable to other activities of the institution when incurred for the same purposes in like circumstances must, through separate cost groupings, be excluded from the indirect (F&A) costs allocable to those Federal awards and included in the direct cost of other activities for cost allocation purposes.

(3) If it is determined that certain expenses are for the support of a service unit or facility whose output is susceptible of measurement on a workload or other quantitative basis, such expenses should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for distribution on such basis to organized research, instructional, and other activities at the institution or within the department.

(4) If activities provide their own purchasing, personnel administration, building maintenance or similar service, the distribution of general administration and general expenses, or operation and maintenance expenses to such activities should be accomplished through cost groupings which include only that portion of central indirect (F&A) costs (such as for overall management) which are properly allocable to such activities.

(5) If the institution elects to treat fringe benefits as indirect (F&A) charges, such costs should be set aside as a separate cost grouping for selective distribution to related cost objectives.

(6) The number of separate cost groupings within a category should be held within practical limits, after taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision attainable through less selective methods of distribution.

d. Selection of distribution method.

(1) Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the method or base to be used in distributing individual cost groupings. The essential consideration in selecting a base is that it be the one best suited for assigning the pool of costs to cost objectives in accordance with benefits derived; with a traceable cause-and-effect relationship; or with logic and reason, where neither benefit nor a cause-and-effect relationship is determinable.

(2) If a cost grouping can be identified directly with the cost objective benefitted, it should be assigned to that cost objective.

(3) If the expenses in a cost grouping are more general in nature, the distribution may be based on a cost analysis study which results in an equitable distribution of the costs. Such cost analysis studies may take into consideration weighting factors, population, or space occupied if appropriate. Cost analysis studies, however, must (a) be appropriately documented in sufficient detail for subsequent review by the cognizant agency for indirect costs, (b) distribute the costs to the related cost objectives in accordance with the relative benefits derived, (c) be statistically sound, (d) be performed specifically at the institution at which the results are to be used, and (e) be reviewed periodically, but not less frequently than rate negotiations, updated if necessary, and used consistently. Any assumptions made in the study must be stated and explained. The use of cost analysis studies and periodic changes in the method of cost distribution must be fully justified.

(4) If a cost analysis study is not performed, or if the study does not result in an equitable distribution of the costs, the distribution must be made in accordance with the appropriate base cited in Section B, unless one of the following conditions is met:

(a) It can be demonstrated that the use of a different base would result in a more equitable allocation of the costs, or that a more readily available base would not increase the costs charged to Federal awards, or

(b) The institution qualifies for, and elects to use, the simplified method for computing indirect (F&A) cost rates described in Section D.

(5) Notwithstanding subsection (3), effective July 1, 1998, a cost analysis or base other

than that in Section B must not be used to distribute utility or student services costs. Instead, subsection B.4.c, may be used in the recovery of utility costs.

e. Order of distribution.

(1) Indirect (F&A) costs are the broad categories of costs discussed in Section B.1.

(2) Depreciation, interest expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, and general administrative and general expenses should be allocated in that order to the remaining indirect (F&A) cost categories as well as to the major functions and specialized service facilities of the institution. Other cost categories may be allocated in the order determined to be most appropriate by the institutions. When cross allocation of costs is made as provided in subsection (3), this order of allocation does not apply.

(3) Normally an indirect (F&A) cost category will be considered closed once it has been allocated to other cost objectives, and costs may not be subsequently allocated to it. However, a cross allocation of costs between two or more indirect (F&A) cost categories may be used if such allocation will result in a more equitable allocation of costs. If a cross allocation is used, an appropriate modification to the composition of the indirect (F&A) cost categories described in Section B is required.

B. IDENTIFICATION AND ASSIGNMENT OF INDIRECT (F&A) COSTS

1. Definition of Facilities and Administration

See §200.414 which provides the basis for these indirect cost requirements.

2. Depreciation

a. The expenses under this heading are the portion of the costs of the institution's buildings, capital improvements to land and buildings, and equipment which are computed in accordance with §200.436.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated in the following manner:

(1) Depreciation on buildings used exclusively in the conduct of a single function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be assigned to that function.

(2) Depreciation on buildings used for more than one function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be allocated to the individual functions performed in each building on the basis of usable square feet of space, excluding common areas such as hallways, stairwells, and rest rooms.

(3) Depreciation on buildings, capital improvements and equipment related to space (e.g., individual rooms, laboratories) used jointly by more than one function (as determined by the users of the space) must be

treated as follows. The cost of each jointly used unit of space must be allocated to benefitting functions on the basis of:

(a) The employee full-time equivalents (FTEs) or salaries and wages of those individual functions benefitting from the use of that space; or

(b) Institution-wide employee FTEs or salaries and wages applicable to the benefitting major functions (see Section A.1) of the institution.

(4) Depreciation on certain capital improvements to land, such as paved parking areas, fences, sidewalks, and the like, not included in the cost of buildings, must be allocated to user categories of students and employees on a full-time equivalent basis. The amount allocated to the student category must be assigned to the instruction function of the institution. The amount allocated to the employee category must be further allocated to the major functions of the institution in proportion to the salaries and wages of all employees applicable to those functions.

3. Interest

Interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements, as defined in §200.449, must be classified as an expenditure under the category Facilities. These costs must be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation on the buildings, equipment and capital improvements to which the interest relates.

4. Operation and Maintenance Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration, supervision, operation, maintenance, preservation, and protection of the institution's physical plant. They include expenses normally incurred for such items as janitorial and utility services; repairs and ordinary or normal alterations of buildings, furniture and equipment; care of grounds; maintenance and operation of buildings and other plant facilities; security; earthquake and disaster preparedness; environmental safety; hazardous waste disposal; property, liability and all other insurance relating to property; space and capital leasing; facility planning and management; and central receiving. The operation and maintenance expense category should also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, depreciation, and interest costs.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated in the same manner as described in subsection 2.b for depreciation.

c. A utility cost adjustment of up to 1.3 percentage points may be included in the negotiated indirect cost rate of the IHE for organized research, per the computation alter-

natives in paragraphs (c)(1) and (2) of this section:

(1) Where space is devoted to a single function and metering allows unambiguous measurement of usage related to that space, costs must be assigned to the function located in that space.

(2) Where space is allocated to different functions and metering does not allow unambiguous measurement of usage by function, costs must be allocated as follows:

(i) Utilities costs should be apportioned to functions in the same manner as depreciation, based on the calculated difference between the site or building actual square footage for monitored research laboratory space (site, building, floor, or room), and a separate calculation prepared by the IHE using the "effective square footage" described in subsection (c)(2)(ii) of this section.

(ii) "Effective square footage" allocated to research laboratory space must be calculated as the actual square footage times the relative energy utilization index (REUI) posted on the OMB Web site at the time of a rate determination.

A. This index is the ratio of a laboratory energy use index (lab EUI) to the corresponding index for overall average college or university space (college EUI).

B. In July 2012, values for these two indices (taken respectively from the Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory "Labs for the 21st Century" benchmarking tool and the US Department of Energy "Buildings Energy Databook" and were 310 kBtu/sq ft-yr. and 155 kBtu/sq ft-yr., so that the adjustment ratio is 2.0 by this methodology. To retain currency, OMB will adjust the EUI numbers from time to time (no more often than annually nor less often than every 5 years), using reliable and publicly disclosed data. Current values of both the EUIs and the REUI will be posted on the OMB website.

5. General Administration and General Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the general executive and administrative offices of educational institutions and other expenses of a general character which do not relate solely to any major function of the institution; *i.e.*, solely to (1) instruction, (2) organized research, (3) other sponsored activities, or (4) other institutional activities. The general administration and general expense category should also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, operation and maintenance expense, depreciation, and interest costs. Examples of general administration and general expenses include: Those expenses incurred by administrative offices that serve the entire university system of which the institution is a part; central offices of the institution such as the President's or Chancellor's office, the offices for institution-wide financial management, business

services, budget and planning, personnel management, and safety and risk management; the office of the General Counsel; and the operations of the central administrative management information systems. General administration and general expenses must not include expenses incurred within non-university-wide deans' offices, academic departments, organized research units, or similar organizational units. (See subsection 6.)

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be grouped first according to common major functions of the institution to which they render services or provide benefits. The aggregate expenses of each group must then be allocated to serviced or benefitted functions on the modified total cost basis. Modified total costs consist of the same elements as those in Section C.2. When an activity included in this indirect (F&A) cost category provides a service or product to another institution or organization, an appropriate adjustment must be made to either the expenses or the basis of allocation or both, to assure a proper allocation of costs.

6. Departmental Administration Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for administrative and supporting services that benefit common or joint departmental activities or objectives in academic deans' offices, academic departments and divisions, and organized research units. Organized research units include such units as institutes, study centers, and research centers. Departmental administration expenses are subject to the following limitations.

(1) Academic deans' offices. Salaries and operating expenses are limited to those attributable to administrative functions.

(2) Academic departments:

(a) Salaries and fringe benefits attributable to the administrative work (including bid and proposal preparation) of faculty (including department heads) and other professional personnel conducting research and/or instruction, must be allowed at a rate of 3.6 percent of modified total direct costs. This category does not include professional business or professional administrative officers. This allowance must be added to the computation of the indirect (F&A) cost rate for major functions in Section C; the expenses covered by the allowance must be excluded from the departmental administration cost pool. No documentation is required to support this allowance.

(b) Other administrative and supporting expenses incurred within academic departments are allowable provided they are treated consistently in like circumstances. This would include expenses such as the salaries of secretarial and clerical staffs, the salaries of administrative officers and assistants,

travel, office supplies, stockrooms, and the like.

(3) Other fringe benefit costs applicable to the salaries and wages included in subsections (1) and (2) are allowable, as well as an appropriate share of general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, and depreciation.

(4) Federal agencies may authorize reimbursement of additional costs for department heads and faculty only in exceptional cases where an institution can demonstrate undue hardship or detriment to project performance.

b. The following guidelines apply to the determination of departmental administrative costs as direct or indirect (F&A) costs.

(1) In developing the departmental administration cost pool, special care should be exercised to ensure that costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances are treated consistently as either direct or indirect (F&A) costs. For example, salaries of technical staff, laboratory supplies (*e.g.*, chemicals), telephone toll charges, animals, animal care costs, computer costs, travel costs, and specialized shop costs must be treated as direct costs wherever identifiable to a particular cost objective. Direct charging of these costs may be accomplished through specific identification of individual costs to benefitting cost objectives, or through recharge centers or specialized service facilities, as appropriate under the circumstances. See §§ 200.413(c) and 200.468.

(2) Items such as office supplies, postage, local telephone costs, and memberships must normally be treated as indirect (F&A) costs.

c. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated as follows:

(1) The administrative expenses of the dean's office of each college and school must be allocated to the academic departments within that college or school on the modified total cost basis.

(2) The administrative expenses of each academic department, and the department's share of the expenses allocated in subsection (1) must be allocated to the appropriate functions of the department on the modified total cost basis.

7. Sponsored Projects Administration

a. The expenses under this heading are limited to those incurred by a separate organization(s) established primarily to administer sponsored projects, including such functions as grant and contract administration (Federal and non-Federal), special security, purchasing, personnel, administration, and editing and publishing of research and other reports. They include the salaries and expenses of the head of such organization, assistants, and immediate staff, together with the salaries and expenses of personnel engaged in

supporting activities maintained by the organization, such as stock rooms, print shops, and the like. This category also includes an allocable share of fringe benefit costs, general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance expenses, and depreciation. Appropriate adjustments will be made for services provided to other functions or organizations.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated to the major functions of the institution under which the sponsored projects are conducted on the basis of the modified total cost of sponsored projects.

c. An appropriate adjustment must be made to eliminate any duplicate charges to Federal awards when this category includes similar or identical activities as those included in the general administration and general expense category or other indirect (F&A) cost items, such as accounting, procurement, or personnel administration.

8. Library Expenses

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the operation of the library, including the cost of books and library materials purchased for the library, less any items of library income that qualify as applicable credits under §200.406. The library expense category should also include the fringe benefits applicable to the salaries and wages included therein, an appropriate share of general administration and general expense, operation and maintenance expense, and depreciation. Costs incurred in the purchases of rare books (museum-type books) with no value to Federal awards should not be allocated to them.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses included in this category must be allocated first on the basis of primary categories of users, including students, professional employees, and other users.

(1) The student category must consist of full-time equivalent students enrolled at the institution, regardless of whether they earn credits toward a degree or certificate.

(2) The professional employee category must consist of all faculty members and other professional employees of the institution, on a full-time equivalent basis. This category may also include post-doctorate fellows and graduate students.

(3) The other users category must consist of a reasonable factor as determined by institutional records to account for all other users of library facilities.

c. Amount allocated in paragraph b of this section must be assigned further as follows:

(1) The amount in the student category must be assigned to the instruction function of the institution.

(2) The amount in the professional employee category must be assigned to the major functions of the institution in proportion to the salaries and wages of all faculty members and other professional employees applicable to those functions.

(3) The amount in the other users category must be assigned to the other institutional activities function of the institution.

9. Student Administration and Services

a. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration of student affairs and for services to students, including expenses of such activities as deans of students, admissions, registrar, counseling and placement services, student advisers, student health and infirmary services, catalogs, and commencements and convocations. The salaries of members of the academic staff whose responsibilities to the institution require administrative work that benefits sponsored projects may also be included to the extent that the portion charged to student administration is determined in accordance with subpart E of this Part. This expense category also includes the fringe benefit costs applicable to the salaries and wages included therein, an appropriate share of general administration and general expenses, operation and maintenance, interest expense, and depreciation.

b. In the absence of the alternatives provided for in Section A.2.d, the expenses in this category must be allocated to the instruction function, and subsequently to Federal awards in that function.

10. Offset for Indirect (F&A) Expenses Otherwise Provided for by the Federal Government

a. The items to be accumulated under this heading are the reimbursements and other payments from the Federal Government which are made to the institution to support solely, specifically, and directly, in whole or in part, any of the administrative or service activities described in subsections 2 through 9.

b. The items in this group must be treated as a credit to the affected individual indirect (F&A) cost category before that category is allocated to benefitting functions.

C. DETERMINATION AND APPLICATION OF INDIRECT (F&A) COST RATE OR RATES

1. Indirect (F&A) Cost Pools

a. (1) Subject to subsection b, the separate categories of indirect (F&A) costs allocated to each major function of the institution as prescribed in Section B, must be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The amount in each pool must be divided by the distribution base described in

subsection 2 to arrive at a single indirect (F&A) cost rate for each function.

(2) The rate for each function is used to distribute indirect (F&A) costs to individual Federal awards of that function. Since a common pool is established for each major function of the institution, a separate indirect (F&A) cost rate would be established for each of the major functions described in Section A.1 under which Federal awards are carried out.

(3) Each institution's indirect (F&A) cost rate process must be appropriately designed to ensure that Federal sponsors do not in any way subsidize the indirect (F&A) costs of other sponsors, specifically activities sponsored by industry and foreign governments. Accordingly, each allocation method used to identify and allocate the indirect (F&A) cost pools, as described in Sections A.2 and B.2 through B.9, must contain the full amount of the institution's modified total costs or other appropriate units of measurement used to make the computations. In addition, the final rate distribution base (as defined in subsection 2) for each major function (organized research, instruction, etc., as described in Section A.1 functions of an institution) must contain all the programs or activities which utilize the indirect (F&A) costs allocated to that major function. At the time an indirect (F&A) cost proposal is submitted to a cognizant agency for indirect costs, each institution must describe the process it uses to ensure that Federal funds are not used to subsidize industry and foreign government funded programs.

2. The Distribution Basis

Indirect (F&A) costs must be distributed to applicable Federal awards and other benefiting activities within each major function (see section A.1) on the basis of modified total direct costs (MTDC), consisting of all salaries and wages, fringe benefits, materials and supplies, services, travel, and up to the first \$25,000 of each subaward (regardless of the period covered by the subaward). MTDC is defined in §200.1. For this purpose, an indirect (F&A) cost rate should be determined for each of the separate indirect (F&A) cost pools developed pursuant to subsection 1. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect (F&A) cost pool is of the modified total direct costs identified with such pool.

3. Negotiated Lump Sum for Indirect (F&A) Costs

A negotiated fixed amount in lieu of indirect (F&A) costs may be appropriate for self-contained, off-campus, or primarily subcontracted activities where the benefits derived from an institution's indirect (F&A) services cannot be readily determined. Such nego-

tiated indirect (F&A) costs will be treated as an offset before allocation to instruction, organized research, other sponsored activities, and other institutional activities. The base on which such remaining expenses are allocated should be appropriately adjusted.

4. Predetermined Rates for Indirect (F&A) Costs

Public Law 87-638 (76 Stat. 437) as amended (41 U.S.C. 4708) authorizes the use of predetermined rates in determining the "indirect costs" (indirect (F&A) costs) applicable under research agreements with educational institutions. The stated objectives of the law are to simplify the administration of cost-type research and development contracts (including grants) with educational institutions, to facilitate the preparation of their budgets, and to permit more expeditious closeout of such contracts when the work is completed. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect (F&A) costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect (F&A) costs during the ensuing accounting periods.

5. Negotiated Fixed Rates and Carry-Forward Provisions

When a fixed rate is negotiated in advance for a fiscal year (or other time period), the over- or under-recovery for that year may be included as an adjustment to the indirect (F&A) cost for the next rate negotiation. When the rate is negotiated before the carry-forward adjustment is determined, the carry-forward amount may be applied to the next subsequent rate negotiation. When such adjustments are to be made, each fixed rate negotiated in advance for a given period will be computed by applying the expected indirect (F&A) costs allocable to Federal awards for the forecast period plus or minus the carry-forward adjustment (over- or under-recovery) from the prior period, to the forecast distribution base. Unrecovered amounts under lump-sum agreements or cost-sharing provisions of prior years must not be carried forward for consideration in the new rate negotiation. There must, however, be an advance understanding in each case between the institution and the cognizant agency for indirect costs as to whether these differences will be considered in the rate negotiation rather than making the determination after the differences are known. Further, institutions electing to use this carry-forward provision may not subsequently change without prior approval of the cognizant agency for indirect costs. In the event that an institution returns to a post-determined rate, any

over- or under-recovery during the period in which negotiated fixed rates and carry-forward provisions were followed will be included in the subsequent post-determined rates. Where multiple rates are used, the same procedure will be applicable for determining each rate.

6. Provisional and Final Rates for Indirect (F&A) Costs

Where the cognizant agency for indirect costs determines that cost experience and other pertinent facts do not justify the use of predetermined rates, or a fixed rate with a carry-forward, or if the parties cannot agree on an equitable rate, a provisional rate must be established. To prevent substantial overpayment or underpayment, the provisional rate may be adjusted by the cognizant agency for indirect costs during the institution's fiscal year. Predetermined or fixed rates may replace provisional rates at any time prior to the close of the institution's fiscal year. If a provisional rate is not replaced by a predetermined or fixed rate prior to the end of the institution's fiscal year, a final rate will be established and upward or downward adjustments will be made based on the actual allowable costs incurred for the period involved.

7. Fixed Rates for the Life of the Sponsored Agreement

a. Except as provided in paragraph (c)(1) of §200.414, Federal agencies must use the negotiated rates in effect at the time of the initial award throughout the life of the Federal award. Award levels for Federal awards may not be adjusted in future years as a result of changes in negotiated rates. "Negotiated rates" per the rate agreement include final, fixed, and predetermined rates and exclude provisional rates. "Life" for the purpose of this subsection means each competitive segment of a project. A competitive segment is a period of years approved by the Federal awarding agency at the time of the Federal award. If negotiated rate agreements do not extend through the life of the Federal award at the time of the initial award, then the negotiated rate for the last year of the Federal award must be extended through the end of the life of the Federal award.

b. Except as provided in §200.414, when an educational institution does not have a negotiated rate with the Federal Government at the time of an award (because the educational institution is a new recipient or the parties cannot reach agreement on a rate), the provisional rate used at the time of the award must be adjusted once a rate is negotiated and approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

8. Limitation on Reimbursement of Administrative Costs

a. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection C.1.a, the administrative costs charged to Federal awards awarded or amended (including continuation and renewal awards) with effective dates beginning on or after the start of the institution's first fiscal year which begins on or after October 1, 1991, must be limited to 26% of modified total direct costs (as defined in subsection 2) for the total of General Administration and General Expenses, Departmental Administration, Sponsored Projects Administration, and Student Administration and Services (including their allocable share of depreciation, interest costs, operation and maintenance expenses, and fringe benefits costs, as provided by Section B, and all other types of expenditures not listed specifically under one of the subcategories of facilities in Section B.

b. Institutions should not change their accounting or cost allocation methods if the effect is to change the charging of a particular type of cost from F&A to direct, or to reclassify costs, or increase allocations from the administrative pools identified in paragraph B.1 of this Appendix to the other F&A cost pools or fringe benefits. Cognizant agencies for indirect cost are authorized to allow changes where an institution's charging practices are at variance with acceptable practices followed by a substantial majority of other institutions.

9. Alternative Method for Administrative Costs

a. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection C.1.a, an institution may elect to claim a fixed allowance for the "Administration" portion of indirect (F&A) costs. The allowance could be either 24% of modified total direct costs or a percentage equal to 95% of the most recently negotiated fixed or predetermined rate for the cost pools included under "Administration" as defined in Section B.1, whichever is less. Under this alternative, no cost proposal need be prepared for the "Administration" portion of the indirect (F&A) cost rate nor is further identification or documentation of these costs required (see subsection c). Where a negotiated indirect (F&A) cost agreement includes this alternative, an institution must make no further charges for the expenditure categories described in Section B.5, Section B.6, Section B.7, and Section B.9.

b. In negotiations of rates for subsequent periods, an institution that has elected the option of subsection a may continue to exercise it at the same rate without further identification or documentation of costs.

c. If an institution elects to accept a threshold rate as defined in subsection a of this section, it is not required to perform a detailed analysis of its administrative costs.

However, in order to compute the facilities components of its indirect (F&A) cost rate, the institution must reconcile its indirect (F&A) cost proposal to its financial statements and make appropriate adjustments and reclassifications to identify the costs of each major function as defined in Section A.1, as well as to identify and allocate the facilities components. Administrative costs that are not identified as such by the institution's accounting system (such as those incurred in academic departments) will be classified as instructional costs for purposes of reconciling indirect (F&A) cost proposals to financial statements and allocating facilities costs.

10. Individual Rate Components

In order to provide mutually agreed-upon information for management purposes, each indirect (F&A) cost rate negotiation or determination must include development of a rate for each indirect (F&A) cost pool as well as the overall indirect (F&A) cost rate.

11. Negotiation and Approval of Indirect (F&A) Rate

a. Cognizant agency for indirect costs is defined in Subpart A.

(1) Cost negotiation cognizance is assigned to the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) or the Department of Defense's Office of Naval Research (DOD), normally depending on which of the two agencies (HHS or DOD) provides more funds directly to the educational institution for the most recent three years. Information on funding must be derived from relevant data gathered by the National Science Foundation. In cases where neither HHS nor DOD provides Federal funding directly to an educational institution, the cognizant agency for indirect costs assignment must default to HHS. Notwithstanding the method for cognizance determination described in this section, other arrangements for cognizance of a particular educational institution may also be based in part on the types of research performed at the educational institution and must be decided based on mutual agreement between HHS and DOD. Where a non-Federal entity only receives funds as a subrecipient, see § 200.332.

(2) After cognizance is established, it must continue for a five-year period.

b. Acceptance of rates. See § 200.414.

c. Correcting deficiencies. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must negotiate changes needed to correct systems deficiencies relating to accountability for Federal awards. Cognizant agencies for indirect costs must address the concerns of other affected agencies, as appropriate, and must negotiate special rates for Federal agencies that are required to limit recovery of indirect costs by statute.

d. Resolving questioned costs. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must conduct any necessary negotiations with an educational institution regarding amounts questioned by audit that are due the Federal Government related to costs covered by a negotiated agreement.

e. Reimbursement. Reimbursement to cognizant agencies for indirect costs for work performed under this Part may be made by reimbursement billing under the Economy Act, 31 U.S.C. 1535.

f. Procedure for establishing facilities and administrative rates must be established by one of the following methods:

(1) Formal negotiation. The cognizant agency for indirect costs is responsible for negotiating and approving rates for an educational institution on behalf of all Federal agencies. Federal awarding agencies that do not have cognizance for indirect costs must notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs of specific concerns (i.e., a need to establish special cost rates) which could affect the negotiation process. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must address the concerns of all interested agencies, as appropriate. A pre-negotiation conference may be scheduled among all interested agencies, if necessary. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must then arrange a negotiation conference with the educational institution.

(2) Other than formal negotiation. The cognizant agency for indirect costs and educational institution may reach an agreement on rates without a formal negotiation conference; for example, through correspondence or use of the simplified method described in this section D of this Appendix.

g. Formalizing determinations and agreements. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must formalize all determinations or agreements reached with an educational institution and provide copies to other agencies having an interest. Determinations should include a description of any adjustments, the actual amount, both dollar and percentage adjusted, and the reason for making adjustments.

h. Disputes and disagreements. Where the cognizant agency for indirect costs is unable to reach agreement with an educational institution with regard to rates or audit resolution, the appeal system of the cognizant agency for indirect costs must be followed for resolution of the disagreement.

12. Standard Format for Submission

For facilities and administrative (indirect (F&A)) rate proposals, educational institutions must use the standard format, shown in section E of this appendix, to submit their indirect (F&A) rate proposal to the cognizant agency for indirect costs. The cognizant agency for indirect costs may, on an institution-by-institution basis, grant exceptions from all or portions of Part II of the

standard format requirement. This requirement does not apply to educational institutions that use the simplified method for calculating indirect (F&A) rates, as described in Section D of this Appendix.

As provided in section C.10 of this appendix, each F&A cost rate negotiation or determination must include development of a rate for each F&A cost pool as well as the overall F&A rate.

D. SIMPLIFIED METHOD FOR SMALL INSTITUTIONS

1. General

a. Where the total direct cost of work covered by this Part at an institution does not exceed \$10 million in a fiscal year, the simplified procedure described in subsections 2 or 3 may be used in determining allowable indirect (F&A) costs. Under this simplified procedure, the institution's most recent annual financial report and immediately available supporting information must be utilized as a basis for determining the indirect (F&A) cost rate applicable to all Federal awards. The institution may use either the salaries and wages (see subsection 2) or modified total direct costs (see subsection 3) as the distribution basis.

b. The simplified procedure should not be used where it produces results which appear inequitable to the Federal Government or the institution. In any such case, indirect (F&A) costs should be determined through use of the regular procedure.

2. Simplified Procedure—Salaries and Wages Base

a. Establish the total amount of salaries and wages paid to all employees of the institution.

b. Establish an indirect (F&A) cost pool consisting of the expenditures (exclusive of capital items and other costs specifically identified as unallowable) which customarily are classified under the following titles or their equivalents:

(1) General administration and general expenses (exclusive of costs of student administration and services, student activities, student aid, and scholarships).

(2) Operation and maintenance of physical plant and depreciation (after appropriate adjustment for costs applicable to other institutional activities).

(3) Library.

(4) Department administration expenses, which will be computed as 20 percent of the salaries and expenses of deans and heads of departments.

In those cases where expenditures classified under subsection (1) have previously been allocated to other institutional activities, they may be included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool. The total amount of sala-

ries and wages included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool must be separately identified.

c. Establish a salary and wage distribution base, determined by deducting from the total of salaries and wages as established in subsection a from the amount of salaries and wages included under subsection b.

d. Establish the indirect (F&A) cost rate, determined by dividing the amount in the indirect (F&A) cost pool, subsection b, by the amount of the distribution base, subsection c.

e. Apply the indirect (F&A) cost rate to direct salaries and wages for individual agreements to determine the amount of indirect (F&A) costs allocable to such agreements.

3. Simplified Procedure—Modified Total Direct Cost Base

a. Establish the total costs incurred by the institution for the base period.

b. Establish an indirect (F&A) cost pool consisting of the expenditures (exclusive of capital items and other costs specifically identified as unallowable) which customarily are classified under the following titles or their equivalents:

(1) General administration and general expenses (exclusive of costs of student administration and services, student activities, student aid, and scholarships).

(2) Operation and maintenance of physical plant and depreciation (after appropriate adjustment for costs applicable to other institutional activities).

(3) Library.

(4) Department administration expenses, which will be computed as 20 percent of the salaries and expenses of deans and heads of departments. In those cases where expenditures classified under subsection (1) have previously been allocated to other institutional activities, they may be included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool. The modified total direct costs amount included in the indirect (F&A) cost pool must be separately identified.

c. Establish a modified total direct cost distribution base, as defined in Section C.2. The distribution basis, that consists of all institution's direct functions.

d. Establish the indirect (F&A) cost rate, determined by dividing the amount in the indirect (F&A) cost pool, subsection b, by the amount of the distribution base, subsection c.

e. Apply the indirect (F&A) cost rate to the modified total direct costs for individual agreements to determine the amount of indirect (F&A) costs allocable to such agreements.

E. DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

The standard format for documentation requirements for indirect (indirect (F&A)) rate

proposals for claiming costs under the regular method is available on the OMB website.

F. CERTIFICATION

1. Certification of Charges

To assure that expenditures for Federal awards are proper and in accordance with the agreement documents and approved project budgets, the annual and/or final fiscal reports or vouchers requesting payment under the agreements will include a certification, signed by an authorized official of the university, which reads “By signing this report, I certify to the best of my knowledge and belief that the report is true, complete, and accurate, and the expenditures, disbursements and cash receipts are for the purposes and intent set forth in the award documents. I am aware that any false, fictitious, or fraudulent information, or the omission of any material fact, may subject me to criminal, civil or administrative penalties for fraud, false statements, false claims or otherwise. (U.S. Code, Title 18, Section 1001 and Title 31, Sections 3729–3733 and 3801–3812)”.

2. Certification of Indirect (F&A) Costs

a. *Policy.* Cognizant agencies must not accept a proposed indirect cost rate unless such costs have been certified by the educational institution using the Certificate of indirect (F&A) Costs set forth in subsection F.2.c

b. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the institution by the chief financial officer or an individual designated by an individual at a level no lower than vice president or chief financial officer.

An indirect (F&A) cost rate is not binding upon the Federal Government if the most recent required proposal from the institution has not been certified. Where it is necessary to establish indirect (F&A) cost rates, and the institution has not submitted a certified proposal for establishing such rates in accordance with the requirements of this section, the Federal Government must unilaterally establish such rates. Such rates may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant agency for indirect costs and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When indirect (F&A) cost rates are unilaterally established by the Federal Government because of failure of the institution to submit a certified proposal for establishing such rates in accordance with this section, the rates established will be set at a level low enough to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.

c. *Certificate.* The certificate required by this section must be in the following form:

Certificate of Indirect (F&A) Costs

This is to certify that to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) I have reviewed the indirect (F&A) cost proposal submitted herewith;

(2) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect (F&A) costs rate for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal agreement(s) to which they apply and with the cost principles applicable to those agreements.

(3) This proposal does not include any costs which are unallowable under subpart E of this part such as (without limitation): Public relations costs, contributions and donations, entertainment costs, fines and penalties, lobbying costs, and defense of fraud proceedings; and

(4) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal agreements on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Institution of Higher Education:

Signature: _____

Name of Official: _____

Title: _____

Date of Execution: _____

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75888, Dec. 19, 2014; 80 FR 54409, Sept. 10, 2015; 85 FR 49577, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX IV TO PART 200—INDIRECT (F&A) COSTS IDENTIFICATION AND ASSIGNMENT, AND RATE DETERMINATION FOR NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS

A. GENERAL

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint objectives and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective. Direct cost of minor amounts may be treated as indirect costs under the conditions described in §200.413(d). After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to awards or other work as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefiting cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to a Federal award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost.

2. “Major nonprofit organizations” are defined in paragraph (a) of §200.414. See indirect cost rate reporting requirements in sections B.2.e and B.3.g of this Appendix.

**B. ALLOCATION OF INDIRECT COSTS AND
DETERMINATION OF INDIRECT COST RATES***1. General*

a. If a nonprofit organization has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures, as described in section B.2 of this Appendix.

b. If an organization has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefitting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual Federal awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. The determination of what constitutes an organization's major functions will depend on its purpose in being; the types of services it renders to the public, its clients, and its members; and the amount of effort it devotes to such activities as fundraising, public information and membership activities.

d. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in section B.2 through B.5 of this Appendix.

e. The base period for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to work performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the organization's fiscal year but, in any event, must be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of the costs.

2. Simplified Allocation Method

a. Where an organization's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by (i) separating the organization's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and (ii) dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where an organization has only one major function encompassing a number of individual projects or activities, and may be

used where the level of Federal awards to an organization is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs must exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs which represent activities must be included in the direct costs under the conditions described in §200.413(e).

c. The distribution base may be total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such as sub-awards for \$25,000 or more), direct salaries and wages, or other base which results in an equitable distribution. The distribution base must exclude participant support costs as defined in §200.1.

d. Except where a special rate(s) is required in accordance with section B.5 of this Appendix, the indirect cost rate developed under the above principles is applicable to all Federal awards of the organization. If a special rate(s) is required, appropriate modifications must be made in order to develop the special rate(s).

e. For an organization that receives more than \$10 million in direct Federal funding in a fiscal year, a breakout of the indirect cost component into two broad categories, Facilities and Administration as defined in paragraph (a) of §200.414, is required. The rate in each case must be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost category (*i.e.*, Facilities or Administration) is of the distribution base identified with that category.

3. Multiple Allocation Base Method

a. General. Where an organization's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, indirect costs must be accumulated into separate cost groupings, as described in subparagraph b. Each grouping must then be allocated individually to benefitting functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits. The default allocation bases by cost pool are described in section B.3.c of this Appendix.

b. Identification of indirect costs. Cost groupings must be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping must constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The groupings are classified within the two broad categories: "Facilities" and "Administration," as described in section A.3 of this Appendix. The indirect cost pools are defined as follows:

(1) Depreciation. The expenses under this heading are the portion of the costs of the organization's buildings, capital improvements to land and buildings, and equipment which are computed in accordance with §200.436.

(2) Interest. Interest on debt associated with certain buildings, equipment and capital improvements are computed in accordance with § 200.449.

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the administration, operation, maintenance, preservation, and protection of the organization's physical plant. They include expenses normally incurred for such items as: janitorial and utility services; repairs and ordinary or normal alterations of buildings, furniture and equipment; care of grounds; maintenance and operation of buildings and other plant facilities; security; earthquake and disaster preparedness; environmental safety; hazardous waste disposal; property, liability and other insurance relating to property; space and capital leasing; facility planning and management; and central receiving. The operation and maintenance expenses category must also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, depreciation, and interest costs.

(4) General administration and general expenses. The expenses under this heading are those that have been incurred for the overall general executive and administrative offices of the organization and other expenses of a general nature which do not relate solely to any major function of the organization. This category must also include its allocable share of fringe benefit costs, operation and maintenance expense, depreciation, and interest costs. Examples of this category include central offices, such as the director's office, the office of finance, business services, budget and planning, personnel, safety and risk management, general counsel, management information systems, and library costs.

In developing this cost pool, special care should be exercised to ensure that costs incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances are treated consistently as either direct or indirect costs. For example, salaries of technical staff, project supplies, project publication, telephone toll charges, computer costs, travel costs, and specialized services costs must be treated as direct costs wherever identifiable to a particular program. The salaries and wages of administrative and pooled clerical staff should normally be treated as indirect costs. Direct charging of these costs may be appropriate as described in § 200.413. Items such as office supplies, postage, local telephone costs, periodicals and memberships should normally be treated as indirect costs.

c. Allocation bases. Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefitting functions. The essential consideration in selecting a method or a base is that it is the one best suited for assigning the pool of costs to cost objectives

in accordance with benefits derived; a traceable cause and effect relationship; or logic and reason, where neither the cause nor the effect of the relationship is determinable. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefitted, the allocation must be made in that manner. When the expenses in a cost grouping are more general in nature, the allocation must be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal Government and the organization. The distribution must be made in accordance with the bases described herein unless it can be demonstrated that the use of a different base would result in a more equitable allocation of the costs, or that a more readily available base would not increase the costs charged to Federal awards. The results of special cost studies (such as an engineering utility study) must not be used to determine and allocate the indirect costs to Federal awards.

(1) Depreciation. Depreciation expenses must be allocated in the following manner:

(a) Depreciation on buildings used exclusively in the conduct of a single function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be assigned to that function.

(b) Depreciation on buildings used for more than one function, and on capital improvements and equipment used in such buildings, must be allocated to the individual functions performed in each building on the basis of usable square feet of space, excluding common areas, such as hallways, stairwells, and restrooms.

(c) Depreciation on buildings, capital improvements and equipment related space (e.g., individual rooms, and laboratories) used jointly by more than one function (as determined by the users of the space) must be treated as follows. The cost of each jointly used unit of space must be allocated to the benefitting functions on the basis of:

(i) the employees and other users on a full-time equivalent (FTE) basis or salaries and wages of those individual functions benefitting from the use of that space; or

(ii) organization-wide employee FTEs or salaries and wages applicable to the benefitting functions of the organization.

(d) Depreciation on certain capital improvements to land, such as paved parking areas, fences, sidewalks, and the like, not included in the cost of buildings, must be allocated to user categories on a FTE basis and distributed to major functions in proportion to the salaries and wages of all employees applicable to the functions.

(2) Interest. Interest costs must be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation on the buildings, equipment and capital equipment to which the interest relates.

(3) Operation and maintenance expenses. Operation and maintenance expenses must

be allocated in the same manner as the depreciation.

(4) General administration and general expenses. General administration and general expenses must be allocated to benefitting functions based on modified total costs (MTC). The MTC is the modified total direct costs (MTDC), as described in §200.1, plus the allocated indirect cost proportion. The expenses included in this category could be grouped first according to major functions of the organization to which they render services or provide benefits. The aggregate expenses of each group must then be allocated to benefitting functions based on MTC.

d. Order of distribution.

(1) Indirect cost categories consisting of depreciation, interest, operation and maintenance, and general administration and general expenses must be allocated in that order to the remaining indirect cost categories as well as to the major functions of the organization. Other cost categories should be allocated in the order determined to be most appropriate by the organization. This order of allocation does not apply if cross allocation of costs is made as provided in section B.3.d.2 of this Appendix.

(2) Normally, an indirect cost category will be considered closed once it has been allocated to other cost objectives, and costs must not be subsequently allocated to it. However, a cross allocation of costs between two or more indirect costs categories could be used if such allocation will result in a more equitable allocation of costs. If a cross allocation is used, an appropriate modification to the composition of the indirect cost categories is required.

e. Application of indirect cost rate or rates. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with section B.5 of this Appendix, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function must be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool must then be distributed to individual Federal awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

f. Distribution basis. Indirect costs must be distributed to applicable Federal awards and other benefitting activities within each major function on the basis of MTDC (see definition in §200.1).

g. Individual Rate Components. An indirect cost rate must be determined for each separate indirect cost pool developed. The rate in each case must be stated as the percentage which the amount of the particular indirect cost pool is of the distribution base identified with that pool. Each indirect cost rate negotiation or determination agreement must include development of the rate for each indirect cost pool as well as the overall indirect cost rate. The indirect cost pools must be classified within two broad cat-

egories: "Facilities" and "Administration," as described in §200.414(a).

4. Direct Allocation Method

a. Some nonprofit organizations treat all costs as direct costs except general administration and general expenses. These organizations generally separate their costs into three basic categories: (i) General administration and general expenses, (ii) fundraising, and (iii) other direct functions (including projects performed under Federal awards). Joint costs, such as depreciation, rental costs, operation and maintenance of facilities, telephone expenses, and the like are prorated individually as direct costs to each category and to each Federal award or other activity using a base most appropriate to the particular cost being prorated.

b. This method is acceptable, provided each joint cost is prorated using a base which accurately measures the benefits provided to each Federal award or other activity. The bases must be established in accordance with reasonable criteria and be supported by current data. This method is compatible with the Standards of Accounting and Financial Reporting for Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations issued jointly by the National Health Council, Inc., the National Assembly of Voluntary Health and Social Welfare Organizations, and the United Way of America.

c. Under this method, indirect costs consist exclusively of general administration and general expenses. In all other respects, the organization's indirect cost rates must be computed in the same manner as that described in section B.2 of this Appendix.

5. Special Indirect Cost Rates

In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of an organization or for each major function of the organization may not be appropriate, since it would not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular segment of work. For this purpose, a particular segment of work may be that performed under a single Federal award or it may consist of work under a group of Federal awards performed in a common environment. These factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the scientific disciplines or technical skills involved, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular segment of work is performed in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to such work. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and

the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided it is determined that (i) the rate differs significantly from that which would have been obtained under sections B.2, B.3, and B.4 of this Appendix, and (ii) the volume of work to which the rate would apply is material.

C. NEGOTIATION AND APPROVAL OF INDIRECT COST RATES

1. Definitions

As used in this section, the following terms have the meanings set forth in this section:

a. *Cognizant agency for indirect costs* means the Federal agency responsible for negotiating and approving indirect cost rates for a nonprofit organization on behalf of all Federal agencies.

b. *Predetermined rate* means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the organization's fiscal year. The rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. A predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment.

c. *Fixed rate* means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

d. *Final rate* means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual costs of the period. A final rate is not subject to adjustment.

e. *Provisional rate or billing rate* means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a final rate for the period.

f. *Indirect cost proposal* means the documentation prepared by an organization to substantiate its claim for the reimbursement of indirect costs. This proposal provides the basis for the review and negotiation leading to the establishment of an organization's indirect cost rate.

g. *Cost objective* means a function, organizational subdivision, contract, Federal award, or other work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, projects, jobs and capitalized projects.

2. Negotiation and Approval of Rates

a. Unless different arrangements are agreed to by the Federal agencies concerned, the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of Federal awards directly funded to an organization will be designated as the cognizant agency for indirect costs for the negotiation and approval of the indirect cost rates and, where necessary, other rates such as fringe benefit and computer charge-out

rates. Once an agency is assigned cognizance for a particular nonprofit organization, the assignment will not be changed unless there is a shift in the dollar volume of the Federal awards directly funded to the organization for at least three years. All concerned Federal agencies must be given the opportunity to participate in the negotiation process but, after a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted by all Federal agencies. When a Federal agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its Federal awards necessitate special indirect cost rates in accordance with section B.5 of this Appendix, it will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs. (See also §200.414.) If the nonprofit does not receive any funding from any Federal agency, the pass-through entity is responsible for the negotiation of the indirect cost rates in accordance with §200.332(a)(4).

b. Except as otherwise provided in §200.414(f), a nonprofit organization which has not previously established an indirect cost rate with a Federal agency must submit its initial indirect cost proposal immediately after the organization is advised that a Federal award will be made and, in no event, later than three months after the effective date of the Federal award.

c. Unless approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs in accordance with §200.414(g), organizations that have previously established indirect cost rates must submit a new indirect cost proposal to the cognizant agency for indirect costs within six months after the close of each fiscal year.

d. A predetermined rate may be negotiated for use on Federal awards where there is reasonable assurance, based on past experience and reliable projection of the organization's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on the organization's actual costs.

e. Fixed rates may be negotiated where predetermined rates are not considered appropriate. A fixed rate, however, must not be negotiated if (i) all or a substantial portion of the organization's Federal awards are expected to expire before the carry-forward adjustment can be made; (ii) the mix of Federal and non-Federal work at the organization is too erratic to permit an equitable carry-forward adjustment; or (iii) the organization's operations fluctuate significantly from year to year.

f. Provisional and final rates must be negotiated where neither predetermined nor fixed rates are appropriate. Predetermined or fixed rates may replace provisional rates at any time prior to the close of the organization's fiscal year. If that event does not occur, a final rate will be established and upward or downward adjustments will be made based on the actual allowable costs incurred for the period involved.

g. The results of each negotiation must be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the nonprofit organization. The cognizant agency for indirect costs must make available copies of the agreement to all concerned Federal agencies.

h. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the nonprofit organization, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

i. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance as required to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

D. Certification of Indirect (F&A) Costs

(1) Required Certification. No proposal to establish indirect (F&A) cost rates must be acceptable unless such costs have been certified by the nonprofit organization using the Certificate of Indirect (F&A) Costs set forth in section j. of this appendix. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the organization by an individual at a level no lower than vice president or chief financial officer for the organization.

(2) Each indirect cost rate proposal must be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

Certificate of Indirect (F&A) Costs

This is to certify that to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) I have reviewed the indirect (F&A) cost proposal submitted herewith;

(2) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect (F&A) costs rate for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal awards to which they apply and with subpart E of this part.

(3) This proposal does not include any costs which are unallowable under subpart E of this part such as (without limitation): Public relations costs, contributions and donations, entertainment costs, fines and penalties, lobbying costs, and defense of fraud proceedings; and

(4) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the Federal awards to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Nonprofit Organization: _____

Signature: _____

Name of Official: _____

Title: _____

Date of Execution: _____

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 80 FR 54410, Sept. 10, 2015; 85 FR 49579, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX V TO PART 200—STATE/LOCAL GOVERNMENTWIDE CENTRAL SERVICE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

A. GENERAL

1. Most governmental units provide certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Since federally-supported awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process whereby these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan provides that process. All costs and other data used to distribute the costs included in the plan should be supported by formal accounting and other records that will support the propriety of the costs assigned to Federal awards.

2. Guidelines and illustrations of central service cost allocation plans are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled “*A Guide for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments: Cost Principles and Procedures for Developing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Agreements with the Federal Government.*” A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the HHS Cost Allocation Services or at their website.

B. DEFINITIONS

1. *Agency or operating agency* means an organizational unit or sub-division within a governmental unit that is responsible for the performance or administration of Federal awards or activities of the governmental unit.

2. *Allocated central services* means central services that benefit operating agencies but are not billed to the agencies on a fee-for-service or similar basis. These costs are allocated to benefitted agencies on some reasonable basis. Examples of such services might include general accounting, personnel administration, purchasing, etc.

3. *Billed central services* means central services that are billed to benefitted agencies or programs on an individual fee-for-service or similar basis. Typical examples of billed central services include computer services, transportation services, insurance, and fringe benefits.

4. *Cognizant agency for indirect costs* is defined in §200.1. The determination of cognizant agency for indirect costs for states and local governments is described in section F.1.

5. *Major local government* means local government that receives more than \$100 million in direct Federal awards subject to this Part.

C. SCOPE OF THE CENTRAL SERVICE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

The central service cost allocation plan will include all central service costs that will be claimed (either as a billed or an allocated cost) under Federal awards and will be documented as described in section E. omitted from the plan will not be reimbursed.

D. SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

1. Each state will submit a plan to the Department of Health and Human Services for each year in which it claims central service costs under Federal awards. The plan should include (a) a projection of the next year's allocated central service cost (based either on actual costs for the most recently completed year or the budget projection for the coming year), and (b) a reconciliation of actual allocated central service costs to the estimated costs used for either the most recently completed year or the year immediately preceding the most recently completed year.

2. Each major local government is also required to submit a plan to its cognizant agency for indirect costs annually.

3. All other local governments claiming central service costs must develop a plan in accordance with the requirements described in this Part and maintain the plan and related supporting documentation for audit. These local governments are not required to submit their plans for Federal approval unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Where a local government only receives funds as a subrecipient, the pass-through entity will be responsible for monitoring the subrecipient's plan.

4. All central service cost allocation plans will be prepared and, when required, submitted within six months prior to the beginning of each of the governmental unit's fiscal years in which it proposes to claim central service costs. Extensions may be granted by the cognizant agency for indirect costs on a case-by-case basis.

E. DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBMITTED PLANS

The documentation requirements described in this section may be modified, expanded, or reduced by the cognizant agency for indirect costs on a case-by-case basis. For example, the requirements may be reduced for those central services which have little or no impact on Federal awards. Conversely, if a review of a plan indicates that certain additional information is needed, and will likely be needed in future years, it may be routinely requested in future plan submissions. Items marked with an asterisk (*) should be

submitted only once; subsequent plans should merely indicate any changes since the last plan.

1. General

All proposed plans must be accompanied by the following: an organization chart sufficiently detailed to show operations including the central service activities of the state/local government whether or not they are shown as benefitting from central service functions; a copy of the Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (or a copy of the Executive Budget if budgeted costs are being proposed) to support the allowable costs of each central service activity included in the plan; and, a certification (see subsection 4.) that the plan was prepared in accordance with this Part, contains only allowable costs, and was prepared in a manner that treated similar costs consistently among the various Federal awards and between Federal and non-Federal awards/activities.

2. Allocated Central Services

For each allocated central service*, the plan must also include the following: a brief description of the service, an identification of the unit rendering the service and the operating agencies receiving the service, the items of expense included in the cost of the service, the method used to distribute the cost of the service to benefitted agencies, and a summary schedule showing the allocation of each service to the specific benefitted agencies. If any self-insurance funds or fringe benefits costs are treated as allocated (rather than billed) central services, documentation discussed in subsections 3.b. and c. must also be included.

3. Billed Services

a. *General.* The information described in this section must be provided for all billed central services, including internal service funds, self-insurance funds, and fringe benefit funds.

b. *Internal service funds.*

(1) For each internal service fund or similar activity with an operating budget of \$5 million or more, the plan must include: A brief description of each service; a balance sheet for each fund based on individual accounts contained in the governmental unit's accounting system; a revenue/expenses statement, with revenues broken out by source, e.g., regular billings, interest earned, etc.; a listing of all non-operating transfers (as defined by GAAP) into and out of the fund; a description of the procedures (methodology) used to charge the costs of each service to users, including how billing rates are determined; a schedule of current rates; and, a schedule comparing total revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service to the allowable costs of the service, as

determined under this part, with an explanation of how variances will be handled.

(2) Revenues must consist of all revenues generated by the service, including unbilled and uncollected revenues. If some users were not billed for the services (or were not billed at the full rate for that class of users), a schedule showing the full imputed revenues associated with these users must be provided. Expenses must be broken out by object cost categories (e.g., salaries, supplies, etc.).

c. *Self-insurance funds.* For each self-insurance fund, the plan must include: the fund balance sheet; a statement of revenue and expenses including a summary of billings and claims paid by agency; a listing of all non-operating transfers into and out of the fund; the type(s) of risk(s) covered by the fund (e.g., automobile liability, workers' compensation, etc.); an explanation of how the level of fund contributions are determined, including a copy of the current actuarial report (with the actuarial assumptions used) if the contributions are determined on an actuarial basis; and, a description of the procedures used to charge or allocate fund contributions to benefitted activities. Reserve levels in excess of claims (1) submitted and adjudicated but not paid, (2) submitted but not adjudicated, and (3) incurred but not submitted must be identified and explained.

d. *Fringe benefits.* For fringe benefit costs, the plan must include: a listing of fringe benefits provided to covered employees, and the overall annual cost of each type of benefit; current fringe benefit policies; and procedures used to charge or allocate the costs of the benefits to benefitted activities. In addition, for pension and post-retirement health insurance plans, the following information must be provided: the governmental unit's funding policies, e.g., legislative bills, trust agreements, or state-mandated contribution rules, if different from actuarially determined rates; the pension plan's costs accrued for the year; the amount funded, and date(s) of funding; a copy of the current actuarial report (including the actuarial assumptions); the plan trustee's report; and, a schedule from the activity showing the value of the interest cost associated with late funding.

4. Required Certification

Each central service cost allocation plan will be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

CERTIFICATE OF COST ALLOCATION PLAN

This is to certify that I have reviewed the cost allocation plan submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish cost allocations or billings for [identify period covered by plan] are

allowable in accordance with the requirements of this Part and the Federal award(s) to which they apply. Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the Federal awards to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: _____
Signature: _____
Name of Official: _____
Title: _____
Date of Execution: _____

F. NEGOTIATION AND APPROVAL OF CENTRAL SERVICE PLANS

1. Federal Cognizant Agency for Indirect Costs Assignments for Cost Negotiation

In general, unless different arrangements are agreed to by the concerned Federal agencies, for central service cost allocation plans, the cognizant agency responsible for review and approval is the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of total Federal awards with a governmental unit. For indirect cost rates and departmental indirect cost allocation plans, the cognizant agency is the Federal agency with the largest dollar value of direct Federal awards with a governmental unit or component, as appropriate. Once designated as the cognizant agency for indirect costs, the Federal agency must remain so for a period of five years. In addition, the following Federal agencies continue to be responsible for the indicated governmental entities:

Department of Health and Human Services—Public assistance and state-wide cost allocation plans for all states (including the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico), state and local hospitals, libraries and health districts.

Department of the Interior—Indian tribal governments, territorial governments, and state and local park and recreational districts.

Department of Labor—State and local labor departments.

Department of Education—School districts and state and local education agencies.

Department of Agriculture—State and local agriculture departments.

Department of Transportation—State and local airport and port authorities and transit districts.

Pt. 200, App. V

Department of Commerce—State and local economic development districts.

Department of Housing and Urban Development—State and local housing and development districts.

Environmental Protection Agency—State and local water and sewer districts.

2. Review

All proposed central service cost allocation plans that are required to be submitted will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs on a timely basis. The cognizant agency for indirect costs will review the proposal within six months of receipt of the proposal and either negotiate/approve the proposal or advise the governmental unit of the additional documentation needed to support/evaluate the proposed plan or the changes required to make the proposal acceptable. Once an agreement with the governmental unit has been reached, the agreement will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies, unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal awarding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its Federal awards necessitate special consideration, the funding agency will, prior to the time the plans are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

3. Agreement

The results of each negotiation must be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The results of the negotiation must be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

4. Adjustments

Negotiated cost allocation plans based on a proposal later found to have included costs that: (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in subpart F, General Provisions for selected Items of Cost of this Part, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards, must be adjusted, or a refund must be made at the option of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer and debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs regulations. Adjustments or cash refunds may include, at the option of the cognizant agency for indirect costs, earned or imputed interest from the date of expenditure and delinquent debt interest, if applicable, charge-

2 CFR Ch. II (1-1-21 Edition)

able in accordance with applicable cognizant agency claims collection regulations. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the plans and do not constitute a re-opening of the negotiation.

G. OTHER POLICIES

1. Billed Central Service Activities

Each billed central service activity must separately account for all revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service, expenses incurred to furnish the service, and profit/loss.

2. Working Capital Reserves

Internal service funds are dependent upon a reasonable level of working capital reserve to operate from one billing cycle to the next. Charges by an internal service activity to provide for the establishment and maintenance of a reasonable level of working capital reserve, in addition to the full recovery of costs, are allowable. A working capital reserve as part of retained earnings of up to 60 calendar days cash expenses for normal operating purposes is considered reasonable. A working capital reserve exceeding 60 calendar days may be approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs in exceptional cases.

3. Carry-Forward Adjustments of Allocated Central Service Costs

Allocated central service costs are usually negotiated and approved for a future fiscal year on a “fixed with carry-forward” basis. Under this procedure, the fixed amounts for the future year covered by agreement are not subject to adjustment for that year. However, when the actual costs of the year involved become known, the differences between the fixed amounts previously approved and the actual costs will be carried forward and used as an adjustment to the fixed amounts established for a later year. This “carry-forward” procedure applies to all central services whose costs were fixed in the approved plan. However, a carry-forward adjustment is not permitted, for a central service activity that was not included in the approved plan, or for unallowable costs that must be reimbursed immediately.

4. Adjustments of Billed Central Services

Billing rates used to charge Federal awards must be based on the estimated costs of providing the services, including an estimate of the allocable central service costs. A comparison of the revenue generated by each billed service (including total revenues whether or not billed or collected) to the actual allowable costs of the service will be made at least annually, and an adjustment will be made for the difference between the

revenue and the allowable costs. These adjustments will be made through one of the following adjustment methods: (a) a cash refund including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer and debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs regulations to the Federal Government for the Federal share of the adjustment, (b) credits to the amounts charged to the individual programs, (c) adjustments to future billing rates, or (d) adjustments to allocated central service costs. Adjustments to allocated central services will not be permitted where the total amount of the adjustment for a particular service (Federal share and non-Federal) share exceeds \$500,000. Adjustment methods may include, at the option of the cognizant agency, earned or imputed interest from the date of expenditure and delinquent debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable cognizant agency claims collection regulations.

5. Records Retention

All central service cost allocation plans and related documentation used as a basis for claiming costs under Federal awards must be retained for audit in accordance with the records retention requirements contained in subpart D of this part.

6. Appeals

If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

7. OMB Assistance

To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 80 FR 54410, Sept. 10, 2015; 85 FR 49581, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX VI TO PART 200—PUBLIC ASSISTANCE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

A. GENERAL

Federally-financed programs administered by state public assistance agencies are funded predominately by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). In support of its stewardship requirements, HHS has published requirements for the development, documentation, submission, negotiation, and approval of public assistance cost allocation plans in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. All administrative costs (direct and indi-

rect) are normally charged to Federal awards by implementing the public assistance cost allocation plan. This Appendix extends these requirements to all Federal awarding agencies whose programs are administered by a state public assistance agency. Major federally-financed programs typically administered by state public assistance agencies include: Temporary Aid to Needy Families (TANF), Medicaid, Food Stamps, Child Support Enforcement, Adoption Assistance and Foster Care, and Social Services Block Grant.

B. DEFINITIONS

1. *State public assistance agency* means a state agency administering or supervising the administration of one or more public assistance programs operated by the state as identified in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. For the purpose of this Appendix, these programs include all programs administered by the state public assistance agency.

2. *State public assistance agency costs* means all costs incurred by, or allocable to, the state public assistance agency, except expenditures for financial assistance, medical contractor payments, food stamps, and payments for services and goods provided directly to program recipients.

C. POLICY

State public assistance agencies will develop, document and implement, and the Federal Government will review, negotiate, and approve, public assistance cost allocation plans in accordance with Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. The plan will include all programs administered by the state public assistance agency. Where a letter of approval or disapproval is transmitted to a state public assistance agency in accordance with Subpart E, the letter will apply to all Federal agencies and programs. The remaining sections of this Appendix (except for the requirement for certification) summarize the provisions of Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

D. SUBMISSION, DOCUMENTATION, AND APPROVAL OF PUBLIC ASSISTANCE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

1. State public assistance agencies are required to promptly submit amendments to the cost allocation plan to HHS for review and approval.

2. Under the coordination process outlined in section E, affected Federal agencies will review all new plans and plan amendments and provide comments, as appropriate, to HHS. The effective date of the plan or plan amendment will be the first day of the calendar quarter following the event that required the amendment, unless another date is specifically approved by HHS. HHS, as the cognizant agency for indirect costs acting on behalf of all affected Federal agencies, will,

Pt. 200, App. VII

as necessary, conduct negotiations with the state public assistance agency and will inform the state agency of the action taken on the plan or plan amendment.

E. REVIEW OF IMPLEMENTATION OF APPROVED PLANS

1. Since public assistance cost allocation plans are of a narrative nature, the review during the plan approval process consists of evaluating the appropriateness of the proposed groupings of costs (cost centers) and the related allocation bases. As such, the Federal Government needs some assurance that the cost allocation plan has been implemented as approved. This is accomplished by reviews by the Federal awarding agencies, single audits, or audits conducted by the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

2. Where inappropriate charges affecting more than one Federal awarding agency are identified, the cognizant HHS cost negotiation office will be advised and will take the lead in resolving the issue(s) as provided for in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

3. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan or from a disallowance involving two or more Federal awarding agencies, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures set out in 45 CFR Part 16. Disputes involving only one Federal awarding agency will be resolved in accordance with the Federal awarding agency's appeal process.

4. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal awarding agencies or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, the Office of Management and Budget will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

F. UNALLOWABLE COSTS

Claims developed under approved cost allocation plans will be based on allowable costs as identified in this Part. Where unallowable costs have been claimed and reimbursed, they will be refunded to the program that reimbursed the unallowable cost using one of the following methods: (a) a cash refund, (b) offset to a subsequent claim, or (c) credits to the amounts charged to individual Federal awards. Cash refunds, offsets, and credits may include at the option of the cognizant agency for indirect cost, earned or imputed interest from the date of expenditure and delinquent debt interest, if applicable, chargeable in accordance with applicable cognizant agency for indirect cost claims collection regulations.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49581, Aug. 13, 2020]

2 CFR Ch. II (1–1–21 Edition)

APPENDIX VII TO PART 200—STATES AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND INDIAN TRIBE INDIRECT COST PROPOSALS

A. GENERAL

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint purposes. These costs benefit more than one cost objective and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to Federal awards and other activities as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefit cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to a Federal award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost.

2. Indirect costs include (a) the indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and (b) the costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan (as described in Appendix V to this part) and not otherwise treated as direct costs.

3. Indirect costs are normally charged to Federal awards by the use of an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) is usually necessary for each department or agency of the governmental unit claiming indirect costs under Federal awards. Guidelines and illustrations of indirect cost proposals are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled “*A Guide for States and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government.*” A copy of this brochure may be obtained from HHS Cost Allocation Services or at their website.

4. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of governmental units, the types of costs which may be classified as indirect costs cannot be specified in all situations. However, typical examples of indirect costs may include certain state/local-wide central service costs, general administration of the non-Federal entity accounting and personnel services performed within the non-Federal entity, depreciation on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities.

5. This Appendix does not apply to state public assistance agencies. These agencies should refer instead to Appendix VI to this part.

B. DEFINITIONS

1. *Base* means the accumulated direct costs (normally either total direct salaries and wages or total direct costs exclusive of any extraordinary or distorting expenditures)

used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The direct cost base selected should result in each Federal award bearing a fair share of the indirect costs in reasonable relation to the benefits received from the costs.

2. *Base period* for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to activities performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the governmental unit's fiscal year, but in any event, must be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of costs.

3. *Cognizant agency for indirect costs* means the Federal agency responsible for reviewing and approving the governmental unit's indirect cost rate(s) on the behalf of the Federal Government. The cognizant agency for indirect costs assignment is described in Appendix V, section F.

4. *Final rate* means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual allowable costs of the period. A final audited rate is not subject to adjustment.

5. *Fixed rate* means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual, allowable costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

6. *Indirect cost pool* is the accumulated costs that jointly benefit two or more programs or other cost objectives.

7. *Indirect cost rate* is a device for determining in a reasonable manner the proportion of indirect costs each program should bear. It is the ratio (expressed as a percentage) of the indirect costs to a direct cost base.

8. *Indirect cost rate proposal* means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or subdivision thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate.

9. *Predetermined rate* means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the governmental unit's fiscal year. This rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. Except under very unusual circumstances, a predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment. (Because of legal constraints, predetermined rates are not permitted for Federal contracts; they may, however, be used for grants or cooperative agreements.) Predetermined rates may not be used by governmental units that have not submitted and negotiated the rate with the cognizant agency for indirect costs. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts

available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect costs during the ensuing accounting periods.

10. *Provisional rate* means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a "final" rate for that period.

C. ALLOCATION OF INDIRECT COSTS AND DETERMINATION OF INDIRECT COST RATES

1. General

a. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from the indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures as described in subsection 2.

b. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, the allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual Federal awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in subsections 2, 3 and 4.

2. Simplified Method

a. Where a non-Federal entity's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by (1) classifying the non-Federal entity's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and (2) dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function encompassing a number of individual projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to that department or agency is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs must exclude capital expenditures and

unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs must be included in the direct costs if they represent activities to which indirect costs are properly allocable.

c. The distribution base may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such as pass-through funds, subcontracts in excess of \$25,000, participant support costs, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution.

3. Multiple Allocation Base Method

a. Where a non-Federal entity's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, such costs must be accumulated into separate cost groupings. Each grouping must then be allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits.

b. The cost groupings should be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping should constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of the functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The number of separate groupings should be held within practical limits, taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision needed.

c. Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefitted functions. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefitted, the allocation must be made in that manner. When the expenses in a grouping are more general in nature, the allocation should be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal Government and the governmental unit. In general, any cost element or related factor associated with the governmental unit's activities is potentially adaptable for use as an allocation base provided that: (1) it can readily be expressed in terms of dollars or other quantitative measures (total direct costs, direct salaries and wages, staff hours applied, square feet used, hours of usage, number of documents processed, population served, and the like), and (2) it is common to the benefitted functions during the base period.

d. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with paragraph (C)(4) of this Appendix, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function must be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool must then be distributed to individual Federal awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

e. The distribution base used in computing the indirect cost rate for each function may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items such as pass-through funds, subawards in excess of \$25,000, participant support costs, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution. An indirect cost rate should be developed for each separate indirect cost pool developed. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage relationship between the particular indirect cost pool and the distribution base identified with that pool.

4. Special Indirect Cost Rates

a. In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of a non-Federal entity or for each major function of the agency may not be appropriate. It may not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular program or group of programs. The factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular Federal award is carried out in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to that Federal award. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided that: (1) The rate differs significantly from the rate which would have been developed under paragraphs (C)(2) and (C)(3) of this Appendix, and (2) the Federal award to which the rate would apply is material in amount.

b. Where Federal statutes restrict the reimbursement of certain indirect costs, it may be necessary to develop a special rate for the affected Federal award. Where a "restricted rate" is required, the same procedure for developing a non-restricted rate will be used except for the additional step of the elimination from the indirect cost pool those costs for which the law prohibits reimbursement.

D. SUBMISSION AND DOCUMENTATION OF PROPOSALS

1. Submission of Indirect Cost Rate Proposals

a. All departments or agencies of the governmental unit desiring to claim indirect costs under Federal awards must prepare an indirect cost rate proposal and related documentation to support those costs. The proposal and related documentation must be retained for audit in accordance with the

records retention requirements contained in §200.334.

b. A governmental department or agency unit that receives more than \$35 million in direct Federal funding must submit its indirect cost rate proposal to its cognizant agency for indirect costs. Other governmental department or agency must develop an indirect cost proposal in accordance with the requirements of this Part and maintain the proposal and related supporting documentation for audit. These governmental departments or agencies are not required to submit their proposals unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. Where a non-Federal entity only receives funds as a subrecipient, the pass-through entity will be responsible for negotiating and/or monitoring the subrecipient's indirect costs.

c. Each Indian tribal government desiring reimbursement of indirect costs must submit its indirect cost proposal to the Department of the Interior (its cognizant agency for indirect costs).

d. Indirect cost proposals must be developed (and, when required, submitted) within six months after the close of the governmental unit's fiscal year, unless an exception is approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. If the proposed central service cost allocation plan for the same period has not been approved by that time, the indirect cost proposal may be prepared including an amount for central services that is based on the latest federally-approved central service cost allocation plan. The difference between these central service amounts and the amounts ultimately approved will be compensated for by an adjustment in a subsequent period.

2. Documentation of Proposals

The following must be included with each indirect cost proposal:

a. The rates proposed, including subsidiary work sheets and other relevant data, cross referenced and reconciled to the financial data noted in subsection b. Allocated central service costs will be supported by the summary table included in the approved central service cost allocation plan. This summary table is not required to be submitted with the indirect cost proposal if the central service cost allocation plan for the same fiscal year has been approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs and is available to the funding agency.

b. A copy of the financial data (financial statements, comprehensive annual financial report, executive budgets, accounting reports, etc.) upon which the rate is based. Adjustments resulting from the use of unaudited data will be recognized, where appropriate, by the Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs in a subsequent proposal.

c. The approximate amount of direct base costs incurred under Federal awards. These costs should be broken out between salaries and wages and other direct costs.

d. A chart showing the organizational structure of the agency during the period for which the proposal applies, along with a functional statement(s) noting the duties and/or responsibilities of all units that comprise the agency. (Once this is submitted, only revisions need be submitted with subsequent proposals.)

3. Required certification.

Each indirect cost rate proposal must be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

CERTIFICATE OF INDIRECT COSTS

This is to certify that I have reviewed the indirect cost rate proposal submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect costs rates for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal award(s) to which they apply and the provisions of this Part. Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the indirect cost proposal

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently and the Federal Government will be notified of any accounting changes that would affect the predetermined rate.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: _____
Signature: _____
Name of Official: _____
Title: _____
Date of Execution: _____

E. NEGOTIATION AND APPROVAL OF RATES

1. Indirect cost rates will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the cognizant agency on a timely basis. Once a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal awarding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its Federal awards necessitate special indirect cost rates, the funding agency will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

2. The use of predetermined rates, if allowed, is encouraged where the cognizant agency for indirect costs has reasonable assurance based on past experience and reliable projection of the non-Federal entity's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on actual costs. Long-term agreements utilizing predetermined rates extending over two or more years are encouraged, where appropriate.

3. The results of each negotiation must be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute, or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The agreed upon rates must be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

4. Refunds must be made if proposals are later found to have included costs that (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in §200.420, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards. These adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (predetermined, final, fixed, or provisional).

F. OTHER POLICIES

1. Fringe Benefit Rates

If overall fringe benefit rates are not approved for the governmental unit as part of the central service cost allocation plan, these rates will be reviewed, negotiated and approved for individual recipient agencies during the indirect cost negotiation process. In these cases, a proposed fringe benefit rate computation should accompany the indirect cost proposal. If fringe benefit rates are not used at the recipient agency level (i.e., the agency specifically identifies fringe benefit costs to individual employees), the governmental unit should so advise the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

2. Billed Services Provided by the Recipient Agency

In some cases, governmental departments or agencies (components of the governmental unit) provide and bill for services similar to those covered by central service cost allocation plans (e.g., computer centers). Where this occurs, the governmental departments or agencies (components of the governmental unit) should be guided by the requirements in Appendix V relating to the development of billing rates and documentation requirements, and should advise the cognizant agency for indirect costs of any billed services. Reviews of these types of services (including reviews of costing/billing methodology, profits or losses, etc.) will be

made on a case-by-case basis as warranted by the circumstances involved.

3. Indirect Cost Allocations Not Using Rates

In certain situations, governmental departments or agencies (components of the governmental unit), because of the nature of their Federal awards, may be required to develop a cost allocation plan that distributes indirect (and, in some cases, direct) costs to the specific funding sources. In these cases, a narrative cost allocation methodology should be developed, documented, maintained for audit, or submitted, as appropriate, to the cognizant agency for indirect costs for review, negotiation, and approval.

4. Appeals

If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate (or other rate) between the cognizant agency for indirect costs and the governmental unit, the dispute must be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency for indirect costs.

5. Collection of Unallowable Costs and Erroneous Payments

Costs specifically identified as unallowable and charged to Federal awards either directly or indirectly will be refunded (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal cognizant agency for indirect costs regulations).

6. OMB Assistance

To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75889, Dec. 19, 2014; 85 FR 49581, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX VIII TO PART 200— NON-PROFIT ORGANIZATIONS EXEMPTED FROM SUBPART E OF PART 200

1. Advance Technology Institute (ATI), Charleston, South Carolina
2. Aerospace Corporation, El Segundo, California
3. American Institutes of Research (AIR), Washington, DC
4. Argonne National Laboratory, Chicago, Illinois
5. Atomic Casualty Commission, Washington, DC
6. Battelle Memorial Institute, Headquartered in Columbus, Ohio
7. Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, New York

OMB Guidance

Pt. 200, App. XII

8. Charles Stark Draper Laboratory, Incorporated, Cambridge, Massachusetts
9. CNA Corporation (CNAC), Alexandria, Virginia
10. Environmental Institute of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan
11. Georgia Institute of Technology/Georgia Tech Applied Research Corporation/Georgia Tech Research Institute, Atlanta, Georgia
12. Hanford Environmental Health Foundation, Richland, Washington
13. IIT Research Institute, Chicago, Illinois
14. Institute of Gas Technology, Chicago, Illinois
15. Institute for Defense Analysis, Alexandria, Virginia
16. LMI, McLean, Virginia
17. Mitre Corporation, Bedford, Massachusetts
18. Noblis, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia
19. National Radiological Astronomy Observatory, Green Bank, West Virginia
20. National Renewable Energy Laboratory, Golden, Colorado
21. Oak Ridge Associated Universities, Oak Ridge, Tennessee
22. Rand Corporation, Santa Monica, California
23. Research Triangle Institute, Research Triangle Park, North Carolina
24. Riverside Research Institute, New York, New York
25. South Carolina Research Authority (SCRA), Charleston, South Carolina
26. Southern Research Institute, Birmingham, Alabama
27. Southwest Research Institute, San Antonio, Texas
28. SRI International, Menlo Park, California
29. Syracuse Research Corporation, Syracuse, New York
30. Universities Research Association, Incorporated (National Acceleration Lab), Argonne, Illinois
31. Urban Institute, Washington DC
32. Nonprofit insurance companies, such as Blue Cross and Blue Shield Organizations
33. Other nonprofit organizations as negotiated with Federal awarding agencies

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 85 FR 49582, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX IX TO PART 200—HOSPITAL COST PRINCIPLES

Based on initial feedback, OMB proposes to establish a review process to consider existing hospital cost determine how best to update and align them with this Part. Until such time as revised guidance is proposed and implemented for hospitals, the existing principles located at 45 CFR Part 75 Appendix E, entitled “Principles for Determining Cost Applicable to Research and Develop-

ment Under Grants and Contracts with Hospitals,” remain in effect.

[78 FR 78608, Dec. 26, 2013, as amended at 79 FR 75889, Dec. 19, 2014]

APPENDIX X TO PART 200—DATA COLLECTION FORM (FORM SF-SAC)

The Data Collection Form SF-SAC is available on the FAC Web site.

APPENDIX XI TO PART 200—COMPLIANCE SUPPLEMENT

The compliance supplement is available on the OMB website.

[85 FR 49582, Aug. 13, 2020]

APPENDIX XII TO PART 200—AWARD TERM AND CONDITION FOR RECIPIENT INTEGRITY AND PERFORMANCE MATTERS

A. REPORTING OF MATTERS RELATED TO RECIPIENT INTEGRITY AND PERFORMANCE

1. General Reporting Requirement

If the total value of your currently active grants, cooperative agreements, and procurement contracts from all Federal awarding agencies exceeds \$10,000,000 for any period of time during the period of performance of this Federal award, then you as the recipient during that period of time must maintain the currency of information reported to the System for Award Management (SAM) that is made available in the designated integrity and performance system (currently the Federal Awardee Performance and Integrity Information System (FAPIIS)) about civil, criminal, or administrative proceedings described in paragraph 2 of this award term and condition. This is a statutory requirement under section 872 of Public Law 110-417, as amended (41 U.S.C. 2313). As required by section 3010 of Public Law 111-212, all information posted in the designated integrity and performance system on or after April 15, 2011, except past performance reviews required for Federal procurement contracts, will be publicly available.

2. Proceedings About Which You Must Report

Submit the information required about each proceeding that:

- a. Is in connection with the award or performance of a grant, cooperative agreement, or procurement contract from the Federal Government;
- b. Reached its final disposition during the most recent five-year period; and
- c. Is one of the following:

(1) A criminal proceeding that resulted in a conviction, as defined in paragraph 5 of this award term and condition;

(2) A civil proceeding that resulted in a finding of fault and liability and payment of a monetary fine, penalty, reimbursement, restitution, or damages of \$5,000 or more;

(3) An administrative proceeding, as defined in paragraph 5. of this award term and condition, that resulted in a finding of fault and liability and your payment of either a monetary fine or penalty of \$5,000 or more or reimbursement, restitution, or damages in excess of \$100,000; or

(4) Any other criminal, civil, or administrative proceeding if:

(i) It could have led to an outcome described in paragraph 2.c.(1), (2), or (3) of this award term and condition;

(ii) It had a different disposition arrived at by consent or compromise with an acknowledgment of fault on your part; and

(iii) The requirement in this award term and condition to disclose information about the proceeding does not conflict with applicable laws and regulations.

3. Reporting Procedures

Enter in the SAM Entity Management area the information that SAM requires about each proceeding described in paragraph 2 of this award term and condition. You do not need to submit the information a second time under assistance awards that you received if you already provided the information through SAM because you were required to do so under Federal procurement contracts that you were awarded.

4. Reporting Frequency

During any period of time when you are subject to the requirement in paragraph 1 of this award term and condition, you must report proceedings information through SAM for the most recent five year period, either to report new information about any proceeding(s) that you have not reported previously or affirm that there is no new infor-

mation to report. Recipients that have Federal contract, grant, and cooperative agreement awards with a cumulative total value greater than \$10,000,000 must disclose semi-annually any information about the criminal, civil, and administrative proceedings.

5. Definitions

For purposes of this award term and condition:

a. Administrative proceeding means a non-judicial process that is adjudicatory in nature in order to make a determination of fault or liability (*e.g.*, Securities and Exchange Commission Administrative proceedings, Civilian Board of Contract Appeals proceedings, and Armed Services Board of Contract Appeals proceedings). This includes proceedings at the Federal and State level but only in connection with performance of a Federal contract or grant. It does not include audits, site visits, corrective plans, or inspection of deliverables.

b. Conviction, for purposes of this award term and condition, means a judgment or conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon a verdict or a plea, and includes a conviction entered upon a plea of *nolo contendere*.

c. Total value of currently active grants, cooperative agreements, and procurement contracts includes—

(1) Only the Federal share of the funding under any Federal award with a recipient cost share or match; and

(2) The value of all expected funding increments under a Federal award and options, even if not yet exercised.

B. [Reserved]

[80 FR 43310, July 22, 2015, as amended at 85 FR 49582, Aug. 13, 2020]

PARTS 201–299 [RESERVED]

GENERAL CONDITIONS OF
THE STANDARD FORM CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT
BETWEEN COUNTY AND CONTRACTOR

(LONG FORM)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS	1
1.1 DEFINITIONS	1
1.1.1 Acceptance.....	1
1.1.2 Act of God.....	1
1.1.3 Addendum.	1
1.1.4 Admitted Surety.....	1
1.1.5 Allowable Costs.....	1
1.1.6 Allowable Markups.....	1
1.1.7 Alternate.....	1
1.1.8 Applicable Laws.....	1
1.1.9 Application for Payment.....	1
1.1.10 Architect.....	1
1.1.11 Award.....	1
1.1.12 Base Bid.....	2
1.1.13 Bid.....	2
1.1.14 Bid Amount.....	2
1.1.15 Bid Bond.....	2
1.1.16 Bid Closing Deadline.....	2
1.1.17 Bid Form.....	2
1.1.18 Bid Security	2
1.1.19 Bid Submittal. "	2
1.1.20 Bidder.....	2
1.1.21 Bidding Documents.....	2
1.1.22 Board of Supervisors.....	3
1.1.23 Change.....	3
1.1.24 Change Order.....	3
1.1.25 Change Order Request.....	3
1.1.26 Claim.....	3
1.1.27 Close-Out Documents.....	3
1.1.28 Compensable Change.....	3
1.1.29 Compensable Delay.....	4
1.1.30 Construction Change Directive.....	4
1.1.31 Construction Contract.....	4
1.1.32 Construction Schedule.....	4
1.1.33 Contract Adjustment.....	4
1.1.34 Contract Documents.....	4
1.1.35 Contract Price.....	5

1.1.36	Contract Time.	5
1.1.37	Contractor.	5
1.1.38	Contractor Amount.	5
1.1.39	Contractor's Own Expense.	5
1.1.40	County.	5
1.1.41	County Amount.	5
1.1.42	County Consultant.	5
1.1.43	County Review Date.	5
1.1.44	County Review Period.	6
1.1.45	County Risk Manager.	6
1.1.46	County Website.	6
1.1.47	Date of Commencement.	6
1.1.48	Day.	6
1.1.49	Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds.	6
1.1.50	Defective Work.	6
1.1.51	Delay.	6
1.1.52	Deleted Work.	6
1.1.53	Department of Industrial Relations.	6
1.1.54	Design Discrepancy.	6
1.1.55	Design Documents.	6
1.1.56	Design Intent.	6
1.1.57	Designation of Subcontractors.	6
1.1.58	Differing Site Condition.	6
1.1.59	Director of the Office of Economic Development.	7
1.1.60	Disability Laws.	7
1.1.61	Discovery Date.	7
1.1.62	Drawings.	7
1.1.63	Environmental Laws.	7
1.1.64	Escrow Agent.	7
1.1.65	Escrow Bid Documents.	7
1.1.66	Event of Contractor Default.	7
1.1.67	Evidence of Insurance.	7
1.1.68	Excusable Delay.	8
1.1.69	Existing Improvements.	8
1.1.70	Extra Work.	8
1.1.71	Final Completion, Finally Complete.	8
1.1.72	Final Completion Punch List.	8
1.1.73	Final Payment.	8
1.1.74	FM.	8
1.1.75	Force Majeure Event.	9
1.1.76	Fragnet.	9
1.1.77	General Conditions.	9
1.1.78	General Requirements.	9
1.1.79	Good Faith Determination.	9
1.1.80	Governmental Authority.	9
1.1.81	Governmental Authority Review Period.	9
1.1.82	Guarantee To Repair Period.	9
1.1.83	Hazardous Substance.	9
1.1.84	Holiday.	10
1.1.85	Indemnities.	10
1.1.86	Inspector of Record.	10
1.1.87	Installation Subcontractor.	10
1.1.88	Instructions to Bidders.	10

1.1.89	Intellectual Property Rights.	10
1.1.90	Key Personnel, Key Persons.	10
1.1.91	Loss, Losses.	10
1.1.92	Modification.	10
1.1.93	Mold.	10
1.1.94	Non-Collusion Declaration.	10
1.1.95	Notice Inviting Bids.	10
1.1.96	Notice Inviting Prequalification Statements.	10
1.1.97	Notice of Change.	10
1.1.98	Notice of Completion.	10
1.1.99	Notice of Delay.	11
1.1.100	Notice of Final Completion.	11
1.1.101	Notice of Intent to Award.	11
1.1.102	Notice of Substantial Completion.	11
1.1.103	Notice to Proceed.	11
1.1.104	Payment Bond, Performance Bond.	11
1.1.105	Plans.	11
1.1.106	Post-Award Submittals.	11
1.1.107	Pre-Bid Conference.	11
1.1.108	Prequalification.	11
1.1.109	Prequalification Documents.	11
1.1.110	Prequalified Bidder.	11
1.1.111	Product Data.	11
1.1.112	Progress Payment.	11
1.1.113	Project.	11
1.1.114	Project Documents.	11
1.1.115	Project Team.	11
1.1.116	Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate.	12
1.1.117	Record Documents.	12
1.1.118	Record Drawings, Record Specifications.	12
1.1.119	Reference Documents.	12
1.1.120	Request for Extension.	12
1.1.121	Request for Information.	12
1.1.122	Safety Program.	12
1.1.123	Samples.	12
1.1.124	Schedule of Values.	12
1.1.125	Self-Performed Work.	12
1.1.126	Separate Contractor.	12
1.1.127	Shop Drawing.	12
1.1.128	Site.	13
1.1.129	Specifications.	13
1.1.130	Standard of Performance.	13
1.1.131	State Water Resources Control Board.	13
1.1.132	Storm Water Permit.	13
1.1.133	Sub-Bidder.	13
1.1.134	Subcontractor.	13
1.1.135	Submittal.	13
1.1.136	Submittal Schedule.	13
1.1.137	Substantial Completion, Substantially Complete.	13
1.1.138	Substantial Completion Punch List.	13
1.1.139	Substitution.	14
1.1.140	Substitution Request Form.	14
1.1.141	Supplementary Conditions.	14

1.1.142	Surety.	14
1.1.143	Tier.	14
1.1.144	Time Impact Analysis.	14
1.1.145	Unexcused Delay.	14
1.1.146	Unilateral Change Order.	14
1.1.147	Work.	14
1.1.148	Worker's Compensation Certificate.	14
1.2	CORRELATION, INTERPRETATION AND INTENT OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS	14
1.2.1	Design Intent.	14
1.2.2	Complementary.	15
1.2.3	Technical Words.	15
1.2.4	Trade Names.	15
1.2.5	Incidental Items.	15
1.2.6	Drawing Dimensions.	15
1.2.7	Drawings, Specifications.	15
1.2.8	Typical Work.	15
1.2.9	Divisions of the Work.	15
1.2.10	Applicable Laws.	15
1.2.11	Interpretations of Laws.	15
1.2.12	Modifiers.	15
1.2.13	Singular, Gender, Captions.	16
1.2.14	Cross-References.	16
1.2.15	Diagrammatic Design.	16
1.2.16	Demolition.	16
1.2.17	Omissions.	16
1.2.18	Conflicts.	16
1.2.19	Order of Precedence.	16
1.2.20	Conditions Precedent.	17
1.3	OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS	17
1.3.1	Property of County.	17
1.3.2	Assignment of Rights.	17
1.3.3	Contractor's Warranty.	17
1.3.4	Non-Exclusive License.	17
1.3.5	Reproduction.	17
1.3.6	Delivery to County.	18
1.3.7	Subcontractors.	18
	ARTICLE 2 COUNTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS.	18
2.1	INFORMATION, APPROVALS AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF COUNTY	18
2.1.1	Legal Descriptions.	18
2.1.2	Permits and Fees.	18
2.1.3	County Approvals.	18
2.1.4	Approvals.	19
2.1.5	Non-Specified Items.	19
2.2	COUNTY'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK.	19
2.3	COUNTY'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK	19
2.4	ACCOUNTING, RECORDS AND AUDIT	19
2.4.1	Accounting System.	19

2.4.2	Books and Records.	19
2.4.3	Inspection and Copying.	19
2.4.4	Confidential Information.	19
2.4.5	Withholding of Payment.	20
2.4.6	Specific Performance.	20
2.5	COUNTY FURNISHED MATERIALS	20
2.5.1	Supply by County.	20
2.5.2	Deleted Work.	20
2.5.3	Delivery Deadlines.	20
2.5.4	Delivery to Site.	20
2.5.5	Care, Custody and Control.	20
2.5.6	Notice of Deficiencies.	20
2.5.7	Incorporation in Work.	20
2.6	COUNTY INSTALLED ITEMS	21
2.7	COUNTY'S ADDITIONAL RIGHTS	21
	ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR PERFORMANCE	21
3.1	CONTRACTOR STATUS	21
3.1.1	Independent Contractor.	21
3.1.2	Agents, Employees.	21
3.1.3	Licenses.	21
3.1.4	Subcontractors.	21
3.1.5	Design Services.	21
3.2	REVIEW OF DOCUMENTS, SITE AND EXISTING IMPROVEMENTS	22
3.2.1	Contractor's Duty of Review.	22
3.2.2	Contract Adjustments.	22
3.2.3	WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.	23
3.2.4	Continuing Obligation.	23
3.2.5	Requests for Information.	24
3.2.6	Correction of Work.	24
3.3	SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES	25
3.3.1	General Obligation.	25
3.3.2	Supervisory Staff.	25
3.3.3	County Supplementary Personnel.	25
3.3.4	Means, Methods, Procedures.	25
3.4	LABOR, MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT	25
3.4.1	Costs of Work.	25
3.4.2	Coordination.	25
3.4.3	Field Conditions.	25
3.4.4	Layout.	25
3.4.5	Materials, Equipment.	25
3.5	CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTY	27
3.5.1	General Warranty.	27
3.5.2	Repair, Replacement.	27
3.5.3	Not a Limitation.	27
3.5.4	Assignment.	27
3.5.5	Close-Out.	27

3.6	TAXES	27
3.6.1	Payment by Contractor.....	27
3.6.2	Tax Exempt Projects.	28
3.6.3	Records of Taxes.	28
3.7	PERMITS, FEES AND LEGAL NOTICES	28
3.7.1	Permits.	28
3.7.2	Applicable Laws, Notices.	28
3.7.3	Bonds, Undertakings.	28
3.7.4	Notice of Violations.....	28
3.7.5	Governmental Authority Approvals.....	28
3.8	CONTRACTOR'S PERSONNEL	28
3.8.1	Key Persons.	28
3.8.2	Background Check.	28
3.8.3	Project Manager.	28
3.8.4	Transfer.	29
3.8.5	Removal.	29
3.8.6	Replacement.	29
3.8.7	Communications.....	29
3.8.8	Contact Information.	29
3.8.9	Signatures.	29
3.8.10	Exclusion from Site.....	29
3.9	CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE.....	29
3.9.1	Preparation.	29
3.9.2	Format.	29
3.9.3	Detail.	29
3.9.4	Updates.	30
3.9.5	Governing Schedule.....	30
3.9.6	Submittal Schedule.....	30
3.9.7	Schedule Responsibility.	30
3.9.8	Condition of Payment.	30
3.9.9	Scheduling by County.	30
3.10	DOCUMENTS AT SITE, REPORTING, MEETINGS.....	31
3.10.1	Documents at Site	31
3.10.2	Daily Reports.....	31
3.10.3	Progress Meetings.....	32
3.10.4	Notice Requirements.....	32
3.10.5	Availability for Review.	32
3.11	SUBMITTALS	32
3.11.1	Not Contract Documents.....	32
3.11.2	Coordination with Others.....	32
3.11.3	Submission by Contractor.	32
3.11.4	Review of Submittals.....	33
3.11.5	Contract Adjustments.....	33
3.11.6	Compliance with Contract.	33
3.12	USE OF SITE.....	34
3.12.1	Staging Area.....	34
3.12.2	Existing Improvements.	34

3.12.3	Operations at Site.....	34
3.12.4	Coordination.	34
3.12.5	Unauthorized Use.....	34
3.12.6	Site Security.	34
3.12.7	Persons on Site.	34
3.12.8	County Uses and Activities.....	34
3.12.9	Dust, Fumes, Noise.	34
3.12.10	Confinement of Operations.	35
3.12.11	Prohibited Substances.	35
3.12.12	Survey Markers.	35
3.12.13	Drainage, Erosion.....	35
3.12.14	Trenches.....	35
3.13	CUTTING AND PATCHING.....	35
3.14	UTILITIES AND SANITARY FACILITIES	35
3.14.1	Contractor Responsibility.	35
3.14.2	County Responsibility.....	36
3.14.3	Temporary Utilities.....	36
3.14.4	Sanitary Facilities.	36
3.15	CLEANING UP.....	36
3.15.1	Contractor Responsibility.	36
3.15.2	Cleanup by County.	36
3.16	ACCESS TO THE WORK.....	37
3.16.1	County.	37
3.16.2	Separate Contractors.	37
3.16.3	Delivery Routes.	37
3.17	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS	37
3.18	INDEMNIFICATION	37
3.18.1	Contractor's Indemnity Obligation.	37
3.18.2	Indemnification of Adjacent Property Owners.	38
3.18.3	Insurance and Employment Benefits.....	38
3.18.4	Subcontractor Indemnity Agreements.	38
3.18.5	Implied Indemnity Rights.	38
3.18.6	Obligation to Defend.....	38
3.19	LABOR, WAGES, PAYROLL RECORDS.....	38
3.19.1	Public Work.	38
3.19.2	Prevailing Wage Rates.	39
3.19.3	Unclassified Workers.....	39
3.19.4	Per Diem Wages.	39
3.19.5	Applicable Laws.....	39
3.19.6	Posting at Site.	39
3.19.7	Worker Hours.	39
3.19.8	Overtime.	39
3.19.9	Payroll Records.	39
3.19.10	Apprentices.....	40
3.19.11	Pre-Construction Meetings, Interviews.....	41
3.19.12	Penalties for Violations.	41
3.19.13	Subcontractor Provisions.	42

3.19.14	Condition of Payment	42
3.20	LABOR CODE §2810	42
3.20.1	Application	42
3.20.2	Declaration by Contractor	42
3.20.3	Continuing Duty	42
3.21	URBAN RUNOFF AND STORM WATER COMPLIANCE	43
3.21.1	Contractor's Responsibility	43
3.21.2	Inspections, Reports	43
3.21.3	Violations	43
3.21.4	Condition of Payment	43
3.21.5	Costs of Compliance	43
3.22	SOLID WASTE MANAGEMENT	43
3.23	CEQA COMPLIANCE	43
3.24	AQMD COMPLIANCE	44
ARTICLE 4 CONSTRUCTION ADMINISTRATION		44
4.1	ARCHITECT	4444
4.1.1	Scope of Authority	44
4.1.2	Limitations on Authority	44
4.1.3	Work Stoppage	44
4.1.4	Replacement	44
4.1.5	County Rights	44
4.2	ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT	44
4.2.1	Observations of the Work	44
4.2.2	Means, Methods	44
4.2.3	Communications by Contractor	45
4.2.4	Review of Applications for Payment	45
4.2.5	Rejection of the Work	45
4.2.6	Review of Submittals	45
4.2.7	Changes	45
4.3	CLAIMS	45
4.3.1	Submission of Claims	45
4.3.2	Arising of Claim	45
4.3.3	Content of Claims	46
4.3.4	Noncompliance	47
4.3.5	Submission of Claims	47
4.3.6	Response to Claims by Contractor	47
4.3.7	Meet and Confer	48
4.3.8	Subcontractor Claims	48
4.3.9	Claims Based on Differing Site Conditions	48
4.3.10	Continuous Work	49
4.4	NOTICE OF THIRD-PARTY CLAIMS	49
4.5	WAIVERS OF RIGHTS BY CONTRACTOR	49
4.6	GOOD FAITH DETERMINATIONS	50
4.7	ESCROW BID DOCUMENTS	50

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS	50
5.1 SUBSTITUTION.....	50
5.1.1 Substitutions Allowed.	50
5.1.2 Contractor's Own Expense.....	50
5.1.3 Substantiation of Compliance.....	50
5.1.4 Splitting Prohibited.....	50
5.2 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS	51
5.2.1 Written Agreements.....	51
5.2.2 Copies.	52
5.2.3 No Brokering.....	52
5.2.4 Third-Party Rights.....	52
5.2.5 All Subcontractor Tiers.	52
5.3 CONTINGENT ASSIGNMENT OF SUBCONTRACTS	52
5.3.1 Contingent Assignment.	52
5.3.2 Acceptance by County.	52
5.3.3 County Obligation.	52
5.4 COMMUNICATIONS BY COUNTY	52
5.5 DOCUMENT AVAILABILITY	53
5.6 NO LIABILITY OF COUNTY	53
ARTICLE 6 COUNTY'S OWN FORCES AND SEPARATE CONTRACTORS	53
6.1 COUNTY'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION WITH OWN FORCES AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS.....	53
6.1.1 Right of County.....	53
6.1.2 Separate Contractors.	53
6.1.3 Coordination.	53
6.1.4 Disputes.....	53
6.1.5 Remedy.	53
6.2 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY	54
6.2.1 Use of Site.....	54
6.2.2 Adjoining Work.	54
6.2.3 Damage.	54
6.2.4 Disputes.....	54
6.2.5 Settlement of Disputes.	54
6.3 ALLOCATION OF CLEANUP COSTS.....	54
ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK.....	54
7.1 CHANGES	54
7.1.1 General.....	54
7.1.2 Contract Adjustments.	54
7.1.3 Exclusive Rights.	54
7.1.4 Written Authorization.	55
7.1.5 Prompt Performance.	55
7.2 SIGNATURES AND AUTHORIZATIONS	55
7.2.1 Parties.	55

7.2.2	Form.	55
7.2.3	Authorization.....	55
7.3	CHANGE ORDERS	56
7.3.1	Purpose.	56
7.3.2	Content.	56
7.4	UNILATERAL CHANGE ORDERS.....	56
7.4.1	Purpose.	56
7.4.2	Good Faith Determination.	56
7.4.3	Claim by Contractor.....	56
7.4.4	WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.....	56
7.5	CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES.....	57
7.5.1	Purpose.	57
7.5.2	No Contract Adjustment.	57
7.5.3	Agreed Contract Adjustment.	57
7.5.4	Disputed Contract Adjustment.....	58
7.5.5	Other Notices.....	58
7.6	PROCEDURES.....	59
7.6.1	Notice of Change.....	59
7.6.2	Change Order Request.	59
7.6.3	Formal Notice of Essence.	60
7.7	PRICING	60
7.7.1	Basis of Calculation.....	60
7.7.2	Time and Materials Documentation.....	62
7.7.3	Allowable Costs.	62
7.7.4	Costs Not Allowed.	64
7.7.5	Allowable Markups.	64
7.7.6	Review of Markups.....	66
7.7.7	Exclusions and Limitations.	66
7.7.8	Net Calculations.	67
7.7.9	Unit Prices.	67
7.7.10	Discounts.....	67
7.7.11	Prompt Pricing.	67
7.7.12	Final Payment.....	67
7.7.13	Full Resolution.....	67
7.7.14	Reserved Rights.....	68
7.7.15	No "Total Cost" Calculations.	68
7.7.16	Multiple Changes.....	68
7.7.17	Continuous Performance.....	68
ARTICLE 8 CONTRACT TIME		68
8.1	COMMENCEMENT AND COMPLETION.....	68
8.1.1	Date of Commencement.	68
8.1.2	Substantial, Final Completion.....	68
8.1.3	Adjustments to Contract Time.	68
8.1.4	Early Completion.	68
8.2	DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME	69
8.2.1	Adjustments to Contract Time	69

8.2.2	Notice of Delay.	70
8.2.3	Request for Extension.	70
8.2.4	Response by County.	71
8.2.5	Formal Notice of Essence.	71
8.2.6	Compensation for Delay.	71
8.2.7	Acceleration of the Work.	71
8.2.8	Concurrent Delays.	72
8.2.9	Delay Claims.	73
8.2.10	Exercise of County Rights.	73
ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION		73
9.1	PAYMENT BY COUNTY.....	73
9.1.1	Time for Payment.	73
9.1.2	Not Acceptance.	73
9.1.3	Interest.....	73
9.1.4	Disputed Payments.	73
9.2	APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENTS	73
9.2.1	Submission by Contractor.	73
9.2.2	Period of Application.	73
9.2.3	Schedule of Values.....	74
9.2.4	Changes in Work.	74
9.2.5	Progress Payments.	74
9.2.6	Percentage Completion.	74
9.2.7	Projected Work.	74
9.2.8	Disagreements.	74
9.2.9	Substantial Completion.	74
9.2.10	Certification by Contractor.	74
9.2.11	Stored Materials.	74
9.2.12	Title.	74
9.3	SCHEDULE OF VALUES	75
9.3.1	Initial Submission.....	75
9.3.2	Balanced Allocation.	75
9.3.3	Line Estimates.	75
9.3.4	Updating.	75
9.3.5	Substantiation.....	75
9.3.6	Corrections.	75
9.3.7	Changes to Work.....	75
9.3.8	Applications for Payment.....	75
9.4	PROGRESS PAYMENT CONDITIONS	75
9.4.1	Progress Payment Amount.	75
9.4.2	Other Conditions and Documentation.	76
9.5	COUNTY APPROVAL/REJECTION OF APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT	76
9.5.1	Review by County.....	76
9.5.2	Disapproval by County.	77
9.5.3	Re-submittal by Contractor.....	77
9.5.4	Approval Nullification.	77
9.5.5	No Waiver by County.	77
9.5.6	No Representation.....	77

9.6	WITHHOLDING OF PAYMENT	77
9.6.1	Grounds for Withholding.....	77
9.6.2	Application of Withholding.....	78
9.6.3	Final Payment.....	79
9.6.4	Release of Withholding.....	79
9.6.5	Additional Rights.....	79
9.7	PAYMENTS BY CONTRACTOR	79
9.7.1	Payments to Subcontractors.....	79
9.7.2	Payments in Trust.....	79
9.7.3	Payment Information.....	79
9.7.4	Joint Payment.....	79
9.7.5	Direct Negotiation of Stop Payment Notices.....	79
9.7.6	Release of Stop Payment Notices.....	79
9.7.7	No County Obligation.....	80
9.8	FAILURE OF PAYMENT	80
9.9	SUBSTITUTION OF SECURITIES FOR RETENTION	80
9.9.1	Public Contract Code.....	80
9.9.2	Substitute Security.....	81
9.9.3	Deposit of Retentions.....	81
9.10	FINAL PAYMENT	81
9.10.1	Payment by County.....	81
9.10.2	Application for Final Payment.....	81
9.10.3	Review by County.....	81
9.10.4	Conditions to Final Payment.....	81
9.10.5	Disputed Amounts.....	82
9.10.6	No Waiver by County.....	82
9.10.7	WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.....	82
9.11	SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION	82
9.11.1	Contract Time.....	82
9.11.2	Request for Inspection.....	82
9.11.3	Substantial Completion Inspection.....	82
9.11.4	Substantial Completion Punch List.....	82
9.11.5	Re-Inspection.....	83
9.11.6	Notice of Substantial Completion.....	83
9.12	PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE	83
9.12.2	BENEFICIAL OCCUPANCY BY COUNTY SHALL NOT BE CONSTRUED AS ACCEPTANCE OF THAT PORTION OF THE WORK WHICH IS TO BE OCCUPIED.....	83
9.12.4	PRIOR TO THE COUNTY'S TAKING BENEFICIAL OCCUPANCY, CONTRACTOR SHALL SUBMIT TO COUNTY AN ITEMIZED LIST OF EACH PIECE OF EQUIPMENT LOCATED IN OR SERVING THE AREA TO BE OCCUPIED STATING THE DATE OPERATION OF SUCH PIECE OF EQUIPMENT COMMENCED, TOGETHER WITH OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS, MANUALS AND OTHER INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS. CONTRACTOR SHALL PROVIDE, IN THE AREAS BENEFICIALLY OCCUPIED, ON A CONTINUAL BASIS, UTILITY SERVICES, ELEVATOR SERVICE, AND HEATING AND COOLING SYSTEMS IN OPERABLE CONDITION COMMENCING AT THE TIME OF BENEFICIAL OCCUPANCY AND UNTIL FINAL COMPLETION OF THE ENTIRE WORK. COUNTY SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE, FROM AND AFTER TAKING OCCUPANCY, FOR UTILITY CONSUMPTION, REGULAR OPERATION AND	

REGULAR MAINTENANCE OF SUCH SYSTEMS OR EQUIPMENT.....	83
9.12.6 COUNTY SHALL PAY ALL UTILITY COSTS THAT ARISE OUT OF ITS BENEFICIAL OCCUPANCY.....	84
9.13 FINAL COMPLETION.....	84
9.13.1 Contract Time.....	84
9.13.2 Final Completion Punch List.....	84
9.13.3 Performance of Punch List.....	84
9.13.4 Request for Final Inspection.....	84
9.13.5 Notice of Final Completion.....	84
9.13.6 Acceptance by County.....	85
9.13.7 Notice of Completion.....	85
9.13.8 No Waiver by County.....	85
ARTICLE 10 INSPECTIONS, SAFETY AND HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES	85
10.1 INSPECTIONS.....	85
10.1.1 General.....	85
10.1.2 Coordination.....	85
10.1.3 Uncovering of Work.....	85
10.1.4 Off-Hours Inspections.....	85
10.1.5 Access to the Work.....	85
10.1.6 Right to Stop Work.....	86
10.1.7 No County Duty.....	86
10.1.8 Contractor Responsibility.....	86
10.1.9 Reimbursement to County.....	86
10.2 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND PROGRAMS	86
10.2.1 General Safety Obligation.....	86
10.2.2 Contractor's Safety Program.....	86
10.2.3 Safety Orders.....	87
10.2.4 Safety Representative.....	87
10.2.5 Protection.....	87
10.2.6 Safeguards, Disabled Access.....	87
10.2.7 Fire, Explosives, Hazardous Substances.....	87
10.2.8 First Aid.....	87
10.2.9 Unsafe Conditions.....	87
10.2.10 Responsibility for Loss.....	87
10.2.11 Loading, Storage.....	87
10.2.12 Emergency.....	87
10.2.13 No County Responsibility.....	88
10.2.14 Separate Contractors.....	88
10.3 HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES, MOLD	88
10.3.1 Hazardous Substances.....	88
10.3.2 Mold.....	90
10.3.3 Release of County.....	90
10.3.4 Communications with Governmental Authorities.....	90
10.3.5 Subcontractors.....	90
ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE.....	91
11.1 INSURANCE.....	91
11.1.1 Contractor's Insurance Requirements.....	91

11.1.2	Other Mandatory Insurance Requirements.	92
ARTICLE 12 BONDS		93
12.1	PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND	93
12.1.1	Performance and Payment Bonds.	93
12.1.2	Changes.	93
12.1.3	Replacement.	93
12.1.4	Duration.	93
12.1.5	Condition of Payment.	93
12.1.6	Surety Rating.	94
12.1.7	Premiums.	94
12.1.8	Obligee.	94
12.1.9	No Exoneration.	94
12.1.10	Communications.	94
12.1.11	No Limitation.	94
12.1.12	Subcontractor Bonds.	94
12.1.13	Claims.	94
ARTICLE 13 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF THE WORK		94
13.1	UNCOVERING OF THE WORK	94
13.2	CORRECTION OF THE WORK	94
13.3	GUARANTEE TO REPAIR PERIOD	94
13.3.1	Guarantee To Repair Period.	94
13.3.2	Repair by Contractor.	95
13.3.3	Notice by County.	95
13.3.4	Correction by County.	95
13.3.5	Sale.	96
13.3.6	No Limitation.	96
13.4	ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK	96
ARTICLE 14 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS		96
14.1	GOVERNING LAW	96
14.2	TIME OF ESSENCE	96
14.3	SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS	96
14.4	WRITTEN NOTICE	97
14.4.1	Notice to County.	97
14.4.2	Notice to Contractor.	97
14.4.3	Notice to Claimant.	97
14.5	RIGHTS AND REMEDIES	97
14.5.1	County Rights.	97
14.5.2	Writing Required.	97
14.5.3	Subsequent Breach.	97
14.6	NO NUISANCE	97
14.7	EXTENT OF AGREEMENT	98
14.8	NO THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS	98

14.9	SEVERABILITY	98
14.10	PROVISIONS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAWS	98
14.11	SURVIVAL	98
14.12	FEDERAL GRANTS	98
14.13	PROHIBITED INTERESTS.....	98
14.14	ASSIGNMENT OF ANTI-TRUST ACTIONS.....	99
14.15	NO WAIVER	99
14.16	CONSENT TO PHOTOGRAPHING	99
ARTICLE 15 DEFAULT, TERMINATION AND SUSPENSION		99
15.1	COUNTY REMEDIES FOR DEFAULT	99
15.1.1	Event of Default.	99
15.1.2	County's Remedies.	100
15.1.3	Contractor Tools, Equipment.....	101
15.1.4	Contractor Obligations.....	101
15.1.5	Accounting and Payment	101
15.1.6	Surety.	102
15.1.7	Conversion.	103
15.1.8	Substantial Performance Waived.	103
15.1.9	Cross Default.....	103
15.1.10	Rights Cumulative.	103
15.1.11	Materiality.	103
15.1.12	County Action.	103
15.2	SUSPENSION BY COUNTY FOR CONVENIENCE	103
15.2.1	Suspension Order.....	103
15.2.2	Resumption.	103
15.2.3	Limitation.	103
15.3	TERMINATION BY COUNTY FOR CONVENIENCE	104
15.3.1	Right to Terminate for Convenience.....	104
15.3.2	Contractor Obligations.....	104
15.3.3	Contractor Compensation.	104
15.3.4	Exclusive Compensation.	104
15.3.5	Subcontractors.	104
15.4	TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR.....	104
15.4.1	Contractor's Remedies.	104
15.4.2	Notice of Intention to Terminate.	104
15.4.3	Continuous Performance.....	104
15.5	WARRANTIES.....	105
ARTICLE 16 NON-DISCRIMINATION.....		105
16.1	NON-DISCRIMINATION IN SERVICES	105
16.2	NON-DISCRIMINATION IN EMPLOYMENT	105



GENERAL CONDITIONS OF
THE STANDARD FORM CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT
BETWEEN COUNTY AND CONTRACTOR

(LONG FORM)

ARTICLE 1
GENERAL PROVISIONS

1.1 DEFINITIONS

1.1.1 **Acceptance.** "Acceptance" means the point that the Project is formally accepted by the Board of Supervisors and a Notice of Completion is recorded by County.

1.1.2 **Act of God.** "Act of God" means earthquake, natural flood, tornado or other unusually severe natural or weather phenomenon occurring at the Site and causing Delay to performance of the Work at the Site; provided, however, that precipitation and winds shall not be an Act of God unless it exceeds in any given month the 10-year average of monthly levels as established by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration ("NOAA") according to NOAA's records of measurable precipitation and winds taken at NOAA's recording station located within the Riverside County basin area that is nearest to the Site.

1.1.3 **Addendum.** "Addendum" means written or graphic information (including, without limitation, Drawings or Specifications) issued prior to the Bid Closing Deadline, which modifies or interprets the Bidding Documents by additions, deletions, clarifications or corrections.

1.1.4 **Admitted Surety.** "Admitted Surety" means a surety insurer that is duly certified pursuant to California Insurance Code §995.120 to transact business as a surety in the State of California.

1.1.5 **Allowable Costs.** "Allowable Costs" means those costs listed in Paragraph 7.7.3, below, that are used in calculating Contract Adjustments to the Contract Price.

1.1.6 **Allowable Markups.** "Allowable Markups" means those percentage markups listed in Paragraph 7.7.5, below, used in calculating Contract Adjustments to the Contract Price.

1.1.7 **Alternate.** "Alternate" means a proposed alternative described in the Bidding Documents adding to, or deleting from, the Bidding Documents a particular material, system, product or method of construction.

1.1.8 **Applicable Laws.** "Applicable Laws" means all statutes, ordinances, rules, regulations, policies and guidelines enacted by Governmental Authorities (including, without limitation, Environmental Laws and Disability Laws), codes adopted or promulgated by Governmental Authorities (including, without limitation, building and health and safety codes), lawful orders of Governmental Authorities and common law, including, but not limited to, principles of equity applied by the courts of the State of California, which are in effect at the time the Work is performed.

1.1.9 **Application for Payment.** "Application for Payment" means Contractor's itemized application for Progress Payment or Final Payment prepared, submitted and substantiated in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.1.10 **Architect.** "Architect" means the design professional retained by County that is primarily responsible for the preparation of the Drawings and Specifications for the Project.

1.1.11 **Award.** "Award" means either (1) a minute order duly adopted by the Board of Supervisors approving County's entering into the Construction Contract with Contractor or (2) execution of the Construction Contract by the Clerk of the Board.

1.1.12 **Base Bid.** "Base Bid" means the sum of money stated in a Bid for which the Bidder proposes to perform the Work, exclusive of adjustments for Alternates.

1.1.13 **Bid.** "Bid" means the completed and signed Bid Form and other Bid Submittals submitted by a Bidder to County in response to the Notice Inviting Bids and in accordance with the Instructions to Bidders.

1.1.14 **Bid Amount.** "Bid Amount" means the dollar amount that is used as the basis for determining which Bidder has submitted the lowest Bid price for purposes of Award pursuant to the County's chosen method of Award set forth in Paragraph 4.5.3 of the Instructions to Bidders.

1.1.15 **Bid Bond.** "Bid Bond" means alternative form of Bid Security submitted by a Bidder that consists of a surety bond issued by a Surety.

1.1.16 **Bid Closing Deadline.** "Bid Closing Deadline" means the deadline (date and time) for receipt of Bids by County that is stated in the Bidding Documents, as adjusted by Addendum.

1.1.17 **Bid Form.** "Bid Form" means the form prescribed by the Bidding Documents to be completed and signed by a Bidder showing the dollar amount(s) of its Bid.

1.1.18 **Bid Security.** "Bid Security" means a deposit of cash, certified or cashier's check or bond submitted by a Bidder in accordance with the Bidding Documents guaranteeing that if Award is made to the Bidder, the Bidder will enter into the Construction Contract and furnish the Performance Bond and Payment Bond and other Post-Award Submittals.

1.1.19 **Bid Submittal.** "Bid Submittal" means a document that Bidder is required by the Bidding Documents to submit with or as part of its Bid.

1.1.20 **Bidder.** "Bidder" means a person or entity submitting a Bid for Award of the Construction Contract.

1.1.21 **Bidding Documents.** "Bidding Documents" means the following collection of documents prepared and issued by County relating to the Project:

- .1 Notice Inviting Bids;
- .2 Instructions to Bidders;
- .3 Bid Form;
- .4 Standard Form of Construction Contract Between County and Contractor (unsigned);
- .5 General Conditions to Standard Form of Construction Contract Between County and Contractor (Long Form);
- .6 Specifications;
- .7 Plans and Drawings;
- .8 Addenda;
- .9 Reference Documents;
- .10 Safety Program; and
- .11 those documents, or those portions or provisions of documents, that, although not listed in Subparagraph 1.1.22.2 through Subparagraph 1.1.22.10, above, are expressly cross-referenced therein or attached thereto, including, without limitation, all documents submitted by Contractor as part of its Bid or Post-Award Submittals.

1.1.22 **Board of Supervisors.** "Board of Supervisors" means the Board of Supervisors for the County of Riverside.

1.1.23 **Change.** "Change" means a modification, change, addition, substitution or deletion in the Work or in Contractor's means, methods, manner, time or sequence of performing the Work arising from any cause or circumstances, including, without limitation, either directly at the request of County or constructively by reason of other circumstances. Use of the term "Change," in any context, in the Contract Documents shall not be interpreted as implying that Contractor is entitled to a Contract Adjustment on any basis other than as permitted by the terms of the Contract Documents for Compensable Change, Deleted Work or Compensable Delay.

1.1.24 **Change Order.** "Change Order" means a written instrument, signed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions, setting forth the agreement of County and Contractor on the terms of a Contract Adjustment.

1.1.25 **Change Order Request.** "Change Order Request" means Contractor's written request for a Contract Adjustment pursuant to Paragraph 7.6.2, below.

1.1.26 **Claim.** "Claim" means a written demand or assertion by Contractor seeking, as a matter of right, an interpretation of contract, payment of money, recovery of damages or other relief. A Claim does not include the following: (1) tort claims for personal injury or death; (2) stop payment notice claims; (3) a determination of the right of County to specific performance or injunctive relief to compel performance; (4) a determination of the right of County to suspend, revoke or limit the Contractor's Prequalification status or rating or to debar Contractor from bidding or contracting with County; or (5) a determination of the right of County under Applicable Laws to terminate the Construction Contract and/or recovery of penalties imposed upon Contractor for violation of statutory obligations under Public Contract Code §4100 *et seq.*

1.1.27 **Close-Out Documents.** "Close-Out Documents" means all Record Documents, warranties, guarantees, technical information, operations manuals, replacement parts, excess and attic stock and other documents (including, without limitation, electronic versions and hard copies) and things required to be submitted by Contractor under the Contract Documents as a condition of Final Completion or Final Payment.

1.1.28 **Compensable Change.** "Compensable Change" means circumstances involving the performance of Extra Work:

- .1 that are the result of
 - (1) Differing Site Conditions,
 - (2) amendments or additions to Applicable Laws, which amendments or additions are enacted after the Bid Closing Deadline,
 - (3) a Change requested by County in accordance with the conditions of authorization applicable to Compensable Changes set forth in Article 7, below, or
 - (4) other circumstances involving a Change in the Work for which Contractor is given under the Contract Documents a specific and express right to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price;
- .2 that are not caused, in whole or in part, by an act or omission of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, constituting negligence, willful misconduct, or violation of an Applicable Law, or by a failure of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with the Contract Documents;
- .3 for which a Contract Adjustment is neither prohibited by nor waived under the terms of the Contract Documents; and
- .4 that if performed would require Contractor to incur additional and unforeseeable Allowable Costs that would not have been required to be incurred in the absence of such circumstances.

1.1.29 **Compensable Delay.** "Compensable Delay" means a Delay to the critical path of activities affecting Contractor's ability to achieve Substantial Completion of the entirety of the Work within the Contract Time:

- .1 that is the result of
 - (a) a Compensable Change,
 - (b) the active negligence of County, Architect, a County Consultant or a Separate Contractor,
 - (c) a breach by County of an obligation under the Contract Documents, or
 - (d) other circumstances involving Delay for which Contractor is given under the Contract Documents a specific and express right to a Contract Adjustment adjusting the Contract Price;
- .2 that is not caused, in whole or in part, by an act or omission of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, constituting negligence, willful misconduct, or a violation of an Applicable Law, or a failure by Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with the Contract Documents; and
- .3 for which a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time is neither prohibited by nor waived under the terms of the Contract Documents.

1.1.30 **Construction Change Directive.** "Construction Change Directive" means a written instrument signed in accordance with the requirements of Article 7, below, that: (1) directs the performance of a Change that does not involve a Contract Adjustment; (2) establishes a mutually agreed basis for compensation to Contractor for a Compensable Change under circumstances where performance of the Compensable Change needs to proceed in advance of the County performing a full evaluation of the Contractor's rights relative to a Contract Adjustment; or (3) directs performance of Work or a Change with respect to which there exists a dispute or question regarding the terms of a Contract Adjustment.

1.1.31 **Construction Contract.** "Construction Contract" means the written form of Standard Form of Construction Contract Between County and Contractor included in the Bidding Documents signed by County and Contractor.

1.1.32 **Construction Schedule.** "Construction Schedule" means the detailed, critical path schedule prepared by Contractor in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents showing Contractor's plan for performance of the Work within the Contract Time.

1.1.33 **Contract Adjustment.** "Contract Adjustment" means an adjustment, additive or deductive, to the Contract Price or Contract Time that is permitted by the Contract Documents due to circumstances constituting a Compensable Change, Compensable Delay or Deleted Work.

1.1.34 **Contract Documents.** "Contract Documents" means the following collection of documents:

- .1 Construction Contract;
- .2 Addenda;
- .3 General Conditions;
- .4 Specifications;
- .5 Plans and Drawings;
- .6 Modifications;

- .7 Reference Documents;
- .8 Change Orders;
- .9 Unilateral Change Orders;
- .10 Construction Change Directives;
- .11 Safety Program;
- .12 other documents that comprise exhibits, attachments or riders to the documents listed in preceding Subparagraph 1.1.35.1 through Subparagraph 1.1.35.11, above;
- .13 executed Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds;
- .14 executed Non-Collusion Declaration; and

.15 if the Bidding Documents limit bidding to Prequalified Bidders, those written representations, obligations or responsibilities made, acknowledged or assumed by the Bidder as part of the applicable Prequalification conducted by County, including, without limitation, any continuing obligations assumed by Contractor to disclose false or misleading information, report changes in ownership or management and comply with minimum safety requirements.

1.1.35 **Contract Price.** "Contract Price" means the dollar amount set forth in the Construction Contract as the total compensation payable by County to Contractor for complete performance by Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents of the Work and other obligations assumed by Contractor under the Contract Documents.

1.1.36 **Contract Time.** "Contract Time" means the total number of Days set forth in the Construction Contract within which Contractor is obligated to achieve Substantial Completion and/or Final Completion of the Work, as extended or shortened by Contract Adjustments.

1.1.37 **Contractor.** "Contractor" means the person or entity identified by County as the Bidder receiving Award of the Construction Contract.

1.1.38 **Contractor Amount.** "Contractor Amount" means the component amount calculated on behalf of Contractor pursuant to Paragraph 15.1.5, below, that is used to determine the total net amount payable to Contractor or County in the event of a partial or full termination or discontinuance of the Work.

1.1.39 **Contractor's Own Expense.** "Contractor's Own Expense" means that Contractor agrees to assume sole responsibility to pay and be responsible for any resulting or associated Loss and Delay, without any Contract Adjustment and without any other form of compensation or reimbursement, of any kind, by County.

1.1.40 **County.** "County" means the County of Riverside, a political subdivision of the State of California.

1.1.41 **County Amount.** "County Amount" means the component amount calculated on behalf of County pursuant to Paragraph 15.1.5, below, that is used to determine the total net amount payable to Contractor or County in the event of a partial or full termination or discontinuance of the Work.

1.1.42 **County Consultant.** "County Consultant" means a consultant, other than Architect, engaged by County (or engaged as a subconsultant to the Architect or a County Consultant) to provide professional advice to County with respect to the design, construction or management of the Project.

1.1.43 **County Review Date.** "County Review Date" means an end date set forth in the Construction Schedule or Submittal Schedule within which County, Architect or a County Consultant is to provide information, review documents or render decisions, approvals or disapprovals.

1.1.44 County Review Period. “County Review Period” means a period of time set forth in the Construction Schedule or Submittal Schedule within which County, Architect or a County Consultant is to provide information, review documents or render decisions, approvals or disapprovals.

1.1.45 County Risk Manager. “County Risk Manager” means the individual employee of the County acting as its risk manager.

1.1.46 County Website. “County Website” means the website maintained by County at <http://www.rivcoeda.org>

1.1.47 Date of Commencement. “Date of Commencement” means the starting date used for calculation of the Contract Time, and is the date, no earlier than the first working day following issuance of the Notice to Proceed, that is fixed in the Notice to Proceed issued by the County or, if no Notice to Proceed is issued, the Day that the Contractor actually commences Work at the Site in accordance with Paragraph 8.1.1, below.

1.1.48 Day. “Day”, whether capitalized or not, and unless otherwise specifically provided, means calendar day, including weekends and Holidays.

1.1.49 Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds. “Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds” means the declaration, in the form included in the Bidding Documents, required to be submitted by Contractor under circumstances where Contractor has not executed a collective bargaining agreement covering the workers who will be employed to perform the Work.

1.1.50 Defective Work. “Defective Work” means materials, equipment, labor, workmanship, construction services or other construction work comprising the Work by Contractor or a Subcontractor that (1) is faulty, omitted, incomplete, or deficient, or (2) does not conform to Applicable Laws, the Contract Documents, or the requirements of any inspection, reference standard, test, code or approval specified in the Contract Documents.

1.1.51 Delay. “Delay” means any circumstances involving delay, disruption, hindrance or interference.

1.1.52 Deleted Work. “Deleted Work” means Work that is eliminated or its scope or cost reduced pursuant to a Change Order or Unilateral Change Order.

1.1.53 Department of Industrial Relations. “Department of Industrial Relations” means The Department of Industrial Relations of the State of California.

1.1.54 Design Discrepancy. “Design Discrepancy” means an error, omission, conflict, ambiguity, lack of coordination or noncompliance with Applicable Laws contained in the Bidding Documents, Contract Documents, Reference Documents or other information made available by County to Contractor prior to or after the Bid Closing Deadline.

1.1.55 Design Documents. “Design Documents” means all originals, copies and drafts of plans, drawings, tracings, specifications, programs, reports, calculations, presentation materials, models, building information models and other writings or materials containing designs, specifications or engineering information related to the Work or Project prepared by Architect, County Consultants, Contractor, Separate Contractors or Subcontractors including, without limitation, computer aided design materials, electronic data files and paper copies. The term “Design Documents” includes both the written documents and all building and other designs depicted therein.

1.1.56 Design Intent. “Design Intent” means the general intended design objectives of the Design Documents prepared by Architect and County Consultants, as described in Paragraph 1.2.1, below.

1.1.57 Designation of Subcontractors. “Designation of Subcontractors” means the list of proposed Subcontractors prepared by the Bidder pursuant to California Public Contract Code §§4100 et seq.

1.1.58 Differing Site Condition. “Differing Site Condition” means an unforeseen condition that constitutes a basis for Contract Adjustment pursuant to Paragraph 4.3.8, below.

1.1.59 Director of Office of Economic Development. "Director of Office of Economic Development" means the Director for Office of Economic Development, or his/her designee.

1.1.60 Disability Laws. "Disability Laws" means applicable federal, state, local or municipal laws, rules, orders, regulations, statutes, ordinances, codes, decrees, or requirements of any Government Authority, which regulate, relate to or impose liability or standards of conduct with respect to, or accessibility for, persons with disabilities, including, without limitation, the Americans with Disabilities Act (42 USCA §§ 12101 et seq.) and the Fair Housing Amendments Act of 1988 (42 USCA §§ 3604 et seq.).

1.1.61 Discovery Date. "Discovery Date", generally used in reference to Contractor's obligation to give written notice of certain facts, conditions or circumstances, means the earlier of the dates that Contractor or any Subcontractor either: (1) discovered such facts, conditions or circumstances; or (2) should have discovered such facts, conditions or circumstances in the exercise of the level of care required by the terms of the Standard of Performance.

1.1.62 Drawings. "Drawings" means graphic and pictorial documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Project, and generally includes plans, elevations, subparagraphs, details, schedules and diagrams. The term "Drawings" is used interchangeably with "Plans".

1.1.63 Environmental Laws. "Environmental Laws" means all applicable federal, state, local or municipal laws, rules, orders, regulations, statutes, ordinances, codes, decrees and permits or other requirements of any Governmental Authority, which regulate, relate to, or impose liability or standards of conduct concerning any Hazardous Substance (including, without limitation, the use, handling, transportation, production, disposal, discharge or storage thereof), occupational or environmental conditions on, under, or about the Site or Existing Improvements (including, without limitation, soil, groundwater, and indoor and ambient air conditions), environmental protection (natural or manmade resources), or occupational health or industrial hygiene (but only to the extent related to Hazardous Substances on, under, or about the Site or Existing Improvements), as now or may at any later time be in effect, including without limitation, the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 9601 et seq.]; the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 6901 et seq.]; the Clean Water Act (also known as the Federal Water Pollution Control Act) [33 U.S.C.A. §§ 1251 et seq.]; the Toxic Substances Control Act [15 U.S.C.A. §§ 2601 et seq.]; the Hazardous Substances Transportation Act [49 U.S.C.A. §§ 1801 et seq.]; the Insecticide, Fungicide, Rodenticide Act [7 U.S.C.A. §§ 136 et seq.]; the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 6901 et seq.]; the Clean Air Act [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 7401 et seq.]; the Safe Drinking Water Act [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 300f et seq.]; the Solid Waste Disposal Act [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 6901 et seq.]; the Surface Mining Control and Reclamation Act [30 U.S.C.A. §§ 1201 et seq.]; the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 11001 et seq.]; the Occupational Safety and Health Act [29 U.S.C.A. §§ 655 and 657]; the Residential Lead-Based Paint Exposure Act (Title X of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992) [15 U.S.C.A. §§ 2681 et seq.]; the Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention Act [42 U.S.C.A. §§ 4821 et seq.]; the Federal Endangered Species Act, the California Endangered Species Act, the Migratory Bird Treaty Act, the National Environmental Policy Act, the California Environmental Quality Act, Porter Cologne Water Quality Act (California Water Code §§ 13000 et seq), and all similar federal, state or local laws, rules, orders, regulations, statutes, ordinances, codes, decrees, or requirements.

1.1.64 Escrow Agent. "Escrow Agent" means an entity serving as escrow agent pursuant to California Public Contract Code §22300 in connection with the deposit of securities or retention.

1.1.65 Escrow Bid Documents. "Escrow Bid Documents" means all written documentation and electronic files reflecting the basis for and calculation of a Bid, including, without limitation, estimates, quantity take-offs, price quotations, product data, pricing data, memoranda, narratives, add/deduct sheets and reports (including, without limitation, reports on conditions at, under, or in the vicinity of the Site). The term "Escrow Bid Documents" does not include copies of Bidding Documents if they are not needed to comply with the requirements of the Bidding Documents applicable to submission of Escrow Bid Documents.

1.1.66 Event of Contractor Default. "Event of Contractor Default" means any of the events constituting default by Contractor as set forth in Paragraph 15.1.1, below.

1.1.67 Evidence of Insurance. "Evidence of Insurance" means the statement, completed by Bidder in the form included in the Bidding Documents, evidencing the Bidder's compliance with the insurance requirements of the Bidding Documents.

1.1.68 Excusable Delay. "Excusable Delay" means a Delay, other than a Compensable Delay, to Contractor's ability to achieve Substantial Completion or Final Completion of the Work within the Contract Time that is: (1) not caused, in whole or in part, by an act or omission of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, constituting negligence, willful misconduct, a violation of an Applicable Law or a failure by Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with the Contract Documents; (2) unforeseeable, unavoidable and beyond the control of Contractor and the Subcontractors, of every Tier; and (3) the result of a Force Majeure Event. Without limitation to the foregoing, neither the bankruptcy, insolvency nor financial inability of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, nor any failure by a Subcontractor, of any Tier, to perform any obligation imposed by contract or Applicable Laws shall constitute a ground for Excusable Delay.

1.1.69 Existing Improvements. "Existing Improvements" means all improvements located on the Site as of the Bid Closing Deadline, whether above or below the surface of the ground, including, but not limited to, existing buildings, utilities, infrastructure improvements and other facilities.

1.1.70 Extra Work. "Extra Work" means labor, materials, equipment, services or other work, not reasonably inferable by Contractor or its Subcontractors from the design and other information set forth in the Bidding Documents, the performance of which requires the expenditure by Contractor of additional and unforeseen Allowable Costs. References to Extra Work shall not be interpreted to mean or imply that Contractor is entitled to a Contract Adjustment unless such Extra Work constitutes a Compensable Change.

1.1.71 Final Completion, Finally Complete. "Final Completion" and "Finally Complete" mean the point at which the following conditions have occurred with respect to the entire Work:

- .1** the Work is fully completed, including all minor corrective, or "punch list," items;
- .2** all permits, approvals and certificates by Governmental Authorities, such as, but not necessarily limited to, a permanent or temporary certificate of occupancy required to occupy and use the Work have been issued free of any conditions that are the result of an act or omission of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, constituting negligence, willful misconduct, a violation of an Applicable Law or a failure by Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with the Contract Documents;
- .3** the Work and the related portions of the Site have been thoroughly cleared of all construction debris and cleaned in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, including, but not necessarily limited to where applicable, the following: removal of temporary protections; removal of marks, stains, fingerprints and other soil and dirt from painted, decorated and natural-finished woodwork and other Work; removal of spots, plaster, soil and paint from ceramic tile, marble and other finished materials; all surfaces, fixtures, cabinet work and equipment are wiped and washed clean and in an undamaged, new condition; all aluminum and other metal surfaces are cleaned in accordance with recommendations of the manufacturer; and all stone, tile and resilient floors are cleaned thoroughly in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and buff dried by machine to bring the surfaces to sheen;
- .4** all conditions set forth in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work have been, and continue to be, fully satisfied;
- .5** all conditions pertaining to the Work and required for the release of County's obligations (including, but not limited to, release of County's bond obligations) to Governmental Authorities (including, but not limited to, matters involving grading, flood control, public works, transportation and traffic) have been satisfied; and
- .6** Contractor has delivered to County all Close-Out Documents.

1.1.72 Final Completion Punch List. "Final Completion Punch List" means the list of minor items of Work to be completed or corrected by Contractor for Final Completion.

1.1.73 Final Payment. "Final Payment" means payment by County to Contractor of the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Price due to Contractor following Final Completion.

1.1.74 FM. "FM" means Facilities Management for the County of Riverside. FM will provide plan check and inspection services for the project.

1.1.75 Force Majeure Event. "Force Majeure Event" means, and is restricted to, any the following: (1) Acts of God occurring at the Site; (2) terrorism or other acts of a public enemy; (3) orders of Governmental Authorities (including, without limitation, unreasonable and unforeseeable Delay in the issuance of permits or approvals by Governmental Authorities that are required for the Work); (4) epidemics or quarantine restrictions; (5) strikes and other organized labor action occurring at the Site and the effects thereof on the Work to the extent such strikes and other organized labor action are beyond the control of Contractor and its Subcontractors, of every Tier, and to the extent the effects thereof cannot be avoided by use of replacement workers or implementation of a dual gate system of entry to the Site; or (6) unusual shortages in materials that are supported by documented proof that (a) Contractor made every effort to obtain such materials from all available sources, (b) such shortage is due to the fact that such materials are not physically available from single or multiple sources or could have been obtained only at exorbitant prices entirely inconsistent with current rates taking into account the quantities involved and the usual industry practices in obtaining such quantities, and (c) such shortages and the difficulties in obtaining alternate sources of materials could not have been known or anticipated as of the Bid Closing Deadline.

1.1.76 Fragnet. "Fragnet" means a contemporaneous, fragmentary scheduling network, which graphically identifies the sequencing of all critical and non-critical new activities and/or activity revisions affected by a Compensable Delay or Excusable Delay with logic ties to all affected existing activities noted on the Construction Schedule, that isolates and quantifies a time impact of a specific issue, determines and demonstrates any such specific Delay in relation to past and/or other current Delays and provides a method for incorporating all Contract Adjustments to the Contract Time into an update of the approved Construction Schedule.

1.1.77 General Conditions. "General Conditions" means the herein set forth general terms and conditions governing performance of the Work.

1.1.78 General Requirements. "General Requirements" means the portion of the Specifications so titled setting forth additional requirements for administration of the Work.

1.1.79 Good Faith Determination. "Good Faith Determination" means a determination made by the Director of the Office of Economic Development or other authorized representative of County, which he/she believes in good faith to be a proper exercise of County's rights and to have a reasonable basis in fact, whether or not such determination is in fact proper, reasonable or correct or adjudged to be so.

1.1.80 Governmental Authority. "Governmental Authority" means the United States, the State of California, the County of Riverside (acting in its regulatory, rather than proprietary, capacity), the City in which the Project is located, any other local, regional, state or federal political subdivision, authority, agency, department, commission, board, bureau, court, judicial or quasi-judicial body, and any legislative or quasi-legislative body, or instrumentality of any of them, which exercises jurisdiction over the Project, Work, Site, Contractor or County, including, without limitation, any Governmental Authority having jurisdiction to review and approve or reject the Contract Documents or the Work based on compliance or non-compliance with Applicable Laws.

1.1.81 Governmental Authority Review Period. "Governmental Authority Review Period" means a period of time set forth in the Construction Schedule or Submittal Schedule for Governmental Authority review, and/or approval, of the Work.

1.1.82 Guarantee To Repair Period. "Guarantee To Repair Period" means the period of time set forth in Section 13.3, below, for repair or replacement of Defective Work.

1.1.83 Hazardous Substance. "Hazardous Substance" means either of the following: (1) any chemical, material or other substance defined as or included within the definition of "hazardous substances," "hazardous wastes," "extremely hazardous substances," "toxic substances," "toxic material," "restricted hazardous waste," "special waste," "contamination" or words of similar import under any Environmental Law, including, without limitation, the following: petroleum (including crude oil or any fraction thereof), asbestos, asbestos-containing materials, polychlorinated biphenyls ("PCBs") and PCB-containing materials, whether or not occurring naturally; or (2) any substance that because of its quantity, concentration or physical or chemical characteristics poses a significant present or potential hazard to human health and safety or to the environment, and which has been determined by any Governmental Authority to be a hazardous waste or hazardous substance.

1.1.84 **Holiday.** “Holiday” means a Day recognized by County as being a legal holiday for its staff and employees.

1.1.85 **Indemnitees.** “Indemnitees” means those persons or entities listed in Paragraph 3.18.1, below, as the “Indemnitees”.

1.1.86 **Inspector of Record.** “Inspector of Record” means a person designated by the County to perform inspections on behalf of the County, who may be an employee or an independent consultant to County.

1.1.87 **Installation Subcontractor.** “Installation Subcontractor” means a Subcontractor who performs a portion of the Work that includes providing substantial, rather than minor and incidental, services for the installation of temporary or permanent materials, equipment or facilities at the Site.

1.1.88 **Instructions to Bidders.** “Instructions to Bidders” means the portion of the Bidding Documents setting forth the requirements to be followed by Bidders in preparing and submitting Bids.

1.1.89 **Intellectual Property Rights.** “Intellectual Property Rights” means all intellectual property rights, including, without limitation, patent, trademark, trade dress, copyright, industrial design rights, priority rights and trade secrets.

1.1.90 **Key Personnel, Key Persons.** “Key Personnel” and “Key Persons” mean those individuals employed by Contractor as described in Paragraph 3.8.1, below, and any replacements thereto approved by County, whose personal performance is deemed of the essence to the Construction Contract.

1.1.91 **Loss, Losses.** “Loss” and “Losses” mean any and all economic and non-economic losses, costs, liabilities, claims, damages, cost escalations, actions, judgments, settlements, expenses, fines, penalties and punitive damages including, without limitation, actual attorney’s fees, expert and non-expert witness fees, arbitrator and arbitration fees, court costs (statutory and non-statutory), and mediation and mediator fees.

1.1.92 **Modification.** “Modification” means a document, other than a Change Order or Construction Change Directive, approved and signed by County and Contractor after execution of the Construction Contract, agreeing to alter, amend or modify the Contract Documents.

1.1.93 **Mold.** “Mold” means mold, mildew, spores or other microorganisms of any type, nature or description, or any by-product thereof, the presence of which poses an actual or potential threat to human health, including, without limitation, any species of organisms of the kingdoms of fungi or mycota, including yeasts, smuts, rusts, mildews, mold and mushrooms, or any microbial contamination, either airborne or surface, which arises out of or is related to the presence of fungi or spores (including, without limitation, aspergillus, cladosporium, penicillium and stachybotrys chartarum).

1.1.94 **Non-Collusion Declaration.** “Non-Collusion Declaration” means the form, so titled, required by California Public Contract Code §7106 and the Bidding Documents to be submitted by Bidder with its Bid.

1.1.95 **Notice Inviting Bids.** “Notice Inviting Bids” means the notice issued by or on behalf of County inviting submission of Bids for the Project.

1.1.96 **Notice Inviting Prequalification Statements.** “Notice Inviting Prequalification Statements” means the formal notice issued by County inviting contractors to participate in County’s process for Prequalification of Bidders.

1.1.97 **Notice of Change.** “Notice of Change” means a formal written notice required to be submitted by Contractor pursuant to Paragraph 7.6.1, below, notifying County of circumstances that Contractor believes may give rise to a Contract Adjustment.

1.1.98 **Notice of Completion.** “Notice of Completion” means a “notice of completion” as defined in California Civil Code §9204.

1.1.99 Notice of Delay. "Notice of Delay" means a formal written notice prepared and submitted by Contractor pursuant to Paragraph 8.2.2, below, notifying County of circumstances that Contractor believes may give rise to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time for Excusable Delay or Compensable Delay or a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price for Compensable Delay.

1.1.100 Notice of Final Completion. "Notice of Final Completion" means the written notice by County confirming the date of actual Final Completion.

1.1.101 Notice of Intent to Award. "Notice of Intent to Award" means the written notice by or on behalf of County stating County's intent to Award the Construction Contract.

1.1.102 Notice of Substantial Completion. "Notice of Substantial Completion" means the written notice by County confirming the date of actual Substantial Completion.

1.1.103 Notice to Proceed. "Notice to Proceed" means the written notice issued by County to Contractor to begin the Work.

1.1.104 Payment Bond, Performance Bond. "Payment Bond" and "Performance Bond" mean the surety bonds required to be provided by Contractor pursuant to Article 12, below.

1.1.105 Plans. "Plans" means the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents prepared by Architect or its Subconsultants showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, including, without limitation, plans, elevations, details, schedules and diagrams. The term "Plans" is used interchangeably with "Drawings".

1.1.106 Post-Award Submittals. "Post-Award Submittals" means the documents described in the Bidding Documents that the apparent successful Bidder is required to submit after opening of Bids as a condition of Award.

1.1.107 Pre-Bid Conference. "Pre-Bid Conference" means the conference, specified in the Notice Inviting Bids as either mandatory or optional, held prior to the Bid Closing Deadline for the purpose of, without limitation, introducing the Bidders to the Project, and which conference may, or may not, include a review of the Site.

1.1.108 Prequalification. "Prequalification" means a process for Prequalification of contractors for bidding that is conducted by County pursuant to California Public Contract Code §20101 or as otherwise permitted by Applicable Laws.

1.1.109 Prequalification Documents. "Prequalification Documents" means the collection of documents issued to and submitted by individuals or entities pursuant to a Prequalification conducted by County.

1.1.110 Prequalified Bidder. "Prequalified Bidder" means a contractor that is prequalified as part of a Prequalification conducted by County pursuant to Public Contract Code §20101.

1.1.111 Product Data. "Product Data" means illustrations, standard schedules, charts, instructional brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by Contractor to illustrate a material, product or system for the Work.

1.1.112 Progress Payment. "Progress Payment" means a monthly payment of a portion of the Contract Price prior to Final Completion based on Contractor's progressed performance of the Work.

1.1.113 Project. "Project" means the improvements comprising, or necessary or appurtenant to the use of, the work of improvements described generally in the Bidding Documents, of which the Work may be the entirety of such improvements or only a part.

1.1.114 Project Documents. "Project Documents" means all writings (hard copy and electronic) in the possession of Contractor at the Site or elsewhere that relate in any way to the Project or Work.

1.1.115 Project Team. "Project Team" means County, Architect, County Consultants, Contractor, the Subcontractors, the Separate Contractors, Inspectors of Record and other firms or individuals retained by County, or

retained by others with County's approval, participating in the planning, programming, design, construction or inspection of the Work.

1.1.116 Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate. "Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate" means a general estimate prepared by Contractor, or jointly by Contractor and County, without the benefit of complete or definitive pricing by Subcontractors, of the projected additional cost and time associated with Contractor's performance of a particular item or items of Extra Work or Deleted Work described in a Construction Change Directive. Unless otherwise agreed to in writing between County and Contractor, a Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate does not constitute either an authorization or agreement by County to any Contract Adjustment or a guarantee or promise by Contractor with respect to the amount of any Contract Adjustment that may be associated with a Compensable Change or Deleted Work.

1.1.117 Record Documents. "Record Documents" means the collection of documents assembled and prepared by Contractor (including, without limitation, the Record Drawings and Specifications) showing the condition of the Work as actually built.

1.1.118 Record Drawings, Record Specifications. "Record Drawings" and "Record Specifications" mean the Drawings and Specifications marked by Contractor to show the condition, location and placement of the Work as actually built, including, without limitation, the locations of mechanical, electrical, plumbing or similar portions of the Work that are depicted diagrammatically in the Drawings.

1.1.119 Reference Documents. "Reference Documents" means reports, studies, surveys and other information provided by County for Contractor's review and consideration in preparing its Bid, including, without limitation, information describing the Site (including surface or subsurface conditions), Existing Improvements or Hazardous Substances at the Site.

1.1.120 Request for Extension. "Request for Extension" means a formal written request submitted by Contractor pursuant to Paragraph 8.2.3, below, setting forth the justification and support for Contractor's request for a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time.

1.1.121 Request for Information. "Request for Information" means a written request by Contractor for clarification of what it perceives to be a discrepancy in the Contract Documents (including, without limitation, information in the Contract Documents constituting a Design Discrepancy or a variance between the information in the Bidding Documents or Contract Documents and conditions at the Site or in Existing Improvements).

1.1.122 Safety Program. "Safety Program" means the formal, written program prepared by Contractor setting forth detailed procedures and precautionary measures for protecting persons and property from injury or damage.

1.1.123 Samples. "Samples" means physical examples that, when approved by County and Architect, illustrate materials, equipment or workmanship by which the Work is to be evaluated and judged as part of the Submittal process.

1.1.124 Schedule of Values. "Schedule of Values" means a detailed, itemized breakdown of the Contract Price, which provides for an allocation of the dollar values to each of the various parts of the Work.

1.1.125 Self-Performed Work. "Self-Performed Work" means Work related to a Compensable Change or Deleted Work that is performed or to be performed by Contractor's own laborers who are employed by Contractor, rather than by the employees of a Subcontractor, using materials and equipment purchased by Contractor directly from a supplier or manufacturer.

1.1.126 Separate Contractor. "Separate Contractor" means a contractor, subcontractor, supplier or vendor under contract directly to County to provide services, materials, labor, equipment or other work to the Project.

1.1.127 Shop Drawing. "Shop Drawing" means a drawing, diagram, schedule and other data specially prepared for the Work by Contractor or a Subcontractor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

1.1.128 **Site.** "Site" means: (1) the parcel of land owned by County on which the Project is to be constructed and such additional parcels as may be purchased by County for such construction; (2) all areas adjacent to such parcels that may be used by Contractor or the Subcontractors for staging, storage, parking or temporary offices; and (3) all land areas, both private and public, adjacent to such parcels on which Work is required to be performed under the Contract Documents, Applicable Laws or permits relating to the Project.

1.1.129 **Specifications.** "Specifications" means the portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, standards and workmanship for the Work and performance of related services.

1.1.130 **Standard of Performance.** "Standard of Performance" means the general standard governing Contractor's performance of its obligations under the Construction Contract and General Conditions as set forth in Section 2.2 of the Construction Contract.

1.1.131 **State Water Resources Control Board.** "State Water Resources Control Board" means the State Water Resources Control Board of the State of California.

1.1.132 **Storm Water Permit.** "Storm Water Permit" means any applicable storm water, urban runoff or statewide general NPDES permit issued by the State of California or the United States pursuant to the provisions of the Clean Water Act (Title 33 U.S.C. §§1251 et seq.) and/or Porter Cologne Water Quality Control Act (California Water Code §§13000 et seq.) and including any related regulations issued by the State of California or the United States.

1.1.133 **Sub-Bidder.** "Sub-Bidder" means a person or entity that submits a bid to a Bidder for some portion of the Work that is to be performed by that person or entity acting as a first-Tier Subcontractor.

1.1.134 **Subcontractor.** "Subcontractor" means a person or entity that has a contract to perform a portion of the Work, including without limitation, subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, suppliers, equipment operators, manufacturers and vendors, of any and every Tier.

1.1.135 **Submittal.** "Submittal" means a Shop Drawing, Product Data, Sample, detailed design, exemplar, fabrication and installation drawing, list, graph, operating instruction or other document required to be submitted by Contractor under the Contract Documents.

1.1.136 **Submittal Schedule.** "Submittal Schedule" means the schedule prepared by Contractor showing the timing for submission and review of Submittals during construction.

1.1.137 **Substantial Completion, Substantially Complete.** "Substantial Completion" and "Substantially Complete" mean the point at which the following conditions have occurred with respect to the entire Work or a portion of the Work designated by County in writing to be Substantially Completed prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work:

.1 such Work is sufficiently and entirely complete in accordance with Contract Documents so that such Work can be fully enjoyed and beneficially occupied and utilized by County for its intended purpose (except for minor items which do not impair County's ability to so occupy and use such Work);

.2 all permits, approvals and certificates by Governmental Authorities, such as, but not necessarily limited to, a permanent or temporary certificate of occupancy required to occupy and use such Work have been issued free of any conditions that are the result of an act or omission of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, constituting negligence, willful misconduct, a violation of an Applicable Law or a failure by Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with the Contract Documents; and

.3 all building systems included in such Work are operational as specified, all designated or required inspections and certifications by Governmental Authorities have been made and posted and instruction of County's personnel in the operation of the systems has been completed.

1.1.138 **Substantial Completion Punch List.** "Substantial Completion Punch List" means the list of items of Work to be completed or corrected by Contractor for Substantial Completion.

1.1.139 **Substitution.** "Substitution" means a material, product or item of material or equipment proposed by the Bidder or Contractor in place of that specified in the Bidding Documents or Contract Documents.

1.1.140 **Substitution Request Form.** "Substitution Request Form" means the form, so titled, that is included in the Bidding Documents for use by the Bidders when requesting a Substitution.

1.1.141 **Supplementary Conditions.** "Supplementary Conditions" means those portions of the Specifications that supplement, by addition, modification or deletion, a specific portion of the General Conditions.

1.1.142 **Surety.** "Surety" means Contractor's surety(ties) issuing the Bid Bond, Performance Bond or Payment Bond.

1.1.143 **Tier.** "Tier" means the contractual level of a Subcontractor with respect to Contractor. For example, a "first-tier" Subcontractor is under contract with Contractor. A sub-subcontractor under contract with a first-tier Subcontractor is in the "second tier," and so on. Use of the phrase "of every Tier", or similar phraseology, in the Contract Documents shall not be interpreted as implying that other provisions of the Contract Documents, where such phrase is not used, are intended to be limited in application to only the first Tier or to only certain other Tiers of Subcontractors.

1.1.144 **Time Impact Analysis.** "Time Impact Analysis" means a written report evaluating the impact of an Excusable or Compensable Delay, which shall include, at a minimum, the following: (1) a narrative description of the Delay and its impact on the critical path to achievement of a Substantial Completion or Final Completion of the Work or a portion of the Work designated by County within the Contract Time; (2) a Fragnet; (3) the number of Days of extension sought by Contractor as a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time; (4) a computation of the Days of Compensable Delay multiplied times the liquidated damages payable to Contractor pursuant to Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract, if any, sought by Contractor; (5) a statement that Contractor has complied with the requirements of the General Conditions for written notice of Delays, along with the dates and copies of such notices; (6) the measures taken by Contractor and Subcontractors to prevent or minimize the Delay; and (7) Contractor's recommendations for reordering or re-sequencing the Work to avoid or minimize further Delay.

1.1.145 **Unexcused Delay.** "Unexcused Delay" means any Delay that is not a Compensable Delay or Excusable Delay or that constitutes a Compensable Delay or Excusable Delay for which Contractor is not entitled to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time, including, without limitation, the following: (1) Delay caused by an act or omission of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, constituting negligence, willful misconduct, a violation of an Applicable Law or a failure by Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with the Contract Documents; (2) Delay for which Contractor has failed to provide a timely and complete Notice of Delay or Request for Extension; or (3) Delay associated with any circumstances where the costs or risk associated with such circumstances are designated in the Contract Documents as being at Contractor's risk or Contractor's Own Expense.

1.1.146 **Unilateral Change Order.** "Unilateral Change Order" means a writing signed by County in accordance with Article 7, below, in which County unilaterally sets forth its Good Faith Determination of the undisputed portion of an otherwise disputed Contract Adjustment.

1.1.147 **Work.** "Work" means all labor, materials, equipment, services, permits, licenses, taxes and other things necessary for Contractor to perform its obligations under the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, any Changes requested by County, in accordance with the Contract Documents and all Applicable Laws. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

1.1.148 **Worker's Compensation Certificate.** "Worker's Compensation Certificate" means the statement, completed by Bidder in the form included in the Instruction to Bidders, evidencing the Bidder's compliance with the worker's compensation insurance requirements of the Bidding Documents and Applicable Laws.

1.2 CORRELATION, INTERPRETATION AND INTENT OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

1.2.1 **Design Intent.** The intent of the Contract Documents is for Contractor to provide all items necessary to produce a work of improvement that is complete as a whole and that is, in all of its parts, suitable for use and occupancy for its intended purpose, including, without limitation, all equipment, casework, mechanical, electrical and similar devices of whatever nature, completely installed, hooked-up and made fully operational and functional.

1.2.2 Complementary. Contract Documents are complementary, and what is called for by one shall be as binding as if called for by all. Any Work called for on the Drawings and not mentioned in the Specifications, or vice versa, shall be performed as though fully set forth in both.

1.2.3 Technical Words. Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, technical words and abbreviations contained in the Contract Documents are used in accordance with commonly understood construction industry meanings and non-technical words and abbreviations are used in accordance with their commonly understood meanings.

1.2.4 Trade Names. It is not the intention of the Contract Documents to go into detailed descriptions of any materials or methods commonly known to the trade under a "trade name" or "trade term." The mere mention or notation of such "trade name" or "trade term" shall be considered a sufficient notice to the Contractor that it will be required to complete the Work so named with all its appurtenances according to first-class practices of the trade.

1.2.5 Incidental Items. The naming of any material or equipment shall mean furnishing and installing of same, including all incidental and accessory items thereto and labor therefor, in accordance with first-class practices of the trade involved, unless specifically noted otherwise.

1.2.6 Drawing Dimensions. Figured, derived or numerical dimensions on scale Drawings shall govern over Drawings without figured dimensions. The Drawings shall not be scaled to determine dimensions, and (except in the case of diagrammatic Drawings) dimensions shall be calculated from figures shown on the Drawings. Obvious discrepancies between scale and figured dimensions, not marked "not to scale," must be brought to the Architect's attention before proceeding with the Work affected by the discrepancy. Contractor shall carefully check and compare all portions of the Drawings and Specifications so as to correctly interpolate the intended dimensions for any portion of the Work that is not explicitly dimensioned in the Contract Documents.

1.2.7 Drawings, Specifications. In general, the Drawings will show dimensions, positions, and kind of construction and the Specifications will define materials, quality and standards. Work not particularly shown, detailed, marked or specified shall be the same as similar parts that are shown, detailed, marked or specified.

1.2.8 Typical Work. Work not particularly shown, detailed, marked or specified shall be the same as similar parts that are shown, detailed, marked or specified.

1.2.9 Divisions of the Work. All the Work mentioned or indicated in the Contract Documents shall be performed by Contractor as part of the Work unless specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be done by others. The organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles and the arrangement of the Drawings shall not control Contractor in dividing the Work among the Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractors.

1.2.10 Applicable Laws. Compliance with Applicable Laws shall be considered as a part of the Work.

1.2.11 Interpretations of Laws. In the event of a conflict between or among Applicable Laws governing performance of the Work, the more stringent shall govern. Contractor assumes, at Contractor's Own Expense, sole responsibility for, and the risk associated with, interpretations of Applicable Laws made by Contractor not predicated on written orders issued by Governmental Authorities that by their terms are applicable to the Project, including, without limitation, interpretations or assumptions made by Contractor based on decisions, orders or approvals (written or unwritten) issued by or on behalf of Governmental Authorities in connection with work on other projects or properties near or in the general vicinity of the Site.

1.2.12 Modifiers. The Contract Documents may omit modifying words such as "all" and "any," and articles such as "the" and "an." If a modifier or an article is not included in one statement and appears in another, it is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement. The use of the word "including," when following any general statement, shall not be construed to limit such statement to specific items or matters set forth immediately following such word or to similar items or matters whether or not non-limiting language (such as "without limitation," "but not limited to," or words of similar import) is used with reference thereto, but rather shall be deemed to refer to all other items or matters that could reasonably fall within the broadest possible scope of such general statement.

1.2.13 Singular, Gender, Captions. When appropriate to the context, the use of the singular number shall be deemed to include the plural and vice versa. Each gender shall be deemed to include any other gender, and each shall include corporation, partnership, trust or other legal entity whenever the context so requires. The captions and headings of the various subdivisions of the Contract Documents are intended only as a matter of reference and convenience and in no way define, limit, or prescribe the scope or intent of the Contract Documents or any subdivision thereof.

1.2.14 Cross-References. Any cross-references indicated between various paragraphs or other portions of the Specifications, Drawings or other Contract Documents are provided for the convenience of Contractor and shall not be deemed to be all-inclusive.

1.2.15 Diagrammatic Design. Drawings and diagrams for mechanical, plumbing, electrical, fire sprinkler, fire alarm and low voltage Work shall be considered as diagrammatic only and shall not be used for any structural guidance or physical layout. Because such Drawings are diagrammatic, Contractor shall be responsible to provide any and all numbers and lengths of fittings, wire, conduit, connections, attachments or similar materials or devices needed to complete the Work, without Contract Adjustment, whether or not they exceed the numbers of pieces or the lengths indicated by such Drawings. Contractor is solely responsible to carefully plan and coordinate in advance, by means of coordination drawings prepared by Contractor or a Subcontractor, the installation of any Work shown diagrammatically and shall do so in such a manner as to make maximum use of the space available and anticipate and avoid wherever possible conflict and interferences among such portions of the Work and with other portions of the Work, including structural members.

1.2.16 Demolition. Existing Improvements at the Site of which no specific description is made in the Contract Documents, but which could be reasonably assumed to interfere with the satisfactory completion of the Work, shall be removed and disposed of by Contractor without Contract Adjustment. If Contractor is unsure whether a specific Existing Improvement at the Site which is not specifically described in the Contract Documents should be removed and disposed of, Contractor shall promptly ask the County whether such Existing Improvement is to be removed or remain in place, and shall comply with any directive given in response.

1.2.17 Omissions. Items missing from the Contract Documents shall nevertheless be provided by the Contractor, without Contract Adjustment, to the extent reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents as being necessary to satisfy the Design Intent.

1.2.18 Conflicts. Notwithstanding the provisions of Paragraph 1.2.19, below, in the event of conflict between any of the Contract Documents, the provision placing a more stringent requirement or greater burden on the Contractor or requiring the greater quantity or higher quality material or workmanship shall prevail, unless otherwise directed by the County in writing.

1.2.19 Order of Precedence. Conflicts that cannot be resolved in accordance with the rules of interpretation set forth elsewhere in this Section 1.2, shall be interpreted in accordance with the following order of precedence (the first being the highest order of precedence):

.1 Applicable Laws (provided, however, and notwithstanding Subparagraph 1.2.19.10, below, where the Contract Documents or manufacturer's recommendations or specifications require standards higher than those of Applicable Laws, the Contract Documents or manufacturer's recommendations or specifications shall control);

.2 Change Orders, Unilateral Change Orders and Construction Change Directives;

.3 Addenda;

.4 Construction Contract;

.5 Supplementary Conditions;

.6 General Conditions;

.7 General Requirements;

.8 Specifications;

.9 Drawings, subject to the following: (1) large scale plans and details take precedence over small scale Drawings in all cases; (2) full scale Drawings have precedence over both large and small scale Drawings in all cases; (3) detailed Plans and/or Drawings shall have precedence over general Plans and/or Drawings; (4) architectural and structural Drawings take precedence over electrical and mechanical Drawings in regard to location and arrangement of fixtures, outlets, and equipment; and (5) electrical and mechanical Drawings take precedence in describing and specifying equipment and in describing the diagrammatic requirements;

.10 standard and reference specifications which include industry norms, such as, but not limited to, ANSI and ASTM; and

.11 Reference Documents.

1.2.20 **Conditions Precedent.** Wording used in the Contract Documents indicating that a right of the Contractor or an obligation of the County is subject to or conditioned upon the occurrence of a condition or event, whether or not such condition or event is within the control of Contractor, County or others and whether or not such condition or event is expressly stated to be a "condition precedent", shall be understood and interpreted to mean that the stated condition or event is a condition precedent to the existence, arising, performance and exercise of such right or obligation.

1.3 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS

1.3.1 **Property of County.** Subject to the provisions of Paragraph 2.4.4, below, all Design Documents, Contract Documents and Project Documents that are prepared by Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, for use in connection with the Project, including any designs, building designs or other depictions underlying or shown in them, and the Intellectual Property Rights thereto, shall be deemed the sole and exclusive property of County and ownership thereof is irrevocably vested in County, whether the Project is executed or not.

1.3.2 **Assignment of Rights.** Contractor shall, without further consideration, obtain any and all Intellectual Property Rights in the Project Documents and Design Documents prepared by Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, for use in connection with the Project, including any designs, building designs or other depictions underlying or shown in them, free and clear of any liens or other encumbrances, claims or rights of third parties, transfer such rights, if necessary in writing, to County and cooperate with County in securing and registering such rights, such that County shall own all Intellectual Property Rights and any other tangible and/or intangible property rights associated therewith. Such transfer and assignment will be effective for the entire duration of the copyrights and include, but are not be limited to, all rights in related plans, specifications, documentation, derivative works and moral rights.

1.3.3 **Contractor's Warranty.** Contractor represents and warrants that the Project Documents and Design Documents prepared by Contractor or any Subcontractor for use on the Project, and the use of such Project Documents in the ordinary course, are free of any claim of infringement or any other violation of any Intellectual Property Right or other right of any third party.

1.3.4 **Non-Exclusive License.** Without derogation of County's rights under this Section 1.3, Contractor and Subcontractors, of every Tier, are granted a limited, non-exclusive license, revocable at will of County, to use and reproduce applicable portions of the Design Documents, Contract Documents and Project Documents as appropriate to and for use in the execution of the Work and for no other purpose.

1.3.5 **Reproduction.** Contractor shall do all reproduction and distribution of such reproducible prints of Contract Documents and Design Documents as are necessary for the complete pricing and performance of the Work, including, without limitation, all Changes. The costs of such reproduction shall be at Contractor's Own Expense.

1.3.6 Delivery to County. All Design Documents and Contract Documents (including originals and copies), and one (1) copy of all other Project Documents, in the possession of Contractor or Subcontractors shall be delivered to County upon the earlier of Final Completion of the Work or termination of the Construction Contract; provided, however, that Contractor shall have the right to retain one (1) copy of the Contract Documents and Submittals as a permanent record.

1.3.7 Subcontractors. Contractor shall take all necessary steps to ensure that a provision is included in all contracts with Subcontractors, of every Tier, who perform Work on the Project protecting and preserving County's rights as set forth in this Section 1.3.

ARTICLE 2 COUNTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

2.1 INFORMATION, APPROVALS AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF COUNTY

2.1.1 Legal Descriptions. County shall furnish, within a reasonable time after written request by Contractor, a legal description of the Site and information describing legal limitations affecting the Site that are recorded with applicable Governmental Authorities, such as, but not limited to, easements.

2.1.2 Permits and Fees. County shall secure and pay for only those permits and fees which are expressly stated to be the responsibility of County under the Contract Documents. County shall pay for all hook-up fees (not including "tap fees", which are the responsibility of Contractor pursuant to Paragraph 3.14.3, below) in order to establish a new account with a utility provider.

2.1.3 County Approvals. Information, approvals and decisions required of County or a County Consultant for which a County Review Period or County Review Date is included in the Construction Schedule that is approved by County shall be provided in accordance with the Construction Schedule. If a County Review Period or County Review Date is not set forth in the Construction Schedule approved by County, then such information, approvals and decisions shall be provided upon written request by Contractor without unreasonable Delay. Notwithstanding the foregoing, failure by County, Architect or a County Consultant to provide any information, approvals or decisions shall not be considered as a basis for Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time unless and until, and in calculating a Contract Adjustment any Delay or extension of the Contract Time resulting from a late-issuance of such information, approval or decision shall not commence until after:

.1 in the case of information, approval or decision for which there is a County-approved County Review Period or County Review Date in the County-approved Construction Schedule, seven (7) Days have passed since the County and the individual from whom such information, approval or decision is sought have received from Contractor a written notice containing all the following:

- (1)** a detailed description of the information, approval or decision required;
- (2)** a statement that the County Review Period or County Review Date has expired or passed; and
- (3)** a statement, prominently displayed, that: "PURSUANT TO PARAGRAPH 2.1.3 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE THE REQUESTED INFORMATION, APPROVAL OR DECISION WITHIN 7 CALENDAR DAYS FROM THIS NOTICE MAY RESULT IN A REQUEST FOR A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT"; or

.2 in the case of information, approval or decision for which there is no County Review Period or County Review Date set forth in the County-approved Construction Schedule, thirty (30) Days have passed since the County and the individual from whom such information, approval or decision is sought have received from Contractor a written notice that includes the statements set forth Clauses (1) and (2) of Subparagraph 2.1.3.1, above, and that includes a statement, prominently displayed, that: "PURSUANT TO PARAGRAPH 2.1.3 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE THE REQUESTED INFORMATION, APPROVAL OR DECISION WITHIN 30 CALENDAR DAYS FROM THIS NOTICE MAY RESULT IN A REQUEST FOR A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT".

2.1.4 Approvals. Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by the activities or duties of County, Architect or any other Project Team member, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons other than the Contractor.

2.1.5 Non-Specified Items. County reserves the right to approve materials and sources of supply of materials that are not specified in the Contract Documents and that are used for the performance of the Work.

2.2 COUNTY'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK

If Contractor fails to correct Defective Work as required by Section 13.2 of these General Conditions, fails to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents or violates any Applicable Law, County may immediately order Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such direction has been eliminated by Contractor. Contractor shall immediately comply with such notice at Contractor's Own Expense. Nothing stated herein or elsewhere in the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as placing upon County a duty or responsibility to Contractor or any other party to exercise its right to stop the Work.

2.3 COUNTY'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK

If Contractor fails to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, fails to provide sufficient labor, materials, equipment, tools and services to maintain the Construction Schedule, or otherwise fails to comply with any requirement of the Contract Documents, and fails to cure such failure in the manner required by Subparagraph 15.1.1.4, below, County may correct such failure. In such case, County shall be entitled to recover from Contractor or deduct from payments then or thereafter due Contractor for any Loss resulting from such failure, including compensation for the additional services and expenses of County, County Consultants and others whose services are reasonably required and made necessary thereby. If payments then or thereafter due Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, Contractor shall promptly pay the amount of the shortfall to County.

2.4 ACCOUNTING, RECORDS AND AUDIT

2.4.1 Accounting System. Contractor shall exercise such controls as may be necessary for proper financial management of the Work. Such accounting and control systems shall comply with prevailing custom and practice for similar projects, be satisfactory to County and shall include preservation of the books and records described in Paragraph 2.4.2, below, subject to Contractor's obligations under Paragraph 1.3.6, above, for a period of ten (10) years after Final Completion of the Work, or for such longer period as may be required by Applicable Laws.

2.4.2 Books and Records. Contractor shall keep, and shall require provisions to be included in all contracts entered into by Subcontractors, of every Tier, requiring the Subcontractors, of every Tier, to keep, full and detailed books, records, information, materials and data, of every kind and character (hard copy, as well as computer readable data if it exists) that have any bearing on or pertain to any matters, rights, duties or obligations relating to the Project, Work or Construction Contract, including, without limitation, agreements, purchase orders, leases, contracts, commitments, arrangements, notes, change orders, change order requests, estimates, field orders, construction change directives, schedules, requests for information, diaries, logs, reports, shop drawings, samples, exemplars, drawings, specifications, invoices, delivery tickets, receipts, vouchers, cancelled checks, memoranda, accounting records; job cost reports, job cost files (including complete documentation of negotiated settlements), backcharges, general ledgers; documentation of cash and trade discounts earned, insurance rebates and dividends, and other documents relating in any way to any claims, charges or time extensions asserted by Contractor or any of the Subcontractors, of any Tier, or relating to any credits, rebates or discounts owing to County.

2.4.3 Inspection and Copying. Contractor shall allow, and shall require provisions to be included in all contracts entered into by Subcontractors, of every Tier, allowing, County and the auditor for the State of California (and the authorized representative(s), auditors, attorneys and accountants of each) upon twenty-four (24) hours notice to Contractor, full access to inspect and copy all its aforesaid books and records at a location within the Southern California area. Such right of audit may be exercised by either County or the auditor for the State of California as often as reasonably necessary to verify Contractor's continuing compliance with the Contract Documents.

2.4.4 Confidential Information. Nothing stated in this Section 2.4 or elsewhere in the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as a waiver by Contractor or any Subcontractor of any rights of privilege or confidentiality that are

provided for by Applicable Law nor as authorizing the inspection of books and records that contain information concerning estimating means or methods that is not, in whole or part, relevant to a charge or demand being asserted by Contractor or a Subcontractor involving Extra Work, Deleted Work, Delay or a Claim.

2.4.5 Withholding of Payment. In addition to and without limitation upon County's other rights and remedies for breach, including any rights of County to withhold payment that are set forth elsewhere in the Contract Documents, County shall have the right, exercised in its sole discretion, to withhold from any payment due to Contractor under an Application for Payment a sum of up to ten percent (10%) of the total amount set forth in such Application for Payment until Contractor and the Subcontractors have complied with any outstanding and unsatisfied obligation under this Section 2.4. Upon compliance with this Section 2.4, any such monies withheld shall be released to Contractor.

2.4.6 Specific Performance. Contractor agrees that any failure to provide access to books and records as required by this Section 2.4 will result in irreparable harm and prejudice to County and shall, without the necessity of posting of any bond or undertaking, be specifically enforceable by means of a mandatory injunctive order (temporary, preliminary, provisional or otherwise) issued by a court of competent jurisdiction, which order the County and Contractor hereby consent to being issued based upon affidavits and without the necessity of oral testimony.

2.5 COUNTY FURNISHED MATERIALS

2.5.1 Supply by County. County shall have the right to furnish materials, products or equipment directly for processing and incorporation by Contractor in lieu of Contractor providing materials, products or equipment specified in the Contract Documents to be provided by Contractor as part of the Work.

2.5.2 Deleted Work. If the materials, products or equipment provided by County pursuant to Paragraph 2.5.1, above, then a Change Order shall be executed deleting such materials, products or equipment from the Work along with a Contract Adjustment reducing the Contract Price in the manner provided for in Article 7, below, applicable to Contract Adjustments for Deleted Work.

2.5.3 Delivery Deadlines. Without limitation to Contractor's obligations under Article 8, below, upon receipt of written instruction by County of its intent to provide materials, products or equipment pursuant to this Section 2.6, Contractor shall notify County promptly in writing of any deadlines within which such materials, products or equipment must be received at the Site in order to avoid Delay.

2.5.4 Delivery to Site. Contractor shall, upon their delivery to the Site, properly receive and unload materials, products or equipment furnished by County pursuant to this Section 2.5.

2.5.5 Care, Custody and Control. Contractor assumes full and unconditional responsibility for care, custody and control of the materials, products or equipment that are furnished by County pursuant to this Section 2.5, whether or not they have been accepted by County, and assumes sole responsibility for any subsequent loss, injury or damage thereto occurring prior to Final Completion.

2.5.6 Notice of Deficiencies. Contractor shall carefully inspect any materials, products or equipment furnished by County pursuant to this Section 2.5 and immediately notify County of any defect or deficiency in such materials, products or equipment or any nonconformity in such materials, products or equipment with the requirements of the Contract Documents or with the requirements of the other documentation provided to Contractor setting forth the conditions of County's purchase. Contractor shall not accept any materials, products or equipment furnished by County with respect to which Contractor has provided such notice of defect, deficiency or non-conformity unless and until instructed to do so in writing by County.

2.5.7 Incorporation in Work. Contractor shall, as part of the Work and without Contract Adjustment, provide any and all processing, fabrication, cutting, shaping, fitting, assembly and installation of materials, products or equipment furnished by County pursuant to this Section 2.5 in full compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

2.6 COUNTY INSTALLED ITEMS

Contractor shall notify County, a reasonable time in advance, of the Contractor's scheduled dates for installation of items that are specified in the Contract Documents to be placed on, attached to or incorporated into the Work by County or Separate Contractors. In the event that Contractor fails to do so or if due to Unexcused Delay the County is unable after such notice by Contractor to so place, affix or incorporate such items, then Contractor shall be responsible, in addition to any amounts due to County for liquidated damages, to reimburse County for costs of storage or rental of temporary replacement items until such time as the Work is in a condition suitable for such items to be placed, affixed or incorporated.

2.7 COUNTY'S ADDITIONAL RIGHTS

The rights stated in this Article 2 are in addition to and not in limitation of any other rights of County granted elsewhere in the Contract Documents or under Applicable Laws.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR PERFORMANCE

3.1 CONTRACTOR STATUS

3.1.1 Independent Contractor. Contractor is, and shall at all times be deemed to be, an independent contractor and is wholly responsible for the performance of the obligations required of it by the terms of the Contract Documents.

3.1.2 Agents, Employees. Contractor wholly assumes responsibility for the acts and omissions of its agents and employees and the agents and employees of each Subcontractor, of every Tier, as they relate to the Work. Contractor, its agents and employees, shall not be entitled to any rights or privileges of County's employees and nothing contained in the Contract Documents and no course of conduct shall be construed as creating the relationship of employer and employee, or principal and agent, between County and any agent or employee of Contractor or any Subcontractor. County shall have the right, but not the obligation, to monitor the employment and other activities of Contractor and the Subcontractors to determine compliance with the terms of the Contract Documents.

3.1.3 Licenses. Contractor and the Subcontractors, of every Tier, shall maintain, such contracting, professional and business licenses as may be required by Applicable Laws for the duration of time that Contractor is performing the Work under the Contract Documents, including the period of any warranty provided covering all or any portion of the Work.

3.1.4 Subcontractors. Contractor is responsible to County for acts and omissions of the Subcontractors and their agents and employees and other persons performing portions of the Work under a contract with a Subcontractor, of any Tier.

3.1.5 Design Services. Contractor shall provide professional services if such services are expressly, or by reasonable implication, required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or are required in order for Contractor to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures. Professional design services or certifications so required of Contractor shall be furnished by design professionals exercising the highest standard of care and utilizing designs and engineering that comply with all systems, materials or equipment, performance and design criteria set forth in the Contract Documents. Certification by a properly licensed design professional, including such professional's signature and seal, shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications and other documents prepared by such professional. Submittals related to the Work designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted. County, Architect and County Consultants shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, accuracy and completeness of the services, certifications or approvals performed by such design professionals.

3.2 REVIEW OF DOCUMENTS, SITE AND EXISTING IMPROVEMENTS

3.2.1 Contractor's Duty of Review. Contractor's submission of its Bid and execution of the Construction Contract constitutes its representation, acknowledgement and agreement that it had sufficient time, access and opportunity prior to the Bid Closing Deadline to conduct a careful and thorough examination, to its satisfaction, of:

.1 the Bidding Documents, Contract Documents, Reference Documents and other information provided by County to Contractor prior to the Bid Closing Deadline concerning the Project, Site or Existing Improvements;

.2 the visible conditions at the Site and its surroundings, visible conditions of Existing Improvements and their existing uses by County or the public, routes of ingress and egress, and local conditions in the vicinity of the Site (including, without limitation, sources and availability of labor, materials and equipment);

.3 the status of any construction at the Site concurrently under construction; and

.4 all information concerning visible and concealed conditions above and below the surface of the ground at the Site and in Existing Improvements (including, without limitation, surveys, reports, data, as-built drawings of Existing Improvements and utility sources, capacities and locations) that was either (1) provided by County to Contractor or other Bidders (including, but not limited to, the Bidding Documents and Reference Documents) or (2) reasonably available to Contractor for review in the public records of the County of Riverside or the City in which the Project is located.

3.2.2 Contract Adjustments.

.1 **Differing Site Conditions.** Except as otherwise provided in Subparagraph 3.2.3, below, the Contractor's right to a Contract Adjustment in the event Contractor encounters conditions at the Site or in Existing Improvements that vary from those indicated by the Contract Documents or other information that was either reviewed by Contractor or that Contractor was given the opportunity to review prior to the Bid Closing Deadline shall be governed exclusively by Paragraph 4.3.8, below, pertaining to Differing Site Conditions.

.2 **Design Discrepancies.** Except as otherwise provided in Subparagraph 3.2.3, below, and subject to the Contractor's compliance with the other provisions of the Contract Documents governing the Contractor's right to a Contract Adjustment (including, without limitation, Article 7 and Article 8, below), Contractor shall be entitled to a Contract Adjustment due to Design Discrepancies, subject to the following conditions and limitations:

(1) **Compensable Change.** There shall be no Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price for Extra Work that the Contractor is required to perform as a result of a Design Discrepancy unless all of the following conditions have been met prior to Contractor or any Subcontractor performing any portion of the Work involving or affected by such Design Discrepancy:

(a) the circumstances giving rise to such Extra Work conform to all of the requirements of Subparagraph 1.1.29.2 through Subparagraph 1.1.29.4, above, applicable to Compensable Changes;

(b) Contractor has submitted to County and Architect a Request for Information in compliance with Paragraph 3.2.5, below, seeking clarification of such Design Discrepancy;

(c) Contractor has submitted to County a timely and complete Notice of Change in accordance with Article 7, below, describing such Extra Work in detail;

(d) Contractor has received a Construction Change Directive signed by County in accordance with Article 7, below, directing that Contractor perform the portion of the Work in question; and

(e) unless otherwise provided in such Construction Change Directive, Contractor has submitted to County a Change Order Request in accordance with the requirements of Article 7, below, setting forth the particulars of its request for Contract Adjustment on account of such Extra Work.

(2) Compensable Delay. There shall be no Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price or Contract Time for Delay as a result of a Design Discrepancy unless all of the following conditions have been met prior to Contractor or any Subcontractor performing any portion of the Work involving or affected by such Design Discrepancy:

(a) if the Delay is the result, in whole or in part, of Extra Work, all of the requirements of Subparagraph 3.2.2.2 (1), (a) through (e), above, have been met;

(b) the circumstances giving rise to such Delay conform to all of the requirements of Subparagraph 1.1.30.2 and Subparagraph 1.1.30.3, above, applicable to Compensable Delay; and

(c) Contractor has submitted to County a timely and complete Notice of Delay and a timely and complete Request for Extension in accordance with Article 8, below, setting forth the particulars of its request for Contract Adjustment on account of such Compensable Delay.

(3) Differing Site Conditions. The Contractor's right to a Contract Adjustment as a result of variances between (a) the Contract Documents or other documents or information described in Paragraph 3.2.1, above, that, prior to the Bid Closing Deadline was either reviewed by Contractor or was available to Contractor for review prior to the Bid Closing Deadline and (b) conditions at the Site or in Existing Improvements shall, notwithstanding the fact that the circumstances asserted by Contractor as a basis for such Contract Adjustment may involve, relate to or arise out of a Design Discrepancy, be governed by the provisions of the Contract Documents setting forth the Contractor's right to Contract Adjustments on the grounds of Differing Site Conditions.

3.2.3 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

CONTRACTOR AGREES THAT IT SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED TO, AND HEREBY CONCLUSIVELY WAIVES, ANY RIGHT TO CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT, AS WELL AS THE RIGHT TO ANY OTHER OR FURTHER RECOURSE OR RIGHT OF RECOVERY FROM COUNTY, ON ACCOUNT OF LOSSES OR DELAYS THAT ARE A RESULT OF EITHER A DIFFERING SITE CONDITION OR A DESIGN DISCREPANCY, IF PRIOR TO THE BID CLOSING DEADLINE SUCH DIFFERING SITE CONDITION OR DESIGN DISCREPANCY WAS:

(1) DISCOVERED BY CONTRACTOR AND CONTRACTOR, NOTWITHSTANDING SUCH DISCOVERY, FAILED TO REPORT SUCH DIFFERING SITE CONDITION OR DESIGN DISCREPANCY TO COUNTY IN WRITING PRIOR TO THE BID CLOSING DEADLINE;

(2) ALTHOUGH NOT ACTUALLY DISCOVERED BY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO THE BID CLOSING DEADLINE WAS REASONABLY DISCOVERABLE BY CONTRACTOR UNDER THE STANDARD OF PERFORMANCE SPECIFIED IN THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, A DIFFERING SITE CONDITION OR DESIGN DISCREPANCY THAT WAS OVERLOOKED BY CONTRACTOR DUE TO A FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO FULLY FAMILIARIZE ITSELF PRIOR TO THE BID CLOSING DEADLINE WITH ANY OF THE DOCUMENTS, INFORMATION OR CONDITIONS REFERRED TO IN PARAGRAPH 3.2.1, ABOVE.

3.2.4 Continuing Obligation. In addition and without limitation to Contractor's obligations under Paragraph 3.2.1, above, or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, Contractor shall have the continuing obligation until Final Completion to promptly report to County, by means of submission by Contractor of a Request for Information that complies with the requirements of Paragraph 3.2.5, below, any and all of the following:

.1 information contained in the Bidding Documents, Contract Documents, Reference Documents or other documentation that was either reviewed by Contractor or that Contractor was given the opportunity to review prior to the Bid Closing Deadline, as well as any visible conditions at the Site, in Existing Improvements or in the vicinity of the Project, that Contractor knows, or in the exercise by Contractor of its duties under the Standard of Performance should have known, may render a portion of the Work in any respect, wholly or partially, unsuitable or incomplete to meet the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Design Intent or Applicable Laws, and

.2 conditions in the Work that constitute Defective Work or that cause or are likely to cause any other portion of the Work to be Defective Work.

Without limitation to County's other rights under the Contract Documents, any portion of the Work, Existing Improvements or the work of Separate Contractors or County's own forces requiring replacement, repair or correction due to a failure by Contractor or any Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with its continuing obligation under this Paragraph 3.2.4 shall be promptly replaced, repaired or corrected to County's satisfaction, at Contractor's Own Expense.

3.2.5 Requests for Information.

.1 Time for Submittal. Requests for Information shall be submitted no later than three (3) Days after the date Contractor learns of the circumstances giving rise to the question contained in the Request for Information. Requests for Information shall be submitted by or through the Contractor and not directly by Subcontractors.

.2 Content. Each Request for Information shall, in addition to the Contractor's specific question or request, include the following:

(1) a detailed description of the circumstances giving rise to the Contractor's request or question, including, without limitation, any related Design Discrepancy;

(2) Contractor's request for clarification, including, without limitation, any request for further detailing or correction of the Contract Documents; and

(3) a statement of whether Contractor believes it is entitled to a Contract Adjustment by reason of the circumstances described.

.3 Form. Contractor shall submit Requests for Information using forms provided or approved by County.

.4 Unnecessary, Multiple Requests. Contractor shall carefully review, coordinate and consolidate (where appropriate to prevent piecemeal submission) Requests for Information (whether originating with Contractor or the Subcontractors) prior to submitting them in order to eliminate unnecessary or duplicative requests.

.5 Responses. Responses to Requests for Information shall be furnished with reasonable promptness so as to not unreasonably Delay progress of the Work; provided, however, that the timing of a response by the Architect, County or a County Consultant to a Request for Information shall not constitute grounds for a Contract Adjustment unless Contractor has complied with the requirements set forth in this Paragraph 3.2.5 and, if applicable, Paragraph 2.1.3, above.

.6 Back Charges by County. County shall have the right to deduct from payments due to Contractor sums expended by County for the services of the Architect, Inspectors of Record or County Consultants due to a failure by Contractor to comply with this Paragraph 3.2.5.

.7 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO SUBMIT A REQUEST FOR INFORMATION IN ACCORDANCE WITH AND UNDER CIRCUMSTANCES IN WHICH A REQUEST FOR INFORMATION WAS REQUIRED BY THIS PARAGRAPH 3.2.5 SHALL RESULT IN CONTRACTOR WAIVING ITS RIGHT TO A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT ON ACCOUNT OF ANY LOSS OR DELAY THAT COULD HAVE BEEN AVOIDED IF SUCH REQUEST FOR INFORMATION HAD BEEN PROPERLY PREPARED AND TIMELY SUBMITTED.

3.2.6 Correction of Work. Contractor shall, at Contractor's Own Expense, correct or replace in accordance with the direction of County any portion of the Work that is performed by Contractor or a Subcontractor knowing that it involves, or that Contractor or Subcontractor in the exercise of reasonable care and diligence should have known involves, a portion of the Contract Documents that contains an error, omission, conflict, ambiguity, lack of coordination or noncompliance with Applicable Laws, without first notifying and obtaining the written approval of County and Architect.

3.3 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES

3.3.1 General Obligation. Contractor shall provide competent, fully qualified personnel to supervise, administer, manage and direct the Work, competently and efficiently, at all times devoting their best skill and attention to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.3.2 Supervisory Staff. Contractor shall employ a competent project manager, superintendent, scheduler, forepersons and necessary assistants during performance of the Work. Contractor's superintendent and forepersons shall be present at the Site at all times that the Work is in progress and at any time that any employee of Contractor or a Subcontractor is present at the Site. Contractor's project manager and superintendent shall, unless excused from attendance by the County, attend all job meetings. Contractor's project manager and superintendent must be able to fluently read and write in English. Contractor's superintendent shall not perform the Work of any trade, pick up materials, or perform any Work not directly related to the supervision of the Work and shall be available twenty-four (24) hours a Day, seven (7) Days a week, to respond to emergencies.

3.3.3 County Supplementary Personnel. Without limitation upon any of the rights or remedies of the County under the Contract Documents or under Applicable Laws, in the event that Contractor fails to have personnel on Site to supervise the Work, the County shall have the right, but not the obligation, upon twenty-four (24) hours' telephonic or email notice by the County to Contractor, to provide such supervision on a temporary basis and to deduct from the sums owing to Contractor the actual costs of such temporary supervision. Contractor shall, notwithstanding the County's providing such temporary supervision, remain solely responsible for all actions and omissions of its personnel and of the Subcontractors.

3.3.4 Means, Methods, Procedures. Contractor shall be solely responsible for and have control over construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures and coordinating all portions of the Work, unless the Contract Documents specify other specific instructions concerning these matters. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, Contractor shall nonetheless be fully and solely responsible for the adequacy and safe implementation of such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures. If Contractor believes that such specified means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe or adequate, Contractor shall give written notice to County and Architect and shall not proceed with that portion of the Work without further written instruction from County or Architect. In response to such notice, County may order Contractor to improve the character or increase the efficiency of the means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures employed, and Contractor shall conform to such order; but the failure of County to order such improvement or increase of efficiency will neither relieve Contractor from its sole responsibility for safety at the Site nor relieve Contractor from its obligation to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and Applicable Laws.

3.4 LABOR, MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

3.4.1 Costs of Work. Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, tools, equipment, machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether incorporated or to be incorporated into the Work.

3.4.2 Coordination. Contractor shall provide supervision sufficient to ensure proper coordination for the timely and efficient performance and completion of the Work.

3.4.3 Field Conditions. Before commencing the Work or any activities on the Site, Contractor shall take field measurements and verify field conditions and carefully compare such field measurements and conditions with the information in the Contract Documents and other information obtained by or available to Contractor.

3.4.4 Layout. Contractor is solely responsible for (1) the accurate layout of all portions of the Work, (2) the accuracy of the Project lines and levels, (3) erection of the Work square, plumb, level, true to line and grade, in the exact plane, and to the correct elevation and (4) sloping of surfaces to drain as indicated by the Contract Documents, or, if not indicated, as needed to provide for adequate drainage.

3.4.5 Materials, Equipment

.1 Delivery, Storage, Inventory. Materials and equipment shall be: (1) furnished in ample quantities and at such times as to ensure uninterrupted progress of the Work; and (2) if located on the Site, properly stored and protected as reasonable and necessary, or as directed by County, to prevent Loss from any foreseeable cause, including, without limitation, theft. In the event that County gives direction as to the location for storage or protection of materials or equipment on the Site, Contractor shall nonetheless remain solely responsible for its safe and secure storage and protection. No part of any such stored materials and equipment shall be removed from its place of storage except for immediate installation in the Work. Contractor shall keep an accurate inventory of all such stored materials and/or equipment in a manner satisfactory to County.

.2 Purchases. Contractor shall place orders for materials and/or equipment as specified so that delivery of same may be made without Delay to the Work. Contractor shall, upon request from County, furnish to County documentary evidence showing that orders have been placed. County reserves the right in the event Contractor fails, within three (3) Days after receipt of written notice by County to Contractor to comply with the requirements of this Subparagraph 3.4.5.2, to comply with the requirements of this Subparagraph 3.4.5.2, to deduct the costs paid or payable by County associated with such purchases from payments otherwise owing to Contractor. Contractor shall, if requested by County, accept assignment of any such contracts entered into by County without a Contract Adjustment.

.3 Title. No material, supplies or equipment for the Work shall be purchased subject to any chattel mortgage or under a conditional sale or other agreement by which an interest therein or in any part thereof is retained by seller or supplier. Contractor warrants good title to all material, supplies and equipment installed or incorporated in the Work and agrees upon Final Completion to deliver the Work, including the premises, land, improvements and appurtenances on or to which the Work is placed, located or affixed, to County free from any claims, liens, or charges. Contractor further agrees that neither it nor any person, firm, or corporation furnishing any materials or labor for any of the Work shall have any right of lien upon the Site, or any Existing Improvement or appurtenance thereon, except that (1) nothing stated in this Subparagraph 3.4.5.3 shall be interpreted as a waiver by Contractor or any Subcontractor of its right under Applicable Laws to serve a stop payment notice for Work that is not paid for by County as required under the terms of the Contract Documents; and (2) Contractor may install metering devices or other equipment of utility companies or political subdivisions, title to which may be retained by such utility company or political subdivision, provided that in the event of installation of any such metering device or utility equipment, Contractor shall advise County as to the owner, and the precise location, thereof.

.4 Substitutions. No substitution of materials, equipment, articles, processes or other items of the Work required under the Contract Documents will be made without written approval of County, which approval may be granted or denied in the sole and absolute discretion of County. With respect to any such substitution made or requested by Contractor, neither the occurrence of a substitution made or requested by Contractor nor the approval or disapproval by County of a substitution that is made in accordance with this Subparagraph 3.4.5.4 shall give rise to any right of Contractor to a Contract Adjustment. Contractor shall, notwithstanding County's or Architect's approval, remain solely responsible for the sufficiency and suitability of all substitutions requested by Contractor and approved, or otherwise made, by Contractor.

.5 Parts List. Contractor will provide a printed parts list for all items which might be subject to replacement and for which parts lists are either expressly required by the Contract Documents or customarily provided according to usual commercial practices.

.6 Manuals. As part of its obligation for submission of Record Documents, four (4) hard copies and one (1) electronic version of operations and maintenance manuals shall be prepared and transmitted by Contractor to County prior to and as a condition of Final Completion. Final Payment will not be due until County has received all such manuals and all other manuals covering the Work that are either required to be provided by the terms of the Contract Documents or if not required are customarily provided according to usual commercial practices applicable to the portion of Work involved. Operating instructions will be included within the equipment manuals and will state all information necessary for County to operate, use, maintain and service the equipment fully and efficiently.

.7 Start Up. Contractor will be responsible for start-up of all systems and equipment purchased as part of the Work and has included sufficient amounts in its Bid to cover contingencies arising out of the start-up of such systems and equipment. Contractor will comply fully with each manufacturer's specifications and instructions. Systems and equipment specified to be furnished with manufacturer's supervision of start-up will be placed in operation only under such supervision.

3.5 CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTY

3.5.1 General Warranty. In addition to other warranties and guarantees required by the Contract Documents, Contractor shall, and hereby does, warrant and guarantee that: (1) the Work will conform to the requirements of Contract Documents, including, without limitation, any performance standards that are part thereof; (2) all Work for which there is not a specific requirement, criteria, specification or standard set forth in the Contract Documents will conform to the Standard of Performance; (3) all labor, equipment, materials and other items of Work will be when installed new and free of liens, claims and security interests; (4) without limitation to the other requirements of this warranty, all labor, installation and workmanship will be performed in a good and workmanlike manner; and (5) all labor, materials, equipment, services and work shall be free of defects for a period of one (1) year after Final Completion. If required by County, Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of services, labor, installation, materials and equipment used. Manufactured items installed in the Work, unless otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documents, are to be installed in strict accordance with manufacturer's current printed instructions.

3.5.2 Repair, Replacement. Without limitation upon the County's other rights or remedies under the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws, any and all Work that, for reasons other than (1) ordinary wear and tear or (2) abuse or neglect by persons or entities other than the Contractor or the Subcontractors, is not in conformance with the warranties or guarantees required by the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws shall be repaired or replaced, together with the repair or replacement of any other Work, Existing Improvements or the work of the Separate Contractors, the County's own forces or others, which may be removed, displaced or damaged in so doing. The Contractor shall notify the County in writing upon completion of such repair or replacement. In the event of failure by the Contractor to commence and pursue with diligence said replacement or repair within ten (10) Days after being notified by the County, the County is hereby authorized to proceed with such replacement and repair as the County deems necessary and expedient and to charge such costs to Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

3.5.3 Not a Limitation. The warranties stated in this Section 3.5 are in addition to any other warranties or guarantees that are required under any other provision of the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws. Nothing stated in this Section 3.5 shall be interpreted as a limitation upon the County's rights under any warranties or guarantees provided for under any other provision of the Contract Documents or under Applicable Laws that afford the County greater rights than the rights afforded to County under this Section 3.5.

3.5.4 Assignment. Contractor does hereby unconditionally and irrevocably assign to County all warranties and guarantees issued or made by any Subcontractor, of any Tier (including, without limitation, any manufacturer, supplier and distributor) in connection with the Work. Such assignment shall not relieve Contractor of, or otherwise limit, any of its obligations contained in the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, the general responsibility and liability of Contractor for a breach by a Subcontractor (including, without limitation, any manufacturer, supplier and distributor, of any Tier) of a warranty or guarantee given by such Subcontractor in connection with the Work.

3.5.5 Close-Out. Unless sooner requested by County, Contractor shall furnish to County, as part of the Close-Out Documents and as a condition to Final Payment, all written guarantees or warranties that are required by the terms of the Contract Documents. All such guarantees and warranties shall be: (1) in writing; (2) indexed and bound; (3) accompanied by such certifications and instruction materials as may be required by the Contract Documents; and (4) issued to County or assignable by their terms, and in fact assigned, to County.

3.6 TAXES

3.6.1 Payment by Contractor. Contractor shall pay, at Contractor's Own Expense, all local, state and federal taxes, including, without limitation, all sales, consumer, business license, use and similar taxes on materials, labor or other items furnished for the Work or portions thereof provided by Contractor or the Subcontractors, of all Tier, all taxes arising out of its operations under the Contract Documents and all benefits, insurance, taxes and contributions for social security and unemployment insurance which are measured by wages, salaries or other remuneration paid to Contractor's employees. If under federal excise tax law any transaction hereunder constitutes a sale on which a federal excise tax is imposed, and the sale is exempt from such excise tax because it is a sale to a state or local government, then County, upon request, will execute documents necessary to show: (1) that County is a political subdivision of the State for the purposes of such exemption; and (2) that the sale is for the exclusive use of County. No excise tax for

such materials shall be included in any price (including, without limitation, the Bid) submitted by Contractor for the Work or for Changes in the Work.

3.6.2 Tax Exempt Projects. If applicable to the Project, Contractor shall comply with Applicable Laws concerning tax-exempt construction projects.

3.6.3 Records of Taxes. Contractor and the Subcontractors shall keep sufficient records to verify the amount of sales and use taxes paid. Copies shall be submitted with each monthly Application for Payment. Failure to keep or submit such records, resulting in the inability of County to claim a refund for taxes for such materials, shall render Contractor liable to County for the amount of such tax refund.

3.7 PERMITS, FEES AND LEGAL NOTICES

3.7.1 Permits. Contractor shall obtain and pay for all permits and approvals that are not stated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of the County. Such permits and approvals that are the responsibility of the Contractor may include local building or land use permits, California Department of Fish and Game Streambed Alteration Agreements (Section 1600 et seq.), California Department of Fish and Game collection permits, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 404 fill and dredge authorization, Clean Water Act Section 401 authorization (managed by the local California Regional Water Quality Control Boards) land owner agreements, or other regulatory permits or approvals required for the implementation of the Project. All permits, licenses and certificates obtained by Contractor shall be delivered to County prior and as a condition to Final Completion and Contractor's right to Final Payment.

3.7.2 Applicable Laws, Notices. Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by, Applicable Laws bearing on performance of the Work.

3.7.3 Bonds, Undertakings. Contractor shall, without Contract Adjustment, procure and obtain all bonds required of the County or the Contractor by the municipality in which the Project is located or by any other public or private body with jurisdiction over the Project. In connection with such bonds, the Contractor shall prepare all applications, supply all necessary back-up material and furnish the surety with any required personal undertakings. The Contractor shall also obtain and pay, without Contract Adjustment, all charges for all approvals for street closings, parking meter removal and other similar matters as may be necessary or appropriate from time to time for the performance of the Work.

3.7.4 Notice of Violations. Contractor shall immediately notify County in writing of any instruction received from County, or any other Project Team member that, if implemented, would cause a violation of any Applicable Law.

3.7.5 Governmental Authority Approvals. Where the Contract Documents state, or Applicable Laws require, that materials, processes or procedures must be approved by a Governmental Authority, Contractor shall be responsible for satisfying the requirements and obtaining the approval of such Governmental Authority.

3.8 CONTRACTOR'S PERSONNEL

3.8.1 Key Persons. Contractor's employees acting as project manager, scheduler and superintendent constitute Key Persons. Individuals acting as Key Persons who are not already identified in Contractor's Post-Award Submittals shall be identified in writing to County prior to commencement of the Work.

3.8.2 Background Check. Contractor shall perform, prior to commencing Work on the Site, a thorough background check of each of the Key Persons and shall not, without prior written approval of County, employ any person to act as a Key Person if such background check, or other information known to Contractor, discloses a felony conviction or other matter which casts any reasonable doubt on the competency, reliability or honesty of such person.

3.8.3 Project Manager. The Key Person acting as project manager shall be deemed to have full authority to contractually bind Contractor, including, without limitation, the authority to bind Contractor to the terms of Contract Adjustments.

3.8.4 Transfer. Contractor's Key Personnel are deemed of essence to the Construction Contract. No Key Person shall, for so long as he/she is employed by Contractor, be transferred to any other project nor any of his/her responsibilities reassigned at any time during performance of the Work without the prior written approval of County, which approval may be granted or withheld in County's sole and absolute discretion.

3.8.5 Removal. County shall have the right, at any time, to direct the removal and replacement of any Key Person if his/her performance is determined by County, in its sole and absolute discretion, to be unsatisfactory.

3.8.6 Replacement. Any individual proposed by Contractor as a replacement for a Key Person must be approved in advance by County, such approval not to be unreasonably withheld, after submission by Contractor to County of complete information concerning such individual's experience and qualifications.

3.8.7 Communications. Important communications by Key Persons shall be confirmed in writing by Contractor. Other communications by Key Persons shall be confirmed on written request in each case.

3.8.8 Contact Information. Contractor shall provide to County, prior to the start of the Work, telephone numbers where Key Persons can be reached 24-hours a day, 7 Days a week.

3.8.9 Signatures. Prior to commencing the Work, Contractor shall submit to County a facsimile of the signatures of the Key Person acting as project manager, as well as any other representatives of Contractor with authority to sign on behalf of and contractually bind Contractor.

3.8.10 Exclusion from Site. Contractor shall at all times maintain good discipline and order at the Site among its employees and the employees of the Subcontractors. Any person in the employ of Contractor or any of the Subcontractors, of any Tier, whom County deems, in its sole and absolute discretion, incompetent, unfit, intemperate, troublesome or otherwise undesirable shall be excluded from the Site and shall not again be employed on the Site except with written approval of County.

3.9 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

3.9.1 Preparation. Within twenty-one (21) Days after issuance by County of the Notice of Intent to Award, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a Construction Schedule for the Work, both in hard copy and electronically, for the County's approval. The Construction Schedule shall in all respects conform to and be consistent with the time requirements for the Project set forth in the Construction Contract.

3.9.2 Format. The Construction Schedule shall be in the form of a critical path progress schedule that shows, in graphic form, a plan for performance of the Work within the Contract Time. It shall be prepared, using Primavera P3, as a time-scaled bar chart showing: (1) continuous flow from left to right and activities and milestones that are critical to Substantial Completion and Final Completion of the Work; (2) identification of "float"; and (3) a clearly highlighted critical path. Durations and specific calendar days shall be clearly and legibly shown for the early and late start and finish of each activity. With the exception of County Review Periods and Governmental Authority Review Periods, any activity with more than fifteen (15) Days in duration will be segmented into fifteen (15) Day increments. No more than ten percent (10%) of the activities shall be shown as critical. Techniques or methods designed to suppress depiction of available float are strictly prohibited.

3.9.3 Detail. Activities shown in the Construction Schedule shall be in sufficient detail to demonstrate a practical plan to complete the design, engineering, fabrication and construction within the Contract Time and shall, at a minimum, include the following:

- .1** the start and finish date of each activity;
- .2** the anticipated percent of completion at the end of each month;
- .3** the weighted labor value expressed as a percentage of the total labor cost of the Work for each activity;

- .4 the final manpower curves by trade;
- .5 the anticipated purchase and delivery of major materials and equipment;
- .6 the County's occupancy requirements;
- .7 receipt and incorporation of materials, products or equipment to be furnished by County (if any);
- .8 County Review Periods and County Review Dates that are acceptable to and approved by County;
- .9 Governmental Authority Review Periods; and
- .10 the activities identified as being on the critical path to Substantial Completion and Final Completion of the Work.

3.9.4 **Updates.** Throughout the performance of the Work, weekly updates shall be delivered, in hard copy and, if required by County, in an electronic form satisfactory to County. In addition, Contractor shall regularly prepare and submit to County short term, three (3) week "look-ahead" schedules generated from the Construction Schedule approved by County. Except to the extent permitted by Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time approved by County in a duly executed Change Order or Unilateral Change Order, in no event shall the Contractor's updates or "look ahead" schedules alter the dates for Substantial Completion or Final Completion set forth in the Construction Schedule approved by County.

3.9.5 **Governing Schedule.** The governing schedule for the Work shall be the updated Construction Schedule approved by the County. Unless otherwise directed in a writing signed by County, no other schedule shall be used or relied upon by the Contractor or its Subcontractors in planning or performing the Work or in connection with any request for a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time.

3.9.6 **Submittal Schedule.** Within twenty-one (21) Days after the receipt by the Contractor of the Notice of Intent to Award, the Contractor shall prepare and submit, in accordance with the Contract Documents, a Submittal Schedule for the County's approval. The Submittal Schedule shall be coordinated with the Construction Schedule and allow time for review of the Submittals as may be required by the Contract Documents, or if none is required, a reasonable time for such review. Contractor shall keep the Submittal Schedule current and updated in the same manner as required for updating of the Construction Schedule.

3.9.7 **Schedule Responsibility.** Contractor is and shall remain solely responsible, notwithstanding the County's review or approval thereof, for the accuracy, suitability and feasibility of all schedules it prepares for the Project, including, without limitation, the Construction Schedule, Submittal Schedule, "look ahead" schedules, recovery schedules and any updates thereof.

3.9.8 **Condition of Payment.** Compliance by Contractor with the requirements of this Section 3.9 and the other provisions of the Contract Documents pertaining to preparing, submitting, revising and updating the Construction Schedule and Submittal Schedule is a condition to County's obligation to make payment to Contractor. Recognizing that scheduling is a continuing, cumulative and recurring obligation, failure by County or to assert a right to withhold payment under this Paragraph 3.9.8 due to a noncompliance by Contractor with its schedule obligations shall not waive or diminish the County's right to withhold or disapprove of future payments on account of such prior, or any other past or future, noncompliance of the same or similar nature.

3.9.9 **Scheduling by County.** Without limitation to County's other rights under the Contract Documents, if Contractor fails after written notice by County to perform any part of its obligations relating to scheduling, County shall have the right, but not the obligation, to retain one or more schedule consultants to perform, in whole or in part, the Contractor's obligations or supplement the scheduling services provided by Contractor and to reimburse County for the costs of such consultant services by withholding such costs from payments to Contractor.

3.10 DOCUMENTS AT SITE, REPORTING, MEETINGS

3.10.1 Documents at Site

.1 Contract Documents, Submittals. Contractor shall at all times while performing Work at the Site maintain, in good order, at the Site: (1) one legible set of the permitted Contract Documents; (2) one legible copy of the current version of the other Contract Documents; (3) one legible and current version of approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and other Submittals; (4) one approved Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP); and (5) one copy of all reports prepared pursuant to the Mitigation, Monitoring, and Reporting Program (MMRP) requirements of the California Environmental Quality Act.

.2 Record Documents. Contractor shall maintain Record Drawings and Specifications in a satisfactory record condition by posting, on a weekly basis (or, in the case of building or site mechanical, electrical, plumbing or fire sprinkler systems, as soon thereafter as is reasonable and practical), thoroughly and neatly, on the Drawings and Specifications all Changes to the Work and the location of the Work, including, without limitation, the location of portions of the Work shown diagrammatically, as occurs in the actual construction of the Work. The Record Drawings and Specifications and other Record Documents shall be prepared or converted, if requested by County, to electronic form (such as, AutoCAD, Adobe Acrobat or other software satisfactory to County). All Record Drawings and Specifications and other Record Documents shall be deemed the sole property of County and, at the earlier of Final Completion or termination of the Construction Contract, shall be turned over to County. At the time they are so turned over to County, they shall be manually signed by Contractor's superintendent certifying that, to the best of his/her knowledge, they are true and accurate and that the indications thereon represent the actual condition of the Work.

.3 Availability for Review. Copies or originals of all documents required to be maintained by Contractor at the Site or required to be submitted to County or the Architect shall be available at all times at the Site while Work is being performed for review by County, Inspector of Record, Architect and Governmental Authorities.

.4 Condition of Payment. Compliance by Contractor with the requirements of this Paragraph 3.10.1 shall be deemed a condition to Contractor's right to payment upon its Applications for Payment.

3.10.2 Daily Reports.

.1 Delivery. At the end of each Day that Contractor performs the Work on the Site, Contractor shall submit a daily report to County (on the form provided or approved by County) together with applicable delivery tickets for all labor, materials and equipment furnished that Day. If requested by County, daily reports shall be delivered electronically.

.2 Content. Daily Reports shall include the following information:

- (1) Labor - The names of the workers, and for each such worker his/her classification and hours worked.
- (2) Material - A list of the different materials used and for each different material the quantity used.
- (3) Equipment - The type of equipment, size, identification number, and hours of operation, including loading and transportation, if applicable.
- (4) Inspection and Testing Activities – A list of inspections performed by name of inspector and testing company and the type of inspection, items of the Work involved and a description of the outcome of such inspection or test.
- (5) Visitors, Guests, Dignitaries – A list of visitors and guests by name, title, company and purpose of visit.

(6) Areas of the Work – A statement of the areas of the Site on which the Work was performed and a detailed description of the stage, status and progress of the Work in each such area at the beginning and end of the Day.

(7) Accidents, Delays, Defective Work – A description in detail of any injuries to the workers, accidents or delays that occurred or Defective Work that was encountered.

(8) Other Services and Expenditures – A description of other services and expenditures in such detail as County may require.

.3 Payment. Timely and complete submission of daily reports by Contractor shall be a condition to Contractor's right to payment under the Construction Contract.

3.10.3 Progress Meetings. Contractor shall attend all progress meetings at the Site, at which meetings progress of the Work shall be reported in detail with reference to the then-current updated Construction Schedule approved by the County. Progress meetings shall be held weekly, or at such other time or frequency as County, in its sole and absolute discretion, deems necessary. A representative of each Subcontractor then actively performing Work, or immediately scheduled to become active, shall have a competent and knowledgeable representative present at such progress meeting to report on the condition of the Work of such Subcontractor and to receive relevant information. Meeting notes shall be taken by the County or Architect and distributed to all meeting attendees and all other affected parties.

3.10.4 Notice Requirements. Under no circumstances shall information contained in Contractor's daily job reports, monthly reports or job meeting minutes relieve Contractor of its obligations to comply with, serve as a substitute for, nor constitute a waiver by County of its right to insist upon, Contractor's compliance with the provisions of the Contract Documents relative to timely and complete notice to County of Changes, Delays, Claims or other matters for which written notice is required by the Contract Documents.

3.10.5 Availability for Review. Copies or originals of all Record Documents, daily reports, job meeting minutes and other documents required to be maintained or actually maintained by Contractor at the Site or required to be submitted to County or Architect shall be available at the Site for review by County, Architect, Inspectors of Record, County Consultants and Governmental Authorities.

3.11 SUBMITTALS

3.11.1 Not Contract Documents. Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and other Submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate for those portions of the Work for which Submittals are required the way Contractor proposes to conform the Work to the designs and other information in the Contract Documents.

3.11.2 Coordination with Others. Contractor shall cooperate in the coordination of Contractor's Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and other Submittals with related documents submitted by the Separate Contractors.

3.11.3 Submission by Contractor.

.1 Submission. All Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and other Submittals required by the Contract Documents shall be submitted to Architect for its review and approval, with a copy to County and to such of County's Consultants or Separate Contractors as County may direct in writing. Informational submittals (i.e., Submittals upon which no responsive action is expected) shall be limited to those Submittals so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals made by Contractor which are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned without action.

.2 Contractor Approval. The Contractor shall review, stamp "approved" and submit Contractor's Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and other Submittals to the Architect, in accordance with the latest Submittal Schedule approved by the County. The Contractor's approval and submission of Submittals constitutes a representation that the Contractor has determined or verified materials and field measurements and conditions related thereto, and that it has checked and coordinated the information contained within such Submittals with the requirements of the Contract Documents and with the Submittals for related Work. Submittals without evidence thereon of the

Contractor's approval shall be returned, without further consideration, for resubmission in accordance with these requirements.

.3 Transmittal. All Submittals shall be accompanied by an accurately completed transmittal in the form required by County. With respect to Submittals of documents, the transmittal shall give a list of the numbers of the sheets submitted. All sheets shall be marked with the name of the Project and the name of Contractor shall be numbered consecutively and referenced to the sheets or paragraphs of the Drawings and Specifications affected. A separate transmittal form shall be used for each specific item or class of material or equipment for which a Submittal is required. Transmission of Submittals of various items using a single transmittal form will be permitted only when the items taken together constitute a manufacturer's "package" or are so functionally related that expediency dictates review of the group or package as a whole. Any Submittal not accompanied by such transmittal form, or where all applicable items on the form are not completed, may be returned for re-submittal without review.

.4 Timing. Submittals shall be provided within the time frame specified in the Contract Documents, in accordance with the Construction Schedule and Submittal Schedule and at a time sufficiently early to allow review of the same by the Architect without causing Delay to construction progress. Contractor will be responsible to pay, at Contractor's Own Expense, additional services fees and costs incurred by County to the Architect, Inspectors of Record and County Consultants in order to expedite review of Submittals which are not submitted in a timely fashion.

.5 Content. Submittals shall consist of the appropriate combination of catalog sheets, material lists, manufacturer's brochures, technical bulletins, specifications, diagrams and product samples, necessary to describe a system, product or item. Submittals shall show in detail the size, sections and dimensions of all members, the arrangement and construction of all connections, joints and other pertinent details, and all holes, straps and other fittings for attaching the Work. When required by the Architect or the Contract Documents, engineering computations shall be submitted.

.6 Professional Certifications. When professional certification of performance criteria of materials, systems or equipment is required by the Contract Documents, Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the accuracy and completeness of such calculations and certifications.

.7 Multiple Submittals. Except where the preparation of a Submittal is dependent upon the approval of a prior Submittal, all Submittals pertaining to the same class or portion of the Work shall be submitted simultaneously.

.8 Notation of Revisions. Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or other Submittals, to revisions other than those requested and approved by Architect on previous Submittals.

.9 Duplicates. Contractor shall be responsible for delivering duplicates of Submittals to all other persons whose work or services are dependent thereon.

3.11.4 Review of Submittals. Review of Submittals by Architect, County or County Consultants is subject to the limitations of Paragraph 4.2.6, below. Contractor shall, notwithstanding any review or approval thereof by County, Architect or a County Consultant, be solely responsible for the content of all Submittals. Without limitation to the foregoing, deviations in Submittals from requirements of the Contract Documents shall remain the sole responsibility of Contractor unless Contractor has specifically informed Architect in writing of such deviation at the time of submission of the Submittal and Architect has given specific written approval thereof.

3.11.5 Contract Adjustments. Subject to Contractor's rights and obligations under Article 7, below, revisions indicated on Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or other Submittals shall not be considered as a basis for Contract Adjustments.

3.11.6 Compliance with Contract. Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work requiring submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or other Submittals until the respective Submittal has been returned by the Architect with an indication that it has been reviewed and that the Work addressed by the Submittal may proceed. Such Work shall be in accordance with such Submittals, unless such Submittal indicates that there are corrections to

be made. If corrections are indicated to be made then the Work shall be in accordance with the re-submitted and corrected Submittal that is reviewed and returned to the Contractor by the Architect.

3.12 USE OF SITE

3.12.1 Staging Area. Contractor will be assigned staging space on or adjacent to the Site, and all field offices, materials and equipment shall be kept within this area. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, Contractor shall be responsible for restoring such areas and surrounding areas to the condition they were in prior to Contractor's commencement of the Work.

3.12.2 Existing Improvements. During the installation of the Work, Contractor shall ensure that Existing Improvements are adequately protected. Upon Final Completion of the Work, all Existing Improvements not required by the Contract Documents to be demolished as part of the Work that have been damaged by the actions or inactions of Contractor or its Subcontractors shall be restored to the condition they were in prior to Contractor's commencement of the Work.

3.12.3 Operations at Site. Contractor shall confine its activity, access and parking at the Site to areas permitted by Applicable Laws and County and shall not unreasonably encumber the Site with materials or equipment. Contractor acknowledges that it is experienced in performing construction within limited and confined areas and spaces such as those that are anticipated to exist on this Project and agrees to assume responsibility, without a Contract Adjustment, to take all special measures (including, without limitation, those related to protection, storage, staging and deliveries) as may be necessary to adapt its performance to the constraints of the Site.

3.12.4 Coordination. Contractor shall coordinate Contractor's operations with, and secure the approval of, County before using any portion of the Site.

3.12.5 Unauthorized Use. Personnel of Contractor and the Subcontractors shall not occupy, live upon or otherwise make use of the Site during any time that the Work is not being performed at the Site, except as otherwise approved by County.

3.12.6 Site Security. Contractor is responsible for the security of the Site and all of the Work, as well as the work of the Separate Contractors or County's own forces that occurs on the Site. Fences, barricades and other perimeter security shall be maintained in good condition and secured with locking devices. Damage to fences, barricades or other perimeter security, regardless of the cause, shall be repaired immediately at Contractor's Own Expense. Graffiti and unauthorized postings shall be removed or painted over so as to maintain a clean and neat appearance. Mobile equipment and operable machinery shall be kept locked or otherwise made inoperable whenever left unattended.

3.12.7 Persons on Site. Contractor shall not allow any person, other than the workers on the Project, authorized representatives of a union, or other individuals authorized by County, to come upon any portion of the Site where the Work is being performed. Only authorized personnel will be permitted on the Site. Contractor shall at all times maintain good discipline and order among its employees and the employees of the Subcontractors. Any person in the employ of Contractor or of any Subcontractors whom County may deem, in its sole and absolute discretion, incompetent, unfit, intemperate, troublesome or otherwise undesirable shall be excluded from the Site and shall not again be employed on the Site except with written approval of County and all Losses to Contractor or County associated therewith shall be borne by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

3.12.8 County Uses and Activities. Contractor shall, prior to performing the Work at an operating or occupied County facility, become informed and take into specific account the uses by County and others of the Site and Existing Improvements, including, without limitation, business operations, public uses, employee uses, visitor uses, planned functions and ceremonies, and coordinate its planning, staging, scheduling, barricading and other performance of the Work so as to cause the minimum amount of interference or disturbance, whether before or after operating hours.

3.12.9 Dust, Fumes, Noise. Contractor shall take preventive measures to minimize, and eliminate wherever reasonably possible, generation of dust, fumes and noise.

3.12.10 Confinement of Operations. Contractor shall confine apparatus, the storage of materials and the operations of the workers to limits indicated by Contract Documents or as otherwise directed by County in writing.

3.12.11 Prohibited Substances. Contractor shall not permit (1) the possession or use of alcohol or controlled substances on the Site or (2) smoking in other than designated smoking areas approved by County.

3.12.12 Survey Markers. Contractor shall not disturb or cover any survey markers, monuments or other devices marking property boundaries or corners. If such markers are covered they shall be uncovered and if disturbed they shall be replaced by Contractor by means of the services of a licensed land surveyor. The costs of such uncovering and replacement shall be at Contractor's Own Expense.

3.12.13 Drainage, Erosion. Contractor is responsible for and shall make corrections to changes in patterns of surface water drainage resulting from, and related erosion control made necessary by, the performance of the Work.

3.12.14 Trenches. As required by California Labor Code §6705, if the Contract Price exceeds Twenty-Five Thousand Dollars (\$25,000) and involves the excavation of any trench or trenches five (5) feet or more in depth, Contractor shall, in advance of commencing excavation, submit to County a detailed plan showing the design of shoring, bracing, sloping or other provisions to be made for worker protection from the hazard of caving ground during the excavation of such trench or trenches. If such plan varies from the Shoring Systems Standards established by the Construction Safety Orders of the California Division of Industrial Safety, the plan shall be prepared by a registered civil or structural engineer, employed by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense. Nothing in this Paragraph 3.12.14 shall be deemed to allow the use of a system less effective than that required by such Construction Safety Orders. No excavation of such trench or trenches shall be commenced until such plan has been approved by County and Architect. Nothing in this Paragraph 3.12.14 shall be construed to impose any liability, including, without limitation, any tort liability, upon the County or upon any of its officers, agents, representatives or employees.

3.13 CUTTING AND PATCHING

Contractor shall be responsible for all cutting, fitting or patching required to complete the Work and to make its parts fit together properly both among themselves and with any Existing Improvements and the work of the Separate Contractors and of County's own forces. In all cases, cutting shall be performed under the supervision of competent mechanics skilled in the applicable trade and openings shall be cut as small as possible to prevent unnecessary damage. Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work, Existing Improvements or fully or partially completed construction of County's own forces or of the Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, excavating or otherwise altering such construction. Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter such Existing Improvements or construction by Separate Contractors or by County's own forces except with the written consent of such Separate Contractors or County, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, delayed or conditioned. When asked, Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold from the Separate Contractors or County the Contractor's consent to Separate Contractors' or County's own forces' cutting or other alteration of the Work as required to complete the work of the Separate Contractors or County's own forces.

3.14 UTILITIES AND SANITARY FACILITIES

3.14.1 Contractor Responsibility. Except as otherwise required by California Government Code §4215, Contractor shall contact all relevant utility providers and arrange for obtaining all available information, concerning location of subsurface utility lines. Prior to commencement of any digging, Contractor shall make its own investigation, including exploratory excavations, to determine the locations and type of Work which could result in damage to such utilities. In accordance with California Government Code §§4216 et seq., except in an emergency, Contractor shall contact the appropriate regional notification center at least two (2) the working days, but not more than fourteen (14) Days, prior to commencing any excavation, if the excavation will be conducted in an area which is known, or reasonably should be known, to contain sub-service installations, and shall obtain an inquiry identification number from the regional notification center. Contractor shall not assume, unless actual observed surface conditions at the Site indicate otherwise, that utilities are located in the same location as indicated on the as-built records or other information obtained by Contractor. Contractor shall conduct potholing in advance of digging in any areas where there are not apparent surface conditions at the Site indicating the actual location of underground utilities and be at all times vigilant in watching for any conditions encountered, above or below the surface of the ground, that might indicate that underground utilities are at locations other than those indicated by the as-built records or other information obtained by Contractor.

Contractor shall perform its digging operations in a slow and meticulous manner so as to avoid wherever reasonably possible damaging existing underground utilities. Contractor shall, at Contractor's Own Expense, make good any Loss to County or others as a result of Contractor's failure to perform any of its obligations under this Paragraph 3.14.1. Nothing stated in this Paragraph 3.14.1 shall be interpreted as requiring Contractor to do subsurface exploration or potholing for the purpose of locating subsurface utilities at the Site prior to the Bid Closing Deadline or as precluding the Contractor from receiving a Contract Adjustment for unknown subsurface utilities constituting Differing Site Conditions that are encountered in the course of performing the Site investigation or potholing required by this Paragraph 3.14.1.

3.14.2 County Responsibility. If and to the extent required by California Government Code §4215, County assumes the responsibility for removal, relocation, and protection of those existing main or trunkline utility facilities located at the Site at the time of commencement of the Work that are not identified in the Contract Documents. Provided that Contractor has exercised the Standard of Care in performing the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, Contractor shall be entitled to a Contract Adjustment for, relocating, repairing or removing any utility facilities not indicated in the Contract Documents with reasonable accuracy, including, without limitation, equipment on the Site necessarily idled thereby. Delays caused by County's or a utility owner's failure to provide for the removal or relocation of such utility facilities shall constitute a Compensable Delay. Nothing herein shall be deemed to require County to indicate the presence of existing service laterals or appurtenances whenever the presence of such utilities on the Site can be inferred from the presence of other visible facilities, such as buildings or meter junction boxes located on or adjacent to the Site.

3.14.3 Temporary Utilities. All utilities, including but not limited to electricity, water, gas and telephone, used in performance of the Work (including, without limitation, meters and temporary distribution systems from distribution points to points on Site where a utility is needed and "tap fees") shall be furnished and paid for by Contractor or, if furnished by County, shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense. Upon Final Completion of the Work, Contractor shall remove all temporary distribution systems. If the Work involves an addition to an existing facility, Contractor may, with written permission of County, granted or withheld in County's sole and absolute discretion, use County's existing utilities by making prearranged payments to County for utilities used by Contractor. When it is necessary to interrupt any existing utility service to make connections, a minimum of two (2) working days' advance notice shall be given to County. Interruptions shall be of the shortest possible duration and shall be scheduled during a time of Day that minimizes its impact on the operations of the existing facility. Any Loss to County or Contractor associated with interruption of a utility service as a result of Contractor's breach of, or failure to fully comply with, its obligations under this Paragraph shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

3.14.4 Sanitary Facilities. Contractor shall provide sanitary temporary toilet facilities, for the use of all the workers, in no fewer numbers than required by Applicable Laws, plus such additional facilities as may be directed by County. Such facilities shall be maintained in a sanitary condition at all times. Use of existing or permanent toilet facilities shall not be permitted except by written consent of County.

3.15 CLEANING UP

3.15.1 Contractor Responsibility. Contractor at all times shall keep the Site free from debris such as waste, rubbish and excess materials and equipment caused by the performance of the Work. At the end of each Day that Work is performed, Contractor shall not leave debris under, in or about the Site but shall promptly dispose of or remove same from the Site. Without limitation to the other clean up requirements of the Contract Documents, upon Final Completion, Contractor shall: (1) clean the interior and exterior of the buildings, including fixtures, equipment, walls, floors, ceilings, roofs, window sills and ledges, horizontal projections and any areas where debris has collected so surfaces are free from foreign material or discoloration; (2) clean and polish all glass, plumbing fixtures, finish hardware and similar finish surfaces and equipment; and (3) remove temporary fencing, barricades, planking, sanitary facilities and similar temporary facilities from the Site.

3.15.2 Cleanup by County. If Contractor fails upon 24 hours' notice by County to perform its obligation to clean up, County may arrange to do so, and the cost thereof shall be borne by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

3.16 ACCESS TO THE WORK

3.16.1 **County.** County, Inspectors of Record, Architect and County Consultants, and their representatives, and such other persons as authorized by County, shall at all times have access to the Work, either in preparation or in progress. Contractor shall provide safe and proper facilities for such access so that they and their representatives may perform their functions safely.

3.16.2 **Separate Contractors.** County, using its own forces or those of Separate Contractors, may, at any time during the performance of the Work, enter the Site for the purpose of performing construction or for any other purpose. Contractor shall cooperate with County, County's own forces and Separate Contractors and not interfere with other work being done by them or on their behalf.

3.16.3 **Delivery Routes.** Contractor shall arrange for delivery of material over routes designated by County.

3.17 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS

Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees relating to use of Intellectual Property Rights pertaining to Work performed. Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of Intellectual Property Rights and shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Indemnitees from Loss on account thereof in accordance with the terms of Section 3.18, below, unless the infringement is due to a particular design, process, product or product of a particular manufacturer that is required by the Contract Documents; provided, however, that if Contractor has information leading it to believe that the use of a particular design, process or product required by the Contract Documents would constitute an infringement of an Intellectual Property Right, then Contractor shall nonetheless be responsible to provide such defense, indemnification and hold harmless if such information is not promptly furnished in writing to County.

3.18 INDEMNIFICATION

3.18.1 **Contractor's Indemnity Obligation.** To the fullest extent permitted by Applicable Laws, Contractor agrees to indemnify, immediately defend at its own expense and hold harmless, County, Board of Supervisors, and each of their respective members, officers, employees, agents, insurers and volunteers ("Indemnitee(s)"), through legal counsel reasonably acceptable to County, from any and all Losses, whether real or alleged, regardless of whether caused in part by such Indemnitee or its agents, servants or independent contractors who are directly responsible to such Indemnitee, arising out of or relating to any of the following:

- .1 any act or omission of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier;
- .2 the activities of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, on the Site or on other properties related to performance of the Work or the preparation for performance of the Work;
- .3 the payment or nonpayment of any Subcontractor, of any Tier, for the Work performed, except where such nonpayment is the result of a breach by County of its payment obligations under the Contract Documents;
- .4 the existence or dispersal of any Hazardous Substances or Mold on the Site as a result of the failure of Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, to comply with its obligations under the Contract Documents;
- .5 the violation by Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, of an obligation under Section 3.17, above, involving infringement of an Intellectual Property Right; or
- .6 the violation by Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, of any Applicable Law, including, without limitation, the violation of any requirement of the State of California General Permit for Storm Water Discharges Associated with Construction Activity and subsequent amendments or orders for construction activities as applicable thereto (including, without limitation, the requirements of a Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan) or the violation of any applicable requirement of any local or regional Air Quality Management District (AQMD) (including, without limitation, a violation of any of the requirements set forth in the County MOU with AQMD dated January 6, 2004 Agenda Item 3.1 (for projects in the Coachella Valley) or AQMD Rule 403 (for projects west of the Coachella Valley));

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that nothing contained herein shall be construed as obligating Contractor to indemnify an Indemnitee for Losses resulting from the sole negligence, active negligence or willful misconduct of such Indemnitee or its agents, servants or independent contractors who are directly responsible to such Indemnitee or from a defect in design furnished by such Indemnitee, where such sole negligence, active negligence, willful misconduct or design defect has been determined by agreement of Contractor and that Indemnitee or has been adjudged by the final and binding findings of a court or arbitrator of competent jurisdiction. In instances where the active negligence or willful misconduct of an Indemnitee or its agents, servants or independent contractors who are directly responsible to such Indemnitee or a defect in a design furnished by such an Indemnitee accounts for only a portion or percentage of the Loss involved, the obligation of Contractor will be for that portion or percentage of the Loss not due to such active negligence, willful misconduct or design defect.

3.18.2 Indemnification of Adjacent Property Owners. In the event Contractor enters into an agreement with the owners of any adjacent property to enter upon such property for the purpose of performing the Work or other activities incidental to the Work, Contractor shall fully indemnify, defend and hold harmless any person or entity which owns or has any interest in such adjacent property against any Loss resulting from the acts or omissions of the Contractor or its Subcontractors. The form and content of such indemnification agreement shall be approved by County prior to commencement of any Work on or around such property.

3.18.3 Insurance and Employment Benefits. The indemnification, defense and hold harmless obligations of Contractor under this Section 3.18, as well as any such obligations stated elsewhere in the Contract Documents: (1) shall not be limited by the amounts or types of insurance (or the deductibles or self-insured retention amounts of such insurance) which any Indemnitee, Contractor or any Subcontractor carries or is required to carry under the terms of the Contract Documents; (2) is independent of and in addition to the Indemnitees' rights under the insurance to be provided by an Indemnitee, Contractor or any Subcontractor; and (3) shall not be limited, in the event of a claim against an Indemnitee by an employee of Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for Contractor or Subcontractor under any worker's compensation act, disability benefit act or other employee benefit program.

3.18.4 Subcontractor Indemnity Agreements. Contractor agrees to obtain or cause to be obtained executed defense and indemnity agreements with provisions identical to those set forth in this Section 3.18 from each and every Subcontractor, of every Tier.

3.18.5 Implied Indemnity Rights. Notwithstanding anything stated in this Section 3.18 or elsewhere in the Contract Documents to the contrary, an Indemnitee's right to seek equitable indemnity and contribution from Contractor is in no way diminished, limited or precluded by any agreement by Contractor to provide express contractual indemnity to such Indemnitee. Contractor's obligations under this Section 3.18 shall be deemed to completely eliminate and preclude any right by Contractor to seek contractual or equitable indemnity or contribution from any Indemnitee for any Loss covered by the Contractor's express indemnification obligations under this Section 3.18.

3.18.6 Obligation to Defend. The Contractor's obligation to defend under this Section 3.18 includes, without limitation, the obligation to immediately reimburse an Indemnitee for any attorney's fees, court costs (statutory and non-statutory), arbitration and mediation expenses, professional, expert and consultant fees, investigative costs, postage costs, document copying costs, telecopy costs and any and all other costs and expenses associated with defense of such Indemnitee as and when incurred by any Indemnitee in defense of a claim by any third person or entity as a result of Contractor's failure or refusal to comply with its immediate defense obligation to such Indemnitee. Nothing stated in this Section 3.18 or elsewhere in the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as providing or implying that the obligation of Contractor to defend an Indemnitee against an alleged Loss that is within the scope of the Contractor's indemnification obligation under this Section 3.18 or under any other provision of the Contract Documents is to any extent released, excused, limited or relieved by a finding, determination, award or judgment by a court or arbitrator that the alleged Loss was due to circumstances not within the scope of such indemnification obligation.

3.19 LABOR, WAGES, PAYROLL RECORDS

3.19.1 Public Work. This Work is a "public work" as defined in Labor Code §1720 and must be performed in accordance with the requirements of Labor Code §§1720 to 1850 and Title 8 California Code of Regulations §§16000 to 17270, which govern the payment of prevailing wage rates on public works projects.

3.19.2 Prevailing Wage Rates. Pursuant to the provisions of Article 2 (commencing at §1770), Chapter 1, Part 7, Division 2 of the Labor Code of California, the Board of Supervisors has obtained the general prevailing rate of per diem wages and the general prevailing rate for holiday and overtime Work in the locality in which the Work is to be performed for each craft, classification or type of worker needed to execute the Work from the Director of the Department of Industrial Relations. These rates are on file with County and copies will be made available to any interested party on request. Contractor shall post a copy of such wage rates at the Site. The adoption of such wage rates is not a representation that labor can be obtained at these rates. It is the responsibility of Contractor to inform itself as to the local labor conditions. Holiday and overtime Work, when permitted by Applicable Laws, shall be paid for at a rate of at least one and one-half times the adopted rate of per diem wages, unless otherwise specified. Holidays shall be defined in the collective bargaining agreement applicable to each particular craft, classification or type of worker employed.

3.19.3 Unclassified Workers. Any worker employed to perform the Work not covered by any classification listed in the general prevailing wage rate of per diem wages determined by the Director of the Department of Industrial Relations shall be paid not less than the minimum rate of wages specified therein for the classification which most nearly corresponds to the Work to be performed by him/her, and such minimum wage rate shall be retroactive to time of initial employment of such person on the Project in such classification.

3.19.4 Per Diem Wages. Contractor shall pay or shall cause to be paid each worker engaged in the Work not less than the general prevailing rate of per diem wages determined by the Director of the Department of Industrial Relations, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between Contractor or any of the Subcontractors and such workers. Pursuant to California Labor Code §1773.1, per diem wages are deemed to include employer payments for health and welfare, pension, vacation, travel time and subsistence pay.

3.19.5 Applicable Laws. Contractor represents and warrants that the Contractor's Bid and the Contract Price includes funds sufficient to allow Contractor to comply with all Applicable Laws governing the labor or services to be provided. Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Indemnitees in accordance with Section 3.18, above, for any violation of any Applicable Law, including but not limited to California Labor Code §2810, and agrees to pay all assessments, including wages and penalties, made against County in relation to such violations.

3.19.6 Posting at Site. Contractor shall post at appropriate conspicuous points on the Site the prevailing wage rates of the Department of Industrial Relations in accordance with 8 California Code of Regulations 16100(b).

3.19.7 Worker Hours. As provided in Article 3 (commencing at §1810), Chapter 1, Part 7, Division 2 of the California Labor Code, eight (8) hours of labor shall constitute a legal day's work. The standard work day of any worker employed at any time by Contractor or any of the Subcontractors performing the Work, or any part of the Work, shall, except as hereinafter provided, be limited and restricted by Contractor to eight (8) hours per day, between the hours of 6:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M. (unless otherwise required by Applicable Laws), plus one-half hour unpaid lunch approximately midway through the shift, provided that Contractor or any of the Subcontractors may establish a four day/ten-hour schedule consistent with Applicable Laws pertaining to payment of prevailing wages and the provisions any applicable collective bargaining agreement. A regular-work week shall constitute forty (40) hours during any one week. Notwithstanding the provisions hereinabove set forth, the parties hereto may agree to changes in the work day or the work week as permitted by Applicable Laws, and Contractor and all Subcontractors must pay the appropriate prevailing wage rate for those hours and days worked.

3.19.8 Overtime. Overtime work performed by employees of Contractor or any of the Subcontractors shall be compensated according to the applicable general prevailing rate established by the Department of Industrial Relations for holiday and overtime work for each craft, classification or type of worker in the locality in which the Work is to be performed.

3.19.9 Payroll Records. It shall be the sole responsibility of Contractor to ensure compliance with the provisions of Applicable Laws and the Contract Documents relating to maintenance and submission of payroll records. Pursuant to the provisions of California Labor Code §1776, Contractor shall keep, and shall cause each Subcontractor performing any portion of the Work to keep, accurate certified payroll records, showing the name, address, social security number, worker classification and straight-time and overtime hours worked each Day and week, and the actual per diem wages paid to each journeyman, apprentice, worker or other employee employed by Contractor in connection with the Work. Certified payroll records must be in the payroll reporting format prescribed by the Division of Labor Standards Enforcement. If there is no work by Contractor or a Subcontractor in a given week, Contractor must keep

and submit a certified "Nonperformance" payroll record, indicating "no work" for that week. Contractor shall submit all certified payroll records to County in complete, unredacted form with an original signature on the Statement of Compliance, along with, and as a condition to, its Applications for Payment. Additionally, payroll records shall be available for inspection at all reasonable hours at the principal office of Contractor on the following basis:

.1 a certified copy of an employee's payroll record shall be made available for inspection or furnished to such employee or his or her authorized representative on request;

.2 a certified copy of all such payroll records shall be made available for inspection or furnished upon request to County, the Division of Labor Standards Enforcement and/or the Division of Apprenticeship Standards of the Department of Industrial Relations or such other person or entity as designated by County;

.3 a certified copy of all such payroll records shall be made available upon request by the public for inspection or the copying thereof, provided that (1) such request is made by the public through either County, the Division of Apprenticeship Standards or the Division of Labor Standards Enforcement of the Department of Industrial Relations, (2) such requested payroll records have not previously been provided pursuant to Subparagraph 3.19.9.2, above, then the requesting individual or entity shall, prior to being provided the records, reimburse the costs of preparation by Contractor, the Subcontractors and the entity through which the request was made, and (3) the public shall not be given access to records at the principal office of Contractor;

.4 Contractor and each Subcontractor shall within ten (10) Days after receipt of a written request file a certified copy of such payroll records with the person or entity that requested the records;

.5 Contractor shall provide, and shall cause each Subcontractor to provide, payroll records as defined in Title 8 California Code of Regulations §16000 to County within ten (10) Days after receipt of written request, at no cost to County;

.6 any copy of such payroll records made available for inspection by, and copies furnished to, the public shall be redacted in a manner so as to prevent disclosure of an individual's name, address, and social security number, except that any copy made available for inspection by, and copies furnished to, a joint labor-management committee established pursuant to the federal Labor Management Cooperation Act of 1978 (29 U.S.C. Section 175a) shall be marked or redacted only to prevent disclosure of an individual's name and social security number, and in either event, the name and address of Contractor or the Subcontractor performing the Work shall not be so obliterated; and

.7 any copy made available to an agency included in the Joint Enforcement Strike Force on the Underground Economy established pursuant to Section 329 of the Unemployment Insurance Code and other law enforcement agencies investigating violations of law shall, upon request, be provided nonr copies of certified payroll records;

.8 Contractor shall inform County concurrently with the submission of its initial Application for Payment, of the location of such payroll records, including the street address, city and county, and thereafter shall, within five (5) working days, provide a notice of any change of location and address of such payroll records.

3.19.10 Apprentices. Contractor acknowledges that, even if performance of the Work involves a dollar amount greater than or a number of working days greater than that specified in California Labor Code §1777.5, it shall be the sole responsibility of Contractor, for all apprentice occupations, to ensure compliance with California Labor Code §1777.5, including, without limitation, the following provisions:

.1 Apprentices of any crafts or trades may be employed and, when required by California Labor Code §1777.5, shall be employed provided they are properly registered in full compliance with the provisions of the California Labor Code.

.2 Every such apprentice shall be paid the prevailing rate of per diem wages for apprentices in the trade to which he or she is registered and shall be employed only at the work of the craft or trade to which he or she is registered.

.3 Only apprentices, as defined in California Labor Code §3077, who are in training under apprenticeship standards and written apprentice agreements under Chapter 4 (commencing at §3070), Division 3 of the California Labor Code, are eligible to be employed at the apprentice wage rate on Public Works. The employment and training of each apprentice shall be in accordance with either: (1) the apprenticeship standards and apprentice agreements under which he or she is training, or (2) the rules and regulations of the California Apprenticeship Council.

.4 Contractor and any of the Subcontractors employing workers in any apprenticeable craft or trade in performing any of the Work shall apply to the applicable joint apprenticeship committee for a certificate approving Contractor or the Subcontractor under the applicable apprenticeship standards and fixing the ratio of apprentices to journeymen employed in performing the Work.

.5 Prior to commencing the Work, Contractor shall submit contract award information to an applicable apprenticeship program that can supply apprentices to the Site of the Work. The information submitted shall include an estimate of journeyman hours to be performed under the Construction Contract, the number of apprentices proposed to be employed, and the approximate dates the apprentices would be employed. A copy of this information shall also be submitted to County if requested by County.

.6 The ratio of the Work performed by apprentices to journeymen employed in a particular craft or trade on the Work may be no higher than the ratio stipulated in the apprenticeship standards under which the apprenticeship program operates, where Contractor or the Subcontractor agrees to be bound by those standards, but, except as otherwise provided in this Paragraph, in no case shall the ratio be less than one (1) hour of apprentice work for every five (5) hours of journeyman work. Apprentices may comprise up to thirty percent (30%) of the work force of each particular craft, classification or type of worker employed, unless the applicable joint apprenticeship committee establishes a lower percentage. To the extent possible, fifty percent (50%) of the apprentice work force shall consist of first-year apprentices.

.7 The interpretation and enforcement of California Labor Code §1777.5 shall be in accordance with the rules and procedures of the California Apprenticeship Council.

.8 Contractor and all the Subcontractors shall comply with California Labor Code §1777.6, which forbids certain discriminatory practices in the employment of apprentices.

.9 Contractor shall become fully acquainted with the law regarding apprentices prior to commencement of the Work, paying special attention to California Labor Code §§1777.5, 1777.6, and 1777.7 and Title 8, California Code of Regulations, §§200 et seq. Questions may be directed to the State Division of Apprenticeship Standards, 455 Golden Gate Avenue, San Francisco, California.

3.19.11 Pre-Construction Meetings, Interviews. Contractor shall attend any pre-construction meetings held by County to discuss labor requirements. Contractor and the Subcontractors shall allow County, County Consultants and the Department of Industrial Relations, and designated representatives of each, to conduct, at their discretion, interviews of workers at the Site during working hours.

3.19.12 Penalties for Violations.

.1 **Prevailing Wage Violations.** Pursuant to California Labor Code §1775, Contractor and any of the Subcontractors shall, as a penalty, pay an amount not to exceed Two Hundred Dollars (\$200) for each Day, or portion thereof, for each worker paid less than the prevailing rates, determined by the Director of the Department of Industrial Relations, for the trade or craft in which such worker is employed by Contractor or, except as provided by said §1775, by any of the Subcontractors, of any Tier, for performance of the Work. The amount of this penalty shall be determined by the Labor Commissioner and shall be based on consideration of both: (1) whether the failure of Contractor or the Subcontractor to pay the correct rate of per diem wages was a good faith mistake and, if so, whether the error was promptly and voluntarily corrected upon being brought to the attention of Contractor or the Subcontractor; and (2) whether Contractor or the Subcontractor has a prior record of failing to meet its prevailing wage obligations. The difference between the amount owed to each worker pursuant to such prevailing wage rates, and the amount paid to each worker for each Day or portion thereof for which each worker was paid less than the prevailing wage rate, shall be paid to each worker by Contractor.

.2 Working Hour Violations. Pursuant to Labor Code §1813, Contractor shall pay a penalty of Twenty-Five Dollars (\$25) per worker employed in the performance of the Work by Contractor or by any of the Subcontractors for each Day during which such worker is required or permitted to work more than eight (8) hours in any Day and forty (40) hours in any one calendar week in violation of the provisions of Article 3 (commencing at §1810), Chapter 1, Part 7, Division 2 of the California Labor Code.

.3 Payroll Record Violations. Pursuant to California Labor Code §1776, Contractor shall in the event of a failure to comply within ten (10) Days with any written notice requesting the records enumerated in subdivision (a) of said §1776, pay a penalty of One Hundred Dollars (\$100) for each Day, or portion thereof, for each worker, until Contractor has strictly complied with such request. Upon the request of the Division of Apprenticeship Standards or the Division of Labor Standards Enforcement, these penalties shall be withheld from progress payments then due.

.4 Apprenticeship Violations. Pursuant to California Labor Code §1777.7, if Contractor or the Subcontractor is determined by the Chief of the Division of Apprenticeship Standards (the "Chief") to have knowingly committed a first-time violation of California Labor Code §1777.5, Contractor or the Subcontractor shall pay, as a civil penalty, an amount not exceeding One Hundred Dollars (\$100) for each full Day of noncompliance, provided that the amount of this penalty may be reduced by the Chief if the penalty would be disproportionate to the severity of the violation. In lieu of this penalty, the Chief may, for a first-time violation and with the concurrence of the joint apprenticeship committee, order Contractor or the Subcontractor to provide apprentice employment equivalent to the work hours that would have been provided for apprentices during the period of noncompliance. If such violation by Contractor or the Subcontractor is a second or subsequent violation committed within a three (3) year period from a previous violation of §1777.5, Contractor or the Subcontractor shall pay, as a civil penalty, to County the sum of not more than Three Hundred Dollars (\$300) for each full Day of noncompliance. County shall withhold the amount of the civil penalty from contract progress payments then due or to become due. In addition, if Contractor or the Subcontractor is determined to have knowingly committed a serious violation of any provision of §1777.5, the Chief may deny to Contractor or the Subcontractor, and to its responsible officers, the right to bid on or be awarded a contract to perform work as a subcontractor on any subsequent project for County for a period of up to one (1) year for the first violation and for a period of up to three (3) years for a second or subsequent violation.

3.19.13 Subcontractor Provisions. Contractor shall include, and shall require the Subcontractors to include, contractual provisions in all contracts they enter into for the performance of the Work requiring compliance with the provisions of this Section 3.19 at no additional cost.

3.19.14 Condition of Payment. Compliance by Contractor with the requirements of this Section 3.19 and each of its Paragraphs shall be a condition to Contractor's right to payment under its Applications for Payment. Without limitation to the foregoing, payments to Contractor shall not be made when payroll records are delinquent or inadequate.

3.20 LABOR CODE §2810

3.20.1 Application. The provisions of this Section 3.20 apply only if the Contractor has not executed a collective bargaining agreement covering the workers who will be employed to perform the Work.

3.20.2 Declaration by Contractor. If a Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds has not been submitted by Contractor as a Post-Award Submittal, then it must be submitted prior to Award. In executing the Construction Contract, Contractor warrants and represents that all of the statements contained in its Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds remain true and correct as of the date of execution of the Construction Contract and may be relied upon by County in determining whether there appears to be sufficient funds in the Contractor's Bid to allow the Contractor to comply with all Applicable Laws governing the labor or services to be provided for the performance of the Work. The truth and accuracy of the statements contained in said Declaration and in this Paragraph 3.20.2 constitute a material part of the Contractor's consideration for, and a material inducement to the County's entering into, the Construction Contract.

3.20.3 Continuing Duty. To the extent that any of the information provided in the Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds submitted by Contractor relating to numbers of workers or independent contractors that will be employed or utilized for performance of the Work was or is based upon a best estimate, rather than actual figures or information, then the Contractor assumes the continuing duty to the County to ascertain the actual figures and information requested in the Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds and to provide such actual figures and information to the County in the form

of a revised and updated Declaration of Sufficiency of Funds once the actual figures and information become known.

3.21 URBAN RUNOFF AND STORM WATER COMPLIANCE

3.21.1 Contractor's Responsibility. If and to the extent storm water permitting, control, mitigation or discharge control is required by Applicable Laws, the Contractor shall: (1) prior to starting any Work at the Site, sign and implement the Storm Water Management Plans or Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans as previously prepared by the County's Consultant for civil engineering or by others; (2) take all necessary steps to monitor, report, enforce and otherwise implement and comply with the requirements of the Storm Water Permit, Storm Water Management Plans and Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans and all Applicable Laws pertaining to the elimination or mitigation of storm water pollutant discharge to separate storm sewer systems or other watercourses, including without limitation, applicable requirements of the State Water Resources Control Board, Santa Ana, San Diego, and/or Colorado Region Water Quality Control Boards and municipal storm water management programs; (3) adhere to and implement the Special Provisions for Urban Runoff and Water Pollution Control set forth in the Specifications; and (4) ensure that the Work is constructed in conformance with those post-construction best management practices (BMPs) identified within the project-specific Water Quality Management Plan (WQMP).

3.21.2 Inspections, Reports. Contractor shall immediately notify the person identified to Contractor as the County's "project manager" for the Project of all inspections by Government Authorities (including, but not limited to, any regional board staff) and, if practicable, arrange for participation by such Governmental Authorities in any other pertinent inspections conducted at the Site. Contractor shall provide to County copies of all reports and monitoring information related to the matters covered by this Section 3.21.

3.21.3 Violations. The Contractor recognizes and understands that failure to comply with the requirements of any applicable storm water-related permit issued by the State of California or the United States pursuant to the Clean Water Act (Title 33 U.S.C. §§ 1251 et seq) and/or the Porter Cologne Water Quality Control Act (California Water Code §§13000 et seq.) is a violation of Applicable Laws. Contractor shall be responsible for all Losses and for any liability (including, without limitation, fines, penalties and other administrative liabilities and costs) imposed by Applicable Laws as a result of the Contractor's failure to comply with Applicable Laws, including, without limitation, the requirements of this Section 3.21.

3.21.4 Condition of Payment. Compliance by the Contractor with the requirements of this Section 3.21 shall be a condition to the Contractor's right to payment under its Applications for Payment.

3.21.5 Costs of Compliance. The Contractor represents and warrants that it has included in its Bid all costs of compliance with the requirements of this Section 3.21.

3.22 SOLID WASTE MANAGEMENT

Contractor shall comply with all provisions of Applicable Laws (including, without limitation, the requirements of the California Public Resources Code, rules and regulations of the California Integrated Waste Management Board and provisions of any Site-specific plans adopted by County) that are applicable to the activities of contractors performing construction or related activities on the Site. Compliance by Contractor with the requirements of this Section 3.22 shall be a condition to Contractor's right to payment under its Applications for Payment.

3.23 CEQA COMPLIANCE

No Work that is subject to California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) shall proceed by Contractor until Contract Documents satisfying the CEQA process are reviewed and approved by the County. Contractor shall comply with all applicable CEQA requirements. If there is a federal nexus (e.g. a source of federal funding) to the Project, compliance by Contractor with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) will be required in addition to and in conjunction with compliance with requirements of CEQA. The Contractor shall comply with the conditions identified on the Plans and Specifications for compliance with the California Environmental Quality Act, including, without limitation, all requirements pertaining to Mitigation, Monitoring, and Reporting Program (MMRP).

3.24 AQMD COMPLIANCE

Contractor is responsible for full and complete compliance with, as applicable: (1) AQMD Rule 403.1, County Ordinance 742, the County MOU with AQMD dated January 6, 2004 Agenda Item 3.1 (for projects in the Coachella Valley); or (2) AQMD Rule 403 (for projects west of the Coachella Valley). Any fines imposed by AQMD on the County, as well as any other Loss to County, as a result of non-compliance by Contractor with the applicable provisions of the foregoing requirements are the responsibility of Contractor and upon request by County will be paid to County by Contractor or may be withheld by County from amounts due to Contractor under its Applications for Payment.

ARTICLE 4 CONSTRUCTION ADMINISTRATION

4.1 ARCHITECT

4.1.1 Scope of Authority. The Architect shall have the authority to act on behalf of County only as expressly provided in the Contract Documents and subject to such limitations on authority as set forth in Paragraph 4.1.2, below. As clarification of the foregoing, if the Contract Documents provide that the Architect has the right to approve of, consent to or direct that Contractor take or forbear from taking an action, such authority shall be limited to issuing such approval, consent or direction and shall not include, or be interpreted to include, authority to bind County with respect to any of the matters set forth in Paragraph 4.1.2, below. If Contractor's compliance with such approval, consent or direction of the Architect would involve or require authorization by County within the scope of the matters set forth in Paragraph 4.1.2, below, Contractor has the obligation, in addition to complying with the Architect's approval, consent or direction, to take steps in accordance with the Contract Documents to obtain such authorization of County as may be required and failing to do so shall not have any right to recourse or recovery from County on account of Contractor's action taken or Work performed in response to such approval, consent or direction by Architect.

4.1.2 Limitations on Authority. Without limitation to the other limitations on the Architect's authority expressed or implied under Paragraph 4.1.1, above, and notwithstanding anything else set forth in the Contract Documents to the contrary, Architect does not have authority to: (1) obligate or commit County to any payment of money; (2) obligate County to any adjustment to the Contract Price or Contract Time; (3) relieve Contractor of any of its obligations under the Contract Documents; (4) approve or order any Work involving Delay or Extra Work; or (5) perform any act, make any decision or give any direction or approval that is described in these General Conditions as an act, decision, direction or approval that is to be performed, made or given by any person or entity other than Architect.

4.1.3 Work Stoppage. Architect's authority includes, without limitation, the authority to stop the Work whenever such stoppage may be necessary, in Architect's opinion, for the proper execution of the Work. Any Work that is stopped or disapproved by order of Architect shall be resumed if and when County so directs in writing, with or without the concurrence of the Architect.

4.1.4 Replacement. County may, in its sole discretion, substitute another person or entity, or add persons or entities, to perform the functions of Architect or to exercise some or all of the authority of Architect provided for in the Contract Documents.

4.1.5 County Rights. All rights and authority conferred upon Architect under the Contract Documents constitute rights that County may, in its sole and absolute discretion, exercise in writing on its own behalf, irrespective of whether the County has ordered the removal, replacement or a change in the authority of the Architect.

4.2 ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

4.2.1 Observations of the Work. Architect will visit the Site as appropriate to the stage of the Work to observe the Work in progress. Observations shall be for the purpose of ascertaining the progress of the Work and that the character, scope, quality and detail of construction (including workmanship and materials) comply with the Contract Documents, the Architect's directives, approved Submittals and clarifications issued by Architect. Observations shall be separate from any inspections which may be provided by others.

4.2.2 Means, Methods. Construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, procedures and safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work are solely the responsibility of Contractor. Neither County nor

Architect: (1) has control over or charge of, nor are they responsible for, Contractors or any Subcontractor's construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, procedures, safety precautions or programs in connection with the Work, all of which are, as between Contractor and County, solely Contractor's responsibility; (2) is responsible for Contractor's failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents; or (3) has control over, charge of, or responsibility for acts or omissions of Contractor, the Subcontractors or their agents or employees, or of any other persons performing portions of the Work.

4.2.3 Communications by Contractor. County shall be provided by Contractor with copies of all communications from Contractor or the Subcontractors to Separate Contractors or the Architect. Contractor shall not rely on oral or other non-written communications.

4.2.4 Review of Applications for Payment. If requested by County, Architect will review and certify all Applications for Payment by Contractor, including Applications for Payment requesting Progress Payments and Final Payment. In such cases, if the Architect and County do not concur in respect to the amount to be paid to Contractor, County's determination of the amount due will prevail.

4.2.5 Rejection of the Work. Architect will have authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents and to require additional inspection or testing, in accordance with Article 10, below, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed. Whenever Architect considers it necessary or advisable for implementation of the intent of the Contract Documents, Architect will have authority to require additional inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Article 10, below, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed. Neither Architect's authority to act under this Paragraph 4.2.5 nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority, shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of Architect to Contractor, the Subcontractors, their agents or employees, or other persons performing any of the Work. County shall have the right, notwithstanding a recommendation by the Architect pursuant to this Paragraph 4.2.5 to reject a portion of the Work, to elect to accept the Work rejected by Architect and to direct in writing the manner in which the Work is to be performed and Contractor shall comply therewith.

4.2.6 Review of Submittals. Architect and such other County Consultants as Architect or County determines appropriate will review, approve or take other appropriate action upon the Contractor's Submittals. Such review, approval and other action taken in regard to a Submittal is for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents and is not conducted for the purpose of determining the technical accuracy and completeness of the Submittal, checking details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the sole responsibility of Contractor. Actions by Architect and County Consultants in connection with review of a Submittal by Contractor will be taken with such promptness as to cause no unreasonable Delay in the Work of Contractor or in the activities of the Separate Contractors or County, while allowing sufficient time in their judgments to permit adequate review. Whether or not County has identified a particular Submittal for review by Architect or a County Consultant, Contractor shall in all cases submit Submittals sufficiently in advance to allow time to permit adequate review by Architect and other County Consultants. Neither Architect's nor any County Consultant's review of a Submittal shall: (1) relieve Contractor of its obligations under Section 3.11, above; (2) constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated in writing by the Architect or County Consultant at the time such Submittal is returned to Contractor; (3) be construed as an approval of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures; and (4) if it involves review or approval of a specific item, be construed as indicating approval of an assembly of which such item is a component.

4.2.7 Changes. After consultation with the Architect, County will prepare the Change Orders, Unilateral Change Orders and Construction Change Directives for execution and take appropriate action thereon in accordance with Article 7, below.

4.3 CLAIMS

4.3.1 Submission of Claims. All Claims by Contractor shall be submitted in accordance with the procedures set forth in this Section 4.3.

4.3.2 Arising of Claim.

.1 Changes. A Claim by Contractor involving a Contract Adjustment due to a Compensable Change or Deleted Work arises upon issuance of a decision denying, in whole or in part, Contractor's Change Order Request. Such Claim shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with the requirements of this Section 4.3, including, without limitation, Paragraphs 4.3.3 through 4.3.5, below.

.2 Other Claims. Claims by Contractor other than those described in Subparagraph 4.3.2.1, above, arise at the time that County receives written notice by Contractor of Contractor's intent to file the Claim. Such notice of intent shall be given no later than five (5) Days after the Discovery Date relative to such circumstances (even if Contractor has not yet experienced a Loss or Delay due to such circumstances) and shall state the event or condition giving rise to the Claim and its probable effect, if any, upon the Contract Price and Contract Time. **FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO SUBMIT A NOTICE OF INTENT TO FILE CLAIM IN ACCORDANCE WITH THIS SUBPARAGRAPH 4.3.2.2 SHALL, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 4.6 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF THE RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY UPON SUCH CLAIM.**

4.3.3 Content of Claims. A Claim must include the following:

- .1** a statement that it is a Claim and a request for a decision on the Claim;
- .2** a detailed description of the act, error, omission, unforeseen condition, event or other circumstance giving rise to the Claim;
- .3** supporting documentation as follows: (1) if the Claim involves a Contract Adjustment due to Compensable Change or Deleted Work, documentation demonstrating that a complete Notice of Change and Change Order Request were timely and properly submitted as required by Article 7, below; (2) if the Claim involves an adjustment to the Contract Time, documentation demonstrating that a complete Notice of Delay and Request for Extension were timely and properly submitted as required by Article 7 and Article 8, below; and (3) if the Claim does not involve a Contract Adjustment on the basis of Compensable Change or Deleted Work, documentation demonstrating that a notice of intent to file the Claim was timely and properly submitted as required by Subparagraph 4.3.2.2, above;
- .4** a detailed justification for any remedy or relief sought by the Claim, including, without limitation, all of the following: (1) a detailed cost breakdown in the form required for submittal of Change Order Requests, which complies with the prohibition on "total cost" calculations set forth in Paragraph 7.7.15, below; and (2) job cost records substantiating the actual costs that have been incurred; and
- .5** a written certification, signed by a responsible managing officer or principal of Contractor's organization who has the authority to sign contracts on behalf of Contractor and who has personally investigated the matters alleged in the Claim, in the following form:

"I hereby certify under penalty of perjury that I am a managing officer or principal of (Contractor) and that I have reviewed the Claim presented herewith on Contractor's behalf and/or on behalf of (Subcontractor(s)) and that the following statements are, to the best of my knowledge after diligent inquiry into the circumstances of such Claim, true and correct:

(i) the facts alleged in or that form the basis for the Claim are true and accurate;

(ii) I do not know of any facts or circumstances, not alleged in the Claim, that by reason of their not being alleged render any fact or statement alleged in the Claim materially misleading;

(iii) I have, with respect to any request for money or damages alleged in or that forms the basis for the Claim, reviewed the job cost records (including those maintained by Contractor and by any Subcontractor, of any Tier, that is asserting all or any portion of the Claim) and confirmed with reasonable certainty that the losses or damages alleged to have been

suffered by Contractor and/or such Subcontractor were in fact suffered in the amounts and for the reasons alleged in the Claim;

(iv) I have, with respect to any request for extension of time or claim of delay, disruption, hindrance or interference alleged in or that forms the basis for the Claim, reviewed the job schedules (including those maintained by Contractor and by any Subcontractor, of any Tier, that is asserting all or any portion of the Claim) and confirmed that the delays or disruption alleged to have been suffered by Contractor and/or such Subcontractor were in fact experienced for the durations, in the manner, and with the consequent effects on the time and/or sequence of performance of the Work, as alleged in the Claim; and,

(v) Contractor has not received payment from County for, nor has Contractor previously released County from, any portion of the Claim.

Signature: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Company: _____

Date: _____

4.3.4 **Noncompliance.** Failure by Contractor to comply with Paragraph 4.3.3, above, shall give County the right, without obligation, to deny the Claim or return the Claim without any response.

4.3.5 **Submission of Claims.**

.1 **Time for Filing.** All Claims and supporting documentation and certifications required to be submitted by Contractor must be submitted to the County within thirty (30) Days after the Claim arises (as "arises" is defined in Paragraph 4.3.2, above). No Claims by Contractor are permitted after Final Payment.

.2 **Manner of Filing.** A Claim shall be submitted by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested.

.3 **Condition Precedent.** Contractor's strict compliance with the requirements of this Section 4.3 as to a Claim shall be considered a condition precedent to Contractor's right to initiate or seek determination of its rights in any legal proceedings with respect to such Claim.

4.3.6 **Response to Claims by Contractor.**

.1 **Claims Response.** County shall provide a reasonable review and issue a written Good Faith Determination within forty-five (45) Days of receipt of the Claim, unless County and Contractor have by mutual agreement extended the time period. The written Good Faith Determination shall identify which portion of the Claim is disputed by County and which portion is undisputed.

.2 **Meeting with Board.** If County should need to submit and gain approval of the Board of Supervisors prior to providing the Contractor the written statement identifying the undisputed and disputed portions of the Claim, and the governing body does not meet within the forty-five (45) days or within the mutually agreed time extension, County shall have three (3) days following the next duly publicly noticed meeting of the Board of Supervisors after the forty-five (45) day period, or agreed extension, to provide Contractor a written statement identifying the disputed portion and undisputed portion of the Claim.

.3 Payments on Undisputed Portion(s). Any payment due on an undisputed portion of the Claim shall be processed and made within sixty (60) days after County issues its written statement. Amounts not paid in a timely manner shall bear interest at 7 percent per annum.

.4 Failure of County to Respond. If County should fail to respond to a Claim from Contractor within the time periods set forth in this 4.3.6 or otherwise meet the time requirements, the Claim shall be deemed rejected in its entirety. A Claim that is denied by reasons of County's failure to have responded to the Claim, or its failure to otherwise meet the requirements of Public Contract Code §9204, shall not constitute an adverse finding with regard to the merits of the Claim or the responsibility or qualifications of the Contractor.

4.3.7 Meet and Confer.

.1 Dispute by Contractor. If Contractor disputes County's Good Faith Determination and written response of a Claim by Contractor, or if County fails to respond within the prescribed time set forth herein, the Contractor may demand, in writing sent by registered or certified mail return receipt requested, an informal conference to meet and confer for settlement of the issues still in dispute. Upon receipt of such demand, County shall schedule a meet and confer conference within thirty (30) Days.

.2 Conclusion of Meet and Confer. Within ten (10) business days following conclusion of the meet and confer conference, if the Claim or any portion thereof remains in dispute, County shall provide the Contractor with a written statement identifying the portion of the Claim still in dispute and the portion that is undisputed. Any payment due on the undisputed portion shall be processed and made within sixty (60) days after such written statement is issued. Amounts not paid in a timely manner shall bear interest at 7 percent per annum.

.3 Mediation. Any disputed portion of the Claim as identified by the Contractor in writing, shall be submitted to non-binding mediation with the County and Contractor sharing the associated costs equally. The County and Contractor shall mutually agree to a mediator within ten (10) business days after the disputed portion of the Claim has been identified in writing. If the parties cannot agree upon a mediator, each party shall select a mediator and those mediators shall select a qualified neutral third party to mediate with regard to the disputed portion of the Claim. Each party shall bear the fees and costs charged by its respective mediator in connection with the selection of the neutral mediator. Mediation includes any non-binding process, including, but not limited to, neutral evaluation or a dispute review board, in which an independent third party or board assist the parties in dispute resolution through negotiation or by issuance of an evaluation. Any mediation utilized shall conform to the timeframes in this section.

.4 If mediation is unsuccessful, the parts of the Claim remaining in dispute shall be subject to applicable procedures outside this section.

4.3.8 Subcontractor Claims.

.1 Subcontractor Claim. If a subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor has a claim against the County, the Contractor may present to the County a claim on behalf of a subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor. A subcontractor may request in writing, either on his or her own behalf or on behalf of a lower tier subcontractor, that the Contractor present a claim for work which was performed by the subcontractor or a lower tier subcontractor on behalf of the subcontractor. The subcontractor requesting that the claim be presented to the County shall furnish reasonable documentation to support the claim.

.2 Contractor Response. Within forty five (45) days of receipt of the written request by the subcontractor, the Contractor shall notify the subcontractor in writing as to whether the Contractor presented the claim to the County and, if the Contractor did not present the claim, provide the subcontractor with a statement of the reasons for not having done so.

4.3.9 Claims Based on Differing Site Conditions.

.1 Contractor Responsibility. Save and except as hereinafter provided in this Paragraph 4.3.9 for Contract Adjustments due to Differing Site Conditions, Contractor agrees at Contractor's Own Expense to assume the risk and costs of Extra Work and Delay due to concealed or unknown conditions, surface or subsurface, at the Site or in Existing Improvements.

.2 Differing Site Conditions. Differing Site Conditions are those conditions at the Site or in Existing Improvements and not otherwise reasonably ascertainable by Contractor in the performance of its obligations under the Contract Documents (including, without limitation, conditions not reasonably ascertainable by Contractor from documents or information described in Paragraph 3.2.1, above, that were provided or available to Contractor for its review prior to the Bid Closing Deadline) that constitute: (1) hazardous materials that constitute hazardous waste, as defined in California Health and Safety Code §25117, that is required to be removed to a Class I, Class II, or Class III disposal site in accordance with provisions of Applicable Laws; (2) subsurface or concealed conditions at the Site or concealed conditions in Existing Improvements which differ materially from those indicated by the Contract Documents or other information that was either reviewed by Contractor or that Contractor was given the opportunity to review prior to the Bid Closing Deadline; or (3) unknown physical conditions at the Site or concealed conditions in Existing Improvements of an unusual nature, differing materially from those ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in work of the character provided for in the Contract Documents.

.3 Notice of Change. If Contractor encounters conditions it believes constitute Differing Site Conditions, then Contractor shall, before such conditions are disturbed, give Notice of Change as required by Paragraph 7.6.1, below, stating, without limitation, a detailed description and precise location of the conditions encountered.

.4 Investigation by County. Upon receipt of notice from Contractor as required by Subparagraph 4.3.9.3, above, County shall promptly investigate Contractor's report of Differing Site Conditions.

.5 Change Order Request. If Contractor intends to seek a Contract Adjustment based upon Differing Site Conditions, it shall submit a complete and timely Change Order Request in accordance with Paragraph 7.6.2, below, setting forth its request for a Contract Adjustment.

.6 Contract Adjustments. If, following Contractor's compliance with its obligations under this Paragraph 4.3.9, County finds that Differing Site Conditions exist, then, unless the Contractor's right to Contract Adjustment has been waived as pursuant to Paragraph 3.2.3, above, a Contract Adjustment shall be made for the resulting Compensable Change and Compensable Delay, in such amount and duration as County determines by issuance of a Good Faith Determination are reasonable and permitted by these General Conditions.

.7 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO STRICTLY COMPLY WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS PARAGRAPH 4.3.9 PERTAINING TO CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT BASED ON A CLAIM FOR DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS SHALL, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 4.6 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF THE RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY UPON SUCH CLAIM.

.8 Final Completion. No claim by Contractor for additional compensation for Differing Site Conditions shall be allowed if asserted after Final Payment.

4.3.10 Continuous Work. Contractor shall, notwithstanding the existence of a Claim by Contractor that is disputed by County, maintain continuous performance, without interruption, suspension or slowing, of the Work and its other obligations (1) pending issuance by County of a Good Faith Determination of the Claim and (2) thereafter in compliance with the terms of such Good Faith Determination.

4.4 NOTICE OF THIRD-PARTY CLAIMS

County shall provide notification to Contractor within a reasonable time after receipt of any third-party claim relating to the Construction Contract. County shall be entitled to recover from Contractor its reasonable costs of providing such notification.

4.5 WAIVERS OF RIGHTS BY CONTRACTOR

COUNTY AND CONTRACTOR ACKNOWLEDGE THAT IT IS IN THE INTERESTS OF BOTH PARTIES THAT CHANGES, DELAYS AND CLAIMS BE IDENTIFIED, QUANTIFIED, EVALUATED AND FINALLY RESOLVED PROMPTLY, CONTEMPORANEOUSLY WITH THE CIRCUMSTANCES FROM WHICH THEY ARISE, AND THAT THERE BE CERTAINTY WITH RESPECT TO THE FINALITY OF ANY RESOLUTION OF RELATED DISPUTES. ON

THOSE PREMISES, AND IN FURTHER RECOGNITION OF THE FACT THAT IT WOULD BE EXTREMELY DIFFICULT OR IMPOSSIBLE TO QUANTIFY, DEMONSTRATE OR PROVE THE HARM TO COUNTY IF ANY OF THE FOREGOING PREMISES IS NOT ACHIEVED DUE TO A FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO COMPLY WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS CONCERNING TIMELY NOTICE OR SUBMISSIONS OF NOTICES AND CLAIMS RELATING TO CHANGES, DELAY AND CONTRACT ADJUSTMENTS, COUNTY AND CONTRACTOR AGREE THAT FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO CONFORM TO SUCH REQUIREMENTS OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS SHALL IN AND OF ITSELF CONSTITUTE SUFFICIENT CAUSE AND GROUNDS, WITHOUT THE NECESSITY OF COUNTY DEMONSTRATING ANY ACTUAL HARM OR PREJUDICE, FOR IMPOSING UPON CONTRACTOR A FULL AND UNCONDITIONAL WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF ITS RIGHT TO A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT AND OF ITS RIGHTS AND RECOURSE FOR RECOVERY OF ANY RELATED LOSS BY ANY LEGAL PROCESS OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR UNDER APPLICABLE LAWS.

4.6 GOOD FAITH DETERMINATIONS

Wherever in the Contract Documents it is provided that the County may or shall make a determination or decision in the exercise of good faith (including, without limitation, provisions for a Good Faith Determination by County), any such determination or decision that the person exercising such right on behalf of County believes in good faith to be a proper exercise of County's rights and to have a reasonable basis in fact, whether or not such determination is in fact proper, reasonable or correct or adjudged to be so, shall be complied with by Contractor without Delay to Contractor's performance of the Work. However, unless the Contract Documents expressly provides otherwise, neither such good faith determination or decision nor Contractor's compliance therewith shall be interpreted as precluding the Contractor from exercising its rights to seek adjudication of its rights in the manner permitted by these General Conditions or Applicable Laws.

4.7 ESCROW BID DOCUMENTS

If the Bidding Documents obligate Contractor to submit Escrow Bid Documents, then submission by Contractor of its Escrow Bid Documents shall constitute a warranty and representation by Contractor that it has no other written documents or electronic files containing any information that Contractor was required to include, but failed to include, as part of its performing such obligation and Contractor agrees it shall have no right to submit for consideration by County, or offer into evidence in legal proceedings, in support of a request for Contract Adjustment or a Claim any such documentation or electronic files that Contractor so failed to include in its Escrow Bid Documents.

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

5.1 SUBSTITUTION

5.1.1 Substitutions Allowed. There shall be no substitution of or addition to the Subcontractors except as permitted by Chapter 4 (commencing at §4100), Division 2, Part 1 of the California Public Contract Code (the "Act").

5.1.2 Contractor's Own Expense. Any increase in the cost or time of performance of the Work resulting from the replacement, substitution or addition of a Subcontractor shall be borne solely by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

5.1.3 Substantiation of Compliance. At any time during performance of the Work it shall be the responsibility and burden of Contractor, if requested by County, to present clear and convincing evidence that Contractor is, and all times during the bidding and Award of the Construction Contract was, in full compliance with all of the applicable provisions of the Act. Failure by Contractor to present such evidence when requested shall be deemed a breach of this Section 5.1 and of the Act, thereby entitling County to exercise any or all of its rights and remedies under the Contract Document or Applicable Laws, including, without limitation, the right to cancel the Construction Contract or assess any penalties provided for by the Act.

5.1.4 Splitting Prohibited. Any attempt by Contractor to avoid compliance with the Act, such as, but not limited to, by splitting the work of subcontracts with Subcontractors into separate contracts or changes orders so as to not exceed the monetary threshold of the Act applicable to listing of Subcontractors, is strictly prohibited.

5.2 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS

5.2.1 Written Agreements. Contractor shall, by written agreement entered into between the Contractor and Subcontractors no later than twenty (20) Days after Award, require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents and to assume toward Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities which Contractor, by the Contract Documents, assumes toward County and the Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of County and the Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies and redress against Contractor that Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against County. Contractor shall require each first-Tier Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with their sub-subcontractors. Copies of applicable portions of the Contract Documents shall be made available by Contractor to the first-Tier Subcontractors and each Subcontractor shall similarly make copies of such Contract Documents available to each Subcontractor of a lower-Tier with which it contracts. Without limitation to the foregoing, each contract that is entered into by a Subcontractor, of any Tier, shall, without limitation, require the Subcontractor:

- .1 to perform the Work in accordance with the terms of the Contract Documents;
- .2 to assume toward Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities which Contractor assumes toward County by the Contract Documents;
- .3 to preserve and protect the rights of County under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights;
- .4 to waive all rights (including, without limitation, rights of subrogation) that the Subcontractor or its insurers may have against County and others required by the Contract Documents to be named as additional insureds, for Losses covered by insurance carried by Contractor or County, except for such rights as the Subcontractor may have to the proceeds of such insurance held by County or such other additional insured;
- .5 to afford County and entities and agencies designated by County the same rights and remedies afforded to them under the Contract Documents with respect to access to, and the right to audit and copy at County's cost, all of the Subcontractor's books, records, contracts, correspondence, instructions, drawings, receipts, vouchers, purchase orders, memoranda and other records and documents relating to the Work and requiring the Subcontractor to preserve all such records and other items for a period of ten (10) years after Final Completion;
- .6 to recognize the rights of the County under Section 5.3, below, including, without limitation, the County's right to (1) accept assignment of the Subcontractor's agreement, (2) accept assignment of Contractor's rights as obligee under a performance bond furnished by a first-Tier Subcontractor, (3) to retain the Subcontractor pursuant to the terms of its agreement with Contractor to complete the unperformed obligations under its agreement, and, (4) if requested by the County, to require that the Subcontractor execute a written agreement on terms acceptable to the County confirming that the Subcontractor is bound to the County under the terms of its agreement with Contractor;
- .7 to submit applications for payment, requests for change orders and extensions of time and claims, and to comply with all other notice and submission requirements of the Contract Documents, sufficiently in advance to allow Contractor time to comply with its obligations under the Contract Documents;
- .8 to purchase and maintain insurance in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .9 to defend and indemnify the Indemnitees on the same terms as provided in Section 3.18, above;
- .10 to comply with the nondiscrimination (Article 16, below) and prevailing wage (Section 3.19, above) provisions of these General Conditions;

.11 limiting the Subcontractor's right to additional compensation or extension of time due to Differing Site Conditions and Design Discrepancies in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.2, above;

.12 to provide for a right of termination for convenience by Contractor that limits the Subcontractor's right to compensation to an allocable share of the subcontract price that corresponds to the percentage of the Work properly performed by the Subcontractor, with no additional sum payable for any other Losses, including, without limitation, prospective damages, lost profits or consequential damages, of any kind; and

.13 to provide that time is of the essence to each of the Subcontractor's obligations.

5.2.2 **Copies.** Contractor shall, upon request by County made at any time, furnish to County true, complete, and executed copies of all contracts with the Subcontractors and amendments, modifications and change orders thereto. Progress payments shall not be made for items of the Work for which County has not received such documents following request therefor by County.

5.2.3 **No Brokering.** Contractor shall not permit any portion of the Work to be contracted to a firm acting as a broker, factor or other entity not actually performing a substantial portion of the Work with its own forces; provided, however, that nothing herein shall be interpreted as precluding the right of a Subcontractor who has agreed to provide all of the materials and labor for a trade to subcontract the labor portion only to a sub-subcontractor.

5.2.4 **Third-Party Rights.** Contractor acknowledges that County is an intended third-party beneficiary to all contracts between Contractor and its first-Tier Subcontractors. Notwithstanding the foregoing or anything else to the contrary in the Contract Documents, there is no intent on the part of County or Contractor to create any rights (including, without limitation, third-party beneficiary rights) in favor of any Subcontractor, of any Tier, against County and nothing contained in the Contract Documents and no course of conduct, act or omission on the part of County shall be construed as creating a direct or indirect contractual right in favor of any Subcontractor, of any Tier, and against County.

5.2.5 **All Subcontractor Tiers.** It is the Contractor's obligation to see to it that all obligations of the Contractor are assumed by (or, "flow down") to the Subcontractors, of every Tier, by the inclusion of contractual provisions requiring each of the Subcontractors, of every Tier, to bind not only themselves but their lower-Tier Subcontractors to the obligations assumed by Contractor under the Contract Documents.

5.3 CONTINGENT ASSIGNMENT OF SUBCONTRACTS

5.3.1 **Contingent Assignment.** Contractor hereby contingently assigns to County, or to such person or entity as County, in its sole and absolute discretion, designates, all of its interest in subcontracts entered into by Contractor with its first-Tier Subcontractors. If a first-Tier Subcontractor has provided a performance bond, then Contractor's rights under such performance bond are likewise hereby deemed contingently assigned to County or its designee and provision shall be made in the performance bond for surety's consent to such contingent assignment.

5.3.2 **Acceptance by County.** The contingent assignments provided for by this Section 5.3 will be effective only as to those subcontracts and performance bonds which County or its designee accepts in writing. Said acceptance is the sole condition upon which the effectiveness of such assignments are contingent. County or its designee may accept any such assignment at any time during the course of the Work and prior to Final Completion. Such contingent assignments are part of the consideration to County for entering into the Construction Contract with Contractor and may not be withdrawn prior to Final Completion.

5.3.3 **County Obligation.** County's or its designee's sole obligation in the event it accepts a contingent assignment of a subcontract under this Section 5.3 shall be to pay in accordance with the terms of such subcontract for Work performed after written notice of acceptance of such assignment. In the event County directs that such assignment be made to County's designee, then such designee only, and not County, shall be solely liable under such assignment for Work performed after written notice of acceptance of such assignment.

5.4 COMMUNICATIONS BY COUNTY

County shall have the right to communicate, orally or in writing, with the Subcontractors with respect to matters that are related to Contractor's performance of its obligations under the Contract Documents. Nothing herein shall be interpreted

as extending to County the right as part of such communications to direct the manner in which any Subcontractor performs the Work. Except as otherwise provided in the Construction Contract or these General Conditions, Contractor shall be provided with a copy of all such communications that are in writing. Such communications shall not create, or be interpreted as creating, any contractual obligation of County to any Subcontractor.

5.5 DOCUMENT AVAILABILITY

Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor with whom it enters into a contract for performance of any portion of the Work, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound so as to ensure that all matters disclosed thereby are taken into consideration and included in the terms of such contracts and shall identify to such Subcontractor the terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement which may be at variance with the Contract Documents. The Subcontractors shall similarly be required to make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed sub-subcontractors or sub-subconsultants.

5.6 NO LIABILITY OF COUNTY

Nothing set forth in this Article 5, and no action taken by County with respect to review or approval of the Subcontractors or their contracts, shall impose any liability or responsibility upon County nor relieve Contractor of its responsibilities under the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws.

ARTICLE 6 COUNTY'S OWN FORCES AND SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

6.1 COUNTY'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION WITH OWN FORCES AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS

6.1.1 Right of County. County reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with County's own forces and to award other contracts to Separate Contractors in connection with other portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the Site.

6.1.2 Separate Contractors. Contractor shall ascertain to its own satisfaction the scope of the Project and the nature of any other contracts that have been or may be awarded by County to Separate Contractors in prosecution of the Project. Contractor shall look solely to such Separate Contractors, and County shall not be responsible, for any Losses for which Contractor is not provided a right or recovery by means of a right to Contract Adjustment for Compensable Change or Compensable Delay, that are suffered by Contractor or the Subcontractors, of any Tier, resulting directly or indirectly from the conduct of such work by the Separate Contractors.

6.1.3 Coordination. Nothing in the Contract Documents creates or will create any duty on the part of County to coordinate the Work of Contractor with the work of Separate Contractors. Contractor shall, when directed to do so by County, participate with the Separate Contractors and County in reviewing the Separate Contractors' construction schedules. Contractor and Separate Contractors will coordinate all work with the other so as to facilitate the general progress of the Project. Contractor agrees that any recovery of Losses for which Contractor is not provided a right or recovery by means of a right to Contract Adjustment for Compensable Change or Compensable Delay, that are suffered by Contractor due to a failure by a Separate Contractor to coordinate its work with the Work of Contractor will be sought directly against the Separate Contractors as set forth elsewhere in this Article 6.

6.1.4 Disputes. Contractor and County agree that Separate Contractors in direct contractual privity with County are third party beneficiaries of the Contract Documents, but only to the extent of claims and causes of action against Contractor arising out of or resulting from Contractor's performance or failure of performance under the Contract Documents or any act or omission of Contractor or the Subcontractors causing Loss to such Separate Contractors. Contractor consents to being sued by Separate Contractors for Losses caused by Contractor or any of the Subcontractors. Contractor hereby waives lack of privity of contract with such Separate Contractors as a defense to such actions.

6.1.5 Remedy. If Contractor as a result of the acts or omissions of one or more of the Separate Contractors suffers a Loss that is not compensated by means of a right given to Contractor under the Contract Documents to a

Contract Adjustment, then Contractor's sole remedy is to assert a claim or cause of action directly against the Separate Contractor(s) causing the Loss and Contractor hereby releases, acquits, holds harmless and forever discharges County of and from any and all liability for such Loss.

6.2 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY

6.2.1 Use of Site. Nothing contained in the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as granting Contractor exclusive use or occupancy of the Site. Contractor shall afford County's own forces and the Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities. Contractor shall not Delay the work of the Separate Contractors or County's own forces.

6.2.2 Adjoining Work. If part of Contractor's performance of the Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by County's own forces or Separate Contractors, Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, carefully inspect such construction and operations and promptly report in writing to the County apparent discrepancies or defects in such other construction that would render it unsuitable for such proper execution and results. Contractor will be responsible, at Contractor's Own Expense, for Losses to County resulting from any such discrepancies or defects not reported in accordance with this Paragraph 6.2.1 that were apparent or that should have been apparent to Contractor on careful inspection.

6.2.3 Damage. Contractor shall promptly remedy Loss caused by Contractor or its Subcontractors to completed construction or partially completed construction on the Site, or to property of County or the Separate Contractors.

6.2.4 Disputes. Contractor shall notify the County in writing within five (5) Days if it believes it has experienced or is experiencing any Delay or Loss due to the activities of County's own forces or the Separate Contractors or in the event of any dispute with County's own forces or a Separate Contractor.

6.2.5 Settlement of Disputes. If Contractor or any Subcontractor causes a Loss to a Separate Contractor, then Contractor will promptly settle the matter directly with the Separate Contractor and will defend, indemnify and hold County and the other Indemnitees harmless from any and all effects of such Loss in accordance with the terms of Section 3.18, above.

6.3 ALLOCATION OF CLEANUP COSTS

If a dispute arises among Contractor, the Separate Contractors and/or County as to the responsibility for maintaining the Site and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, County may clean up such waste materials and rubbish and allocate the cost among those responsible as County determines in good faith to be just.

ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

7.1 CHANGES

7.1.1 General. County is authorized to make Changes in the Work in accordance with the provisions of this Article 7.

7.1.2 Contract Adjustments. Contract Adjustments shall only be permitted as follows: (1) the Contract Price shall only be adjusted by means of a Change Order or Unilateral Change Order for Compensable Change, Deleted Work or Compensable Delay; and (2) the Contract Time shall be adjusted by means of a Change Order or Unilateral Change Order for Excusable Delay, Compensable Delay or Deleted Work. All Contract Adjustments to the Contract Price shall conform, without limitation, to the requirements of this Article 7. All Contract Adjustments to the Contract Time shall conform, without limitation, to the applicable requirements of this Article 7 and Article 8, below.

7.1.3 Exclusive Rights. The rights expressly set forth in the Contract Documents for Contract Adjustments constitute Contractor's exclusive rights for additional compensation or extensions of time and are intended to be in lieu of and wholly replace any other such rights and remedies that Contractor has under Applicable Laws for recovery or

relief on account of Loss or Delay in connection with performance of the Work, it being the intent of the County and Contractor that if circumstances arise for which the Contract Documents do not provide to Contractor an express right to a Contract Adjustment, then such omission of an express right shall conclusively be deemed to mean that no right to a Contract Adjustment was intended; and, consistent with that intent, no right to a Contract Adjustment on account of such circumstances shall by any means, legal or equitable, of interpretation, construction, inference, implication or application be considered, found or adjudged to exist.

7.1.4 Written Authorization. Any Change performed by Contractor pursuant to any direction other than a duly authorized and executed Change Order, Unilateral Change Order or Construction Change Directive shall be at Contractor's Own Expense.

7.1.5 Prompt Performance. Subject to the procedures set forth in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents, all Changes shall be performed promptly and without Delay.

7.2 SIGNATURES AND AUTHORIZATIONS

7.2.1 Parties. A Change Order shall be executed by County and Contractor. A Unilateral Change Order shall be executed by the County. Construction Change Directives shall be executed in accordance with Section 7.5, below.

7.2.2 Form. Change Orders, Unilateral Change Orders and Construction Change Directives shall be executed using forms furnished by County or, if requested by County, using forms furnished by Contractor that are approved by County.

7.2.3 Authorization.

.1 Compensable Changes.

(1) Director of the Office of Economic Development. A Compensable Change shall be performed by Contractor only if authorized by a Change Order, Unilateral Change Order or Construction Change Directive signed by the Director of the Office of Economic Development in accordance with the requirements of this Article 7; provided, however, that the Director of the Office of Economic Development's authority to bind the County to a Contract Adjustment shall be subject to the limitations of Public Contract Code §20142.

(2) County's Project Manager. The person identified by County as its "project manager" for the Project shall have the right to exercise the Director of the Office of Economic Development's authority under this Paragraph 7.2.3, but only if and to the extent that such authority is expressly given to such project manager in a writing signed by the Director of the Office of Economic Development (and not by a designee of the Director of the Office of Economic Development).

(3) Board of Supervisors. Except as otherwise provided in Subparagraph 7.2.3.1 (4), below, if a Contract Adjustment increasing the Contract Price would exceed the limitations of Public Contract Code §20142, then in addition to written authorization by the Director of the Office of Economic Development, such Compensable Change shall be performed only if approved by a vote of the Board of Supervisors in accordance with the requirements of Applicable Laws.

(4) Disputed Changes. If a dispute arises between County and Contractor over (a) whether a particular portion of the Work constitutes a Compensable Change or (b) the amount of the Contract Adjustment to which Contractor is entitled on account of a Compensable Change, then, notwithstanding such dispute, the Contractor shall, if ordered to do so in a Construction Change Directive signed by the Director of the Office of Economic Development, perform the disputed Work without Delay. Such direction by County shall not be interpreted as an agreement or admission by County that the disputed Change constitutes Extra Work or a Compensable Change for which Contractor is entitled to a Contract Adjustment. Compliance by Contractor with such direction shall not be interpreted as a waiver of Contractor's right to a Contract Adjustment if and to the extent that Contractor is entitled to a Contract Adjustment or Claim under the terms of the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, the right of Contractor to recover upon a Claim for the amount of any excess in the event that it is adjudged that the amount of the Contract Adjustment to which Contractor is entitled exceeds the limits of Public Contract Code §20142.

.2 WRITING OF ESSENCE. IT IS OF THE ESSENCE TO THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT BETWEEN CONTRACTOR AND COUNTY THAT ALL CHANGES MUST BE AUTHORIZED IN ADVANCE, IN WRITING, AS REQUIRED BY THIS ARTICLE 7. ACCORDINGLY, NO VERBAL DIRECTIONS, COURSE OF CONDUCT BETWEEN THE PARTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED ACCEPTANCE OF CHANGES OR OF THE WORK, OR CLAIM THAT THE COUNTY HAS BEEN UNJUSTLY ENRICHED (WHETHER OR NOT THERE HAS BEEN SUCH ENRICHMENT) SHALL BE THE BASIS FOR A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT IF CONTRACTOR HAS NOT OBTAINED ADVANCE WRITTEN AUTHORIZATION IN THE MANNER REQUIRED BY THIS ARTICLE 7.

7.3 CHANGE ORDERS

7.3.1 Purpose. The purpose of a Change Order is to establish the terms of the County's and Contractor's mutual agreement to a Contract Adjustment.

7.3.2 Content. A Change Order is a written instrument, prepared by the County, stating:

- .1** a Compensable Change or Deleted Work;
- .2** a Compensable Delay or Excusable Delay;
- .3** the amount of the Contract Adjustment, if any, to the Contract Price; and/or
- .4** the extent of the Contract Adjustment, if any, to the Contract Time.

7.4 UNILATERAL CHANGE ORDERS

7.4.1 Purpose. The purpose of a Unilateral Change Order is to establish the County's estimate of a disputed Contract Adjustment.

7.4.2 Good Faith Determination. The County's determination in a Unilateral Change Order of a Contract Adjustment shall be based upon a Good Faith Determination by County of the Contract Adjustment that is appropriate under the circumstances and consistent with the terms of the Contract Documents.

7.4.3 Claim by Contractor. If Contractor disputes any portion of the County's Good Faith Determination of a Contract Adjustment that is set forth in a Unilateral Change Order, Contractor shall file, within thirty (30) Days after issuance of the Unilateral Change Order by County, a Claim pursuant to Section 4.3, above. The amount of the Contract Adjustment requested in the Claim shall not exceed the difference between the amount (either in terms of dollar amount or number of Days) of the Contract Adjustment requested by Contractor and the amount (either in terms of dollar amount or number of Days) of the Contract Adjustment granted in the Unilateral Change Order. Contractor shall have no reserved right, and hereby waives any such right that may exist under Applicable Laws, to seek in such Claim a Contract Adjustment or recovery that is based upon any amount (either in terms of dollar amount or number of Days) that is in excess of such difference.

7.4.4 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO SUBMIT A CLAIM PURSUANT TO SECTION 4.3, ABOVE, WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS AFTER ISSUANCE OF A UNILATERAL CHANGE ORDER BY COUNTY SHALL, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 4.6 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF THE RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY BASED ON AN ASSERTION THAT THE AMOUNT OF THE CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT ON ACCOUNT OF THE CHANGE OR DELAY DESCRIBED IN SUCH UNILATERAL CHANGE ORDER SHOULD BE DIFFERENT THAN THE AMOUNT OF THE COUNTY'S GOOD FAITH DETERMINATION OF THE CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT AS SET FORTH IN SUCH UNILATERAL CHANGE ORDER.

7.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES

7.5.1 Purpose. The purpose of a Construction Change Directive is to: (1) direct the performance of a Change that does not involve a Contract Adjustment; (2) establish a mutually agreed basis for compensation to Contractor for a Compensable Change under circumstances where performance of the Compensable Change needs to proceed in advance of the County performing a full evaluation of the Contractor's rights relative to a Contract Adjustment; or (3) direct performance of Work or a Change with respect to which there exists a dispute or question regarding the terms of a Contract Adjustment.

7.5.2 No Contract Adjustment. A Construction Change Directive that directs the performance of Work or a Change that does not involve a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price or Contract Time may be authorized by either the Director of the Office of Economic Development or the County's project manager and shall be promptly performed by Contractor so as to not cause Delay to any other portion of the Work. A Construction Change Directive directing performance of a Change that does not contain any statement indicating that a Contract Adjustment is requested or required shall be conclusively presumed to be a Change that is not a Compensable Change and no Contract Adjustment increasing the Contract Price or Contract Time will be made on account thereof.

7.5.3 Agreed Contract Adjustment. A Construction Change Directive that contains a complete or partial agreement by the County and Contractor with respect to the Contractor's right to, or the amount of, a Contract Adjustment shall be authorized in accordance with, conform to the requirements of and be binding upon County and Contractor as provided for in, this Paragraph 7.5.3.

.1 Complete Agreement. Each Construction Change Directive involving a Compensable Change or Deleted Work with respect to which there is complete agreement on the terms of the Contract Adjustment shall comply with the following:

(1) Statement of Agreement. A statement shall be included that the County and Contractor are in agreement on all of the terms of the Contract Adjustment related to performance of such Compensable Change and set forth a full description of the terms of the Contract Adjustment, including, without limitation, its effect on the Contract Price and Contract Time.

(2) Legal Effect.

(a) Upon Contractor.

THE AGREED TERMS OF THE CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT WITH RESPECT TO WHICH THERE IS A STATEMENT OF FULL AGREEMENT ON THE TERMS OF THE CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT FOR A CHANGE IN THE WORK SHALL BE FINAL AND BINDING UPON CONTRACTOR. ANY RIGHT OR CLAIM BY CONTRACTOR FOR ANY ADDITIONAL COMPENSATION OR EXTENSION OF TIME RELATING DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY TO SUCH CHANGE SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY DEEMED WAIVED BY CONTRACTOR, EVEN IF THE CIRCUMSTANCES GIVING RISE TO SUCH ADDITIONAL COMPENSATION OR EXTENSION OF TIME WERE NOT SUSPECTED BY OR KNOWN TO THE CONTRACTOR AT THE TIME OF EXECUTION OF THE CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE AND IF SUSPECTED OR KNOWN WOULD HAVE BEEN CONSIDERED BY CONTRACTOR TO HAVE BEEN MATERIAL TO CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT TO THE CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT SET FORTH IN THE CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE.

(b) Upon County. In recognition of the fact that Construction Change Directives may be issued under circumstances in which the County may not have had the access to pertinent information required for the County to fully evaluate the circumstances giving rise to the Change, it is agreed that neither the issuance nor execution of, nor any statement contained in, nor any course of conduct in connection with, a Construction Change Directive (including, without limitation, a Construction Change Directive that constitutes a full agreement by County and Contractor on the terms of a Contract Adjustment) shall be interpreted as a waiver, release or settlement of any of County's rights relating to the subject matter of the Construction Change Directive, or as creating or implying any right of Contractor to a Contract Adjustment, if it is found by County upon further investigation that circumstances existed, not known to County at the time of executing the Construction Change Directive, demonstrating that the Contractor was not in fact entitled to a Contract Adjustment or was entitled to a Contract Adjustment on different terms than those agreed to in the Construction Change Directive.

.2 Partial Agreement. Each Construction Change Directive involving a Compensable Change or Deleted Work with respect to which there is only agreement on a portion of the terms of a Contract Adjustment shall comply with the following:

(1) Agreed Terms. The Construction Change Directive shall state those terms of the Contract Adjustment as to which there is agreement.

(a) Legal Effect. Except to the extent of any additional open (i.e., non-agreed) terms stated or reserved in the Construction Change Directive, such agreement shall have the same legal effect set forth in Subparagraph 7.5.3.1 (2), above.

(b) Time and Materials. In the event that County and Contractor agree in the Construction Change Directive to the “time and materials” method of calculation set forth in Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), below, but do not agree upon a maximum price, then the total cost to County for the Work covered by the Construction Change Directive shall under no circumstances exceed a price that is reasonable, competitive and fair to County given the amount and type of Work involved and the circumstances under which the Compensable Change is performed.

(2) Open Terms. The Construction Change Directive shall state those terms of the Contract Adjustment that are “open” or “disputed”; meaning those terms as to which the County and Contractor did not reach agreement.

(a) ROM Estimate. If such open terms involve the amount of the Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price or Contract Time on account of a Compensable Change, then the Construction Change Directive shall also include a Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate prepared by Contractor, or prepared by County and acknowledged in writing as accepted by Contractor, of the probable amount of the Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price and Contract Time associated with performance of the Compensable Change.

(b) Legal Effect. A Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate constitutes neither (i) a guarantee by Contractor that the amount of the Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price or Contract Time that may be associated with the Compensable Change or Deleted Work covered by such Construction Change Directive may not exceed the Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate nor (ii) authorization or agreement by County to a Contract Adjustment based on the amounts set forth in such Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate.

(c) Time and Materials. If County and Contractor state in the Construction Change Directive an agreement that the Contractor is entitled to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price on account of a Compensable Change, but do not state therein an agreement upon the method of calculation to be used for the Contract Adjustment from among the optional methods of calculation set forth in Paragraph 7.7.1, below, and if the County nonetheless directs Contractor to perform the Compensable Change pending future agreement on the amount of the Contract Adjustment, then it shall be conclusively presumed that County and Contractor have agreed that such Compensable Change shall be performed and compensated based upon the “time and materials” method of calculation set forth in Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), below, and that the total Contract Adjustment for performance thereof shall under no circumstances exceed a price that is reasonable, competitive and fair to County given the amount and type of Work involved and the circumstances under which the Compensable Change is performed.

7.5.4 Disputed Contract Adjustment. Each Construction Change Directive involving a Contract Adjustment with respect to which there is a dispute or partial agreement shall, if Contractor is ordered to do so in a Construction Change Directive signed by the Director of the Office of Economic Development, be performed by Contractor without Delay. Except as otherwise provided elsewhere in this Section 7.5, with respect to any open terms as to which the County and Contractor have not reached agreement both County and Contractor shall be deemed to have reserved their respective rights and defenses.

7.5.5 Other Notices. With respect to any Contract Adjustment or portion of a Contract Adjustment that is not fully resolved in a Construction Change Directive, neither issuance nor execution of such Construction Change Directive shall be interpreted as relieving Contractor of its obligation to comply with the requirements of these General Conditions relative to timely submission of notices required by the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, Notice of Change, Change Order Request, Notice of Delay or Request for Extension.

7.6 PROCEDURES

7.6.1 Notice of Change.

.1 Submission. Contractor shall submit a written Notice of Change to County if any instruction, request, drawing, specification, action, condition, omission, default or other circumstance occurs that constitutes a Compensable Change, Deleted Work, Compensable Delay or other matter that may involve or require a Contract Adjustment (additive or deductive). Such notice shall be provided prior to commencement of performance of the Work affected and no later than three (3) working days after the Discovery Date of such circumstance.

.2 Form. Notices of Change shall be provided using forms furnished by County or, if requested by County, using forms furnished by Contractor that are approved by County. Failure by County to request or approve a particular form shall not relieve Contractor of its obligation to provide a Notice of Change in a written form that complies with the requirements specified in Subparagraph 7.6.1.3, below.

.3 Content. Each Notice of Change in order to be considered complete shall include:

(1) a general statement of the circumstances giving rise to the Notice of Change (including, without limitation, identification of any related Construction Change Directive);

(2) a Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate by Contractor of any related Contract Adjustments (additive and deductive) to the Contract Price; and,

(3) if such circumstances involve a right to adjustment of the Contract Time due to Compensable Delay or Excusable Delay that has not been waived pursuant to Subparagraph 8.2.2.4, below, or Subparagraph 8.2.3.4, below, Contractor shall include, if not previously provided, a complete and timely Notice of Delay.

.4 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO PROVIDE A COMPLETE AND TIMELY NOTICE OF CHANGE UNDER CIRCUMSTANCES WHERE A NOTICE OF CHANGE INVOLVING A CHANGE IS REQUIRED BY THIS PARAGRAPH 7.6.1 SHALL, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 4.6 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF THE RIGHT TO A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT ON ACCOUNT OF SUCH CIRCUMSTANCES AND A WAIVER OF ANY RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY BY REASON OF OR RELATED TO SUCH CHANGE.

.5 Deductive Adjustments. Failure by Contractor to submit a timely or proper Notice of Change under circumstances in which a Notice of Change is required shall in no way affect County's right to any deductive Contract Adjustment on account of such circumstances.

7.6.2 Change Order Request.

.1 Submission. With respect to any matter that may involve or require a Contract Adjustment (additive or deductive) of the Contract Price, Contractor shall, within fourteen (14) Days after receipt by the County of a Notice of Change pursuant to Paragraph 7.6.1, above, submit to the County a written Change Order Request.

.2 Form. Change Order Requests shall be provided using forms furnished by County or, if requested by County, using forms furnished by Contractor that are approved by County. Failure by County to request or approve a particular form shall not relieve Contractor of its obligation to provide a Change Order Request in a written form that complies with the requirements stated in Subparagraph 7.6.2.3, below.

.3 Content. Each Change Order Request in order to be considered complete shall include:

(1) a detailed description of the circumstances for the Compensable Change, Deleted Work or Compensable Delay;

(2) a complete, itemized cost breakdown (additive and deductive) of the Allowable Costs that form the basis for the Contractor's request for Contract Adjustment, including: (a) if the pricing is based on time and materials charges, all of Contractor's and each Subcontractor's Allowable Costs (including, without limitation, quantities, hours, unit prices, and rates) and Allowable Markups and (b) if the pricing is in the form of a lump sum price a detailed breakdown of the lump sum price into its component and individual items of Allowable Costs and Allowable Markup; and

(3) if such circumstances involve a right to a Contract Adjustment of the Contract Time due to Compensable Delay or Excusable Delay that has not been waived pursuant to Subparagraph 8.2.2.4, below, or Subparagraph 8.2.3.4, below, Contractor shall include, if not previously provided, a complete and timely Request for Extension.

.4 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO PROVIDE A COMPLETE AND TIMELY CHANGE ORDER REQUEST UNDER CIRCUMSTANCES WHERE A CHANGE ORDER REQUEST INVOLVING A CHANGE IS REQUIRED BY THIS PARAGRAPH 7.6.2 SHALL, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 4.6 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF THE RIGHT TO A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT ON ACCOUNT OF SUCH CIRCUMSTANCES AND A WAIVER OF ANY RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY BY REASON OF OR RELATED TO SUCH CHANGE.

.5 Deductive Adjustments. Failure by Contractor to submit a timely or proper Change Order Request under circumstances in which a Change Order Request is required shall in no way affect County's right to any deductive Contract Adjustment on account of such circumstances.

7.6.3 Formal Notice of Essence. Contractor recognizes and acknowledges that timely submission of a formal Notice of Change and Change Order Request, whether or not the circumstances of the Change may be known to the County or available to County through other means, is not a mere formality but is of crucial importance to the ability of County to promptly identify, prioritize, evaluate and mitigate the potential effects of Changes. Any form of informal notice, whether verbal or written (including, without limitation, statements in Requests for Information, statements at regular job meetings or entries on monthly reports, daily logs or job meeting minutes), that does not strictly comply with the formal requirements of Paragraph 7.6.1, above, and Paragraph 7.6.2, above, shall therefore be insufficient.

7.7 PRICING

7.7.1 Basis of Calculation.

.1 Changes Not Involving Time. Contract Adjustments to the Contract Price on account of Compensable Changes or Deleted Work, other than Contract Adjustments to the Contract Price for Compensable Delay, shall be calculated according to one of the following methods:

(1) **Lump Sum.** By mutual acceptance of a lump sum proposal from Contractor based solely on Allowable Costs and Allowable Markups, that is properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation.

(2) **Unit Prices.** By the unit prices set forth in the Construction Contract or such other unit prices as are subsequently and mutually agreed to in writing between the County and Contractor, with no amount added thereto for Allowable Markups.

(3) **Estimating Guides.** For Compensable Changes with respect to which County elects to make a unilateral and final determination pursuant to Paragraph 7.7.11, below, by the sum of all the following:

(a) **Materials.** The reasonable value of materials and equipment documented as having been actually incorporated into the Work, which reasonable value may be less but shall never be more than Contractor's actual Allowable Costs therefor.

(b) Labor. An estimate of the reasonable costs of labor, installation and other services using the lower of the estimated prices for the locale of the Project (or if prices are not reported for the locale of the Project, the estimated prices that are reported for the region in which the Project is located) as reported in following recognized estimating guides: (i) R. S. Means Company, Inc. Building Construction Cost Data, Western Region - Latest Edition, P.O. Box 800 Kingston, MA 02364-800; or (ii) Lee Saylor, Inc. Current Construction Costs - Latest Edition, 9420 Topanga Canyon Boulevard, Woodland Hills, CA 91311.

(c) Allowable Markup. The amount that results when the applicable Allowable Markup is applied to the sum of the amounts derived from preceding Clauses (a) and (b) of this Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (3).

(4) Time and Materials.

(a) Compensable Changes.

(i) Contract Adjustment. With respect to Compensable Changes, if none of the methods provided for in Subparagraphs 7.7.1.1 (1) through 7.7.1.1 (3), above, is applicable, then the additive amount increasing the Contract Price shall be calculated by taking (A) the total of the reasonable expenditures by Contractor and its Subcontractors, documented in the manner required by Paragraph 7.7.2, below, for Allowable Costs that are actually and directly incurred and paid in the performance of the Compensable Change, not to exceed for any Compensable Change a price that is reasonable, competitive and fair to County given the amount and type of Work involved and the circumstances under which the Compensable Change is performed, and (B) adding thereto the amount which results when the applicable Allowable Markups are applied to such total specified in preceding Clause (A) of this Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4) (a) (1).

(ii) T & M/Guaranteed Maximums. A Contract Adjustment that is calculated pursuant to this Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4) shall be subject to a not-to-exceed or guaranteed maximum price if such not-to-exceed or guaranteed maximum price has been mutually agreed upon between County and Contractor.

(iii) Lump Sum Options. If Contractor has reason to believe that a lump sum or unit price for a Subcontractor's performance of a portion of Extra Work authorized to be performed on a time and materials basis is available and Contractor has reason to believe such price is lower than the price that would be charged by the Subcontractor pursuant to the foregoing time and materials calculation, then Contractor has an obligation to inform County of that fact (along with the provision to the County of a complete itemized breakdown in accordance with Subparagraph 7.6.2.3(2), above) so as to afford County the opportunity, on a fully informed basis as to the component Allowable Costs and Allowable Markups that comprise such price, to avail itself of such favorable pricing.

(b) Deleted Work. With respect to Deleted Work (whether or not the Deleted Work involves a related Compensable Change as described in Paragraph 7.7.8, below), if none of the methods provided for in Subparagraphs 7.7.1.1 (1) through 7.7.1.1 (3), above, is applicable, then, in addition to the reduction, if any, that may be due to Owner pursuant to Subparagraph 8.2.6.2, below, (pertaining to Contract Adjustments shortening the Contract Time due to Deleted Work) and any additional reductions or credits to which County may be entitled under Paragraph 7.7.5, below, the Contract Price shall be reduced by the greater of either:

(i) the value assigned to the Deleted Work in the Schedule of Values attached to the Construction Contract, inclusive of all estimated markups by Contractor and any Subcontractor for overhead and profit set forth in the Schedule of Values (or, if insufficient detailed information on costs, overhead and profit for the Deleted Work is explicitly assigned in the Schedule of Values, as derived from the cost, bidding and/or estimating information that formed the basis for the establishment of the values set forth in such Schedule of Values); or

(ii) a reasonable estimate of the value of the Deleted Work (inclusive of all costs, overhead and profit) as of the date that the Construction Contract was executed by County and Contractor.

.2 Changes Involving Time. Contract Adjustments that are based on an extension of the Contract Time for Compensable Delay or a shortening of the Contract Time due to Deleted Work shall be calculated in the manner stated in the provisions of Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract and Article 8, below. Contract

Adjustments that are based on an acceleration in performance of the Work that is ordered by County in writing to overcome a Compensable Delay for which the Contractor is entitled to an extension of the Contract Time that has been properly requested and is not granted by County due to a County decision to accelerate rather than extend the Contract Time shall be calculated in the manner stated in the provisions of Article 8, below.

7.7.2 Time and Materials Documentation. Without limitation to any other provisions of the Contract Documents, Contractor's right to reimbursement of Allowable Costs incurred by Contractor or Subcontractors in the performance of a Compensable Change for which the Contract Adjustment is calculated pursuant to the time and materials method set forth in Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), above, shall be conditioned on Contractor's compliance with the following conditions with respect to documentation of the Extra Work that is involved in the performance of the Compensable Change:

.1 Labor. At the close of each Day on which such Extra Work is performed, Contractor shall submit to County and, if requested, to the Inspector of Record, an Extra Work report, on forms provided by County, that sets forth with respect to each and all of the actual hours spent in performance of the Extra Work on the Day that the Extra Work was performed the following: the names of the workers, their classifications, hours worked and hourly rates. Such forms shall include a written certification by Contractor's project manager or superintendent at the time of submission that the information contained therein is complete and accurate.

.2 Materials, Equipment. At the close of each Day on which such Extra Work is performed, Contractor shall submit to County and, if requested, to the Inspector of Record, an Extra Work report, on forms provided by County, that sets forth with respect to each and all of the materials and equipment used or consumed in the performance of the Extra Work on the Day that the Extra Work was performed, the following: a list of the materials and equipment, prices or rates charged, in the case of equipment a description of the type of equipment, identification number, and hours of operation (including loading and transportation), and copies of delivery tickets, invoices or other documentation confirmatory of the foregoing.

.3 Other Expenditures. At the close of each Day on which such Extra Work is performed, Contractor shall submit to County and, if requested, to the Inspector of Record, an Extra Work report, on forms provided by County, that sets forth a list of other expenditures constituting Allowable Costs incurred in performance of the Extra Work on the Day that the Extra Work was performed, along with documentation verifying the amounts thereof in such detail as County may require.

.4 Subsequent Documentation. Documentation not available on any Day that a portion of the Extra Work is performed shall be submitted as soon as they are available but not later than twenty-one (21) Days after the earlier of the Day of delivery or incorporation of the particular item of Extra Work at the Site.

.5 Subcontractor Costs. Extra Work performed by Subcontractors on a time and materials basis shall be documented in the same manner as required of Contractor under this Paragraph 7.7.2. If Owner approves of a lump sum price for a Subcontractor's performance of Extra Work, then Contractor shall submit in lieu of the documentation otherwise required by this Subparagraph 7.7.2.5, such documentation as may be requested by Owner confirming the Extra Work performed on any given Day.

.6 Authentication. In addition to the foregoing, County may require that Contractor comply with other reasonable requirements pertaining to observation and verification of time and materials work and authentication of time and materials tickets and invoices by persons designated by County for such purpose.

.7 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

THE FAILURE OF CONTRACTOR TO SUBMIT AUTHENTICATION OF COSTS IN THE MANNER REQUIRED BY THIS PARAGRAPH 7.7.2 SHALL, IF COUNTY ELECTS IN ITS REASONABLE DISCRETION TO TREAT IT AS SUCH, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF ANY RIGHT TO A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT FOR THE ALLOWABLE COSTS INCURRED FOR PERFORMANCE OF THAT PORTION OF THE EXTRA WORK FOR WHICH CONTRACTOR HAS FAILED TO PROVIDE SUCH AUTHENTICATION.

7.7.3 Allowable Costs. The term "Allowable Costs" (1) means the costs that are listed in this Paragraph 7.7.3 and (2) excludes costs that do not constitute Allowable Costs under Paragraph 7.7.4, below:

.1 Labor. Straight-time wages and, if specifically authorized by County in writing, overtime wages for employees employed at the Site, including wages for employees of Subcontractors performing engineering or fabrication detailing at locations other than at the Site. The use of a labor classification which would increase the Allowable Costs for Extra Work will not be permitted unless Contractor establishes the necessity for the use of such labor classification. Overtime wages and salaries shall only constitute an Allowable Cost to the extent permitted by the Contract Documents and only as specifically authorized by County in writing setting forth the amount of overtime anticipated, which amount shall be deemed the maximum amount of overtime reimbursable as an Allowable Cost. As part of the Allowable Costs permitted by this Subparagraph 7.7.3.1, Contractor shall be entitled to be reimbursed wages paid to a "time and materials clerk" employed by Contractor to track and document Compensable Changes that are authorized or permitted to be performed on a time and materials basis pursuant to Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), above, provided that the time expended by such employee is verified by contemporaneously maintained time sheets maintained by such clerk showing the actual time spent tracking and documenting the performance of Compensable Changes separately from other tasks or functions performed by such clerk.

.2 Benefits. To the extent based on wages reimbursable under Subparagraph 7.7.3.1, above, net actual employer costs of payroll taxes (FICA, Medicare, SUTA, FUTA), insurance (as adjusted for experience modifiers, premium discounts, dividends, rebates, expense constants, assigned risk pool costs, net cost reductions due to policies with deductibles for self-insured losses, assigned risk rebates, or the like), health and welfare, pension, vacation, apprenticeship funds and benefits required by lawful collective bargaining agreements.

.3 Materials. Costs of materials used or consumed in the Work. Such costs for Extra Work shall be at a price that is competitive to the price charged for similar materials delivered within the general vicinity of the Site by other subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers and distributors. The cost for any such item that is not new shall mean "fair market value" based on the estimated price a reasonable purchaser would pay to purchase the used material at the time it was used or consumed for the Work, which fair market value must be declared by Contractor and approved by County prior to such use or consumption.

.4 Taxes. Sales taxes on the costs of the materials described in Subparagraph 7.7.3.3, above.

.5 Equipment Rental. Rental charges for necessary machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from Contractor or others. No charge shall be allowed or credit required for items which have a replacement value of One Hundred Dollars (\$100) or less. The allowable rental rates shall include the cost of fuel, oil, lubrication, supplies, small tools, necessary attachments, loading, transportation, repairs and maintenance of any kind, depreciation, storage, insurance and all incidentals. If equipment used for Extra Work is used intermittently and, when not in use, could be returned to its rental source at less expense to County than holding it at the Site, it shall be returned, unless Contractor elects to keep it at the Site at no expense to County. Under no circumstances shall the aggregate rentals chargeable for any item of equipment exceed the following percentages of the fair market value of the item at the time of its first use for the Work, which fair market value must be declared by Contractor and approved by County prior to the first use of such item in or for the Work: (1) if the item is owned by the Contractor or any company affiliated with Contractor, the aggregate rentals shall not exceed 75% of such fair market value; and (2) if the item is not owned by the Contractor or any company affiliated with Contractor, the aggregate rentals shall not exceed 100% of such fair market value. All equipment shall be acceptable to County, in good working condition, and suitable for the purpose for which it is to be used. Manufacturer's ratings and manufacturer's approved modifications shall be used to classify equipment, and it shall be powered by a unit of at least the minimum rating recommended by the manufacturer. The cost of major repairs or overhauls of rented equipment or machinery shall be deemed a cost of business of the lessor of such equipment or machinery and shall not be reimbursable as an Allowable Cost.

.6 Subcontractors. Payments made by Contractor to Subcontractors; provided, however, that: (1) such payments are not otherwise precluded from reimbursement by the terms of the Contract Documents; (2) such payments are for Work performed in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents; (3) such payments are for amounts properly due and owing by Contractor under the terms of the governing contract between Contractor and such Subcontractor; and (4) in the case of payments for extra work performed by a Subcontractor pursuant to a change order executed between Contractor and a Subcontractor the change order was executed under circumstances in which the Subcontractor was entitled under the terms of its contract with Contractor to receive the amount of additional compensation agreed to in the change order.

.7 Royalties, Permits. Costs of royalties and permits.

.8 Bonds. Costs of bonds required to be furnished by Contractor (not Subcontractors) under the terms of the Contract Documents; provided, however, that such additional costs chargeable for Extra Work or credited for Deleted Work shall not exceed two percent (2%) of the costs described in Subparagraphs 7.7.3.1 through 7.7.3.7, above.

7.7.4 Costs Not Allowed. Allowable Costs shall not include any of the costs associated with any of the following (whether incurred by Contractor or a Subcontractor):

- .1** superintendent(s);
- .2** assistant superintendent(s);
- .3** project engineer(s);
- .4** project manager(s);
- .5** scheduler(s);
- .6** estimator(s);
- .7** drafting or detailing (except as otherwise permitted by Paragraph 7.7.3.1, above)
- .8** vehicles not dedicated solely to the performance of the Work;
- .9** small tools with a replacement value not exceeding One Hundred Dollars (\$100);
- .10** office expenses, including staff, materials and supplies;
- .11** on-Site and off-Site trailer and storage rental and expenses;
- .12** Site fencing not added solely due to the performance of Extra Work;
- .13** utilities, including gas, electric, sewer, water, telephone, telefax and copier equipment;
- .14** computer and data-processing personnel, equipment and software;
- .15** federal, state or local business, income and franchise taxes;
- .16** insurance (including, without limitation, general liability, automobile and worker's compensation);
- .17** without limitation to Contractor's right to liquidated damages under Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract, Losses, of any kind, incurred by Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, that arise from or relate to Delay (including Excusable Delay, Compensable Delay or Unexcused Delay) or acceleration to overcome the effects of such Delay; and
- .18** costs and expenses of any kind or item not specifically and expressly included in Paragraph 7.7.3, above.

7.7.5 Allowable Markups. Allowable Markups consist of the percentages set forth provided for by this Paragraph 7.7.5. Allowable Markups are deemed to cover, without limitation, the following: (1) direct and indirect overhead (including, without limitation, consumables, small tools and cleanup) and profit of the Contractor; (2) direct and indirect overhead (including, without limitation, consumables, small tools and cleanup) and profit of the Subcontractors, of every Tier; and (3) all costs that are not reimbursable to Contractor under Paragraph 7.7.4, above. Subject to the exclusions and limitations set forth in Paragraph 7.7.7, below, or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, Allowable Markups include and are limited to the following:

.1 Self-Performed Work

(1) **Compensable Change.** With respect to all or that portion of a Compensable Change involving Self-Performed Work, the Allowable Markup to Contractor shall be not more than five percent (5%), which percentage shall for purposes of calculating the Contract Adjustment be multiplied times the Allowable Costs incurred by Contractor in the performance thereof, including, without limitation, Allowable Costs for materials or equipment purchased by Contractor from a first-Tier Subcontractor that is not an Installation Subcontractor.

(2) **Deleted Work.** With respect to all or that portion of Deleted Work involving Self-Performed Work, County shall be entitled to a credit equal to five percent (5%) of the amount of the credit for the savings to Contractor for the Self-Performed Work as calculated pursuant to Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above.

.2 Installation Subcontractors (First-Tier)

(1) **Compensable Change.** With respect to all or that portion of a Compensable Change that is performed by a first-Tier Installation Subcontractor, the Allowable Markups to the first-Tier Installation Subcontractor and the Contractor shall be as follows:

(a) The Allowable Markup to the first-Tier Installation Subcontractor shall be not more than fifteen percent (15%), which percentage shall for purposes of calculating the Contract Adjustment be multiplied times the Allowable Costs incurred by such first-Tier Installation Subcontractor in the performance of such Compensable Change.

(b) The Allowable Markup to Contractor shall be five percent (5%), which percentage shall for purposes of calculating the Contract Adjustment be multiplied times the sum of (i) the Allowable Costs incurred by such first-Tier Subcontractor in the performance of such Compensable Change and (ii) the amount which results when the Allowable Markups thereon that are permitted pursuant to preceding Clause (a) of this Subparagraph 7.7.5.2 (1) are multiplied times such Allowable Costs.

(2) **Deleted Work.** With respect to all or that portion of Deleted Work that was to have been performed by a first-Tier Installation Subcontractor, the Contract Price shall be reduced as provided in Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above. In addition, a credit shall be due from Contractor of five percent (5%) of the amount of the total credit due pursuant to Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above.

.3 Installation Subcontractors (Second-Tier)

(1) **Compensable Change.** With respect to all or that portion of a Compensable Change that is performed by a second-Tier Installation Subcontractor, the Allowable Markups to such second-Tier Installation Subcontractor, to the first-Tier Installation Subcontractor that is above and in the same vertical contractual line of Tiers with such second-Tier Installation Subcontractor and to the Contractor, shall be as follows:

(a) The Allowable Markup to the second-Tier Installation Subcontractor shall be not more than five percent (5%), which percentage shall for purposes of calculating the Contract Adjustment be multiplied times the Allowable Costs incurred by such second-Tier Installation Subcontractor in the performance of such Compensable Change.

(b) The Allowable Markup to the first-Tier Installation Subcontractor that is above and in the same vertical contractual line of Tiers with such second-Tier Installation Subcontractor shall be not more than fifteen percent (15%), which percentage shall for purposes of calculating the Contract Adjustment be multiplied times the sum of (i) the Allowable Costs incurred by such second-Tier Installation Subcontractor in the performance of such Compensable Change and (ii) the amount which results when the Allowable Markups thereon pursuant to preceding Clause (a) of this Subparagraph 7.7.5.3 (1) are multiplied times such Allowable Costs.

(c) The Allowable Markup to Contractor shall be five percent (5%), which percentage shall for purposes of calculating the Contract Adjustment be multiplied times the sum of (i) the Allowable Costs incurred by the second-Tier Installation Subcontractor in the performance of such Compensable Change and (ii)

the amounts which result when the Allowable Markups thereon that are permitted pursuant to Clauses (a) and (b) of this Subparagraph 7.7.5.3 (1) are multiplied times such Allowable Costs.

(2) **Deleted Work.** With respect to all or that portion of Deleted Work that was to have been performed by a second-Tier Installation Subcontractor, the Contract Price shall be reduced as provided in Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above. In addition, a credit shall be due from Contractor of five percent (5%) of the amount of the total credit due pursuant to Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above.

.4 Other Subcontractors.

(1) **Compensable Changes:** With respect to any other Subcontractor, of any Tier, performing all or a portion of a Compensable Change who is not an Installation Subcontractor or who is an Installation Subcontractor below the second-Tier, the following shall apply:

(a) No markup shall be allowed to such other Subcontractor.

(b) The Subcontractor that is positioned in the Tier immediately above such other Subcontractor shall be entitled to an Allowable Markup of not more than five percent (5%) upon the Allowable Costs incurred by such other Subcontractor in the performance thereof.

(c) No other Allowable Markup by any Subcontractor of any Tier above such other Subcontractor shall be permitted.

(d) Contractor shall be entitled to an Allowable Markup of five percent (5%) of the sum of (i) the Allowable Costs of such other Subcontractor incurred in the performance of such Compensable Change and (ii) the amount which results when the Allowable Markup permitted by Clause (b) of this Subparagraph 7.7.5.4 (1) is multiplied times such Allowable Costs.

(2) **Deleted Work.** With respect to all or that portion of Deleted Work that was to have been performed by such other Subcontractor who is not an Installation Subcontractor or who is an Installation Subcontractor below the second-Tier, the Contract Price shall be reduced as provided in Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above. In addition, a credit shall be due from Contractor of five percent (5%) of the amount of the total credit due pursuant to Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above.

7.7.6 Review of Markups. It is Contractor's responsibility to review information submitted by Subcontractors to ensure that all markups comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Payment by the County of markups that exceed Allowable Markups shall not be considered as a waiver by County of the right to require repayment by Contractor of any markup charged that is in excess of Allowable Markups and such excess amounts shall be promptly paid by Contractor to County.

7.7.7 Exclusions and Limitations. Allowable Markups are not permitted:

.1 on agreed unit prices;

.2 on materials, products or equipment furnished by County;

.3 on liquidated damages payable to Contractor pursuant to Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract for Compensable Delay;

.4 to a Subcontractor who contracts to perform a Compensable Change that is in fact wholly performed by another Subcontractor (for purposes of this Paragraph 7.7.7, "wholly performed" means that all of the Compensable Change, other than supervision or minor labor or materials, are furnished by such other Subcontractor); or

.5 on any cost or compensation with respect to which the Contract Documents state that there shall be "no Allowable Markup", "no markup for overhead and profit" or words of similar meaning.

7.7.8 Net Calculations. If any one Change or collection of Changes in the same or related portions of the Work, or in multiple portions of Work covered by a single bulletin or instruction by County, involve both Compensable Change and Deleted Work, and if the added Allowable Costs resulting from the Compensable Change exceed the reduction calculated in accordance with Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (4), (b), above, (excluding any Allowable Markup to the Contractor) then the calculation of Allowable Markups to Contractor shall be based on and limited to the resulting net increase in the Allowable Costs.

7.7.9 Unit Prices. Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon by County and Contractor shall be deemed to include and encompass all costs of performance, overhead and profit, including, without limitation, all Allowable Costs and Allowable Markups. If the unit price stated in the Contract Documents is based on an estimated quantity established by County in the Construction Contract and the actual quantity of such unit-priced item varies by more than 25% above or below the estimated quantity, an equitable adjustment in the Contract Price shall be made upon demand of either County or Contractor. Such equitable adjustment shall be based solely upon any increase or decrease in Allowable Costs (without any Allowable Markups), due solely to the variation above 125% or below 75% of the estimated quantity.

7.7.10 Discounts. For purposes of determining Allowable Costs of a Compensable Change, all trade discounts, rebates, refunds, and returns from the sale of surplus materials and equipment shall accrue and be credited to County, and Contractor shall take all necessary steps to ensure that such discounts, rebates, refunds, and returns are secured.

7.7.11 Prompt Pricing. It is fundamental to the County's objective of controlling costs that performance of Compensable Changes on a time and materials basis of compensation and without a not-to-exceed price be curtailed. Contractor recognizes that prompt pricing by Contractor is critical to this objective. Accordingly, in addition to and without limitation on any of the County's other rights or remedies, including, without limitation, its right to enforce a waiver under Subparagraph 7.6.2.4, above, it is agreed that if Contractor fails to timely submit a complete Change Order Request in accordance with Paragraph 7.6.2, above, with respect to any circumstance, event or occurrence constituting a Compensable Change then: (1) any Delay to the performance of the Work associated with the performance, delayed performance or nonperformance of such Compensable Change shall be conclusively deemed to be an Unexcused Delay; and (2) the County shall have the option, exercised in its sole discretion, to unilaterally fix and determine the amount of the Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price for such Compensable Change based on the "estimating guide" method set forth in Subparagraph 7.7.1.1 (3), above, which determination shall be conclusively final and binding upon Contractor.

7.7.12 Final Payment. No Claim by Contractor for a Contract Adjustment shall be allowed if asserted after Final Payment.

7.7.13 Full Resolution. Except as otherwise stated in Paragraph 7.7.14, below, the signing of a Change Order by Contractor and the County shall be conclusively deemed to be a full resolution, settlement and accord and satisfaction with respect to any and all Loss and Delay, whether known or unknown at the time of execution of the Change Order, related to the subject matter of the Change Order, including, without limitation, all rights to recovery of costs, expenses or damages for delay, disruption, hindrance, interference, extended or extraordinary (direct and indirect) overhead, multiplicity of changes, loss of productivity, labor, wage or material cost escalations, inefficiency, legal expenses, consultant costs, interest, lost profits or revenue, bond and insurance costs, changes in taxes and other similar and related Losses. The foregoing provisions of this Paragraph 7.7.13 shall, whether or not they are expressly stated or referenced on the face of a Change Order, be deemed to be part of the terms of the Change Order and shall be deemed to supersede and govern over any other provision contained in any proposal, estimate or other documents attached to or referenced in such Change Order that conflicts with the provisions of this Paragraph 7.7.13. **ANY RIGHT OR CLAIM BY CONTRACTOR FOR ANY ADDITIONAL COMPENSATION OR EXTENSION OF TIME RELATING DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY TO A COMPENSABLE CHANGE DESCRIBED IN A FULLY EXECUTED CHANGE ORDER SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY DEEMED WAIVED BY CONTRACTOR, EVEN IF THE CIRCUMSTANCES GIVING RISE TO SUCH ADDITIONAL COMPENSATION OR EXTENSION OF TIME WERE NOT SUSPECTED BY OR KNOWN TO THE CONTRACTOR AT THE TIME OF EXECUTION OF THE CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE AND IF SUSPECTED OR KNOWN WOULD HAVE BEEN CONSIDERED BY CONTRACTOR TO HAVE BEEN MATERIAL TO CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT TO THE CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT SET FORTH IN THE CHANGE ORDER.**

7.7.14 Reserved Rights. Change Orders shall be executed by Contractor without any express reservation of rights by Contractor to reserve for the future the assertion of any right of recovery from the County for Loss or Delay arising out of or relating to the subject matter of the Change Order. Execution of a Change Order, Unilateral Change Order or Construction Change Directive shall not be interpreted as a waiver, release or settlement of any rights or claims that the County may have for any of the following: (1) Defective Work; (2) liquidated damages or actual Losses for Delay; or (3) recoupment by County (by way of withholding of funds, set off or recovery from Contractor) of amounts paid by County for costs or markups on costs that the County discovers, following payment of such amounts to Contractor, do not constitute proper charges to County, or that constitute charges that are not properly substantiated, under the terms of the Contract Documents.

7.7.15 No "Total Cost" Calculations. Contractor represents and warrants that it has the ability to generate and maintain complete and accurate cost accounting records that, if required, will reflect the actual costs of the Work incurred or avoided for multiple Compensable Changes and, on an event-by-event basis, the effect of multiple and concurrently occurring or caused Compensable Delays on the progress of the Work. Accordingly, Contractor agrees that all Change Order Requests and Claims shall be itemized in a manner that, with reasonable mathematical certainty and without reliance upon probabilities or inferences, segregates on a discrete, event-by-event basis the direct, actual Allowable Costs associated with each individual Compensable Change or Compensable Delay. Unless otherwise agreed to by County in writing in the exercise of its sole discretion, Change Order Requests and Claims shall not be based, in whole or in part, upon any methodology (such as "total cost" or "modified total cost" methodologies) that purports to establish Contractor's entitlement to additional compensation inferentially based, solely or principally, on the difference between Contractor's total costs for the Work or a portion of the Work and its original Bid.

7.7.16 Multiple Changes. The County reserves the absolute right to make whatever Changes, including, without limitation, Compensable Changes or Deleted Work, that it determines, in its sole discretion, are necessary or otherwise desirable. Under no circumstances shall the individual or cumulative number, value or scope of such Changes, or their individual and cumulative impact on the Work, become a basis for Contractor to assert any claim for breach of contract, abandonment, rescission, termination, cardinal change or reformation of the Construction Contract, nor shall such circumstances be the basis for Contractor, or any of the Subcontractors, of any Tier, to assert a right of recovery of any Loss if such right is not permitted by, or is in excess of that allowed under, the Contract Documents.

7.7.17 Continuous Performance. Subject to Contractor's rights under Section 15.4, below, no dispute or disagreement with respect to any Changes or Delay, including, without limitation, disputes over Contractor's right to or the terms of a Contract Adjustment, shall relieve or excuse Contractor from the obligation to proceed with and maintain continuous, expeditious and uninterrupted performance of the Work, including performance of any disputed Changes.

ARTICLE 8 CONTRACT TIME

8.1 COMMENCEMENT AND COMPLETION

8.1.1 Date of Commencement. The Date of Commencement shall not be postponed by the failure of Contractor or of persons or entities for whom Contractor is responsible to perform an obligation. Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the County in writing, commence operations on the Site or elsewhere prior to receipt of a Notice to Proceed. Contractor shall not commence any Work at the Site prior to its obtaining the insurance required by Article 11, below, and the Performance Bond and Payment Bond required by Article 12, below, and the Date of Commencement of the Work shall not be changed by the effective date of such insurance or bonds.

8.1.2 Substantial, Final Completion. Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion and Final Completion within the Contract Time, as adjusted for extensions of time duly permitted, authorized and noticed pursuant to Section 8.2, below.

8.1.3 Adjustments to Contract Time. Subject to the limitations set forth in this Article 8 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Contract Time shall be extended for Compensable Delays and Excusable Delays and shall, where appropriate, be shortened for Deleted Work.

8.1.4 Early Completion. Nothing stated in these General Conditions or elsewhere in the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as creating any contractual right, express or implied, on the part of Contractor to finish

the Work earlier than the Contract Time. Contractor has included in its Contract Price the costs of all Contractor's and its Subcontractors' direct and indirect overhead, including but not limited to all staff, temporary facilities, temporary utilities and home office overhead for the entire duration of the Contract Time. These costs have been included in the Contract Price notwithstanding Contractor's anticipation of possibly completing the Work in fewer Days than established by the Contract Time. Under no circumstances (including, without limitation, circumstances in which the County has approved in writing of Contractor completing early) shall the County be liable to Contractor for any Losses, of any kind, due to the inability of Contractor to complete the Work earlier than the Contract Time, regardless of the cause, including, without limitation, Delays due to acts or omissions (intentional or negligent) of the County, Inspectors of Record, County Consultants, Separate Contractors or others. If the Contractor anticipates completing early, it must obtain in advance County's approval in writing of such early completion. Approval by County of such early completion may be granted or withheld in the County's sole and absolute discretion.

8.2 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

8.2.1 Adjustments to Contract Time

.1 Extensions. Provided that Contractor has complied with the provisions of this Section 8.2 (including, without limitation, the requirements pertaining to timely delivery of a Notice of Delay and Request for Extension), if, as a result of Excusable Delay or Compensable Delay to the actual, as-built critical path of activities leading to achievement of Substantial Completion, Contractor is unable to achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time for Substantial Completion, then the Contract Time for Substantial Completion and Final Completion shall be extended, either by Change Order or Unilateral Change Order, for the length of the proven, resulting Delay to Contractor's ability to so complete the Work. The Contract Time shall not be adjusted for Unexcused Delays.

.2 Shortening. Contractor shall within ten (10) Days after receiving notice of Deleted Work prepare and deliver to County a Time Impact Analysis of the impact of the Deleted Work upon the critical path to determine if the Contract Time should be shortened thereby and if so the duration of the shortening. If the County and Contractor are unable to agree upon the duration of the shortening, then County shall make a Good Faith Determination of the reasonable amount of time that the Contract Time shall be shortened on account of such Deleted Work.

.3 Prescribed Calculations.

(1) Work Day Lost Calculations. Contractor may claim an Excusable Delay or a Compensable Delay for a full Day only if all Work on a critical path activity is stopped for more than six (6) hours of a normal eight (8) hour Work Day and for a half-Day only if all Work on a critical path activity is stopped for three (3) to six (6) hours of such a normal Work Day. No Excusable Delay or Compensable Delay may be claimed if all Work on a critical path activity is stopped for less than three (3) hours of such a normal work Day. Similarly, where Deleted Work results in the projected avoidance of the need to perform more than six (6), or between three (3) and six (6) hours of all Work on a critical path activity on such a normal work day, the Contract Time shall be contracted by a full Day or half Day, respectively.

(2) Dry Out Time Calculations. Contract Adjustments to the Contract Time that are based upon unusual precipitation that is an Act of God as defined in Paragraph 1.1.2, above, shall include, in addition to the number of Days of Excusable Delay to which Contractor is entitled due to a cessation of Work that occurs at the Site while the unusual precipitation is occurring, an additional extension for the Delay to the critical path of activities affecting Substantial Completion that is the result of Contractor being unable, after cessation of the unusual precipitation at the Site, to proceed with performance of Work due to wet or muddy conditions at the Site (hereinafter referred to as "dry out" time); provided, however, that the amount of dry out time for which Contractor is entitled to an extension of time in any given calendar month shall not exceed the number of Days that is the product derived by multiplying (a) the number of Days of Excusable Delay to which Contractor is entitled due to a cessation of Work that occurs at the Site while such unusual precipitation is occurring, by (b) a fraction, the (i) numerator of which is the number of Days of Excusable Delay due to measurable unusual precipitation occurring at the Site during such calendar month that constitutes an Act of God as defined in Paragraph 1.1.2, above, and (ii) the denominator of which is the total number of Days of measurable precipitation occurring at the Site during said calendar month (including both the number of Days comprising the normal, 10-year monthly average of measurable precipitation recorded by NOAA and the excess, or unusual precipitation that constitutes an Act of God as defined in Paragraph 1.1.2, above).

8.2.2 Notice of Delay.

.1 Submission. Contractor shall submit written Notice of Delay to County if any instruction, request, drawing, specification, action, condition, omission, default or other circumstance occurs that constitutes an Excusable Delay or Compensable Delay or other matter that may involve or require a Contract Adjustment extending the Contract Time. Such notice shall be provided prior to performance of the Work affected or involved and no later than seven (7) Days after the Discovery Date of such circumstance.

.2 Form. Notices of Delay shall be provided using forms furnished by County or, if requested by County, using forms furnished by Contractor that are approved by County. Failure by County to request or approve a particular form shall not relieve Contractor of its obligation to provide Notice of Delay in a written form that complies with the requirements of this Paragraph 8.2.2.

.3 Content. Each Notice of Delay in order to be considered complete shall include:

(1) a general statement of the circumstances giving rise to the Notice of Delay (including, without limitation, identification of any related Construction Change Directive);

(2) a Reasonable Order of Magnitude Estimate by Contractor of any related Contract Adjustments extending the Contract Time; and

(3) if such circumstances involve a right to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price for Compensable Change that has not been waived by Contractor, Contractor shall include, if not previously provided, a complete and timely Notice of Change.

.4 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO PROVIDE A COMPLETE AND TIMELY NOTICE OF DELAY UNDER CIRCUMSTANCES WHERE A NOTICE OF DELAY INVOLVING A DELAY IS REQUIRED BY THIS PARAGRAPH 8.2.2 SHALL, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 4.6 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF THE RIGHT TO A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT ON ACCOUNT OF SUCH CIRCUMSTANCES AND A WAIVER OF ANY RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY BY REASON OF OR RELATED TO SUCH DELAY.

.5 No County Notice. Failure by Contractor to submit a timely or proper Notice of Delay under circumstances in which a Notice of Delay is required shall in no way affect County's right to a Contract Adjustment shortening the Contract Time on account of such circumstances.

8.2.3 Request for Extension.

.1 Submission. With respect to any matter that may involve or require an adjustment extending the Contract Time, Contractor shall, within fourteen (14) Days after receipt by County of a Notice of Delay pursuant to Paragraph 8.2.2, above, submit to County a written Request for Extension.

.2 Form. Requests for Extension shall be provided using forms furnished by County or, if requested by County, using forms furnished by Contractor that are approved by County. Failure by County to request or approve a particular form shall not relieve Contractor of its obligation to provide Requests for Extension in a written form that complies with the requirements of this Paragraph 8.2.3.

.3 Content. Each Request for Extension in order to be considered complete shall include:

(1) a detailed description of the circumstances giving rise to the request for Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time and a Time Impact Analysis (a Request for Extension that seeks an extension for more than one Delay shall be supported by a separate Time Impact Analysis for each separate Delay); and

(2) if such circumstances involve a right to a Contract Adjustment of the Contract Price on account of Compensable Change that has not been waived by Contractor, Contractor shall include, if not previously provided, a complete and timely Change Order Request.

.4 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

FAILURE BY CONTRACTOR TO PROVIDE A COMPLETE AND TIMELY REQUEST FOR EXTENSION UNDER CIRCUMSTANCES WHERE A REQUEST FOR EXTENSION INVOLVING A DELAY IS REQUIRED BY THIS PARAGRAPH 8.2.3 SHALL, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 4.6 OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, CONSTITUTE A WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR OF THE RIGHT TO A CONTRACT ADJUSTMENT ON ACCOUNT OF SUCH CIRCUMSTANCES AND A WAIVER OF ANY RIGHT TO FURTHER RECOURSE OR RECOVERY BY REASON OF OR RELATED TO SUCH DELAY.

.5 Adjustments Shortening Time. Failure by Contractor to submit a timely or proper Request for Extension under circumstances in which a Request for Extension is required shall in no way affect County's right to a Contract Adjustment shortening the Contract Time on account of such circumstances.

8.2.4 Response by County. After receipt of a timely and complete Request for Extension, County shall investigate the facts concerning the cause and extent of such Delay and, depending on whether the Request for Extension is justified, will notify Contractor of its approval or disapproval of all or a portion of Contractor's request. Extensions of time approved by County shall apply only to that portion of the Work affected by the Delay, and shall not apply to other portions of Work not so affected.

8.2.5 Formal Notice of Essence. Contractor recognizes and acknowledges that timely submission of a formal Notice of Delay and a formal Request for Extension, whether or not the circumstances of a Delay may be known to County or available to County through other means, are not mere formalities but are of crucial importance to the ability of County to promptly identify, prioritize, evaluate and mitigate the potential effects of Delay. Any forms of informal notice, whether verbal or written (including, without limitation, statements at regular job meetings or entries in monthly reports, daily logs, job meeting minutes, updated Construction Schedules or look-ahead schedules), that do not strictly comply with the formal requirements of Paragraph 8.2.2, above, and Paragraph 8.2.3, above, shall accordingly be deemed insufficient to satisfy the notice requirements of this Article 8.

8.2.6 Compensation for Delay.

.1 Compensable Delay. Contract Adjustments to the Contract Price for a Compensable Delay that involve an extension of the Contract Time shall be based, without duplication to any other Contract Adjustments to the Contract Price, on the terms of Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract. Contractor agrees to accept such right of Contract Adjustment in lieu of any other right that may exist under Applicable Laws for recovery of Losses due to Compensable Delay, whether incurred by Contractor or its Subcontractors, of any Tier.

.2 Deleted Work. The Contract Time and Contract Price shall be reduced by Contract Adjustment for Deleted Work (including, without limitation, Deleted Work associated with a termination by County of a portion of the Construction Contract or a deletion of portion of Work for the convenience of the County or due to an Event of Contractor Default) that results in a shortening of the Contract Time.

(1) Contract Time. The Contract Adjustment shortening the Contract Time for Substantial Completion shall be the number of Days that Contractor at the time of contracting would have reasonably expected to expend in performance of the Deleted Work and that, based on the Contractor's original Construction Schedule prepared on or about the time of contracting, were reasonably expected by Contractor to be critical to Substantial Completion of the Work within the Contract Time for Substantial Completion.

(2) Contract Price. The Contract Adjustment reducing the Contract Price shall be the product of (1) the number of Days that the Contract Time for Substantial Completion is shortened pursuant to preceding Clause (1) of this Subparagraph 8.2.6.2 multiplied times (2) the amount of liquidated damages set forth in Paragraph 3.3.2 of the Construction Contract, without any additional credit to County for Allowable Markups.

8.2.7 Acceleration of the Work.

.1 Due to Unexcused Delay. If County makes a Good Faith Determination based on County's observations of progress in performance of the Work by Contractor that Contractor will not achieve Substantial Completion of the Work within the Contract Time as adjusted pursuant to Paragraph 8.2.1, above, then Contractor shall, following receipt of a written request by County to accelerate, immediately respond in writing setting forth a detailed plan for accelerating the Work. All measures necessary, including working overtime, additional shifts, Saturdays, Sundays and holidays, to accelerate performance to ensure that the Work is performed within the Contract Time shall be taken by Contractor and the cost thereof shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense. County may also take all other necessary measures to ensure no further Delays affect achievement of Substantial Completion and Final Completion of the Work within the Contract Time and the Contractor shall reimburse County, or County may withhold from payment due to Contractor, for Losses incurred by County in taking such measures.

.2 Due to Excusable Delay. Contractor shall have the right, exercised in its sole discretion, to accelerate performance of the Work to overcome time lost due to Excusable Delay. Such acceleration, if performed other than at the written direction of County, shall be deemed a voluntary acceleration and the cost of such accelerated performance shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense. If County directs in writing that the Work be accelerated to overcome an Excusable Delay that is not concurrent with an Unexcused Delay, then Contractor shall be entitled to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price for such acceleration on and subject to the same terms as provided for in Subparagraph 8.2.7.3, below, in the case of an acceleration to overcome a Compensable Delay.

.3 Due to Compensable Delay. County shall have the right, exercised in its sole and absolute discretion, in lieu of granting a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Time for Compensable Delay, to direct in writing the acceleration of the Work by Contractor in order to recapture time lost due to such Compensable Delay. County and Contractor shall endeavor prior to commencement of such acceleration to mutually agree upon the amount of compensation to be paid therefor. County shall have the right, in the absence of such an agreement, to direct in writing that Contractor accelerate. Contractor shall comply with such directive. Contractor's right to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price on account of such acceleration shall be limited to (1) the premium time portion of any overtime paid for labor provided by Contractor or any Subcontractor, plus (2) additional supervision costs for additional shifts of supervision provided at the Site by Contractor only (not by Subcontractors), plus (3) Allowable Markup thereon as provided in Paragraph 7.7.5, above. Except as directed by County in the manner stated in this Subparagraph 8.2.7.3, no statements, conduct or actions by County will be construed as creating an obligation on the part of County to agree to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price on account of any cost of overtime or other costs associated with an acceleration of the Work to recapture time lost due to Compensable Delay.

8.2.8 Concurrent Delays. For purposes of the calculations provided for in this Paragraph 8.2.8, the words "concurrent delay", "concurrently delay" or "occur concurrently" mean the portion of two or more Delays affecting the critical path to Substantial Completion that are overlapping or co-existent. Contractor's right to a Contract Adjustment of the Contract Time (pursuant to Subparagraphs 8.2.8.1, 8.2.8.2 and 8.2.8.3, below) and Contract Price (pursuant to Subparagraphs 8.2.8.4, 8.2.8.5 and 8.2.8.6, below) shall, in the case of concurrent delays, be calculated in accordance with the following:

.1 If an Excusable Delay and a Compensable Delay occur concurrently, the maximum extension of the Contract Time shall be the number of Days from the commencement of the first Delay to the cessation of the Delay which ends last.

.2 If an Unexcused Delay occurs concurrently with either an Excusable Delay or a Compensable Delay, the maximum extension of the Contract Time shall be the number of Days, if any, by which such Excusable Delay or Compensable Delay exceeds the number of Days of such Unexcused Delay.

.3 If an Unexcused Delay occurs concurrently with both an Excusable Delay and a Compensable Delay, the maximum extension of the Contract Time shall be the number of Days, if any, by which such Excusable Delay and Compensable Delay, as determined pursuant to Subparagraph 8.2.8.1, above, exceeds the number of Days of such Unexcused Delay.

.4 If an Unexcused Delay occurs concurrently with a Compensable Delay, the maximum period of time for which Contractor shall be entitled to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price in accordance with Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract shall be the number of Days, if any, by which such Compensable Delay exceeds the number of Days of such Unexcused Delay.

.5 If a Compensable Delay occurs concurrently with an Excusable Delay, the maximum period of time for which Contractor shall be entitled to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price in accordance with Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract shall be the number of Days, if any, by which such Compensable Delay exceeds the number of Days of such Excusable Delay.

.6 If an Unexcused Delay occurs concurrently with both an Excusable Delay and a Compensable Delay, the maximum period of time for which Contractor shall be entitled to a Contract Adjustment to the Contract Price in accordance with Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract shall be the number of Days, if any, by which such Compensable Delay exceeds the number of Days of such Unexcused Delay.

8.2.9 Delay Claims. Claims by Contractor relating to disputed Contract Adjustments due to Delay shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Section 4.3, above.

8.2.10 Exercise of County Rights. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Contract Documents to the contrary, County's exercise in accordance with the Contract Documents of any of its rights or remedies permitted by Applicable Laws or the Contract Documents in response to a failure by Contractor or any Subcontractor to comply with the Contract Documents shall not, under any circumstances, entitle Contractor to a Contract Adjustment.

ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9.1 PAYMENT BY COUNTY

9.1.1 Time for Payment. County shall make payment of undisputed sums due to the Contractor upon Applications for Payment requesting Progress Payment not later than thirty (30) Days after receipt of an Application for Payment requesting Progress Payment that has been properly and timely prepared and submitted by Contractor, and approved by County, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

9.1.2 Not Acceptance. No approval, inspection or use of, or payment for, the Work by County or by any person or entity acting on County's behalf shall constitute acceptance of Work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents or a waiver of any of County's rights under the Contract Documents.

9.1.3 Interest. If County fails to make payment of an undisputed sum due as a Progress Payment to the Contractor as required by this Article 9, County shall pay interest to the Contractor equivalent to the legal rate set forth in subdivision (a) of California Code of Civil Procedure §685.010. The number of Days available to the County to make payment without incurring such interest shall be reduced by the number of Days by which the County exceeds the seven (7) Day response time applicable to the County set forth in Section 9.5, below. The foregoing is the County's sole obligation with respect to payment of interest earned or accrued on an amount claimed due prior to the commencement by Contractor of legal proceedings for recovery of such amount.

9.1.4 Disputed Payments. Subject to Contractor's rights under Section 9.8, below, no good faith dispute or disagreement between County and Contractor with respect to the amount of any payment claimed due by Contractor shall relieve or excuse Contractor from the obligation to proceed with and maintain continuous, expeditious and uninterrupted performance of the Work.

9.2 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENTS

9.2.1 Submission by Contractor. Applications for Payment requesting Progress Payment shall be properly prepared and submitted by Contractor to County once a month on the twenty-fifth (25th) Day of the month. If the twenty-fifth (25th) Day of the month is a weekend or Holiday, the Application for Payment shall be submitted on the next working day.

9.2.2 Period of Application. The period covered by each such Application for Payment requesting Progress Payment shall be not more than thirty (30) Days ending on the twenty-fifth (25th) Day of the month in which such Application for Payment is submitted.

9.2.3 Schedule of Values. Each Application for Payment shall be accompanied by a Schedule of Values prepared and submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, the provisions of Section 9.3, below.

9.2.4 Changes in Work. Applications for Payment may include requests for payment on account of Compensable Changes in the Work which have been properly authorized by Change Order or Unilateral Change Order.

9.2.5 Progress Payments. Applications for Payment requesting Progress Payments shall be based on amounts calculated in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.4, below.

9.2.6 Percentage Completion. Applications for Payment requesting Progress Payments shall indicate the Contractor's estimate of the percentage of completion of each line item listed in the Schedule of Values as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

9.2.7 Projected Work. Unless approved by County in writing in advance of an Application for Payment being submitted, which approval may be granted or denied in the sole and absolute discretion of County, Applications for Payment shall only include amounts for Work performed to the twenty-fifth (25th) Day of the month in which the Application for Payment was submitted and shall not include request for payment of amounts for Work projected to be performed, stored or delivered beyond that date.

9.2.8 Disagreements. In the event of a disagreement between County and Contractor over the accuracy or reasonableness of the Contractor's statement of percentage of progress achieved that is contained in the Application for Payment, the County shall make a Good Faith Determination of the percentage, which percentage shall then be inserted by Contractor in the Application for Payment and the Application for Payment submitted, or resubmitted, incorporating such revision.

9.2.9 Substantial Completion. For the sole purpose of the percentage calculation set forth in Paragraph 9.2.6, above, and for no other purpose, the Work shall be deemed one hundred percent complete upon Substantial Completion and the amount released to Contractor shall, subject to County's right to withhold pursuant to Section 9.6, below, be a sum sufficient to increase the total of Progress Payments to Contractor to ninety-five percent (95%) of the Contract Price.

9.2.10 Certification by Contractor. Each Application for Payment that is submitted by Contractor shall be signed by Contractor with a certification by Contractor to County that: (1) the data comprising the Application for Payment is accurate and the Work has progressed to the point indicated; (2) to the best of Contractor's knowledge, information and belief, the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents; (3) Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified; and (4) all sums previously applied for by Contractor on account of the Work performed by the Subcontractors and that have been paid by County have been paid to the Subcontractors performing such Work, without any retention, withholding or back charge by Contractor.

9.2.11 Stored Materials. County may, in the exercise of its sole and absolute discretion, approve or disapprove for inclusion in Contractor's Application for Payment the cost of materials to be incorporated, but not yet incorporated, in the Work and delivered and suitably stored either at the Site or at some other appropriate location acceptable to the County. As part of any request for such approval, Contractor shall furnish evidence satisfactory to County: (1) of the cost of such materials; (2) that such materials are under the exclusive control of Contractor, or if not, that title to the materials is in the County, free of any lien or encumbrance; and (3) with respect to materials stored off-Site, that the materials are safely and suitably stored in a bonded warehouse with appropriate insurance coverage satisfactory to County. No payment or approval by County pursuant to this Paragraph 9.2.11 shall (a) be construed as an inspection or acceptance of the materials; (b) relieve Contractor of its continuing and sole responsibility for the care and protection of, and sole responsibility for any Loss to, such materials, from any cause whatsoever; or (c) operate as a waiver of rights by County.

9.2.12 Title. Contractor warrants that title to all the Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to County no later than the time of payment. Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which approval for payment has been previously issued by County shall, to the best of Contractor's knowledge, information and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances in favor of

Contractor, the Subcontractors, material suppliers, or other persons or entities making a claim by reason of having provided labor, materials or equipment for the Work.

9.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

9.3.1 Initial Submission. Within twenty-one (21) Days after issuance by County of the Notice of Intent to Award, Contractor shall submit to County a Schedule of Values, prepared in a form and incorporating a level of detail satisfactory to County, that allocates the Contract Price to various portions of the Work, including, without limitation, each portion of the Work to be performed by a Subcontractor, self-performed Work, discrete categories of direct (i.e., on-Site) overhead costs (sometimes referred to as "general conditions costs"), Contractor home office and indirect overhead and profit and amounts reserved for contingencies.

9.3.2 Balanced Allocation. The Schedule of Values shall be balanced, reflecting in each line item Contractor's estimated or actual cost commitments for the category of Work included in the line item and a proportionate share of Contractor's overhead and profit. Techniques, such as "front-end loading", designed to create an imbalanced cash flow are strictly prohibited.

9.3.3 Line Estimates. Line item values stated in the Schedule of Values that are based on Contractor's estimates, rather than actual subcontract prices, shall be identified as such and replaced with actual subcontract prices when they become available as the subcontracting process progresses.

9.3.4 Updating. The Schedule of Values shall be updated by Contractor each month as necessary to reflect the Contractor's actual progress in subcontracting the Work. An updated Schedule of Values shall be attached to each Application for Payment.

9.3.5 Substantiation. Contractor shall provide such data as County may reasonably require to substantiate that the Schedule of Values has been prepared in conformance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Failure to provide such substantiation shall result in the Schedule of Values being deemed incomplete and unapproved by County for use by Contractor in submitting its Applications for Payment.

9.3.6 Corrections. If corrections are required in order to make the Schedule of Values comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents, such corrections shall be made as a condition of the Contractor's Application for Payment being considered properly prepared, submitted and complete.

9.3.7 Changes to Work. Costs involved in the performance of Work covered by Change Orders, Unilateral Change Orders or Construction Change Directives shall be, at the option of County, either separately scheduled or incorporated as adjustments to the respective trade lines of Work to which they apply. Except as otherwise expressly required by Article 7, above, the Schedule of Values shall not be utilized by Contractor as a basis for calculating Contract Adjustments.

9.3.8 Applications for Payment. The Schedule of Values prepared by Contractor in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents shall be used as a basis for County's review and approval or disapproval of Applications for Payment.

9.4 PROGRESS PAYMENT CONDITIONS

9.4.1 Progress Payment Amount. Subject to the other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each Progress Payment requested in an Application for Payment shall be computed as follows:

.1 take that portion of the Contract Price properly allocable to Work (other than materials, products or equipment furnished by County) permanently incorporated at the Site as part of the Work, based on the product derived by multiplying (1) the percentage completion of each such portion of the Work times (2) the portion of the total Contract Price allocated to that portion of the Work in the Schedule of Values, less a retention of five percent (5%) thereof;

.2 add that portion of the Contract Price that is allocable to materials and equipment (other than materials, products or equipment furnished by County) approved by County pursuant to Paragraph 9.2.11, above, and suitably stored at the Site or at a location off-Site, less a retention of five percent (5%) thereof;

.3 subtract the aggregate of previous payments made by the County; and

.4 subtract amounts, if any, that County has determined will be withheld pursuant to an exercise of the County's right to withhold pursuant to Section 9.6, below.

9.4.2 Other Conditions and Documentation. Contractor shall submit its Applications for Payment requesting Progress Payments to County using such forms as required by County. Without limitation to any other conditions to payment set forth elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the following shall be conditions precedent to a proper submission, and to County's approval, of each Application for Payment:

.1 submission of a Schedule of Values that complies with Section 9.3, above;

.2 submission of Contractor's certification required by Paragraph 9.2.10, above;

.3 submission of: (1) forms of conditional releases of stop payment notice and bond rights upon progress payment, complying with California Civil Code §8132, for all Work performed during the time period covered by the current Application for Payment, signed by Contractor and the Subcontractors, of every Tier; and (2) forms of unconditional releases of stop payment notice and bond rights upon progress payment, complying with California Civil Code §8134, for all Work performed during the time period covered by the previous Application for Payment, signed by Contractor and the Subcontractors, of every Tier;

.4 compliance by Contractor with its obligation for daily maintenance of Record Drawings and Specifications as required by Paragraph 3.10.1, above;

.5 compliance by Contractor with its obligation for submission of daily reports as required by Paragraph 3.10.2, above;

.6 compliance by Contractor with its obligations for submission of scheduling information and updating of the Construction Schedule as required by Section 3.9, above, and other provisions of the Contract Documents pertaining to preparation or updating of schedules and scheduling information;

.7 proper payment of prevailing wages as defined in California Labor Code §1720, et seq.;

.8 timely submission of adequate and complete certified payroll records for any time period that Work was performed and for which payment is being requested;

.9 submission of certifications by Contractor and the Subcontractors as required by Applicable Laws certifying that all employee benefit contributions due and owing have been paid in full;

.10 submission of sales tax information as required by Paragraph 3.6.3, above; and

.11 compliance by Contractor with all of its other obligations for submission of documentation or performance of conditions which, by the terms of the Contract Documents, constitute conditions to Contractor's right to receive payment for Work performed.

9.5 COUNTY APPROVAL/REJECTION OF APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

9.5.1 Review by County. Subject to County's rights under Paragraph 9.5.4, below, County shall promptly review Applications for Payment submitted by Contractor and provide its approval or disapproval, in whole or part, within (1) seven (7) Days after receipt of an Application for Payment requesting Progress Payment, and (2) within fourteen (14) Days after receipt of an Application for Payment requesting Final Payment.

9.5.2 Disapproval by County. Disapproval by County disapproving of an Application for Payment shall be accompanied by an explanation of the reasons for such disapproval. Failure by County to specify in its disapproval a particular grounds for disapproval of an Application for Payment shall not waive the County's right to assert such grounds as a basis for any future disapproval, or nullification of its prior approval, of that or any other Application for Payment.

9.5.3 Re-submittal by Contractor. An Application for Payment that is disapproved by County shall be corrected and re-submitted by Contractor after receipt by Contractor of the notice of disapproval. A re-submitted Application for Payment shall be reviewed and responded to by County in the same manner as provided in Paragraphs 9.5.1 and 9.5.2, above. If re-submitted, the re-submitted Application for Payment shall be reviewed and responded to by County in the same manner as provided in Paragraph 9.5.1 and Paragraph 9.5.2, above. If not re-submitted, only the amount, if any, that is approved for payment shall be paid until such time as a proper Application for Payment that includes the disapproved amount has been submitted in another Application for Payment and, upon such re-submittal, approved for payment.

9.5.4 Approval Nullification. County reserves the right to nullify any prior approval of an Application for Payment that is later found to not be in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether or not such noncompliance was previously actually observed or apparent on the face of the Application for Payment, and based on such nullification County may take either of the following actions, as applicable: (1) if the Application for Payment has not yet been paid by County, disapprove of that portion of the Application for Payment that is not in compliance and withhold payment of that sum until the noncompliance is fully rectified; or (2) if the Application for Payment has been paid by County, nullify the County's prior approval and withhold payment of such disputed amounts in response to future Applications for Payment; provided, however, that in either case the amount of the County's nullification shall be limited to that portion of the amount requested in the Application for Payment that is in dispute and the amount of its withholding from the current or any future Application for Payment shall be limited to the amount nullified plus any additional withholding permitted under Section 9.6, below.

9.5.5 No Waiver by County. Neither approval by County or Architect of, failure by County to exercise its right of nullification with respect to, nor payment by County upon, an Application for Payment or any portion thereof shall be interpreted as or constitute a waiver or release of any of County's rights to require Contractor's full compliance with the Contract Documents.

9.5.6 No Representation. Neither approval by County or Architect of, failure by County to exercise its right of nullification with respect to, nor payment by County upon, an Application for Payment or any portion thereof shall be interpreted as a representation that County or Architect has: (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-Site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work, (2) reviewed Contractor's construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from the Subcontractors and other data requested by County or Architect to substantiate Contractor's right to payment, or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Price.

9.6 WITHHOLDING OF PAYMENT

9.6.1 Grounds for Withholding. County may decline to approve an Application for Payment and withhold payment requested under any unpaid Application for Payment, in whole or in part, to such extent that County makes a Good Faith Determination that withholding is necessary, in the sole discretion of County, because of any of the following circumstances:

.1 Third-Party Claims. Third-party claims or stop payment notices filed or reasonable evidence (including, without limitation, failure by Contractor to submit conditional releases of stop payment notice and bond rights required by the Contract Documents) indicating the possible filing of such claims or stop payment notices.

.2 Defective Work. Defective Work not remedied.

.3 Nonpayment. Failure of Contractor to make proper payments to a Subcontractor for services, labor, materials or equipment or other Work.

.4 Inability to Complete. Reasonable doubt that the Work can be completed for the then unpaid balance of the Contract Price or within the Contract Time.

.5 Violation of Applicable Laws. Failure of Contractor or a Subcontractor to comply with Applicable Laws.

.6 Penalty. Any penalty asserted against County by virtue of Contractor's failure to comply with Applicable Laws.

.7 Lack of Progress. Failure by Contractor to maintain progress in accordance with the Construction Schedule.

.8 Setoff. Any reason specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents as grounds for a withholding, offset or setoff or that would legally entitle County to a setoff or recoupment.

.9 Consultant Services. Additional professional, consultant or inspection services required due to Contractor's failure to comply with the Contract Documents.

.10 Liquidated Damages. Liquidated damages payable to County pursuant to Section 3.2 of the Construction Contract or that there is a reasonable basis to believe will be payable to County based upon the Contractor's project date for Substantial Completion based on its update Construction Schedule or based upon other evidence available to County of the probable date that the Work will be Substantially Completed.

.11 Damage. Loss caused to County, a Separate Contractor or any other person or entity under contract to County, by Contractor or a Subcontractor.

.12 Cleanup. Cleanup performed by County and chargeable to Contractor pursuant to the terms of the Contract Documents.

.13 Employee Benefits. Failure of Contractor to pay contributions due and owing to employee benefits funds pursuant to any applicable collective bargaining agreement or trust agreement.

.14 Required Documents. Failure of Contractor to submit on a timely basis, proper and complete documentation required by the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, schedule updates, 'look ahead' schedules, pricing information, certifications and other required reports or documentation.

.15 Labor Compliance. Failure of Contractor or any Subcontractor to properly pay prevailing wages as defined in California Labor Code §§1720 et seq.

.16 Nullification. Nullification by County pursuant to Paragraph 9.5.4, above, of its prior approval of an Application for Payment.

.17 Releases. Failure by Contractor to submit any conditional release of stop payment notice and bond rights that is required pursuant to Subparagraph 9.4.2.3, above or Subparagraph 9.10.4.4, below.

.18 Other Breach. A breach by Contractor of any obligation or provision of the Contract Documents.

9.6.2 Application of Withholding. Sums properly withheld pursuant to Paragraph 9.6.1, above, may be used by County without a prior judicial determination of County's actual rights with respect to the grounds on which such withholding is based. Contractor agrees and hereby designates County as its agent for such purposes, and agrees that such payments shall be considered as payments made under the Construction Contract by County to Contractor. County shall submit to Contractor an accounting of such funds disbursed on behalf of Contractor. As an alternative to such payment, County may, in its sole and absolute discretion, elect to exercise its right to adjust the Contract Price as provided in Section 13.4, below.

9.6.3 Final Payment. In accordance with California Public Contract Code §7107, the amount to be withheld from Contractor's Final Payment pursuant to a withholding asserted pursuant to Paragraph 9.6.1, above, shall be limited to one hundred fifty percent (150%) of the disputed amount.

9.6.4 Release of Withholding. When the reasons for withholding of payment as set forth in Paragraph 9.6.1, above, are removed, approval by County will be promptly issued to Contractor for amounts previously withheld and payment of amounts withheld will be made by County within thirty (30) Days thereafter.

9.6.5 Additional Rights. The County's right of withholding set forth in this Section 9.6 is in addition to, and not a limitation upon, any other rights of withhold that County may have under the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws.

9.7 PAYMENTS BY CONTRACTOR

9.7.1 Payments to Subcontractors. Contractor shall not include in its Applications for Payment sums on account of any Subcontractor's portion of the Work that it does not intend to pay to such Subcontractor. Upon receipt of payment from County, Contractor shall pay the Subcontractors performing the Work, out of the amount paid to Contractor on account of such Subcontractors' portions of the Work, the amount to which said Subcontractors are entitled in accordance with the terms of their contracts with Contractor and Applicable Laws, including, without limitation, California Public Contract Code §7107. Contractor shall remain responsible, notwithstanding a withholding by County pursuant to the terms of these General Conditions, to promptly satisfy from its own funds sums due to all the Subcontractors who have performed the Work that is included in Contractor's Application for Payment. Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement, require each Subcontractor to make payments to its sub-subcontractors and suppliers in similar manner. County shall have no obligation to pay or be responsible in any way for payment to the Subcontractors, of any Tier.

9.7.2 Payments in Trust. Any funds that Contractor receives in payment for services or Work performed by a Subcontractor shall constitute assets of a trust, which trust funds shall be used for the exclusive benefit of the Subcontractor for the purpose of discharging Contractor's financial obligations on account of labor, services, materials or equipment furnished to the Project by the Subcontractor, provided that such labor, services, materials or equipment were performed in accordance with the Contract Documents, were included in an Application for Payment to County, and were paid by the County to Contractor. Contractor shall be the trustee of the trust and shall be required to deal with the trust assets for the benefit of the Subcontractor. Contractor shall not be a beneficiary of the trust. Nothing herein shall be construed as an intent to require that Contractor maintain trust funds in separate bank accounts, specifically designate any third party as a beneficiary of the trust created herein, or otherwise give rise to any cause of action against the County by any third party beneficiary of the trust created herein.

9.7.3 Payment Information. County will, on request, furnish to any of the Subcontractors, if practicable, information for such Subcontractor's review regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by Contractor and action taken thereon by County on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

9.7.4 Joint Payment. County shall have the right, if deemed necessary in its sole discretion, to issue joint checks made payable to Contractor and any of the Subcontractors, of any Tier. The joint check payees shall be solely responsible for the allocation and disbursement of funds included as part of any such joint payment. Endorsement on such check by a payee shall be conclusively presumed to constitute receipt of payment by such payee. In no event shall any joint check payment be construed to create: (1) any contract between County and any of the Subcontractors, of any Tier; (2) any obligation from County to any of the Subcontractors; or (3) any third-party rights against County or Architect.

9.7.5 Direct Negotiation of Stop Payment Notices. County shall have the right to directly discuss, negotiate, settle or pay, without notice to or participation by Contractor, any stop payment notice claims asserted by the Subcontractors, of any Tier, and to deduct such sums paid from sums due to Contractor.

9.7.6 Release of Stop Payment Notices. With the exception of that portion, and only that portion, of a stop payment notice or other claim that arises as a result of a failure by the County to make payment to Contractor under circumstances constituting a breach of the Construction Contract by County, if any stop payment notice or other claim, whether invalid or valid, is filed with, served upon or made or asserted against the County or the Site by any

Subcontractor, of any Tier, or their agent or employee, for money claimed due, then Contractor shall within five (5) Days after written notice by the County procure, furnish and record appropriate releases or other instruments which under Applicable Laws will fully release, extinguish and remove such stop payment notice or claim, as well as any notices of pending action or other notices recorded against the Site in connection with the enforcement thereof. All costs of such actions by Contractor shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense. Unless and until fully released as aforesaid, the County shall have the right to retain from any payment then due, or thereafter to become due, to Contractor an amount equal to one hundred and fifty percent (150%) of the amount necessary to satisfy, discharge and defend against any such stop payment notice or claim and any action or proceeding thereon, including, without limitation, an amount for anticipated attorney's fees and costs. If the amount to be paid, or the amount retained, is insufficient to satisfy, discharge and defend against any such stop payment notice or claim and any action or proceeding thereon, then Contractor shall be liable for the difference and upon demand shall immediately deposit the same with the County. The provisions of this Paragraph 9.7.6 are in addition to such other rights as the County may have against Contractor under the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws.

9.7.7 No County Obligation. Neither County nor Architect shall have any obligation to pay or to see to the payment of money to any of the Subcontractors except as may otherwise be required by Applicable Laws.

9.8 FAILURE OF PAYMENT

If, through no fault of Contractor or failure by Contractor to comply with its obligations under the Contract Documents either: (1) approval or disapproval by County of an Application for Payment properly prepared and submitted by Contractor and requesting payment that is otherwise undisputed by County is not issued within the time period required therefor by the terms of this Article 9; or (2) the County does not (a) upon an Application for Payment properly prepared and submitted by Contractor pay to Contractor, within the time period required for payment by County, an undisputed amount approved by County as earned, which approval has not been, and is not thereafter, nullified by County, or (b) pay to Contractor an amount that has been awarded by arbitration or judgment of a court of competent jurisdiction, then Contractor may, following delivery to County of a written "10-day stop work order", stop the Work until, as applicable, an approval or disapproval by County, or payment by County, is received by Contractor. Promptly upon receipt of such approval or disapproval, or payment, as applicable, Contractor shall resume the Work. Any resulting Delay associated with the shut down and start up of the Work as a result of Contractor's proper exercise of its right to stop work under this Section 9.8 shall constitute a Compensable Delay.

9.9 SUBSTITUTION OF SECURITIES FOR RETENTION

9.9.1 Public Contract Code. Pursuant to the requirements of California Public Contract Code §22300, upon the Contractor's request, the County will make payment to the Contractor of any funds withheld from payments to ensure performance under the Contract Documents if the Contractor deposits with the County, or in escrow with a California or federally chartered bank in California acceptable to the County ("Escrow Agent"), securities eligible for the investment of State Funds under Government Code §16430, or bank or savings and loan certificates of deposit, interest-bearing demand deposit accounts, standby letters of credit, or any other security mutually agreed to by the Contractor and the County, upon the following conditions:

.1 The Contractor shall be the beneficial owner of any securities substituted for monies withheld for the purpose of receiving any interest on such securities.

.2 All expenses relating to the substitution of securities under said §22300 and under this Section 9.9, including, but not limited to the County's overhead and administrative expenses and expenses of Escrow Agent, shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

.3 Securities or certificates of deposit substituted for monies withheld shall be of a value of at least equivalent to the amounts of the retention to be paid to the Contractor pursuant to the Contract Documents.

.4 If the Contractor shall choose to deposit securities in lieu of monies withheld with an Escrow Agent, the Contractor, the County and Escrow Agent shall, as a prerequisite to such deposit, enter into an escrow agreement. Such escrow agreement shall be substantially in the form "Escrow Agreement for Security Deposits in Lieu of Retention" set forth in California Public Contract Code §22300(f).

.5 The Contractor shall obtain the written consent of Surety to such agreement.

.6 Securities, if any, shall be returned to the Contractor only upon satisfactory Final Completion of the Work.

9.9.2 **Substitute Security.** To minimize the expense caused by such substitution of securities, the Contractor shall, prior to or at the time the Contractor requests to substitute security, deposit sufficient security to cover the entire amount to be withheld. Should the current market value of such substituted security at any time fall below the amount for which it was substituted, or any other amount which the County withholds pursuant to the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately and at the Contractor's Own Expense deposit additional security qualifying under said §22300 until the current market value of the total security deposited is no less than the amount subject to withholding under the Contract Documents. Securities shall be valued as often as conditions of the securities market warrant, but in no case less frequently than once per month.

9.9.3 **Deposit of Retentions.** Alternatively, subject to the conditions set forth in Paragraph 9.9.1, above, upon request of the Contractor, the County shall make payment of retentions directly to Escrow Agent at the expense of the Contractor, provided that the Contractor, the County and Escrow Agent shall, as a prerequisite to such payment, enter into an escrow agreement in the same form as prescribed in Subparagraph 9.9.1.4, above. At the Contractor's Own Expense, the Contractor may direct the investment of the payments into securities and interest bearing accounts and the Contractor shall receive the interest earned on the investments. Escrow Agent shall hold such direct payments by the County under the same terms provided herein for securities deposited by the Contractor. Upon satisfactory Final Completion of the Work, the Contractor shall receive from Escrow Agent all securities, interest and payments received by Escrow Agent from the County, less escrow fees and charges of the Escrow Account, according to the terms of said §22300 and the Contract Documents.

9.10 FINAL PAYMENT

9.10.1 **Payment by County.** Subject to the County's right of withholding as set forth in Section 9.6, above, or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, Final Payment shall be made by County not more than sixty (60) Days after completion of the Work as defined in Clauses (1), (2), (3) or (4) of California Public Contract Code § 7107(c), whichever definition is earliest satisfied.

9.10.2 **Application for Final Payment.** Upon issuance by County of the Notice of Final Completion pursuant to Paragraph 9.13.5, below, Contractor shall submit to County its Application for Payment requesting Final Payment.

9.10.3 **Review by County.** County will review and approve or disapprove of the Application for Payment requesting Final Payment as provided in Section 9.5, above.

9.10.4 **Conditions to Final Payment.** Without limitation to any other conditions to payment set forth elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the following shall be conditions to a proper submission, and to County's approval, of Contractor's Application for Payment requesting Final Payment:

.1 submission of Contractor certification as required by Paragraph 9.2.10, above;

.2 submission of consent of Surety, if any, to Final Payment;

.3 submission of a certificate evidencing that the insurance required by the Contract Documents is in force;

.4 submission of conditional releases and waivers of stop payment notice and bond rights upon final payment in the form required by California Civil Code §8136 executed by Contractor and by all the Subcontractors, of every Tier;

.5 submission of all Close-Out Documents (including, without limitation, complete, accurate Record Drawings and Specifications certified by Contractor as required by Paragraph 3.10.1, above);

.6 timely submission of adequate and complete certified payroll records for any time period that Work was performed, which have not been submitted by Contractor in connection with its previous Applications for Payment;

.7 proper payment of prevailing wages as defined in California Labor Code §§1720, et seq.;

.8 submission of certifications by Contractor and each Subcontractor, as required by any applicable collective bargaining agreement or trust agreement or Applicable Laws, certifying that all employee benefit contributions due and owing have been paid in full; and

.9 submission of any other documents or information required by the Contract Documents as a condition of Final Payment or Final Completion.

9.10.5 Disputed Amounts. Pursuant to California Public Contract Code § 7107, County may deduct and withhold from Final Payment an amount of up to one hundred fifty percent (150%) of any disputed amounts, including, without limitation, amounts to protect County against any Loss caused or threatened as a result of Contractor's failing to fully satisfy the conditions of Final Completion and Final Payment.

9.10.6 No Waiver by County. The making of Final Payment by County shall not constitute a waiver by County of any rights or claims, including, without limitation, any right or claim for reimbursement of Allowable Costs or Allowable Markup paid to Contractor that is determined by County, either before or after Final Payment, to have been not due to Contractor.

9.10.7 WAIVER BY CONTRACTOR.

ACCEPTANCE OF FINAL PAYMENT BY CONTRACTOR OR A SUBCONTRACTOR SHALL CONSTITUTE A WAIVER OF ALL RIGHTS BY THAT PAYEE AGAINST COUNTY FOR RECOVERY OF ANY LOSS, EXCEPTING ONLY THOSE CLAIMS THAT HAVE BEEN SUBMITTED BY CONTRACTOR IN THE MANNER REQUIRED BY SECTION 4.3, ABOVE, PRIOR TO, OR AT THE TIME OF CONTRACTOR'S SUBMISSION TO COUNTY OF, ITS APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT REQUESTING FINAL PAYMENT.

9.11 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

9.11.1 Contract Time. Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the Work, or such portion of the Work as may be designated at any time by County for separate delivery, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Time and other provisions of the Contract Documents.

9.11.2 Request for Inspection. Contractor shall notify the County when Contractor believes that the Work, or portion thereof designated by the County in the Contract Documents or otherwise for separate delivery, is Substantially Complete.

9.11.3 Substantial Completion Inspection. When Contractor gives notice to County that it has achieved Substantial Completion of the Work, or a County designated portion thereof, unless the County determines that the Work or County designated portion thereof is not sufficiently complete to warrant an inspection to determine Substantial Completion, County, Inspector of Record, Architect and such others as may be designated by County will inspect the Work, or such County designated portion thereof.

9.11.4 Substantial Completion Punch List. At the conclusion of such inspection, County shall prepare and give to Contractor (or, Owner may request that Contractor prepare and provide to County) a Substantial Completion Punch List of items, if any, to be completed or corrected for Substantial Completion. If Contractor disputes any of the items included, it shall so note its objection on the Substantial Completion Punch List. Contractor shall proceed within forty-eight (48) hours after preparation of the Substantial Completion Punch List to commence correction or completion of the items on the Substantial Completion Punch List, including, without limitation, any disputed items, and all such items of Work shall be completed promptly by Contractor before the Work will be considered as Substantially Complete. Failure by County, Architect, Inspector of Record or Contractor to include an item on the Substantial Completion Punch List does not alter the responsibility of Contractor to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Items of Work necessary for Substantial Completion that, for any reason, have been omitted from the Substantial

Completion Punch List shall be added to the Substantial Completion Punch List and Contractor shall, at the request of County, Architect or Inspector of Record made at any time prior to Final Payment commence correction or completion of such items within forty-eight (48) hours and all such items of Work shall be completed by Contractor promptly and before the Work will be considered as Substantially Complete.

9.11.5 Re-Inspection. Contractor shall notify County when the items of Work shown on the Substantial Completion Punch List are completed. County, Inspector of Record, Architect and such others as County deems necessary or appropriate will then make a further inspection to determine whether such Work is Substantially Complete. If such inspection, or any subsequent re-inspection required pursuant hereto, discloses any item, whether or not included on the Substantial Completion Punch List, which must be completed or corrected before Substantial Completion, Contractor shall, as a condition of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item, which shall then be re-inspected to confirm that such Work is Substantially Complete. Contractor shall reimburse County, or County may at its option withhold from Contractor's payments, amounts incurred by County to the Inspector of Record, Architect, County Consultants or others whose services, for reasons within the control or responsibility of Contractor or the Subcontractors, are necessary for more than two (2) such re-inspections to determine Substantial Completion.

9.11.6 Notice of Substantial Completion. When County determines that the Work, or such designated portion thereof, is Substantially Complete, County will prepare a Notice of Substantial Completion on the County's form, which shall state the date of Substantial Completion. If the Notice of Substantial Completion is for the entire Work, then the County will attach to it the Final Completion Punch List prepared in accordance with Paragraph 9.13.2, below. Regardless of the date the Notice of Substantial Completion is issued, Substantial Completion shall be deemed to have occurred on the date stated in the Notice of Substantial Completion.

9.12 PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE

County reserves the right to beneficially occupy all or any portion of the Work at any time before Substantial Completion of the entire Work. Beneficial occupancy means that County has assumed physical occupancy and use of all or such portion of the Work. Commencement of improvements or other work by Separate Contractors in order to ready the Work for use or occupancy by County shall be unconditionally permitted in all cases prior to Substantial Completion and shall not constitute a taking of beneficial occupancy by County. Exercise by County in accordance with the provisions of this Section 9.12 of its right to take beneficial occupancy shall not constitute grounds for a Contract Adjustment. The County's right of beneficial occupancy of all or a portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall be subject to the following conditions:

9.12.1 County and such others as County deems necessary will make an inspection of the portion of the Work to be beneficially occupied and prepare a list of items to be completed or corrected in the same manner as required by and subject to the same conditions as set forth in Section 9.11, above.

9.12.2 Beneficial occupancy by County shall not be construed as Acceptance of that portion of the Work which is to be occupied.

9.12.3 Except as otherwise provided in this Section 9.12, beneficial occupancy by County shall not constitute a waiver of rights of the County against Contractor. Notwithstanding anything stated in this Section 9.12 or elsewhere in the Contract Documents to the contrary, beneficial occupancy by County shall not constitute a waiver of rights of County relating to Defective Work in the area beneficially occupied or in any other portion of the Work.

9.12.4 Prior to the County's taking beneficial occupancy, Contractor shall submit to County an itemized list of each piece of equipment located in or serving the area to be occupied stating the date operation of such piece of equipment commenced, together with operating instructions, manuals and other information required by the Contract Documents. Contractor shall provide, in the areas beneficially occupied, on a continual basis, utility services, elevator service, and heating and cooling systems in operable condition commencing at the time of beneficial occupancy and until Final Completion of the entire Work. County shall be responsible, from and after taking occupancy, for utility consumption, regular operation and regular maintenance of such systems or equipment.

9.12.5 County shall pay all normal operating and maintenance costs resulting from its use of equipment in areas beneficially occupied.

9.12.6 County shall pay all utility costs that arise out of its beneficial occupancy.

9.12.7 Contractor shall not be responsible for providing security in areas beneficially occupied.

9.12.8 County shall use its best efforts to prevent its beneficial occupancy from interfering with the conduct of Contractor's remaining Work.

9.12.9 Contractor shall not be required to repair damage caused solely by County's beneficial occupancy.

9.12.10 Contractor shall continue to maintain all insurance required by the Contract Documents in full force and effect.

9.13 FINAL COMPLETION

9.13.1 **Contract Time.** Contractor shall expeditiously and diligently perform the Work after Substantial Completion, including, without limitation, all items of Work on the Final Completion Punch List that accompanies the Notice of Substantial Completion, so as to achieve Final Completion within the requirements of the Contract Time for Final Completion.

9.13.2 **Final Completion Punch List.** Contractor shall prepare and submit to County at the time that Contractor requests inspection for Substantial Completion of the entire Work pursuant to Paragraph 9.11.2, above, a draft proposed Final Completion Punch List of items of Work that will be required to be completed or corrected for Final Completion. Items identified in the course of any inspection for Substantial Completion that are required to Finally Complete the Work following Substantial Completion shall be added to the proposed Final Completion Punch List and the revised Final Completion Punch List attached to the Notice of Substantial Completion. If Contractor disputes any of the items included, it shall so note its objection on the Final Completion Punch List. When Contractor considers the Final Completion Punch List to be complete, it shall promptly sign and deliver the Final Completion Punch List to the County. Failure by County, Architect, Inspector of Record or Contractor to include an item on the Final Completion Punch List does not alter the responsibility of Contractor to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Items of Work necessary for Final Completion that, for any reason, have been omitted from the Final Completion Punch List shall be added to the Final Completion Punch List upon request by the County made at any time prior to Final Payment and completion of such items shall be made promptly and before the Work will be considered Finally Complete.

9.13.3 **Performance of Punch List.** Contractor shall proceed promptly and in accordance with the Contract Time to correct and complete the items on the Final Completion Punch List, including, without limitation, any disputed items, and all such items of Work shall be completed by Contractor before the Work will be considered as Finally Complete.

9.13.4 **Request for Final Inspection.** Contractor shall notify County when Contractor believes that the Work is Finally Complete. County, Inspector of Record, Architect and such others as County deems necessary or appropriate will then make a further inspection to determine whether such Work is Finally Complete. If such inspection, or any subsequent re-inspection required pursuant hereto, discloses any item, whether or not included on the Final Completion Punch List, which must be completed or corrected before Final Completion, Contractor shall, as a condition of Final Completion, complete or correct such item, which shall then be re-inspected to confirm that such Work is Finally Completed. Contractor shall reimburse County, or County may at its option withhold from Contractor's payments, amounts incurred by County to the Inspector of Record, Architect, County Consultants or others whose services, for reasons within the control or responsibility of Contractor or the Subcontractors, are necessary for more than two (2) inspections to determine Final Completion.

9.13.5 **Notice of Final Completion.** When County determines that the Work is Finally Complete, County will prepare a Notice of Final Completion on the County's form, which shall state the date of Final Completion. Regardless of the date the Notice of Final Completion is issued, Final Completion shall be deemed to have occurred on the date stated in the Notice of Final Completion.

9.13.6 **Acceptance by County.** Acceptance may be exercised by County, in its sole and absolute discretion, either after Final Completion or, without waiving or releasing Contractor from any of its obligations under the Contract Documents, at any time after Substantial Completion and prior to Final Completion.

9.13.7 **Notice of Completion.** In addition to issuance of the Notice of Substantial Completion and Notice of Final Completion, County shall have the right, exercised in its sole and absolute discretion, to record a Notice of Completion pursuant to California Civil Code §9204.

9.13.8 **No Waiver by County.** No inspections conducted pursuant to this Article 9 nor any approvals or certificates issued by County, Architect or Inspector of Record shall be deemed to be a waiver or limitation on County's right to insist on Final Completion and full performance of all other conditions to Final Payment under the Contract Documents prior to issuance of Final Payment to Contractor.

ARTICLE 10 INSPECTIONS, SAFETY AND HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES

10.1 INSPECTIONS

10.1.1 **General.** One or more Inspectors of Record, including special inspectors as required, may be employed by County and assigned to the Work. The fees of Inspectors of Record shall be directly paid for by County. IF INSPECTORS OR RECORD ARE ASSIGNED TO THE WORK, THEN NO WORK SHALL BE CARRIED ON EXCEPT UNDER THE INSPECTION, AND WITH THE KNOWLEDGE, OF THE APPROPRIATE INSPECTOR(S) OF RECORD, and Contractor shall be responsible, at Contractor's Own Expense, to remove and replace any Work performed without such inspection by the appropriate Inspector of Record.

10.1.2 **Coordination.** Contractor shall schedule, arrange, and coordinate its activities with the activities of the County, Inspectors of Record, Architect, County Consultants and others designated by County to inspect or observe the Work. When, in order to comply with the intent of the Contract Documents, inspection or observation must be made at the plant or mill of the manufacturer or fabricator of material or equipment, Contractor shall notify the County, as well as any other persons identified by County as assigned by it to inspect or observe the Work, a sufficient length of time in advance to allow for arrangements to be made for such inspection or observation.

10.1.3 **Uncovering of Work.** County or an Inspector of Record shall have the right to request that any portion of the Work be uncovered by Contractor for inspection. Except as otherwise provided in Paragraph 10.1.1, above, if such Work is found to be in accordance with the Contract Documents, then all of the additional costs incurred in uncovering, replacing and re-covering the Work shall constitute grounds for Contractor, upon proper notice and request pursuant to Article 7, above, to receive a Contract Adjustment for Compensable Change and if such uncovering, replacing and re-covering of the Work causes a Delay, such Delay shall constitute grounds for Contractor, upon proper and timely notice and request pursuant to Article 8, above, to receive a Contract Adjustment for Compensable Delay. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, then such costs of uncovering, replacing and re-covering shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense and any resulting Delay shall be consider an Unexcused Delay.

10.1.4 **Off-Hours Inspections.** Contractor shall request approval by County before arranging any inspections either: (1) before 7:00 am or after 3:00 pm on Monday through Friday, or (2) on any Saturday, Sunday, holiday or any other time when Work is not usually in progress. Such request shall be delivered to County at least two (2) working days in advance of the inspection being performed. Approval or disapproval of such request is in the sole and absolute discretion of County. Except where such off-hours inspections are due to a breach by County of an obligation under the Contract Documents, the additional cost (over and above that which would be required for inspections during regular business hours) to County of the inspection shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

10.1.5 **Access to the Work.** Contractor shall make available for use by County, Inspectors of Record, Architect, County Consultants and others assigned to inspect or observe the Work, any equipment (wheelbarrow, shovel, ladder, man-lift, etc.) that is available or in use on Site, and is required to assist in such inspections or observations.

10.1.6 Right to Stop Work. County shall have the right, but not the obligation, to order Contractor to stop performance of Work. Inspectors of Record shall, only if and to the extent permitted by Applicable Laws or if they are given written authority to do so by County, have the authority, but not the obligation, to stop the Work whenever provisions of Contract Documents are not being complied with, or the conduct of the Work poses a probable risk of harm to persons or property.

10.1.7 No County Duty. No authority of the County, Inspectors of Record, Architect, County Consultants or others designated by County to inspect the Work that is conferred by the Contract Documents nor any decision made by any of them in good faith either to exercise or not exercise such authority, nor any recommendation by any of them, shall give rise to a duty or responsibility on the part of any of them to Contractor or to the Subcontractors, of any Tier.

10.1.8 Contractor Responsibility. Inspections or observations by the County, Inspectors of Record, County Consultants or others shall not in any way relieve Contractor from its sole responsibility for full compliance with all of the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents, nor be construed to lessen, to any degree, Contractor's responsibility for providing efficient and capable superintendence as required herein or for incorporating into the Work only those items of the Work that conform to the Contract Documents.

10.1.9 Reimbursement to County. Without limitation to any other provisions of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall reimburse the County at Contractor's Own Expense, or County shall have the right, at its option, to withhold from payments due to Contractor, costs of inspections, observations or testing and other Losses that are incurred for any of the following reasons: (1) Contractor has failed to execute the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents; (2) materials or equipment have been substituted by Contractor, without prior approval by the County and Architect; (3) Defective Work; or (4) to conduct load testing of certain portions of the structure that have not fully met the requirements of the Contract Documents.

10.2 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND PROGRAMS

10.2.1 General Safety Obligation. Contractor shall, notwithstanding the activities of others (such as, but not limited to, the County, Architect, Inspectors of Record, County Consultants or others designated by County to prepare safety recommendations or inspect or observe the Work), be solely responsible, on a twenty-four (24) hours a Day, seven (7) Days a week basis, for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs on the Site in connection with the preparation, performance, observation or inspection of the Work, including all necessary precautions to protect and safeguard all persons and property from loss, injury, death or damage resulting, directly or indirectly, from the activities of Contractor or the Subcontractors, including, without limitation, all of the following:

- .1** persons in and around the Site, as well as their personal property and vehicles;
- .2** the Work, materials and equipment to be incorporated therein under care, custody or control of Contractor or the Subcontractors, of any Tier, whether in storage on or off the Site, including, without limitation, the provision of temperature control, covering and enclosures necessary to prevent Loss due to adverse weather conditions;
- .3** other property at the Site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, curbs, roadways, structures (including, without limitation, protection from settlement or loss of lateral support) and utilities not designated for removal, relocation or replacement in the course of construction; and
- .4** construction and operations by the County, Architect and Inspectors of Record.

10.2.2 Contractor's Safety Program. Prior to starting the Work, Contractor shall prepare and submit to County a Safety Program, which shall comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents and shall include, at a minimum, guidelines, requirements and procedures for the following: safety management policy; emergency response plan; illness and injury prevention procedures; safety meetings; accident investigation; basic accident causes; safety inspection checklist; fire prevention and control; report forms; and employee safety manual and procedures for achieving compliance with safety requirements of insurers. A copy of the Safety Program shall be maintained on Site at all times and provided to the County upon request. Contractor is solely responsible for monitoring activities at the Site for compliance with the Safety Program and for the enforcement thereof.

10.2.3 Safety Orders. Contractor shall comply with all Applicable Laws, including, without limitation, all safety laws, standards, orders, rules, regulations and building codes, to prevent accidents or injury to persons on, about or adjacent to the Site and to provide a safe and healthful place of employment. Contractor shall, at Contractor's Own Expense, correct any violations of Applicable Laws occurring or threatened by conditions on the Site.

10.2.4 Safety Representative. Contractor shall designate a responsible member of its organization on the Site, who meets the qualification and competency requirements of Applicable Laws and whose sole duty shall be giving safety instructions, prevention of accidents and overall job site safety (including, without limitation, posting of information and other notices regarding safety that are required under occupational safety and health laws and compliance with reporting and other occupational safety requirements pertaining to the protection of the life, safety and health of the workers). The name of the person so designated shall be reported to the County by Contractor prior to the commencement of any Work on the Site.

10.2.5 Protection. Contractor shall take reasonable precautions to protect the Work and all building materials, equipment, temporary field offices, storage sheds, and other public and private real and personal property that might be affected, directly or indirectly, by Contractor's activities associated with performance of the Work, and shall make good, at Contractor's Own Expense, all Loss due to failure to provide such reasonable precautions.

10.2.6 Safeguards, Disabled Access. Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Work, all necessary safeguards for safety and protection, including, without limitation, safety devices, belts, nets, barriers, safety rails, canopies, danger signs, fire protection, no smoking prohibitions, warnings against hazards, safety regulations postings and notifications to owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities, and shall, as required by Applicable Laws, make provision for access for, and provide assistive devices to, persons with disabilities, including, without limitation, providing safe pathways of travel around areas where construction is being performed so that occupants, visitors, the public and others on the Site with disabilities are afforded reasonably direct and barrier-free access to areas of the Site and Existing Improvements.

10.2.7 Fire, Explosives, Hazardous Substances. Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to guard against and eliminate possible fire hazards. Explosives may be used or stored only when authorized in writing by the County. Explosives shall be handled, used and stored in accordance with Applicable Laws. When use or storage of explosives or other Hazardous Substances or methods of construction involving use of dangerous materials or equipment are necessary for execution of the Work, Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

10.2.8 First Aid. Contractor shall maintain emergency first aid treatment for all workers and other persons on the Project which complies with the Federal Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C.A. §§651 et seq.) and all other Applicable Laws.

10.2.9 Unsafe Conditions. Contractor shall immediately correct any condition that exists on the Site, or that County, in its reasonable judgment, determines to exist on the Site, that is unsafe or potentially unsafe to persons or property.

10.2.10 Responsibility for Loss. Contractor shall promptly remedy Loss to any property or person caused in whole or in part by the failure of Contractor, the Subcontractors, of any Tier, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable to fully comply with the requirements of this Article 10, except Loss attributable solely to the negligent acts or omissions of the County, Inspectors of Record, Architect, County Consultants or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, and not attributable, in whole or in part, to the negligence, willful misconduct or violation of Applicable Laws by Contractor or a Subcontractor, of any Tier, or the failure by Contractor to comply with the Contract Documents. The foregoing obligations of Contractor are in addition to and not a limitation upon Contractor's indemnity obligations under Section 3.18, above.

10.2.11 Loading, Storage. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the storage and staging of materials and equipment on-Site and off-Site and shall not load or store or permit any part of the Work or the Site to be loaded or stored so as to endanger the safety of persons or risk loss or damage to property.

10.2.12 Emergency.

.1 Contractor Responsibility. In an emergency involving safety or protection of persons or property, Contractor shall act immediately, either at County's direction or as otherwise necessary under the circumstances, to prevent any Loss. In such cases, Contractor shall immediately notify County, which notice may be oral, followed within twenty-four (24) hours after occurrence of the incident by written confirmation of the occurrence of such emergency and Contractor's action in response thereto.

.2 County Action. If, in the sole discretion of County, the condition is immediately threatening life or property, County may, with or without notice to Contractor, take whatever immediate action is necessary to correct the life-threatening condition, and the costs thereof, including, without limitation, any fees or costs of Architect, Inspectors of Record, County Consultants or others to whom County may be liable, shall be borne by Contractor at the Contractor's Own Expense.

10.2.13 No County Responsibility. Nothing set forth in this Section 10.2 or elsewhere in the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as an assumption of any responsibility on the part of County or other persons or entities other than the Contractor and the Subcontractors, to report such conditions to Contractor nor as relieving Contractor of any of its responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

10.2.14 Separate Contractors. With respect to work of a Separate Contractor being performed within an area of the Site that is under the responsibility or control of the Contractor, Contractor shall: (1) provide copies of the Safety Program to the Separate Contractors and advise the Separate Contractors of the areas of the Site to which the Safety Program applies and where compliance with the Safety Program is expected; (2) protect the Separate Contractors' work and workers from Loss due to the actions or inactions of Contractor and the Subcontractors; and (3) notify the Separate Contractor and County of any observed violation by the Separate Contractor of the Safety Program or of any violations by the Separate Contractor of Applicable Laws governing safety on the Site. Nothing herein shall be interpreted as relieving the Separate Contractors from their obligations to comply with the Contractor's Safety Program, as excusing any failure by a Separate Contractor from performing its obligations under its contracts with County or Applicable Laws or as obligating Contractor to directly supervise or enforce the obligations of the Separate Contractors to comply with the requirements of the Safety Program or Applicable Laws relating to safety.

10.3 HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES, MOLD

10.3.1 Hazardous Substances.

.1 On Site Conditions.

(1) Existing Conditions. In the event Contractor or its Subcontractors encounter materials existing or otherwise present at the Site that are reasonably believed to be Hazardous Substances that have not been rendered harmless, Contractor and Subcontractors shall, except in cases where the removal, encapsulation or abatement of such Hazardous Substances is indicated by the Contract Documents to be part of the Work to be performed by Contractor, immediately stop Work in the area affected and report the condition to County in writing. Contractor and Subcontractors shall continue Work in unaffected areas reasonably believed safe. County shall then promptly arrange for the sampling, testing and profiling of such suspected Hazardous Substances to confirm the nature, quantity or concentration thereof. In the event that such suspected Hazardous Substances are determined not to be Hazardous Substances or to be Hazardous Substances but not of sufficient nature, quantity or concentration to trigger handling and manifesting of the same as a hazardous waste upon disturbance and removal, then Contractor and its Subcontractors shall, without any Contract Adjustment, be obligated to resume the portion of the Work that was suspended and shall proceed to handle and dispose of such materials pursuant to the Contract Documents, taking all reasonable precautions that are applicable under the circumstances. If, alternatively, the suspected Hazardous Substances are determined to be Hazardous Substances of sufficient nature, quantity or concentration to trigger handling and manifesting of the same as hazardous waste upon disturbance and removal, the parties shall determine what, if any, action to take with respect to such Hazardous Substances, whether to resume Work with respect to such Hazardous Substances, taking all reasonable precautions that are applicable under the circumstances, and what, if any, Contract Adjustment is appropriate and mutually agreed in order to account for any increased cost of, or Delay in connection with, handling or disposal of Hazardous Substances not already contemplated and provided for in the Contract Documents.

(2) Contractor Release. Contractor and its Subcontractors shall not cause the discharge, release, emission, spill, storage, treatment or disposal of any Hazardous Substance on or adjacent to the Site, except as required and permitted by the Contract Documents and Applicable Laws in connection with Contractor's performance of an obligation to remove Hazardous Substances as part of the Work agreed to be performed under the Contract Documents or as otherwise required under the provisions of this Subparagraph 10.3.1.1. Should Contractor or its Subcontractors discharge, release, emit, spill, treat, store or dispose of any Hazardous Substance on the Site in violation of the foregoing obligation or otherwise in violation of Applicable Laws, Contractor shall at Contractor's Own Expense and without limitation to County's other rights or remedies for default immediately (a) inform County in writing of such event, (b) advise County with respect to any release reporting or notification requirement that may apply as a result of such event, (c) assist County in complying with any such reporting or notification requirement as determined by County, and (d) perform any investigation, remediation, removal or other response that is necessary or desirable in order to abate or clean up the condition resulting from such event to the full satisfaction of County and any applicable Governmental Authority. Such Hazardous Substances shall be removed and properly disposed of as soon as they can be accepted at an appropriate disposal facility, and in no event later than sixty (60) Days after such waste is generated, unless a longer time is approved by County.

.2 Remediation by Contractor.

(1) Application. The provisions of this Paragraph 10.3.1.2 shall apply only if the Work to be performed by Contractor includes within its scope the removal, abatement, moving, handling, containment, disposal or transport of Hazardous Substances

(2) Advance Submissions to County. Before Contractor or any of its Subcontractors moves, removes, or transports Hazardous Substances to a facility for the receipt, treatment, storage or disposal of the Hazardous Substances ("Hazardous Substances Facility"), Contractor shall cause the person or entity who will be moving, removing or transporting the Hazardous Substances to provide to County the following: (a) verification of the Hazardous Substance Facility's or other transporter's licensed status to haul such materials; (b) verification of the Hazardous Substance Facility's licensed status, including a current permit to receive the specific materials to be transported there; (c) certification that the Hazardous Substance Facility is not under enforcement action by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency ("EPA") or applicable State Governmental Authority or listed on any applicable EPA or applicable State Government Authority list of violating facilities; (d) verification of the Hazardous Substances Facility's EPA Identification Number (if applicable); and (e) original executed letter(s) of indemnity from the Hazardous Substances Facility bearing the Hazardous Substance Facility's letterhead. Contractor further warrants that the selected Hazardous Substance Facility is appropriately licensed and permitted to store, treat and dispose of Hazardous Substances waste in connection with the Work.

(3) Contractor Responsibility. Contractor warrants that it is aware of and understands the hazards which are presented to persons, property and the environment in performance of the transportation, storage and disposal of the Hazardous Substances described in the Contract Documents. Contractor and its Subcontractors and agents shall be responsible for the following: (a) processing the application for, and receiving on behalf of the County or appropriate entity, an EPA or state-equivalent generator identification number (if required); (b) preparing manifests and other shipping documents; (c) making all necessary arrangements (after consultation with County) for any off-Site transportation, treatment, storage and disposal of such Hazardous Substances in accordance with Applicable Laws; (d) ensuring the proper and lawful transportation and disposal of such Hazardous Substances, even if such services are performed by other entities under contract with Contractor or its Subcontractors; and (e) taking any necessary actions to ensure such proper transport and disposal in the event of any contingency, such as the rejection of the Hazardous Substances as nonconforming by any waste disposal facility. Contractor shall promptly provide to County copies of all manifests and other shipping documents confirming the receipt and proper disposal of all Hazardous Substances at the Hazardous Substances Facility, even if such services are performed by other entities under contract with Contractor or its Subcontractors.

(4) Reporting Requirements. Contractor shall comply with any Hazardous Substances release reporting requirements to Governmental Authorities directly applicable to Contractor. Notice of such reporting must be provided in advance to County or concurrently in the event of an emergency.

(5) Samples. Contractor and its Subcontractors shall retain all media samples for the longer of (a) the longest holding period specified in any federal, state or local laboratory analytical procedures or

guidance for the analyses performed; or (b) three months for soil samples and thirty (30) Days for water samples. Further storage or transfer of samples will be made at County's expense upon County's written request of Contractor. Contractor shall require by contract that each and every Subcontractor and agent of Contractor or a Subcontractor who performs testing of samples in connection with the Work properly disposes of such samples in accordance with Applicable Laws after completion of testing and notice to County. Regarding any such samples which may remain on-Site, provided County has approved of such on-Site storage in advance, County agrees to pay all costs associated with the storage, transport, and disposal of such samples.

(6) Verification. Upon Final Completion of the Work, Contractor shall confirm to County in writing that: (a) all Hazardous Substances specified for removal in the Contract Documents have been removed; and (b) all Hazardous Substances wastes removed from the Site as part of the Work have been disposed of in accordance with this Subparagraph 10.3.1.2 and Applicable Laws in a Hazardous Substances Facility.

10.3.2 Mold. Contractor is responsible to immediately notify County in writing if any conditions in the construction materials incorporated or to be incorporated into the Work or present in Existing Improvements are encountered at the Site that Contractor or any Subcontractor knows or, in the exercise of due care of a Contractor and not that of a consultant with special or technical expertise in the subject of Mold, should know indicate the presence of Mold or if untreated are likely to result in the growth of Mold. Contractor shall thereafter take such precautions as are reasonably required to prevent the exposure of persons to such conditions until they have been evaluated. Except as otherwise authorized by the Contract Documents or as are usual and customary according to prevailing standards of the construction industry in the vicinity of the Project, Contractor shall not allow water or moisture to come into contact with materials in Existing Improvements or with materials located at the Site that are incorporated or to be incorporated into the Work and if such contact occurs, the areas affected shall be inspected by Contractor, using appropriate consultants experienced in testing and evaluating Mold, for the presence of Mold and evaluated for the potential of future growth of Mold. All portions thereof that are found to indicate the presence of Mold, or that are found to be in a condition that has the potential for becoming a source of Mold, shall be removed and replaced. Costs incurred by Contractor due to its failure to perform its obligation under this Paragraph 10.3.2 shall be borne by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

10.3.3 Release of County. Contractor assumes the risk that its employees or the employees of its Subcontractors, and other persons that they cause or permit to be present on the Site, may be exposed to known or unknown Hazardous Substances or Mold. Under no circumstances shall County be liable for, and Contractor hereby fully and unconditionally releases County and the other Indemnitees from, and agrees to defend and indemnify County and the other Indemnitees on the terms set forth in Section 3.18, above, against, any and all known and unknown Losses resulting from or relating to the exposure of any employee of Contractor or its Subcontractors, or other person that they cause or permit to be present on the Site, to: (1) Hazardous Substances or Mold encountered in connection with or as a result of the performance of the Work, or (2) Hazardous Substances or Mold not necessarily encountered in connection with the performance of the Work, but to which any of them may nevertheless be exposed as a result of their being present on the Site.

10.3.4 Communications with Governmental Authorities. Contractor shall provide to County copies of all written communications with Governmental Authorities or others relating to Hazardous Substances or Mold (other than privileged communications); provided, however, that non-disclosure of privileged communications shall not limit Contractor's obligation to otherwise comply with the terms of the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, this Section 10.3.

10.3.5 Subcontractors. Contractor shall include provisions in all contracts it enters into with Subcontractors for the Work requiring them to assume toward Contractor and County the same obligations that Contractor assumes toward County under this Section 10.3. Contractor shall require the Subcontractors to ensure that such provisions are included in all contracts they enter into with all lower-Tier Subcontractors.

ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE

11.1 INSURANCE

11.1.1 Contractor's Insurance Requirements. Without limiting or diminishing any of the Contractor's obligations to defend, indemnify or hold the County harmless as set forth elsewhere in the Contract Documents, Contractor shall procure and maintain or cause to be maintained throughout the performance of the Work and for the duration of any guarantee or warranty provided under the Contract Documents, at Contractor's Own Expense, the following insurance coverages:

.1 Workers' Compensation. If the Contractor has "employees", as defined by the State of California, the Contractor shall provide a policy of statutory Workers' Compensation Insurance (Coverage A) as prescribed by the laws of the State of California. Such policy shall include Employers' Liability (Coverage B) including Occupational Disease with limits not less than \$1,000,000 per person per accident. Such policy shall be endorsed to waive subrogation in favor of the County and, if applicable, to provide a Borrowed Servant/Alternate Employer Endorsement. Pursuant to §3700 of the California Labor Code, Contractor shall file with the County before commencing the Work the following signed certification:

"I am aware of the provisions of Section 3700 of the Labor Code, which requires every employer to be insured against liability for workers' compensation or to undertake self-insurance in accordance with the provisions of that Code, and I shall comply with such provisions before commencing the performance of the Work of this Construction Contract."

.2 Commercial General Liability. Contractor shall provide a policy of Commercial General Liability insurance coverage, including but not limited to, premises liability, contractual liability, products and completed operations liability, personal and advertising injury, and cross liability coverage, covering claims which may arise from or out of Contractor's performance of its obligations hereunder. Such policy shall name the County, its agencies, districts, special districts and departments, and their respective directors, officers, elected or appointed officials, agents, employees and representatives, including, without limitation, the members of the Board of Supervisors, and all other Indemnitees, as "additional insureds" and contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of the County and all other such additional insureds. Such policy's limit of liability shall not be less than \$1,000,000 per occurrence combined single limit. If such policy contains a general aggregate limit, it shall apply separately to the Construction Contract or be no less than two (2) times the occurrence limit.

.3 Vehicle Liability. If vehicles or mobile equipment are used in the performance of the Work or other obligations under the Contract Documents, then Contractor shall provide a policy of liability insurance coverage for all owned, non-owned or hired vehicles so used in an amount not less than \$1,000,000 per occurrence combined single limit. If such policy contains a general aggregate limit, it shall apply separately to the Construction Contract or be no less than two (2) times the occurrence limit. Such policy shall name the County, its agencies, districts, special districts and departments, and their respective directors, officers, elected or appointed officials, agents, employees and representatives, including, without limitation, the members of the Board of Supervisors, and all other Indemnitees, as "additional insureds" and contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of the County and all other such additional insureds.

.4 Property (Physical Damage). Contractor shall provide a policy of all-risk property insurance coverage for the full replacement value of all Contractor's equipment, improvements/alterations, temporary structures, and systems, including without limitation, items owned by others in the Contractor's care, custody or control, used on the Site or other County-owned property, or used in any way connected with the performance of the Work.

.5 Builder's All Risk (Course of Construction) Insurance. The Bid Form utilized by Contractor to prepare its Bid states whether the Contractor shall include Builder's All Risk (Course of Construction) Insurance for the Project. If the Bid Form states that such insurance shall be included by the Bidder in its Bid, then Contractor shall provide a policy of Builder's All Risk (Course of Construction) insurance coverage including (if the Work is located in an earthquake or flood zone or if required on financed or bond financing arrangements) coverage for earthquake and flood, covering the County, Contractor and every Subcontractor, of every Tier, for the entire Project, including property to be used in the construction of the Work while such property is at off-Site storage locations or while in transit or temporary

off-Site storage. Such policy shall include, but not be limited to, coverage for fire, collapse, faulty workmanship, debris removal, expediting expense, fire department service charges, valuable papers and records, trees, grass, shrubbery and plants. If scaffolding, falsework and temporary buildings are insured separately by the Contractor or others, evidence of such separate coverage shall be provided to County prior to the start of the Work. Such policy shall be written on a completed value form. Such policy shall also provide coverage for temporary structures (on-Site offices, etc.), fixtures, machinery and equipment being installed as part of the Work. Contractor shall be responsible for any and all deductibles under such policy. Upon request by County, Contractor shall declare all terms, conditions, coverages and limits of such policy. NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, COUNTY RETAINS THE RIGHT EXERCISED AT ANY TIME PRIOR TO AWARD TO ELECT TO USE ITS OWN BUILDER'S ALL RISK (COURSE OF CONSTRUCTION) INSURANCE and in the event County so elects to deduct the price for such insurance that is stated in Contractor's Bid, or if not so stated the amount included by Contractor for such insurance in the preparation of the Contractor's Bid, from the Contract Price by means of a Contract Adjustment pursuant to Change Order or Unilateral Change Order. If the County so provides the All Risk (Course of Construction) insurance for the Project, then Contractor shall assume the cost of any and all applicable policy deductibles (currently, \$50,000 per occurrence) and shall insure its own machinery, equipment, tools, etc. from any loss of any nature whatsoever.

11.1.2 Other Mandatory Insurance Requirements. The Contractor shall comply with the following requirements, which shall be deemed applicable to all carriers and insurance policies provided pursuant to Paragraph 11.1.1, above:

.1 Insurer Rating. Any and all insurance carrier(s) providing insurance coverage under any and all policy(ies) of insurance provided by Contractor pursuant to Paragraph 11.1.1, above, shall be admitted to the State of California and have an A M BEST rating of not less than A: VIII (A:8) (unless such requirements are waived in writing by the County Risk Manager, and if the County's Risk Manager waives such requirement for a particular insurer such waiver is only valid for that specific insurer and only for one policy term);

.2 Self Insured Retentions. Contractor shall advise County in writing the dollar amount of any "self insured retention" maintained by the Contractor that exceeds \$500,000 per occurrence. Each such self insured retention must have the prior written consent of the County Risk Manager before the commencement of any Work or operations or activities relating to the Work. If Contractor is notified that a self insured retention is unacceptable to the County, then at the election of the County, exercised in the County's sole and absolute discretion, by means of the written approval of the County's Risk Manager, the insurance carriers affected shall either: (1) reduce or eliminate such self-insured retention as respects the Construction Contract; or (2) procure a bond, satisfactory to County and approved by County in writing, which guarantees payment of losses and related investigations, claims administration, and defense costs and expenses.

.3 Evidence of Insurance. Contractor shall cause Contractor's insurance carrier(s) to furnish to the County either: (1) properly executed original certificate(s) of insurance and certified original copy(ies) of endorsement(s) effecting the coverage(s) required by this Section 11.1, or (2) if requested to do so orally or in writing by the County Risk Manager, provide original, certified copy(ies) of policy(ies) including all endorsement(s) and all attachment(s) thereto, showing such insurance is in full force and effect. Such certificate(s) and all policies of insurance provided by Contractor pursuant to this Section 11.1 shall contain the covenant of the insurance carrier(s) that thirty (30) Days' written notice shall be given to the County prior to any material modification, cancellation, expiration or reduction in coverage of such insurance. Each certificate of insurance and endorsement shall be signed by an individual expressly authorized by the insurance carrier to do so on the carrier's behalf. Contractor shall, if requested, provide written proof of such authorization. ***Contractor shall not commence any Work or any activities or operations related to the performance of the Work unless and until Contractor has complied with all of the requirements of this Section 11.1.***

.4 Modification, Cancellation, Changes in Limits. A material modification, cancellation, expiration, or reduction in coverage, shall constitute an Event of Contractor Default for which County shall have right, without limitation to its other rights or remedies provided for in the Contract Documents or under Applicable Laws, to terminate this Construction Contract. Such Event of Contractor Default may only be deemed cured if the County receives, prior to the effective date of such material modification, cancellation, expiration or reduction in coverage, properly executed original certificate(s) of insurance and original, certified copy(ies) of policy(ies) and endorsement(s), including all attachment(s) thereto, evidencing that the coverage(s) required by this Section 11.1 is(are) and will

continue, without any gap in coverage, in full force and effect in accordance with all of the requirements of this Section 11.1

.5 Primary Coverage. It is understood and agreed to by County and Contractor that the Contractor's insurance coverage(s) provided under this Section 11.1 shall be construed as primary insurance, and the County's insurance and/or deductibles and/or self-insured retentions or self-insured programs shall not be construed as contributory.

.6 Additional Coverages. County reserves the right to modify, adjust, add to and/or increase the types, amounts and terms of any insurance required under this Section 11.1 if the County Risk Manager determines, in the exercise of his/her sole and absolute discretion, that the type, amount or terms of the insurance required by this Section 11.1 has(have) become inadequate or that additional risk or exposure exists (such as, without limitation, the use of aircraft, watercraft, cranes, etc.) due to: (1) a Change in the Work; (2) the period of time of Contractor's actual performance of the Work continuing for longer than five (5) years from the Date of Commencement, whether due to Contract Adjustment or for any for any other reason; or (3) other circumstances not reasonably foreseeable to County.

.7 Subcontractors. Contractor shall include provisions in its subcontracts requiring each Subcontractor to assume an obligation toward Contractor to furnish insurance that complies with all of the requirements of this Section 11.1 as apply to Contractor's insurance provided to Owner and requiring such Subcontractors to furthermore include provisions in their contracts with lower-Tier Subcontractors likewise requiring such lower Tier Subcontractors assume the same obligations for providing such insurance and for passing through all such obligations to all lower Tier Subcontractors.

.8 Self-Insurance. If approved by County, in the exercise of its sole and absolute discretion, the insurance requirements contained in this Section 11.1 may be met with a program(s) of self-insurance provided that such program has been submitted to County and approved in writing by County prior to commencement of the Work or of any activity or operation related to the performance of the Work.

.9 Notice of Claim. Contractor agrees to notify County of any claim by a third party or any incident or event that may give rise to a claim arising from the performance of the Work.

ARTICLE 12 BONDS

12.1 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

12.1.1 Performance and Payment Bonds. Within ten (10) Days after the issuance of the Notice of Intent to Award and prior to commencing Work, Contractor shall deliver to County a good and sufficient labor and materials payment bond ("Payment Bond") and a good and sufficient performance bond ("Performance Bond"), each in the amount of one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Price.

12.1.2 Changes. The penal amounts of the Performance Bond and Payment Bond shall be increased on account of Change Orders and Unilateral Change Orders increasing the Contract Price. If requested by County, Contractor shall deliver to County evidence of such increases.

12.1.3 Replacement. Should any bond required hereunder or any Surety on such bond become or be determined by County to be insufficient, it shall be replaced within ten (10) Days by a bond that fully complies with the requirements of this Section 12.1.

12.1.4 Duration. The Payment Bond shall remain in effect until Acceptance of the Work and all Claims of Contractor and the Subcontractors, of any Tier, have been fully and finally resolved. The Performance Bond shall remain in effect and assure faithful performance of all Contractor's obligations under the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, all warranty obligations.

12.1.5 Condition of Payment. No payments to Contractor for Work performed shall be made or due until there has been full compliance with the requirements of this Section 12.1.

12.1.6 **Surety Rating.** Any Surety company issuing the Payment Bond or Performance Bond shall be, at all times while such bond is in effect, an Admitted Surety. The Surety company issuing the Performance Bond shall additionally have at all such times a current A.M. Best rating of A VIII (A:8) or better.

12.1.7 **Premiums.** The premiums for the Performance Bond and Payment Bond are included in the Contract Price and shall be paid by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

12.1.8 **Obligee.** The Performance Bond shall name County as obligee. All performance bonds, if any, purchased by Subcontractors shall name County as a dual obligee with Contractor.

12.1.9 **No Exoneration.** The Performance Bond and Payment Bond shall contain provisions to the effect that Changes, Change Orders, Unilateral Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, Modifications, Changes and Contract Adjustments shall in no way release or exonerate Contractor or its Surety from their obligations and that notice thereof is waived by the Surety.

12.1.10 **Communications.** County shall have the right to communicate with Surety with respect to matters that are related to performance of the Work. Contractor shall be provided with a copy of all such communications that are in writing. Such communications shall not create or be interpreted as creating any contractual obligation of County to Surety.

12.1.11 **No Limitation.** The requirements of this Section 12.1 pertaining to the Performance Bond and the Payment Bond shall be without limitation to any other obligations Contractor may have under Applicable Laws to provide bonding for the benefit of, and to assure payment to the Subcontractors performing the Work for, the Project.

12.1.12 **Subcontractor Bonds.** Each performance bond, if any, furnished by a first-Tier Subcontractor shall include a provision whereby the Surety consents to the contingent assignment of Contractor's rights under such bond to County as provided in Section 5.3, above.

12.1.13 **Claims.** By incorporation of the Construction Contract into the Performance Bond issued by Surety, Surety shall be deemed, subject to the other terms of the Performance Bond, to be bound by all of the obligations assumed by Contractor under the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, bound by any determination, resolution, award or judgment entered or made upon any Claim by or against Contractor.

ARTICLE 13 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF THE WORK

13.1 UNCOVERING OF THE WORK

If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the request or direction of County, Inspector of Record or Architect, or contrary to the requirements of the Contract Documents, it must, if required by the any of them, be uncovered for observation and be re-covered by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense.

13.2 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

Contractor shall promptly correct Defective Work, whether discovered before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. All such Defective Work shall be either: (1) replaced and all the Work disturbed thereby made good by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense; or (2) County may exercise its option pursuant to Section 13.4, below, to accept such Work and adjust the Contract Price.

13.3 GUARANTEE TO REPAIR PERIOD

13.3.1 **Guarantee To Repair Period.** Besides guarantees and warranties required elsewhere in the Contract Documents, Contractor guarantees the Work as provided hereinbelow. The period of this guarantee, termed the "Guarantee To Repair Period," is for one (1) year commencing as follows:

.1 for any portion of the Work that, upon Substantial Completion of the overall Work, is fully and finally complete and usable in all respects independent of other portions of the Work that are not fully and finally complete, on the date of Substantial Completion of such portion of the Work;

.2 for space beneficially occupied or for separate systems fully utilized prior to Substantial Completion, from the first date of such beneficial occupancy or full utilization, as established by an appropriate written notice by County of intent to take beneficial occupancy; or

.3 for all Work other than that described in Subparagraph 13.3.1.1, above or Subparagraph 13.3.1.2, above, from the date of Final Completion of the Work.

13.3.2 Repair by Contractor. Subject to the provisions of Paragraph 13.3.3, below, Contractor shall do the following: (1) correct, repair, replace, remove and restore, to the County's satisfaction, any Defective Work that becomes apparent during the progress of the Work or during the Guarantee To Repair Period; (2) correct, repair, replace, remove and restore, to the County's satisfaction, any other parts of the Work and any other real or personal property which is damaged or destroyed as a result of Defective Work or the correction of Defective Work; and (3) remove from the Site all the Work identified by the County as Defective Work, whether incorporated or not and whether discovered before or after Substantial or Final Completion. Ordinary wear and tear, abuse, or neglect by County or by County employees, its staff, visitors, public or others (except for those under the control or responsibility of Contractor or its Subcontractors) who are authorized or admitted by County to enter, use or occupy the Work, or who enter, use or occupy the Work after Final Completion, are excepted from the foregoing guarantee. All Losses resulting from Defective Work, including, without limitation, all costs of such correction, repair, replacement, removal and restoration, additional testing, inspection and additional service fees and costs of the Inspector of Record, Architect, County Consultants or others whose services may be made necessary thereby as well as any Loss to any other parts of the Work and any other real or personal property which is damaged or destroyed as a result of Defective Work or the correction, repair, replacement, removal or restoration of Defective Work, shall be paid for by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense. Contractor shall correct, repair, replace, remove and restore Defective Work at such times as are acceptable to the County and in such a manner as to avoid, to the greatest extent practicable, disruption to the activities of the County, its staff, visitors, the public or others. Contractor shall notify the County in writing upon the completion of such correction, repair, replacement, removal and restoration.

13.3.3 Notice by County. Except as otherwise provided in this Paragraph 13.3.3 where immediate corrections are needed due to dangerous conditions or risk of imminent Loss or interruption of County operations, the County will give notice to Contractor of Defective Work observed prior to Final Completion in accordance with the provision of Section 15.1, below, governing the occurrence of an Event of Contractor Default and the Contractor shall proceed to cure such Event of Contractor Default in accordance with the requirements of Section 15.1, below, and Paragraph 13.3.2, above. With respect to Defective Work observed after Final Completion, the County will give notice to Contractor with reasonable promptness and Contractor shall commence the correction, repair, replacement, removal and restoration as required by Paragraph 13.3.2, above, no later than ten (10) Days after mailing of such notice to Contractor and Contractor shall thereupon diligently and continuously prosecute such correction, replacement, repair, or restoration to completion. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if in the County's opinion the presence of Defective Work, whether observed prior to Final Completion or after Final Completion and during the Guarantee To Repair Period, poses a risk or threat: (1) to life, safety or the protection of property; (2) of imminent Loss to the County or to any other person or entity; or (3) of causing an interruption in the operations of the County, then County will have the right, in the exercise of its sole and absolute discretion, to proceed with correction or replacement of the Defective Work without prior notice to Contractor, but in such cases will attempt to notify Contractor as soon as possible of the conditions encountered and the action taken by County. Such action by County without prior notice to Contractor shall not relieve Contractor of its responsibility for the costs of such County action or for any Loss occasioned by the Defective Work or necessitated by the County's action, whether such Loss occurs before or after such County action is implemented or completed.

13.3.4 Correction by County. If Contractor fails to perform any of its obligations under Paragraph 13.3.2, above, to correct, repair, replace, remove or restore then County, or Separate Contractors under the County's direction, may, notwithstanding any other provisions of this Article 13, proceed to do so and all costs associated therewith (including, without limitation, the cost to store any materials removed) shall be the responsibility of and paid by Contractor at Contractor's Own Expense. Such action by County will not relieve Contractor of the guarantees provided in this Article 13 or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. In addition to Contractor's other obligations under Paragraph 13.3.2, above, Contractor shall correct, repair, replace, remove and restore, to the County's satisfaction and at

Contractor's Own Expense any other parts of the Work and any other real or personal property that are damaged or destroyed as a result of such actions by County or the Separate Contractors.

13.3.5 Sale. If Contractor does not pay the costs of, or any of the Losses associated with, the correction, repair, replacement, removal or restoration required by the provisions of Paragraph 13.3.2 through Paragraph 13.3.4, above, then within five (5) Days after notice by the County, County may sell any materials or other items of Work removed at auction or at private sale or otherwise dispose of such materials or items and shall account for the net proceeds thereof, after deducting all such costs and Losses, and all costs of sale. If such net proceeds of sale do not cover the Losses for which Contractor is liable to the County, the County may at its option reduce the Contract Price or any payments due to Contractor by such deficiency or recover such deficiency from Contractor.

13.3.6 No Limitation. Contractor's obligations under this Article 13 are in addition to, and not in limitation of, its warranty obligations under Section 3.5, above, and any other obligation, guaranty or warranty of Contractor or any other third party under the Contract Documents. Nothing contained in this Article 13 shall be construed to shorten any periods of limitation with respect to other obligations of Contractor under the Contract Documents that are for longer specified periods. Establishment of the Guarantee To Repair Period in no way limits either Contractor's liability for Defective Work or the time within which proceedings may be commenced to enforce Contractor's obligations under the Contract Documents.

13.4 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK

Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Contract Documents to the contrary, the County shall have the option, exercised in its sole and absolute discretion after notice to Contractor, in lieu of requiring that Defective Work be remedied or corrected, to reduce the Contract Price to reflect the reduced value of the performance received by County. Such option shall be exercised solely by written notice to Contractor and shall not be implied from any act or omission by County. If there are no remaining payments of the Contract Price to be made to Contractor, or if the remaining payments and retention are insufficient to cover the amount of the reduction of the Contract Price, Contractor shall promptly pay to County the amount of any such deficiency.

ARTICLE 14 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

14.1 GOVERNING LAW

The interpretation and enforcement of the Construction Contract and other Contract Documents and of the performance by the parties thereunder shall, notwithstanding application of the principles of conflicts of laws, be governed by the laws of the State of California. The Superior Court for the County of Riverside shall have exclusive jurisdiction and venue over any legal proceedings arising out of or involving the interpretation or enforcement of, or other matters relating to, the Construction Contract, the other Contract Documents or the performance of the parties thereunder.

14.2 TIME OF ESSENCE

All time limits stated in the Contract Documents relative to Contractor's performance of its obligations under the Contract Documents are of the essence.

14.3 SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS

The Construction Contract and other Contract Documents shall be binding on successors, assigns and legal representatives of County and Contractor, respectively. Contractor shall not assign, sublet or transfer an interest in or claim under this Construction Contract without advance written approval of County, which approval may be granted or withheld by County in its sole and absolute discretion, and any assignment, subletting or transfer without written approval by County shall be deemed void from its inception. Any assignment, subletting or transfer, whether or not approved by County, will not release Contractor from any of its obligations under the Contract Documents to County. County shall have the right to assign, sublet or transfer its interest in or any claim under the Construction Contract upon written notice to Contractor.

14.4 WRITTEN NOTICE

Any notice from one party to the other or otherwise under the Contract Documents shall be in writing and shall be dated and signed by the party giving such notice or by a duly authorized representative of such party. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if served in the following manner, and in accordance with Civil Code §8100 et seq.:

14.4.1 Notice to County. If notice is given to County: (1) by personal delivery thereof to County; or (2) by depositing same in United States mail, enclosed in a sealed envelope addressed to County at the Office of Economic Development, 3403 10th Street, Suite 400, Riverside, CA, and to such other address as set forth in the Bidding Documents as the location for submission of Bids and sent by registered or certified mail with postage prepaid, or express mail or overnight delivery by an express mail carrier; or (3) by leaving the notice and mailing a copy in the manner provided in Code of Civil Procedure §415.20.

14.4.2 Notice to Contractor. If notice is given to Contractor: (1) by personal delivery thereof to Contractor; or (2) by depositing same in United States mails, enclosed in a sealed envelope addressed to Contractor at its address stated in the Construction Contract, or if none is so stated at the address on the records of the Contractor's State License Board and sent by registered or certified mail with postage prepaid or express mail or overnight delivery by an express mail carrier; or (3) by leaving the notice and mailing a copy in the manner provided in Code of Civil Procedure §415.20.

14.4.3 Notice to Claimant. If notice is given to a claimant as defined in Civil Code §8004: (1) by personal delivery thereof to claimant; or (2) by depositing same in United States mail, enclosed in a sealed envelope addressed to claimant at its address stated in: a preliminary notice, stop payment notice, or claim against a payment bond; or on the records of the Contractor's State License Board; and sent by registered or certified mail with postage prepaid or express mail or overnight delivery by an express mail carrier; or (3) by leaving the notice and mailing a copy in the manner provided in code of Civil Procedure §415.20.

14.4.4 Notice to Surety. If notice is given to the Surety: (1) by personal delivery to the Surety; or (2) by depositing same in United States mail, enclosed in a sealed envelope, addressed to the Surety at the address of the Surety shown in the applicable Performance Bond or Payment Bond, or if none is shown, the address on the records of the Department of Insurance, and sent by registered or certified mail with postage prepaid or express mail or overnight delivery by an express mail carrier; or (3) by leaving the notice and mailing a copy in the manner provided in Code of Civil Procedure §415.20.

14.5 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES

14.5.1 County Rights. Rights and remedies available to the County under the Contract Documents are in addition to and not a limitation of County's rights and remedies otherwise available under other provisions of the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws.

14.5.2 Writing Required. Provisions of the Contract Documents may be waived by County only in writing signed by the Director stating expressly that it is intended as a waiver of specified provisions of the Contract Documents.

14.5.3 Subsequent Breach. A waiver by either party of any breach of any term, covenant, or condition contained in the Contract Documents shall not be deemed to be a waiver of any subsequent breach of the same or any other term, covenant, or condition contained therein whether of the same or a different character.

14.6 NO NUISANCE

Contractor shall not maintain, commit or permit the maintenance or commission of any nuisance in connection with the performance of Work.

14.7 EXTENT OF AGREEMENT

The Contract Documents represent the full and complete understanding of every kind or nature between the parties and all preliminary negotiations and prior representations, proposals and contracts, of whatever kind or nature, are merged herein and superseded hereby. No verbal agreement or implied covenant shall be held to vary the provisions of the Contract Documents. Any modification of this Construction Contract or the other Contract Documents will be effective only by written instrument signed by both County and Contractor and shall, if required by Applicable Laws, be formally approved or ratified by the Board of Supervisors.

14.8 NO THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS

Nothing contained in the Construction Contract or the other Contract Documents is intended to make any person or entity who is not a signatory to this Construction Contract a third-party beneficiary of any right of Contractor (including, without limitation, any right of Contractor to a benefit derived from, or to the enforcement of, an obligation assumed by County) that is expressly or impliedly created by the terms of the Contract Documents or by operation of Applicable Laws.

14.9 SEVERABILITY

Should any part, term, portion or provision of the Construction Contract or the other Contract Documents, or the application thereof to any party or circumstance, be held to be illegal, invalid or in conflict with Applicable Laws, or otherwise be rendered unenforceable or ineffectual, the validity of the remaining parts, terms, portions or provisions, or the application thereof to any other party or circumstances, shall be deemed severable and the same shall remain enforceable and valid to the fullest extent permitted by Applicable Laws.

14.10 PROVISIONS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAWS

Each and every provision of law and clause required by Applicable Laws to be inserted in the Construction Contract or other Contract Documents shall be deemed to be inserted in the Contract Documents shall be read and enforced as though it were included herein, and if through mistake or otherwise any such provision is not inserted or if inserted and requires correction, then upon request of either party these General Conditions shall forthwith be amended by the parties to the Construction Contract to make such insertion or correction.

14.11 SURVIVAL

All provisions of the Contract Documents that either expressly, or by their nature, require performance or assumption by Contractor of an obligation that extends beyond termination of the Construction Contract or Final Completion of the Work, including, without limitation, Contractor's obligations of, or relating to, indemnification, insurance, ownership of documents, retention and audit of books and records, warranties and guaranties and resolution of Claims shall be deemed to survive either termination of the Construction Contract or Final Completion of the Work.

14.12 FEDERAL GRANTS

In the event of a federal grant or other federal financing participation in the funding of the Project, Contractor shall, as required in connection with, or as a condition to, such federal grant or other federal financing participation, permit access to and grant the right to examine its books covering its services performed and expenses incurred under the Construction Contract or other Contract Documents by the federal agency and comply with all applicable federal agency requirements including, without limitation, those pertaining to work hours, overtime compensation, non-discrimination, and contingent fees.

14.13 PROHIBITED INTERESTS

Contractor agrees not to accept any employment or representation which will, or is likely to, make Contractor "financially interested" (as provided in California Government Code §§1090 and 87100, hereinafter "financially interested") in any decision made by County on any matter in connection with which Contractor has been retained in connection with the Project. Without limitation to the foregoing, transactions and interests prohibited by this Section 14.13 include the

following: (1) no official or employee of County who is authorized in such capacity and on behalf of County to negotiate, make, accept, or approve, or to take part in negotiating, making, accepting or approving any architectural, engineering, inspection, construction or material supply contract or any subcontract in connection with construction of the Project, shall become directly or indirectly financially interested in the performance of the Construction Contract or in any part thereof; (2) no officer, employee, architect, attorney, engineer or inspector of or for County who is authorized in such capacity and on behalf of County to exercise any executive, supervisory or other similar functions in connection with Construction Contract or in any part thereof; and (3) Contractor shall receive no compensation hereunder, and shall repay County for any compensation received by Contractor hereunder, should Contractor or any of the Subcontractors aid, abet or knowingly participate in violation of this Section 14.13.

14.14 ASSIGNMENT OF ANTI-TRUST ACTIONS

California Public Contract Code §7103.5(b), which is hereby incorporated by this reference, provides:

"In entering into a public works contract or a subcontract to supply goods, services, or materials pursuant to a public works contract, contractor or the subcontractor offers and agrees to assign to the awarding body all rights, title, and interest in and to all causes of action it may have under Section 4 of the Clayton Act, (15 U.S.C. Sec. 15) or under the Cartwright Act (Chapter 2 (commencing with Section 16700) of Part 2 of Division 7 of the Business and Professions Code), arising from purchases of goods, services, or materials pursuant to the public works contract or the subcontract. This assignment shall be made and become effective at the time the awarding body tenders final payment to Contractor, without further acknowledgement by the parties."

Contractor for itself and all the Subcontractors agrees to assign to County all rights, title and interest in and to all such causes of action Contractor and all the Subcontractors may have in connection with purchases related to or under the Contract Documents. This assignment shall become effective at the time County tenders Final Payment to Contractor, and Contractor shall require assignments from all the Subcontractors to comply herewith.

14.15 NO WAIVER

County's approval, acceptance, use or payment for any or part of Contractor's performance of the Work shall not in any way alter Contractor's obligations, or waive any of County's rights, under Contract Documents.

14.16 CONSENT TO PHOTOGRAPHING

Contractor is advised that County intends, from time to time, to take photographs, videotapes and/or motion pictures of the Work, and workers located on the Site and proximate settings. Contractor consents to the use of Contractor's name and likeness in instructional or training uses, news releases, advertising and/or publicity throughout the world in perpetuity, in all media now known or hereafter invented. Contractor shall include in its contracts with its Subcontractors a consent by the Subcontractor to the use of Subcontractor's name and the likenesses of its employees on the same terms as provided for herein applicable to such consent by Contractor.

ARTICLE 15 DEFAULT, TERMINATION AND SUSPENSION

15.1 COUNTY REMEDIES FOR DEFAULT

15.1.1 Event of Default. Each and any of the following shall be considered an Event of Contractor Default:

- .1** Contractor files a petition, or has filed against it a petition, for bankruptcy or is adjudged bankrupt;
- .2** Contractor makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors;
- .3** a receiver is appointed on account of Contractor's insolvency;

.4 Contractor defaults, by failing or refusing to perform any obligation set forth in the Construction Contract, General Conditions or elsewhere in the Contract Documents (including, without limitation, the performance or installation of Defective Work) and thereafter: (1) fails to commence to cure such default within two (2) working days after receipt of written notice of default; (2) if the default can be cured within three (3) Days, Contractor fails or refuses after commencing to cure in accordance with Clause (1) hereof to fully cure such default within three (3) Days after receipt of written notice of default; or (3) if the default cannot be fully cured within three (3) Days, Contractor fails after commencing to cure in accordance with Clause (1) hereof to diligently and continuously prosecute and fully cure such default within ten (10) Days after receipt of such written notice;

.5 Contractor fails or refuses to perform an obligation set forth in the Construction Contract, General Conditions or other Contract Documents that either (1) cannot be cured, or (2) cannot be cured within the 10-Day cure period set forth in Subparagraph 15.1.1.4, above;

.6 a breach of any other agreement between County and Contractor as provided in Paragraph 15.1.9, below; or

.7 if Contractor was previously prequalified as a condition for its bidding the Project pursuant to a Prequalification conducted by County, Contractor's prequalification status has been revoked or cancelled due to any of the following: (1) receipt by County of new information indicating that a statement made in Contractor's Prequalification Submittal (as defined in the Prequalification Documents) was false or misleading; (2) ownership of 50% of more of the stock or assets Contractor has changed; (3) if Contractor is a Project Joint Venture, its Principal Managing Partner (as those terms are defined in the Prequalification Documents) has ceased to function, or fully function, in the capacity of a Principal Managing Partner; or (4) Contractor has failed to comply with the requirements of the Prequalification Documents pertaining to minimum safety Prequalification requirements for Subcontractors.

15.1.2 County's Remedies. Without limitation to the County's other rights or remedies under the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws, if there is an Event of Contractor Default, County shall have the right to exercise any one or more of the following remedies:

.1 Take Over Work. County may, without terminating the Construction Contract and without incurring any additional liability or responsibility to Contractor (including, without limitation, any obligation to agree to a Contract Adjustment for any portion of the taken-over or non-taken-over Work), take over and perform, or engage others to perform, all or a portion of the Work.

.2 Suspend Work. County may, without terminating the Construction Contract and without incurring any additional liability or responsibility to Contractor (including, without limitation, any obligation to agree to a Contract Adjustment for any portion of the suspended or non-suspended Work), suspend Contractor's performance of all or a portion of the Work for as long a period of time as the County determines, in its sole discretion, is appropriate.

.3 Termination. County may, without incurring any additional liability or responsibility to Contractor, terminate the Construction Contract, the Work or any portion thereof.

.4 Surety. If there is an Event of Contractor Default pursuant to any of Subparagraphs 15.1.1.1 through 15.1.1.5, above, County may, with or without terminating the Construction Contract and without incurring any additional liability or responsibility to Contractor or Surety (including, without limitation, any obligation to agree to a Contract Adjustment), exercise its rights under the Performance Bond furnished by Contractor by giving Surety ten (10) Days' written notice of demand to perform; provided, however, that if the Surety fails, within seven (7) Days after receipt by Surety of written demand, to deliver to the County written notice of its unconditional intention to perform or does not commence performance of the Work within ten (10) Days from receipt of such notice of demand, the County may, at Contractor's Own Expense and/or the expense of the Surety, and with or without terminating the Construction Contract, proceed to complete the Work by any other means County deems expedient. By executing its Performance Bond incorporating the terms of the Construction Contract, Surety shall be deemed to have agreed, without limitation, to the provisions of this Paragraph 15.1.2 as constituting a binding obligation of Surety under its Performance Bond that shall control over any conflicting provisions set forth in the Performance Bond. Neither delivery by Surety of such written notice of unconditional intention to perform nor its timely performance of the Work in accordance with the terms of the Contract Documents and Performance Bond shall constitute waiver by Surety of any rights it may have under the Performance Bond and Applicable Laws to limit its liability to the penal amount of the Performance Bond.

15.1.3 Contractor Tools, Equipment. Upon County's exercise of one or more of its remedies following an Event of Contractor Default, County shall have the right, but not the obligation, to perform or complete all or any portion of the Work using any means that County may deem expedient, including, without limitation, taking possession and utilization of any or all of the materials, equipment, appliances, tools, plant and other property not owned by Contractor that are on the Site for County's use in performing the Work.

15.1.4 Contractor Obligations. Upon exercise by County of its remedies following an Event of Contractor Default, Contractor shall, unless County directs in writing otherwise, do the following:

- .1** immediately discontinue performance of the Work to the extent specified in writing by County;
 - .2** remove no materials, equipment or tools (other than those owned by Contractor and not necessary for performance of a portion of the Work not terminated or discontinued) from the Site unless directed to do so by County and take all actions necessary or appropriate, or that the County may direct in writing, for the protection and preservation of the Work, any materials, equipment or tools at the Site and any materials or equipment in transit to the Site;
 - .3** place no further orders or subcontracts for materials, equipment, services or facilities, except as may be necessary for Contractor to continue performance of such portion, if any, of the Work that is not discontinued or terminated by County in its written notice;
 - .4** provide to the County, in writing, no later than two (2) Days after request by County, a statement listing or providing: (1) all subcontract agreements, purchase orders and contracts that are outstanding, as well as any change orders, amendments and modifications thereto; (2) the status of invoicing, payments and balance owing under each such subcontract agreement, purchase order and contract; (3) the status of performance and any claims asserted under each such subcontract agreement, purchase order and contract; and (4) providing such other information as the County may determine to be necessary in order to decide whether to accept assignment of any such subcontract agreement, purchase order or contract;
 - .5** promptly following and in accordance with County's written direction: (1) assign to the County or its designee those subcontract agreements, purchase orders or contracts, or portions thereof, that the County elects in writing to accept by assignment; (2) cancel, on the most favorable terms reasonably possible, any subcontract agreement, purchase order or contract, or portion thereof, that the County does not elect to accept by assignment; and (3) if requested by County, settle, with the prior written approval of County of the terms of settlement, outstanding liabilities to Subcontractors with respect to the Work terminated or discontinued;
 - 6.** not terminate any insurance required by the Contract Documents;
 - 7.** thereafter continue only such performance as may be directed by County;
 - 8.** deliver to the County the documents required to delivered pursuant to Paragraph 1.3.6, above;
- and
- 9.** at the written request and option of County, exercised in its sole discretion, deliver to the County, and transfer title to the County of, any completed items, materials, products, equipment or other unincorporated parts of the Work that have not been previously delivered to the Site.

15.1.5 Accounting and Payment

.1 Full Termination or Discontinuance.

(1) Further Payment. In the event an exercise by County of any of its remedies following an Event of Contractor Default results in a termination or discontinuance of the entire Work, then no further payment shall be due to Contractor for the Work until an accounting has been conducted in accordance with this Paragraph 15.1.5.

(2) Time for Accounting. Within forty-five (45) Days after Final Completion of the Work by Contractor, Surety, County or others at request of County, an accounting shall be made pursuant to this Paragraph 15.1.5 of the amount due to Contractor or County.

(3) Payment Amount. If, based on the accounting conducted pursuant to this Paragraph 15.1.5, the Contractor Amount exceeds the County Amount, then the difference shall be paid by County to Contractor within fifteen (15) Days after demand by Contractor following completion of such accounting. If the County Amount exceeds the Contractor Amount, then the difference shall be paid by Contractor to County within fifteen (15) Days after demand by County following completion of such accounting. Payment by Contractor of the amount due to County pursuant to such accounting shall not be construed as a release of Contractor's obligation to County for, or County's right to recover from Contractor, any Losses, of any kind whatsoever, not part of the calculation of the County Amount (including, without limitation, additional Losses related to circumstances that formed the basis for calculation of the County Amount) that may be then or thereafter owing to or recoverable by County under Applicable Laws or the Contract Documents.

(4) Contractor Amount. The Contractor Amount used as the basis for payment pursuant to the accounting under this Paragraph 15.1.5 shall be calculated as follows:

(a) take a portion of the Contract Price determined by multiplying (i) the Contract Price, by (ii) the County's Good Faith Determination of the percentage of the Work properly performed by Contractor and (A) in permanent place, (B) previously fabricated and delivered to the Site or (C) fabricated and en route for delivery to the Site and delivered to the Site within a reasonable time after Contractor's receipt of such written notice; and

(b) subtract therefrom all amounts previously paid by County to Contractor or to Subcontractors.

(5) County Amount. The County Amount used as the basis for payment pursuant to the accounting under this Paragraph 15.1.5 shall be calculated based on the sum of all past, present and future Losses to County resulting or reasonably certain to result, directly or indirectly, from any or all of the following: (a) any negligence, willful misconduct, or Defective Work on the part of Contractor or any Subcontractor; (b) any Event of Contractor Default, whether or not constituting the basis of the County's termination or discontinuance; (c) the County's exercise of its rights and remedies under and in accordance with the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws following the occurrence of an Event of Contractor Default; and (d) the payment by County of amounts to Contractor or any Subcontractor that were not owing to Contractor or that were in excess of the amount to which Contractor was entitled under the Contract Documents.

.2 Partial Termination or Discontinuance. In the event an exercise by County of its remedies for an Event of Contractor Default results in a discontinuance or termination of only a portion of the Work, then the Contract Price and Contract Time shall be adjusted under the provisions of Article 7 and Article 8, above, applicable to Deleted Work. Contractor shall thereafter continue to be paid for its performance of the other portions of the Work in accordance with the terms of the Contract Documents, less any amounts that County is entitled to withhold under the terms of the Contract Documents.

.3 Exclusive Compensation. Contractor agrees to accept such amounts, if any, as allowed under this Paragraph 15.1.5 as its sole and exclusive compensation in the event of an exercise by County of its remedies permitted by the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws following an Event of Contractor Default.

15.1.6 Surety. Without limitation to any of the County's other rights or remedies under a Performance Bond furnished by Contractor, Contract Documents or Applicable Laws, the County has the right to suspend, take over or terminate the performance of the Work by Surety in the event of any of the following: (1) failure of Surety or its contractors to begin the Work within a reasonable time in such manner as to ensure full compliance with the Contract Documents within the Contract Time; (2) abandonment of the Work by Surety or its contractors; (3) if at any time the County makes a Good Faith Determination that the Work is unnecessarily or unreasonably delayed by Surety or its contractors; (4) violation by Surety or its contractors of any terms of the Contract Documents, Performance Bond or Applicable Laws; or (5) failure by Surety or its contractors to follow instructions of the County for performance of the Work or for performance of the Work within the Contract Time. By executing its Performance Bond incorporating the terms of the Construction Contract, Surety shall be deemed to have agreed, without limitation, to the provisions of this

Paragraph 15.1.6 as constituting a binding obligation of Surety under its Performance Bond that shall control over any conflicting provisions set forth in the Performance Bond.

15.1.7 Conversion. In the event a termination for cause by the County is adjudged by a court or by binding arbitration conducted in accordance with the Contract Documents to have been wrongful, such termination shall be deemed converted to a termination for convenience pursuant to Section 15.3, below, in which case Contractor agrees to accept such amount, if any, as permitted by Paragraph 15.3.3, below, as its sole and exclusive compensation and agrees to waive any right to recovery of any other compensation or Loss, including, but not limited to, loss of anticipated profits, loss of revenue, lost opportunity or other consequential, direct, indirect or incidental damages, of any kind.

15.1.8 Substantial Performance Waived. The legal doctrine that a contractor may recover for substantial performance of a building contract is to have no application to the Construction Contract. Any Event of Contractor Default, whether occurring before or after the Work is Substantially Completed, shall be deemed material and shall give rise to the right of County to exercise its remedies permitted under the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws.

15.1.9 Cross Default. Contractor agrees that a breach of any other agreement between Contractor and County, whether related or unrelated to the Project, that is not cured in accordance with the terms of such other agreement constitutes an Event of Contractor Default under the Construction Contract, thereby entitling County to assert all its rights and remedies hereunder including, but not limited to, a specific right of off set by County against any amounts otherwise payable to Contractor under the Construction Contract or any other agreement between Contractor and County.

15.1.10 Rights Cumulative. All of County's rights and remedies under the Contract Documents are cumulative, and shall be in addition to and not a limitation upon those rights and remedies available under Applicable Laws.

15.1.11 Materiality. Designation in the Contract Documents of certain defaults as "material" shall not be construed as implying that other defaults not so designated are not material nor as limiting County's right to terminate or exercise its other rights or remedies for default to only material defaults.

15.1.12 County Action. No termination or action taken by County after termination shall prejudice any rights or remedies of County provided by Applicable Laws or by the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, the right of County to proceed against Contractor to recover all Losses suffered by reason of Contractor's default.

15.2 SUSPENSION BY COUNTY FOR CONVENIENCE

15.2.1 Suspension Order. Without limitation to the County's rights under Section 15.1, above, County may, at any time, for its convenience and without the occurrence of any Event of Contractor Default, order Contractor, in writing, to suspend, delay or interrupt performance of the Work, in whole or in part. Upon receipt of such an order, Contractor shall comply with its terms and take all reasonable steps to minimize additional costs that are incurred applicable to the portion of the Work suspended, delayed or interrupted by County.

15.2.2 Resumption. If an order issued by the County pursuant to this Section 15.2 is canceled or expires, Contractor shall resume and continue with the previously affected portion of the Work. In such event, Contractor shall be entitled to a Contract Adjustment for additional Allowable Costs necessarily caused by such order and compensation allowed under Section 3.3 of the Construction Contract for Compensable Delay; provided, however, that no such Contract Adjustment shall be made: (1) to the extent that performance either is, was or would have been so suspended, delayed or interrupted by another cause for which Contractor or any of the Subcontractors is responsible or for which Contractor would not be entitled to a Contract Adjustment; (2) to the extent that a Contract Adjustment on account thereof is made or denied under another provision of the Contract Documents; or (3) for any general or specific escalation in prices of the Work.

15.2.3 Limitation. The provisions of this Section 15.2 shall not apply unless a written order is issued by County pursuant to this Section 15.2.

15.3 TERMINATION BY COUNTY FOR CONVENIENCE

15.3.1 Right to Terminate for Convenience. Without limitation upon any of County's other rights or remedies under the Contract Documents or Applicable Laws, County shall have the option, at its sole discretion and without the occurrence of any Event of Contractor Default or any other cause, to terminate the Construction Contract or Work, in whole or in part, for its convenience by giving five (5) Days written notice to Contractor.

15.3.2 Contractor Obligations. Upon receipt of notice of termination for convenience pursuant to this Section 15.3, Contractor shall, unless such notice directs otherwise, comply with all of the provisions of Paragraph 15.1.4, above.

15.3.3 Contractor Compensation. Following a termination for convenience pursuant to this Section 15.3 and within sixty (60) Days after receipt of a complete and timely Application for Payment from Contractor, an accounting shall be conducted in accordance with the process set forth in Paragraph 15.1.5, above. In such event, the amount due to Contractor shall be the Contractor Amount as calculated in the same manner provided for in Paragraph 15.1.5, above, except that there shall be added to the calculation of the Contractor Amount an amount for: (1) the reasonable, actual and direct Allowable Costs incurred and paid by Contractor (and not by Subcontractors) for (a) demobilizing Contractor's facilities from the Site, and (b) Contractor's administering the close out of its participation in the Project for a period of no longer than fifteen (15) Days; plus (2) a markup to Contractor on the Contractor's Allowable Costs incurred under Clause (1) of this Paragraph 15.3.4 that is based on the percentage for Allowable Markup that Contractor is permitted to charge pursuant to Article 7, above, for Compensable Changes involving Extra Work that is Self-Performed Work.

15.3.4 Exclusive Compensation. Contractor agrees to accept the compensation allowed under Paragraph 15.3.3, above, as its sole and exclusive compensation in the event of a termination by County for convenience and waives any claim for Loss related to County's termination for convenience, including, but not limited to, loss of anticipated profits, loss of revenue, lost opportunity, or other consequential, direct, indirect, or incidental damages, of any kind.

15.3.5 Subcontractors. Contractor shall include provisions in all of its subcontracts, purchase orders and other contracts with the Subcontractors permitting termination for convenience by Contractor on terms that are consistent with, and that afford no greater rights of recovery against Contractor for termination than are afforded to Contractor under, this Section 15.3.

15.4 TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR

15.4.1 Contractor's Remedies. Subject to the provisions of Paragraph 15.4.2, below and Paragraph 15.4.3, below, Contractor's sole right to terminate the Construction Contract shall be its right to terminate, for cause only, upon the occurrence of either of the following:

.1 the entire Work is stopped for one hundred sixty (160) consecutive Days, through no act or fault of Contractor or any of the Subcontractors, of any Tier, or any employee or agent of any of them, due to issuance of an order of a court or other Governmental Authority or due to a declaration of a national emergency making material unavailable; or

.2 the entire Work is suspended by Contractor, in accordance with a proper exercise by Contractor of its rights under Section 9.8, above, for a continuous period of thirty (30) Days.

15.4.2 Notice of Intention to Terminate. If one of the reasons to terminate as described in Paragraph 15.4.1, above, exists, Contractor may, upon thirty (30) Days written notice to County, terminate the Construction Contract and recover from County as its sole and exclusive compensation such sums as are permitted under Paragraph 15.3.3, above.

15.4.3 Continuous Performance. Provided that Contractor is paid undisputed sums due in accordance with the requirements of the Construction Contract, Contractor shall not stop, delay or interrupt continuous performance of the Work by reason of any dispute or disagreement with County, including, without limitation, any disputes or disagreements over payments of money claimed due under the Contract Documents.

15.5 WARRANTIES

All obligations of Contractor and the Subcontractors under the Contract Documents with respect to warranties and guarantees of the Work will continue in force and shall apply, notwithstanding a termination or other discontinuance of the Work by County or Contractor pursuant to an exercise of rights by either under this Article 15, to any portion of the Work that at the time of such termination or discontinuance has been completed or partially completed by Contractor to the point that it is substantially ready (exclusive of any incidental work that may be needed to connect such portion to other Work to other Work or Existing Improvements or to energize such portion of the Work for operation) for use or occupancy by County.

ARTICLE 16 NON-DISCRIMINATION

16.1 NON-DISCRIMINATION IN SERVICES

16.1.1 Contractor must, in accordance with Applicable Laws, not discriminate in the provision of services hereunder because of race, color, religion, national origin, ancestry, sex, age, sexual orientation, marital status, AIDS or disability. For the purpose of this Section 16.1, discrimination in the provision of services may include, but is not limited to the following:

- .1** denying any person any service or benefit or the availability of a facility;
- .2** providing any service or benefit to any person which is not equivalent to, or is in a non-equivalent manner or at a non-equivalent time from, that provided to others;
- .3** subjecting any person to segregation or separate treatment in any manner related to the receipt of any service;
- .4** restricting any person in any way in the enjoyment of any advantage or privilege enjoyed by others receiving any service or benefit; or
- .5** treating any person differently from others in determining admission, enrollment, eligibility, membership, or any other requirement or condition which persons must meet in order to be provided any service or benefit.

16.1.2 Contractor shall ensure that services are provided without regard to race, color, religion, national origin, ancestry, sex, age, sexual orientation, marital status, AIDS or disability.

16.1.3 Contractor shall establish and maintain written procedures under which any person applying for, performing or receiving services hereunder, may seek resolution from Contractor of a complaint with respect to any alleged discrimination. Such persons shall be advised by Contractor of these procedures. A copy of such procedures shall be posted by Contractor in a conspicuous place, available and open to the public, in each of Contractor's facilities where services are provided hereunder.

16.2 NON-DISCRIMINATION IN EMPLOYMENT

Contractor must, in accordance with Applicable Laws, not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, national origin, ancestry, sex, age, sexual orientation, marital status, AIDS or disability. Without limitation to any other provisions of this Section 16.2, in the performance of the obligations under the Contract Documents, Contractor and the Subcontractors shall comply with all applicable provisions of the California Fair Employment Practices Act (California Government Code §§12940-48) and the applicable equal employment provisions of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. §§200e - 217), whichever is more restrictive. Contractor and the Subcontractors shall ensure that qualified applicants are employed and that employees are treated during employment without regard to race, color, religion, national origin, ancestry, sex, age, sexual orientation, marital status, AIDS or disability, in accordance with requirements of Applicable Laws. Such shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

.1 employment, promotion, demotion, transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising, layoff or termination, rates of pay or other forms of compensation; or

.2 selection for training, including apprenticeship.

16.2.1 Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places in each of Contractor's facilities providing services hereunder, available and open to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth the provisions of this Section 16.2.

16.2.2 Contractor shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of Contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, national origin, ancestry, sex, age, sexual orientation, marital status, AIDS or disability, in accordance with requirements of Applicable Laws.

16.2.3 Contractor shall send to each labor union, or workers' representative with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, a notice advising the labor union or the workers' representative of Contractor's commitments under this Section 16.2.

16.2.4 Contractor certifies and agrees that it will deal with the Subcontractors, bidders and vendors without regard to race, color, religion, national origin, ancestry, sex, age, sexual orientation, marital status, AIDS or disability, in accordance with the requirements of Applicable Laws.

16.2.5 In accordance with Applicable Laws, Contractor shall allow duly authorized representatives of the County, State, and Federal government access to its employment records during regular business hours in order to verify compliance with the provisions of this Section 16.2. Contractor shall provide such other information and records as such representatives may require in order to verify compliance with the provisions of this Section 16.2.

16.2.6 If County finds that any of the provisions of this Section 16.2 have been violated by Contractor or any of the Subcontractors, such violation shall constitute a material breach of the Construction Contract for which County may cancel, terminate or suspend the Construction Contract. While County reserves the right to determine independently that the anti-discrimination provisions of the Construction Contract have been violated, a determination by the California Fair Employment and Housing Commission or the Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Commission that Contractor or the Subcontractor has violated State or Federal anti-discrimination laws shall constitute a finding by County that Contractor or the Subcontractor has violated the provisions of this Section 16.2.

16.2.7 Contractor hereby agrees that it will comply with §504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. §794) and similar Applicable Laws relating to employment of or access to persons with disabilities, all requirements imposed by applicable Federal Regulations, and all guidelines and interpretations issued pursuant thereto, to the end that no qualified disabled person shall, on the basis of disability, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity of Contractor receiving Federal Financial Assistance.

END OF GENERAL CONDITIONS

SPECIFICATIONS (Set)

Special Provisions

CONTROL OF MATERIALS

GENERAL - All materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals required to complete the work under this Contract shall be furnished by the Contractor unless otherwise stated on the plans. Payment for materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals shall be included in the other items of the bid.

All materials, parts, and equipment furnished by the Contractor in the work shall be new, high-grade, and free from defects. Quality of work shall be in accordance with generally accepted standards. Material and work considered defective will be subject to rejection. Defective work or material, whether in place or not, shall be removed immediately from the site by the Contractor, at his expense, when so directed by the County.

STORAGE OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT – Contractor shall make arrangements for the storage of materials and equipment with the property owner, Shane Stewart, shane@idyrealty.com or (951) 500-6140, on location, requirements, costs, insurance, etc. Contractor may find alternate approved locations with notification of the property address to the County prior to the start of construction. The storage of said equipment and material shall be at the exclusive risk of the Contractor and he shall pay for all costs for any loss or damages resulting from the storage. Payment for storage of materials and equipment shall be considered as included in those contract items which include such work and there shall be no separate payment therefore.

CONSTRUCTION WATER - The Contractor is responsible for providing construction water as required for the work. The Contractor shall make arrangements with the local water district prior to beginning of work for access to potable water.

EXISTING UTILITIES

GENERAL - The Contractor shall be responsible for contacting all utility companies and/or utility districts as to location and/or relocation of existing utilities prior to construction. The Contractor shall contact **Underground Service Alert [USA], Telephone 1-800-642-2444**, a minimum of (10) days prior to any excavation.

A reasonable effort has been made to locate and delineate all known underground utilities. The Contractor is cautioned that only excavation will reveal the types, extent, sizes, locations, and depths of such underground utilities. However, the County assumes no responsibility for the completeness or accuracy of the delineation of such underground utilities, or for the existence of other buried objects or utilities which are not shown on these drawings.

The Contractor is hereby notified that, prior to commencing construction, the Contractor is responsible for contacting the utility companies involved, and requesting a visual verification of the locations of their underground facilities. Where such facilities may possibly conflict with the placement of improvements as shown on these improvement plans, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer of the scheduled time and place of such visual verification to enable the County to have a representative present. Should a conflict become apparent, the County will contact the parties responsible for the relocation of the conflicting facility.

The Contractor shall be responsible for locating, protecting, adjusting, and re-exposing all utility covers, survey monuments covers, concrete curbs, gutters, sidewalks and cross gutters in Work areas.

The Contractor is responsible for any damage to underground or above ground utilities, which may be incurred as a result of any work performed under this contract, regardless of the fact that the utilities' existence was known or unknown.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

CONSTRUCTION SURVEYING - The Contractor's attention is directed to Section 3.4.4- Layout of the Standard Specifications and these Special Provisions.

1. Construction stakes or marks shall be set by the Contractor as is necessary to establish the lines and grades required for the completion of the work specified in these technical provisions and as shown on the contract plans.
2. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to ascertain that all lines and grades, as laid out according to the stakes, conform to the plans and any discrepancy shall be reported to the Engineer. The Contractor shall be responsible for any error in the finished work as it relates to construction staking.
3. The Contractor shall preserve all stakes and points set for lines, grades, or measurements of the work in their proper places until authorized to remove them by the Engineer. All expenses incurred in replacing stakes that have been removed without proper authority shall be paid for by the Contractor.
4. Centerline monuments shall be protected per Section 3.12.12- Survey Markers of the Standard Specifications. The Contractor shall also file the corner records with the County Surveyor. The Contractor shall protect all other centerline monuments and property corners during construction.

CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE - The Contractor shall coordinate his work to minimize disruptions to the surrounding businesses and community. The County will issue a Notice to Proceed to include the following:

- The schedule shall be a CPM (critical path method) clearly detailing the sequencing, type, and duration for each activity and clearly identify the critical path activities. The schedule shall also include the procurement, delivery, installation, and completion of each major equipment and material requirement, as well as the lead time required for testing, inspection and other procedures required prior to acceptance of the work within the specified Contract Time.
- In addition to Section 3.11-Submittals of the Standard Specifications, contractor shall provide all project submittals within 14 calendar days from the Notice to Proceed.
- County will require up to 6 calendar days to submit and gain approval of certain submittals through the Idyllwild Historic District Alteration Permit Process.
- Within the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion must be achieved within Two Hundred Fifteen (215) Calendar Days after the date of Commencement, which includes One Hundred Eighty (180) Calendar Days for procurement, fabrication/construction, delivery and installation the approved prefabricated restroom building and all other associated utility, grading, and site work. Final Completion must be achieved within Fifteen (15) Calendar Days after the occurrence of Substantial Completion.

SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

Contractor's Responsibilities - The Contractor shall submit, at its own expense, all required information and materials required by the technical specifications. All submittals and supporting data, catalogs, schedules, etc. shall be submitted as the instruments of the Contractor who shall be solely responsible for their accuracy and completeness and coordination. Such responsibility shall not be delegated in whole or part to subcontractors or suppliers. These submittals may be prepared by the contractor, subcontractors, or suppliers, but the Contractor shall ascertain that submittals meet all of the requirements of the Contract Documents, while conforming to structural, space, and access conditions at the point of installation. Designation of work "by others," if shown in submittals, shall mean that the work will be the responsibility of the contractor rather than the subcontractor or supplier who prepared the submittals. The Contractor shall ensure that there is no conflict with other submittals and notify the County in each case where its submittal may affect the work of another contractor or the County. The contractor shall ensure coordination of submittals among the related crafts and subcontractors.

Transmittal Procedures

1. **Transmittal Form** - A separate transmittal form shall be used for each specific item, class of material, equipment, and items specified in separate, discrete sections, for which the submittal is required. Submittal documents common to more than one piece of equipment shall be identified with all the appropriate equipment numbers. Submittals for various items shall be made with a single form when the items taken together constitute a manufacturer's package or are so functionally related that expediency indicates checking or review of the group of package as a whole. The specification section to which the submittal is related shall be indicated on the transmittal form. A unique number, sequentially assigned, shall be noted on the transmittal form accompanying each item submitted. Original submittal numbers shall have the following format: "XXX," where "XXX" is the sequential number assigned by the Contractor. Resubmittals shall have the following format: "XXX-Y," where "XXX" is the originally assigned submittal number and "Y" is a sequential letter assigned for resubmittals, i.e., A, B, or C being the first, second and third resubmittals, respectively. Submittal 25B, for example, is the second resubmittal of Submittal 25.
2. **Deviation from Contract** - If the submittals show any deviations from the contract requirements, the Contractor shall submit with the submittals a separate written description of such deviations and the reasons therefore. If the County accepts such deviation, the County shall issue an appropriate contract change order. However, if the deviation is minor, or does not involve a change in price or in time of performance, a change order need not be issued. If any deviations from the contract requirements are not noted on the submittal, the review of the shop drawing shall not constitute acceptance of such deviations.
3. **Submittal Completeness** - The Contractor shall check all submittals before submitting them to the County and shall certify on the transmittal letter and on each shop drawing that they have been checked, are in compliance with the Plans and Specifications, and all deviations from the contract requirements are noted.

If the Contractor submits an incomplete submittal, the submittal will be returned to the Contractor without review. A complete submittal shall contain sufficient data to demonstrate that the items comply with the specifications, shall meet the minimum requirements for submissions cited in the technical specifications, shall include materials and equipment data and seismic anchorage certifications where required, and shall include any necessary revisions required for equipment other than first named.

It is considered reasonable that the Contractor shall make a complete and acceptable submittal to the County at least by the second submission of the data. The County reserves the right to deduct monies from payments due the contractor to cover additional costs of review beyond the second submission.

Review Procedures - Submittals shall be submitted to the County for review and returned within seven (7) working days after receipt. Review of submittals by the County has as its primary objective the completion of a project in full conformance with the contract plans and specifications, unmarred by field corrections and within the time provided. In addition to this primary objective, submittal review as a secondary objective will assist the contractor in the procurement of equipment that will meet all requirements of the project plans and specifications, will fit the structures detailed on the plans, will be completed with respect to piping, electrical, and control connections, will have the proper functional characteristics, and will become an integral part of a complete operating facility.

After review by the County of each of the Contractor's submissions, the material will be returned to the Contractor with actions defined as follows:

- a) **No Exceptions Taken** (re-submittal not required) - Accepted subject to its compatibility with future submissions and additional partial submissions for portion of the work not covered in this submission.

Does not constitute approval or deletion of specified or required items not shown in the partial submission.

- b) **Make Corrections Noted** (re-submittal not required) - Same as (a), except that minor corrections as noted shall be made by the Contractor.
- c) **Revise and Resubmit** (re-submittal required) - Rejected because of major inconsistencies or errors, which shall be resolved or corrected by the Contractor prior to subsequent review by the County.
- d) **Not Acceptable** (complete re-submittal) - Submittal material does not conform to the plans and specifications in major respect, i.e., wrong size, model, capacity, or material.

Items "a" and "b" above (no re-submittal required) are considered "favorable review." Items "c" and "d" above (correction and re-submittal required) are considered "unfavorable review."

It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to copy and/or conform reviewed submittals in sufficient numbers for its files, subcontractors, and vendors.

Affect of Review of Contractor's Submittals - The Engineer's favorable review of submittals shall be obtained prior to the fabrication, delivery, and construction of items requiring submittal review.

Favorable review of submittals does not constitute a change order to the contract requirements.

TECHNICAL PROVISIONS

PREFABRICATED RESTROOM BUILDING

A. General, Specifications and Clarification of Prefabricated Building and Site Installation

- This portion of the bid specifications does not follow the CSI standard format as the prefabricated structure in this bid is an off-site constructed "product" and not "typical" general construction.
- The installation of the product on-site is general construction which must be coordinated between the owner, general contractor and the supplier. Specifications for the building foundation/pad shall be provided herein by the design/build supplier. Due to the responsibility of the building supplier for architecture, engineering and a five-year warranty, the site pad/foundation must meet the suppliers design so the pad and building can be considered from a single source for warranty purposes. The supplier must accept the pad and compactions tests before they take responsibility for the entire system under their warranty.

B. Architectural Design/Engineering and Insurance Responsibility

- While the County has provided bid specifications and general dimensions of the new restrooms building (210 SF), the building design/build supplier remains legally responsible for architecture, engineering, and all applicable building, safety, health, fire, and accessibility code compliance. Since they hold professional design responsibility to the owner, the building supplier must furnish certification that they provide product liability insurance in the amounts required by the general specifications **to cover property damage and personal injury**. Final drawings shall be stamped by a California engineer and California Department of Housing and Community Development, suitable for local permitting.

C. Errors and Omissions Insurance

- The building design/build supplier must also provide an additional Professional Architectural and Engineering Errors and Omissions insurance, in the minimum amount of \$2,000,000, **to cover claims against the owner and the general contractor for State and Federal ADA handicapped accessibility and other design/engineering code issues**. This Errors and Omission Policy must remain in effect for 5 years from the completion and owner acceptance of the project. Products liability insurance (since it does not cover professional design responsibility only) will be insufficient for this bid and will be cause for rejection of the bidder.

D. Insurance for the Building offsite, while in transit, and/or on site until turn over and final owner acceptance

- The supplier may request invoicing for a percentage of building completion in-plant, monthly. Under UCC law, this means that the supplier is turning over responsibility for the portion invoiced to the owner yet the building will not be on the owner's property and may not be covered by the owners insurance. Therefore, the building supplier must provide a separate insurance policy insuring the owner and their general contractor as additionally insured for liability, damage and/or vandalism to the building while in the manufacturing facility, while in transit, and/or while in storage at a certified bonded storage facility or at the final project site for up to \$200,000 for each prefabricated building module, until the building is final accepted by owner.

E. General Contractor Coordination with Design/Build Supplier

- The prefabricated public restroom building requires coordination between the general contractor (who prepares the site pad and delivery access for the prefabricated storage building) and the prefabricated restroom building supplier (who completes the architectural design, engineering, off-site building construction, delivery and installation on site.) The prefabricated restroom building specifications include unique components/systems which are custom to the restroom building supplier. Since the restroom supplier is responsible for design, additional insurance requirements for errors and omissions is required.

F. General Contractor, General Scope of Work

- The general contractor for this project is responsible for the site survey and staking the building location, finished slab survey elevations and marking on site including certified building pad letter from a professional surveyor certifying the grade and finished floor elevation (example of letter can be provided upon request), a geotechnical pad approval certifying the subgrade, over-excavation and compaction requirements are per the project requirements (example of letter can be provided upon request), construction and compaction of the required building pad; access to the site for a large crane and tractor trailers delivering the prefabricated building; providing water, sewer, and power point of connections (POC) at the depth required by the building subcontractor, local water, sewer and electric purveyors, and local code; and the installation of any sidewalks and asphalt work outside the building footprint.
- The general contractor is responsible for verification to the building subcontractor design/build firm that there are no unanticipated site delivery issues such as overhead wires, trees, tree roots, or existing grade changes and that prevent a clear path of travel between a roadway and the final site exists for a tractor trailer and crane to expedite delivery. The design/build supplier requires that the general contractor certify that the required delivery crane must be able to set the building module/modules within 35' distance from the center of the building to the center of the crane hoist.

G. Supplier/Prefabricated Restroom Building, General Scope of Work

- The prefabricated restroom building specialist will provide to the general contractor final building design architectural drawings and engineering calculations under the responsibility of a licensed structural engineer, in compliance with all local, state and federal codes. The design/build supplier shall construct the building offsite as a permanently relocatable building, transport it to the final required destination, and install the building turnkey, (to 6' from the building footprint) on the general contractor prepared pad per the drawings included in this bid.

H. Licensing:

- The supplier must comply with all the State of California; Department of Housing and Community Development, prefabricated "Commercial Modular Requirements" as follows:
 - The building *manufacturer* must be licensed by the State of California, Department of Housing and Community Development as a manufacturer.
 - The selling dealer (if applicable) must be a California licensed dealer and present their license for verification with the bid.
- The licensed dealer must also possess a State of California Contractors License Board Class B License and present their license for verification with the bid.

I. Bid Standard for the Prefabricated Restroom Building

- The County understands that there are several firms who design and build various types of public restroom buildings in varying quality and architectural styles, using similar or different construction methods and materials.
 - Minimum Specifications:

- 50 year building design-life for local weather conditions (including snow).
- CMU Masonry Walls.
- Two ADA Accessible Restrooms with stainless steel fixtures.
- Idyllwild Historic District guidelines.
 - Board & Batten Siding with Ledge Stone.
 - Moderate and steep gable or hipped roof pitches.
 - Composition Shingle.
 - To view the full guidelines:
https://planning.rctlma.org/Portals/14/Idyllwild%20Downtown%20Historic%20District%20Design%20Guidelines_1.pdf
- Automatic Magnetic Locking Doors with Timer.
- Emergency Lighting.
- Hydronic System: in slab hydronic heating system for freeze protection.
- Insulation/weatherization.
- California Building Code Complaint.

J. Certificate of Off-site Inspection and Construction Compliance, Provision for Maintenance Manuals, and Warranty

- The off-site restroom construction requires that a licensed third party inspection firm provide the owner and the local building official with certification and compliance for the building with the approved plans and specifications. A certificate of compliance shall be issued by this inspector to the local building official to provide certification that the building meets and or exceeds the approved plans and applicable codes.
- At the project conclusion, the building supplier shall furnish two sets of complete maintenance manuals including a trouble shooting guide, location of manufacturers of key components for replacement parts together with final as-built plans, and a **five (5) year warranty** to the owner and general contractor.

K. Site Scope of Work by General Contractor

- The general contractor shall prepare the restroom building sub grade pad to receive the prefabricated building in accordance with the bid drawings.
 - The building pad shall be excavated to 14" deep from the final building concrete slab elevation or in accordance with the prefabricated building engineer's recommendations and in accordance with the project geotechnical report, whichever is more stringent.
 - The building pad shall meet a 90% compaction in lifts using class II base for the first four inches and coarse sand for the last two inches of the pad, leaving the finished sub grade pad elevation at finished floor, minus 8".
 - The general contractor shall provide water point of service at 30" below finished building slab; sewer at 24" below the finished building slab; and electrical at 36" below the finished building slab or other per bid plans.
 - General contractor shall coordinate with restroom supplier to provide full site delivery access for a 70' tractor-trailer and hydro crane to the final building site.
 - If the final site access is over existing sidewalks, utilities, or landscaping, the general contractor shall be responsible for plating and or tree trimming, utility line removal, or other to protect any existing conditions.
 - The hydro crane must be able to locate no greater than 35' from the center point of the building to the center point of the crane.
 - The utilities shall be furnished per bid site plans at specified points of connection (POC) nominally 6' from the building line.
 - General contractor shall furnish and install final grading, landscaping, sidewalks and asphalt parking lot work per plan.

L. Connection to Utilities

- The restroom subcontractor will furnish Electrical (including electrical pole, sleeves, connections and wiring from meter to building panel), Water, and Sewer at the proper POINT OF CONNECTION AND AT THE PROPER ELEVATION BELOW GRADE, for this project. Restroom subcontractor shall

provide final hook up of the water from building to POC; sewer hookup to POC; and electrical sleeve from building panel to POC only. Final utility connections shall be by general contractor. General contractor shall flush the water lines thoroughly before making final water connection to the building.

M. Concrete Slab, Required Independent Testing Laboratory Certification

- The prefabricated building slab special concrete technology claims to be water and urine resistant for life due to special additive technology. The building subcontractor must furnish a test certification of compliance from a national independent testing laboratory to support the claim for absorption resistance. The written report must state the concrete compressive and absorption per ASTM standard #C642 and #C39 respectively. Since this non-absorbency capability is so significant, the design/build subcontractor must provide a general certification of compliance with the above standards.
- The prefabricated building slab shall be water and urine resistant for the life of the building and reach a compressive strength (minimum of 7,000 PSI or as otherwise approved by Owner). The building subcontractor must furnish a test certification of compliance from a national independent testing laboratory to support the claim for absorption resistance. The written report must state the concrete compressive and absorption per ASTM standard #C642 and #C39 respectively. Since this non-absorbency capability is so significant, the design/build subcontractor must provide a general certification of compliance with the above standards.

N. Prefabricated Restroom Building

- This bid requires such a building be used in lieu of site built traditional construction because of the unique built-in advantages guaranteed by the design/build firm. This technology includes many new innovations such as non-absorbent concrete; anti-microbial components to reduce health risks; built in vandal resistance design; lowered maintenance and long term warranties that reduce owner risk for failure. The specifications below are written around this new technology.

O. Mat Engineered Concrete Building Slab/Foundation shall generally meet or exceed the following:

- The mat engineered 8" thick slab/foundation shall be engineered and constructed to withstand the transportation weight of the building without cracking and to resist absorption from any liquids deposited on the surface. The concrete slab shall be constructed inside a steel angle curb, reinforced with dual mats (tension and compression,) and a finished slab that is water proof for life.
- Perimeter Steel Curb: 5/16" 50,000 kip steel 6" X 6" welded continuous angle.
- Rebar Steel Mat: Two layers of 40,000 tensile steel rebar in varying sizes per engineers requirements, including a perimeter structural continuous grade beam design inside the exterior steel angle and at any other location deemed by the engineer of record as required for the use intended. In coastal locations or when required for corrosion resistance rebar shall be epoxy coated or fiberglass to resist permanent corrosion. Rebar mats shall be wire tied to code with a minimum of three turns of the wire and overlaps shall be minimum of 15 diameters for any connection.
- All slab openings shall be surrounded with two layers of steel collars as required by the engineer of record to stop corner cracking and to reinforce the openings for lifting.
- 1" thick by 3" minimum length threaded nuts shall be welded to the steel perimeter frame with continuous 1/4" fillet welds. Nuts shall be welded to common steel plates per the engineer of records design and attached to the interior steel rebar structural mats.
- The engineer of record shall provide lifting locations with sufficient reinforcement to allow the safe lifting of the entire designed weight of the structure with dual 1" steel bolts and washers at each lifting location. The number of lifting locations with each location fitted with removable 3/4" 8" X 8" 50,000 tensile strength steel angles shall be determined by the engineer of record.
- The slab shall be poured over a 1" thick steel plate table. The concrete mix design shall not exceed a 3" slump and shall be stinger vibrated for maximum consolidation. All floors shall slope to any floor drains within each room and if no floor drain is present the floor should not slope. The surface shall be a very light broom that should meet a coefficient of friction on the surface of .06. Birdbaths shall be cause for rejection.
- The steel perimeter angle will remain below the concrete surface by nominal two inches to prevent corrosion. After the site concrete sidewalks are poured, the joint shall be full flow sealed with self-leveling grey urethane caulk to prevent penetration of water into the joint.

- The building shall be designed for future relocation and shall provide protection for the lifting openings in the mat slab so that the threaded openings will be available for future use if needed.
- The building system shall be designed for placement on a general contractor site prepared class 2 building pad/and or footings as required by code, per the bid drawings, suitable for 1500 pounds soil bearing capacity minimum. Any soils survey (if necessary) shall be by owner or engineer of record.

P. Exterior & Interior Masonry Block Walls

- The exterior walls shall be 4" thickness per State of California codes or engineering for wind and seismic. The interior walls shall be 4" block to ceiling height.
- The 8" mat engineered concrete slab shall be cured a minimum of 7 days. Holes for vertical dowels shall be drilled into the mat engineered slab avoiding any grade beams or other structural reinforcement. Once the holes are drilled, blow out the remaining material and using two part structural epoxy, wet set the #3 or #4 vertical rebar (as specified on the engineering calculations into holes drilled to the depth per the engineer of record requirements. Each rebar shall be held vertical to allow equal epoxy support to each dowel during the drying period. Engineering calculations require that rebar shall be installed in each concrete block center void or every block hole. The engineered uplift on each rebar shall be sufficient to restrain any load imposed on the masonry block wall for vertical rebar pull out from the concrete mat engineered slab.
- The block walls shall be nominal 8" x 16" CMU. The building corners shall have special corner return block that matches the exterior finish and creates a uniform appearance. All 4" CMU shall be custom fabricated with an enlarged interior hole for placement of the grout and vertical rebar.
- See Bid Standard for the Prefabricated Restroom Building for Idyllwild Historic District Guideline enhancements that are required for this project.

Q. Roof System

- The roof system shall meet the standard of the Idyllwild Historic District Guidelines.
- shall be kiln dried, select-deck, center match, v-grooved pine over engineer rated exterior and mid span glue exterior-grade laminated beams with a natural stain/sealer. The exterior roof finish shall be a 40 year composition shingle with 30# roofing paper, and structural 7/16" exterior OSB sheer panel. The roof design live load shall be calculated based on the project location including snow loads.
- The rake and fascia shall be 14 gauge formed steel painted in a color selected by owner. The rake and fascia shall be 14 or 16 gauge formed steel painted in a color selected by Owner.
- Roof shall be designed per plans to reduce vandals climbing on roof and to obtain proper ventilation size openings for the gables to provide fan-free ventilation.
- The restroom ventilation screens (described in a following section) shall be attached to the truss frames and non-removable by vandals. Roof color shall be determined by owner.

R. Interior Wall Finish

- Interior precision CMU block masonry walls shall be smoothed to a pebble grain finish with 2-4 mil layers of 7-day curing block fillers and painted with two additional 4 mil layers of industrial high solids (white) industrial grade enamel. Any wood pony, gable walls, ceiling, and any wood shall be painted white with industrial high solids enamel. Verify final colors with Owner before proceeding with painting.

S. Exterior Wall Finish, Masonry and Gable

- The building exterior finishes shall be Board and Batten Siding with Ledge Stone, Hardie Board reinforced cement board painted with two 4 mil layers of industrial high-solids, industrial grade enamel, color selected by owner.

T. Gable Ventilation System

- Shall be woven ¼" X 1" X 1", 316T, stainless steel woven crimp-stop wire mesh set into grooved channels within the CMU block with a stainless steel channel at the connection to roof structure.

U. Doors and Gates

- The restroom entry doors shall be 7'-0" high, custom fabricated, 14 gauge steel; reinforced with 14 gauge steel ribs welded at 6" intervals on each face, concealed; reinforced with a welded plate for door closer mounting; hung on a single continuous, 1 million cycle, aluminum gear hinge with stainless steel vandal resistant screws at nominal 4" on center. The doors shall weigh nominally 176 lbs each for a 36" X 84" door. Custom fabricated 14 gauge steel door jambs with 4" steel heads shall be welded to

the steel cap beam and be solid filled with 3000 psi masonry grout mix.

- All entry doors shall have a 1/8" thick plate stainless steel "Z-shaped" anti-microbial pull handles with integral latch guard (latch guard on concession entry door and utility chase door only) and Schlage B-600 series commercial series dead bolts.
- The door closer (restroom entry doors only) shall be "LCN" heavy duty #4210 Series, fastened to a structural reinforced door plate per door manufacturer design. Stainless steel vandal resistant fasteners shall be used on all hardware.
- Stainless steel vandal resistant fasteners shall be used on all hardware.

V. Specialties

- All specialty washroom equipment shall be commercial grade stainless steel fastened securely to walls with vandal resistant stainless steel screws to avoid removal by vandals as follows:
- Toilet paper holder shall be a covered two-roll, 18 gauge stainless steel. Toilet paper holders shall be attached to block walls with 4 epoxy bedded vandal resistant stainless steel fasteners.
- Stainless steel grab bars to code shall be 1 1/4" minimum exposed fastener vandal resistant design and installed at each accessible water closet.
- Cast Aluminum ADA compliant signs shall be recessed into block surface flush with masonry exterior. Signs shall have raised pointed Braille tips and shall be blind secured with epoxy adhesive and stainless steel fasteners.
- Baby Changing Stations shall be the Foundations Horizontal Surface Mount
- Hand Dryer: Dyson Airblade V, nickel finish, mounted adjacent to lavatories
- Soap Dispenser shall be a stainless steel thru wall nozzle with remote reservoir located in the mechanical chase.

W. Plumbing

- Building shall be fully compliant with the following codes:
 - All applicable State of California Building Codes. Latest edition applicable.
 - California Plumbing Code. Latest edition applicable.
- GENERAL: All components and fabrications shall be designed to reduce life cycle maintenance, be compatible with current maintenance spare parts, and shall be listed in a spare parts/maintenance manual (two copies) delivered in utility chase of building.
- WATER PIPING: Shall be type L copper above grade and type K with silver solder below grade. All water piping shall be designed and constructed with high and low point drain fittings. All piping shall be mounted on Uni-strut wall brackets with neoprene isolators, to code.
- WATER PRESSURE GAUGE/VALVE COMBO: install three commercial grade industrial water pressure gauges, isolation ball valves, 10 micron water filter with clear canister and check valve.
- PLUMBING FAUCETS, ISOLATION VALVES AND ACTUATORS: All fixtures except those with flush valves shall be isolated with ball valves for each fixture, concealed hydraulic button-type flush valves, and metered push-button type lavatory faucets.
- DWV PIPING: DWV piping shall be concealed behind the wall. DWV piping shall be PVC DWV, solvent welded, for all concealed piping. A cast iron no hub DWV vent pipe with a cast iron roof mounted vandal cap vent shall be required, through the roof.
- REMOVABLE PIPE TRAPS: All floor drain, sink drain, and waste traps shall be removable for maintenance. Floor drains shall be trapped behind the wall in the utility chase using a combination waste and vent system. Floor drains shall be increased two pipe sizes over standard to allow code use. All surface mounted utility chase piping shall be mounted on Uni-strut with plastic isolators to code. Sink drain traps shall be concealed behind the utility chase walls where maintenance staff can access all plumbing.
- PLUMBING FIXTURES: Plumbing fixtures shall be 14 gauge 316 stainless steel manufactured by Acorn. Toilets shall be wall hung, rear discharge, with sensor flush valves. Toilet seats shall be black solid core plastic, non-flammable construction with continuous stainless steel concealed self-checking hinges. Lavatories shall have concealed remote traps behind the mechanical wall. Schedule of fixtures:
 - Water Closets: Acorn Penal-Ware, 1675-W-1-HET-FVBO-ADA-PFS

- Water Closet Flush Valve: Zurn ZEMS6152AV-HET-7L
- Urinal (if included): Acorn Penal Ware: Acorn 1709HEU-1-0.5 GPF-FVBO
- Urinal Flush Valve (if included): Zurn ZEMS6195AV-ULF-7L
- Lavatories: Acorn Penal-ware 1652LRB-1-DMS-03-M
- Lavatory Faucets: Zurn Z6913-XL-CWB
- FLOOR GRATES: Removable 350 lbs per square foot pultruded fiberglass non-skid floor grates shall be installed over every opening in the utility chase for OSHA protection/compliance.
- HOSE BIB: There shall be one Woodford 24-P hose bib provided in the utility chase.
- HOSE REEL: One commercial grade hose reel with capacity for 75' X 3/4" commercial heavy duty hose and nozzle shall be hung in mechanical room for cleaning of restrooms. One 75' x 3/4" commercial hose shall be furnished.

X. Electrical

- GENERAL: Electrical system and components shall be commercial grade or better and piping conduits shall be installed on commercial Uni-strut wall hangers. Interior and exterior electrical lighting fixtures in public areas shall provide lifetime manufacturer's warranty.
- PANEL/WIRING: One 100 amp, three phase main industrial grade Panel Board, Square "D" QO series, shall be mounted in the utility chase in the restroom building. All breakers shall be plug-on type, minimum 10,000 A.I.C. RMS (Sym) at 120/240 vac. Wiring shall be stranded copper wire #12 min in EMT piping with screw fittings.
- PIPING: All piping shall be surface mounted to the masonry block walls with minimum of 2" fastener penetration. EMT conduit shall be compression type. Main panel shall maintain a 30" X 36" safety code required clear space, floor to 6' above finished floor.
- EXTERIOR LIGHTING: Luminaire YWP610, LED, vandal resistant, high-impact polycarbonate lens fixtures shall be installed per plans
- INTERIOR LIGHTING: Luminaire SWP1212, LED, vandal resistant high-impact polycarbonate lens fixtures shall be installed in the restrooms per plans The utility chase shall have one (1), 4' single-tube LED fixture, suitable for wet locations, with a single switch at door entry.
- LIGHTING CONTROL: All exterior restroom lighting shall be controlled by a photo cell mounted 8' high on the utility chase/restroom wall. Two (2) bypass switches shall be located in the utility chase (one for interior lighting and one for exterior lighting), so maintenance staff can check operation during daylight hours. Integral occupancy sensors shall control the interior lighting.
- ELECTRICAL OUTLETS: (1) commercial spec grade dedicated GFCI in the utility chase, per plans.
- WATER HEATER: Steibel on demand water heater will be provided.

Y. Shipping Protection

- The building, while traveling over roads to the destination may encounter inclement weather or road grime that could require substantial cleaning when it arrives on site. The building shall be shrink-wrapped before transportation and sufficiently strong to arrive at the owner site intact for exterior finish protection. Materials removed on site shall be disposed of and recycled by restroom building install staff.

Z. Certifications

- Building shall be certified in compliance with the plan approval by the State of California, Department of Housing and Community Development and shall be delivered with an applied insignia in compliance with all State regulations. The local building authority shall provide site inspections for the underground mechanical piping and final connections, footings, and access issues outside the restroom footprint. Restroom building subcontractor shall also furnish 5 year warranty, certifications for the concrete slab specification compliance, and maintenance manuals for the building and components.

END OF SECTION

Geotechnical Report

New Public Restroom @ APN 563-292-003 Idyllwild, California

Prepared for:

County of Riverside

3403 Tenth Street, Suite 400
Riverside, CA 92501



Prepared by:

LandMark Consultants, Inc.
77-948 Wildcat Drive
Palm Desert, CA 92211
(760) 360-0665

July 2022



780 N. 4th Street
El Centro, CA 92243
(760) 370-3000
landmark@landmark-ca.com

77-948 Wildcat Drive
Palm Desert, CA 92211
(760) 360-0665
gchandra@landmark-ca.com

July 15, 2022

Mr. Erik Sydow
County of Riverside – Office of Economic Development
3403 Tenth Street, Suite 400
Riverside, CA 92501

Geotechnical Report
New Public Restroom Facility @ APN 563-292-003
Idyllwild, California
LCI Report No.: LP22158

Dear Mr. Sydow:

As per your request, *LandMark Consultants, Inc.* is providing the following geotechnical report for the proposed new public restroom project located at 54385 N. Circle Drive in Idyllwild, County of Riverside, California.

Project Description

This report presents the findings of our geotechnical investigation for proposed new public restroom development located at the northern portion of the existing Mile Hi Plaza commercial building (See Vicinity Map, Plate A-1). The proposed development will consist of an approximately 170 sq-ft restroom building (PS-022) on a shallow concrete foundation. A site plan for the proposed development was provided by your office in May 2022.

Footing loads at exterior bearing walls are estimated at 0.5 to 2 kips per lineal foot. If structural loads exceed those stated above, we should be notified so we may evaluate their impact on foundation settlement and bearing capacity. Site development will include building pad preparation, underground utility installation, asphalt concrete and concrete hardscape.

Purpose of Work

The purpose of this study was to investigate the upper 6 feet of subsurface soil at selected locations within the site for evaluation of physical/engineering properties. From the analysis of the field and laboratory data, professional opinions were developed and are provided in this report regarding geotechnical conditions at this site and the effect on design and construction.

Field Exploration

Subsurface exploration was performed on June 3, 2022 using Cal Pac Drilling of Yucaipa, California to advance two (2) borings to depths of 2.5 and 6 feet below existing ground surface. Refusal was encountered below these depths. The borings were advanced with a truck-mounted, Mobile B-61 drill rig using 8-inch diameter, hollow-stem, continuous-flight augers. The approximate boring locations were established in the field and plotted on the site map by sighting to discernable site features. The boring locations are shown on the Site and Exploration Plan (Plate A-2).

Our geo-technician observed the drilling operations and maintained a log of the soil encountered and sampling depths, visually classified the soil encountered during drilling in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System, and obtained drive tube and bulk samples of the subsurface materials at selected intervals. Relatively undisturbed soil samples were retrieved using a 3-inch OD Modified California Split-Barrel (ring) sampler. The samples were obtained by driving the sampler ahead of the auger tip at selected depths.

The drill rig was equipped with a 140-pound CME automatic hammer with a 30-inch drop for conducting Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) in accordance with ASTM D1586. The number of blows required to drive the samplers the last 12 inches of an 18-inch drive length into the soil is recorded on the boring logs as “blows per foot”. Blow counts reported on the boring logs represent the field blow counts. No corrections have been applied for effects of overburden pressure, automatic hammer drive energy, drill rod lengths, liners, and sampler diameter. When samples were not able to be driven an 18 inches depth, sampler penetration depth was recorded for 50 blows with a 140-lbs drive hammer.

After logging and sampling the soil, the exploratory boring was backfilled with the excavated material. The backfill was loosely placed and was not compacted to the requirements specified for engineered fill.

The subsurface logs are presented on Plates B-1 and B-2 in Appendix B. A key to the log symbols is presented on Plate B-3. The stratification lines shown on the subsurface logs represent the approximate boundaries between the various strata. However, the transition from one stratum to another may be gradual over some range of depth.

Laboratory Testing

Laboratory tests were conducted on selected bulk soil samples to aid in classification and evaluation of selected properties of the site soils. The tests were conducted in general conformance to the procedures of the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) or other standardized methods as referenced below. The laboratory testing program consisted of the following tests:

- < Particle Size Analyses (ASTM D6913/D7928)
- < Unit Dry Densities (ASTM D2937)
- < Moisture Contents (ASTM D2216)
- < Chemical Analyses (soluble sulfates & chlorides, pH, and resistivity) (Caltrans Methods)

The laboratory test results are presented on the subsurface logs (Appendix B) and Appendix C. Engineering parameters of soil strength, compressibility, and relative density utilized for developing design criteria provided within this report were extrapolated from data obtained from the field and laboratory testing program.

Site Conditions

The project site is approximately square in plan view and located on the north side of the existing Mile Hi Plaza commercial building. The site was vacant at the time of our site exploration, but previously two large trees were located in the northern portion of the proposed building area. North Circle Drive abuts the north side of the site. Adjacent properties are flat-lying and are approximately at the same elevation with this site. Commercial buildings and parking lots are located surrounding the site.

The project site lies at an elevation of approximately 5420 feet above mean sea level (AMSL) in the San Jacinto Mountain area of the Southern California. Annual rainfall in this region is less than 18 inches per year with an average summertime temperature above 95 °F. Winter temperature of 36 °F.

Geologic Setting

The project site is located in the San Jacinto portion of the Peninsular Ranges physiographic province. The Peninsular ranges are a series of ranges is separated by northwest trending valleys, subparallel to faults branching from the San Andreas fault with granitic rock intruding the older metamorphic rocks. The Peninsular Ranges extend into lower California and are bound on the east by the Colorado Desert and the north by the Transverse Ranges. Tectonic activity associated with the San Andreas and San Jacinto fault zones continues at a high rate as evidenced by deformed young sedimentary deposits and high levels of seismicity. Figure 1 shows the location of the site in relation to regional faults and physiographic features.

The surrounding regional geology includes the Cretaceous granitic (quartz diorite) of the Peninsular Ranges (Santa Rosa and San Jacinto Mountains) to the southeast and east. The project site is underlain by dissected alluvial fanglomerate of quartz diorite and gneissic detritus.

Subsurface Soils

Subsurface soils encountered during the field exploration conducted on June 3, 2022 consist of interbedded surficial sand (SP-SM) overlying by dense decomposed granitic bedrock to a depth of 6 feet, the maximum depth of exploration. The near surface soils are non-expansive in nature. The subsurface logs (Plates B-1 and B-2) depict the stratigraphic relationships of the various soil types.

Groundwater

Groundwater was not encountered in the borings during the time of exploration. Groundwater levels may fluctuate with precipitation, irrigation of adjacent properties, drainage, and site grading. The groundwater level noted should not be interpreted to represent an accurate or permanent condition.

Faulting

The project site is located in the seismically active southern California region with numerous mapped faults of the San Andreas, Elsinore and San Jacinto fault systems traversing the region. We have performed a computer-aided search of known faults or seismic zones that lie within a 41-mile radius of the project site (Table 1).

A fault map illustrating known active faults relative to the site is presented on Figure 1, *Regional Fault Map*. Figure 2 shows the project site in relation to local faults. The criterion for fault classification adopted by the California Geological Survey defines Earthquake Fault Zones along Holocene-active or pre-Holocene faults (CGS, 2022b). Earthquake Fault Zones are regulatory zones that address the hazard of surface fault rupture. A Holocene-active fault is one that has ruptured during Holocene time (within the last 11,700 years). A pre-Holocene fault is a fault that has not ruptured in the last 11,700 years. Pre-Holocene faults may still be capable of surface rupture in the future, but are not regulated by the Alquist-Priolo Act (AP).

Review of the current Alquist-Priolo Earthquake Fault Zone maps (CGS, 2000a) indicates that the nearest mapped Earthquake Fault Zone is the San Jacinto – San Jacinto Valley fault located approximately 3.3 miles southwest of the project site.

General Ground Motion Analysis

The project site is considered likely to be subjected to moderate to strong ground motion from earthquakes in the region. Ground motions are dependent primarily on the earthquake magnitude and distance to the seismogenic (rupture) zone. Acceleration magnitudes also are dependent upon attenuation by rock and soil deposits, direction of rupture and type of fault; therefore, ground motions may vary considerably in the same general area.

2019 CBC General Ground Motion Parameters: The California Building Code (CBC) requires that a site-specific ground motion hazard analysis be performed in accordance with ASCE 7-16 Section 11.4.8 for structures on Site Class D and E sites with S_1 greater than or equal to 0.2 and Site Class E sites with S_s greater than or equal to 1.0. ***This project site has been classified as Site Class C which would not require a site-specific ground motion hazard analysis.***

The 2019 CBC general ground motion parameters are based on the Risk-Targeted Maximum Considered Earthquake (MCE_R). The Structural Engineers Association of California (SEAOC) and Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD) Seismic Design Maps Web Application (SEAOC, 2020) was used to obtain the site coefficients and adjusted maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration parameters. Design spectral response acceleration parameters are defined as the earthquake ground motions that are two-thirds (2/3) of the corresponding MCE_R ground motions.

The Maximum Considered Earthquake Geometric Mean (MCE_G) peak ground acceleration adjusted for soil site class effects (PGA_M) value to be used for liquefaction and seismic settlement analysis in accordance with 2019 CBC Section 1803A.5.12 ($PGA_M = F_{PGA} \cdot PGA$) is estimated at 0.66g for the project site. *Design earthquake ground motion parameters are provided in Table 2.*

Seismic and Other Hazards

► **Groundshaking.** The primary seismic hazard at the project site is the potential for strong groundshaking during earthquakes along the San Andreas and San Andreas faults. A further discussion of groundshaking mentioned above.

► **Surface Rupture.** The project site does not lie within a State of California, Alquist-Priolo Earthquake Fault Zone or County of Riverside Fault Zone. Surface fault rupture is considered to be unlikely at the project site because of the well-delineated fault lines through the Coachella Valley as shown on USGS and CDMG maps. However, because of the high tectonic activity and deep alluvium of the region, we cannot preclude the potential for surface rupture on undiscovered or new faults that may underlie the site.

► **Liquefaction.** Liquefaction is a not potential design consideration because of dense nature of underlying saturated sandy substrata.

Other Potential Geologic Hazards.

► **Landsliding.** The hazard of landsliding is unlikely due to the regional planar topography. No ancient landslides are shown on geologic maps of the region and no indications of landslides were observed during our site investigation.

► **Volcanic hazards.** The site is not located in proximity to any known volcanically active area and the risk of volcanic hazards is considered very low.

► **Tsunamis, sieches, and flooding.** The site does not lie near any large bodies of water, so the threat of tsunami, sieches, or other seismically-induced flooding is unlikely.

► **Expansive soil.** The near surface soils at the project site consist of sands which are non-expansive.

Seismic Settlement

The soils beneath the site consist primarily of a thin (3 to 6 feet thick) surficial layer very dense sand overlying decomposed granite bedrock and are not expected to dry settlements during a strong seismic event.

Hydroconsolidation

In arid climatic regions, granular soils have a potential to collapse upon wetting. This collapse (hydro-consolidation) phenomena is the result of the lubrication of soluble cements (carbonates) in the soil matrix causing the soil to densify from its loose configuration during deposition.

Based on our experience in the vicinity of the project site, there is a slight risk of collapse upon inundation at the site. Therefore, development of building foundation is not required to include provisions for mitigating the hydro-consolidation caused by soil saturation from landscape irrigation or broken utility lines.

Site Preparation

Pre-grade Meeting: Prior to site preparation, a meeting should be held at the site with as a minimum, the owner's representative, grading contractor and geotechnical engineer in attendance.

Clearing and Grubbing: Any surface improvements, debris or vegetation including grass, trees, and weeds on the site at the time of construction should be removed from the construction area. Root balls should be completely excavated. Organic stripping should be hauled from the site and not used as fill.

Any trash, construction debris, concrete slabs, old pavement, landfill, and buried obstructions such as old foundations, un-controlled fills and utility lines exposed during rough grading should be traced to the limits of the foreign material by the grading contractor and removed under our supervision. Any excavations resulting from site clearing should be dish-shaped to the lowest depth of disturbance and backfilled under the observation of the geotechnical engineer's representative.

Building Pad Preparation: The existing surface soil within the proposed building pad area should be removed to 12 inches below the original grade or 12 inches below the lowest foundation grade (whichever deeper), extending five feet beyond all exterior wall/column lines (including adjacent concrete areas). Exposed sub-grade should be scarified to a depth of 6 to 8 inches, uniformly moisture conditioned to at least 2% over optimum moisture content and re-compacted a minimum of 90% of the maximum density determined in accordance with ASTM D1557 methods.

Asphalt Concrete and Concrete Hardscape Areas: In areas other than the building pad which are to receive asphalt concrete pavements and/or concrete slabs, the ground surface should be over-excavated to a depth of 8 to 12 inches, uniformly moisture conditioned to $\pm 2\%$ of optimum moisture, and re-compacted to at least 90% of ASTM D1557 maximum density.

The on-site soils are suitable for use as compacted fill and utility trench backfill. Imported fill soil (if required) should be similar to onsite soil or non-expansive, granular soil meeting the USCS classifications of SM, SP-SM, or SW-SM with a maximum rock size of 6 inches and no less than 5% passing the No. 200 sieve. *The geotechnical engineer should approve imported fill soil sources before hauling material to the site.* Native and imported materials should be placed in lifts no greater than 8 inches in loose thickness, uniformly moisture conditioned to $\pm 2\%$ of optimum moisture, and re-compacted to at least 90% of ASTM D1557 maximum density.

Moisture Control and Drainage: The moisture condition of the house pad should be maintained during trenching and utility installation until concrete is placed or should be rewetted before initiating delayed construction. Adequate site drainage is essential to future performance of the project. Infiltration of excess irrigation water and stormwaters can adversely affect the performance of the subsurface soil at the site. Positive drainage should be maintained away from all structures (5% for 5 feet minimum across unpaved areas) to prevent ponding and subsequent saturation of the native soil.

Gutters and downspouts may be considered as a means to convey water away from foundations. If landscape irrigation is allowed next to the building, drip irrigation systems or lined planter boxes should be used. The subgrade soil should be maintained in a moist, but not saturated state, and not allowed to dry out. Drainage should be maintained without ponding.

Utility Trench Backfill

On-site soil free of debris, vegetation, and other deleterious matter may be suitable for use as utility trench backfill. Backfill within roadway should, at a minimum, conform to County of Riverside Standard No. 818 – Utility Trench Backfill.

Backfill within roadways/paved areas should be placed in layers not more than 6 to 8 inches in thickness, uniformly moisture conditioned to $\pm 2\%$ of optimum moisture and mechanically compacted to a minimum of 90% of the ASTM D1557 maximum dry density except for the top 12 inches of the trench which shall be compacted to at least 95%.

Native backfill should only be placed and compacted after encapsulating buried pipes with suitable bedding and pipe envelope material. Pipe envelope/bedding should be clean sand (Sand Equivalent SE>30). Precautions should be taken in the compaction of the backfill to avoid damage to the pipes and structures.

Building Foundations and Settlements

Shallow Foundation: Shallow column footings and continuous wall footings are suitable to support the building structures provided they are founded on a layer of properly prepared and compacted soil as described above. The foundations may be designed using an allowable soil bearing pressure of 1,800 psf.

All exterior and interior foundations should be embedded a minimum of 12 inches deep. Spread footings should have a minimum width of 24 inches and should not be structurally isolated.

Recommended concrete reinforcement and sizing for all footings should be provided by the structural engineer.

Resistance to horizontal loads will be developed by passive earth pressure on the sides of footings and frictional resistance developed along the bases of footings and concrete slabs. Passive resistance to lateral earth pressure may be calculated using an equivalent fluid pressure of 320 pcf to resist lateral loadings. The top one foot of embedment should not be considered in computing passive resistance unless the adjacent area is confined by a slab or pavement. An allowable friction coefficient of 0.38 may also be used at the base of the footings to resist lateral loading.

Slabs-on-Grade

Concrete slabs and flatwork should be a minimum of 4 inches thick. The concrete floor slabs may either be monolithically placed with the foundation or dowelled after footing placement. The concrete slabs may be placed on granular subgrade that has been compacted at least 90% relative compaction (ASTM D1557). ***Slab thickness and steel reinforcement should be determined by the design engineer.***

American Concrete Institute (ACI) guidelines (ACI 302.1R-15 Chapter 5, Section 5.2.3) provide recommendations regarding the use of moisture barriers beneath concrete slabs. The concrete floor slabs should be underlain by a 10-mil polyethylene vapor retarder that works as a capillary break to reduce moisture migration into the slab section.

All laps and seams should be overlapped 6-inches or as recommended by the manufacturer. The vapor retarder should be protected from puncture. The joints and penetrations should be sealed with the manufacturer's recommended adhesive, pressure-sensitive tape, or both. The vapor retarder should extend a minimum of 12 inches into the footing excavations. The vapor retarder may lie directly on the granular fill with 2 inches of clean sand cover.

Placing sand over the vapor retarder may increase moisture transmission through the slab, because it provides a reservoir for bleed water from the concrete to collect. The sand placed over the vapor retarder may also move and mound prior to concrete placement, resulting in an irregular slab thickness. For areas with moisture sensitive flooring materials, ACI recommends that concrete slabs be placed without a sand cover directly over the vapor retarder, provided that the concrete mix uses a low-water cement ratio and concrete curing methods are employed to compensate for release of bleed water through the top of the slab. The vapor retarder should have a minimum thickness of 15-mil (Stego-Wrap or equivalent).

All independent concrete flatworks should be underlain by 12 inches of moisture conditioned and compacted soils. All flatwork should be jointed in square patterns and at irregularities in shape at a maximum spacing of 10 feet or the least width of the sidewalk.

Concrete Mixes and Corrosivity

Selected chemical analyses for corrosivity were conducted on bulk samples of the near surface soil from the project site (Plate C-2). The native soils have moderate levels of sulfate and low levels of chloride ion concentrations. Resistivity determinations on the soil indicate a low potential for metal loss because of electrochemical corrosion processes.

A minimum of 4,000 psi concrete of Type V Portland Cement with a maximum water/cement ratio of 0.50 (by weight) should be used for concrete placed in contact with native soil on this project (sitework including sidewalks, hardscape, and foundations).

Landmark does not practice corrosion engineering. We recommend that a qualified corrosion engineer evaluate the corrosion potential on metal construction materials and concrete at the site.

Seismic Design

This site is located in the seismically active southern California area and the site structures are subject to strong ground shaking due to potential fault movements along the San Andreas and San Jacinto faults. Engineered design and earthquake-resistant construction are the common solutions to increase safety and development of seismic areas. Designs should comply with the latest edition of the CBC for Site Class C using the seismic coefficients given above.

Observation and Density Testing

Site preparation and fill placement should be continuously observed and tested by a representative of a qualified geotechnical engineering firm. Near full-time observation services during the excavation and scarification process is necessary to detect undesirable materials or conditions and soft areas that may be encountered in the construction area. The geotechnical firm that provides observation and testing during construction shall assume the responsibility of "***geotechnical engineer of record***" and, as such, shall perform additional tests and investigation as necessary to satisfy themselves as to the site conditions and the recommendations for site development.

Closure

We did not encounter soil conditions that would preclude implementation of the proposed project provided the recommendations contained in this report are implemented in the design and construction of this project.

We recommend that ***Landmark Consultants, Inc.*** be retained to provide the tests and observations services during construction. *The geotechnical engineering firm providing such tests and observations shall become the geotechnical engineer of record and assume responsibility for the project.*

Landmark Consultants, Inc. recommendations for this site are, to a high degree, dependent upon appropriate quality control of subgrade preparation, fill placement, and foundation construction. Accordingly, the findings and professional opinions in this report are made contingent upon the opportunity for ***Landmark Consultants, Inc.*** to observe grading operations and foundation excavations for the proposed construction.

*If parties other than **Landmark Consultants, Inc.** are engaged to provide observation and testing services during construction, such parties must be notified that they will be required to assume complete responsibility as the geotechnical engineer of record for the geotechnical phase of the project by concurring with the recommendations in this report and/or by providing alternative recommendations.*

Additional information concerning the scope and cost of these services can be obtained from our office.

We appreciate the opportunity to provide our findings and professional opinions regarding geotechnical conditions at the site. If you have any questions or comments regarding our findings, please call our office at (760) 360-0665.

Respectfully Submitted,
LandMark Consultants, Inc.



Greg M. Chandra, P.E., M.ASCE
Principal Engineer



Attachments:

- Appendix A: Vicinity and Site Maps
- Appendix B: Subsurface Soil Logs and Soil Key
- Appendix C: Laboratory Test Results
- Appendix D: County of Riverside Standard No. 818 – Utility Trench Backfill.

TABLES

Table 1
Summary of Characteristics of Closest Known Active Faults

Fault Name	Approximate Distance (miles)	Approximate Distance (km)	Maximum Moment Magnitude (Mw)	Fault Length (km)	Slip Rate (mm/yr)
San Jacinto - San Jacinto Valley	3.3	5.3	6.9	43 ± 4	12 ± 6
San Jacinto - Anza	7.3	11.7	7.2	91 ± 9	12 ± 6
Garnet Hill *	13.0	20.8			
San Andreas - San Bernardino (South)	14.1	22.6	7.4	103 ± 10	30 ± 7
San Andreas - San Bernardino (North)	19.0	30.4	7.5	103 ± 10	24 ± 6
Morongo *	19.7	31.5			
Pinto Mtn.	21.7	34.7	7.2	74 ± 7	2.5 ± 2
San Jacinto - Coyote Creek	22.3	35.7	6.8	41 ± 4	4 ± 2
Eureka Peak	26.9	43.1	6.4	19 ± 2	0.6 ± 0.4
Burnt Mtn.	27.5	44.0	6.5	21 ± 2	0.6 ± 0.4
San Andreas - Coachella	27.6	44.1	7.2	96 ± 10	25 ± 5
Indio Hills *	28.1	44.9			
Blue Cut *	28.6	45.8			
Elsinore - Julian	30.4	48.6	7.1	76 ± 8	5 ± 2
Elsinore - Temecula	30.4	48.6	6.8	43 ± 4	5 ± 2
Landers	33.3	53.2	7.3	83 ± 8	0.6 ± 0.4
San Jacinto - San Bernardino	35.7	57.1	6.7	36 ± 4	12 ± 6
Elsinore - Glen Ivy	38.1	61.0	6.8	36 ± 4	5 ± 2
Earthquake Valley	39.2	62.7	6.5	20 ± 2	2 ± 1
North Frontal Fault Zone - Eastern	40.1	64.1	6.7	27 ± 3	0.5 ± 0.3
Johnson Valley (northern)	41.1	65.8	6.7	35 ± 4	0.6 ± 0.4
North Frontal Fault Zone - Western	41.2	66.0	7.2	51 ± 5	1 ± 0.5

* Note: Faults not included in CGS database.

Table 2
2019 California Building Code (CBC) and ASCE 7-16 Seismic Parameters

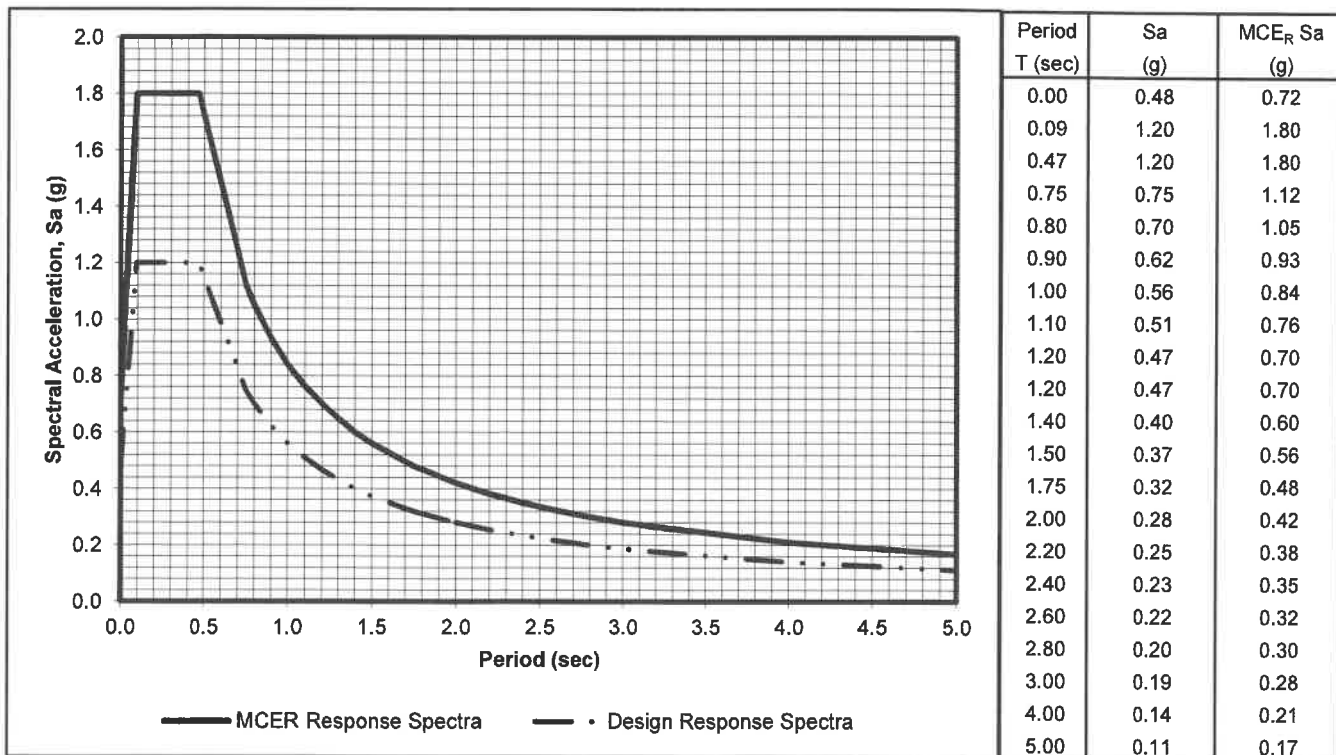
Soil Site Class:	C	ASCE 7-16 Reference
Latitude:	33.7458 N	Table 20.3-1
Longitude:	-116.7125 W	
Risk Category:	II	
Seismic Design Category:	D	

Maximum Considered Earthquake (MCE) Ground Motion

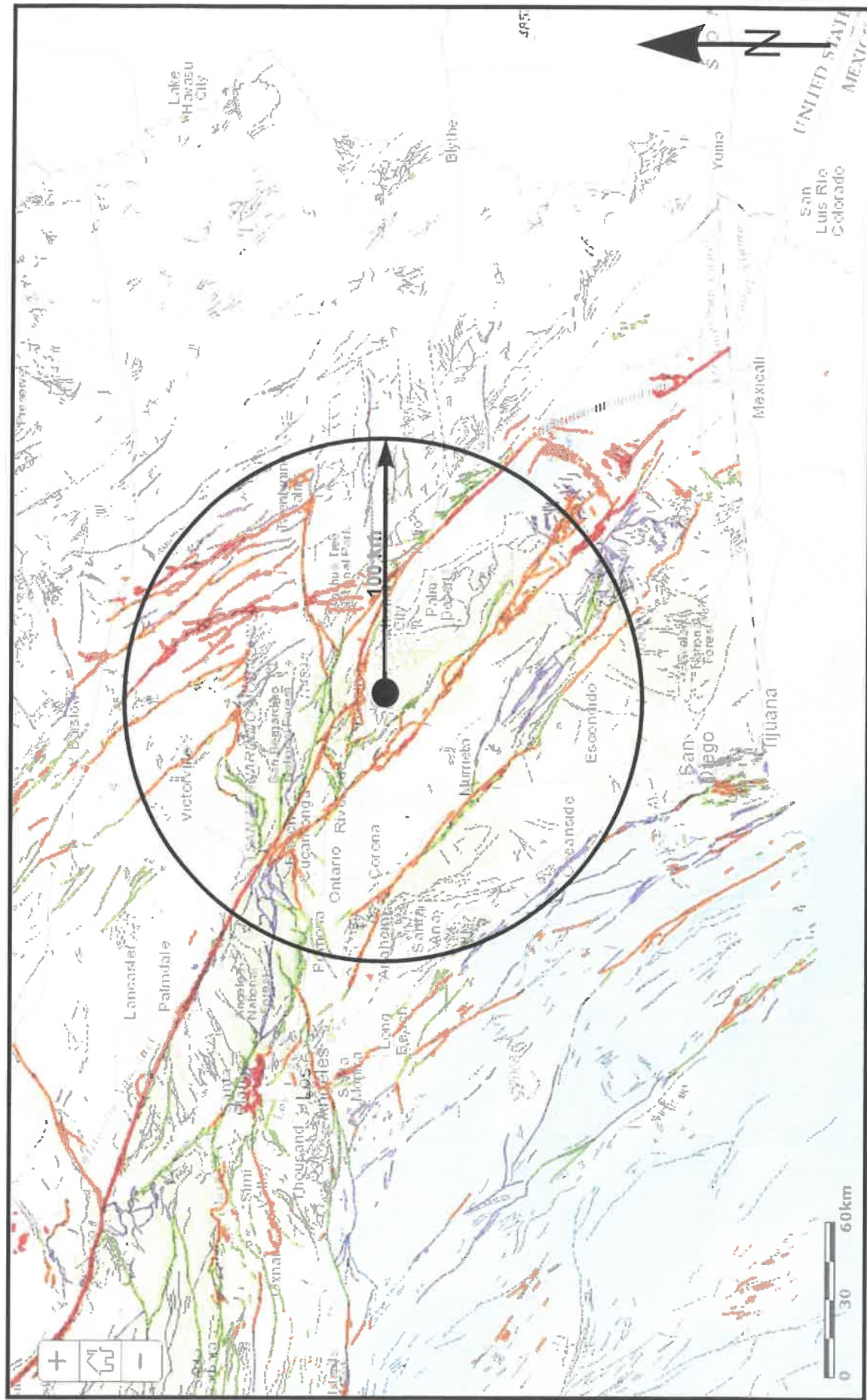
Mapped MCE _R Short Period Spectral Response	S _s	1.500 g	ASCE Figure 22-1
Mapped MCE _R 1 second Spectral Response	S ₁	0.600 g	ASCE Figure 22-2
Short Period (0.2 s) Site Coefficient	F _a	1.20	ASCE Table 11.4-1
Long Period (1.0 s) Site Coefficient	F _v	1.40	ASCE Table 11.4-2
MCE _R Spectral Response Acceleration Parameter (0.2 s)	S _{MS}	1.800 g	= F _a * S _s ASCE Equation 11.4-1
MCE _R Spectral Response Acceleration Parameter (1.0 s)	S _{M1}	0.840 g	= F _v * S ₁ ASCE Equation 11.4-2

Design Earthquake Ground Motion

Design Spectral Response Acceleration Parameter (0.2 s)	S _{DS}	1.200 g	= 2/3 * S _{MS}	ASCE Equation 11.4-3
Design Spectral Response Acceleration Parameter (1.0 s)	S _{D1}	0.560 g	= 2/3 * S _{M1}	ASCE Equation 11.4-4
Risk Coefficient at Short Periods (less than 0.2 s)	C _{RS}	0.930		ASCE Figure 22-17
Risk Coefficient at Long Periods (greater than 1.0 s)	C _{R1}	0.906		ASCE Figure 22-18
	T _L	8.00 sec		ASCE Figure 22-12
	T ₀	0.09 sec	= 0.2 * S _{D1} / S _{DS}	
	T _s	0.47 sec	= S _{D1} / S _{DS}	
Peak Ground Acceleration	PGA _M	0.66 g		ASCE Equation 11.8-1



FIGURES



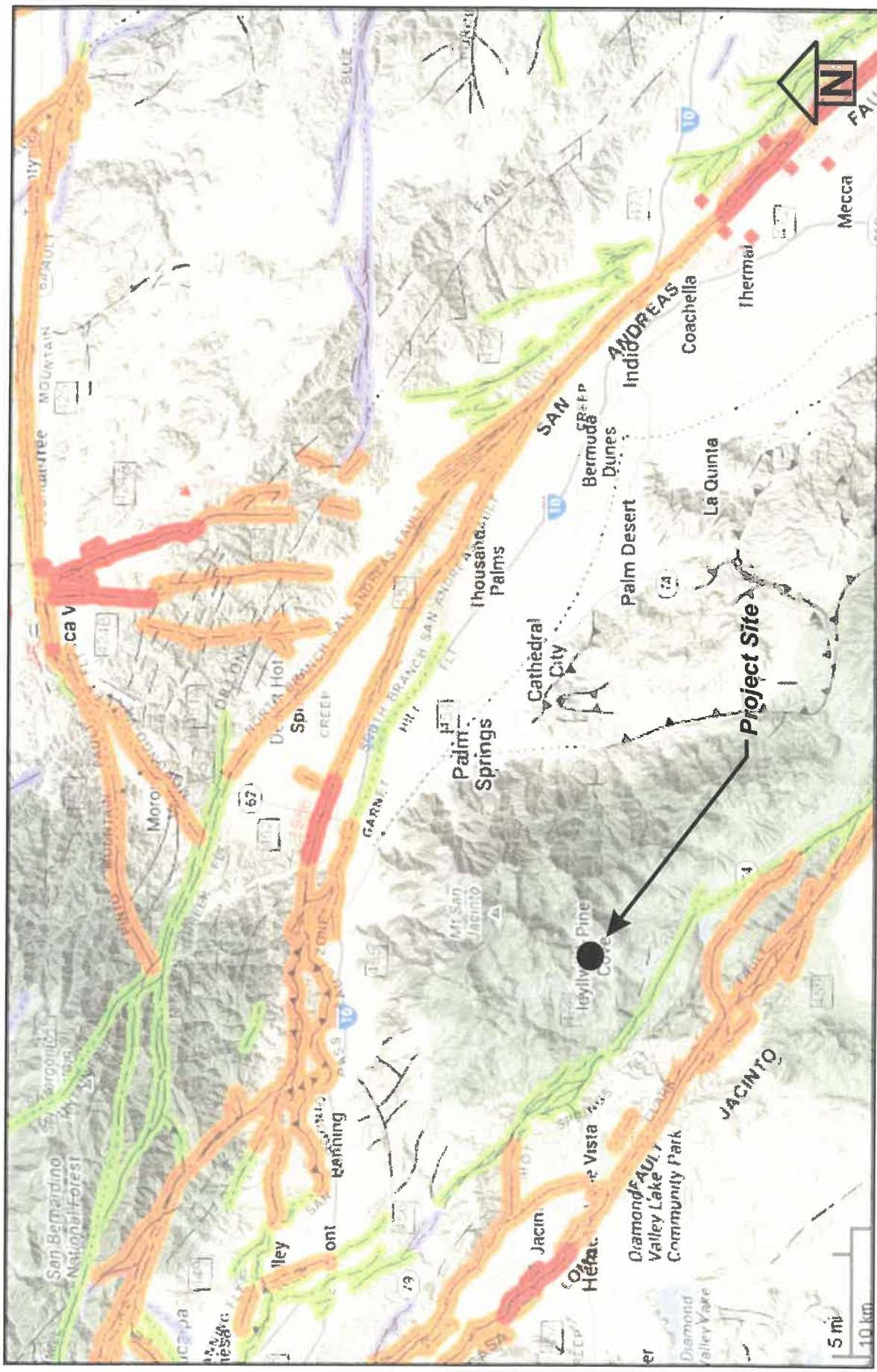
Source: California Geological Survey 2010 Fault Activity Map of California <http://www.quake.ca.gov/gmaps/FAM/faultactivitymap.html#>

LANDMARK
Geo-Engineers and Geologists

Project No.: LP22158

Regional Fault Map

Figure 1



Source: California Geological Survey 2010 Fault Activity Map of California
<http://www.quake.ca.gov/gmaps/FAM/faultactivitymap.html#>

LANDMARK
 Geo-Engineers and Geologists
 Project No.: LP22158

Map of Local Faults

Figure 2

EXPLANATION

Fault traces on land are indicated by solid lines where well located, by dashed lines where approximately located or inferred, and by dotted lines where concealed by younger rocks or by lakes or bays. Fault traces are queried where continuation or existence is uncertain. Concealed faults in the Great Valley are based on maps of selected subsurface horizons, so locations shown are approximate and may indicate structural trend only. All offshore faults based on seismic reflection profile records are shown as solid lines where well defined, dashed where inferred, queried where uncertain.

FAULT CLASSIFICATION COLOR CODE
(Indicating Recency of Movement)

Fault along which historic (last 200 years) displacement has occurred and is associated with one or more of the following:

- (a) a recorded earthquake with surface rupture. (Also included are some well-defined surface breaks caused by ground shaking during earthquakes, e.g. extensive ground breakage, not on the White Wolf fault, caused by the Arvin-Tehachapi earthquake of 1952). The date of the associated earthquake is indicated. Where repeated surface ruptures on the same fault have occurred, only the date of the latest movement may be indicated, especially if earlier reports are not well documented as to location of ground breaks.
- (b) fault creep slippage - slow ground displacement usually without accompanying earthquakes.
- (c) displaced survey lines.

A triangle to the right or left of the date indicates termination point of observed surface displacement. Solid red triangle indicates known location of rupture termination point. Open black triangle indicates uncertain or estimated location of rupture termination point.

Date bracketed by triangles indicates local fault break.

No triangle by date indicates an intermediate point along fault break.

Fault that exhibits fault creep slippage. Hatchures indicate linear extent of fault creep. Annotation (creep with leader) indicates representative locations where fault creep has been observed and recorded.

Square on fault indicates where fault creep slippage has occurred that has been triggered by an earthquake on some other fault. Date of causative earthquake indicated. Squares to right and left of date indicate terminal points between which triggered creep slippage has occurred (creep either continuous or intermittent between these end points).

Holocene fault displacement (during past 11,700 years) without historic record. Geomorphic evidence for Holocene faulting includes sag ponds, scarps showing little erosion, or the following features in Holocene age deposits: offset stream courses, linear scarps, shutter ridges, and triangular faceted spurs. Recency of faulting offshore is based on the interpreted age of the youngest strata displaced by faulting.

Late Quaternary fault displacement (during past 700,000 years). Geomorphic evidence similar to that described for Holocene faults except features are less distinct. Faulting may be younger, but lack of younger overlying deposits precludes more accurate age classification.

Quaternary fault (age undifferentiated). Most faults of this category show evidence of displacement sometime during the past 1.6 million years; possible exceptions are faults which displace rocks of undifferentiated Pliocene-Pleistocene age. Unnumbered Quaternary faults were based on Fault Map of California, 1975. See Bulletin 201, Appendix D for source data.

Pre-Quaternary fault (older than 1.6 million years) or fault without recognized Quaternary displacement. Some faults are shown in this category because the source of mapping used was of reconnaissance nature, or was not done with the object of dating fault displacements. Faults in this category are not necessarily inactive.

Fault Map Legend

Figure 3

ADDITIONAL FAULT SYMBOLS

- Bar and ball on downthrown side (relative or apparent).
- Arrows along fault indicate relative or apparent direction of lateral movement.
- Arrow on fault indicates direction of dip.
- Low angle fault (barbs on upper plate). Fault surface generally dips less than 45° but locally may have been subsequently steepened. On offshore faults, barbs simply indicate a reverse fault regardless of steepness of dip.

OTHER SYMBOLS

Numbers refer to annotations listed in the appendices of the accompanying report. Annotations include fault name, age of fault displacement, and pertinent references including Earthquake Fault Zone maps where a fault has been zoned by the Alquist-Priolo Earthquake Fault Zoning Act. This Act requires the State Geologist to delineate zones to encompass faults with Holocene displacement.

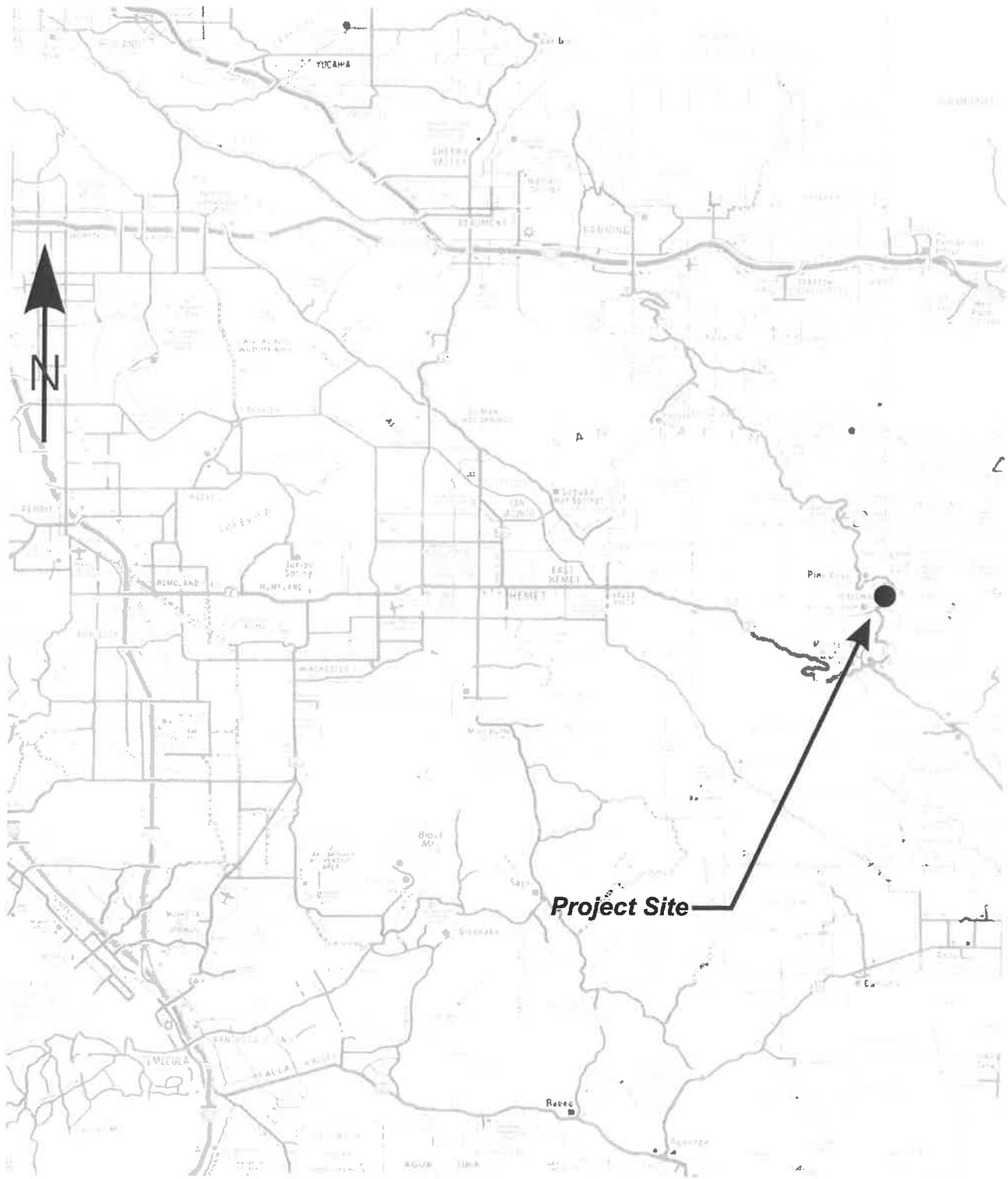
Structural discontinuity (offshore) separating differing Neogene structural domains. May indicate discontinuities between basement rocks.

Brawley Seismic Zone, a linear zone of seismicity locally up to 10 km wide associated with the releasing step between the Imperial and San Andreas faults.

Geologic Time Scale	Years Before Present (Approx.)	Fault Symbol	Recency of Movement	DESCRIPTION	
				ON LAND	OFFSHORE
Quaternary	Holocene				
	Late Quaternary				
Pre-Quaternary	Early Quaternary				
	4.5 billion (Age of Earth)				

* Quaternary now recognized as extending to 2.6 Ma (Veker and Gessamen, 2009). Quaternary faults in this map were established using the previous 1.6 Ma criterion.

APPENDIX A

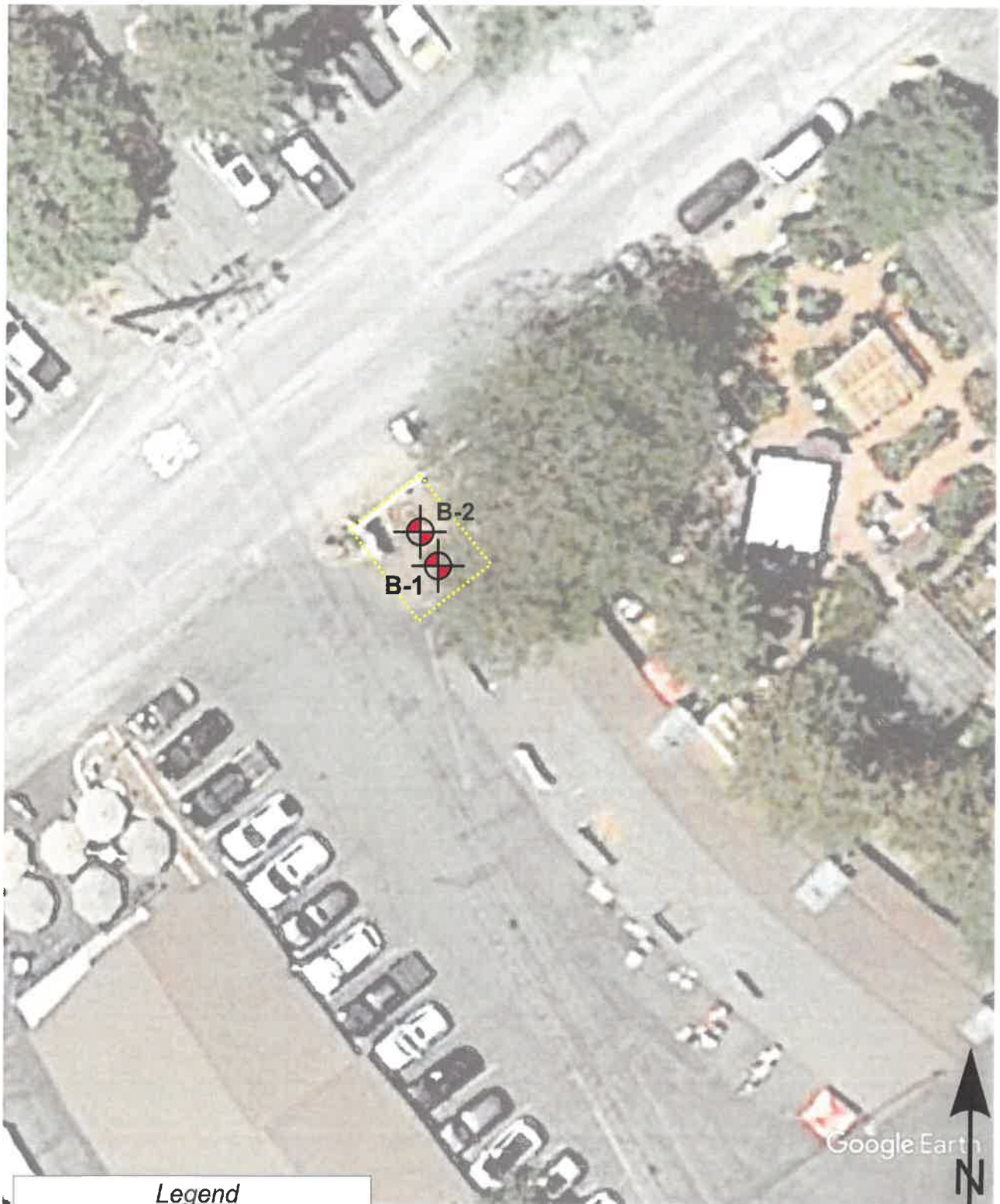


LANDMARK
Geo-Engineers and Geologists

Project No.: LP22158

Vicinity Map

Plate
A-1



Legend



Approximate Boring Location



LANDMARK
Geo-Engineers and Geologists

Project No.: LP22158

Site Map

Plate
A-2

APPENDIX B

DEPTH	FIELD				LOG OF BORING No. B-1 SHEET 1 OF 1	LABORATORY		
	SAMPLE	USCS CLASS.	BLOW COUNT	POCKET PEN. (tsf)	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL	DRY DENSITY (pcf)	MOISTURE CONTENT (% dry wt.)	OTHER TESTS
5					SAND (SP-SM): Brown, moist, dense to very dense			Passing #200 = 6.8%
			50/5"		Decomposed Granite (DG) bedrock at 6 ft.	101.5	8.7	Passing #200 = 7.1%
10								
15								
20								
25								
30								
35								
40								
45								
50								
55								
60					Total Depth = 6 ft. No groundwater encountered at time of drilling Backfilled with excavated soil			

DATE DRILLED: 6/3/22	TOTAL DEPTH: 6 feet	DEPTH TO WATER: NA
LOGGED BY: J. L.	TYPE OF BIT: Hollow Stem Auger	DIAMETER: 8 in.
SURFACE ELEVATION: Approximately 5425'	HAMMER WT.: 140 lbs.	DROP: 30 in.

PROJECT NO. LP22158	LANDMARK Geo-Engineers and Geologists	PLATE B-1
---------------------	---	-----------

DEPTH	FIELD				LOG OF BORING No. B-2 SHEET 1 OF 1	LABORATORY		
	SAMPLE	USCS CLASS.	BLOW COUNT	POCKET PEN. (tsf)	DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL	DRY DENSITY (pcf)	MOISTURE CONTENT (% dry wt.)	OTHER TESTS
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				SAND (SP-SM): Brown, moist, dense to very dense			Passing #200 = 9.4%
5					Decomposed Granite (DG) bedrock at 2.5 ft.			
6								
7								
8								
9								
10								
11								
12								
13								
14								
15								
16								
17								
18								
19								
20								
21								
22								
23								
24								
25								
26								
27								
28								
29								
30								
31								
32								
33								
34								
35								
36								
37								
38								
39								
40								
41								
42								
43								
44								
45								
46								
47								
48								
49								
50								
51								
52								
53								
54								
55								
56								
57								
58								
59								
60								

Total Depth = 2.5 ft.
 No groundwater encountered at time of drilling
 Backfilled with excavated soil

DATE DRILLED: 6/3/22	TOTAL DEPTH: 2.5 feet	DEPTH TO WATER: NA
LOGGED BY: J. L.	TYPE OF BIT: Hollow Stem Auger	DIAMETER: 8 in.
SURFACE ELEVATION: Approximately 5425'	HAMMER WT.: 140 lbs.	DROP: 30 in.









PROJECT NO. LP22158	LANDMARK Geo-Engineers and Geologists	PLATE B-2
---------------------	---	-----------








DEFINITION OF TERMS

PRIMARY DIVISIONS

SYMBOLS

SECONDARY DIVISIONS

Coarse grained soils More than half of material is larger than No. 200 sieve	Gravels	Clean gravels (less than 5% fines)		GW	Well graded gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines
				GP	Poorly graded gravels, or gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines
		Gravel with fines		GM	Silty gravels, gravel-sand-silt mixtures, non-plastic fines
				GC	Clayey gravels, gravel-sand-clay mixtures, plastic fines
	Sands	Clean sands (less than 5% fines)		SW	Well graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines
				SP	Poorly graded sands or gravelly sands, little or no fines
		Sands with fines		SM	Silty sands, sand-silt mixtures, non-plastic fines
				SC	Clayey sands, sand-clay mixtures, plastic fines

Fine grained soils More than half of material is smaller than No. 200 sieve	Silts and clays			ML	Inorganic silts, clayey silts with slight plasticity
	Liquid limit is less than 50%		CL	Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly, sandy, or lean clays	
			OL	Organic silts and organic clays of low plasticity	
	Silts and clays			MH	Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous silty soils, elastic silts
	Liquid limit is more than 50%		CH	Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays	
			OH	Organic clays of medium to high plasticity, organic silts	
Highly organic soils			PT	Peat and other highly organic soils	

GRAIN SIZES

Silts and Clays	Sand			Gravel		Cobbles	Boulders
	Fine	Medium	Coarse	Fine	Coarse		
	200	40	10	4	3/4"	3"	12"
US Standard Series Sieve				Clear Square Openings			

Sands, Gravels, etc.	Blows/ft. *
Very Loose	0-4
Loose	4-10
Medium Dense	10-30
Dense	30-50
Very Dense	Over 50

Clays & Plastic Silts	Strength **	Blows/ft. *
Very Soft	0-0.25	0-2
Soft	0.25-0.5	2-4
Firm	0.5-1.0	4-8
Stiff	1.0-2.0	8-16
Very Stiff	2.0-4.0	16-32
Hard	Over 4.0	Over 32

* Number of blows of 140 lb. hammer falling 30 inches to drive a 2 inch O.D. (1 3/8 in. I.D.) split spoon (ASTM D1586).

** Unconfined compressive strength in tons/s.f. as determined by laboratory testing or approximated by the Standard Penetration Test (ASTM D1586), Pocket Penetrometer, Torvane, or visual observation.

Type of Samples:



Ring Sample



Standard Penetration Test



Shelby Tube



Bulk (Bag) Sample

Drilling Notes:

1. Sampling and Blow Counts

Ring Sampler - Number of blows per foot of a 140 lb. hammer falling 30 inches.

Standard Penetration Test - Number of blows per foot.

Shelby Tube - Three (3) inch nominal diameter tube hydraulically pushed.

2. P. P. = Pocket Penetrometer (tons/s.f.).

3. NR = No recovery.

4. GWT = Ground Water Table observed @ specified time.

LANDMARK
Geo-Engineers and Geologists

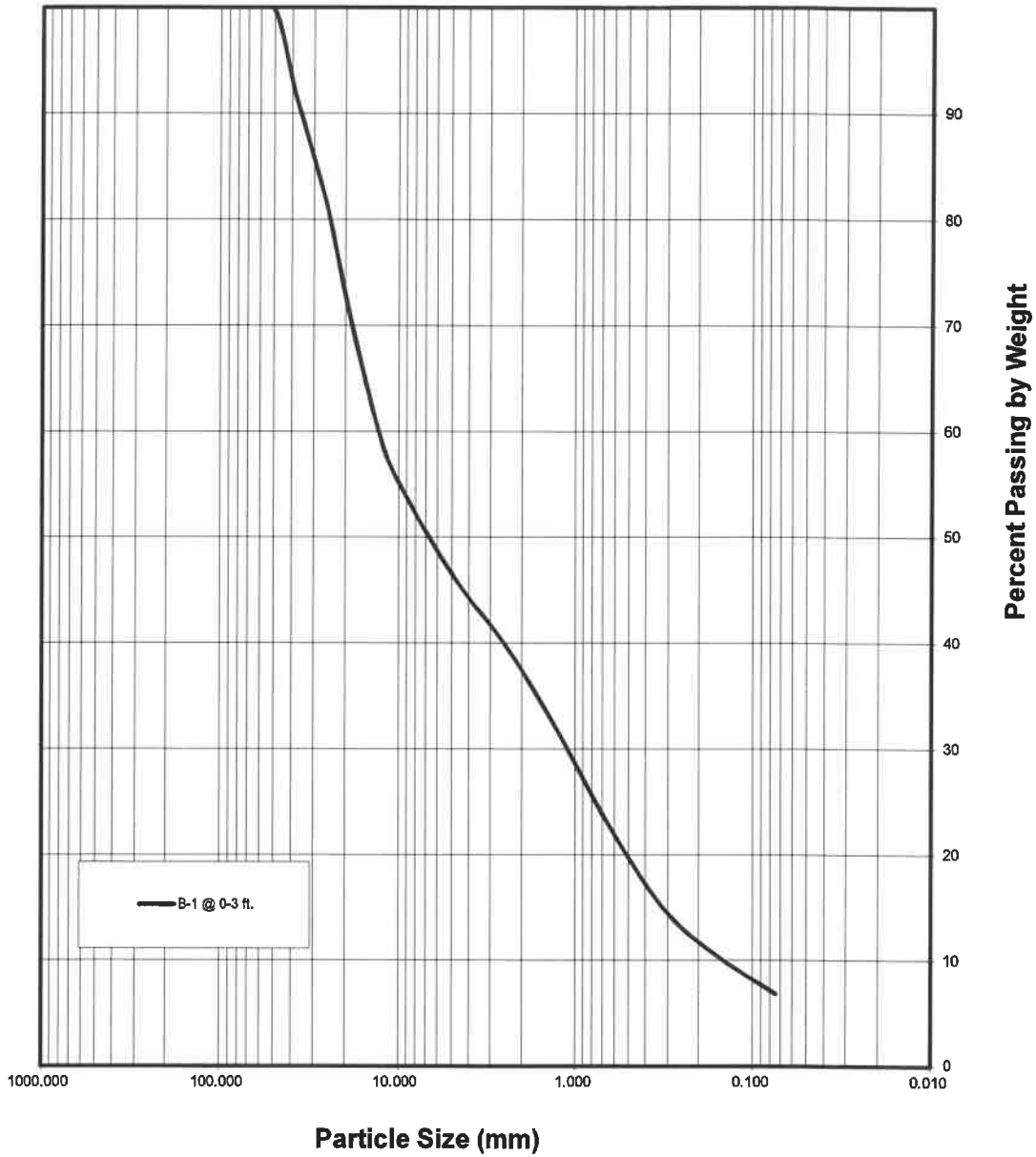
Project No. LP22158

Key to Logs

Plate
B-3

APPENDIX C

SIEVE ANALYSIS					
Cobbles and Boulders	Gravel		Sand		
	Coarse	Fine	Coarse	Medium	Fine
					Silt and Clay



LANDMARK
Geo-Engineers and Geologists

Project No.: LP22158

Grain Size Analysis

Plate
C-1

LANDMARK CONSULTANTS, INC.

CLIENT: County of Riverside
PROJECT: New Public Restroom Facility - Idyllwild, CA
JOB No.: LP22158
DATE: 07/06/22

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

Boring:	B-1	Caltrans
Sample Depth, ft:	0-3	Method
pH:	7.02	643
Electrical Conductivity (mmhos):	--	424
Resistivity (ohm-cm):	10,500	643
Chloride (Cl), ppm:	80	422
Sulfate (SO₄), ppm:	1,765	417

General Guidelines for Soil Corrosivity

Material Affected	Chemical Agent	Amount in Soil (ppm)	Degree of Corrosivity
Concrete	Soluble Sulfates	0 - 1,000	Low
		1,000 - 2,000	Moderate
		2,000 - 20,000	Severe
		> 20,000	Very Severe
Normal Grade Steel	Soluble Chlorides	0 - 200	Low
		200 - 700	Moderate
		700 - 1,500	Severe
		> 1,500	Very Severe
Normal Grade Steel	Resistivity	1 - 1,000	Very Severe
		1,000 - 2,000	Severe
		2,000 - 10,000	Moderate
		> 10,000	Low



Project No.: LP22158

**Selected Chemical
Test Results**

**Plate
C-2**

APPENDIX D

CASE 2

CASE 1



NOT TO SCALE

NOTES:

- 3" MIN. AC
(SEE NOTE 1)



CASE 3

Design Guidelines for Idyllwild Downtown Historic District



Claudius Lee Emerson's vision for Idyllwild circa 1928

County of Riverside
June 6, 2012

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Riverside County Board of Supervisors

Bob Buster, District 1
John F. Tavaglione, District 2
Jeff Stone, District 3
John J. Benoit, District 4
Marion Ashley, District 5

Idyllwild Downtown Historic District Design Guidelines Review Committee

Keith Herron, County Historic Preservation Officer
Kristi Lovelady, Riverside County Planning Department

Project Consultant

Casey Tibbet, M.A.
LSA Associates, Inc.
1500 Iowa Avenue, Suite 200
Riverside, California 92507

Special Thanks

Carolyn Sims Luna, Riverside County Planning Director
Jerry Jolliffe, Deputy Planning Director (ret.)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS	i
TABLE OF FIGURES	ii
APPENDICES	iii
PART 1: GENERAL INFORMATION.....	1
1.1: INTRODUCTION.....	1
1.2: PURPOSE OF THE DESIGN GUIDELINES	3
PART 2: HISTORIC DISTRICT ALTERATION PERMIT	4
2.1: PURPOSE	4
2.2: ALTERATION PERMIT PROCESS.....	4
2.2.1: Riverside County Regional Park and Open-Space District General Manager.....	4
2.2.2: Local Review Board (LRB).....	6
2.3: PROJECTS REQUIRING REVIEW	6
2.4: PROJECTS THAT ARE EXEMPT FROM REVIEW	6
PART 3: DESIGN GUIDELINES	8
3.1: ROOFS	8
3.1.1: Guidelines	8
3.2: EXTERIOR WALL SIDING	9
3.2.1: Guidelines	10
3.2.2: Examples of Siding.....	11
3.3: WINDOWS, DOORS AND STOREFRONTS	12
3.3.1: Guidelines	13
3.3.2: Examples of Windows	13
3.4: PORCHES, DECKS AND BALCONIES.....	14
3.4.1: Guidelines	14
3.5: FENCES AND WALLS.....	15
3.5.1: Guidelines	16
3.5.2: Examples of Fences	17
3.6: ADDITIONS TO CONTRIBUTORS	18
3.6.1: Guidelines	18
3.7: COMMERCIAL CONVERSIONS AND TENANT IMPROVEMENTS.....	19
3.7.1: Guidelines	19
3.8: SIGNS	20
3.8.1: Guidelines	21
3.9: LIGHTING.....	21
3.9.1: Guidelines	23
3.10: DRIVEWAYS AND OFF-STREET PARKING	23

3.10.1: Guidelines	24
3.11: GARAGES AND ACCESSORY STRUCTURES	24
3.11.1: Guidelines	25
3.12: MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT AND ACCESSORIES	25
3.12.1: Guidelines	25
3.13: LANDSCAPING AND RELATED FEATURES	26
3.13.1: Guidelines	27
3.14: PUBLIC RIGHTS-OF-WAY	27
3.14.1: Guidelines	30
3.15: SUSTAINABILITY AND ENERGY RETROFIT	30
3.15.1: Guidelines	30
3.16: RELOCATION OR DEMOLITION	31
PART 4: OTHER CONSIDERATIONS	32
4.1: RESTORATION AND RECONSTRUCTION	32
4.1.1: Guidelines	32
4.2: INFILL CONSTRUCTION	33
4.2.1: Height, Mass, and Scale	33
4.2.2: Style	33
4.2.3: Materials, Texture, and Color	33
4.2.4: Roof Shapes and Materials	33
4.2.5: Spacing, Setback, and Location	33
4.2.6: Site Features and Landscape	34
4.3: DUTY TO MAINTAIN	34

TABLE OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Idyllwild Downtown Historic District Map	2
Figure 2: Historic District Alteration Permit Process Flowchart	5
Figure 3: Gable roof	8
Figure 4: Hip roof	8
Figure 5: A-frame	8
Figure 6: Asphalt shingles	8
Figure 7: Wood shake shingles	8
Figure 8: Metal shingles	8
Figure 9: Wood shingle siding	9
Figure 10: Board-and-batten wood siding	9
Figure 11: Log cabin exterior	10
Figure 12: Split log	10
Figure 13: Alterations to exterior siding	10
Figure 14: Types of siding	11
Figure 15: Windows. Double-hung (left) and casement (right)	12
Figure 16: Original, wood-framed double-hung windows with muntins	12
Figure 17: Modern windows with simulated muntins	12
Figure 18: Solid wood door	12
Figure 19: Wood and glass door	12

Figure 20: Commercial storefront with fixed windows and wood and glass door.	13
Figure 21: Types of windows	13
Figure 22: Porch with unpeeled logs.....	14
Figure 23: Deck.....	14
Figure 24: Balcony.....	14
Figure 25: Acceptable patio enclosure.....	15
Figure 26: Rustic rail fence.....	16
Figure 27: Unobtrusive wire fence.....	16
Figure 28: Two types of walls: concrete and rock	16
Figure 29: Types of fences.....	17
Figure 30: Acceptable addition	18
Figure 31: Alterations that have gained historic significance	18
Figure 32: Examples of preferred sign types	20
Figure 33: Example of preferred lighting	21
Figure 34: Examples of preferred fixtures	22
Figure 35: Examples of lights in the district that are discouraged	22
Figure 36: Examples of light fixtures that are discouraged	22
Figure 37: Example of storefront parking.....	23
Figure 38: Retail store and inn.....	24
Figure 39: Accessory structures.....	24
Figure 40: Exposed propane tank.....	25
Figure 41: Screened propane tank.....	25
Figure 42: Informal, native landscaping	26
Figure 43: Rock-lined, gravel pathway.....	26
Figure 44: Incorporation of natural features (boulder)	27
Figure 45: State Route 243 streetscape	28
Figure 46: Pedestrian on Village Center Drive	28
Figure 47: Pedestrians on blind curve.....	29
Figure 48: Street sign	29
Figure 49: Historic District Identification Sign	29

APPENDICES

A: HISTORICAL OVERVIEW

B: IDYLLWILD DOWNTOWN HISTORIC DISTRICT

C: SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR’S STANDARDS FOR THE TREATMENT OF HISTORIC
PROPERTIES

D: ACCESSIBILITY CONSIDERATIONS

E: DUTY TO MAINTAIN

F: BENEFITS OF PRESERVATION

PART 1: GENERAL INFORMATION

1.1: INTRODUCTION

The Idyllwild Downtown Historic District Design Guidelines (Design Guidelines) are part of a three-year effort to overhaul the process of designating historic districts in Riverside County. The original County ordinance creating historic districts (Ordinance No. 578) was adopted on October 23, 1979. In 1981, the Old Town Temecula Historic District became the first and only historic district designated under Ordinance 578. However, the City of Temecula incorporated in 1989, leaving no designated historic districts in the unincorporated area of Riverside County.

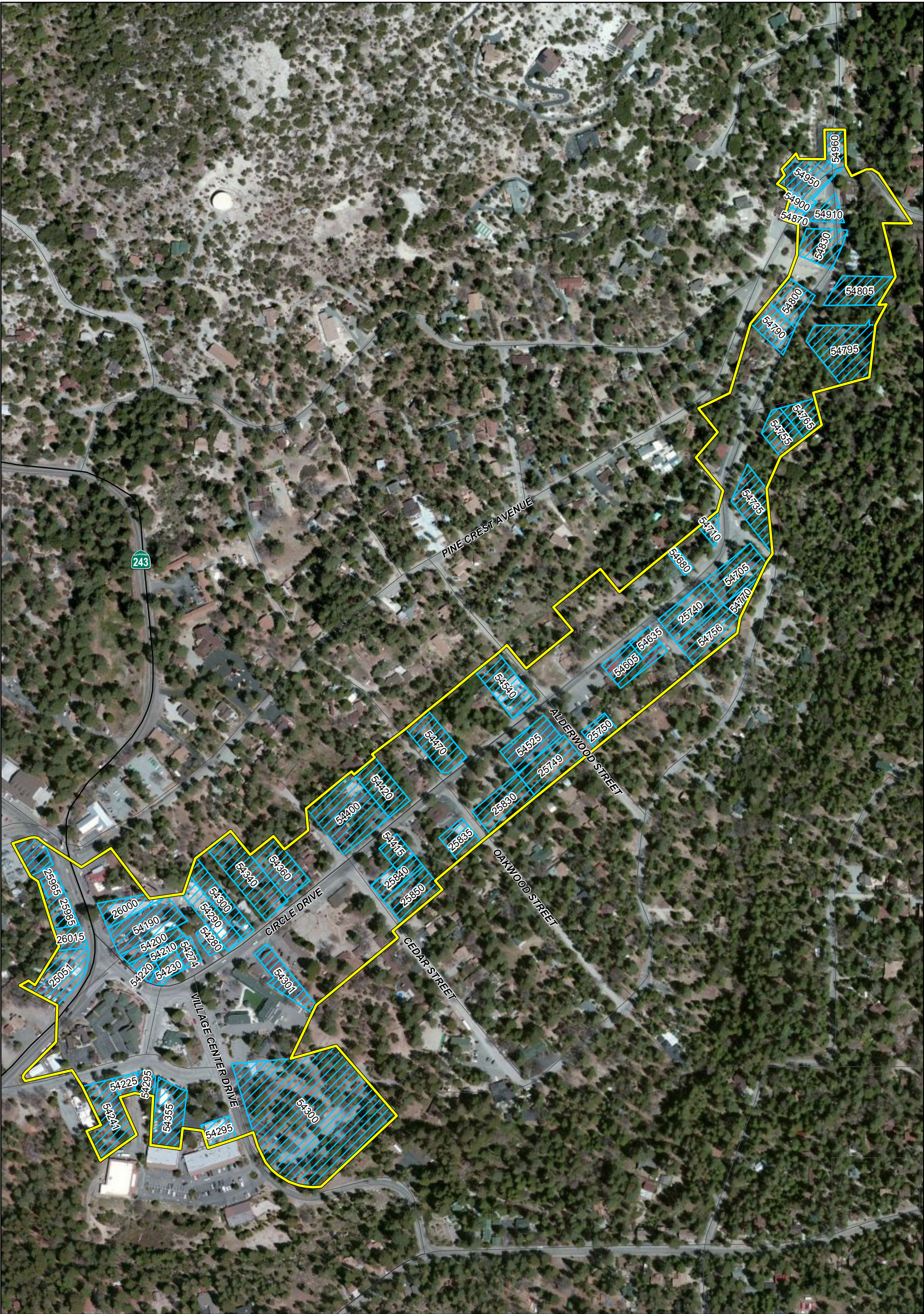
In 2008, County Supervisor Jeff Stone became concerned about the burden of blanket code requirements and strict Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance on the character of the Idyllwild community and consulted with County staff about the possibility of historic district status for Idyllwild. In late 2008, the Riverside County Planning Department began to investigate the potential for a historic district in this small mountain community. The investigation involved exploratory contact with the community and sought input from the County Historic Preservation Officer (HPO) and County Archaeologist. As a result of these efforts, a bid was put out to conduct a formal historic resources survey of the downtown area in Idyllwild.

In 2009, LSA Associates, Inc (LSA) was hired to conduct a survey of 263 properties comprising the commercial core of Idyllwild.¹ As part of that project, LSA prepared a communitywide historic context statement and presented the survey results at two community meetings (refer to Appendices A and B for summary information about the history and significance of Idyllwild). As a result of the survey, a locally eligible historic district consisting of 103 properties was identified. Of those 103 properties, 57 were identified as resources contributing to the significance of the historic district (contributors) and 46 were identified as resources not contributing to the significance of the district (non-contributors). The period of significance was defined as 1915 to 1965, which includes both the early and post-World War II patterns of development.

During 2010, the Planning Department worked with the County HPO to revise County Ordinance No. 578. The primary changes involved the addition of an Alteration Permit process for contributing resources (contributors) in designated historic districts and the provision of a Local Review Board (LRB) to review and comment on Alteration Permit applications, which are ultimately approved by the County Planning Director. The changes to Ordinance No. 578 were adopted on January 11, 2011, and became effective on February 10, 2011.

With the amended local ordinance in place, the County HPO and Planning Department turned their attention to officially designating the historic district that was identified by LSA in 2009. On July 12, 2011, the County Board of Supervisors passed resolution 2011-178 designating the Idyllwild Downtown Historic District (Historic District; Figure 1). The Design Guidelines presented here (refer to Part 3) represent the next step in the process to identify, designate, and preserve the unique historic character of Idyllwild's commercial core.

¹ The Historic Resources Survey for the Idyllwild Commercial Corridor, which was prepared by LSA in 2009, is available for review at the Riverside County Regional Park and Open-Space District.



1.2: PURPOSE OF THE DESIGN GUIDELINES

The purpose of these guidelines is to inform and guide the various individuals, groups, and public agencies who want to make improvements or alterations to properties that are contributors to the Idyllwild Downtown Historic District. These guidelines are intended to:

- Offer clear advice for the preservation and maintenance of the cultural landscape that makes the district significant;
- Provide established criteria that ensure the process of review is fair and consistent;
- Form the basis for the analysis of potential project impacts on the significance of the district; and
- Serve as a threshold for avoiding adverse impacts to the district.

These Design Guidelines do not provide a comprehensive manual for the restoration, rehabilitation, or repair of historic properties. Extensive guidance with detailed technical information is available from many other sources including the National Parks Service Technical Preservation Series available for free on the internet (<http://www.nps.gov/tps>) and subscription publications such as the *Old House Journal* (<http://www.oldhousejournal.com>).

It should also be noted that the Design Guidelines by themselves do not constitute a set of mandatory standards, but are intended to support a consistent and fair interpretation of mandatory criteria for alterations as outlined in Riverside County Ordinance No. 578 and other applicable County, State, and Federal regulations. The guidelines provided in this document are tailored to address the historic character and integrity considerations specific to the Idyllwild Downtown Historic District.

PART 2: HISTORIC DISTRICT ALTERATION PERMIT

2.1: PURPOSE

The Historic District Alteration Permit (Alteration Permit) process is intended to ensure that changes to the historic district are compatible with the spirit and character of the district. In this process, project plans are examined and evaluated before approvals and permits are granted and work is begun (Figure 2). The Riverside County Regional Park and Open-Space District General Manager (General Manager) and Local Review Board (LRB) have the responsibility of reviewing and commenting on Alteration Permit applications and assisting property owners and project proponents with designing projects that enhance the district's historic character and achieve the project's goals.

The process applies only to properties that are listed as contributors to the Historic District. It does not *require* property owners to make changes to their properties and it does not apply to routine maintenance that does not affect the property's exterior appearance. However, exterior alterations, new construction, demolition, significant landscape changes, or relocation of buildings may be subject to the Alteration Permit process. The Alteration Permit process may run concurrently with other applicable land use permits under Ordinance No. 348.

2.2: ALTERATION PERMIT PROCESS

The following provides a general summary of the Alteration Permit process, which is outlined in detail in Riverside County Ordinance 578. Variations of the process may be applied to specific projects as appropriate.

When determining whether a project requires an Alteration Permit, in compliance with Ordinance 578 Section 3.1, the Building Official will refer demolition and building permit applications for properties within historic districts to the General Manager. The General Manager has 30 days within which to provide a written determination to the Building Official. If an Alteration Permit is required, an Alteration Permit application, along with the prevailing fee, is submitted to the County Planning Department. The Planning Director then sends copies of the application to both the General Manager and the Local Review Board (LRB). Each entity has 60 days to provide comments on the application to the Planning Director. The Planning Director makes the final decision regarding the Alteration Permit.

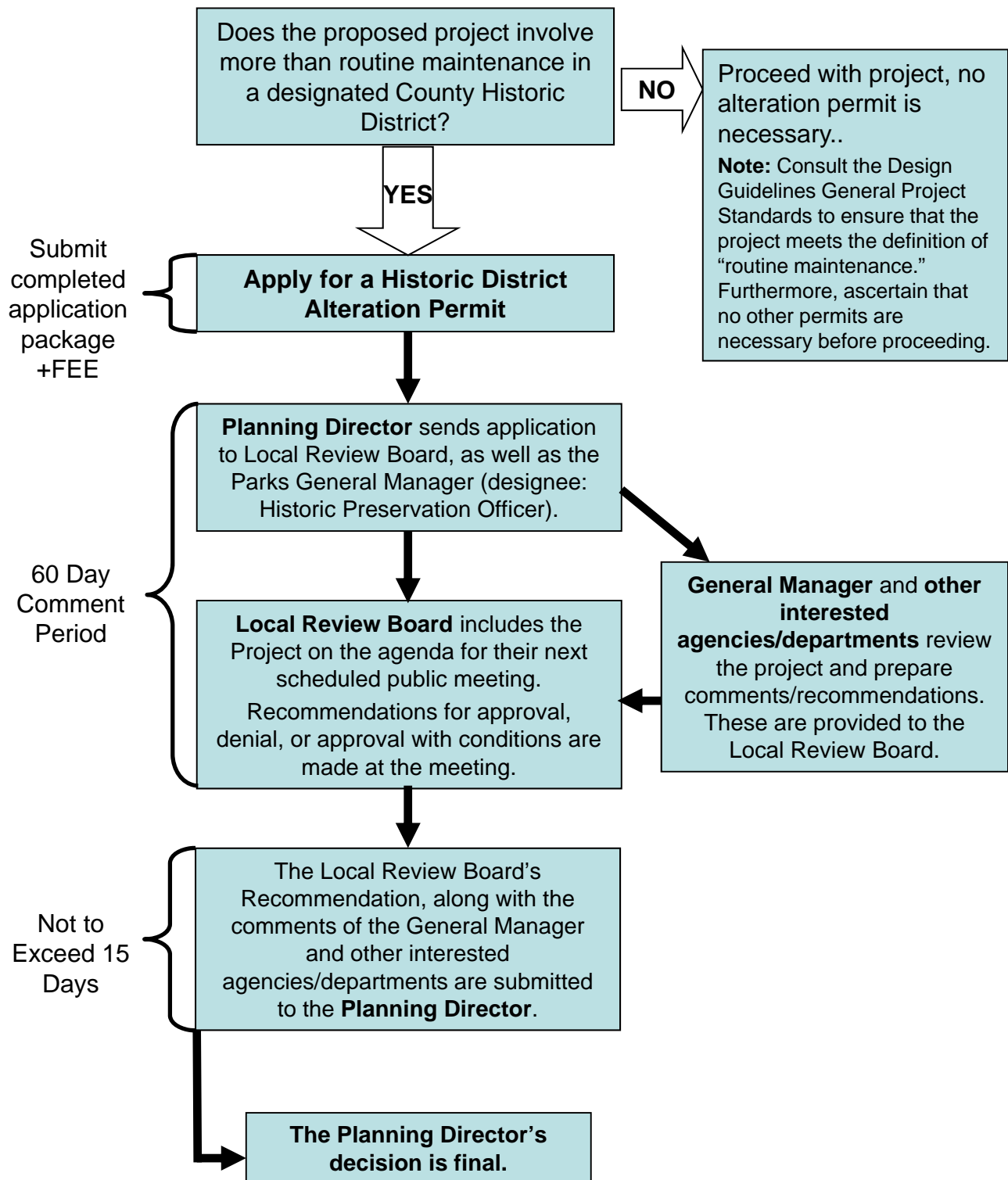
2.2.1: Riverside County Regional Park and Open-Space District General Manager

The General Manager or his/her designee (typically the Historic Preservation Office [HPO]) participates in the Alteration Permit process and serves as the public's main point of contact for information relative to historic districts and related design guidelines. The General Manager is a professionally qualified staff member who can provide assistance and informal guidance regarding preferred project designs and acceptable alternatives as they relate to historic preservation.

The General Manager has 60 days to comment on the Alteration Permit application before the Planning Director makes a decision. When considering an application, the General Manager may recommend to the Planning Director approval, denial, or approval with conditions.

In the future, the General Manager may have the authority to provide administrative approval of Alteration Permit applications that clearly meet the applicable design guidelines and, if appropriate, the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* (refer to Appendix C).

Historic District Alteration Permit Flowchart



2.2.2: Local Review Board (LRB)

The LRB meets monthly and is composed of five members who are appointed by the County Board of Supervisors. Each member must reside within three miles of the Historic District. The LRB has 60 days to comment on the Alteration Permit application before the Planning Director makes a decision. The LRB reviews the Alteration Permit at a public meeting for which, according to the Brown Act, an agenda containing a brief general description of each matter to be considered must be posted at least 72 hours prior to the meeting. When considering an application, the LRB may decide to recommend to the Planning Director approval, denial, or approval with conditions. They may also decide to continue the case in order to obtain additional information as long as it is within the 60-day review period. The Planning Director's decision on the Alteration Permit application is final.

2.3: PROJECTS REQUIRING REVIEW

Ordinance 578, Section 1.4.C defines an alteration as “any of the following:

- (1) Any act or process which changes or modifies one or more of the exterior architectural features of an existing building, structure or façade within the boundaries of a Historic Preservation District including, but not limited to, modifications of architectural details or visual characteristics such as paint color and surface texture; or
- (2) The placement or removal of any exterior objects such as signs, plaques, light fixtures, street furniture, walls, fences, steps, plantings and landscape accessories affecting the exterior visual qualities of an existing building, structure or façade within the boundaries of a Historic Preservation District.”

When the above types of alterations are proposed to contributors, an Alteration Permit may be required. This includes (but is not limited to) alterations to windows, doors, porches, siding, front setbacks, signage, storefronts, roofs, and historical decorative features. It also includes additions, new construction, relocation, and demolition.

2.4: PROJECTS THAT ARE EXEMPT FROM REVIEW

In general, routine property maintenance as described below does not require an Alteration Permit.

Ordinance 578 Section 1.4.C.3 states that “Alteration does not include maintenance of gardens or ordinary maintenance and repair of an existing building, structure or façade within the boundaries of a Historic Preservation District needed to correct any deterioration, decay of, or damage to a building, structure or façade or any part thereof in order to restore same as nearly as practical to its condition prior to such deterioration, decay, or damage.”

Examples of routine maintenance include electrical repairs, plumbing, repair of windows (without replacement), repair/replacement of siding (with the same material and appearance), re-painting previously painted surfaces, landscape maintenance, and interior repair/maintenance.

Projects that only affect non-contributing resources (non-contributors) to the Historic District are also exempt from review. However, owners of non-contributors are encouraged to review and use these Design Guidelines in ways that restore lost integrity, enhance the character of the Historic District, and effect positive changes in the commercial core of Idyllwild.

Contact the Riverside County Regional Park and Open-Space District General Manager for general advice and/or clarification and to determine whether your project requires an Alteration Permit.

PART 3: DESIGN GUIDELINES¹

3.1: ROOFS

The roof form and pitch is a character-defining feature of most of the contributors to the Historic District. The weight of winter snow requires even commercial buildings in the district to have some roof pitch. Typical roof forms are gable and hipped that are, in some cases, steep enough to evoke an “alpine” character (Figures 3 and 4). The few A-frame buildings in the district further emphasize the mountain-top character of the community and represent a whimsical adaptation of Modernism (Figure 5). These roof forms enhance the sense of place.

Although roofs in the district were historically wood shake, it is now more common to see less-combustible materials such as asphalt shingles. The preferred approach is to re-roof with wood or simulated wood shake that is treated and fire-rated to at least Class “C” by the Underwriting Laboratories (UL). Reroofing with asphalt (Figure 6) or architectural shingles is acceptable as long as the shingles mimic the pattern and colors (typically browns and grays) of wood shake shingles (Figure 7). In some cases other materials, such as prefabricated metal roofing made to resemble wood shake (Figure 8) may also be acceptable, if they comply with fire safety codes and are compatible with the historic character of the building.

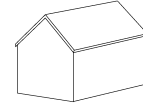


Figure 3: Gable roof

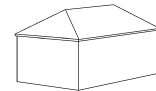


Figure 4: Hip roof

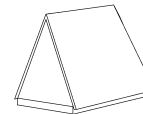


Figure 5: A-frame



Figure 6: Asphalt shingles



Figure 7: Wood shake shingles



Figure 8: Metal shingles

3.1.1: Guidelines²

1. Retain and preserve historic-period roof forms and pitches on contributors. This includes their functional and decorative features such as dormers, chimneys, and cornices.

¹ Unless otherwise noted, architectural drawings were made by Elisa Bechtel, LSA Associates, Inc.

² The roof guidelines are intended for contributors which are typically the primary building on the property. They are not intended for small accessory buildings that are not particularly visible from the public right-of-way.

2. Preferred re-roofing materials include:
 - a. Wood or simulated wood shake that is treated and fire-rated to at least Class “C” by the UL;
 - b. Asphalt, architectural, laminated, or dimensional shingles that mimic the pattern and colors (typically browns and grays) of wood shake shingles; and
 - c. Other materials, such as prefabricated metal roofing made to resemble wood shake, may be acceptable if they comply with fire safety codes and are compatible with the historic character of the building.
3. Discouraged re-roofing materials include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Clay or ceramic tile;
 - b. Corrugated metal;
 - c. Composition sheets;
 - d. Asphalt and rock; and
 - e. Slate or manufactured slate
4. If a historic roof feature is missing or in need of repair, the feature should be restored based on accurate documentation of the original feature. If documentation is not available, a new design that is compatible in scale, size, material, and color with the historic building and district may be acceptable.
5. Whenever feasible, roof-mounted equipment, such as ventilators, solar collectors, antennae, and skylights should be located out of view from the public right-of-way.

3.2: EXTERIOR WALL SIDING

The exterior wall surface of a building is typically an important character-defining feature. In Idyllwild, the dominant wall surface is wood in various patterns and configurations (Figures 9–12). Contributing buildings often use multiple types of wood siding in combination with rock/masonry on the exterior walls. Usually the walls are unpainted, allowing the natural texture and color of the siding to enhance the woodsy character of the contributors and district at large.



Figure 9: Wood shingle siding

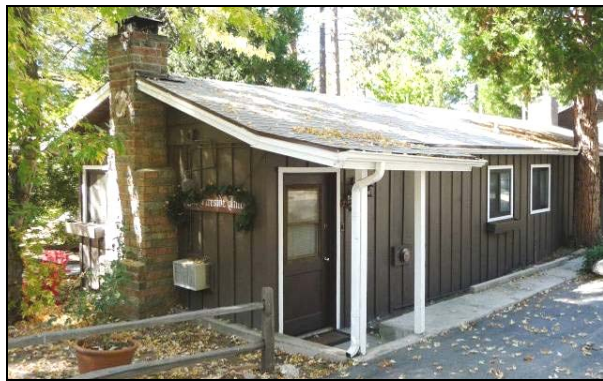


Figure 10: Board-and-batten wood siding



Figure 11: Log cabin exterior



Figure 12: Split log

Retention of the historic-period type and configuration of siding is one of the key ways to maintain the historic character and integrity of the building.

Alterations to the wall surface can profoundly change the character of a building. As demonstrated in the photograph to the right, changes to the historic-period siding, even if made to only part of the building, can compromise the integrity of the entire building (Figure 13).



Figure 13: Alterations to exterior siding

3.2.1: Guidelines

1. To the extent feasible, preserve original exterior siding.
2. If replacement siding is necessary, duplicate the original siding in material, color, and texture.
3. If only a small portion of the siding needs to be repaired or replaced, duplicate as closely as possible the existing siding in material, color, and texture.
4. Types of wood siding (Figures 9–12 and 14) that are preferred include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Shingles (painted or unpainted);
 - b. Board-and-batten siding (painted or unpainted);
 - c. Log cabin (usually unpainted); and
 - d. Split logs (painted or unpainted).
5. Other types of wood siding that may be acceptable include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Clapboard (typically painted);
 - b. Shiplap (typically painted);

- c. Dolly varden (typically painted);
 - d. Bevel (typically painted);
 - e. Tongue and groove (typically painted);
 - f. Rustic vee (typically painted); and
 - g. Channel rustic (typically painted).
6. Types of siding that are generally discouraged include, but are not limited to:
- a. Composite wood panels (e.g., T-111);
 - b. Plywood;
 - c. Vinyl;
 - d. Metal;
 - e. Asbestos shingles;
 - f. Precision block;
 - g. Liquid (spray on) siding;
 - h. Stucco; and
 - i. Cement siding.
7. Preferred accent materials/veneers include, but are not limited to:
- a. River rock (unpainted);
 - b. Fieldstone (unpainted); and
 - c. Unpainted stone or masonry that has seemingly random shapes and patterns.
8. Discouraged accent materials/veneers include, but are not limited to:
- a. Stacked stone;
 - b. Precision block; and
 - c. Stone or brick panels that have a precise geometric pattern.
9. Introducing new features in an attempt to create a false sense of historical style or development on a façade is not recommended.

3.2.2: Examples of Siding

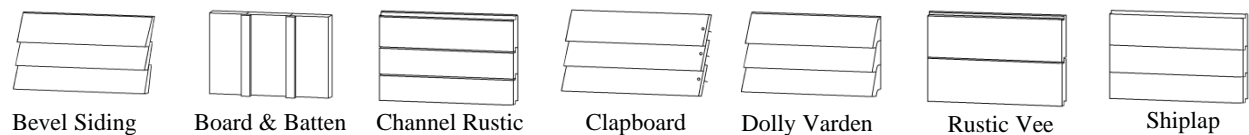


Figure 14: Types of siding

3.3: WINDOWS, DOORS AND STOREFRONTS

Windows and doors can add a significant amount of character to a building. Their shape, configuration, materials, and size help convey the style or era in which the building was constructed. Historic-period windows in the Historic District are predominantly wood-framed. Types of windows vary, but the contributing buildings that have retained their historic windows mostly have double- or single-hung windows or casement windows (Figures 15 and 16). Other types include horizontal sliding (wood- or aluminum-framed) and fixed picture windows. Non-historic replacement windows include vinyl-framed horizontal and vertical sliders with or without simulated muntins (Figure 17).

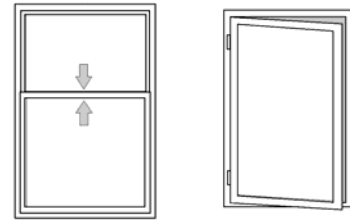


Figure 15: Windows. Double-hung (left) and casement (right)



Figure 16: Original, wood-framed double-hung windows with muntins



Figure 17: Modern windows with simulated muntins

Doors within the Historic District are generally simple in design. On residential buildings (and some commercial conversions) the doors are typically made of solid wood and may have one or more glass panels (Figures 18 and 19). A screen door may be attached to the opening in front of the door. Many commercial buildings have a storefront entrance, which generally includes large fixed windows that cover most of the façade coupled with a wood or aluminum-framed glass door (Figure 20). Older storefronts are usually wood-framed, while mid-20th century and later storefronts are often aluminum-framed. Historic-period doors and storefronts enhance the quaint, “old-timey” feel of the community.



Figure 18: Solid wood door



Figure 19: Wood and glass door



Figure 20: Commercial storefront with fixed windows and wood and glass door.

Changes to windows and doors that are not sensitive to the historic character and style of the building can significantly compromise the building's architectural integrity. Repairing the original wood windows is usually more cost-effective and sustainable than replacing them. Well-maintained wood windows can last decades (perhaps centuries) longer than vinyl replacement windows, which do not always last long enough to fully pay for their cost in energy savings. Property owners interested in reducing heat-loss and increasing energy efficiency should consider improving the building's weather stripping and insulation, particularly in the attic where as much as 30 percent of the heat is lost. Examples of various window types are shown below in Figure 21.

3.3.1: Guidelines

1. Retain and preserve historic-period windows, doors, and storefronts.
2. Whenever feasible, repair historic-period windows, doors, and storefronts.
3. If replacement of a historic-period window or door is necessary, replace it with a window or door that is the same size, materials, and design and that opens in the same way. The color should be complementary to the rest of the building.
4. Filling in historic-period openings and painting over windows is discouraged.
5. Consider weather stripping windows and doors to increase energy efficiency.
6. Introducing window and door features such as shutters, transoms, sidelights, and architectural decoration that did not historically exist on the building is discouraged.

3.3.2: Examples of Windows

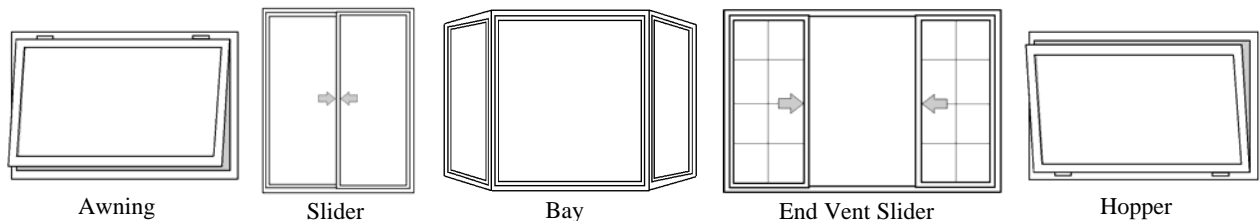


Figure 21: Types of windows

3.4: PORCHES, DECKS AND BALCONIES

Experiencing the outdoors is an important component of life in Idyllwild and outdoor living spaces such as porches, decks, and balconies are common for homes and cabins in the community (Figures 22–25). The most iconic element in this theme is the rustic front porch: a partial or full-width porch sheltered by the main roofline and supported by peeled or unpeeled logs. The rustic porch is not confined to residences. Many commercial buildings in the Historic District incorporate breezeways supported by peeled logs.

It is important to retain and preserve the historic-period materials and designs of porches, decks, and/or balconies. Adding a deck at the rear of a contributing building may be acceptable as long as it utilizes compatible materials and is not particularly visible from the street. It is worth noting that the State Historic Building Code allows some flexibility with regard to porches, balconies, and/or decks. For example, property owners may be allowed to keep banisters/railings that are lower or have bigger spaces than what is currently required. This exception allows a balance between preservation and contemporary safety standards.



Figure 22: Porch with unpeeled logs



Figure 23: Deck



Figure 24: Balcony

3.4.1: Guidelines

1. Retain and preserve historic-period porches, balconies, and decks. Key functional and decorative elements may include support structures, steps, railings, floors, and ceilings.
2. Repair and/or replacement of part or all of a historic-period porch, deck, or balcony should be as similar to the historic-period porch, deck, or balcony in material, size, and design as possible.

3. Enclosing historic-period porches, decks, or balconies is discouraged. However, if the porch, deck, or balcony proposed to be enclosed is not visible from the public right-of-way and the proposed design is compatible with the rest of the building, it may be acceptable.
4. Painting of porch, deck, and/or balcony elements that have not historically been painted is discouraged.



Figure 25: Acceptable patio enclosure

3.5: FENCES AND WALLS

Fences are somewhat common within the Historic District. Two of the most common types of fences in the Historic District are split rail and wire mesh (Figures 26 and 27). The split rail fences enhance the rustic feel of the district, while the wire fencing blends in with the landscaping, meeting the goal of enclosing space without detracting from the natural environment. Other fencing may be acceptable if it is made from compatible materials and does not obscure contributing properties from the public right-of-way.

Walls used for walkway borders and planters and as retaining walls are also fairly common within the Historic District. Historically, these typically low walls were constructed with readily available granite rocks. This tradition continues due to the ease of sourcing the rock and its links to the surrounding natural world. Natural rock is the preferred material for these types of walls when they are visible from the public right-of-way, while walls made of concrete block or poured concrete are less desirable but in some cases may be acceptable (Figure 28).



Figure 26: Rustic rail fence



Figure 27: Unobtrusive wire fence



Figure 28: Two types of walls: concrete and rock

3.5.1: Guidelines

1. Retain and preserve fences and walls that contribute to the historic character of a contributing property or the district overall.
2. Preferred fence types in the front setback and other highly visible locations include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Split rail or rail (two or three rails; wood); and
 - b. Wire mesh (uncoated or coated in a color that blends into the surroundings).
3. Other fence types that may be acceptable include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Crossbuck (wood);
 - b. Four rail (wood);
 - c. Shadowbox;
 - d. Picket (wood); and
 - e. Painted (typically muted earth tones) fences.
4. Discouraged fence types and materials in the front setback and other areas visible from the public right-of-way include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Wrought iron;

- b. Chain link;
 - c. Vinyl;
 - d. Privacy fences (no openings);
 - e. Basket weave; and
 - f. Lattice.
5. Prohibited material for fences include (County of Riverside Zoning Code, Section 18.49b):
 - a. Garage doors;
 - b. Tires;
 - c. Pallets; and
 - d. Other materials not typically used for the construction of fences.
6. Preferred materials for walls include, but are not limited to rock that is similar to that found naturally in the surrounding area. In some cases, other materials such as concrete may be acceptable.
7. Discouraged wall materials include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Brick;
 - b. Concrete block; and
 - c. Stacked stone.
8. If replacement of part or all of a fence or wall associated with a contributing property is necessary, the repair/replacement should match the original fence or wall in design, dimension, detail, texture, pattern, material, and color.
9. New fences or walls in the front setback should complement the historic character of the district in materials, design, and height.
10. Fences or walls (and plantings) along streets on corner properties that exceed 42 inches in height and are more than 65 percent solid are discouraged.

3.5.2: Examples of Fences

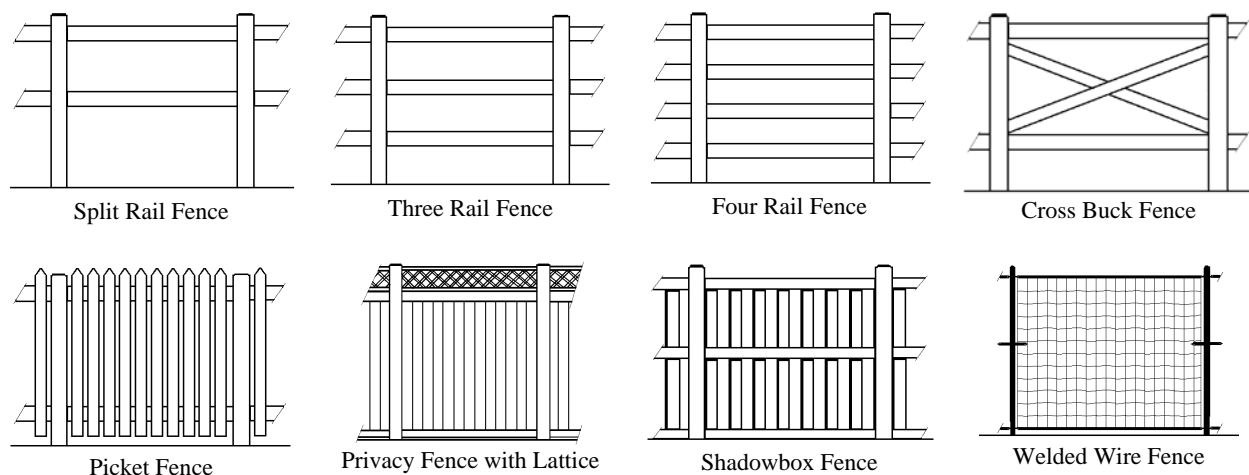


Figure 29: Types of fences

3.6: ADDITIONS TO CONTRIBUTORS

Additions to buildings are often needed to accommodate the growth of a business or family. Growth within the Historic District is generally viewed as a positive thing as long as it is accomplished in a manner that is sensitive to the historic character of the district and its contributing buildings and features (Figure 30). Over time, additions may become historically significant (Figure 31). For example, population growth in Idyllwild after World War II brought prosperity to businesses in its commercial core and the additions and expansions these businesses made contribute to the story of the community's development, which is one of the underlying reasons that the period of significance for the district extends well into the 1960s.



Figure 30: Acceptable addition



Figure 31: Alterations that have gained historic significance

Additions should be compatible with the historic materials, features, size, scale, proportion, and massing to protect the integrity of the property and its environment. However, the addition should be different enough from the historic-period building that it is clear that it is a later addition. The addition should also be constructed so that its removal will not compromise the integrity of the historic-period building. The impact of an addition can be significantly reduced by locating it on the building's least visible or least character-defining elevation and by keeping the addition deferential in scale and massing. The roofline, siding, and window openings on the addition should be compatible with the existing building.

3.6.1: Guidelines

1. Whenever feasible, additions should be located on the least visible or least character-defining elevation.
2. Additions should be deferential in scale and massing and compatible in style, materials, and appearance. However, the addition does not need to imitate the exact style of the contributing building, but rather should reference its design qualities without distracting from it. The contributing building should remain the primary focal point.
3. Additions should be constructed in a manner that, if removed, would not damage the historic-period building.
4. Additions should retain the historic character of the property, including spatial relationships, viewsheds, natural features such as trees, and the relationship of the contributing building to the street and its setting.

5. If the addition is proposed to be constructed on previously undisturbed ground, the County Archaeologist should be consulted to determine whether the addition has the potential to affect an archaeological site.

3.7: COMMERCIAL CONVERSIONS AND TENANT IMPROVEMENTS

Because the Historic District represents the commercial core of the community, it is reasonable to assume that some residential properties within the district will be converted to commercial uses in the future. If done with sensitivity to the original residential scale, design, and appearance, commercial conversions will not diminish the integrity of the district. Designing a conversion that retains some of the residential character and features can provide a homey feel in a new office or store. For example, a fireplace can help define a new dining room in a restaurant or a cozy seating area in a bookstore.

Because building codes differ between residential and commercial uses, some things must necessarily change in order to accommodate the conversion. Many of these will be interior changes. For example, places where food is prepared and sold (such as restaurants and delis) may require more kitchen space than what is provided in the typical home. In some cases, doorways may need to be widened and additional exits added to comply with fire codes for increased occupancy. In addition, ADA requirements, which may include exterior changes such as installation of ramps, will apply to any new public or quasi-public uses. In order to minimize potential adverse changes to the historic significance of a contributing building and the district as a whole, the State Historic Building Code should be utilized whenever possible (refer to Appendix D for more information).

Another type of project that is typical in commercial areas is the tenant improvement project. These occur when a new business moves into an existing commercial space. Many new tenants want to make changes to the interior or exterior of the building in order to market their business or to better accommodate their business and/or customers. Exterior improvements, including additions, are addressed in other sections of these guidelines and interior improvements are generally not subject to the Alteration Permit process. However, if a property owner wishes to make use of the State Historic Building Code, interior plans should be submitted to the General Manager for assistance in determining applicable exceptions to standard building code requirements.

3.7.1: Guidelines

1. Conversions from residential to commercial use within the Historic District are acceptable provided they are appropriately zoned and meet all applicable Zoning Code requirements (contact the County Planning Department for more information).
2. The design of a conversion project should preserve as much of the historical character and character-defining features of the contributing building as possible. New storefronts should use the existing façade windows and doors to the extent feasible, with new windows and doorways made to complement the existing historic materials and styles. If possible, new entrances or exits should be added on secondary elevations that are less visible from the public right-of-way. New exterior mechanical equipment should be screened from view of the public right-of-way (refer to Section 3.12 Mechanical Equipment and Accessories).
3. If possible, retention of landscaping and hardscape features associated with the contributing building should be retained (refer to Section 3.13 Landscaping and Related Features).
4. If the conversion involves an exterior addition or new accessory structures, the guidelines provided in Section 3.6 Additions to Contributors and Section 3.11 Garages and Accessory Structures should be followed.

5. When complying with ADA requirements, avoid altering or destroying historic materials or spaces. If possible, minimize the visibility of ramps and any other new construction from the public right-of-way and design them to be compatible in character, materials, scale, proportion, and finish with the contributing building.
6. If possible, historic-period interior spaces and features that are indicative of the building's original use should be retained.
7. The State Historic Building Code should be utilized whenever possible to preserve character-defining features and minimize modern intrusions.

3.8: SIGNS

Historic signage is a rarity in the Historic District. Most buildings have been through multiple tenants over the past half-century or have sustained periodic remodeling. However, contemporary signage has the ability to either enhance or detract from the district. The maintenance of compatible signs throughout the district is key to balancing commerce with the historic character of the community. This relationship has largely been embraced by the community and many retail and commercial businesses have voluntarily adopted signage that fits with the natural environment, is modestly illuminated, and reflects the artistic and woodsy flavor of the community (Figure 32). The trend toward carved or engraved wooden signs with spot lighting should be encouraged.



Figure 32: Examples of preferred sign types

There are also some programmatic signs in Idyllwild. Programmatic signs are a whimsical commercial style that depicts the items for sale, services provided, or caricatures something about the surrounding environment. Well-known examples include roadside eateries shaped like the food they sell or Western false-front façades in an Old West-themed area. In Idyllwild, the use of chalet-style details in mid-20th century buildings can be viewed as programmatic since the intent is at least in part to evoke a sense of alpine fantasy. The district also has a few obviously programmatic signs. Programmatic signage is acceptable within the district so long as it does not overwhelm the façade of a contributing building or otherwise disrupt the character of historic storefronts.

Currently, many of the signs in the Historic District do not appear to comply with the Zoning Code (Article 19 Advertising Regulations, Section 19.4 On-Site Advertising Structures and Signs). For example, the Article 19 prohibits roof mounted signs. Until Article 19 can be amended to include specific provisions for Historic Districts, new signs must comply with Article 19, but should be designed in ways that as much as possible enhance the character of the district.

3.8.1: Guidelines

1. Retain historic-period signs that contribute to the historic character of the contributing building or the district.
2. New signage should meet the requirements of Article 19 of the Zoning Code and, to the extent possible, be compatible in material, size, color, scale, and character with the contributing building and district. Use of wood is encouraged.
3. Signage that obscures part of a building façade and/or storefront is discouraged.
4. Programmatic signage is acceptable as long as it does not overwhelm or obscure the character-defining features of any contributing building or the district.
5. Lighting for signs must comply with the requirements of Article 19 of the Zoning Code. In general, it should be hooded and focused directly on the sign to reduce light pollution and glare.
6. External illumination is preferred (refer to Section 3.9 Lighting).
7. New signs should be designed so that they can be removed without damaging any of the historic material or character of the contributing building or feature.

3.9: LIGHTING

As a mountain community nestled in the forest away from city lights, Idyllwild can boast a night sky full of thousands of visible stars. This is part of the charm of the community and enhances the woodsy character and small town feel of the area. Although exterior lighting is an important way-finding and safety consideration, it should be installed and maintained in a manner that limits light pollution that could obscure the night sky and detract from the historic character of the district. Lights that are fully shielded, directed downward or focused on a specific sign or feature, and that provide only the required amount of light that is needed for safety are preferred (Figures 33 and 34). In addition, property owners should consider installing motion sensors on exterior lights to further minimize light and glare and save energy.

Based on information found in the International Dark Sky Association Model Lighting Ordinance, the types of lights shown below (Figure 35) are discouraged since they tend to contribute to glare, light pollution, and night sky degradation. Some of these are currently being used in the district (Figure 36) and should eventually be replaced with fully shielded lighting.



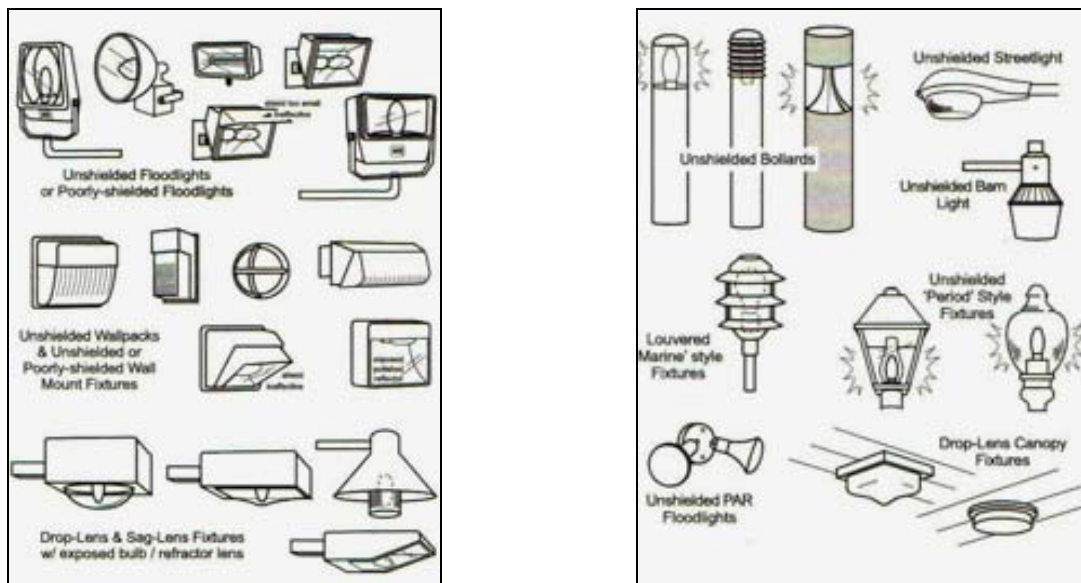
Figure 33: Example of preferred lighting



Figure 34: Examples of preferred fixtures¹



Figure 35: Examples of lights in the district that are discouraged



1. Figure 36: Examples of light fixtures that are discouraged²

¹ Source: Susan Harder, Acceptable and Unacceptable Lighting Fixtures for East Hampton, New York, accessed online in February 2012 at: <http://changeobserver.designobserver.com/feature/a-thousand-points-on-light-part-i/10457/>

² Ibid.

3.9.1: Guidelines

1. Retain and preserve exterior light fixtures that contribute to the historic character of a contributing building, site, or streetscape.
2. If replacement of a missing or deteriorated historic exterior lighting feature is necessary, replace it with one that is similar in appearance, material, and scale to the original.
3. As necessary, encourage the replacement of lights that contribute to light pollution, glare, and night sky degradation with lower-impact lighting that is shielded and illuminates only the intended subject or area.
4. Limit the introduction of new exterior lighting to the minimum required for way-finding and security.
5. New lighting should be compatible with the human scale. Lights on standard-height utility poles are discouraged.
6. The use of light fixtures that create a false historical appearance is discouraged.
7. Indiscriminate lighting and/or over-illumination of façades and storefronts is discouraged.

3.10: DRIVEWAYS AND OFF-STREET PARKING

Driveways and off-street parking are found throughout the district and are critical to ensuring access to commercial properties. The shortage of off-street parking is particularly acute during summer and winter tourist seasons. One of the recommended goals for enhancing the character of the Historic District is to provide parking that meets Zoning Code and ADA requirements, but does not significantly obstruct the view of storefronts and signage as illustrated in Figure 37.



Figure 37: Example of storefront parking

In many cases, off-street parking is provided behind stores and accessed from a driveway and this approach should be encouraged wherever possible. However, site topography and accessibility issues make it difficult for all properties to accommodate this type of parking; therefore, storefront parking is likely to continue and even increase. This detracts from the visual continuity of the contributors in the Historic District and diminishes the historic-period feel of the District. One possible solution would be to establish a centralized parking lot close to, but outside of the District. If possible, the lot should utilize a gravel surface instead of asphalt paving and should incorporate native landscaping materials and pathways defined by rocks or logs. If enough parking is provided in the centralized lot, it is possible that most of the storefront parking spaces could be converted to ADA compliant spaces and/or spaces

restricted to loading and unloading, both of which would further minimize storefront parking (contact the County Planning Department for parking requirements and refer to Appendix D for more information about ADA standards).

3.10.1: Guidelines

1. Maintain existing parking in order to continue commercial/retail use of the Historic District.
2. Where feasible, encourage new or expanded parking facilities to be located behind the contributing building.
3. New storefront parking is discouraged. However, if such parking is necessary to meet parking requirements, storefront parking should be set back from the contributing building as much as possible to create a visual break between automobiles and storefronts.
4. New parking lots within the district are discouraged. However, if a new parking lot within or adjacent to the district is proposed, it should be designed in a way that is visually compatible with the district. This may be accomplished through the use of gravel surfacing, native plant materials, and gravel or dirt pathways defined by stone or wood borders.
5. Lighting should comply with the guidelines in Section 3.9.

3.11: GARAGES AND ACCESSORY STRUCTURES

Since most of the contributors within the district are commercial properties, historic garages and accessory structures are not particularly common. There are a few historic garages associated with residential properties, and, where they exist, they should be maintained and preserved. Like other historic site features, they contribute to the character of a district. In some cases, a commercial property is composed of multiple buildings (such as a retail complex or an inn with detached cottages; Figures 38 and 39). Any changes to accessory buildings should take into consideration the character of the contributing property as a whole, as well as address alterations to the historical design, material, and workmanship of the specific building.

New garages or accessory buildings within the district should be located behind the contributing buildings. If they will be visible from the public right-of-way, their design should be compatible with the design and materials that characterize the contributing building and the overall district. The new building should be subordinate in scale and design details so that the contributing building(s) remain the focus.



Figure 38: Retail store and inn



Figure 39: Accessory structures

3.11.1: Guidelines

1. Whenever possible, retain historic-period garages and accessory buildings that contribute to the significance of the individual property or district.
2. Exterior repairs to historic-period garages and accessory buildings should use materials that are as similar to the historic-period materials as possible.
3. Preferably, new garages and accessory buildings should be located behind the contributing building. At a minimum, new garages and accessory buildings should have a greater setback from the public right-of-way than the contributing building.
4. New garages and accessory buildings should be subordinate to the contributing building in scale, massing, and overall design so they do not detract from the visual prominence of the contributing building.
5. New garages and accessory buildings should utilize finishes, materials, and architectural details (including windows and doors) that are compatible with the contributing building and/or other historic-period buildings on the property.
6. New garages and accessory buildings should not create a false sense of history. There should be a clear, but compatible distinction between new and old construction.
7. Reconstruction of missing accessory buildings should follow the Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Reconstruction to the extent feasible (Appendix C).

3.12: MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT AND ACCESSORIES

Installation of new mechanical equipment and accessories are often necessary for the continued use of a property or the benefit of the area as a whole. Examples might include updated heating, cooling, and sanitation equipment, freestanding automatic teller machines (ATMs), mailboxes, directional aids, cellular towers, and/or public facilities such as restrooms. However, these elements can disrupt the historic character of the district if their placement and visibility is not approached with some sensitivity. The most common type of mechanical equipment in the district is the propane tank, which supplies fuel for heating and cooking to both residential and commercial properties in the district (Figures 40 and 41).



Figure 40: Exposed propane tank

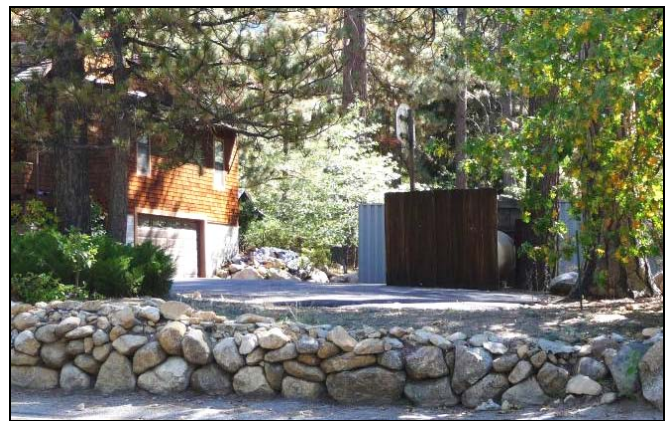


Figure 41: Screened propane tank

3.12.1: Guidelines

1. Mechanical systems and accessory uses that allow the continued use of a contributing property should be encouraged.

2. New mechanical equipment, such as solar panels, heating and air conditioning systems, propane tanks, etc., should be located out of view from the public right-of-way.
3. New accessory uses, such as ATMs, cellular towers, mailboxes, and public restrooms and/or other facilities should be designed and situated in a manner that does not disrupt the Historic District or detract from its historic character.
4. Screening of mechanical equipment that is visible from the public right-of-way is encouraged. This may be accomplished with vegetation or simple wooden structures, and/or may include painting the equipment a neutral color that blends in with the surroundings.
5. Mechanical equipment that is visible from the public right-of-way and is part of the historical function of a contributing building should be retained even if it is replaced by a modern system.
6. Obsolete, non-historic systems should be removed when they are replaced by newer systems.

3.13: LANDSCAPING AND RELATED FEATURES

Landscaping and related features, such as walkways, trails, benches, and garden walls, contribute to the character and feel of the setting within the Historic District. Incompatible elements can “stick out like a sore thumb” and affect the visual character of several contiguous properties. In general, the intended effect of landscaping in the Historic District is to evoke a natural, forested environment that reads like a continuation of the forest that surrounds it (Figure 42). Formal gardening is uncommon, although some site landscaping may in reality be carefully planned. Mature pine, oak, and cedar trees create a canopy above the native brush and the ground that is littered with pine needles, acorns, and granite boulders. To preserve and enhance the natural, informal feel of the landscaping within the Historic District, use of non-native plants should be minimized. Although concrete is acceptable where it is necessary to provide a permanent surface for frequent pedestrian traffic or handicap access, in general dirt or gravel trails are preferred (Figure 43). Sites that work creatively with existing natural features are a delight to visitors and maintain ties between the district and the surrounding forest (Figure 44).



Figure 42: Informal, native landscaping



Figure 43: Rock-lined, gravel pathway



Figure 44: Incorporation of natural features (boulder)

3.13.1: Guidelines

1. Retain and preserve the landscape and hardscape features that contribute to the overall character of the district, including native landscaping, locally-sourced granite retaining walls and walkways, and existing natural features.
2. Use of native plants in an informal arrangement is preferred, but accent plantings that use non-native ornamentals may be acceptable.
3. Primary pathways may be concrete if necessary, but dirt or gravel pathways are preferred, especially for secondary pathways.
4. Removal of healthy, native trees is discouraged. If a tree must be removed, it should be replaced in-kind or with a native tree of a similar species. Where appropriate, the County's Oak Tree Management Guidelines should be utilized.
5. New construction should be sensitive to and make every effort to preserve and protect mature trees and other features of the landscape that contribute to the character of the district.
6. Sculpture and other types of outdoor artwork are acceptable site features, but should be in scale with its surroundings and not detract from the historic character of the contributing building of the district.

3.14: PUBLIC RIGHTS-OF-WAY

Many of the Historic District's character-defining features are present within the public right-of-way. These features include street signs, lights, sidewalks, paving patterns, roadways, and utility poles (Figure 45). Because changes to these features can contribute to or detract from the Historic District's overall setting and character, the public agencies responsible for these features should use these Design Guidelines when designing projects in the Historic District. Routine maintenance and repair of the public rights-of-way should be undertaken in a way that preserves and enhances the Historic District's character. Preferred treatments would avoid the addition of intrusive street improvements such as concrete curbs and gutters, metal light poles, and ornamental landscaping.



Figure 45: State Route 243 streetscape

The improvement of pedestrian circulation within the Historic District is needed (Figures 46 and 47). Preferred methods of enhancing pedestrian access and safety while maintaining a rural, informal feel to the streetscape include creating pedestrian walkways that are delineated on the roadway itself (as they are on Village Center Drive; Figure 46) or creating level dirt or gravel walkways adjacent to the road, but separated from it by a rolled asphalt edge.

An important aspect of circulation, whether pedestrian or vehicular, is the signage used as part of the way finding plan. In many communities, street signs may incorporate features that alert the public that they are in a historic district. This can be in the form of a logo or symbol that is part of a street sign (Figure 48) or its support structure. It could also be in the form of signs at the entry and exit points of the district (Figure 49). Identifying the Historic District as part of the way finding system can engender community pride and work as a marketing tool that lets people know they have arrived somewhere special.



Figure 46: Pedestrian on Village Center Drive



Figure 47: Pedestrians on blind curve



Figure 48: Street sign

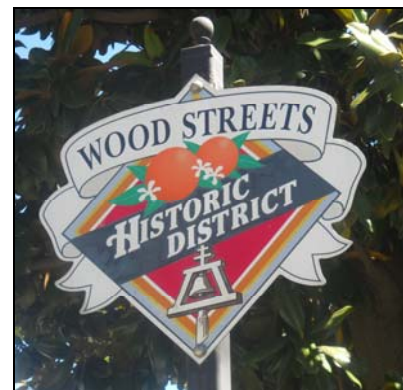


Figure 49: Historic District
Identification Sign

3.14.1: Guidelines

1. Do not introduce new features such as concrete curbs, gutters, or sidewalks; metal, concrete, or composite light poles; or ornamental landscaping.
2. If possible, install new lighting on existing support structures. If new light poles are required, install wood poles that are similar in materials and design to the existing wooden poles. Replacement lights should be shielded and directed downward to reduce light pollution (refer to Section 3.9).
3. If possible, install new utilities underground or utilize existing support structures. If new structures are required, design and locate them in way that minimizes their potential to intrude physically and visually on the historic setting. This could be achieved by painting them to blend in with their surroundings, designing them to look like the surrounding vegetation, or by screening them with native vegetation.
4. When necessary, trees should be pruned in a manner that retains their natural growth pattern and appearance and preserves the existing canopy.
5. If a tree within the public right-of-way needs to be removed or relocated, if possible, it should be replaced with a tree that is the same species or at least native to the area.
6. Whenever possible, improvements proposed in conjunction with traffic or pedestrian access or safety should preserve the existing road widths and vertical and horizontal road alignments.
7. Repairs to character-defining features should be made in-kind using the same or similar materials and designs as the existing feature.
8. Do not install features that create a false historical appearance.
9. Street signs and way finding elements should be designed through a collaborative effort among the County Transportation, Planning, and Parks departments, as well as the LRB. Typically, way finding elements should be compatible with the human scale and placed on wooden posts or other support structures that are compatible with the rustic character of the Historic District.

3.15: SUSTAINABILITY AND ENERGY RETROFIT

Historic preservation is an important part of any sustainability effort. According to the National Trust for Historic Preservation, the construction, operation, and demolition of buildings accounts for over 40 percent of the carbon dioxide emissions in the United States. Whenever possible, contributing buildings in the district should be preserved and reused. For more information regarding how to improve energy efficiency in older buildings without damaging the historic materials or design visit the National Trust for Historic Preservation website at <http://www.preservationnation.org/issues/sustainability>.

3.15.1: Guidelines

1. Retain existing energy conserving features such as shade trees, porches, operable windows, and storm windows.
2. Increase the thermal efficiency of historic-period buildings through non-invasive measures such as weather-stripping, caulking, and insulating the attic, walls, and floor.
3. Use of solar panels is encouraged, but they should be located out of view of the public right-of-way whenever possible.
4. Narrow-profile exterior or interior storm windows that increase the thermal efficiency of a contributing building are acceptable. The windows should be installed in a way that does not damage

historic windows or frames, window dividers should align with historic divisions, and the color should blend in or be compatible with the existing trim and sash.

5. Complete replacement of historic windows with incompatible new windows is discouraged (refer to Section 3.3).

3.16: RELOCATION OR DEMOLITION

Relocation or demolition of contributors is strongly discouraged. Relocating a contributor (even within its current lot) diminishes its historical setting and disrupts its spatial ties to adjacent properties. Relocation beyond a building's historic property has the added potential to erase historical associations that play an important role in the significance of the resource.

Unless there are overriding health and safety issues as determined by the Building Official or other appropriate person, demolition of contributors is not recommended. In most cases, demolition of a contributor would, according to the California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA), constitute a substantial adverse change in the significance of the resource. This means that the County, which is the Lead Agency under CEQA, must conduct an environmental assessment for the project in order to consider the potential impacts the project may have on cultural resources and to identify possible project alternatives and appropriate mitigation measures. If the project cannot be mitigated to a level that is less than significant (i.e., the project will not adversely affect the historic significance of the resource), the County would need to adopt a Statement of Overriding Considerations before the project could move forward. Typical mitigation measures include, but are not limited to, photographic documentation, scaled drawings, a detailed narrative history of the resource, and salvage of historic-period features that could be reused or included in a display. For more information on the CEQA process, contact the County Planning Department or review the CEQA Guidelines online at <http://ceres.ca.gov/ceqa/guidelines/>.

PART 4: OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

There are several types of projects that may occur within the district that do not require Alteration Permits. These include any projects involving non-contributors or brand new construction. Owners of non-contributors or new infill developments are encouraged to consult with the General Manager and to use these guidelines to develop projects that will complement the Historic District. Similarly, owners of projects on properties adjacent to the Historic District are also encouraged to use these Design Guidelines.

4.1: RESTORATION AND RECONSTRUCTION

Currently, the Alteration Permit process applies only to contributors; however, there is ample opportunity in the district for restoration and/or reconstruction that would transform non-contributors into contributors and further enhance the historic character of the district and community as a whole. Owners of buildings that date to the period of significance for the Historic District (1915–1965) who are interested in pursuing restoration or reconstruction projects with the goal of returning their building to its original state are strongly encouraged to work with the General Manager during the design phase of the project.

One of the keys to designing a successful restoration or reconstruction project is having clear documentation, such as a historic photograph or narrative description, of how the subject property looked during the period of significance. Such documentation may exist at the public library, in the archives of the Idyllwild Area Historical Society, or in newspaper archives. The documentation should depict or describe the original and/or missing element(s) with enough detail to develop plans that accurately represent the original building or missing element's scale, design, proportion, placement, or material.

In the absence of clear documentation, it may be impossible to complete a faithful restoration or reconstruction project. In those cases, it is important to avoid creating a false or anachronistic historical appearance in an attempt to invoke a historical feeling.

In general, restoration or reconstruction work should be identified as such in a subtle, but clear way so that a false sense of history is not created.

4.1.1: Guidelines

1. Encourage faithful restorations and reconstructions of non-contributors within the district to enhance the district's character and integrity.
2. Use clear documentation from the period of significance (1915–1965) such as historic photographs or detailed narrative descriptions to assist with the design phase of the project.
3. If clear documentation cannot be found, do not use conjecture or unreliable information to design the restoration or reconstruction and create a false sense of history.
4. Prior to construction, the property should be photographically documented in its current condition, with particular attention paid to elements that will be removed as part of the work.
5. Deteriorated features from the period of significance should be repaired rather than replaced.
6. Clearly identify all restoration and/or reconstruction work as new construction, using signage or other means.
7. If appropriate, the County should recognize successful restoration and/or reconstruction projects by formally designating them as contributors.

4.2: INFILL CONSTRUCTION

Infill construction can have a profound impact on the character of the district. The following factors should be carefully considered when designing an infill development within or adjacent to the district.

4.2.1: Height, Mass, and Scale

Height, mass, and scale are important considerations for infill construction and are largely governed by the Zoning Code. Buildings that are more than two stories in height are at odds with the low-density, one to two-story small-scale properties in the Historic District. While complying with Zoning Code requirements, new construction should respect the existing “mom-and-pop” character of the commercial buildings and modest residences. One of the best ways to do this is to refrain from overshadowing them with out-of-scale (i.e. much larger) development.

4.2.2: Style

Prevalent architectural styles and types in the district include Craftsman, Ranch, and Mid-Century Modern. Within these broad categories, contributors have adopted specific design elements that represent the natural mountain environment as well as the community’s role as a tourist destination. Some of these style variations are:

- Rustic design elements such as unpainted wood, peeled logs, and mortared granite.
- Programmatic elements such as Alpine/Swiss chalet features including scalloped bargeboards and patterned shutters, railings, and window surrounds.
- Environment-related elements such as steeply-pitched roofs, A-frame plans, decks, balconies, porches, and prominent chimneys/hearths.
- Commercial elements such as outdoor dining areas.

4.2.3: Materials, Texture, and Color

New construction should reference the historic-period materials used in the district. This will help create a cohesive feel in the district as well as connect the new construction with the natural environment. Rustic textures, unpainted surfaces, dark brown and green colors, and use of wood and stone are encouraged (refer to Section 3.2 Exterior Wall Siding).

4.2.4: Roof Shapes and Materials

The prevailing environmental conditions will largely dictate the shape and material of roofing for infill construction. Moderate and steep gable and hipped roof pitches are preferred because they are common in the district and also because they can withstand heavy snowfall. Roofing materials should meet applicable fire codes and should use colors that blend in with the district and surrounding natural environment.

4.2.5: Spacing, Setback, and Location

The cohesiveness of any given block is in part dependent on the spacing, setback, and location of its buildings. These siting requirements are typically governed by the Zoning Code. However, to the extent possible, it is important to maintain consistent siting. This may vary throughout the district. For example, the siting of buildings at the southern corner of North Circle Drive near State Route 243 is unique in the district because of the compact arrangement of the commercial buildings, their relative proximity to the

street, and their overall uniformity of scale and small-town commercial character. What is appropriate here may not be appropriate elsewhere in the district, therefore each project should be considered on a case-by case basis.

4.2.6: Site Features and Landscape

Infill properties may have built-in site features such as mature trees, large boulders, historical perimeter walls and walkways, or accessory structures. New construction should avoid intact site features and landscape that helps to characterize the district. Preferred designs would recognize, protect, and incorporate these features in place (refer to Section 3.13 Landscaping and Related Features).

4.3: DUTY TO MAINTAIN

Section 3.4 of Riverside County Ordinance 578 identifies the property owner's duty to maintain the property in a good state of repair. In part this section states: "The owner, lessee or other person legally in possession of any building, structure or façade within a Historic Preservation District...shall not permit such building, structure or façade to fall into a state of disrepair which may result in the deterioration of any exterior appurtenance or architectural feature so as to produce or tend to produce a detrimental effect upon the character of the Historic Preservation District as a whole or the building, structure or façade in question..."

Examples of poor maintenance that detracts from the Historic District include:

- Deterioration of exterior walls, columns, roofs, chimneys such that they are sagging, leaning, splitting, listing, or buckling;
- Deteriorated siding, including broken and checked boards or shingles;
- Broken windows, doors, or architectural features;
- Lack of protection for walls and roofs from weather;
- Deterioration of exterior stairs, porches, decks, and handrails;
- Hazardous or unsafe conditions from rotted and missing architectural elements; and
- Failure to secure a vacant building sufficient to keep out vandals.

APPENDIX A

HISTORICAL OVERVIEW¹

Idyllwild is located in the San Jacinto Mountains, a range of mountains that separates the western portions of Riverside County from the eastern desert regions of the Coachella Valley. Early Native Americans, the Desert and Mountain Cahuilla, used the mountain valleys as a summer home. Several sites of bedrock mortars are located in the area as well as pictographs and remnants of ancient Indian footpaths that, for the most part, evolved into trails used by ranchers and miners in the early 1860s.²

Nestled between higher elevations, Idyllwild was first known by the name “Strawberry Valley,” for the proliferation of its native, wild strawberries. Richard Garrett, one of the earliest visitors to the Strawberry Valley/Idyllwild area wrote in a letter to the *Los Angeles Star* on December 16, 1871, that “several families had taken up homestead grants in the valley, all of them happy to be living in this forest paradise.”³

For approximately 30 years, from 1875 to 1905, the lumber industry was a major economic enterprise in the San Jacinto Mountains. During this period, Amasa Saunders, for whom Saunders Meadow is named, operated a sawmill in Strawberry Valley as did George B. Hannahs. Hannahs started the community of Raynetta in the area currently occupied by the IdyllwildArts campus. By the mid-1880s, Strawberry Valley began to be recognized for its recreational possibilities. Crawford’s toll road from Hemet was declared free in 1889, which prompted waves of intrepid campers to make the all-day trek up the mountain. Hotels were soon built to accommodate less-hardy vacationers. John and Mary Keen established Keen House just south of present-day Idyllwild in 1890 on the site of the present-day Idyllwild School.⁴

The influx of vacationers and full-time residents helped bring about the end of lumbering operations. In 1897, President Glover Cleveland created the San Jacinto Forest Reserve, which gave protection to the majority of forests in the San Jacinto Mountains. This action also helped to replace the local lumber economy with a tourist economy.⁵

Known initially as Strawberry Valley, the name Idyllwild evolved over a nine-year period beginning with Idylwood, Idylwilde, and Idlewild. In 1899, the post office officially renamed the Raynetta post office Idyllwild and in 1901 relocated the office to a site in the center of the present-day town.

Throughout the first half of the 20th century, the unique beauty of the Strawberry Valley area attracted visitors from all over southern California and beyond. Improved roads made travel easier for stagecoach lines that connected with train stations in communities at lower elevations and, more importantly, increased trips by personal automobile. An extensive article on recreational driving routes from 1910 suggested that readers ascend the newly-opened Banning-Idyllwild road, enjoy the “little streams of clear cold water ... affectionately overhung with ferns, spearmint, snapdragons, and other mountain flora” and descend into Hemet using newly re-graded control road.⁶ Newspaper advertisements and ever-present

¹ A detailed historic context for Idyllwild is provided in the Historic Resources Survey for the Idyllwild Commercial Corridor, which was prepared by LSA in 2009 and is on file at the County of Riverside Regional Park and Open-Space District.

² Robinson, John W., and Bruce D. Risher. *The San Jacintos: The Mountain Country from Banning to Borrego Valley*. Big Santa Anita Publishing. 1993

³ Ibid.

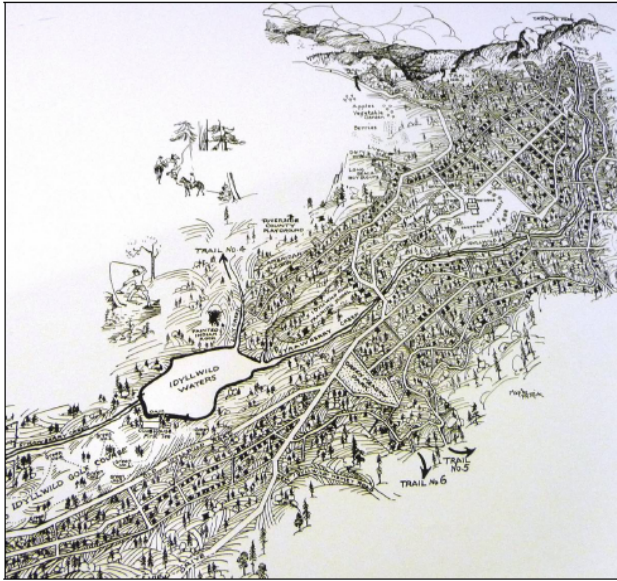
⁴ Smith, Robert. *Idyllwild and the High San Jacintos*. San Francisco, California: Arcadia Publishing, 2009.

⁵ Lech.

⁶ *Los Angeles Times*, 10/23/1910. “Rare Mountain Views from the Automobile.” Evelyn McDowell.

“resort notes” penned by hotel proprietors touted Idyllwild as the “Alps of Southern California” and “the Yosemite of the Southland.”¹

Encouraged by the popularity of the Idyllwild Inn and the glowing media interest focused on the area, Frank Strong and George Dickinson increased their holdings in 1911 through the purchase of 4,200 acres of land that included much of Idyllwild, Pine Cove, and Saunders Meadow. In 1913, they recorded a tract map that laid out approximately 200 lots in 4 subdivisions around the Idyllwild Inn. By the time Strong and Dickinson had sold 1,000 acres around and including the Idyllwild Inn in 1917, these holdings consisted of a large amusement and dining hall, a bowling alley, billiard hall, electric lighting plant, steam laundry, ice plant, store building, merchandise building, several cottages, saddle livery, dairy, livestock barns, and furnishings for the accommodations of several hundred people.²



Claudius Lee Emerson headed Idyllwild Incorporated, a San Jacinto-based syndicate that purchased the Idyllwild Inn and surrounding acreage from Strong and Dickinson. Emerson quickly started implementing his vision for Idyllwild as shown in the figure to the left. Through Emerson’s efforts, Idyllwild took part in the building boom that affected much of southern California throughout the 1920s. Emerson started a newspaper, christened *Idyllwild Breezes* to chronicle the valley’s growth and the activities of visitors. Emerson was successful in drawing long-term visitors and a few permanent residents to Idyllwild. Throughout the 1920s boom, Idyllwild prospered, adding dozens of new vacation homes to its stock every year, although commercial growth was slower to develop.

Between 1930 and the mid-1940s, Idyllwild suffered the fate of many small American towns due to the effects of the Great Depression and World War II. The Depression years were not kind to Claudius Emerson and his new investments in the Idyllwild area led to the family’s loss of the Idyllwild Inn, forcing them to leave the community in 1938.³

Through World War II, the Idyllwild economy was supported by military personnel from local bases who used Idyllwild as a resort on weekends. Unfortunately, during this period several devastating fires took their toll on the mountain community. A 1943 blaze destroyed the Keen Camp resort and on May 4, 1945, the 40-year old Idyllwild Inn was destroyed by fire. However, in 1946 things began to turn around for the community. The Idyllwild All-Year Company acquired the newly rebuilt Idyllwild Inn, numerous commercial properties in the village, 1,500 subdivided lots, and 320 unsubdivided acres, becoming the largest landowner in town. Around the same time, Ernie and Betty Maxwell moved to Idyllwild and founded *The Town Crier*, the first local newspaper since *Idyllwild Breezes* had quit publishing in 1929. These two energetic local forces combined with a growing Chamber of Commerce to shape the town’s priorities and preserve Idyllwild’s character through the expansion period of the post-World War II era.

The late 1940s brought an expansion to education and camping in the area. In 1946, a group of University of Southern California (USC) professors bought land on Domenigoni Flat and established the Idyllwild

¹ Smith; *Los Angeles Times*, 8/25/1923 advertisement.

² *Los Angeles Times*, 12/23/1917.

³ Robinson.

School of Music and the Arts (ISOMATA), now IdyllwildArts, which opened in 1950. ISOMATA became one of Idyllwild's claims to fame.¹

In 1947, the local postmaster estimated that about 300 families lived in Idyllwild, which was a substantial increase over the 25 resident families reported in 1937. The Chamber boasted 463 members that year, representing a majority of the adult population.² The youth in the community started a Junior Chamber of Commerce as well.³ Several new businesses opened in the late 1940s, including the Fern Valley Bakery (now the Creekstone Inn), the Hillbilly Variety Store, a new post office next to the Log Cabin Realty building, and the Rustic Theater.

By 1956, the area had an estimated 800 residents. A year later, growth in Idyllwild merited the town its own full-time building inspector.⁴ The increase in seasonal traffic and visitation was even more dramatic. In 1957, the permanent population topped 1,000 residents and the newspaper reported that over 1 million visitors came to Idyllwild.⁵ In addition to becoming more numerous, homes in the area were beginning to get larger. In 1958 and 1959, there were 120 new residences, and 37 were larger than 1,000 square feet. This was a definite shift away from the tiny log cabins built in the 1920s and 30s, though smaller buildings continued to be popular for vacation homes. The A-frame, a newly-popular kind of small home, first came to notice in Idyllwild in 1960, when Idyllwild Pines built a 900-square foot A-frame residence on its grounds that was extensively profiled in the *Town Crier* and helped popularize the style in residential and commercial properties through the 1960s.

In the 1960s, Idyllwild continued to expand. Several commercial property owners reinvested their profits into additions and extensive remodels of their stores, including the Red Kettle (which was then a barber shop and pharmacy), the Village Market, and the Fern Valley Market. The Woodland Craft building expanded over the 1950s and 1960s to become a retail "arcade" with a narrow lane of small shops connected by a boardwalk.⁶ One of the last great commercial buildings from the post-WW II era in Idyllwild was the Security First National Bank, which was completed in 1964.

Over the subsequent 45 years, Idyllwild continued to grow, although not at the considerable rate sustained in the post-WW II era. Businesses have come and gone from the commercial building stock and many newer commercial buildings have been constructed. The ISOMATA has become IdyllwildArts, but continues to offer world-renowned music and arts instruction. The Desert Sun School became the Desert Sun Science Center and is now best known for Astrocamp. Though the Maxwells are long gone, their impact on the community is still palpable with the continued publication of *The Town Crier*. Hundreds of thousands of tourists continue to visit Idyllwild, enjoying the same stunning natural beauty and quiet, reflective activities that have come to characterize the area for more than a century.

¹ Smith.

² *Town Crier*, 1/28/1947.

³ *Town Crier*, 5/3/1947.

⁴ *Town Crier*, 7/26/1957.

⁵ *Town Crier*, 2/7/1958, 2/14/1958.

⁶ *Town Crier*, 6/3/1956, 8/23/1957, 2/2/1962.

APPENDIX B

IDYLLWILD DOWNTOWN HISTORIC DISTRICT¹

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF SIGNIFICANCE

The Idyllwild Downtown Historic District is composed of 103 total properties, 57 of which are contributors and 46 of which are non-contributors. The district is significant under California Register of Historical Resources Criterion 1 because it reflects significant aspects of the social and economic history of Riverside County through the development of Idyllwild as one of the County's earliest and most distinctive mountain resort communities. The majority of properties in the district come from the post-World War II commercial era that helped to establish Idyllwild as a permanent community and a widely popular tourist destination. Some of the properties also reflect an earlier pattern of residential development from the town's initial establishment as a seasonal vacation community. The district's period of significance is 1915 to 1965.

It should be noted that properties within the potential district that are non-contributors are not "historical resources" under CEQA, but they warrant special consideration in local planning efforts because changes to these properties have the potential to affect the district as a whole.

SUMMARY ARCHITECTURAL DESCRIPTION

The built environment that characterizes Idyllwild bears the unmistakable marks of a mountain community. Regardless of stylistic influence, residential, commercial, and institutional buildings alike bear steeply-pitched roofs to deal with snowfall, rough-hewn wood as a primary material, river rock for hardscape, and attention to the surrounding forest in landscaping. This continual return to a rustic and rugged aesthetic has affected the architectural styles of the community's buildings, the nature of landscaped areas, and the overall setting that defines Idyllwild in the visitor's experience. Over the course of two major eras of community development, three architectural styles had the greatest influence on architecture in Idyllwild: Craftsman, California Ranch (specifically Chalet Style), and A-frame modern.

CHARACTER-DEFINING FEATURES

The Idyllwild Downtown Historic District draws its unique historic character from its bucolic wooded setting, natural landscaping, small scale commercial buildings, local workmanship, and rustic materials. In general, the General Manager, LRB, and property owners should seek to preserve and maintain the specific character-defining features listed below.

District Setting and Overall Character

- Natural, forested site that is minimally disturbed by development.
- Rural streetscape with minimal street improvements and lighting.
- Pedestrian-scale (1–2-story) buildings with similar (though not identical) setbacks.

¹ For more detailed information regarding the process leading up to the identification of the Historic District, refer to the Historic Resources Survey for the Idyllwild Commercial Corridor, which was prepared by LSA in 2009 and is on file at the County of Riverside Regional Park and Open-Space District.

- Overall rhythm of properties demonstrates organic development by individuals over a century rather than centralized and heavily planned.
- Mid-20th century small-town character created by historic storefronts and architectural styles.
- Artistic flair and community spirit of local residents demonstrated in public art, decorative features, and signage.

Characteristics of Contributors

- Modest adaptations of mid-20th century architectural styles for both commercial and residential properties.
- Use of rustic materials such as unpainted shake, peeled logs, and river rock.
- Historical windows and doors (materials and openings).
- Open, natural landscaping.
- Minimally-lit commercial signage usually made of wood.

APPENDIX C

SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR'S STANDARDS FOR THE TREATMENT OF HISTORIC PROPERTIES

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties (1995) is a collection of standards that were originally developed by the Department of the Interior to regulate projects affecting historic properties (CFR Part 67, Historic Preservation Certifications). They include standards for the following treatments: preservation, rehabilitation, restoration, and reconstruction. Although the standards for rehabilitation are the most commonly used because they allow for more flexibility when a property is adapted for a compatible reuse, all four sets of standards have been included here.

Additional guidance is available in several freely-available documents developed by the National Parks Service and can be accessed online at <http://www.nps.gov/hps/tps/standguide/>.

STANDARDS FOR PRESERVATION

1. A property will be used as it was historically, or be given a new use that maximizes the retention of distinctive materials, features, spaces, and spatial relationships. Where a treatment and use have not been identified, a property will be protected and, if necessary, stabilized until additional work may be undertaken.
2. The historic character of a property will be retained and preserved. The replacement of intact or repairable historic materials or alteration of features, spaces, and spatial relationships that characterize a property will be avoided.
3. Each property will be recognized as a physical record of its time, place, and use. Work needed to stabilize, consolidate, and conserve existing historic materials and features will be physically and visually compatible, identifiable upon close inspection, and properly documented for future research.
4. Changes to a property that have acquired historic significance in their own right will be retained and preserved.
5. Distinctive materials, features, finishes, and construction techniques or examples of craftsmanship that characterize a property will be preserved.
6. The existing condition of historic features will be evaluated to determine the appropriate level of intervention needed. Where the severity of deterioration requires repair or limited replacement of a distinctive feature, the new material will match the old in composition, design, color, and texture.
7. Chemical or physical treatments, if appropriate, will be undertaken using the gentlest means possible. Treatments that cause damage to historic materials will not be used.
8. Archaeological resources will be protected and preserved in place. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.

STANDARDS FOR REHABILITATION

1. A property will be used as it was historically or be given a new use that requires minimal change to its distinctive materials, features, spaces, and spatial relationships.

2. The historic character of a property will be retained and preserved. The removal of distinctive materials or alteration of features, spaces, and spatial relationships that characterize a property will be avoided.
3. Each property will be recognized as a physical record of its time, place, and use. Changes that create a false sense of historical development, such as adding conjectural features or elements from other historic properties, will not be undertaken.
4. Changes to a property that have acquired historic significance in their own right will be retained and preserved.
5. Distinctive materials, features, finishes, and construction techniques or examples of craftsmanship that characterize a property will be preserved.
6. Deteriorated historic features will be repaired rather than replaced. Where the severity of deterioration requires replacement of a distinctive feature, the new feature will match the old in design, color, texture, and, where possible, materials. Replacement of missing features will be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence.
7. Chemical or physical treatments, if appropriate, will be undertaken using the gentlest means possible. Treatments that cause damage to historic materials will not be used.
8. Archaeological resources will be protected and preserved in place. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.
9. New additions, exterior alterations, or related new construction will not destroy historic materials, features, and spatial relationships that characterize the property. The new work will be differentiated from the old and will be compatible with the historic materials, features, size, scale and proportion, and massing to protect the integrity of the property and its environment.
10. New additions and adjacent or related new construction will be undertaken in such a manner that, if removed in the future, the essential form and integrity of the historic property and its environment would be unimpaired.

STANDARDS FOR RESTORATION

1. A property will be used as it was historically or be given a new use which reflects the property's restoration period.
2. Materials and features from the restoration period will be retained and preserved. The removal of materials or alteration of features, spaces, and spatial relationships that characterize the period will not be undertaken.
3. Each property will be recognized as a physical record of its time, place, and use. Work needed to stabilize, consolidate, and conserve materials and features from the restoration period will be physically and visually compatible, identifiable upon close inspection, and properly documented for future research.
4. Materials, features, spaces, and finishes that characterize other historical periods will be documented prior to their alteration or removal.
5. Distinctive materials, features, finishes, and construction techniques or examples of craftsmanship that characterize the restoration period will be preserved.
6. Deteriorated features from the restoration period will be repaired rather than replaced. Where the severity of deterioration requires replacement of a distinctive feature, the new feature will match the old in design, color, texture, and, where possible, materials.

7. Replacement of missing features from the restoration period will be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence. A false sense of history will not be created by adding conjectural features, features from other properties, or by combining features that never existed together historically.
8. Chemical or physical treatments, if appropriate, will be undertaken using the gentlest means possible. Treatments that cause damage to historic materials will not be used.
9. Archaeological resources affected by a project will be protected and preserved in place. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.
10. Designs that were never executed historically will not be constructed.

STANDARDS FOR RECONSTRUCTION

1. Reconstruction will be used to depict vanished or non-surviving portions of a property when documentary and physical evidence is available to permit accurate reconstruction with minimal conjecture, and such reconstruction is essential to the public understanding of the property.
2. Reconstruction of a landscape, building, structure, or object in its historic location will be preceded by a thorough archaeological investigation to identify and evaluate those features and artifacts which are essential to an accurate reconstruction. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.
3. Reconstruction will include measures to preserve any remaining historic materials, features, and spatial relationships.
4. Reconstruction will be based on the accurate duplication of historic features and elements substantiated by documentary or physical evidence rather than on conjectural designs or the availability of different features from other historic properties. A reconstructed property will recreate the appearance of the non-surviving historic property in materials, design, color, and texture.
5. A reconstruction will be clearly identified as a contemporary re-creation.
6. Designs that were never executed historically will not be constructed.

APPENDIX D

ACCESSIBILITY CONSIDERATIONS

A change or expansion in the public use of a contributing building may necessitate compliance with current standards for life safety and accessibility. The California State Historic Building Code of 2010 (CHBC) and the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1991 as amended in 2010 (ADA) provide some flexibility when a historic building is involved. Compliance with the ADA Standards for Accessible Design (including historical exceptions under the CHBC) form a body of “rebuttable evidence” that shields property owners and businesses from ADA-related lawsuits.

The majority of the contributors in the Idyllwild Downtown Historic District fall under the definition of a Title III property for the purposes of ADA requirements. Essentially, any part of a property that makes a public accommodation, such as a retail store, a doctor’s office, a restaurant, or an inn, is required under Title III of the ADA to remove barriers where it is “readily achievable” or in other words relatively easy to do so without much difficulty or expense. If barrier removal is not readily achievable, then alternative accommodations for people with disabilities must be made. This is an ongoing requirement that businesses and property owners must observe.

In addition to barrier removal, additional compliance under the ADA is triggered when alterations are made to a property. The CHBC allows historic buildings (including contributors to historic districts) to use alternative minimum standards for ADA compliance on a case-by-case basis when full compliance would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or district. In practice, historical exceptions to regular ADA requirements are determined by the County Building Official or his designee, who is also responsible for interpreting the CHBC.¹

Additional information regarding ADA compliance may be found in the ADA Title III Technical Assistance Manual Covering Public Accommodations and Commercial Facilities provided online at <http://www.ada.gov/taman3.html>.

SUMMARY OF ADA MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

- At least one accessible route to an accessible entrance. EXCEPTION: A ramp with a slope no greater than 1:6 for a run not to exceed 2 feet may be used as part of an accessible route to an entrance.
- At least one accessible entrance which is used by the public. EXCEPTION: If it is determined that no entrance used by the public can comply, then access at any entrance not used by the general public but open (unlocked) with directional signage at the primary entrance may be used. The accessible entrance shall also have a notification system. Where security is a problem, remote monitoring may be used.
- If toilets are provided, then at least one accessible toilet facility shall be provided along an accessible route. Such toilet facility may be unisex in design.
- Accessible routes from an accessible entrance to all publicly used spaces on at least the level of the accessible entrance shall be provided. Access shall be provided to all levels of a building or facility whenever practical.

¹ Officially, Section 4.1.7 of the 1991 ADA Standards (and Section 202.5 of the 2010 ADA Standards) for Accessible Design identify the State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO) or the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation as the ruling organization for historical exceptions to ADA, but the SHPO delegates that authority to local governments in practice.

- Displays and written information, documents, etc., should be located where they can be seen by a seated person. Exhibits and signage displayed horizontally (e.g., open books) should be no higher than 44 inches above the floor.

When complying with ADA requirements, contributors in the Historic District should consider the following:

1. Barrier removal that would destroy or alter historic materials or spaces in a contributing building may not meet the ADA definition of “readily achievable.”
2. Consultation with historic preservation specialists, local disability groups, and appropriate County staff such as the Building Official, may be beneficial when trying to address accessibility issues.
3. Locate fire doors, exterior fire stairs, or elevator additions on less visible elevations, preferably the rear elevation. Design such elements to be compatible in character, materials, scale, proportion, and finish with the contributing building.

APPENDIX E

DUTY TO MAINTAIN

Section 3.4 of Riverside County Ordinance 578 identifies the property owner's duty to maintain the property in a good state of repair. "The owner, lessee or other person legally in possession of any building, structure or façade within a Historic Preservation District, regardless of whether or not it is a Contributing Resource, shall comply with all applicable laws and regulations governing the maintenance of such building, structure or facade. Additionally, the owner, lessee or other person legally in possession of such building, structure or façade shall not permit such building, structure or façade to fall into a state of disrepair which may result in the deterioration of any exterior appurtenance or architectural feature so as to produce or tend to produce a detrimental effect upon the character of the Historic Preservation District as a whole or the building, structure or façade in question..."

Examples of poor maintenance that detracts from the whole Historic District include:

- Deterioration of exterior walls, columns, roofs, chimneys such that they are sagging, leaning, splitting, listing, or buckling;
- Deteriorated siding, including broken and checked boards or shingles;
- Broken windows, doors, or architectural features;
- Lack of protection for walls and roofs from weather;
- Deterioration of exterior stairs, porches, decks, and handrails;
- Hazardous or unsafe conditions from rotted and missing architectural elements; and
- Failure to secure a vacant building sufficient to keep out vandals.

APPENDIX F

BENEFITS OF PRESERVATION

There are many reasons for a property owner to choose preservation beyond simply being in compliance with the local rules and regulations. Studies throughout the United States indicate that when properties are included in a historic district they often enjoy improved property values and other financial benefits. Businesses in historic districts often receive financial boosts from tourism and are granted flexibility under local zoning and building codes. Being recognized as a historic district can often stimulate a “house proud” reaction in residential neighborhoods that results in improved property maintenance and attention to historic-period details.

The preservation of a historic district’s indelible sense of place starts with conserving the historical appearance of the buildings and features that contribute to its significance. While the alteration (or even loss) of one contributing building or feature may not jeopardize the integrity of the entire district, small material alterations can eat away at the authentic character that makes visitors and residents feel connected to the community and its history. Design guidelines generally recommend the best and, in some cases, the most cost-effective methods of maintaining or improving a historic structure while maintaining or enhancing its historic character.

The Idyllwild community has an opportunity to preserve, enhance, and even restore historical character that has been lost over the years through the use of these guidelines.

There are numerous online resources that can provide preservation assistance to home and business owners including the following:

- **Resources for Commercial Property Owners:**
 - California State Parks Office of Historic Preservation – California Main Street Program
 - http://ohp.parks.ca.gov/?page_id=23484
- **Resources for Homeowners:**
 - National Trust for Historic Preservation – Resources for Homeowners
 - <http://www.preservationnation.org/resources/homeowners/>
- **Preservation Grants and Funding Opportunities:**
 - National Trust for Historic Preservation – Find Funding
 - http://www.preservationnation.org/resources/find-funding/?gclid=CPSx_7yxta4CFeUaQgodLhnbrg
- **California State Parks Office of Historic Preservation – Historic Preservation Grants**
 - http://ohp.parks.ca.gov/?page_id=1073
- **Preservation Contacts:**
 - National Trust for Historic Preservation – Preservation Contacts
 - <http://www.preservationnation.org/contacts/preservation-contacts.html?state=CA>